AN EXPOSITION
OF THE
CREED.

BY JOHN PEARSON, D.D
LATE LORD BISHOP OF CHESTER.

WITH
AN APPENDIX,
CONTAINING
THE PRINCIPAL GREEK AND LATIN CREEDS.

REVISED BY THE
REV. W. S. DOBSON, A.M.
EDITOR OF THE ATTIC GREEK ORATORS AND SOPHISTS, &c. &c. &c.

NEW-YORK:
D. APPLETON & COMPANY, 200 BROADWAY.
1853.
Mercy unto you, and peace and love be multiplied.

If I could be at any time unmindful of your commands, you might well esteem me unworthy of your continued favours; and there is some reason to suspect I have incurred the interpretation of forgetfulness, having been so backward in the performance of my promises. Some years have passed since I preached unto you upon such texts of Scripture as were on purpose selected in relation to the Creed, and was moved by you to make those meditations publick. But you were pleased then to grant what my inclinations rather led me to, that they might be turned into an Exposition of the Creed itself; which, partly by the difficulty of the work undertaken, partly by the intervention of some other employments, hath taken me up thus long, for which I desire your pardon. And yet a happy excuse may be pleaded for delay, meeting with a very great felicity, that as faith triumpheth in good works, so my Exposition of the Creed should be contemporary with the re-edsifying of your Church. For though I can have little temptation to believe that my book should last so long as that fabric, yet I am exceedingly pleased that they should begin together; that the publishing of the one should so agree with the opening of the other. This, I hope, may persuade you to forget my slackness, considering ye were not ready to your own expectation; your experience tells you the excuse of church-work will be accepted in building, I beseech you let it not be deemed in printing.

That blessed Saint, by whose name your Parish is known, was a fellow-labourer with St. Paul, and a successor of St. Peter; he had the honour to be numbered in the Scripture with them "whose names are written in the book of life?" and when he had sealed the Gospel with his blood, he was one of the first whose memory was perpetuated by the building a Church to bear his name. Thus was St. Clement's Church famous in Rome, when Rome was famous for the "faith spoken of throughout the whole world." He wrote an epistle to the Corinthians infected with a schism, in imitation of St. Paul, which obtained so great authority in the primitive times, that it was frequently read in their public congregations; and yet had for many hundred years been lost, till it was at last set forth out of the library of the late king.

Now as, by the providence of God, the memory of that primitive Sfait hath been restored in our age, so my design simul at nothing else but that the primitive faith may be revived. And therefore in this edition of the Creed I shall speak to you but what St. Jude hath already spoken to the whole Church: "Beloved, when I give all diligence to write unto you of the common salvation, it was needful for me to write unto you, that ye should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered to the saints." If it were so needful for him then to write, and for them to whom he wrote to contend for the first faith, it will appear as needful for me now to follow his writing, and for you to imitate their earnestness, because the reason which he renders, as the cause of that necessity, is now more prevalent than it was at that time, or ever since. "For (saith he) there are certain men crept in unawares, who were before of old ordained to this condemnation; ungodly men, turning the grace of God into lasciviousness, denying the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ." The principles of Christianity are now as freely questioned as the most doubtful and controverted points; the grounds of faith are as safely denied as the most unnecessary superstitions; that religion hath the greatest advantage which appeareth in the newest dress, as if we looked for another faith to be delivered to the saints: whereas in Christianity there can be no concerning truth which is not ancient; and whatsoever is truly new, is certainly false. Look then for purity in the fountain, and strive to embrace the first faith, to which you cannot have a more probable guide than the Creed, received in all ages of the Church; and to this I refer you, as it leads you to the Scriptures, from whence it was first deduced, that while "those which are unskilful and unstable, wrest" the words of God himself "unto their own damnation," ye may receive so much instruction as may set you beyond the imputation of unskilfulness, and so much of confirmation as may place you out of the danger of instability; which as it hath been the constant endeavour, so shall it ever be the prayer of him, who after so many encouragements of his labours amongst you, doth still desire to be known as your most faithful Servant in the Lord.

JOHN PEARSON.
TO THE READER.

I have in this book undertaken an exposition of the Creed, and think it necessary in this Preface to give a brief account of the work, lest any should either expect to find that here which was never intended, or conceive that which they meet with such as they expected not.

The Creed, without controversy, is a brief comprehension of the objects of our Christian faith, and is generally taken to contain all things necessary to be believed. Now whether all things necessary he contained there, concerneth not an Expositor to dispute, who is obliged to take notice of what is in it, but not to inquire into what is not: whether all truths comprehended in the same be of equal and absolute necessity, we are no way forced to declare; it being sufficient, as to the design of an Exposition, to interpret the words, and so deliver the sense, to demonstrate the truth of the sense delivered, and to manifest the proper necessity of each truth, how far, and in what degree, and to what purposes, it is necessary.

This therefore is the method which I proposed to myself, and have prosecuted in every Article. First, to settle the words of each Article according to their antiquity and generality of reception in the Creed. Secondly, to explicate and unfold the terms, and to endeavour a right notion and conception of them as they are to be understood in the same. Thirdly, to shew what are those truths which are naturally contained in those terms so explicated, and to make it appear that they are truths indeed, by such arguments and reasons as are respectively proper to evidence the verity of them. Fourthly, to declare what is the necessity of believing those truths, what efficacy and influence they have in the soul, and upon the life of a believer. Lastly, by a recollection of all, briefly to deliver the sum of every particular truth, so that every one, when he pronounce the Creed, may know what he ought to intend, and what he is understood to profess, when he so pronounce it.

In the prosecution of the whole, according to this method, I have considered, that a work of so general a concernment must be exposed to two kinds of readers, which, though they may agree in judgment, yet must differ much in their capacities. Some there are who understand the original languages of the Holy Scriptures, the discourses and tracts of the ancient Fathers, the determinations of the Councils, and history of the Church of God, the constant profession of settled truths, the rise and increase of schisms and heresies. Others there are unacquainted with such conceptions, and incapable of such instructions; who understand the Scriptures as they are translated; who are capable of the knowledge of the truths themselves, and of the proofs drawn from thence; who can apprehend the nature of the Christian faith, with the power and efficacy of the same, when it is delivered unto them out of the Word of God, and in a language which they know. When I make this difference and distinction of readers, I do not intend thereby, that because one of these is learned, the other is ignorant; for he which hath no skill of the learned languages, may notwithstanding be very knowing in the principles of Christian Religion, and the reason and efficacy of them.

According to this distinction I have contrived my Exposition, so that the body of it containeth fully what can be delivered and made intelligible in the English tongue, without inserting the least sentence or phrase of any learned language; by which he who is not acquainted with it might be disturbed in his reading, or interrupted in his understanding. Not that I have selected only such notions as are common, easy, and familiar of themselves, but have endeavoured to deliver the most material conceptions in the most plain and perspicuous manner; as desirous to comprise the whole strength of the work, as far as it is possible, in the body of it. The other part I have placed in the margin* (but so as oftentimes it taketh up more room, and yet

The marginal notes are, in this edition, placed at the bottom of the page.
TO THE READER.

is never mingled or confounded with the rest), in which is contained whatsoever is necessary for the illustration of any part of the Creed, as to them which have any knowledge of the Latin, Greek, and original languages, of the writings of the ancient Fathers, the doctrines of the Jews, and the history of the Church; those great advantages towards a right conception of the Christian Religion.

Now being the Creed comprehended the principles of our religion, it must contain those truths which belong unto it as it is a religion, and those which concern it as it is ours. As it is a religion, it delivereth such principles as are to be acknowledged in natural theology, such as no man which worshippeth a God can deny; and therefore in the proof of these, I have made use of such arguments and reasons as are most proper to oppose the atheists, who deny there is a God to be worshipped, a religion to be professed. As it is our religion, it is Christian and Catholick. As Christian, it containeth such truths as were delivered by Christ and his apostles, and those especially concerning Christ himself, which I have prosecuted constantly with an eye to the Jews, who obstinately deny them, expecting still another Messias to come; wherefore I shew out of the Law and the Prophets, which they acknowledge, what was foretold in every particular concerning the Messias, and prove all those to be completed by that Christ in whom we believe. As our religion is Catholick, it holdeth fast that "faith which was once delivered to the saints," and since preserved in the Church; and therefore I expound such verities, in opposition to the heretics arising in all ages, especially against the Photinians, who of all the rest have most perverted the Articles of our Creed, and found out followers in these latter ages, who have erected a new body of divinity in opposition to the Catholick theology. Against these I proceed upon such principles as they themselves allow, that is, upon the Word of God delivered in the Old and New Testament, alleged according to the true sense, and applied by right reason; not urging the authority of the Church which they reject, but only giving in the margin the sense of the primitive fathers, for the satisfaction of such as have any respect left for antiquity, and are persuaded that Christ had a true Church on the earth before these times.

In that part, which, after the demonstration of each truth, teacheth the necessity of the believing it, and the peculiar efficacy which it hath upon the life of a Christian, I have not thought fit to expatiate or enlarge myself, but only to mention such effects as flow naturally and immediately from the doctrine; especially such as are delivered in the Scriptures; which I have endeavoured to set forth with all possible plainness and perspicuity. And indeed in the whole work, as I have laid the foundation upon the written Word of God, so I have with much diligence collected such places of Scripture as are pertinent to each doctrine, and with great faithfulness delivered them as they lie in the writings of those holy penmen; not referring the reader to places named in the margin (which too often I find in many books multiplied to little purpose), but producing and interweaving the sentences of Scripture into the body of my Exposition, so that the reader may understand the strength of all my reason without any farther inquiry or consultation. For if those words which I have produced, prove not what I have intended, I desire not any to think there is more in the places named to maintain it.

At the conclusion of every distinct and several notion, I have recollected briefly and plainly the sum of what hath been delivered in the explanation of it, and put it, as it were, into the mouth of every Christian, thereby to express more fully his faith, and to declare his profession. So that if the reader please to put those collections together, he may at once see and perceive what he is in the whole obliged to believe, and what he is by the Church of God understood to profess, when he maketh this public, ancient, and orthodox confession of faith.

I have nothing more to add; but only to pray, that the Lord would give you and me a good understanding in all things.

J. PEARSON.
OF this Edition, imbodied in one octavo volume, and, it is trusted, in the most convenient form, the following may be stated as the proper advantages. First, great care has been taken to correct the numerous errors, in the references to the Texts of Scripture, which had crept in by reason of the repeated editions through which this admirable Work has passed; and many references, as will be seen on turning to the Index of Texts, have been added. Secondly, the Quotations in the Notes have been almost universally identified, and the references to them adjoined; a great desideratum to the learned (who alone can fully appreciate the labour attending such researches), and a satisfaction at least to the general reader. Lastly, the principal Symbola or Creeds, of which the particular Articles have been cited by the most learned and ever to be revered Author of this Exposition, have been annexed; and, wherever the original writers have given the Symbola in a scattered and disjoined manner, the detached parts have been brought into a successive and connected point of view—These have been added, in chronological order, in the form of an Appendix.

W. S. DOBSON, M.A.
THE

CREED.

I believe in God the Father Almighty, Maker of Heaven and Earth: And in Jesus Christ his only Son our Lord: Which was conceived by the Holy Ghost, born of the Virgin Mary: Suffered under Pontius Pilate, Was crucified, dead, and buried: He descended into Hell, the third day he rose again from the dead: He ascended into Heaven, and sitteth at the right hand of God the Father Almighty: From thence he shall come to judge the quick and the dead: I believe in the Holy Ghost; The Holy Catholick Church; The Communion of Saints; The Forgiveness of Sins; The Resurrection of the Body; And the Life everlasting.
AN

EXPOSITION OF THE CREED.

ARTICLE I.

I BELIEVE IN GOD THE FATHER ALMIGHTY,
MAKER OF HEAVEN AND EARTH.

As the first word Credo, I believe, giveth a denomination to
the whole confession of faith, from thence commonly called
the Creed; so is the same word to be imagined not to stand
only where it is expressed, but to be carried through the whole
body of the confession. For though it be but twice actually
rehearsed, yet must we conceive it virtually prefixed to the
head of every article: that as we say, I believe in God the Father
Almighty, so we are also understood to say, I believe in Jesus
Christ his only Son, our Lord; as I believe in the Holy Ghost, so
also I believe the Catholic Church. Neither is it to be joined
with every complete article only; but where any article is not
a single verity, but comprehensive, there it is to be looked
upon as affixed to every part, or single truth, contained in that
article: as, for example, in the first, I believe in God, I believe
that God to be the Father, I believe that Father to be Almighty,
I believe that Father Almighty to be the Maker of heaven and
earth. So that this Credo, I believe, rightly considered, multi-
plies itself to no less than a double number of the articles,
and will be found at least twenty-four times contained in the
Creed. Wherefore, being a word so pregnant and diffusive,
so necessary and essential to every part of our confession of
faith, that without it we can neither have Creed nor Confes-
sion, it will require a more exact consideration, and more ample
explication, and that in such a notion as is properly applicable
to so many and so various truths.

Now by this previous expression, I believe, thus considered,
eyery particular Christian is first taught, and then imagined,
to make confession of his faith; and, consequently, this word,
so used, admits a threefold consideration: First, As it sup-
poseth belief, or faith, which is confessed. Secondly, As it is
a confession, or external expression of that faith so supposed
Thirdly, as both the faith and confession are of necessary and
particular obligation. When, therefore, we shall have clearly
delivered, First, What is the true nature and notion of belief
Secondly, What the duty of confessing of our faith; Thirdly
What obligation lies upon every particular person to believe and confess; then may we be conceived to have sufficiently explicated the first word of the Creed, then may every one understand what it is says, and upon what ground he proceeds, when he professeth, I believe.

For the right understanding of the true nature of Christian faith, it will be no less than necessary to begin with the general notion of belief; which being first truly stated and defined, then by degrees deduced into its several kinds, will at last make the nature of Christian faith intelligible: a design, if I mistake not, not so ordinary and usual, as useful and necessary.

Belief in general I define to be an assent to that which is credible, as credible. By the word assent * is expressed that act or habit of the understanding, by which it receiveth, acknowledgeth, and embraceth any thing as a truth; it being the nature of the soul so to embrace whatsoever appeareth true unto it, and so far as it appeareth. Now this assent, or judgment of any thing to be true, being a general act of the understanding, and so applicable to other habits thereof as well as to faith, must be specified by its proper object, and so limited and determined to its proper act, which is the other part left to complete the definition.

This object of faith is expressed by that which is credible; for every one who believeth any thing, doth thereby without question assent unto it as to that which is credible: and therefore all belief whatsoever is such a kind of assent. But though

* Pästeis de príkafh eikoléis étov, ò stam- 


Jv kámeiv diá tin sympathtía tòn kathé kathé kathé thn ólandón thn kathé kathé kathé n yugrébas étov chénta. S. Basili. Aset. de Fide, c. 1. The Basilidians. 'Oqí-

xontai rois ó àpò kathé kathé kathé tòn xayevs sympathtías próstas tòn má kúbous tòn ánthous dik tò má porofías. Clem. Alex. Strom. I. ii. p. 160. 11. Katà dé tìn kathé-

teron lóghon, pästeis étova épíles thyn sympathtías. Theodore, Therap. Strom. I. And yet he also afterward acknowledgeth they had that definition from the Greeks: Tìn má yap xayí kai, & àpò kathé kathé kathé ánthous dik tòn xayevs sympathtías. 'Credere est communia cogita- 

tione," S. August. de Praedestinatione. Sanct. §. 5. And de Spir. et Litter. ad Marcilin. lin. §. 54. 'Quid est credere, nisi con- 

scientia verum esse quod dicitur?' So I take the sympathtías used by the Greek fathers to signify asassens or assensionem, as A. Gellius translacth the Stoic, sympathtías, sun assensione appropiat, l. xiv. 1.

and before him Cicero. Nam deassensio atque approbatione, quam Graeci sympathtías vocant, paene dicamus. In Lucilo, §. 37. So épistiai and sympathtías, are op- 

posed by the Greeks. As Sextus Empiricus, speaking of Admetus seeing Alcestis brought back by Hercules from Hades: Envi mihi rézai tì skepasa, pericétato aútov kai epiaía ápò tòn sympathtías diá, kai prò pòvtois tòn Alcestis. Dion. Hypot. I. 1. 35. 'Filialevé: àpò tòn xayevs sympathtías kathà tìn àpò tòn xayevs sympathtías, àpò tìn xayevs sympathtías, àpò tìn xayevs sympathtías, àpò tìn xayevs sympathtías, àpò tìn xayevs sympathtías.' S. Arist. de Animis. Kair tìn tìn xayevs sympathtías, xayevs sympathtías, xayevs sympathtías, xayevs sympathtías, xayevs sympathtías. Strovi. I. ii. p. 163. 49. ¶ As sympathtías: the Greek word used for this assent is applied to other acts of the understanding as well as that of belief, so Clemens Alexandrinus speaking of the definition of faith: 'Alloii 3' àpò xayí sympathtías év tropon sympathtías àpò èstou tòn xayí. Xayí sympathtías, dòs tìn xayí sympathtías àpò èstou tòn xayí sympathtías, àpò èstou tòn xayí sympathtías, àpò èstou tòn xayí sympathtías, àpò èstou tòn xayí sympathtías, àpò èstou tòn xayí sympathtías. Strom. I. ii. p. 156. 21. And again: Pèste àpò èstou, kai kripès, kai upoló- 

gèis, kai syméntes, ós xayí kai suxermon, xayí, tìn xayí tìn kathè sympathtías kathè sympathtías kathè sympathtías kathè sympathtías kathè sympathtías. Strovi. I. ii. p. 163. 49.
all belief be an assent to that which is credible, yet every such assent may not be properly faith; and therefore those words make not the definition complete. For he that sees an action done, knows it to be done, and therefore assents unto the truth of the performance of it because he sees it: but another person to whom he relates it, may assent unto the performance of the same action, not because himself sees it, but because the other relates it; in which case that which is credible is the object of faith in one, of evident knowledge in the other. To make the definition therefore full, besides the material object or thing believed, we have added the formal object, or that whereby it is properly believed, expressed in the last term, as credible, which being taken in, it then appears, that, First, Whosoever believeth any thing, assenteth to something which is to him credible, and that as it is credible: and again, Whosoever assenteth to any thing which is credible, as it is credible, believeth something by so assenting: which is sufficient to shew the definition complete.

But for the explication of the same, farther observations will be necessary. For if that which we believe be something which is credible, and the notion under which we believe be the credibility of it, then must we first declare what it is to be credible, and in what credibility doth consist, before we can understand what is the nature of belief.

Now that is properly credible which is not apparent of itself, nor certainly to be collected, either antecedently by its cause, or reversely by its effect; and yet, though by none of these ways, hath the attestation of a truth. For those things which are apparent of themselves, are either so in respect of our sense, as, that snow is white, and fire is hot; or in respect of our understanding, as, that the whole of any thing is greater than any one part of the whole, that every thing imaginable either is or is not. The first kind of which being propounded to our sense, one to the sight, the other to the touch, appear of themselves immediately true, and therefore are not termed credible, but evident to sense; as the latter kind, propounded to the understanding, are immediately embraced and acknowledged as truths apparent in themselves, and therefore are not called credible, but evident to the understanding. And so those things which are* apparent, are not said properly to be believed, but to be known.

Again, other things, though not immediately apparent in themselves, may yet appear most certain and evidently true, by an immediate and necessary connexion with something formerly known: for, being every natural cause actually applied doth necessarily produce its own natural effect, and every na-

---

* Apparentia non habent fidem, sed agnitionem. Greg. 4. Dial. cap. 5. 'Habet Fides ocuous suos, quibus quadam modo videt, verum esse quod nondum videt, et quibus certissime videt, nondum se videre quod credit.' S. August. Ep. 222.
tural effect wholly dependeth upon, and absolutely presupposes its own proper cause; therefore there must be an immediate connexion between the cause and its effect. From whence it follows, that if the connexion be once clearly perceived, the effect will be known in the cause, and the cause by the effect. And by these ways, proceeding from principles evidently known by consequences certainly concluding, we come to the knowledge of propositions in mathematics, and conclusions in other sciences; which propositions and conclusions are not said to be credible, but scientific; and the comprehension of them is not faith, but science.

Besides, some things there are, which, though not evident of themselves, nor seen by any necessary connexion to their causes or effects, notwithstanding appear to most as true by some external relations to other truths; but yet so, as the appearing truth still leaves a possibility of falsehood with it, and therefore doth not incline to an assent. In which case, whatsoever is thus apprehended, if it depend upon real arguments, is not yet called credible, but probable; and an assent to such a truth is not properly faith, but opinion.

But when any thing propounded to us is neither apparent to our sense, nor evident to our understanding, in and of itself, neither certainly to be collected from any clear and necessary connexion with the cause from which it proceedeth, or the effects which it naturally produceth, nor is taken up upon any real arguments, or reference to other acknowledged truths, and yet notwithstanding appeareth to us true, not by a manifestation, but attestation of the truth, and so moveth us to assent not of itself, but by virtue of the testimony given to it; this is said* properly to be credible; and an assent unto this, upon such credibility, is in the proper notion faith or belief.

Having thus defined and illustrated the nature of faith in general, so far as it agreeth to all kinds of belief whatsoever, our method will lead us on to descend by way of division, to the several kinds thereof, till at last we come to the proper notion of faith in the Christian's confession, the design of our present disquisition; and being we have placed the formality of the object of all belief in credibility, it will clearly follow, that diversity of credibility in the object, will proportionably cause a distinction of assent in the understanding, and consequently a several kind of faith, which we have supposed to be nothing else but such an assent.

Now the credibility of objects, by which they appear fit to be believed, is distinguishable according to the diversities of its foundation, that is, according to the different authority of the testimony on which it depends: for we having no other certain means of assuring ourselves of the truth, and consequently no other motives of our assent in matters of mere belief, than

* Αἶδα τὰς μαρτύρια ἔδωκε πιστεύει. Aristot. probl. sect. 18. 3.
the testimony upon which we believe; if there be any fundamental distinction in the authority of the testimony, it will cause the like difference in the assent, which must needs bear a proportion to the authority of the testimony, as being originally and essentially founded upon it. It is therefore necessary next to consider, in what the authority of a testimony consisteth, and so to descend to the several kinds of testimonies founded upon several authorities.

The strength and validity of every testimony must bear proportion with the authority of the testifier; and the authority of the testifier is founded upon his ability and integrity: his ability in the knowledge of that which he delivereth and asserteth; his integrity in delivering and asserting according to his knowledge. For two several ways he which relateth or testifieth any thing may deceive us: one, by being ignorant of the truth, and so upon that ignorance mistaking, he may think that to be true which is not so, and consequently deliver that for truth which in itself is false, and so deceive himself and us; or if he be not ignorant, yet if he be dishonest or unfaithful, that which he knows to be false he may propound and assert to be a truth, and so, though himself be not deceived, he may deceive us. And by each of these ways, for want either of ability or integrity in the testifier, whose grounds his assent unto any thing as a truth, upon the testimony of another, may equally be deceived.

But whosoever is so able as certainly to know the truth of that which he delivereth, and so faithful as to deliver nothing but what and as he knoweth, he, as he is not deceived, so deceiveth no man. So far, therefore, as any person testifying appeareth to be knowing of the thing he testifieth, and to be faithful in the relation of what he knows, so far his testimony is acceptable, so far that which he testifieth is properly credible. And thus the authority of every testifier or relater is grounded upon these two foundations, his ability and integrity.

Now there is in this case, so far as it concerns our present design, a double testimony: the testimony of man to man, relying upon human authority, and the testimony of God to man, founded upon divine authority: which two kinds of testimony are respective grounds of two kinds of credibility, human and divine; and, consequently, there is a twofold faith distinguished by this double object, a human and a divine faith.

Human faith is an assent unto any thing credible merely upon the testimony of man. Such is the belief we have of the words and affections one of another. And upon this kind of faith we proceed in the ordinary affairs of our life; according to the

opinion we have of the ability and fidelity of him who relates or asserts any thing we believe or disbelieve. By this a friend assureth himself of the affection of his friend; by this this son acknowledgeth his father, and upon this is his obedience wrought. By virtue of this human faith it is that we doubt not at all of those things which we never saw, by reason of their distance from us, either by time or place. Who doubts whether there be such a country as Italy, or such a city as Constantinople, though he never passed any of our four seas? Who questions now whether there were such a man as Alexander in the east, or Caesar in the west? And yet the latest of these hath been beyond the possibility of the knowledge of man these sixteen hundred years. There is no science taught without-origin belief, there are no letters learnt without preceding faith. There is no justice executed, no commerce maintained, no business prosecuted, without this; all secular affairs are transacted, all great achievements are attempted, all hopes, desires, and inclinations, are preserved, by this human faith grounded upon the testimony of man.

In which case we all by easy experience may observe the nature, generation, and progress, of belief. For in any thing which belongeth to more than ordinary knowledge, we believe not him whom we think to be ignorant, nor do we assent the more for his assertion, though never so confidently delivered; but if we have a strong opinion of the knowledge and skill of any person, what he affirmiteth within the compass of his knowledge, that we readily assent unto; and while we have no other ground but his affirmation, this assent is properly belief. Whereas, if it be any matter of concernment in which the interest of him that relateth or affirmiteth any thing to us is considerable, there it is not the skill or knowledge of the relater which will satisfy us, except we have as strong an opinion of his fidelity and integrity: but if we think him so just and honest, that he has no design upon us, nor will affirmit anything contrary to his knowledge for any gain or advantage, then we readily assent unto his affirmations; and this assent is our belief. Seeing then our belief relies upon the ability and integrity of the relater, and being the knowledge of all men is imperfect, and the hearts of all men are deceitful, and so their integrity to be suspected, there can be no infallible universal ground of human faith.

But what satisfaction we cannot find in the testimony of

* * Non dicent, non creditimus, quia non vidimus; quoniam, si haec dicant, coguntur fateri incertos sibi esse Parentes suos.' De fide rerum divin. § 4. amongst the works of St. Augustin.

† Ταξιθελήθη μίαν καὶ κρονίς ἡ ἁπτώσεως ἡ πίστις. 'Theod. Th. lib. ii. cap. 1.

man, we may receive in the testimony of God; “If we receive
the witness of man, the witness of God is greater.” (1 John
v. 9.)* Yea, “let God be true,” the ground of our divine,
“and every man a liar,” (Rom. iii. 4.) the ground of our
human faith.

As for the other member of the division, we may now plainly
perceive that it is thus to be defined: Divine faith is an assent
unto something as credible upon the testimony of God. This
assent is the highest kind of faith, because the object hath the
highest credibility, because grounded upon the testimony of
God, which is infallible. Balaam could tell Balak thus much,
“God is not a man, that he should lie;” (Numb. xxiii. 19.)
and a better prophet confirmed the same truth to Saul; “The
Strength of Israel will not lie;” (1 Sam. xv. 29.) and be-
cause he will not, because he cannot, he is the Strength of
Israel, even “my God, my strength, in whom I will trust.”
(Psal. xlviii. 2.)

For, First, God is of infinite knowledge and wisdom, as
Hannah hath taught us, “The Lord is a God of knowledge;”†
(1 Sam. ii. 3.) or rather, if our language will bear it, of know-
ledges, which are so plural, or rather infinite in their plurality,
that the Psalmist hath said, “Of his understanding there is
no number.” (Psal. cxlvii. 5.)‡ He knoweth therefore all
things, neither can any truth be hidden from his knowledge,
who is essentially truth, and essentially knowledge, and, as so,
the cause of all other truth and knowledge. Thus the under-
standing of God is infinite in respect of comprehension,§
and not so only, but of certainty also and evidence. Some
things we are said to know which are but obscurely known,
we see them but as in a glass or through a cloud: but “God
is light, and in him is no darkness at all:” (1 John i. 5.) he
seeth without any obscurity, and whatsoever is propounded to
his understanding is most clear and evident; “neither is there
any creature that is not manifest in his sight; but all things
are naked and open unto the eyes of him with whom we have
to do.” (Heb. iv. 13.) Wherefore, being all things are within
the compass of his knowledge; being all things which are sc,
are most clear and evident unto him; being the knowledge he
hath of them is most certain and infallible; it inevitably fol-
loweth that he cannot be deceived in any thing.

Secondly, The justice of God is equal to his knowledge, nor
is his holiness inferior to his wisdom: “A God of truth (saith
Moses) and without iniquity, just and right is he.” (Deut.

* Quam indigam, ut humanis testi-
moniis de ailo credamus: Dei oraculis
de se non credamus!” S. Ambros. Lib. de
Abraham, c. 3. Pie: 8. οικ εικοξτηρι,
πατην των ανθρωπινων πιστεων θητηματων,
εικων, μαλλο πιστειν τω δει; Orig.
cont. Celts. i. i. §. 11.

† ἡ δικαιοσύνη του Κορης.
‡ In the Heb. רמ לני הנות
§ ‘Cujus sapientia simplicitis multi-
plex, et uniformiter multiformis, incom-
prehensibilis comprehensions omnium in
comprehensibilitatem comprehendit.” S. Au-
gust. de Civit. Dei, i. xii. c. 18.
ARTICLE I.

From which internal, essential, and infinite rectitude, goodness, and holiness, followeth an impossibility to declare or deliver that for truth which he knoweth not to be true. For if it be against that finite purity and integrity which are required of man, to lie, and therefore sinful, then must we conceive it absolutely inconsistent with that transcendent purity and infinite integrity which is essential unto God. Although therefore the power of God be infinite, though he "can do every thing;" (Job xlii. 2.) yet we may safely say, without any prejudice to his omnipotence, that he cannot speak that for truth which he knoweth to be otherwise.† For the perfections of his will are as necessarily infinite as those of his understanding; neither can he be unholy or unjust, more than he can be ignorant or unwise. "If we believe not, yet he abideth faithful, he cannot deny himself." (2 Tim. ii. 13.) Which words of the apostle, though properly belonging to the promises of God, yet are as true in his respect of his assertions; neither should he more deny himself in violating his fidelity, than in contradicting his veracity. It is true, that "God willing more abundantly to shew unto the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath; that by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation:" (Heb. vi. 17, 18.) but it is as true, that all this confirmation is only for our consolation; otherwise it is as impossible for God to lie, without an oath, as with one: for being he can "swear by no greater, he sweareth only by himself," (Heb. vi. 13.) and so the strength even of the oath of God relieth upon the veracity of God. Wherefore being God, as God, is of infinite rectitude, goodness, and holiness; being it is manifestly repugnant to his purity, and inconsistent with his integrity, to deliver any thing contrary to his knowledge; it clearly followeth, that he cannot deceive any man.

It is therefore most infallibly certain, that God being infinitely wise, cannot be deceived;‡ being infinitely good, cannot deceive:§ and upon these two immovable pillars standeth the authority of the testimony of God. For since we cannot doubt of the witness of any one, but by questioning his ability, as one who may be ignorant of that which he affirmeth, and so deceived; or by excepting against his integrity, as one who may affirm that which he knoweth to be false, and so have a purpose to deceive us: where there is no place for either of these exceptions, there can be no doubt of the truth of the tes-

* Íντετα δι' ιην ἔκδοινε πάντα ὅ θείον ἄμεταλλον τοῦ θείου ένεργείας, και ἄμεταλλον εὐεργείας, και παράλλον εὐεργείας, ὅς έπαντα. Orig. contra Celsum, 1. iii. § 70.

† 'Si velint invenire qual omni potens non potest; habent prorsus ego dicas, mentiri non potest.' S. August. de Civ. Dei, l. xxii. c. 25.

‡ 'Ut sit omnium potens, mori non potest, falli non potest, mentiri non potest.' S. August. de Symb. ad Catechum. l. i. c. 1.

§ 'Deus facere fraudem nescit, pati non potest.' Chrysol. Serv. 52.
timony. But where there is an intrinsical* repugnancy of being deceived in the understanding, and of deceiving in the will, as there certainly is in the understanding and will of God, there can be no place for either of those exceptions, and consequently there can be no doubt of the truth of that which God testifieth. And whosoever thinketh any thing comes from him, and assenteth not unto it, must necessarily deny him to be wise or holy: "He that believeth not God (saith the apostle), hath made him a liar." (1 John v. 10.) That truth then which is testified by God, hath a divine credibility: and an assent unto it, as so credible, is divine faith. In which the material object is the doctrine which God delivereth, the formal object is that credibility founded on the authority† of the deliverer. And this I conceive the true nature of divine faith in general.

Now being the credibility of all which we believe is founded upon the testimony of God, we can never be sufficiently instructed in the notion of faith, till we first understand how this testimony is given to those truths which we now believe. To this end it will be necessary to give notice that the testimony of God is not given unto truths before questioned or debated; nor are they such things as are at first propounded and doubted of by man, and then resolved and confirmed by interposing the authority of God: but he is then said to witness when he doth propound, and his testimony is given by way of Revelation, which is nothing else but the delivery or speech of God unto his creatures. And therefore upon a diversity of delivery must follow a difference, though not of faith itself, yet of the means and manner of assent.

Wherefore it will be farther necessary to observe, that divine Revelation is of two kinds, either immediate, or mediate. An immediate Revelation is that by which God delivereth himself to man by himself, without the intervention of man. A mediate Revelation is the conveyance of the counsel of God unto man by man. By the first he spake unto the prophets; by the second in the prophets, and by them unto us. Being then there is this difference between the revealing of God unto the prophets and to others, being the faith both of prophets and others relieth wholly upon divine Revelation, the difference

* Auctoritas Dei consistit in intrinsecum repugnania deceptionis seu falsitatis, quam habet divinum judicium, et in intrinsecum repugnantium actus voluntatis imperantem testimonium extra secun non consentiens judicio interno; quae per terminos positivos actus intellectus infallibiliter veri, et actus voluntatis intrinsecum necessario recti, poterit explicari. Francisci, de Ovid. Tract. de Fide, Contr. ii. pars. 2.
† Divina est auctoritas, cui credimus: divina est doctrina, quam sequimur. Leo, Serm. 7. in Nativ.
of the manner of assent in these several kinds of believers will be very observable for the explanation of the nature of our faith.

Those then to whom God did immediately speak himself, or by an angel representing God, and so being in his stead, and bearing his name (of which I shall need here to make no distinction), those persons, I say, to whom God did so reveal himself, did, by virtue of the same Revelation, perceive, know, and assure themselves, that he who spake to them was God; so that at the same time they clearly understood both what was delivered, and by whom: otherwise we cannot imagine that Abraham would have slain his son, or have been commended for such a resolution, had he not been most assured that it was God who by an immediate Revelation of his will clearly commanded it. Thus "by faith Noah being warned of God of things not seen as yet, moved with fear, prepared an ark, to the saving of his house:" (Heb. xi. 7.) which *warning of God was a clear Revelation of God's determination to drown the world, of his will to save him and his family, and of his command for that end to build an ark. And this Noah so received from God, as that he knew it to be an oracle of God, and was as well assured of the author as informed of the command. Thus the judgments hanging over Judah were revealed in the ears of Isaiah "by the Lord of hosts." (Isa. xxii. 14.) Thus "the Lord revealed himself to Samuel in Shiloh:" (1 Sam. iii. 21.) at first indeed he knew him not; that is, when the Lord spake, he knew it not to be the voice of God: "Now Samuel did not yet know the Lord; neither was the word of the Lord yet revealed unto him;" (1 Sam. iii. 7.) but after that he knew him and was assured that it was He who spake unto him, the Scripture teaching us that the tears of Samuel were revealed, and the word of God revealed, and God himself revealed to him. By all which we can understand no less, than that Samuel was so illuminated in his prophecies, that he fully understood the words or things themselves which were delivered, and as certainly knew that the deliverer was God: so Samuel the Seer, so the rest of those prophets believed those truths revealed to them by such a faith as was a firm assent unto an object credible upon the immediate testimony of God.

But those faithful people to whom the prophets spake, believed the same truth, and upon the testimony of the same God, delivered unto them not by God, but by those prophets, whose words they therefore assented unto as certain truths, because

---

*denda revelat, nulla hominis ministerio utens; sicut est fides Apostolorum et Prophetarum, qui ab ipso Deo per intrinsecam illuminationem sunt de credendis instructa.* Francisco. Ferrariensis in Thom. cont. Gent. c. 40.

*Πίστις χηραματισθείς, which word comes from the original χήρα, appropriated by the Greeks to an oracle, or answer given by God: ἢ μὲν θεός χήρα, ἢ δὲ αὐθεντός μακαριστός.* Neochorius, *Oeum. 'Attik. ν. χήρας.*

1 Ἀρχαὶ οἱ ἁγίοι τοῦ κόσμου αὐτοκαθόλου τοῦ ἁγίου Σαμουήλ, 1 Sam. ix. 15.

2 Ἀρχαὶ οἱ ἁγίοι τοῦ κόσμου αὐτοκαθόλου τοῦ ἁγίου Σαμουήλ, 1 Sam. iii. 7.

3 Ἀρχαὶ οἱ ἁγίοι τοῦ κόσμου αὐτοκαθόλου τοῦ ἁγίου Σαμουήλ, 1 Sam. iii. 21.
they were assured that what the prophets spake was immediately revealed to them by God himself, without which assurance no faith could be expected from them. When God appeared unto Moses "in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush," (Exod. iii. 2.) and there immediately revealed to him first himself, saying, "I am the God of thy fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob," and then his will to bring the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, Moses clearly believed God both in the revelation of himself and of his will, and was fully satisfied that the Israelites should be delivered; because he was assured it was God who promised their deliverance: yet notwithstanding still he doubted whether the Israelites would believe the same truth, when it should be delivered to them, not immediately by God, but by Moses; "And Moses answered and said, But behold, they will not believe me, nor hearken unto my voice; for they will say, The Lord hath not appeared unto thee." (Exod. iv. 1.) Which words of his first suppose, that if they had heard the voice of God, as he had, they would have assented to the truth upon a testimony Divine; and then as rationally affirm, that it was improbable they should believe, except they were assured it was God who promised, or think that God had promised by Moses, only because Moses said so. Which rational objection was clearly taken away, when God endued Moses with power of evident and undoubted miracles; for then the rod which he carried in his hand was as infallible a sign to the Israelites, that God had appeared unto him, as the flaming bush was to himself; and therefore they who saw in his hand God's omnipotency, could not suspect in his tongue God's veracity; insomuch as when Aaron became to Moses "instead of a mouth," and Moses to Aaron "instead of God," (Exod. iv. 16.) "Aaron spake all the words which the Lord had spoken unto Moses, and did the signs in the sight of the people, and the people believed." (Exod. iv. 30, 31.) For being persuaded by a lively and active presence of omnipotency that God had appeared unto Moses, and what was delivered to them by him came to him from God, and being sufficiently assured out of the very sense and notion of a Deity, that whatsoever God should speak, must of necessity be true, they presently assented, "and believed the Lord and his servant Moses;" (Exod. xiv. 31.) Moses, as the immediate propounder; God, as the original revealer: they believed Moses that God had revealed it, and they believed the promise, because God had revealed it. So that the faith both of Moses and the Israelites was grounded upon the same testimony or revelation of God, and differed only in the proposition or application of the testimony; Moses receiving it immediately from God himself, the Israelites mediately by the ministry of Moses.

In the like manner the succeeding prophets were the instru-
ARTICLE I.

ments of Divine Revelation, which they first believed as revealed to them, and then the people as revealed by them: for what they delivered was not the testimony of man, but the testimony of God delivered by man. It was "he who spake by the mouth of his holy prophets which have been since the world began;" (Luke i. 70.) the mouth, the instrument, the articulation, was theirs; but the words were God's. "The Spirit of the Lord spake by me (saith David), and his word was in my tongue." (2 Sam. xxiii. 2.) It was the word of the Lord, which he spake "by the hand of Moses," (1 Kings viii. 53,) and "by the hand of his servant Ahijah the prophet." (1 Kings xiv. 18.) The hand the general instrument of man, the mouth the particular instrument of speech, both attributed to the prophets as merely instrumental in their prophecies. The words which Balaam's ass spake were as much the ass's words, as those which Balaam spake were his; for "the Lord opened the mouth of the ass," (Numb. xxii. 28.) and "the Lord put a word in Balaam's mouth;" (Numb. xxiii. 5.) and not only so, but a bridle with that word, "only the word that I shall speak unto thee, that thou shalt speak." (Numb. xxii. 35.) The prophets as they did not frame the notions or conceptions themselves of those truths which they delivered from God, so did they not loosen their own tongues of their own instinct, or upon their own motion, but as moved, impelled, and acted by God. So we may, in correspondence to the antecedent, and subsequent words, interpret those words of St. Peter, that "no prophecy of the Scripture is of any private interpretation:" (2 Pet. i. 20.) that is, that no prophecy which is written did so proceed from the prophet who spake or wrote it, that he of himself, or by his own instinct, did open his mouth to prophesy; but that all prophetical revelations came from God alone, and that whosoever first delivered them was antecedently inspired by him, as it followeth, "for the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man, but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost." (2 Pet. i. 21.) That therefore which they delivered was the Word, the Revelation of God; which they assented unto, as to a certain and infallible truth, credible upon the immediate testimony of God, and to which the rest of the believers assented upon the same testimony of God immediately delivered by the hands of the prophets.

Thus, "God, who at sundry times, and in divers manners, spake in times past unto the fathers by the prophets;" (Heb. i. 1.) and by so speaking propounded the object of faith both to the prophets and the fathers, "hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son," (Heb. i. 2.) and by so speaking hath enlarged the object of faith to us by him, by which means it comes to be "the faith of Jesus." (Rev. xiv. 12.) Thus the • ὁ διὰ τῆς ἐκθέσεως.
"only-begotten Son, who was in the bosom of the Father," (John i. 18.) "the express image of his person," (Heb. i. 3.) he "in whom it pleased the Father that all fulness should dwell," (Col. i. 19.) he "in whom dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily," (Col. ii. 9.) revealed the will of God to the apostles; who being "assured that he knew all things," and convinced that he "came forth from God," (John xvi. 30.) gave a full and clear assent unto those things which he delivered, and grounded their faith upon his words, as upon the immediate testimony of God. "I have given unto them (saith Christ unto his Father) the words which thou gavest me, and they have received them, and have known surely that I came out from thee, and they have believed that thou didst send me." (John xvii. 8.) Besides this delivery of these words by Christ to the apostles, they received the promise of the "Spirit of truth, who should guide them into all truth," (John xvi. 13.) and "teach them all things, and bring all things into their remembrance whatsoever Christ hath said unto them." (John xiv. 26.) So clearly, so fully, so constantly, were they furnished with divine Illuminations, and Revelations from God, upon which they grounded their own faith; that each of them might well make that profession of St. Paul, "I know whom I have believed." (2 Tim. i. 12.) Thus the faith of the apostles, as of Moses and the prophets, was grounded upon the immediate Revelations of God.

But those believers to whom the apostles preached, and whom they converted to their faith, believed the same truths which were revealed to the apostles, though they were not so revealed to them as they were unto the apostles, that is, immediately from God. But as the Israelites believed those truths which Moses spake to come from God, being convinced by the constant supply of miracles wrought by the rod which he carried in his hand: so the blessed apostles, being so plentifully endowed from above with the power of miracles, gave sufficient testimony that it was God who spake by their mouths, who so evidently wrought by their hands. They who heard St. Peter call a lame man unto his legs, speak a dead man alive, and strike a living man to death with his tongue, as he did Ananias and Sapphira, might easily be persuaded that it was God who spake by his mouth, and conclude that where they found him in his omnipotency, they might well expect him in his veracity. These were the persons for whom our Saviour next to the apostles prayed, because by a way next to that of the apostles they believed. "Neither pray I for these alone (saith Christ), but for them also who shall believe on me through their word." (John xvii. 20.) Thus the apostles believed on Christ through his own word, and the primitive Christians believed on the same Christ through the apostles' word, and this distinction our Saviour himself hath
clearly made; not that the word of the apostles was really distinct from the word of Christ, but only it was called theirs, because delivered by their ministry, otherwise it was the same word which they had heard from him, and upon which they themselves believed, "That which was from the beginning (saith St. John), which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled of the word of life, that which we have seen and heard declare we unto you." (1 John i. 1. 3.) And this was the true foundation of faith in all them who believed, that they took not the words which they heard from the apostles to be the words of the men who spake them, no more than they did the power of healing the sick, or raising the dead, and the rest of the miracles, to be the power of them that wrought them; but as they attributed those miraculous works to God working by them, so did they also that saving word to the same God speaking by them. When St. Paul preached at Antioch, "almost the whole city came together to hear the word of God;" (Acts xiii. 44.) so they esteemed it, though they knew him a man whom they came to hear speak it. This the apostle commendeth in the Thessalonians, that, "when they received the word of God, which they heard of him, they received it not as the word of man, but (as it is in truth) the word of God;" (1 Thess. ii. 13.) and receiving it so, they embraced it as coming from him who could neither deceive nor be deceived, and consequently as infallibly true; and by so embracing it, they assented unto it, and by so assenting unto it, they believed it, ultimately upon the testimony of God, immediately upon the testimony of St. Paul, as he speaks himself, "because our testimony among you was believed." (2 Thess. i. 10.) Thus the faith of those which were converted by the apostles was an assent unto the word as credible upon the testimony of God delivered to them by a testimony apostolical. Which being thus clearly stated, we may at last descend into our own condition, and so describe the nature of our own faith, that every one may know what it is to believe.

Although Moses was endued with the power of miracles, and conversed with God in the mount, and spake with him face to face at the door of the Tabernacle: although upon these grounds the Israelites believed what he delivered to them as the word of God; yet neither the miracles nor Moses did for ever continue with them; and notwithstanding his death, they and their posterity to all generations were obliged to believe the same truths. Wherefore it is observable which St. Stephen saith, he "received the lively oracles to give unto them;" (Acts vii. 38.) the Decalogue he received from the hand of God, "written with the finger of God;" (Exod. xxxi. 18.) the rest of the divine patafactions he wrote himself, and so delivered them not a mortal word to die with him, but living ora-
cles* to be in force when he was dead, and oblige the people to a belief, when his rod had ceased to broach the rocks and divide the seas. Neither did he only tie them to a belief of what he wrote himself, but by foretelling and describing the prophecies which should be raised in future ages, he put a farther obligation upon them to believe their prophecies as the revelations of the same God. Thus all the Israelites, in all ages, believed Moses: while he lived, by believing his words; after his death, by believing his writings. "Had ye believed Moses (saith our Saviour), ye would have believed me; for he wrote of me. But if ye believe not his writings, how shall ye believe my words?" (John v. 46, 47.) Wherefore the faith of the Israelites in the land of Canaan was an assent unto the truths of the law as credible upon the testimony of God delivered unto them in the writings of Moses and the prophets.

In the like manner is it now with us. For although Christ first published the Gospel to those "who beheld his glory, the glory as of the only-begotten of the Father;" (John i. 14.) although the apostles first converted those unto the faith who heard them speak with tongues they never learned, they never heard before, and discover the thoughts of men they never saw before; who saw the lame to walk, the blind to see, the dead to revive, and the living to expire at their command: yet did not these apostles prolong their lives by virtue of that power which gave such testimony to their doctrine, but rather shortened them by their constant attestation to the truth of that doctrine farther confirmed by their death. Nor did that power of frequent and ordinary miraculous operations long survive them; and yet they left as great an obligation upon the Church in all succeeding ages to believe all the truths which they delivered, as they had put upon those persons who heard their words and saw their works; because they wrote the same truths which they spake, assisted in writing by the same Spirit by which they spake, and therefore require the same readiness of assent so long as the same truths shall be preserved by those writings. While Moses lived and spake as a mediator between God and the Israelites, they believed his words, and so the prophets while they preached. When Moses was gone up to Mount Nebo, and there died, when the rest of the prophets were gathered to their fathers, they believed their writings, and the whole object of their faith was contained in them. When the Son of God came into the world to reveal the will of his Father, when he "made known unto" the apostles, as his "friends, all things that he had heard of the Father," (John xv. 15.) then did the apostles believe the writings of Moses and the prophets, and the words of Christ, and in these taken together was contained the entire object of their faith, "and they believed the Scripture and the word which Jesus had

* Απίστευτα.
ARTICLE I.

said." (John ii. 22.) When Christ was ascended up into heaven, and the Holy Ghost came down, when the words which Christ had taught the apostles were preached by them, and many thousand souls converted to the faith, they believed the writings of the prophets and the words of the apostles; and in these two was comprised the complete object of their faith. When the apostles themselves departed out of this life, and confirmed the truth of the Gospel preached by the last of sufferings, their death, they left the sum of what they had received in writing, for the continuation of the faith in the churches which they had planted, and the propagation thereof in other places, by those that succeeded them in their ordinary functions, but were not to come near them in their extraordinary gifts. "These things were written (saith St. John, the longest liver, and the latest writer), that ye might believe, that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that believing ye might have life through his name." (John xx. 31.)

Those Christians then which have lived since the apostles' death, and never obtained the wish of St. Augustin, to see either Christ upon earth, or St. Paul in the pulpit, have believed the writings of Moses and the prophets, of the apostles and evangelists, in which together is fully comprehended whatsoever may properly be termed matter of divine faith; and so "the household of God is built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets,"* (Eph. ii. 20.) who are continued unto us only in their writings, and by them alone convey unto us the truths which they received from God, upon whose testimony we believe. And therefore he which put their writings into the definition of faith, considering faith as it now stands with us, is none of the smallest of the Schoolmen.† From whence we may at last conclude, that the true nature of the faith of a Christian, as the state of Christ's Church now stands, and shall continue to the end of the world, consists in this, that it is an assent unto truths credible upon the testimony of God delivered unto us in the writings of the apostles and prophets.

To believe therefore as the word stands in the front of the Creed, and not only so, but is diffused through every article and proposition of it, is to assent to the whole and every part of it, as to a certain and infallible truth revealed by God (who by reason of his infinite knowledge cannot be deceived, and by reason of his transcendent holiness cannot deceive), and delivered unto us in the writings of the blessed apostles and prophets, immediately inspired, moved, and acted by God, out of whose writings this brief sum of necessary points of faith

* 'Prophetae et Apostoli, super quos omnium Ecclesiæ fœnusta locatur,' S. Hieron. in Psal. xvii. 'Super Prophetas edificant orbis terrarum, credens in Domino.' Ruffin. ibid.

† 'Fides est habitus, quo assentimus dictis Scripturæ propter auctoritatem Dei revelantis.' Durand. i. iii. Dist. 24 q. 1. § 9.
was first collected.* And as this is properly to believe, which was our first consideration; so to say I believe, is to make confession or external expression of the faith, which is the second consideration propounded.

Faith is a habit of the intellectual part of man, and therefore of itself invisible; and to believe is a spiritual act, and consequently immanent and internal, and known to no man but him who believeth: "For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of a man which is in him?" (1 Cor. ii. 11.) Wherefore Christ being not only the great Apostle, sent to deliver these revealed truths, and so the author of our faith, but also the head of the Church, whose body consisteth of faithful members, and so the author of union and communion, which principally hath relation to the unity of faith, he must needs be imagined to have appointed some external expression and communication of it: especially considering that the sound of the apostles was to go forth unto the ends of the world, and all nations to be called to the profession of the Gospel, and gathered into the Church of Christ; which cannot be performed without an acknowledgment of the truth, and a profession of faith, without which no entrance into the Church, no admittance to baptism. "What doth hinder me to be baptized? (saith the enmich.) And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God." (Acts viii. 36, 37.) So believing with all his heart, as Philip required, and making profession of that faith he was admitted. "For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness, and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation." (Rom. x. 10.)† The belief of the heart is the internal habit residing in the soul, an act of faith proceeding from it, but terminated in the same. The confession of the mouth is an external signification of the inward habit or act of faith, by words expressing an acknowledgment of those truths which we believe or assent to in our souls.‡ The ear receiveth the word, "faith cometh by hearing;" (Rom. x. 17.) the ear conveyed it to the heart, which being opened receiveth it, receiving believeth it; and then "out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh." (Matt. xii. 34.) In the heart faith is seated; with the tongue confession is made; between these two salvation is completed.§ "If thou shalt confess with thy mouth the

† 'Habes, homo, unde credere debeat, corde fit confessio ad justitiam; habes unde debeat confiteri, ore confessio fit ad salutem.' Chrysol. Serm. 56.
‡ 'Sermo creat audium, auditus conceptum fidem, credulitatem partitur, fides, confessionem credulitas nutrit, confessio perpetuam dat salutem.' Chrysol. Serm. 60.
§ 'Magnum, filioli, per aec fidei nostrae videmus esse compendium, quando inter cor et lingua totum salutis humanae versus et geritur Sacramentum.' Chrysol.
ARTICLE 1.

Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” (Rom. x. 9.) This *faith of the heart* every one ought, and is presumed to have; this *confession of the mouth* every one is known to make, when he pronounce thes words of the *Creed, I believe*; and if true, he may with comfort say, “the word of faith is nigh me, even in my mouth and in my heart:” (Rom. x. 8.) first in my heart really assenting, then in my mouth clearly and sincerely professing with the prophet David, “I have believed, therefore have I spoken.” (Psalm. cxvi. 10.) Thus briefly from the second consideration concerning confession implied in the first words *I believe*, we shall pass unto the third consideration, of the necessity and particular obligation to such a confession.

If there were no other argument, yet being the object of faith is supposed infallibly true, and acknowledged to be so by every one that believeth, being it is the nature of truth not to hide itself, but rather to desire the light that it might appear; this were sufficient to move us to a *confession of our faith*. But besides the nature of the thing, we shall find many arguments obliging, pressing, urging us to such a profession. For, first, from the same God, and by the same means by which we have received the object of our faith, by which we came under a possibility of faith, we have also received an express command to make a *confession of the same*: “Be ready (saith St. Peter), always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you;” (1 Pet. iii. 15.) and there can be no *reason of hope* but what is grounded on faith, nor can there be an answer given unto that without an acknowledgment of this. Secondly, it is true indeed that the great promises of the Gospel are made unto faith, and glorious things are spoken of it; but the same promises are made to the *confession of faith*, (Rom. x. 10.) together with it; and we know who it is hath said, “Whosoever shall confess me before men, him will I confess also before my Father which is in heaven.” (Matt. x. 32.) Besides the profession of the faith of one Christian confirmeth and edifieth another in his, and the mutual benefit of all layeth an obligation upon every particular. Again, the matters of faith contain so much purity of doctrine, persuade such holiness of life, describe God so infinitely glorious, so transcendently gracious, so loving in himself, so merciful in his Son, so wonderful in all his works, that the sole confession of it glorifieth God; and how can we expect to enter into that glory which is none of ours, if we deny God that glory which is his? Lastly, the concealing those truths which he hath revealed, the not acknowledging that faith which we are thought to believe, is so

Serm. 56. *Quod a te et pro te repositorum, intra te est, i.e. oris fumalustus et cordis affector.* Enseb. Gall. de Symb. Hom. ii. p. 554.

• *De hoc sine dubio legimus per Prophetam, Prope est (inquit) in ore tuo, et in corde tuo.* Enseb. Gall. ibid.
far from giving God that glory which is due unto him, that it
dishonoureth the faith which it refuseth or neglceteth to pro-
fess, and casteth a kind of contumely upon the author of it, as
if God had revealed that which man should be ashamed to ac-
knowledge. Wherefore he that came to save us hath also said
unto us, "Whosoever shall be ashamed of me and of my words,
of him shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he shall come
in his own glory, and in his Father's, and of the holy angels."
(Luke ix. 26.) "Such a necessity there is of confession of faith,
in respect of God, who commanded it, and is glorified in it; in
respect of ourselves, who shall be rewarded for it: and in respect
of our brethren, who are edified and confirmed by it. Which
necessity the wisdom of the Church in former ages has thought a
sufficient ground to command the recitation of the Creed at
the first initiation into the Church by baptism* (for which pur-

---

* 'O τὸν καθ' ὑμᾶς ἀληθείας ἀλοιμένιον ἑν ἐννοίᾳ κατ' χάριν, ἐν δ' ὑμῶν ὑπ' ἑαυτῶν ἔνθες. Iren. I. i. c. 1 'Cum sub tribus et testato fidei et spondela salutis pignereetur, necessario adicetur Ecclesie mentio, quoniam ubi tres, id est, Pater, Filius, et Spiritus Sanctus, ibi Ecclesia, que trium corpus est.' Tertull. de Bapt. c. 6. 'In quem tingueros? in /penitentiam? quo ergo eligi praecursorem? in peccatorum remissionem, quam verbo dabit? in simplicitatem, quem humilitate colabat? in Spiritu Sanctum, qui nundum a Patre descenderat? in Ecclesiam, quam nundum Apostoli struxerunt? Ibid. c. 11. Dehinc ter mergamur, amplius aliquid respondentem qua Domus in Evangelio determinavit.' Id. de Cor. Munit. c. 3. 'Sed et ipsa interrogatio, quae in Baptismo, testis est veritatis, quam cum dicimus, Credit in vitum aeternam, et remissionem peccatorum per sanctam Ecclesiam? intelligimus remissionem peccatorum non nisi in Ecclesia daret.' S. Cyril. Ep. ad Januarium, &c. §. 2. 'Quod si aliquid illud opposit, ut dictat, eamdem Novatianum Legem tenere quam Catholica Ecclesia teneat, eodem Symbolo quo et nos baptizare, eamdem nosse Deum Patrem, eamdem Filium Christum, eamdem Spiritum Sanctum, ac propter ea usurpare eam posse testatem baptismatis posse, quod videatur in interrogatione Baptismi a nobis non discrepare: scit quisquis hoc opponendum putat, non esse unam nobis et schismaticis SymboliLegem, neque eamdem interrogationem. Nam cum dicam, Credit remissionem peccatorum, et vitam aeternam per Sanctam Ecclesiam? quae interrogatio, quando non habeant Ecclesiam.' Idem Epist. ad Magnum, s. 6. 'Mos hic (id est, Romae) servatur antiquissimus, eos, qui gratiam Baptismi susceptri sunt, publice, i. e. fidelium populo audirent, Symbolum reddere.' Ruffin, in Symb. §. 3. 'Soleste non est iavaco, post Trinitatis confessionem interrogare, Credit in Sanctam Ecclesiam? Credit remissionem peccatorum?' S. Hieron, contra Lucifer, col. 618. ed. M. Victor. 1609. 'Mens Haretica reliquit Doctorum a quo fidem Ecclesie didicerat, obibita est pacti Dei sui, hoc est, fideiipsius Dominiceaque in Symbolo continetur, quam se die baptismatis servarum esse promiserat.' Id. Com. in Prov. c. ii. v. 17. 'Interrogatut es, Credit in Deum Patrem omnipotentem? dixisti Credo; et meristi hoc est, seputus es. Iterum interrogatur es, Credit in Dominum unum Jesum Christum, et in crucem ejus? dixisti, Credo, et meristi, ideo et Christo es consecratus. Tertio interrogaturus, Credit in Spiritum Sanctum? dixisti, Credo; tertio meristi: ut multiplicem lapsum superioris gratias absolveret trina confessio.' Ambros. de Sacram. I. i. c. 7. Leo speaks thus of Eutyches in bis Epistle to Flavianus: 'Quam enim erudentionem de sacris Novi et Veteris Testamenti paginis acquisivit, qui ne ipsius quidem Symbola initia comprehenderit? et quod per to tum mundum omnium regenerandorum voce depremitor, istius adhuc semis corde non caput.' Ep. X. c. 1. And in the 12. Book de Trinitate, p. 504. ed. Chifflet. 1664. (formerly attributed to Athanasius, but more probably now thought to belong to Vigilius Tunesensis). 'Nec non et illa magna et beata Confessio Fidei, immo ipsa Fides Sanctarum, et Testamentum quod disposuimus ad Patrem, Filium, et Spiritum Sanctum, ad sacram lavacrum regenerationis venientes, Credo in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, et in Jesum Christum Filium ejus unigenitum, et in Spiritum Sanctum;' Auctoritas; 'pa- 

---

† Ewes. of the Confessors of
pose it was taught and expounded to those which were to be baptized immediately* before the great solemnity of Easter), and to require a particular† repetition of it publicly, as often as the sacrament of the Eucharist was administered, and a constant and perpetual inculation of the same by the clergy to the people.‡

And as this necessity is great, as the practice useful and advantageous; so is the obligation of believing and confessing particular, binding every single Christian, observable in the number and person expressed. I believe. As if Christ did

Faith which he exhibited to the council of Nice, Socr. l. i. c. 8. Theodor. l. i. c. 12. *Abramancio, inquis, Diabolon, popnus, spectaculam, et operibus ejus, et quid postea? Credo, inquis, in Deum Patrem omnipoten-
tem? Vitalianus de Gubern. Dei, lib. vi. p. 203. ed. Atlor. 1611. al p. 182. And when this Creed was enlarged by the council of Nice, and after that by others, Epiphanius commands it to the Catechu-
mum, to be repeated at their baptism: Sicut episcopato tās katakathemata tās melēkōν tās ἁγίων λοιπῶν προσεῖναι, οἱ μένος ἐπαγγέλλειν ἡμῖν τὸ πιστεύειν τῶν εἰσιν ως εἰς κηρύ,

Andillinga υμῶν, τὸν ἅγιον καὶ θεόν υμῶν, τὸν ἀπό τὸν ἅγιον μᾶς ἐν τῷ καὶ ἡμῖν τῷ λόγῳ, Πατ-

tówν εἰς ἡν Θεόν, &c. Epiph. in Ancon-
tum, §. 119. And when he had yet further enlarged it by reason of some new emergent heresies, he commands it: μᾶ-

Creatura in the name of the same: τῶν, καὶ κυρίων εἰς ἁγίων κύριοι,

of the name, εἰς τὸν πάντων ἑξαιμένων, τῶν, κατοικούντες τὴν τῶν ἱεροσελίδος πα-

reun, expounded by the sixth council in Trulla, Can. 75. It ap-

peared therefore a general command of the church, that those who were to be

baptized, should have a certain time all-

voted for the learning and rehearsing of the Creed. And in case of necessity, if any were baptized, they were to learn the

Canon immediately after their Baptism: ἢστις (not as it is in the edition of Binam, both in the canon and in the former most

absurdly, ἢστις ὑμῖν) τὴν ἑκάστην παρακολου-


† As appears in the ancient Greek Liturgies, and the Decree of the third council of Toledo: Uti omni sacrificii tempore aut communionem corporis Christi et sanguinis, juxta Orientalium partium morem, unanimitern clara voce sac-


Which custom as they call it of the Ori-

ental parts, is said first to be introduced by</translate>
question every one in particular, as he did him who was born blind, after he had restored him his sight (and we are all in his condition), "Dost thou believe on the Son of God?" Every single Christian is taught to make the same answer which he made, "Lord, I believe." (John ix. 35, 38.) As if the Son of God did promise to every one of them which are gathered together in his name, what he promised to "one of the multitude, whose son had a dumb spirit, If thou canst believe, all things are possible to him that believeth;" each one for himself returneth his answer, "Lord, I believe; Lord, help my unbelief." (Mark ix. 17, 23, 24.) Not that it is unlawful or unfit to use another number, and instead of I, to say We believe: for in taking in of others, we exclude not ourselves; and addition of charity can be no disparagement to confession of faith. St. Peter answered for the twelve, "We believe, and are sure that thou art that Christ, the Son of the living God." (John vi. 69.) For though Christ immediately replied that "one of them had a devil," yet is not St. Peter blamed, who knew it not. But every one is taught to express his own faith, because by that he is to stand or fall. "The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much" (James v. 16.) for the benefit of his brother, but his faith availeth nothing for the justification of another. And it is otherwise very fit that our faith should be manifested by a particular confession, because it is effectual by particular application; therefore must it needs be proper for me to say, I believe, and to make profession of my "faith in the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me." (Gal. ii. 20.)

Being then I have described the true nature and notion of belief, the duty of confessing our faith, and the obligation of every particular Christian to believe and to confess: being in these three explications all, which can be imaginably contained in the first word of the Creed, must necessarily be included; it will now be easy for me to deliver, and for every particular person to understand what it is he says, and upon what ground he proceeds, when he begins his confession with these words, I believe, which I conceive may in this manner be fully expressed.

Although those things which I am ready to affirm be not apparent to my sense, so that I cannot say I see them; although they be not evident to my understanding of themselves, nor appear unto me true by the virtue of any natural and necessary cause, so that I cannot say I have any proper knowledge or science of them: yet, being they are certainly contained in the Scriptures, the writings of the blessed apostles and prophets; being those apostles and prophets were endued with miraculous power from above, and immediately inspired with the Holy Ghost, and consequently what they delivered was not the word of man, but God himself; being God is of
that universal knowledge and infinite wisdom, that it is impossible he should be deceived, of that indefectible holiness and transcendent rectitude, that it is not imaginable he should intend to deceive any man, and consequently whatsoever he hath delivered for a truth must be necessarily and infallibly true; I readily and steadfastly assent unto them as most certain truths, and am as fully and absolutely, and more concerningly persuaded of them, than of any thing I see or know. And because that God who hath revealed them hath done it, not for my benefit only, but for the advantage of others, nor, for that alone, but also for the manifestation of his own glory; being for those ends he hath commanded me to profess them, and hath promised an eternal reward upon my profession of them; being every particular person is to expect the justification of himself, and the salvation of his soul, upon the condition of his own faith; as with a certain and full persuasion I assent unto them, so with a fixed and undaunted resolution I will profess them; and with this faith in my heart, and confession in my mouth, in respect of the whole body of the Creed, and every article and particle in it, I sincerely, readily, resolutely say, I believe.

**I believe in God.**

Having delivered the nature of faith, and the act of belief common to all the articles of the Creed, that we may understand what it is to believe; we shall proceed to the explication of the articles themselves, as the most necessary objects of our faith, that we may know what is chiefly to be believed. Where immediately we meet with another word as general as the former, and as universally concerned in every article, which is God; for if to believe be to assent upon the testimony of God, as we have before declared, then wheresoever belief is expressed, or implied, there is also the name of God understood, upon whose testimony we believe. He therefore whose authority is the ground and foundation of the whole, his existence begins the Creed, as the foundation of that authority. For if there can be no divine faith without the attestation of God, by which alone it becomes divine, and there can be no such attestation, except there were an existence of the testifier, then must it needs be proper to begin the confession of our faith with the agitation of our God. If his *name* were thought fit to be expressed in the front of every action, even by the heathen, because they thought no action prospered but by his approbation; much more ought we to fix it before our confession, because without him to believe as we profess, is no less than a contradiction.

Now these words, *I believe in God*, will require a double consideration; one, of the phrase or manner of speech; an-
other, of the thing or nature of the truth in that manner expressed. For to believe with an addition of the preposition in, is a phrase or expression ordinarily conceived fit to be given to none but to God himself, as always implying, beside a bare act of faith, an addition of hope, love, and affiance. An observation, as I conceive, prevailing especially in the Latin church, grounded principally upon the authority of St. Augustin. *

Whereas among the Greeks, in whose language the New Testament was penned, I perceive no such constant distinction in their deliveries of the Creed; and in the Hebrew language†

* For Ser. 181. which is upon the Creed, we find these words: "Nunc dicit, Credo Deum, vel Credo Deo, quamvis et lucubratur necessaria sint. Aliud enim est credere illi, aliud credere illum, aliud credere illorum. Credere illi, est credere vera esse quae loquitur; Credere illum, credere quia ipsa est Deus; Credere in illum, diligere illum." And though that collection of Sermons de tempore under the name of St. Augustin be not all his (divers of them being translations of the Greek Homilies), yet this distinction may be collected out of other parts of his works. For, first, he distinguishes very clearly and seriously between credere Deo, and credere in Deum. *Nunc quam aliquid Apostolorum diceret an- deret, Qui credit in me. Credimus Apostoli, sed non credimus in Apostoli." Tract 34. in Psalm. And again: "Credimus Paulum, sed non credimus in Paulum; credimus Petro, sed non credimus in Petrum." Tract. 29. in Ioann. Secondly, he distinguishes between creder Deum, and credere in Deum. "Multum interesse, utrum quis credat ipsum esse Christum, et utrum credat in Christum. Ille credit in Christum, qui et operat in Christum, et diliget Christum." De verbi Dom. Serm. 61. And, which is the sum of all, he puts a high value upon the preposition, as if, by virtue of the addition of in, the phrase did properly signify so great an accession unto faith: "Quid est credere in Deum? Credendo amore, credendo diligere, credendo in eum ire, et ejus membris incorporari." Tract. 29. in Ioann. Which doctrine of St. Augustin's being taken notice of by Peter Lombard, hath since been continued by the School-men; and Aquinas, Sum. ii. 22. q. 2. § 2. ad prim. bringing all three under one act of faith, hath been contradicted by Durand. in 5. Sent. dis. 23. q. 7. § 6. "Credere in Deum non est precise actus fidei, sed fidei et caritatis simul; et sicut etiam plures, et non unus actus tantum." By whose subtle, but yet clear, determination (as many of his are beyond the rest of the Schools), whatsoever is added by the preposition to believe, appears not to be a part of belief, but an act superadded to the act of faith.

† For in is sometimes joined with ב: when with ב, it answers properly to מפרישו ז' און, credere Deo, (ב being nothing else but a signification of the case); when with ב it corresponds to מפרישו איה ז' און, credere in Deum, (ב being a preposition of the same nature with א and ה). But yet there is so little, or rather no difference in the Hebrew, that in the first place where it is used, and that of the Father of the Faithful, even for the act of justifying faith, דב י nuclei Gen. xv. 6. it is translated by the LXX. as credere. In the same manner, Kings xvii. 14. הַרְרוֹר. מַעְרָשְׁתָּהָ is translated by the LXX. (as that translation is preserved in the Alexandrian and Complutian copies), of נַחֲוֹ הַרְרוֹרָהָ. Besides, the same phrase is used in the same place both to God and to man, as Exod. xiv. 31. וַיָּרֵא יְהוָה וַעֲרָשְׁתָּהָ and they believed in God, and in his servant Moses; which the Chaldee paraphrase explaineth thus: כֹּלַי יְהוָה כַּף נוֹחַ והָעְשֵׂה הַרְרוֹרָהוֹ וַאֲרָשְׁתָּהָ וַיִּירָאֽוּ הַרְרוֹרָהוֹ וַיָּרֵא יְהוָה כַּף נוֹחַ והָעְשֵׂה הַרְרוֹרָהוֹ and they believed in the word of God, and in the prophecy of Moses his servant. And 2 Chron. xx. 20. יִירְאוּ הַרְרוֹרָהוֹ יָרֵא יָרֵא הָאֲרָשְׂתָּהָ נוֹחַ וַאֲרָשְׂתָּהָ And believe in the Lord your God, so shall ye be established; believe in his prophets, so shall ye prosper. For although the Vulgar Latin, which our translation followed, hath made that distinction which the Hebrew maketh not: "Credite in Dominum Deo vestro, et securi eritis; credite prophetis ejus, et cuncta eventient prospera;" yet the Septuagint acknowledgeth no necessity of receding from the original phrase: ἐπισκόπησετε τὸν φίλον τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ οἱ περὶ σοῦ παρουσίαι, καὶ τιμᾶντες τὸν θεούς. Nor is it only attributed to Moses as joined with God, and so taken as it were
of the Old, from which the Jewish and Christian Greeks received that phrase of believing in, it hath no such peculiar and accumulative signification. For it is sometimes attributed to God, the author and original cause; sometimes to the prophets, the immediate revelers of the faith; sometimes it is spoken of miracles, the motives to believe; sometimes of the Law of God, the material object of our faith. Among all which varieties of that phrase of speech, it is sufficiently apparent that in this confession of faith it is most proper to admit it in the last acceptance, by which it is attributed to the material object of belief. For the Creed being nothing else but a brief comprehension of the most necessary matters of faith, whatsoever is contained in it beside the first word I believe, by which we make confession of our faith, can be nothing else but part of those verities to be believed, and the act of belief in respect to them nothing but an assent unto them as divinely credible and infallible truths. Neither can we conceive that the ancient Greek Fathers of the Church could have any farther meaning in it, who make the whole body of the Creed to be of the same nature, as so many truths to be believed, acknowledged, and confessed; insomuch as sometimes they use not believing in,* neither for the Father, Son, nor Holy Ghost; sometimes using it as to them, they continue the same to the following articles of, the Catholic Church, the Communion of Saints; &c. and get-

into the same phrase, but separately by himself, as Exod. xix. 9. "The Lord said unto Moses, Lo, I come unto thee in a thick cloud, that the people may hear when I speak with thee. 

And believe in thee for ever." And therefore when it was objected to St. Basil, that they did believe in Moses, as well as that they were baptized into Moses, and generally: * πιστεύειν άρρητα ίδε και εις τους άπλωνας γεροντες: the Father doth not deny the language, but interprets it: * εις άνω πιστεύει την κυρίαν άνθρωποι. De Sp. S. c. 14. Neither is this only spoken of Moses and the prophets, that the Israelites believed in them, but of David, not as a prophet, but as a bare relater of his own actions, 1 Sam. xxvii. 12. 

τις νησί και ἐξετάζων Δαυὶδ ἐν τῷ Ἁρχαΐῳ, LXX. * Et credidit Achis in David," Vulg. * Est ergo fides nostra primo quidem omnium in Dominum nostrum Jesus Christum, consequenter vero etiam in omnes sanctos Patriarchas, vel Prophetas, vel Apostolos Christi." Orig. in Apol. Pamphili. p. 489. To conclude, this general phrase of believing in, is originally attributed sometimes to the supreme author of our Faith, as to God; sometimes to the intervenient messengers, as the Prophets; sometimes to the motives of our Faith, Psal. xxviii. 32...
nerally speak of the Creed* as nothing but mere matter of faith, without any intimation of hope, love, or any such notion included in it.† So that believing in, by virtue of the phrase or manner of speech, whether we look upon the original use of it in the Hebrew, or the derivative in the Greek, or the sense of it in the first Christians in the Latin Church, can be of no farther real importance in the Creed in respect of God, who immediately follows, than to acknowledge and assert his being or existence. Nor ought this to be imagined a slender notion or small part of the first Article of our faith, when it really is the foundation of this and all the rest; that as the Creed is fundamental in respect of other truths, this is the foundation‡ even of the fundamentals: "for he that cometh to God must believe that he is." (Heb. xi. 6.) And this I take for a sufficient explanation of the phrase, I believe in God, that is, I believe that God is.

As for the matter or truth contained in these words so explained, it admits a threefold consideration, first, of the notion of God, what is here understood by that name; secondly, of the existence of God, how we know or believe that he is; thirdly, the unity of God, in that though "there be gods many, and lords many," (1 Cor. viii. 5.) yet in our Creed we mention him as but one. When, therefore, we shall have clearly delivered what is the true notion of God in whom we believe, how and by what means we come to assure ourselves of the existence of such a Deity, and upon what grounds we apprehend him of such a transcendent nature that he can admit no competitor; then may we be conceived to have sufficiently explicated the former part of the first Article; then may every one understand what he says, and upon what ground he proceeds, when he professeth, I believe in God.

The name of God is attributed unto many, but here is to be understood of him who by way of eminency and excellency bears that name, and therefore is styled God of gods; "the

* Greg. Nyss. calls them εις ετειδειης πιστεως ὑποδειγματικον. And Eusebius in his Confession exhibited to the council of Nice, concludes: Πιστευωμεν και εις τον πατερα άγιον, τοιοτω ικαρτο ιδων και ιπαρχει πιστεως; signifying that every particular which he had rehearsed he believed to be. And that was all in the confession intended. Alexander, bishop of Alexandria, after a long declaration of the former articles concerning the Father and the Son, draws to a conclusion on the latter article thus: Προς δε τη εισεδεια (1. εισεδεια) ταυτη της πατερες και εις ολης εις του άγιον Όλοκληρον έους — μερις και μερις πατερες τον άποκτενον έκκλησιαν — μετα των (νεαν πατερες) εκ νεων αποκτενον έκκλησιαν. Thudor, Hist. Eccl. i. c. 4. So Pettitall, de Precept. adj. Grat. c. 13. † Regula est fidei illa quae creditur. Unam omnino Deum esse: and ad. Procam, c. 2. where he makes another rehearsal of his Creed, he begins with: "Unicum quidem Deum creditimus." † † Non est amor Dei Articulus, neque etiam amor proximi; quia etiam sibi praeepta generalia activa, tamen cum actio conticuere, non poterit cum consti- tuere articulum: sed ista sunt ieiui dog- mata, quae sunt columnae et fundamenta legis divinae." Is. Abrahamel de cap. fidei, c. 11. † Primus est deorum cultus, deos credere." S. n. Epist. rev. p. 470.
Lord our God is God of gods, and Lord of lords: (Deut. x. 17. Psalm cxxxvi. 2. Dan. ii. 47. xi. 36.) and in the same respect is called "the most high God," (Gen. xiv. 18—20. 22.) (others being but inferior, or under him), and, "God over or above all." (Rom. ix. 5. Ephes. iv. 6.)* This eminency and excellency, by which these titles become proper unto him, and incommunicable to any other, is grounded upon the Divine nature or essence, which all other who are called gods have not, and therefore are not by nature gods. "Then when ye knew not God (saith St. Paul), ye did service to them which by nature are not gods," (Gal. iv. 8.) There is then a God by nature, and others which are called gods, but by nature are not so: for either they have no power at all, because no being, but only in the false opinions of deceived men, as the gods of the heathen; or if they have any real power or authority, from whence some are called gods† in the Scripture, yet they have it not from themselves or of their own nature, but from him who "only hath immortality," (1 Tim. vi. 16.) and consequently only Divinity, and therefore is "the only true God." (John xvii. 3.) So that the notion of a Deity doth at last expressly signify a Being or nature of infinite perfection‡ and the infinite perfection of a nature or being consisteth in this, that it be absolutely and essentially necessary, an actual being of itself; and potential or causative of all beings beside itself, independent from any other, upon which all things else depend, and by which all things else are governed. It is true, indeed, that to give a perfect definition of God is impossible, neither can our finite reason hold any proportion with infinity; but yet a sense of this Divinity we have, and the first and common notion of it consists in these three particulars; that it is a Being of itself, and independent from any other: that it is that upon which all things which are made depend; that it governs all things. And this I conceive sufficient as to the first consideration, in reference to the notion of a God.

As for the existence of such a Being, how it comes to be known unto us, or by what means we are assured of it, is not so unanimously agreed upon, as that it is. For although some have imagined that the knowledge of a Deity is connatural to the soul of man, so that every man hath a connate inbred notion of a God; yet I rather conceive the soul of man to have no connatural knowledge at all, no particular notion of any thing in it, from the beginning; but being we can have no assurance of its pre-existence, we may more rationally judge it to receive the first apprehensions of things by sense, and by

---

* * Imprimis necesse est concedatis esse aliquem sublimiorem Deum et nancipem quendam divinitatis, qui ex hominibus Deos fecerit. Tertull. adv. Gentes, c. 11.
† * Ex divi. Divi est; sed in eo indulti nominis significatio est: et ubi reffertur, ego divi, loquentis est potius sermo quam rei nomen. S. Hilar. de Trin. l. vii. c. 10.
‡ * Deus plene ac perfecte divinitatis est nomen. S. Hilar. de Trin. l. xi. c. 48.
§ * Deus substantiae ipsius nomen; id est, divinitatis. Tertull. adv. Herm. c. 3.
them to make all rational collections. If then the soul of
man be at the first like a fair smooth table, without any actual
characters or knowledge impressed in it; if all the knowledge
which we have comes successively by sensation, instruction,
and rational collection; then must we not refer the apprehen-
sion of a Deity to any connate notion or inbred opinion; at
least we are assured God never charged us with the know-
ledge of him upon that account.

Again, although others do affirm, that the existence of God
is a truth evident of itself, so as whosoever hears but these
terms once named, that God is, cannot choose but acknowl-
dge it for a certain and infallible truth upon the first appre-
hension: that as no man can deny that the whole is greater
than any part, who knoweth only what is meant by whole, and
what by part; so no man can possibly deny or doubt of the
existence of God, who knows but what is meant by God, and
what it is to be; yet can we not ground our knowledge of
God’s existence upon any such clear and immediate evidence:
nor were it safe to lay it upon such a ground, because who-
soever should deny it, could not by this means be convinced;
it being a very irrational way of instruction to tell a man that
doubts of this truth, that he must believe it because it is evi-
dent unto him, when he knows that he therefore only doubts
of it, because it is not evident unto him.

Although therefore that, God is, be of itself an immediate,
certain, necessary truth, yet must it be* evidenced and made
apparent unto us by its connexion to other truths; so that
the being of a Creator may appear unto us by his creature,
and the dependency of inferior entities may lead us to a clear
acknowledgment of the supreme and independent Being.
The wisdom of the Jews thought this method proper, “for by
the greatness and beauty of the creatures, proportionably the
Maker of them is seen:” (Wisd. of Sol. xiii. 5.) and not only
they, but St. Paul hath taught us, that “the invisible things of
God, from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being
understood by the things that are made, even his eternal
power and Godhead.” (Rom. i. 20.)† For if Phidias could so

* Haec propositio, Deus est, quantum in se est, per se nota est, quia praedicat-
tum est idem cum subiecto, Deus enim est ens esse. Sed quia nos non scimus
de Deo quid est, non est nobis per se nota, sed indiget demonstrari per ea quae
sunt magis nota quoad nos, et minus nota quoad natum, sciret per effectus.”

† This place must be vindicated from the false gloss of Socinus, who contends,
that it cannot be proved from the crea-
ture that there is a God, and therefore to
this place of St. Paul answers thus:
Sciemus est verba a creatione mundi
debere conjungi cum verbo invisibilis—niet
igitur eo in loco Apostolus, aternam divi-
nitatem Dei, i. i. quod nos Deus perpetuo
facere voluit (Divinitas enim hoc sensu alibi
quoque apud ipsum enunciatur, et Col.
ii. 9.), aternamque potentiam, l. promis-
iones quae nuncum intercedent (quo
sensu paulo superius dixerat Evangelium
esse potentiam Dei), haec, inquam, quae
nuncum postquam mundus creatus est
ab hominibus visa fuerant, i. non fuerant
cis cognita, per opera, hoc est, per mira-
biles ipsius Dei et divinorum hominum,
præsertim vero Christi et Apostolorum
eius, operationes, conspecta suaee.” In
ARTICLE I.

contribute a piece of his own work,* as in it to preserve the memory of himself, never to be obliterated without the destruction of the work, well may we read the great Artificer of the world in the works of his own hands, and by the existence of any thing demonstrate the first cause of all things.

We find by the experience of ourselves, that some things in this world have a beginning, before which they were not; and the account of the years of our age sufficiently infer our nativities, and they our conceptions, before which we had no being. Now if there be any thing which had a beginning, there must necessarily be something which had no beginning, because nothing can be a beginning to itself. Whatsoever is, must of necessity either have been made, or not made; and something which explication there is nothing which is not forced and distorted; for though his first observation seems plausible, yet there is no validity in it. He brings it only for proof, Matt. xxxiii. 35. παραμενών ἀπὸ καταραλίας κόσμου, which proves not at all that ἀπὸ κτίσεως has the same sense; and it is more probable that it hath not, because that is usually expressed by ἀπὸ ἐργῆς κτίσεως, Mark x. 6. and xiii. 19. 2 Pet. iii. 4. never by ἀπὸ κτίσεως. Besides the παραμενών io St. Matthew bears not that analogy with ἄργην which Socinus pretends, signifying not things unseen or unknown till then, but only obscure sayings or parables; for which purpose those words were produced out of the Psalms by the Evangelist, to prove that the Messias was to speak in parables, in the original τοινύχω ΛΧΝ. προεδρία ἀπὸ ἐργῆς, i. wise ancient sayings, which were not unseen and unknown, for it immediately followed, which we have heard and known, and our fathers have told us, Psal. lxxxiii. 3. And though he would make out this interpretation, by accusing other interpreters of unfaithfulness: * Plenique interpretes, ex prapositione a, ex fecerant, contra ipsorum Graecorum Codicum fidem, qui non ἐκ κτίσεως, sed ἀπὸ κτίσεως habent; yet there is no ground for such a calumny, because ἀπὸ may be, and is often rendered of or as well as δι', as Matt. iii. 4. ἀπὸ τρίχας καρποῦ, e pluribus unius, viii. 3. ἀπὸ τοῦ αδραμέτου του, ex unio tuo, 16. ἀπὸ ἀκαθαρίας, ex spiniis; and even in the sense which Socinus contends for, Matt. xviii. 18. ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ψωλοῦ, V. T. ex illa hora, as Tully, de Fin. 31. ' Ex ea die,' and Virgil, ' Ex illo Corydon, Corydon est tempore nobis,' Est. vii. 70. and, 'Tem- pore jam ex illo carnis nulli cognitus urbis Prospera,' Enni. lib. iii. 263. So the Greek ἀπὸ αἰώνων the Latin render ex parte, ἀπὸ τοῦ ζῶν, ex alio: of which examples are innumerable. There is no unfaithfulness then imputable to the interpreters: nor can such pitiful criticisms give any advantage to the first part of Socinus's exposition. Howsoever the Catholic interpretation depends not on those words ἀπὸ κτίσεως, but on the consideration of the persons, that is the Gentiles, and the other words, παραμερία νουμερία, which he further perverts, rendering them the miraculof operations of Christ and his apostles, or, as one of our learned men, their 

* In the shield of Pallas, Arist. de Mundo, c. vi. post med
I BELIEVE IN GOD.

there must needs be which was never made, because all things cannot be made. For whatsoever is made, is made by another, neither can any thing produce itself; otherwise it would follow, that the same thing is and is not at the same instant in the same respect: it is, because a producer; it is not, because to be produced: it is therefore in being, and is not in being; which is a manifest contradiction. If then all things which are made were made by some other, that which produced them either was itself produced, or was not: and if not, then have we already an independent being; if it were, we must at last come to something which was never made, or else admit either a circle of productions, in which the effect shall make its own cause, or an *infinite succession in causalitys, by which nothing will be made: both which are equally impossible. Something then we must confess was never made, something which never had beginning. And although these effects or dependent beings, singly considered by themselves, do not infer one supreme cause and maker of them all, yet the admirable order and connexion of things shew as much; and this one supreme Cause is God. For all things which we see or know have their existence for some end, which no man who considereth the uses and utilities of every species can deny. No: whatsoever is and hath its being for some end, of that the end for which it is must be thought the cause; and a final cause is no otherwise the cause of any thing than as it moves the efficient cause to work: from whence we cannot but collect a prime efficient Cause of all things, endowed with infinite wisdom, who having a full comprehension of the ends of all, designed, produced, and disposed all things to those ends.

Again, as all things have their existence, so have they also their operations for some end; and whatsoever worketh so, must needs be directed to it. Although then those creatures which are ended with reason can thereby apprehend the goodness of the end for which they work, and make choice of such means as are proportionable and proper for the obtaining of it, and so by their own counsel direct themselves unto it: yet can we not conceive that other natural agents, whose operations flow from a bare instinct, can be directed in their actions by any counsel of their own. The stone doth not deliberate whether it shall descend, nor doth the wheat take counsel whether it shall grow or not. Even men in natural actions use no act of deliberation: we do not advise how our

* 'Αλλά μην τι έστιν όρθος τις; καὶ ὅσοι ἀπέμενα τὰ αἴτια τῶν ὄντων, έστιν εἰς εἴδους, αὕτε καὶ γενέα, διὸν Ἀριστοτέλειον. Μετάφρασις. i. ii. 1. Ε. 5. π. τιμοῖ τις μεθάνω ἐστίν τῷ πρὸς τὸν θεόν άλλος ἐστίν.


‡ Εἴ έστω τῆς τάσις τοῦ θεού, τοῦ τῶν ἐνώνων πρότεται πρότεται καὶ τὸ πρός τὰς οἴκους ἀλλὰ μη πρὸς τίνας ἢ καὶ τῶν πηνών, ἐν οἷς τί οἱ πηνών, εἴ τις πρότεται πρότεται ἢ τῶν νομίμων καὶ παρὰ τῶν ἐνώνων, ἢ τῶν πηνών οὐκ ἔσται, ἢ ταχέως ἢ καὶ τῶν πηνών, οὐκ ἔσται τῆς τῶν ἐνώνων. Aristot. Phys. i. ii. c. 8.
heart shall beat, though without that pulse we cannot live; when we have provided nutriment for our stomach, we take no counsel how it shall be digested there, or how the chyle is distributed to every part for the preparation of the whole; the mother which conceives takes no care how that conceptus shall be framed, how all the parts shall be distinguished, and by what means or ways the child shall grow within her womb; and yet all these operations are directed to their proper ends, and that with a greater reason, and therefore by a greater wisdom, than what proceeds from any thing of human understanding. What then can be more clear, that that those natural agents which work constantly for those ends which they themselves cannot perceive, must be directed by some high and overruling wisdom? And who can be their director in all their operations tending to those ends, but he who gave them their beings for those ends? And who is that, but the great Artificer who works in all of them? For art is so far the imitation of nature, that if it were not in the artificer, but * in the thing itself which by art is framed, the works of art and nature would be the same. Were that which frames a watch within it, and all those curious wheels wrought without the hand of man, it would seem to grow into that form; nor would there be any distinction between the making of that watch, and the growing of a plant. Now what the artificer is to works of art, who orders and disposes them to other ends than by nature they were made, that is the Maker of all things to all natural agents, directing all their operations to ends which they cannot apprehend; and thus appears the Maker to be the ruler of the world,† the steerer of this great ship, the law of this universal commonwealth, the general of all the hosts of heaven and earth. By these ways, as by the ‡testimony of the creature, we come to find an eternal and independent Being, upon which all things else depend, and by which all things else are governed; and this we have before supposed to be the first notion of God.

Neither is this any private collection or particular ratiocination, but the public and universal reason of the world. § No age so distant, no country so remote, no people so barbarous, but gives a sufficient testimony of this truth. When the Roman Eagle flew over most parts of the habitable world, they met with atheism no where, but rather by their miscellany deities at Rome, which grew together with their victories, they

* "Aposto τὰ μῆν ))?εσθαι, ἐνεκα τῶν ὠνας, Ἒαν μή δὲ ἤ ὀν ἡ κατα καὶ η ἡ τέχνη ὑπὲρ ὑπερήφανη καὶ γὰρ οὐ κατά τό έποιεν ἡ ὑπερανάλητη, ὑμιᾶς ἵνα τῇ χρόνῳ ἐνεκα. Aristot. ibid.
† "Καθόλοι οἱ πάντες οἱ κατα τάς πάντας, οἱ ἐν κατα τάς οἱ ἐναντιομένους, οἱ ἐν συμμετοχήν τῷ ἄθετῳ τῷ θεῷ ὑπὲρ καίνων Aristot. de Mundo, c. 6. post med.
‡ "Habet Dominus testimonium totum hoc quod sumus, et in quo sumus." Ter. tulli.
§ "Ἀρχαίοι τις λόγος καὶ πάτρις ἐστι πάσιν ἀνθρώποις, ὡς ἐκ θεῶν τὰ πάντα καὶ διὰ θεῶν χαίνεν εὐπορίαν. Aristot. de Mundo, c. 6. init
shewed no nation was without its God. And since the later art of navigation improved hath discovered another part of the world, with which no former commerce hath been known, although the customs of the people be much different, and their manner of religion hold small correspondency with any in these parts of the world professed, yet in this all agree, that some religious observances they retain, and a Divinity they acknowledge. Or if any nation be discovered which maketh no profession of piety, and exerciseth no religious observances, it followeth not from thence that they acknowledge no God; for they may only deny his providence, as the Epicureans did; or if any go farther, their numbers are so few, that they must be inconsiderable in respect of mankind. And therefore so much of the Creed hath been the general confession of all nations.\* I believe in God. Which were it not a most certain truth grounded upon principles obvious unto all, what reason could be given of so universal a consent; or how can it be imagined that all men should conspire to deceive themselves and their posterity?\+  

Nor is the reason only general, and the consent unto it universal, but God hath still preserved and quickened the worship due unto his name, by the patetaction of himself. Things which are to come are so beyond our knowledge, that the wisest man can but conjecture: and being we are assured of the contingency of future things, and our ignorance of the concurrence of several free causes to the production of an effect, we may be sure that certain and infallible predictions are clear divine patetactions. For none but he who made all things and gave them power to work, none but he who ruleth all things and ordereth and directeth all their operations to their ends, none but he upon whose will the actions of all things depend, can possibly be imagined to foresee the effects depending merely on those causes. And therefore by what means we may be assured of a prophecy, by the same we may be secured of a Divinity. Except then all the annals of the world were forgeries, and all remarks of history designed to put a cheat upon posterity, we can have no pretence to suspect God’s existence, having so ample testimonies of his influence. 

The works of nature appear by observation uniform, and there is a certain sphere of every body’s power and activity. If then any action be performed, which is not within the compass of the power of any natural agent; if any thing be wrought by the intervention of a body which beareth no proportion to it, or hath no natural aptitude so to work; it must be ascribed to a cause transcending all natural causes, and

---

\* 'Nulla gens usquam est adeo central eges moresque projecta, ut non aliquos Deos credat.' Sen. epist. cxvii. p. 577.

\+ 'Nec in hunc furorem omnes mortales consensissent alloquendi surda numina et inefficaces Deos.' Sen. l. iv. de beauf. c. 4.
disposing all their operations. Thus every miracle proves its 
author, and every act of omnipotence is a sufficient demo-
stration of a Deity. And that man must be possessed with a 
strange opinion of the wickedness of our fathers, and the tes-
timony of all former ages, who shall deny that ever any mira-
cle was wrought. “We have heard with our ears, O God, 
our fathers have told us what works thou didst in their days, 
in the times of old.—Blessed be the Lord God, who only doth 
wondrous works.” (Psal. xlv. 1. lxxii. 18.)

Nor are we only informed by the necessary dependency of 
all things on God, as effects upon their universal cause, or 
his external patefactions unto others, and the consentient ac-
knowledgment of mankind; but every particular person hath 
a particular remembrance in himself, as a sufficient testimony 
of his Creator, Lord, and Judge. We know there is a great 
force of conscience in all men, by which their “thoughts are 
ever accusing, or excusing them?” (Rom. ii. 15.) they feel a 
comfort in those virtuous actions which they find themselves 
to have wrought according to their rule, a sting and secret 
remorse for all vicious acts and impious machinations. Nay 
those who strive most to deny a God, and to obliterate all 
sense of Divinity out of their own souls, have not been least 
sensible of this remembrance in their breasts. It is true 
indeed, that a false opinion of God, and a superstitious per-
suasion which hath nothing of the true God in it, may breed 
a remorse of conscience in those who think it true; and there-
fore some may hence collect that the force of conscience is 
only grounded upon an opinion of a Deity, and that opinion 
may be false. But if it be a truth, as the testimonies of the 
wisest writers of most different persuasions, and experience 
of all sorts of persons of most various inclinations, do agree, 
that the remorse of conscience can never be obliterated, then 
it rather proveth than supposeth an opinion of a Divinity; 
and that man which most peremptorily denieth God’s exist-
ence is the greatest argument himself that there is a God. Let 
Caligula profess himself an atheist, and with that profession 
hide his head, or run under his bed, when the thunder strikes 
his ears, and lightning flashes in his eyes; those terrible 
works of nature put him in mind of the power, and his own 
guilt of the justice of God; whom while in his wilful opinion 
he weakly denieth, in his involuntary action he strongly as-
serteth. So that a Deity will either be granted or extorted, 
and where it is not acknowledged it will be manifested. Only 
unhappy is that man who denies him to himself, and proves 
him to others; who will not* acknowledge his existence, 
of whose power he cannot be ignorant, “God is not far from 
every one of us.” (Acts xviii. 27.) The proper discourse of

* 'Hae est summa debet, nolle agnoscere quem ignore non possis.'

St. Paul to the philosophers of Athens was, that "they might feel after him and find him." (Ibid.) Some children have been so ungracious as to refuse to give the honour due unto their parent, but never any so irrational as to deny they had a father. As for those who have dishonoured God, it may stand most with their interest, and therefore they may wish there were none; but cannot consist with their reason to assert there is none, when even the very poets of the heathen have taught us "that we are his offspring." (Acts xvi. 28.)

It is necessary thus to believe there is a God, First, Because there can be no divine faith without this belief. For all faith is therefore only divine, because it relieeth upon the authority of God giving testimony to the object of it; but that which hath no being can have no authority, can give no testimony. The ground of his authority is his veracity, the foundations of his veracity are his omniscience and sanctity, both which suppose his essence and existence, because what is not is neither knowing nor holy.

Secondly, It is necessary to believe a Deity, that thereby we may acknowledge such a nature extant as is worthy of, and may justly challenge from us, the highest worship and adoration. For it were vain to be religious and to exercise devotion, except there were a Being to which all such holy applications were most justly due. Adoration implies submission and dejection, so that while we worship we cast down ourselves; there must be therefore some great eminence in the object worshipped, or else we should dishonour our own nature in the worship of it. But when a Being is presented of that intrinsical and necessary perfection, that it depends on nothing, and all things else depend on that, and are wholly governed and disposed by it, this worthily calls us to our knees, and shews the humblest of our devotions to be but just and loyal retributions.

This necessary truth hath been so universally received, that we shall always find all nations of the world more prone unto idolatry than to atheism, and readier to multiply than to deny the Deity. But our faith teacheth us equally to deny them both, and each of them is renounced in these words, I believe in God. First, in God affirmatively, I believe he is, against atheism. Secondly, in God exclusively, not in gods, against polytheism and idolatry. Although therefore the existence and unity of God be two distinct truths, yet are they of so necessary dependence and intimate coherence, that both may be expressed by* one word, and included in one † Article.

* 'Solum Deum confirmas, quem tan-tum Deum nominas.' Tertull. de Testim. Animae, c. 2. When Leo, bishop of Rome, in an Epistle to Flavianus, had written these words, ep. x. c. 2. 'Fidelium universitas profesitetur credere se in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, et in Jesum Christum Filium ejus: one of the Eutychians objected with this question: 'Cur non dixerit in unus Deum Patrem, et in unum Jesum, juxta Niceni Decretum Concilii?' To which Vigilius, bishop of Trent, or
ARTICLE 1.

And that the unity of the Godhead is concluded in this Article is apparent, not only because the Nicene Council so expressed it by way of exposition, but also because this Creed in the Churches of the East, before the Council of Nice, had that addition in it, I believe in one God. We begin our Creed then as +Plato did his chief and prime epistles, who gave this distinction to his friends, that the name of God was prefixed before those that were more serious and remarkable, but of gods, in the plural, to such as were more vulgar and trivial. "Unto thee it was shewed (saith Moses to Israel), that thou mightest know that the Lord he is God, there is none else beside him." (Deut. iv. 35.) And as the Law, so the Gospel teacheth us the same. "We know that an idol is nothing in the world, and there is none other God but one." (1 Cor. viii. 4.) This unity of the Godhead will easily appear as necessary as the existence, so that it must be as impossible there should be more gods than one, as that there should be none: which will clearly be demonstrated, first, out of the nature of God, to which multiplication is repugnant; and secondly, from the government as he is Lord, in which we must not admit confusion.

For, first, the nature of God consists in this, that he is the prime and original cause of all things, as an independent Being upon which all things else depend, and likewise the ultimate end or final cause of all; but in this sense two prime causes are imaginable, and for all things to depend on one, and to be more independent beings than one, is a clear contradiction. This primity God requires to be attributed to himself; "Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, I am he, I am the first, I also am the last." (Isa. xlviii. 12.) And from this primity he challengeth his unity; "Thus saith the Lord, the King of Israel, and his Redeemer the Lord of Hosts, I am the first, and I am the last, and beside me there is no God." (Isa. xlv. 6.)


† Rab. Chasdai in Or Adonai. R. Joseph Albo in Bikkarin.

* Orientales Ecclesiae omnes ista tradunt: Credit in unum Deum Patrem omnipotentem. † Ruff. in Synb. §. 1. * Bene haec omnia poterunt ad soios Hæreticos pertinere, quia falsaverunt Symbolum, dum alter dixerit duos Deos, cum Deus unus sit.' Optat. l. i. p. 15. ed. Lond. 1651. * Nus enim et scimus, et legimus, et credimus, et tenemus, unum esse Deum, qui fecit coelum pariter ac terram, quoniam nec alterum novimus, nec nosse, cum nullus sit, aliquando poterimus.' Novitians de Trinit. c. 30. And before all these Ireneus, citing under the title of Scripture, a passage out of the book of Hermas, called Pastor: * Bene ergo Scriptura dicit, Primo omnino credite quoniam unus est Deus, qui omnia constituit et consummavit, et fecit ex eo quod non erat, ut essent omnia, omnia capax, et qui a nenne capiatur.' l. iv. c. 37.

† Euseb. in demonstr. Evang. l. iii. §. c'. p. 129. The passage is yet extant in the epistles of Plato.
Again, if there were more gods than one, then were not all perfections in one, neither formally, by reason of their distinction, nor eminently and virtually, for then one should have power to produce the other, and that nature which is producible is not divine. But all acknowledge God to be absolutely and infinitely perfect, in whom all perfections imaginable which are simply such must be contained formally, and all others which imply any mixture of imperfection virtually.

But were no arguments brought from the infinite perfections of the divine nature able to convince us, yet were the consideration of his supreme dominion sufficient to persuade us. The will of God is infinitely free, and by that freedom doth he govern and dispose of all things. "He doth according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth," (Dan. iv. 35.) said Nebuchadnezzar out of his experience; and St. Paul expresseth him as "working all things after the counsel of his own will." (Ephes. i. 11.) If then there were more supreme governors of the world than one, each of them absolute and free, they might have contrary determinations concerning the same thing, than which nothing can be more prejudicial unto government. God is a God of order, not confusion; and therefore of unity, not admitting multiplication. If it be better that the *Universe should be governed by one than many, we may be assured that it is so, because nothing must be conceived of God but what is best. He therefore who made all things, by that right is Lord of all, and because all power is his, he alone ruleth over all.

Now God is not only one, but hath a unity peculiar to himself by which he is the only God; and that not only by way of actuality, but also of possibility. Every individual man is one, but so as there is a second and a third, and consequently every one is part of a number, and concurring to a multitude. The sun indeed is one; so as there is neither

  Αλλ' οὗ θεός ου χρηστεύει ουδενας εκεινης ναων, υπηρεσιαν της θεοτητας μιαν, την ελευθεριαν της αυτης αδελφης ατελειας ηλικιων εστων, ηυς αληθεος και αληθεος ουδενας εισελθειν ανεπτυκτος απο μιας και ενας γενεσειν αδελφης θεοτητας."  
† A cone: God is one, not two, or more than two, but only one; whose unity is not like to that of the individuals of this world, neither is he one by way of species comprehending many individuals, neither one in the manner of a body which is divisible into parts and extremes: but he is so one, as no unity like his is to be found in the world. Moses Maim. de Fundam. Legis, c. 1. § 4. "Quod autem diximus, Orientis Ecclesias tradere unum Patrem Omnipotentem, et unum Dominum, hoc modo intelligendum est, unum non numerum dici, sed universitate: verbi gratia, si quis dicit unum hominem, aut unum equum, hoc unum pro numero possit, potest enim et alius homo esse, et tertius, vel equus. Ubi autem secundus et tertius non potest jungi, unus si dicatur non numeri, sed universitatis est nomen. Ut si exempli causa dicas unum hominem, nec unus possit, sed universitas vocabulo unum nuncupatur, id est, qui propter alius unum dicatur, quod alius non sit." Ruffin. in Synb. § 6.
third nor second sun, at least within the same vortex: but
though there be not, yet there might have been; neither in the
unity of the solar nature is there any repugnancy to plurality;
for that God which made this world, and in this "the sun to
rule the day," might have made another world by the same
fecundity of his omnipotency, and another sun to rule in that.
Whereas in the divine nature there is an intrinsical and es-
essential singularity, because no other being can have any ex-
istence but from that; and whatsoever essence hath its exist-
ence from another is not God. "I am the Lord (saith he),
and there is none else, there is no God besides me: that they
may know from the rising of the sun, and from the west, that
there is none besides me, I am the Lord, and there is none
31.) He who hath infinite knowledge knoweth no other God
beside himself. "Is there a God besides me! yea, there is no
God, I know not any." (Isa. xlvi. 18. 21, 22, and xliv. 8.)
And we who believe in him, and desire to enjoy him, need
for that end to know no other God but him: "For this is life
eternal, that they might know thee the only true God;" (John
xvii. 3.)* as certainly one, as God.

It is necessary thus to believe the unity of the Godhead,
that being assured there is a nature worthy of our devotions,
and challenging our religious subjection, we may learn to
know whose that nature is to which we owe our adorations,
lest our minds should wander and fluctuate in our worship
about various and uncertain objects. If we should apprehend
more gods than one, I know not what could determine us in
any instant to the actual adoration of any one: for where no
difference doth appear (as, if there were many, and all by na-
ture gods, there could be none), what inclination could we
have, what reason could we imagine, to prefer or elect any one
before the rest for the object of our devotions? Thus is it
necessary to believe the unity of God in respect of us who are
obliged to worship him.

Secondly, It is necessary to believe the unity of God in re-
spect of him who is to be worshipped. Without this acknow-
ledgment we cannot give unto God the things which are God's,
it being part of the worship and honour due unto God, to ac-
cept of no compartner with him. When the Law was given,
in the observance whereof the religion of the Israelites con-

* 'Veritas Christiana distincte pro-
nunciavit, Deus si non unus est, non est; qua dignum credimus non esse, quodcum-
que non est fuerit ut esse debetit.' Ter-
tull. adv. Marcion. 1. i. c. 3. 'Deus cum
sumnum magnum sit, recte veritas nostra
pronunciavit, Deus si non unus est, non est.
Non quasi dubitemus esse Deum, dic-
cendo, si non unus, non est Deus; sed
quia, quem confidimus esse, idem deini-
imus esse, quod si non est, Deus non est,
summum scilicet magnum. Porro, sum-
num magnum unicum sit necesse est, ergo et Deus unicus erit, non alter Deus,
nisi summum magnum; nec alterum sum-
mum magnum, nisi parem non habens;
nec alter parem non habens, nisi unicus
fuerit.' Ibid.
I BELIEVE IN GOD.

37

aisted, the first precept was this prohibition, “Thou shalt have no other gods before me;” (Exod. xx. 3.) and whosoever violateth this, denieth the foundation on which all the rest depend, as the *Jews observe. This is the true reason of that strict precept by which all are commanded to give divine worship to God only, “Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve;” (Matt. iv. 10.) because he alone is God: him only shalt thou fear, because he alone hath infinite power; in him only shalt thou trust, because “he only is our rock and our salvation;” (Psal. lxii. 2.) to him alone shalt thou direct thy devotions, because “he only knoweth the hearts of the children of men.” (2 Chron. vi. 30.) Upon this foundation the whole heart of man is entirely required of him, and engaged to him. “Hear, O Israel, the Lord our God is one God: And (or rather, Therefore) thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.” (Deut. vi. 4, 5.) Whosoever were truly and by nature God, could not choose but challenge our love upon the ground of an infinite excellency, and transcendent beauty of holiness; and therefore if there were more Gods than one, our love must necessarily be terminated unto † more than one, and consequently divided between them; and as our love, so also the proper effect thereof, our cheerful and ready obedience, which, like the child propounded to the judgment of Solomon, as soon as it is divided, is destroyed. “No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other: or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other.” (Matt. vi. 24.)

Having thus described the first notion of a God, having demonstrated the existence and unity of that God, and having in these three particulars comprised all which can be contained in this part of the Article, we may now clearly deliver, and every particular Christian understand, what it is he says when he makes his confession in these words, I believe in God: which in correspondence with the precedent discourse may be thus expressed:

Forasmuch as by all things created is made known the “eternal power and Godhead,” (Rom. i. 20.) and the dependency of all limited beings infers an infinite and independent essence; whereas all things are for some end, and all their operations directed to it, although they cannot apprehend that end for which they are, and in prosecution of which they

* Moses Maimon. de Fundam. Legis, c. 1. §. 3.
† † Numerus divinitatis summa ratione constare deberet, vel quoniam et cultura ejus in anceps deduceretur. Ecce enim, duo intuens Deos tam pares quam duo summa magna, quid facerem si ambosolerem? Vererer, ne abundantia officii superstitionis potius quam religio crederetur: quia duos tam pares et in altero ambos posse in uno demereri: hoc ipso testimonium praestantis patrillati et unitati eorum, dum alterum in altero veneraret, dum in uno mihi duo sunt. Tertull. adv Marcion. i. i. c. 5.
work, and therefore must be guided by some universal and overruling wisdom; being this collection is so evident, that all the nations of the earth have made it; being God hath not only written himself in the lively characters of his creatures, but hath also made frequent patefacts of his Deity by most infallible predictions and supernatural operations: therefore I fully assent unto, freely acknowledge, and clearly profess, this truth, that there is a God.

Again, being a prime and independent Being supposeth all other to depend, and consequently no other to be God; being the entire fountain of all perfections is incapable of a double head, and the most perfect government of the Universe speaks the supreme dominion of one absolute Lord; hence do I acknowledge that God to be but one, and in this unity, or rather singularity of the Godhead, excluding all actual or possible multiplication of a Deity, I believe in God.

I believe in God the Father.

After the confession of a Deity, and assertion of the divine unity, the next consideration is concerning God's paternity; for that "one God is Father of all," (Eph. iv. 6.) and "to us there is but one God, the Father." (1 Cor. viii. 6.)

Now, although the Christian notion of the Divine paternity be some way peculiar to the evangelical patefaction; yet wheresoever God hath been acknowledged, he hath been understood and worshipped as a Father: the very heathen poets so describe their gods, and their vulgar names did carry father$^+$ in them, as the most popular and universal notion.

This name of Father is a relative; and the proper foundation of paternity, as of a relation, is generation. As therefore the phrase of generating is diversely attributed unto several acts of the same nature with generation properly taken, or by consequence attending on it; so the title of Father is given unto divers persons or things, and for several reasons unto the same God. "These are the generations of the heavens and the earth, when they were created, in the day that the Lord


† That so frequent in Homer, πατέ 
και 
v εν τε και 
Caeoqekappallns 
dict Ennius: Divumque hominumque pater rex. *Var. de L. L. l. iv. p. 16. ed. 1581. As Servius observes of Virgil:

$^+$ A poet in omnibus Dies nomen Patrium additur, ut fiat venerabilior. And before him Lucilius:

$^+$ Ut nemo sit nostrum, quin pater optimus

Divum,

Ut Neptunus Pater, Liber, Saturnu' Ta-

ter, Mars,

Jana', Quirinus Pater nomen dicatur ad


$^+$ As Jupiter, which is Jovis Pater, or Ζωοπάτης, otherwise Disipiter, or Διοπάτης; and Marsipiter, of whom Servius, "auni Ponúfices Marsipiter dicitur," Æneid. I. iii. v. 39. So Semipater for Semo, and Ζαπη- 

pátēs for Sardus, the proper Deity of Sardinia. Ptolem.
I BELIEVE IN GOD THE FATHER.

God made the earth and heavens,” (Gen. ii. 4.) saith Moses. So that the creation or production of any thing by which it is, and before was not, is a kind of generation, and consequently the creator or producer of it a kind of Father. “Hath the rain a Father? Or who hath begotten the drops of dew?” (Job xxxviii. 28.) by which words Job signifies, that as there is no other cause assignable of the rain but God, so may he as the cause be called the Father of it, though not in the most proper sense,* as he is the Father of his Son: and so the philosophers of old, who thought that God did make the world, called him expressly, as the Maker, so the Father of it. And thus “to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things;” (1 Cor. viii. 6.) to which the words following in the Creed may seem to have relation, the Father Almighty, Maker of heaven and earth. But in this mass of creatures and body of the Universe, some works of the creation more properly call him Father, as being more rightly sons: such are all the rational and intellectual offspring of the Deity. Of merely natural beings and irrational agents he is the creator; of rational, as so, the Father also: they are his creatures, these his sons. Hence he is styled the “Father of spirits.” (Heb. xii. 9.) and the blessed angels, when he laid the foundations of the earth, his sons; “When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy:” (Job xxxviii. 7.) hence man, whom he created after his own image, is called his “offspring,” (Acts xvii. 28.) and Adam, the immediate work of his hands, “the son of God;” (Luke iii. 38.) hence may we all cry out with the Israelites taught by the prophet so to speak, “Have we not all one Father? Hath not one God created us?” (Malac. ii. 10.) Thus the first and most universal notion of God’s paternity in a borrowed or metaphorical sense is founded rather upon creation than procreation.

Unto this act of creation is annexed that of conservation, by which God doth uphold and preserve in being that which at first he made, and to which he gave its being. As there-

* Etmissa 4ae, (Job xix. 26.) 

† Plutarch of Plato, calling God patris patern et avum, &c. so as: τη μεταφορα χρο.monos, οπο δικαιω, την ανθρου πατρια των κληματων χνικης. Plut. Quest. ii. And Alcinous: πατω δι έστω τω αιωνω έσεαι πατων.

‡ So Plutarch answers the question, why Plato terms God the Maker and Father of all things: Ι των των δεν των γενεων και των ανθρωπων πατη ιστει: πατης δε των αλογων και αλογων. Father of gods and men, Maker of all things inanimate and irrational. Ου γαρ χρησον, φοβη χρωσιτως, πατης καλειτω των παραγοντος το στημα, καθως εν τω στηματος γενεων. Non enim agri pater, si Chrysippo credimus, is dictum qui enim consent, quanquam ex semine deinde fruges nae cantur: as the Latin translation most absurdly. Ibid. For there is neither corn, nor field, nor any seed belonging to them, in the words of Plutarch. But χειρω (not χειρω) is the secunda, the coat (or rather coats in the acceptation of Chrysippus, and the language of those times) in which the furtus is involved in the mother’s womb. Though therefore both the secunda and the furtus be made of the seed of the male in the philosophy of Chrysippus, yet he is not called the father of the after-birth, but of the child; the one being ended with life and reason, and the other not.
fore it is the duty of the parent to educate and preserve the child as that which had its being from him; so this paternal education doth give the name of *Father unto man, and conservation gives the same to God.

Again, redemption from a state of misery, by which a people hath become worse than nothing, unto a happy condition, is a kind of generation, which joined with love, care, and indulgence in the Redeemer, is sufficient to found a new paternity, and give him another title of a Father. Well might Moses tell the people of Israel, now brought out of the land of Egypt from their brick and straw, unto their quails and manna, unto their milk and honey, “Is not he thy Father that hath bought thee? hath he not made thee, and established thee?” (Deut. xxxii. 6.) Well might God speak unto the same people as to “his son, even his first-born,” (Exod. iv. 22.) “Thus saith the Lord thy Redeemer, and he that formed thee from the womb, Hearken unto me, O house of Jacob, and all the remnant of the house of Israel, which are borne by me from the belly, which are carried from the womb.” (Isa. xliv. 24. xlvi. 3.) And just is the acknowledgment made by that people instructed by the prophet, “Doubtless thou art our Father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not; thou, O Lord, art our Father, our Redeemer, from everlasting is thy name.” (Isa. lxiii. 16.) And thus another kind of paternal relation of God unto the sons of men is founded on a restitution or temporal redemption.

Besides, if to be born causeth relation to a father, then to be born again maketh an addition of another: and if to generate foundeth, then to regenerate addeth a paternity. Now though we cannot “enter the second time into our mother’s womb,” nor pass through the same door into the scene of life again; yet we believe and are persuaded that “except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.” (John iii. 4, 3.) A double birth there is, and the world† consists of two, the first and the second man. And though the incorruptible seed be the word of God, and the dispensers of it in some sense may say, as St. Paul spake unto the Corinthians, “I have begotten you through the Gospel”; (1 Cor. iv. 15.) yet he is the true Father, whose word it is, and that is God, even “the Father of lights, who of his own will begat us with the word of truth.” (James i. 17. 18.) Thus “whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ, is born of God;” (1 John v. 1.) which regeneration is as it were a second creation: “for we are God’s workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works.” (Ephes. ii. 10.) And he alone who did create us out of nothing, can beget us again, and

* So Eustathius observes out of an ingenious etymologist: Πατὴρ ὁ τις μὲν, ὥς τι πάν τὸν ἐκ τοῦ πατρὸς τι. Παλαιόν ἡ ἡ πατρία τῆς ἡμῶν. II. 6.

† Totum hominum genus quodam modo sunt homines duo, primus et secundus. Prosp. lib. Sententiar. ex August. sent. 299.
make us of the new creation. When Rachel called to Jacob, "Give me children, or else I die;" he answered her sufficiently with this question, "Am I in God's stead?" (Gen. xxx. 1, 2.) And if he only openeth the womb, who else can make the soul* to bear? Hence hath he the name of Father, and they of sons who are born of him; and so from that internal act of spiritual regeneration another title of paternity redoundeth unto the Divinity.

Nor is this the only second birth or sole regeneration in a Christian sense; the soul, which after its natural being requires a birth into the life of grace, is also after that born again into a life of glory. Our Saviour puts us in mind of "the regeneration, when the Son of man shall sit in the throne of his glory." (Matt. xix. 28.) The resurrection of our bodies is a kind of coming out of the womb of the earth, and entering upon immortality, a nativity into another life. For "they which shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead, are the sons of God, being the sons of the resurrection," (Luke xx. 35, 36.) and then as sons, "they become heirs, coheirs with Christ," (Rom. viii. 17.) "receiving the promise and reward of eternal inheritance." (Heb. ix. 15. Col. iii. 24.) "Beloved, now are we the sons of God," saith St. John, even in this life by regeneration, "and it doth not yet appear, or, it hath not been yet made manifest,† what we shall be; but we know, that if he appear, we shall be like him:" (1 John iii. 2.) the manifestation of the Father being a sufficient declaration of the condition of the sons, when the sonship itself consisteth in a similitude of the Father. And "blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope, by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead; to an inheritance incorruptible and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for us." (1 Pet. i. 3, 4.)

Why may not then a second kind of regeneration be thought a fit addition of this paternal relation?

Neither is there only a natural, but also a voluntary and civil foundation of paternity; for the laws have found a way by which a man may become a father without procreation: and this imitation of nature is called adoption, taken in the general signification.‡ Although, therefore, many ways God be a Father; yet, lest any way might seem to exclude us from being his sons, he hath made us so also by adoption. Others are

---

† ἐγὼ ἑγώ ἐφεξής.
‡ †'Adoptione naturae similitudo est, ut aliquis filium habere possit, quem non generavit.' Caii Inst. 1. tit. 5. § 1. Τι ἐστιν ὑιοθεσία; ταμίημα πέρας μεμοιριακόν τῶν φύσεων πῆς παιδὸν παραμεθύων ἐκπαραθεμένων. Theophr. Inst. 1. t. 11. 
§ Ὑπὲραινοῦνεν ἐκανόνισθαι ἀδοπτίζοντος αὐτόν ὡς ἐκανόν ἐκεῖνος ὡς δὲν ἰσχύεται, εἰς ἀδοπτίζον, καὶ τὸν ἐκμαζομον ἀδοπτίζον, Theophr. ibid.
ARTICLE I.

want to fly to this, as to a comfort of their solitary condition, when either nature had denied them, or death bereft them of their offspring. Whereas God doth it not for his own, but for our sakes; nor is the advantage his, but ours. "Behold what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God;" (1 John iii. 1.) that we, the sons of disobedient and condemned Adam by natural generation, should be translated into the glorious liberty of the sons of God by adoption; that we, who were aliens, strangers, and enemies, should be assumed "unto the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, of whom all the family of heaven and earth is named," (Eph. iii. 14, 15.) and be made partakers of "the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints." (Eph. i. 18.) For as in the legal adoption, the father hath as full and absolute power over his adopted son as over his own issue; so in the spiritual, the adopted sons have a clear and undoubted right of inheritance. He, then, who hath "predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself," (Eph. i. 5.) hath thereby another kind of paternal relation, and so we receive the "Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father." (Rom. viii. 15.)

The necessity of this faith in God as our Father appeareth, first, in that it is the ground of all our filial fear, honour, and obedience due unto him upon this relation. "Honour thy father is the first commandment with promise," (Eph. vi. 2.) written in tables of stone with the finger of God; and, "children obey your parents in the Lord," is an evangelical precept, but founded upon principles of reason and justice; "for this is right," saith St. Paul. (Ephes. vi. 1.) And if there be such a rational and legal obligation of honour and obedience to the fathers of our flesh, how much more must we think ourselves obliged to him whom we believe to be our heavenly and everlasting Father? "A son honoureth his father, and a servant his master. If then I be a father, where is my honour? and if I be a master, where is my fear? saith the Lord of hosts."

*N. Spadones autem qui generare non possunt, adoptare possunt; et, licet filios generare non possint, quos adoptaverunt filios habere possunt." Caui Inst. 1. tit. 5. § 3. *Hi qui generare non possunt, velot spado, utoque modo possunt adoptare. Idem juris estin cubile." Ulp. tit. 9. § 3. *Tui" òk ïxos tis topidès ëa to με ελκοντω ἵπται γάρ οἱ ελκονται, με παιδεύεισαι εἰς το παιδεύεισαι μεν, ἀποβάλλεται δὲ τοῦτος, τὸ ἐκ τῆς φύσεως τὸν τόμον τὸν συμμόνον θεολογίμον ἐπικοινωνία ἔλαβε τὸν θεολογίμον τὴν ὑποδομήν τινα. Thoep. Inst. i. tit. 11. *Tou" τοὺς πατρικοὺς αὐτόλην λοις πατρικοὺς τὸν δικαιόν τὸν δικαιόν προστάσσεται, καὶ γενέτειρι λείπει περαιτέρω, με εὐπροσκυνεῖ παῖς τῆς φύσεως. Louis

Novel. 27.

† In alienam familiam transitus, is the description in Agellius, l. 3. 19. *Cum in alienam familiam inque liberorum locum extranei sumuntur, aut per praetorem at, aut per populum: quod per praetorem at, adoptio dicitur; quod per populum, arrogatio." Ibid.

‡ As appears out of the form of Roga tion yet extant in this manner: "Velitius jubebatis, Quirites, uti Lucius Valerius Lucro Titio, tam jure legeque filius sibi siet, quam si ex eo patre matreque familiaris ejus natus esset, utique ei vitae necisque in eo potestas siet, uti patri endo filio est?" Ibid.
(Malac. i. 6.) If we be heirs, we must be coheirs with Christ; if sons, we must be brethren to the only-begotten: but being he came not to do his own will, but the will of him that sent him, he acknowledged no fraternity but with such as do the same; as he hath said, "Whosoever shall do the will of my Father which is in heaven, the same is my brother." (Matt. xii. 50.) If it be required of a bishop in the church of God, to be "one that ruleth well his own house, having his children in subjection with all gravity;" (1 Tim. iii. 4.) what obedience must be due, what subjection must be paid, unto the Father of the family?

The same relation in the object of our faith is the life of our devotions, the expectation of all our petitions. Christ, who taught his disciples, and us in them, how to pray, propounded not the knowledge of God, though without that he could not hear us; neither represented he his power, though without that he cannot help us; but comprehended all in this relation, "When ye pray, say, Our Father." (Luke xi. 2.) This prevents all vain repetitions of our most earnest desires, and gives us full security to cut off all tautology, for "Our Father knoweth what things we have need of before we ask him." (Matt. vi. 8.) This creates a clear assurance of a grant without mistake of our petition: "What man is there of us, who if his son ask bread, will give him a stone? or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent? If we then who are evil know how to give good gifts unto our children; how much more shall our Father which is in heaven give good things to them that ask him." (Matt. vii. 9—11.)*

Again, this paternity is the proper foundation of our Christian patience, sweetening all afflictions with the name and nature of fatherly corrections. "We have had fathers of our flesh which corrected us, and we gave them reverence: shall we not much rather be in subjection to the Father of spirits, and live?" especially considering, that "they chastened us after their own pleasure; but he for our profit, that we might be partakers of his holiness:" (Heb. xii. 9, 10.)† they, as an argument of their authority; he, as an assurance of his love: they, that we might acknowledge them to be our parents; he, that he might persuade us that we are his sons: "for whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth." (Heb. xii. 6.) And what greater incitement unto the exercise of patience is imaginable unto a suffering soul, than to see in every stroke the hand of a Father, in every afflicted

* 'Αντί σέρες σπερμάτων παρειμι ὡς τέκνα χειροποιημάδων αντί τῶν οἰκογενέων. Ζενοβ. Ὁ δ' ἀντὶ παιδίων σπέρματι στάσει. Συμφώνον, Casuist. ver. 476.
† 'Quod si a Domino nonnulla creditum incutit, cui magis patientiam quam Domino praebamus? Quin insaner gratulare et gaudere nos docet dignitane divinae casationis. Ego, inquit, quos diligis castigo. O servum illum benum, cujus emendationi Dominus iustat, cujus dignatur irascenti, quem admoneadis dissimulatione non decipit!' Tertull. de Pat. c. 11.
tion a demonstration of his love? Or how canst thou repine, or be guilty of the least degree of impatience, even in the sharpest corrections, if "thou shalt know with thine heart, that as a man chasteneth his son, so the Lord thy God chasteneth thee?" (Deut. viii. 5.) How canst thou not be comforted, and even rejoice in the midst of thy greatest sufferings, when thou knowest that he which striketh pitieth, he which afflicteth is as it were afflicted with it? "For like as a father pitieth his children, so the Lord pitieth them that fear him." (Psal. ciii. 13.) Lastly, the same relation strongly inferreth an absolute necessity of our imitation; it being clearly vain to assume the title of son without any similitude of the father. What is the general notion of generation but the production of the like; nature, ambitious of perpetuity, striving to preserve the species in the multiplication and succession of individuals? And this similitude consisteth partly in essentials, or the likeness of nature; partly in accidentals, or the likeness in figure,† or affections;‡ "Adam begat a son in his own likeness, after his image:" (Gen. v. 3.) and can we imagine those the sons of God which are no way like him? A similitude of nature we must not, of figure we cannot pretend unto: it remains then only that we bear some likeness in our actions and affections. "Be ye therefore followers (saith the apostle), or rather¥ imitators, of God, as dear children." (Ephes. v. 1.)§ What he hath revealed of himself, that we must express within ourselves. Thus God spake unto the children of Israel, whom he styled his son, "Ye shall be holy, for I am holy." (Lev. xi. 44; xix. 2; xx. 7.) And the apostle upon the same ground speaketh unto us, as to "obedient children:" "As he that hath called you is holy, so be ye holy in all manner of conversation." (1 Pet. i. 14, 15.) It is part of the general beneficence and universal goodness of our God, that "he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust." (Matt. v. 45.)¶ These impartial beams and undistinguishing showers are but to show us what we ought to do, and to make us fruitful in the works of God; for no other reason Christ has given us this command, "Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, that ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven." (Matt. v. 44, 45.)** No other command did he give upon this

---

† Τα ἐμάνους γεγένος ἕως γενότασι τὰ ἠ̄̄κασχεν τιά ἀριστοτήλος de Gener. Anim. l. i. c. 9.
‡ Fortes creaturur fortibus et bonis:
Est in juvenis, est in equis patrum
Virtus: nec imbollem feroces

§ μιμησάται.
¶ Vide S. August. in Psal. liii.
** Vide S. August. in Psal. c.

---

** "Similitudinem patris actus indicet sobolis; simulatur operis simulaturum indicet generis: actus nomen confirmet, ut nomen genus demonstraret." S. August. de Temp. Serm. 76.
ground, but, "Be ye therefore merciful, as your Father is merciful." (Luke vi. 36.)

So necessary is this faith in God, as in our Father, both for direction to the best of actions, and for consolation in the worst of conditions.

But although this be very necessary, yet it is not the principal or most proper explication of God's paternity. For as we find one person in a more peculiar manner the Son of God, so must we look upon God as in a more peculiar manner the Father of that Son. "I ascend unto my Father and your Father," (John xx. 17.)* saith our Saviour; the same of both, but in a different manner, denoted by the article prefixed before the one, and not the other: which distinction in the original we may preserve by this translation, I ascend unto the Father of me, and Father of you; first of me, and then of you: not therefore his, because ours; but therefore ours, because his. So far we are the sons of God, as we are like unto him; and our similitude unto God consisteth in our conformity to the likeness of his Son. "For whom he did foreknow, he did also predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the first-born among many brethren." (Rom. viii. 29.)

He the first-born, and we sons, as brethren unto him: he "appointed heir of all things," (Heb. i. 2.) and we "heirs of God, as joint-heirs with him." (Rom. viii. 17.) Thus God "sent forth his Son, that we might receive the adoption of sons. And because we are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying, Abba, Father." (Gal. iv. 4—6.)† By his mission are we adopted, and by his Spirit call we God our Father. So we are no longer "servants, but now sons; and if sons, then heirs of God, but still through Christ." (Gal. iv. 7.)

It is true, indeed, that "both he that sanctifieth, that is, Christ, and they who are sanctified, that is, faithful Christians, are all of one, the same Father, the same God: for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren:" (Heb. ii. 11.) yet are they not all of him after the same manner, not the "many sons like the Captain of their salvation:" (Heb. ii. 10.) but Christ

---

* Acts 15, 14, 15.

† Acts 15, 14, 15.
the beloved, the first-born, the only-begotten, the Son after a more peculiar and more excellent manner; the rest with relation unto, and dependance on, his Sonship; as given unto him, “Behold I, and the children which God hath given me;” (Isa. viii. 18. Heb. ii. 13.) as being so by faith in him, “For we are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus;” (Gal. iii. 26.) as receiving the right of Sonship from him, “For as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God.” (John i. 12.) Among all the sons of God there is none like to that one Son of God. And if there be so great a disparity in the filiation, we must make as great a difference in the correspondent relation. There is one degree of sonsnip founded on creation, and that is the lowest, as belonging unto all, both good and bad: another degree above that there is grounded upon regeneration, or adoption, belonging only to the truly faithful in this life: and a third above the rest founded on the resurrection, or collation of the eternal inheritance, and the similitude of God, appertaining to the saints alone in the world to come: for “we are now the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be; but we know that when he shall appear, we shall be like him.” (1 John iii. 2.) And there is yet another degree of filiation, of a greater eminency and a different nature, appertaining properly to none of these, but to the true Son of God alone, who amongst all his brethren hath only received the title of his “own Son,” (Rom. viii. 32.) and a singular testimony from heaven, “This is my beloved Son,” (Matt. iii. 17. xvii. 5.) even in the presence of John the Baptist, even in the midst of Moses and Elias (who are certainly the sons of God by all the other three degrees of filiation), and therefore hath called God after a peculiar way “his own Father.” (John v. 18.) And so at last we come unto the most singular and eminent paternal relation, “Unto the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which is blessed for evermore;” (2 Cor. xi. 31.) the Father of him, and of us, but not the Father of us as of him.|| Christ hath taught us to say, Our Father: a form

* * Ergo nemo in filiis Dei similis est filio Dei. Ecce dixit est filius Dei, et nos dicti sumus filii Dei: sed quis est similis Domino in filiis Dei? Ille unicus, nos multii. Ille unus, nos in illo unum. Ille natus, nos adoptati. Ille ab aeterno filius unigenitus per seaturum, nos a tempore facti per gratiam. S. August. in Psal. lxxviii.

† ♦ Ut magnificentia Dei dilectionis ex comparationis genere nosceretur, non pereceresse Deum proprio filio suo docuit. Nec unque pro adoptandis adoptato, neque pro creatis creatura; sed pro alienis suo, pro communepandis proprio. S. Hilari. 1 vi. de Trin. c. 43.

‡ ♦ Anno tibi in eo quod dicitur, hic est, non hoc significatione videtur. Alios quidem encomiannatos ab eo in filios, sed hic filius mens est? Domini adoptationis plures nomen, sed iste nulli filius est. Ibid. c. 23. § Patrem Deum habemus in Deo, ut Rom. viii. 32. De uti nobis Deus in ipso legitur.

|| Non sicut Christi pater, ita et nos ter pater. Nuncum enim Christum ita nos conjunxit, ut nullam distinctionem feceret inter nos et se. Ille enim filius eique patris, ille unicus cum patre, patrifactum unum nos autem facti per filium, adoptati per unicum. Proinde nunquam audium est de ore Domini nostri Jesu Christi, cum ad discipulos loquevis, dixisse illum de Deo summo Patre suo, Pater nostro; sed quot Pater mens
of speech which he never used himself; sometimes he calls him the Father; sometimes my Father, sometimes your, but never our: he makes no such conjunction of us to himself, as to make no distinction between us and himself; so conjoining us as to distinguish, though so distinguishing as not to separate us.

Indeed I conceive this, as the most eminent notion of God's paternity, so the original and proper explication of this Article of the Creed: and that not only because the ancient fathers deliver no other exposition of it; but also because that which I conceive to be the first occasion, rise, and original of the Creed itself, requiresthis as the proper interpretation. Immediately before the ascension of our Saviour, he said unto his apostles, "All power is given unto me in heaven and earth. Go ye therefore and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." (Matt. xxviii. 18, 19.) From this sacred form of baptism did the Church derive the rule of faith, requiring the profession of belief in the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, before they could be baptized in their name. When the eunuch asked Philip, "What doth hinder me to be baptized? Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest:" and when the eunuch replied, "I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God; he baptized him." (Acts viii. 36, 37.) And before that, the Samaritans, "when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, were baptized, both men and women." (Acts viii. 12.) For as in the Acts of the Apostles there is no more expressed than that they baptized "in the name of Jesus Christ;" (Acts ii. 38. vii. 16. x. 48. xix. 5.) so no more expressed of the faith required in them who were to be baptized, than to believe in the same name.

But being the Father and the Holy Ghost were likewise mentioned in the first institution, being the expressing of dixit, aut Pater vester. Paternoster non dixit, usque adeo ut quodam loco proneret hanc duo, Vado ad Deum meum, inquit, et Deum eustrum. Quare non dixit Deum nostrum? et Patrem meum dixit, et Patrem eustrum; non dixit Patrem nostrum? Sic jungit, ut distinguat; sic distinguat, ut non sejungat. Unam nos vult esse in se, unam autem Patrem et se.* S. August. in Iesu. Tract. 21. § 3.

* Arius and Eusebius, in their Creed delivered to Constantine: Taotn τον πισταν παρειλθαμεν ιν των γηνεογεγονα, λαον τον κυριον των εαυτου μαχεται, Προευδοτη μαθητωσετε πιετα τα ιον, επαινοτες αυτον εις θεον τον πατηο, και του ου, και του ου πνευματος. Sacr. l. i. c. 26. And upon exhibiting this Confession of Faith, they were restored to the Communion of the Church by the Synod of Jerusalem. Sozom. i. ii. c. 27. In the same manner Eusebius delivered his Creed unto the council of Nice, concluding and deducing it from the same text: καθα και ο τριμεν και την ακον τος ιουνιου μαθητης, Ιππ. Περιευδοτης μαθητευσαι, &c. Sacr. l. i. c. 8. Theodor. l. i. c. 12. The same is also alleged by the council of Antioch, under the emperor Constantius and pope Julius. Sacr. l. ii. c. 10. Vide S. Athanas. in Epist. ad ubique Orath. Orat. contra Gregale Sabelliti, et contra Arianos et Deo Deus, § 1. Vide Basil. de Spirit. S. c. 12. So Vigilins Lapsen. Dia. l. i. § 3. makes Arius and Athanasius jointly speak these words: *Credivimus in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, et in Jesum Christum Filium ejus, Dominum nostrum, et in Spiritum S. Hac est fidelf nostre regula, quam celesti magisterio Dominus tradidit apostolis, dicens, Ite, baptizate, &c.*
ARTICLE I.

one doth not exclude the other, being it is certain that from
the apostles' time the names of all three were used; hence
upon the same ground was required faith, and a profession of
belief in the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost. Again, as
the eunuch said not simply, I believe in the Son, but "I be-
lieve that Jesus Christ is the Son of God;" as a brief explica-
tion of that part of the institution which he had learned be-
fore of Philip: so they who were converted unto Christianity
were first taught not the bare names, but the explications and
descriptions of them in a brief, easy, and familiar way; which
when they had rendered, acknowledged, and professed, they
were baptized in them. And these being regularly and con-
stantly used, made up the rule of faith, that is, the Creed.
The truth of which may sufficiently be made apparent to any
who shall seriously consider the constant practice of the
Church, from the first age unto this present, of delivering the
rule of faith to those which were to be baptized, and so requiring
of themselves, or their sureties, an express recitation, profession,
or acknowledgment of the Creed. From whence this observa-
tion is properly deducible: that in what sense the name of Father
is taken in the form of baptism, in the same it also ought to
be taken in this Article. And being nothing can be more
clear than that, when it is said, In the name of the Father, and
of the Son, the notion of Father hath in this particular no other
relation but to that Son whose name is joined with his; and
as we are baptized into no other son of that Father, but that
only-begotten Christ Jesus, so into no other father, but the
Father of that only-begotten; it followeth, that the proper ex-
plication of the first words of the Creed is this, I believe in
God the Father of Christ Jesus.

In vain then is that vulgar distinction applied unto the ex-
plication of the Creed, whereby the Father is considered both
personally, and essentially: personally, as the first in the glo-
rious Trinity, with relation and opposition to the Son; essen-
tially, as comprehending the whole Trinity, Father, Son, and
Holy Ghost. For that the Son is not here comprehended in
the Father is evident, not only out of the original, or occasion,
but also from the very letter of the Creed, which teacheth us
to believe in God the Father, and in his Son: for if the Son were
included in the Father, then were the Son the Father of himself.
As therefore when I say, I believe in Jesus Christ his Son, I
must necessarily understand the Son of that Father whom I
mentioned in the first Article; so when I said, I believe in God
the Father, I must as necessarily be understood of the *Father
of him whom I call his Son in the second Article.

Now as it cannot be denied that God may several ways be
said to be the Father of Christ; first, as he was begotten by

* "Pater cum audit, Filii intellige Patrem, qui filius supradictae sit imago
the Holy Ghost of the Virgin Mary (Luke i. 35.); secondly, as he was sent by him with special authority, as the King of Israel (John x. 35, 36. i. 49, 50.); thirdly, as he was raised from the dead, out of the womb of the earth unto immortal life, and made heir of all things in h.'s Father's house (Acts xiii. 32, 33.): so must we not doubt but, beside all these, God is the Father of that Son in a more eminent and peculiar manner, as he is and ever was with God, and God (John i. 1.): shall be demonstrated fully in the second Article, when we come to shew Christ is the only-begotten Son. And according unto this paternity by way of generation totally divine, in which he who begetteth is God, and he which is begotten the same God, do we believe in God, as the eternal Father of an eternal Son. Which relation is coeval with his essence: so that we are not to imagine one without the other; but as we profess him always God, so must we acknowledge him always Father, * and that in that far more proper manner than the same title can be given to any creature.† Such is the fluctuant condition of human generation, and of those relations which arise from thence, that he which is this day a son, the next may prove a father, and within the space of one day more, without any alteration in himself, become neither son nor father, losing one relation by the death of him that begot him, and the other by the departure of him that was begotten by him. But in the Godhead these relations are more proper, because fixed; the Father having never been a son, the Son never becoming father, in reference to the same kind of generation.‡

A farther reason of the propriety of God's paternity appears from this, that he hath begotten a Son of the same nature and essence with himself, not only specifically, but individually, as I shall also demonstrate in the exposition of the second Article. For generation being the production of the like, and

---

* "Αμέμ πάτερ ἐστι Θεός καί Αμέμ πατής ν' εις υπερήφανους ἵκει του ἐκείνου εἰς λάθος ἐγέρθη τι ἐκείνοι περὶ δαιμόνιοι καί βοσκοῦντες. S. Cyril. Aler. Dict. de Trin. 3. Πατής δὲν πατής, καί εύα τοι καρπά; Τοί δ' εύα τοι πατής πατής. S. Ephraim. Hores. ix. §. 3. 'Sunt nunquam fuit non Deus, ita nunquam fuit non Pater, a quo Filius natus.' Cenam, de Eccles. dogm. c. 1. 'Credimus in Deum, etundem confitemur Patrem, ut eundem semper habuisse Filium nos credamus.' Chrys. Serm. 59. 'Inest Deo pietas, est in Deo semper affectio, paterinitas permanet apud illum; semper ergo Filium huic creandas, ne Patrem semper non finisse blasphemes.' Id. Serm. 62. 'Adoramus, quod cum Dei Patris nomen in confessione conjunctit, ostendit quod non ante Deus esse coperte et posten Pater, sed sineullo initio et Deus semper et Pater est.' S. August. de Temp. Serm. 132.

† 'Deus solus proprius verus est Pater, qui sine initio et fine Pater est: non enim aliquando cepit esse quod Pater est, sed semper Pater est, semper habens Filiam ex se genitum.' Faustus lib. contra Arianos. 'Esti tibi Thείτος μις το πατής κυρίως δ το πατής ἑστι, καὶ τοῦ κυρίου νοῆς ἑστί, καὶ τοῦ τοῦτον δ μικρὸν ἐκ τοῦ πατής ἑστι, καὶ τοῦτο ἄπαντι δικαιοῦν το πατής ἑστι, καὶ τοῦτο ἄπαντι δικαιοῦν.' S. Athanas. Orat. 1. contra Arianos. §. 21. 'Esti mihiς το θείτος το πατής και τοῦ νοῆς ἑστι και τοῦ ἀποικίας καί του τε καὶ του ἀποικίας καί του τοῦ κυρίου νοῆς καί του του πατής καί του του κυρίου νοῆς.' S. Athanas. tom. 1. 'Πατής κυρίως, ἐτι με καί νοῆς ἀποικίας καί του του κυρίου νοῆς καί του του πατής καί του του κυρίου νοῆς.' S. Athanas. tom. 3. §. 35.
that likeness being the similitude of substance;* where is the nearest indentity of nature, there must be also the most proper generation, and consequently he which generateth the most proper father. If therefore man, who by the benediction of God given unto him at his first creation in these words, "Be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth," (Gen. i. 28.) begetteth a son "in his own likeness, after his image;" (Gen. v. 3.) that is, of the same human nature, of the same substance with him, (which if he did not, he should not according to the benediction multiply himself or man at all.) with which similitude of nature many accidental disparities may consist, if by this act of generation he obtaineth the name of father, because, and in regard, of the similitude of his nature in the son, how much more properly must that name belong unto God himself, who hath begotten a Son of a nature and essence so totally like, so totally the same, that no accidental disparity can imaginably consist with that identity?

That God is the proper and eternal Father of his own eternal Son is now declared: what is the eminency or excellency of this relation followeth to be considered. In general then we may safely observe, that in the very name of father there is something of eminence which is not in that of son;* and some kind of priority we must ascribe unto him whom we call the first, in respect of him whom we term the second person; and as we cannot but ascribe it, so must we endeavour to preserve it.†

Now that privilege or priority consisteth not in this,§ that the essence or attributes of the one are greater than the essence or attributes of the other (for we shall hereafter demonstrate them to be the same in both); but only in this, that the Father hath that essence of himself, the Son by communication from the Father. From whence he acknowledgeth that he is "from him," (John vii. 29.) that he "liveth by him," (John vi. 57.) that the "Father gave him to have life in himself," (John v. 26.) and generally referreth all things to him, as received from him. Wherefore in this sense some of the ancients have not stuck to interpret those words, "the Father is greater than I," (John xiv. 28.) of Christ as the Son of God, as the second person.

* 'Etiamsi Filius hominis homo in quibusdam similis, in quibusdam sit dis-similis Patri; tumen quia ejusdem substantiae est, negari versus Filius non potest, et quia versus est Filius, negari ejusdem substantiae non potest.' S. August. Iii. cont. Marc. c. 15. Vide Tho. Sum. p. 1. quest. 33. art. 2. ad quart.
† 'Alte το δομα των πατρες μεν ἐστι τω ους.' Syn. Soric. Theod. I. ii. c. 3. 'In sinuatur nobis in Patre auctoritas, in filio nativitas.' S. August.
‡ 'Τὸ μὲν ἄρχοντα πατρὶ ἐκίθεν ἀξίωμα φυλακτιον, μαθεία τοῦ εἶναι αὐτῷ τοῦ αἰτίου λάγοσα.' Abp. opud. Theod. I. i. c. 4. 'Ἡμεῖς δὲ κατὰ μὲν τὸν πατρὸς πάροι τὰ ἵντα σχέται, προτεστάχθαι τῳ οὐδὲ των πατρίς φρομμι, κατὰ δὲ τὰς φύσιςς διαφερέν εἰκοσ.' S. Basil. contra Innom. I. i. c. 20. 'Μὴν ἠτὶ ἐστὶ, ὥστιν γεῖνι, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸν ἵντα των πατρίς ἀναφερομεν. S. Athanasius, contra Ariano. I. 1. c. 39. 'Δι' ἐπειδή τοῦτο κατὰ τὸν πατρὸς λόγον λειτουργεῖ τον μεγάλον ἀρχαίον. Ἡ παραγόννα ἀπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς ἐρχεται τῷ οὐδὲ, κατὰ τοῦτο μεγαλεῖν πατρὶς, ὡς αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐρχεται, διὰ καὶ καθαρίσθητεν τος οὐ πατρὸς μεν μεγαλεῖς μου ἐστιν, καθ' ἐπιτροπήν δηλούτε, τὸ δὲ πατρὸς τῷ ἄλλῳ λειτουργεῖ, ὡς εἰς'
I BELIEVE IN GOD THE FATHER.

51

in the blessed Trinity; but still with reference not unto his essence, but his generation, by which he is understood to have his being from the Father, who only hath it of himself, and is the original of all power and essence in the Son. "I can of myself own self do nothing," (John v. 30.) saith our Saviour, he is not of himself; 5 and whosoever receives his being, must receive, his power from another, especially where the essence and the power are undeniably the same, as in God they are. "The Son then can do nothing of himself," because he hath no power of himself but what the Father gave; and being he gave him
to aitia oram kai ἐγκάρ τοῦ εἰς αὑτὸν γενοντός; S. Basil. contra Eunom. 1. i. § 21. And the same S. Basil doth not only acknowledge this to be true in respect of the divine nature of Christ, but theketh the divinity of the Son may be proved from hence: Εὖ γὰρ καὶ ίν τοῦ τοῦ φιλοῦ, τὸ ἀνομφόν ἦλθαί τοῦ τοῦ πατρὸς, δεδώκει την πεπίστευσιν, τὰ γὰρ συμφέροντα οὐκ ομολογίας ἔχουσι γὰρ ἀγριλεόν κεχαρίσαντα μείζονα, καὶ ἀδόκιμον τὸν ἀδιάκοσμον, καὶ ἀπόκατον προμοῖς. Εἰ τοῦτον αὐτούς συμφέροντα οὐκ ἔδωκεν ὡνομα, μείζονα δὲ κατὰ συγκεκριμένα έστι το πατρί τούτω, ίμοστότα το πατρί τούτω. Ad Cæsarienses Epist. 141. Τὸ μείζων μεν εἰσί τῆς αἰωνίης, το δε ένον τῆς φυσικῆς. S. Greg. Nunc. c. Obr. 56. et Orat. 40. ου κατὰ τὴν φύσιν τὸ μείζων, κατὰ τὴν αἰωνίαν δι', Vide S. Euphron. in Ancon. c. 17. Εἰ δὲ λέγης τοις μεϋναίς είναι τὴν πατρία πατρί κατ' αὑτόν τούτω, οὐδὲ τούτω αντέρισθε. S. Chrys. Homil. in Ioun. 75. Τοὺς τιμαρίους κατὰ τὴν τῆς αἰωνίας λόγον ύπάρχουν ο οὐς το πατρί, καὶ ίπάρχεις κατὰ πάντα, μείζονα αὐτόν είς ἀγαύρυ, ἤχον αὐτῷ κατὰ μνήμονα τὸ εἰς ὐς, τι καὶ συγκεκριμένα αὐτὸν τὴν εὐρύχρονιαν. S. Cyril. Alex. Thesaur. c. 11. And Isidore Petinata. Epist. 334. I. iii. cites this saying of an ancient father: Καὶ τὸ μείζων ἐν ταῖς ζωῆσιν, καὶ τὸ τεταχαλ καὶ ἐμφοιτις. So Vigilus professed to believe the Son: οὐκελέον περὶ ομνία Πατρι, excepto eo quod iles ingeniosus est, et iste genitus. De Trin. l. xi. c. 7. p. 285. Ideo totum quod habet, quod potest, non tribuat sibi, sed Patri, quia non est a seipso, sed a Patre. Εὐκλείς est enim Patri, sed hoc quocum accepta a Patre. S. August. Epist. 66. Necesse est, quodammodo prior sit, qua Pater sit; quouamante cedat necesse est, eum qui habet originem, ille qui originem nescit. Simul ut hic minor sit, dum in illo esse se scit habens originem, quia nascitur. Novatianus, de Trin. c. 31. Major itaque Pater filio est, et plane major, cui tantum donat esse quan tum ipsa est, cui innascibilitas esse imaginem sacramentum nattivitatis imperit, quem ex se in forma sum generat. S. Hilf. de Trin. l. xi. c. 54. Non pra-
ARTICLE I.

all the power, as communicating his entire and undivided essence, therefore “what things soever he doeth, these also doeth the Son likewise,” (John v. 19.) by the same power by which the Father worketh, because he had received the same Godhead in which the Father subsisteth. There is nothing more intimate and essential to any thing than the life thereof, and that in nothing so conspicuous as in the Godhead, where life and truth are so inseparable, that there can be no living God but the true, no true God but the living. “The Lord is the true God, he is the living God, and an everlasting King,” saith the prophet Jeremy (x. 10.); and St. Paul putteth the Thessalonians in mind, how they “turned from idols to serve the living and true God.” (1 Thess. i. 9.) Now life is otherwise in God than in the creatures: in him originally, in them derivatively; in him as in the fountain of absolute perfection, in them by way of dependence and participation; our life is in him, but his is in himself: and as “the Father hath life in himself, so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself;” (John v. 26.)* both the same life, both in themselves, both in the same degree, as the one, so the other; but only with this difference, the Father giveth it, and the Son receiveth it.† From whence he professeth of himself, “that the living Father sent him, and that he liveth by the Father.” (John vi. 57.)‡

 nisi quod viderit Patrem facientem; que de Patre est totus Filius, et tota substantia et potentia ejus ex illo est qui genuit eum.’ Id. Tract. in Ioann. 21. § 2. * Et primum Filium cognoscere, cum dicitur, Non potest Filius a se facere quicumqu, nisi quod viderit Patrem facientem. Habes nativitatem Filii, quæ ab se nihil potest facere nisi vident. In eo autem quod a se nihil potent, inassibilis admittit errorern. Ab se enim non potest posse nativitas. S. Hilær. de Trin. 1. vii. c. 21. ‘Dum non a se facit, ad id quod agit secundum nativitatem sibi Pater auctor est.’ Ibid. i. xi. c. 12. ‘Auctorem discretumcum ait, Non potest a se facere; obedientiam significat cum addit: Nisi quod viderit patrem facientem.’ Id. de Sras. c. 75.

* Sicut habet Pater vitam in semetipsa, sic dedit et Filio vitam habere in semetipsa: ut hoc solum intueris inter Patrem et Filium, quia Pater habet vitam in semetipsa quam nemo ei dedit, Filius autem habet vitam in semetipsa quam Pater dedit.” S. August. Tract. 19. in Ioann. § 11. ‘Incommutabilis est vita Filii, sicut et Patris, et tamen de Patre est: et in separabilitatem est operatio Patris et Filii; sed tamen ita operari Filio de illo est de quo ipse est, id est, de Patre.’ Id. de Trin. 1. ii. c. 1. * Sicut habet, dedit; qualem habet, talem dedit; quantam habet, tantam dedit.’ Id. contra Marcm. 1. iii. c. 14.

* Ergo quod dicitur dedit Filio, tale est ac si diceretur, genuit Filium; generando enim dedit. Quomodo enim dedit ut esset, sic dedit ut vita esset, et sic dedit ut in semetipsa vita esset.” Id. Tract. 22. in Ioann. § 10. ‘Tali confessione originis sua indiscrata natura perfecta naturalitas esset. Quod enim in utroque vita est, id in utroque significatur essentia; et vita que generatur ex ilio, est, essentia quae de essentia nascitur, dum non dissimili nascitur, scilicet, quia vita ex ilio est, tenet in se indissimulam naturam originis sua, que et nata et gignentis essentiam, id est, vita que habetur et data est, simulando non discrepet.’ S. Hilær. de Synod. advers. Arianos. c. 16. ‘Quia ergo appareat vita Patris boc esse quod ipse est; sicut habet vitam in se, sic dedit; sic dedit Filio habere vitam, id est, sic est Esse Filii, sicut Esse Patris.’ Vigil. Taps. Disput. in Biblioth. Patr. Lat. t. v. par. iii. p. 619. ‘In utroque natura et essentia significatio est, quae sicut habetur, ita data esse ducetur ad babendum.” S. Hilær. de Synod. c. 19.

† Propter Patrem vivit Filius, quod ex Patre Filii est; propter Patrem, quod eructatram est Verbum ex Patris corde, quod a Patre processit, quod ex paterno generatus est etero, quod fons Patris Filii est, quod radiis Patris Filii est. S. Ambros. de Fide, l. iv. c. 5. fin.
I BELIEVE IN GOD THE FATHER.

53

We must not therefore so far endeavour to involve ourselves in the darkness of this mystery, as to deny that glory which is clearly due unto the Father; whose pre-eminence undeniably consisteth, in that he is God not of any other, but of himself, and that there is no other person who is God, but is God of him. It is no diminution to the Son, to say, he is from another, for his very name imports as much; but it were a diminution to the Father to speak so of him: and there must be some pre-eminence, where there is place for derogation. What the Father is, he is from none; what the Son is, he is from him: what the first is, he giveth; what the second is, he receiveth. The first is a Father indeed by reason of his Son, but he is not God by reason of him; whereas the Son is not so only in regard of the Father, but also God by reason of the same.

Upon this pre-eminence (as I conceive) may safely be grounded the congruity of the divine mission. We often read that Christ was sent, from whence he bears the name of an "Apostle" (Heb. iii. 1.) himself, as well as those whom he therefore named so, because as the "Father sent him, so sent he them;" (John xx. 21.) the Holy Ghost is also said to be sent, sometimes by the Father, sometimes by the Son: but we never read that the Father was sent at all; there being an authority in that name which seems inconsistent with this mission. In the parable, "a certain householder which planted
a vineyard, first sent his servants to the husbandmen, and again other servants, but last of all he sent unto them his son:” (Matt. xxii. 33, &c.) it had been inconsistent even with the literal sense of an historical parable, as not at all consonant to the rational customs of men, to have said, that last of all the son sent his father to them. So God, placing man in the vineyard of his Church, first sent his servants the prophets, by whom he “spake at sundry times and in divers manners, but in the last days he sent his Son:” (Heb. i. 1, 2.) and it were as incon-gruous* and inconsistent with the divine generation, that the Son should send the Father into the world. “As the living Father hath sent me, and I live by the Father,” (John vi. 57.) saith our Saviour, intimating, that by whom he lived, by him he was sent, and therefore sent by him, because he lived by him, laying his generation as the præ-er ground of his mission. Thus he which begetteth sendeth, and he which is begotten is sent.† “For I am from him, and he hath sent me,” (John vii. 29.) saith the Son: from whom I received my essence by communication, from whom also received I this commission. As therefore it is more worthy to give than to receive, to send than to be sent; so in respect of the Sonship there is some priority in the divine paternity: from whence divers of the ancients‡ read that place of St. John with this addition, “the Father (which sent me) is greater than I.” (John xiv. 28.) He then is that God who “sent forth his Son, made of a woman, that God who hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying, Abba, Father.” (Gal. iv. 4. 6.) So that the authority of sending is in the Father: which therefore ought to be acknowledged, because upon this mission is founded the highest testimony of his love to man; for “herein is love (saith St. John), not that

* Si voluisset Deus Pater per subjectam creaturam visibilibi apparere, absurdissime tamen aut a Filio, quem genuit, aut a Spiritu Sancto, qui de illo procedit, missus diiceretur. S. August. de Trin. Lib. iv. cap. ult.
† Filius est igniur a Pate missus, non Pater a Filio; quia Filius est a Patre natus, non Pater a Filio. Fulgent. fragm. l. viii. contra Fabricianum, in Collect. Theodul. de S. S. Quis autem Christianus ignorat quod Pater miserit, missusque sit Filius? Non enim genetorem ab eo quem genuit, sed a filiato a genitore mitti auctoritate. S. August. contra Martinum lib. iii. c. 14. Ut audis, Iper me mittit, nolit intelligere naturam dissimilitudinem, sed, genen undum auctoritatem. Id. Tract. 31. in Ioam. § 4. Entwàda ait E a apostilas, kai E apostil criminals, ti, kai, ti w antw, mti, Putin ti, tóutw tì pata. S. Epiphani. Hæres. Ixix. § 54. Hence the language of the Schools: Missio importatione originis; as Thom. Aquin. 10. q. 43. art. 1. ad prim. or; auctoritatum Principii; as Durand. 1. i. dist. 15. q. 1.
we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins." (1 John iv. 10.)

Again, the dignity of the Father will farther yet appear from the order of the persons in the blessed Trinity, of which he is undoubtedly the first. For although in some passages of the apostolical discourses the Son may first be named (as in that of St. Paul, "the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost be with you all;" (2 Cor. xiii. 14.) the latter part of which is nothing but an addition unto his constant benediction); and in others the Holy Ghost precedes the Son (as "Now there are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit; and there are diversities of administrations, but the same Lord; and there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God which worketh all in all."); (1 Cor. xii. 4—6.) yet where the three Persons are barely enumerated, and delivered unto us as the rule of faith,* there that order is observed which is proper to them; witness the form of baptism. In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: which order hath been perpetuated in all confessions of faith, and is for ever inviolably to be observed.† For that which is not instituted or invented by the will or design of man, but founded in the nature of things themselves,‡ is not to be altered at the pleasure of man. Now this priority doth properly and naturally result from the divine paternity; so that the Son must necessarily be second unto the Father,§ from
whom he receiveth his origination, and the Holy Ghost unto the Son. Neither can we be thought to want a sufficient foundation for this priority of the first person of the Trinity, if we look upon the numerous testimonies of the numerous doctors of the Church, who have not stuck to call the Father the origin,* the cause,† the root,‡ the fountain,§ and the head of the Son,‖ or the whole Divinity.

cedere, in tantum necessete est etiam generatio excedat." S. Hilær. de Trinit. 1. iii. c. 51. "Tua enim res est, est unigenitus tuus est filius, ex Deo Patre Deus versus, et a te in nature tuae uniate genitus, post te ita contendens, ut tecum, quia unus origo sine es auctor unani. Nam dum ex te est, secundus a te est." Huld. c. 51. This by the Schools is called ordos naturæ, ordos originis, ordos naturalis possumpositionis. Which being so generally acknowledged by the fathers, when we read in the Athanasian creed, 'to this Trinity none is afores or after other,' we must understand it of the priority of perfection or time.


In this sense the Greek fathers used ἀνάρχης as proper to the Father (in the same notion with ἀγίνετος, with relation to the 'principium productionis'), and denied it to the Son: 'Ὁ δὲ νὸς, εάν μὲν ὃς αὐτὸς τόν σπαυτα λαμαρδα, ὕπαρ ανάρχης, ἄρχει ἕν τοῦ οὐδὲν πατρὸς δέ αὐτός' οἷο ὁ τό τα πρὸς χρόνον τὸς ἀρχιτε, καὶ ἀνάρχης. S. Greg. Naz. Orat. 29. "Εἰ τῆς ἀγίνετος καὶ ἀγελούργησε τόν υἱόν, ἄρχει ἀνάρχης, καὶ διὸ ἀγίνετος λέγης, καὶ διὸ πατρὶ δόθη, ὑπό εὐγνώμονι ἔτων. Synod. Synod. Conf. prim. thus first translated into Latin: 'Si quis immaculaet et iniurias dicat Filium, tanquam duo sine principio, et duo immacula, et duo innata dicence, duo facient deos, Anathema sit.' S. Hilær. de Synod. n. xxvi. In which sense the Platonists did understand ἀγίνετος of God: 'Ὄστι οἴκ. ἄρχων τοῦ λειτουργίας ἡ πλωτομένη, εἰπή ἀγίνετος εὖ μοι ἀπὸ χρόνων μένοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ ἀπό αἰτίων, καὶ τῷ σπάραμαν καὶ τῷ ἑαυτόν ἀνάρχης. Hierocles de provid. p. 8. ed. Lond. 1633. And the Latins attributing the term principium to the Son, do it with the addition of de or ex principio. 'Pater principium non de principio, Filius principium de principio.' S. August. contra Maxim. 1. 3. c. 17. 'Principium ex principio et unum est, et initio caret.' Faust. Rheg. Epist. 16. 'Et exor, iniquit. (Ecc. ii. 4.) Altissimis prolit i; hac est enim nativitatis perfecta sermonis, hoc est principium sive principium; hic est ortus habens initium in nativitate, in statu non habens.' Philebd. contra Arian. p. 94. 'Sicut in creatoris inventur priiocipium primum et principium secundum; ita in personis divinis inventur principium non de principio, quod est Pater, et principium a principio, quod est Filius.' Thom. Aquin. 1. q. 35. art. 4. And to this all the Schoolmen writing on his Suarez agree, as all upon the Sentences. 1. Dist. 29.

† Ἀριστί ἦτον ἐν τῷ Ἑβραῖον φύσιν, καὶ τῷ ὑιόν, καὶ τῷ ἁγίων παιμαίως, καὶ τῷ κτίσθενι πάσης S. Athanas. Disser. Orthod. et Anom. Dial. ii. § 13. 'Ἀλλὰ της ἰδίως ἡμέρας ἐγίνεται καὶ ἀνάρχης ἐκστασά, ητις ἢτο σάται ἅτσεν ἄτιας ἢ γάρ τοῦ πατρός ἢ νεκρός, ἢ τοῦ πατρός τοῦ τοῦ πατρός τοῦ.' S. Basil. Epist. 83. And upon that place, "this day have I begotten thee:" 'Ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν, γεννημένον, τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἀριστί ἢ τοῦ ἀριστί ἢ τοῦ ἁγίων σώματος. Id. contra Eunom. 1. ii. § 17. 'Ὄς οὐδεμιοῦ διαφοράν καταλιπέται, οὐδὲ τὴν ἐν αἰτίας πρὸς τοῦ ἐν αἰτίας ενσωματωθῇ τοῦ πατρίου τοῦ τοῦ πατρός μου, εἰσιν χρήτες ὧν ἐν αἰτίας ενσωματωθῇ τοῦ πατρίου πατρός τοῦ. Id. Epist. 64. 'Διάφορα τὸν ἐς υπόστασιν ἐν μιᾶς ταῖς τριὰ διάδοχος τῆς ἤπατος καὶ αἰτίας ἐναφροίζεται τοῦ πατρίου τοῦ πατρός τοῦ. Ιδ. Epist. 64.
I BELIEVE IN GOD THE FATHER.

For by these titles it appeareth clearly, First, That they made a considerable difference between the person of the Fa-

mous, l. 4. c. 5. 'In patire τοῦ ἱδροῦ καὶ τῆς σίδης, καὶ περιλαῖα τῶν πετειατῶν τῶν ἱδρῶν, τῶν πράξεων αἰτίων καὶ ἐκχύσεων τῶν ἱερών αὐτῶν.' Zechur, Mijten, p. 215. ed. Barth. 1655. And although Thomas Aquinas, and Eugenius bishop of Rome in the definition of the Council of Florence, have observed that the Greeks in this case do use the term cause, but the Latins only principium: yet the very Latin fathers in the twenty fifth session of the same Council have these words: μᾶς γινόμαι τοῦ πατρίν αἰτίων, καὶ μοῖς καὶ πέντεν τῶν Στίχων; and we have before cited Victorinus Afer, p. 51. col. 2, who says: 'Pater causa est ipsi Filio ut sit.' So St. Hilary: 'Deum nasci, non est aliud quan in ex natura esse quæ Deus est; quia nasci cum causam nativitatis ostendat, non disputet tamen in genere auctoris existere.' De Trin. l. 11. c. 11. 'Ex Spiritu enim Spiritus nascens, hic est proprietate Spiritus, per quam et ipsa Spiritus est, nascatur, non tamen alia ei præterquam perfectarum atque indemnabili causam causarum ad id quod nascitur causa est; et ex caussa, hic perfectarum indemnabili nascens, fuc esse ex caussa in cause ipsius proprietate nascatur.' id. l. 17. c. 8. 'Quia ex eo qui est natus est, intelligi non potest ex eo quod non est natus esse; quia ejus qui est ad id quod est causa est, non etiam id quod non est origo nascendi est.' Ibid. c. 17. ' Deus omnium quæ sunt causa est. Quod autem rerum omnium causa est, etiam sapientiae sua causa est, nec unquam Deus sine sapientia sua. Igitur semper deum surn sapientiam causam est sempiternam.' S. August. lib. de div. quad. lxxiiii. quad. 16. And as they accounted it the propriety of the Father to be without a cause; as appears out of Alexander the bishop of Alexandria's Epistle before produced.

† We have cited Plautius speaking so before, p. 51. col. 2, to which may be added: 'Si quis intelligi adducet et de Apollosto requirit dominacam statum, id est, singularis substantiae dualitatem, quae per naturalum auctorius suo jungitur.' p. 110. et pande post: 'Sed cum referatur ex ipso, certe ad Patrem, ut ad rerum omnium scripturum auctorem.' St. Hilary is known to speak frequently of the authority of the Father, as of the author of his Son; and several places have been already collected, especially by Petavius, to which these may be added, besides what have been already produced. 'In ipso quod Pater dicitur, ejus quem genuit auctor esso-

teoditam.' De Trin. l. 4. c. 9. 'Cum potius honor Filii dignitas sit paterna, et gloriosus auctor sit ex quois, quæ salutis sit dignus, exstiterit.' Ibid. c. 10. 'Aliud est sine auctore esse semper aternum, aliud quod Patri, id est, auctori, est coeterum. Ubi enim Pater auctor, ibi et nativitas est. At vero ubi auctor aternus est, ibi et nativitas aeterna est: quia sient natiue ab auctore est, ibi ab aterno auctore aeterna nativitates est.' Ibid. l. 12. c. 21. 'Quod vero ex aeterno natum est, id si aeternum aeternum est, jam non erit et Pater auctor aeternus.' Si quid igitur ei quia aliquo Patre natura est ex aeternitate defuerit, id ipsum auctori non est ambiguam dunnisse.' Ibid. 'Natura non post aliquid, sed ante omnia; ut nativitas tantum testetur auctorem, non praestarnem aliquid in se auctore significet.' Ibid. c. 51. 'Natus autem ita, ut nihil aliud quam se sibi significent auctorem.' Ibid. c. 92. 'Ipsius tamen auctor est Pater generans sine initio.' Hymn. can. 9. 'Si propertia Deum Patrem Deo Filio diu auctorem, quia ille genuit, gen- nitus est iste, quia iste de illo est, non ille de isto; fater et conceda.' S. August. contra Maxim. l. 3. c. 14.

§ Nec dubitaverim Filium dicere et radicit fruticum, et inios fruiculum, et solis radium.' Tertull. adv. Praxeum, c. 8 'Nec frutes tamen a radice, nec frucius a fonte, nec radius a sole discernitur; sic nec a Deo servus.' Ibid. 'Esti enim quae est patet tamen έγκάθος τού ἐαυτού καὶ αλώς, μικρὸ τοῦ ὑπό καὶ τῶν αἰώνων πνευμάτων.' S. Basil. Homil. 26. 'Dominus Pater, quia radicis est Filii.' S. Ambros. in Luc. l. 10. c. 1. et de Fide, l. 4. c. 5. St. Cyril of Alex- andria speaking of the baptismal institution: 'Tων μιας γε αὐτότατα μικρός, ές άπέκει πα κατά τό σώμα του αυτού, ευφόρησε το πάτερ τών τών τις ἐν τοῦ τῆς αὐτάτας μικρός οἰκουμένη καὶ γερονιμαινα παραβολή τών οὐκ. De S. Trin. Domi. 2.'

ARTICLE I.

In the first chapter of St. John, p. 12. ‘Alius de ipsis ipsis, τί, ἐν παρεπ., τῷ πατρὶ τῷ ἐνόπερχον εις εὐφ., μάκον γὰρ τί ἐν τῇ τῆς ἐνόπερχον ἐν τοῖς ἐνοπέρχον παρέκισεν. Πατρι, quodem non genitum, non creatum, sed ingenium profitemur, ipse enim a nullo origine duci, ex quo et Filius nativitatem, et Spiritus Sanctus processionem accept. Fons ergo ipse et origo est totius divinitatis.’

*Cael. Tolent. cap. 11. Quanto majus Dei vocem credendum est et merere in aeternam, et sensu ac virtute comitari, quam de Deo Patre tamquam rivos de fonte traduxit! Lactan. de ver. Sup. 1. 4. c. 6. et rurvas, c. 69. Cum igitur et Patre Filium faciat, et Filius Patre, una utique mens, unus spiritus, una substantia est: sed ille quasi exuberans fons est, hic tamquam defluens ex eo rivos; ille tamquam sol: hic tamquam radius a sole portrecturus.‘

*Cael. caput, quod est principium omnium, Filium: caput autem, quod est principium Christi, Deus.‘

Cael. St. 1. 4. et rurvas, c. 69. ‘Cum ipsum sit omnium caput, sed caput Filii Deus ‘de Synod. c. 69. ‘Cum ipsum sit omnium caput, ipsius tamen caput est Pater.’ Ruff. in Synch. § 9. ‘Tu capitis primique caput, tu fontis origo.’


S. August. Quast. Tit. Test. 9. St. Chrysostom is so clearly of the opinion that 1 Cor. xi. 3. is to be understood of Christ as God, that from thence he proves him to have the same essence with God: ‘Et χερετα θυσίας εἰς οἶνος, χερετα θυσίας έπεις οἶνος καὶ πατρις. Quod igitur caput est, est, quod ipse est, quod est, et quod est caput deus, et quod est caput dei.’


|| Thus appeareth by those expositions which have been given of such words as seem to bear the affirmation: ‘et scripture—θέλεις, πατέρας, αὐτόγογος, αὐτογογος, έκ αυτον.’
his essence from none, that he is not begotten of any, nor hath he any cause of his existence. So that the proper notion of the Father in whom we believe is this, that he is a person subsisting eternally in the one infinite essence of the Godhead; which essence or subsistence he hath received from no other person, but hath communicated the same essence, in which himself subsisteth, by generation to another person, who by that generation is the Son.
Howsoever, it is most reasonable to assert that there is but one Person who is from none; and the very generation of the Son and procession of the Holy Ghost undeniably prove, that neither of those two can be that Person. For whosoever is generated is from him which is the genitor, and whosoever proceedeth is from him by whom he proceedeth, whatsoever the nature of the generation or procession be. It followeth therefore that this Person is the Father, which name speaks nothing of dependence, nor supposeth any kind of priority in another.

From hence it is observed that the name of God, taken absolutely, is often in the Scripture spoken of the Father; as when we read of “God sending his own Son;” (Rom. viii. 3.) of “the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God;” (2 Cor. xiii. 14) and generally wheresoever Christ is called the Son of God, or the Word of God, the name of God is to be taken particularly for the Father, because he is no Son but of the Father. From hence he is styled “one God;” (1 Cor. viii. 6. Eph. iv. 6.) “the true God;” (1 Thess. i. 9.) “the only true sanction, cannot properly be termed autòς-ζεω, no more than they autòs-εοι: or if he receive it by derivation or participation, as water receiveth heat from fire, he deserveth the same name no more than water heated to be called autòs-διαμέτρατος.

And this is fully consonant to the expressions of the rest of the ancients: as particularly Athanasius, cont. Geut. § 46. Of kai μετρητε κατα τουτο ους, ους είδον επιμονευμένον τοιτων αυτων κατά τοις αυτων μετρήτων, και συνειμανόμενοι δι' αυτων, και δι' αυτων και λογισμος και αυτως γενομενος αλλ' αυτοτροφοι, αυτοτρόφοι, αυτοελασιμος έκ τω πατρι, είσης, αυτοτερος, αυτοπαθικα, αυτοπαθειν, αυτοτεστατος. And to the same purpose: ὅτι ου μεθενετίν έχει τῆς δικαιοσύνης, αλλ' αυτοτροφίη και αυτοτρόφη τοιούτου ἐστιν τος ἁμαρτωλος, αυτότροφος, και αυτότροφος, και αυτοπαθικος, και αυτοπαθηση. In the M.S. Cutena in the King of France’s Library. Petar. de Trin. I vi. c. 11. All therefore which these compositions signify, is either a negation of a derivative participation, or an affirmation of a reality and identity of subsistence, as yet farther appears by St. Epiphanius: αυτοτροφία εστιν ο Θεως πατρες και ο γιος, και το άγιον πνευμα, και ο Θεως θερευς, and Origen himself upon St. John: ἐν αυτοδιανοιας η ψυχας Χριστου εστιν, ἄνω ἐν αυτοελασιμος ουτωσε, και ο Θεος άτιμα, προτότοκος τας εν ταυτες λογικας ψυχες αληθειας. To conclude, there is a catholic sense in which the Son, the Father, and the Holy Ghost, is to be by the ancient fathers; and another sense there is in which these terms are so proper and peculiar to the Father, that they are denied to the Son. Indeed αυτότροφοι, in the highest sense, δραμ αυτω Θεος, positively taken, belongeth neither to the Son nor to the Father, as implying a manifest contradiction; because nothing can have its being actuallly from itself, as communicated to itself, and that by itself: but in a negative way of interpretation, by which that is said to be of itself, which is and yet is not of or from another, αυτοτροφοι belongs properly to the Father, neither generated by, nor proceeding from another; and in that sense it is denied to the Son, because he is generated by the Father, as και των θεων, και σωφρονεται, και εκ πατρες ους, south St. Athanasius cont. Ar. Or. iv. § 1. from whence he thence proceeds: έκτις εις αυτον και αυτολογιαν τον Θειον αλλ' αυτοτροφον εναι και αυτολογιον τον Θειον, αλλ' ου τουτο ους εν αυτον ιαστω πατρες και ους. Ibid. § 2. And again: ει δι αυτοτροφοι ο Θεος, και το ικ τουτον εντον εξης τον Χριστον, and in another composition is taken not in obliquo, but in recto, αυτοτροφοι, that is, αυτες υ Θεως, God himself, and αυτοτροφοι, αυτες τον χριστον, life itself: so all these terms are attributed to the Son as truly, really, and essentially, as to the Father. And that the Fathers took it so appears, because they did sometimes resolve the composition: as when Eusebius calleth Christ αυτοθεος, in the Panegyric before episc, presently after he speaketh thus, l. x. § 1. p. 105. Το γαρ και ομοιος τον παρακολουθηναι και παναγιευκαται και αυτω ους λυπανταισας, το κοιλιασας, where αυτως ους is the same with αυτοθεος.

* "Ονδε αυτοπαθειν, και παπα εγκυμοναι δε γενε σαραφην, εται ετοζ, το Θεος, αυτος αυτοσωλας: και αυτοφορος τοις, και ας ιππαν ευφ ορει, και χρης χλιμακας ἀποτυακου, την πατρα δοει. Thuc. Abacata Opumae. 42."
God," (John xvii. 3.) "the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ." (2 Cor. i. 3. Eph. i. 3.)

Which, as it is most true, and so fit to be believed, is also a most necessary truth, and therefore to be acknowledged, for the avoiding multiplication* and plurality of gods. For if there were more than one which were from none, it could not be denied but there were more gods than one. Wherefore this origination‡ in the divine paternity hath anciently been looked up as the assertion of the unity: and therefore the Son and Holy Ghost have been believed to be one God with the Father, because both from the Father, who is one, and so the union§ of them.

Secondly, It is necessary thus to believe in the Father, because our salvation is propounded to us by an access unto the

atque idea duo Deos reeditisset Christus, si sine origine esset ut Pater inven- tur; et ipse principium omnium ut Pa- ter, duo faciens principium, duo osten- dissit nobis consequenter et Deos, &c.'

* * Unit at Deus, Deus tuis. Id enim quod aut, tuis, ad nativitatem referunt; ceterum non perimit naturam. Et idcirco Deus ejus est, qui ex Deo natus in Deum est. Non tamen per id quod Pater Deus est, non et Filius Deus est. Unit at Deus, Deus tuis; designata videhie et auctoris sui et ex eo genitum significatione, uno eodemque dico atrum- que illum in natura ejusdem et dignitatis nuncupatione coosititu.' S. Hilari, de Trin. l. i. c. 35. 'Deo enim ex quo omnia sunt, Deus nullo est, qui sine initio arternus est. Filio autem Deus Pater est, ex eo enim Deus natus est.' Ibid. c. 37. 'Cum autem ex Deo Deus est, per id Deus Pater ex Domino et naturativus ejus Deus est, et naturae Pater, quia Deus nativitas et ex Deo est, et in ea generis est natura qui Deus est.' Id. l. xi. c. 11. So St. Cyril of Jerusalem, Catech. xi. Theis o genititis, Theis o genititis: Theis utrumque Deus est. S. Basil. Homil. 26. 'In duo- bus ingenitis diversa divinitas inventur; in uno autem genitum ex uno ingenio na- turabilis unitas demonstratur.' Fulgen. Resp. contra Arian. a f. Obi. 5. 'Sic quia insecundum et sine initio dicat Filium, tamen duo sibique principio, et duo in- secundus, et duo immutus dicens, duo facit Deus, Anathema sit.' Concil. Sirm. [Vid. p 56. col. 2.] 'Deus utique procedens ex Deo secundum personam efficiens, sed non eiens illum Patrum quod unus est Deus. Si enim natus non esset, immutat comparatus cum eo qui esset immutat aquatione in utroque ostensu, duo faceri- ret immutatur, et idea duo faceret Deus. Si non genitus esset, collatis cum eo qui genitus non esset, et aequalis invent, duos Deos merito reeditissent non genitum.
Father. We are all gone away and fallen from God, and we must be brought to him again. There is no other notion under which we can be brought to God as to be saved, but the notion of the Father; and there is no other person can bring us to the Father, but the Son of that Father: for, as the apostle teacheth us, “through him we have an access by one Spirit unto the Father.” (1 Eph. ii. 18.)

Having thus described the true nature and notion of the divine *paternity* in all the several degrees and eminences belonging to it, I may now clearly deliver, and every particular Christian understand what it is he speaks, when he makes his confession in these words, *I believe in God the Father:* by which I conceive him to express thus much:

As I am assured that there is an infinite and independent Being, which we call *a God,* and that it is impossible there should be more infinities than one: so I assure myself that this one God is the *Father of all things,* especially of all men and angels, so far as the mere act of creation may be styled generation; that he is farther yet, and in a more peculiar manner, the *Father of all those whom he regenerateth by his Spirit,* whom he adopteth in his Son, as heirs and coheirs with him, whom he crowneth with the reward of an eternal inheritance in the heavens. But beyond and far above all this, besides his general offspring and peculiar people, “to whom he hath given power to become the sons of God;” (John i. 12.) I believe him the Father in a more eminent and transcendent manner, of one singular and proper Son, his own, his beloved, his only-begotten Son: whom he hath not only begotten of the blessed Virgin, by the coming of the Holy Ghost, and the overshadowing of his power; not only sent with special authority as the King of Israel; not only raised from the dead, and made heir of all things in his house; but antecedently to all this, hath begotten him by way of eternal generation in the same Divinity and Majesty with himself; by which *paternity,* coeval to the Deity, I acknowledge him always *Father,* as much as always *God.* And in this relation, I profess that eminency and priority, that as he is the original Cause of all things as created by him, so is he the fountain of the Son begotten of him, and of the Holy Ghost proceeding from him.

**I believe in God the Father Almighty.**

After the relation of God’s paternity, immediately followeth the glorious attributes of his *omnipotency:* *that as those*

---

* For the oldest and shortest Creed had always this attribute expressed in it. Insomuch that *παντοκράτωρ* was ordinarily by the ancients taken for the Father, as Origen, *adv. Celsum,* l. vii. § 10. Ἐγένετο δ' ἀπ' αὐτοῦ,—ἐκείνοις αὐτοῖς λίπετο τὰς προ-φητείας εἰτ' ἐν αἰεὶ θεὸς παντοκράτωρ ἐπηγ-γίλλητο ἐκαί ὁ λόγος, εἴτ' ἐν αἰεὶ ὁ Θεός τῷ Θεῷ, εἴτ' ἐν αἰεὶ τὸ πατήρ τῷ ἅγιον λόγον ἐκαί ἐπηγίλλητο. And according to this general confession did Polycarp begin his prayer at his martyrdom: Ἰδον θεὸς τοῦ παντοκράτο- ρος, ὁ τῶν ἁγίων καὶ ὑληστῶν παιδίσι σου ἰσότως Χριστῷ πατρί. *Ecces. Smyrn. Epist.*
in heaven in their devotions, so we on earth in our confessions might acknowledge that "Holy, holy, holy Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come;" (Rev. iv. 8.) that in our solemn meetings of the Church of God, with the joint expression and concurrence of the congregation, we might some way imitate that "voice of a great multitude, as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia, for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth." (Rev. xix. 6.)

This notion of Almighty in the Creed, must certainly be interpreted according to the sense which the original word bareth in the New Testament; and that cannot be better understood than by the Greek writers or interpreters of the Old, especially when the notion itself belongs unto the Gospel and the Law indifferently. Now the word which we translate Almighty,‡ the most ancient Greek interpreters used sometimes for the title of God, the Lord of Hosts, sometimes for his name Shaddai, as generally in the Book of Job: by the first, they seem to signify the rule and dominion which God hath over all; by the second, the strength, force, or power by which he is able to perform all things. "The heavens and the earth were finished (saith Moses), and all the host of them." (Gen. ii. 1.) and he which began them, he which finished them, is the ruler and commander of them. Upon the right of creation doth he justly challenge this dominion. "I have made the earth, and created man upon it: I, even my hands, have stretched out the heavens, and all their host have I commanded." (Isa. xliv. 12.) And on this dominion or command doth he raise the title of the Lord of Hosts;‡ which, though preserved in the original language both by St. Paul and St. James, yet by St. John is turned into that word which we translate Almighty. Wherefore from the use of the sacred writers, from the notion of the word in Greek, and from the testi-

* Of παρθένιον εὐλογίας, τόν παντοκράτορα πατηρα καλεῖν. Constit. Apost. l. i. Proem.
‡ Παντοκράτωρ, translated by Tertullian and St. Augustine Omnipotens (as Tertul- lian translates κυριακότητας: munificent- is), by Prudentius Omnipotens, by all Omnipotens (as St. Hilary translated κυριακότητας: munipotent), and, as I ver- y well, it is translated Capax universorum, by the Latin interpreter of Hermas. "Primum omnium credo quod unus est Deus, qui omnia creavit, et consum- mavit, et ex nihilum fecit. Ipse capax universorum, solus immensus est." i. ii. Mand. i. Which by the interpreter of Irenaeus is thus translated: * Omnia capax, et qui a nemine capiatur." l. iv. c. 37.
§ Ει μὲν Κύριος Σαβαὼν ἐγρατιλογίων ἡμῶν σπέρμα. Rom. ix. 29. the words of Isai. i. 9. Καὶ αἱ ήθείς τῶν δεσπότων ὅταν τὰ ἔστα Κυρίων Σαβαὼν εἰσηλθόντες, Jason. v. 4. which are the words of which St. James in relation to Deut. xxiv. 13. "Αγγελοὶ, ἀγγέλοι, ἀγγέλος Κύριος ἐστιν"; ἀ παντοκράτωρ. Rev. iv. 8, which are before in Apoc. "Αγγελοὶ, ἀγγέλοι, ἀγγέλος Κύριος Σαβαὼν. Isa. vi. 3. τὰ ἐκ λαοῦ ἐρήμων και παρὰ τοῦ Σαβαὼν φωνή, πολλάχως τῶν ἀνθρώπων παραλαμβάνων ἐτύχοντο, καὶ ἦσαν ἀναλυόμενοι τὰ ὀφθαλμα ἕν τῷ Κυρίῳ τῶν διδάσκαλων, καὶ Κύριος στρατιῶν, καὶ παντοκράτωρ (διὰφέρει γὰρ αὐτὸ ἐξεῖδεν οἱ ἀγγέλοι αὐτῶν, ὡς ποιοῦσαν. Orig. contra Celts. l. iv. §. 13.

† That παντοκράτωρ should have the signification of government in it, according to the composition in the Greek language, no man can doubt, who but only
mony of the ancient fathers, * we may well ascribe unto God the Father, in the explication of this article, the dominion over all, and the rule and government of all.

This authority or power properly potestative is attributed unto God in the sacred Scriptures; † from whence those names or titles, ‡ which most aptly and fully express dominion, are frequently given unto him; and the rule, empire, or government of the world is acknowledged to be wholly in him, as necessarily following that natural and eternal right of dominion.

What the nature of this authoritative power is, we shall the more clearly understand, if we first divide it into three degrees or branches of it: the first whereof we may conceive, a right of making and framing any thing which he willeth, in any manner as it pleaseth him, according to the absolute freedom of his own will; the second, a right of having and possessing all things so made and framed by him, as his own, properly belonging to him, as to the Lord and Master of them, by virtue of direct dominion; the third, a right of using and disposing all things so in his possession, according to his own pleasure. The first of these we mention only for the necessity of it, and the dependence of the other two upon it. God's actual dominion being no otherwise necessary, than upon supposition of a precedent act of creation; because nothing, before it hath a being, can belong to any one, neither can any propriety be imagined in that which hath no entity.

* As we have seen, in the beginning of this article, the dominion given unto God the Father, is ascribed unto him in the sacred Scriptures, under the names and titles which most aptly express dominion; as God the first, Father, God the second, Father, God the third, Father.

† The word dominion is used sometimes in an otherwise sense, as in Acts 2:29 and 16:17. In the former passage it is used in the sense of authority; in the latter, it is used in the sense of rule. In both cases, it is used in the sense of power, and not of dominion.

‡ The word dominion is used sometimes in an otherwise sense, as in Acts 2:29 and 16:17. In the former passage it is used in the sense of authority; in the latter, it is used in the sense of rule. In both cases, it is used in the sense of power, and not of dominion.
I BELIEVE IN GOD THE FATHER ALMIGHTY.

But the second branch or absolute dominion of this Almighty, is farther to be considered in the independency and infinity of it. First, it is independent in a double respect, in reference both to the original, and the use thereof. For God hath received no authority from any, because he hath all power originally in himself, and hath produced all things by the act of his own will, without any commander, counsellor, or coadju tor. Neither doth the use or exercise of this dominion depend upon any one, so as to receive any direction or regulation, or to render any account of the administration of it; as being illimited, absolute, and supreme, and so the fountain from whence all dominion in any other is derived. Wherefore he being the "God of gods," is also the "Lord of lords, and King of kings," the "only Potentate,"* because he alone hath all the power of himself, and whosoever else hath any, hath it from him, either by donation or permission.

The infinity of God's dominion, if we respect the object, appears in the amplitude or extension; if we look upon the manner, in the plentitude or perfection; if we consider the time, in the eternity of duration. The amplitude of the object is sufficiently evidenced by those apppellations which the Holy Writ ascribeth unto the Almighty, calling him the "Lord of heaven," the "Lord of the whole earth," the "Lord of heaven and earth,"† under which two are comprehended all things both in heaven and earth. This Moses taught the distrust ing Israelites in the wilderness: "Behold the heaven and the heaven of heavens is the Lord's thy God, the earth also with all that is therein." (Deut. x. 14.) With these words David (Psal. lxxxix. 11.) glorifieth God: "the heavens are thine, the earth also is thine," so acknowledging his dominion; "as for the world and the fulness thereof, thou hast founded them," so expressing the foundation or ground of that dominion. And yet more fully, at the dedication of the offerings for the building of the Temple, to shew that what they gave was of his own, he saith, "Thine, O Lord, is the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty: for all that is in the heaven and in the earth is thine. Thine is the kingdom, O Lord, and thou art exalted as head above all. Both riches and honour come of thee, and thou reignest over all." (1 Chron. xxix. 11, 12.)‡ If then we look upon the object of God's dominion, it is of that amplitude and extension, that it includeth and comprehendeth all things; so that nothing can be imagined which is not his, belonging to him as the true owner and

* Deut. x. 17. Psal. cxxvi. 3. Rev. xvii. 14, xiv. 16. μέσος δοῦλός τε. 1 Tim. vi. 15 οὖσας δοῦλότης. Ezech. xlvii. 5. οὐσίας δοῦλος. 2 Mac. xx. 29. διοίκησις τινής. 2 Mac. v. 2. ο ἑαυτοῦ πάντων κύριος. 1 Tim. ii. 5. ο ἑαυτοῦ θεοῦ κύριος. 2 Mac. iii. 24. Διανομή. ηττορειν. 11. Θ. 13.


‡ ἡμέρα θεοῦ ἐν οἴκῳ ἐν πάντα πάντων καὶ ἐνοχαὶ πάντων ἐν οἴκῳ ζωῆς καὶ πάντων. Χειροφ. de expedit. Cyr. l. vi. c. 5. 6. 7.
proprietor, and subject wholly to his will as the sole governor and disposer: in respect of which universal power we must confess him to be Almighty.

If we consider the manner and nature of this power, the plenitude thereof or perfection will appear: for as in regard of the extension, he hath power over all things; so in respect of the intention, he hath all power over every thing, as being absolute and supreme. This God challenged to himself, when he catechized the prophet Jeremy in a potter's house, saying, "O house of Israel, cannot I do with you as this potter? saith the Lord. Behold, as the clay is in the potter's hand, so are ye in my hand, O house of Israel." (Jer. xviii. 6.) That is, God hath as absolute power and dominion over every person, over every nation and kingdom on the earth, as the potter hath over the pot he maketh, or the clay he mouldeth. Thus are we wholly at the disposal of his will, and our present and future condition framed and ordered by his free, but wise and just, decrees. "Hath not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel unto honour, and another unto dishonour?" (Rom. ix. 21.) And can that earth-artificer have a freer power over his brother potsherd (both being made of the same metal), than God hath over him, who by the strange fecundity of his omnipotent power, first made the clay out of nothing, and then him out of that?

The duration of God's dominion must likewise necessarily be eternal, if any thing which is be immortal. For, being every thing is therefore his, because it received its being from him, and the continuation of the creature is as much from him as the first production; it followeth that so long as it is continued it must be his, and consequently, being some of his creatures are immortal, his dominion must be eternal. Wherefore St. Paul expressly calleth God "the King eternal," (1 Tim. i. 17.)* with reference to that of David, "thy kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and thy dominion endureth throughout all generations." (Psal. cxlv. 13.)† And Moses in his Song hath told us, "the Lord shall reign for ever and ever!" (Exod. xv. 18.)‡ which phrase for ever and ever in the original signifies thus much, that there is no time to come assignable or imaginable, but after and beyond that God shall reign.

The third branch of God's authoritative or pottestative power consisteth in the use of all things in his possession, by virtue of his absolute dominion. For it is the general dictate of reason, that the use, benefit, and utility of any thing, reundeveth unto him whose it is, and to whom as to the proprietor it

---

* Τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν αἰώνων.
† κύριος ἡμῖν ὁ θεός ἀπὸ τῆς γένεσις ΛΧΧ. βασιλείας πάντων τῶν αἰώνων.
‡ דְּרָה בֵּיתָו לָכֶם לְאָלְם וְלְוַיִּם. LXX. וּלְאָלְם וּלְוַיִּם. So Aquila, Hier. in seculum et ulter. So Aquila, Theod. and the fifth edit. in Psal. xxi. 4.

So the LXX again. Dan. xii. 7. τῷ τῶν αἰώνων καὶ ἐπὶ τρία, and Mich. iv. 5. τῷ τῶν αἰώνων καὶ ἐπὶ τρία.
I BELIEVE IN GOD THE FATHER ALMIGHTY.

It is true indeed, that God, who is all-sufficient and infinitely happy in and of himself, so that no accession ever could or can be made to his original felicity, cannot receive any real benefit and utility from the creature. "Thou art my Lord (saith David), my goodness extendeth not to thee." (Psal. xvi. 2)* And therefore our only and absolute Lord, because his goodness extendeth unto us, and not ours to him, because his dominion is for our benefit, not for his own: for us who want, and therefore may receive: not for himself who cannot receive, because he wanteth nothing, whose honour standeth not in his own, but in our receiving.†

But though the universal Cause made all things for the benefit of some creatures framed by him, yet hath he made them ultimately for himself; and God is as universally the final as the efficient cause of his operations. The apostle hath taught us, that not only "of him," and "by him," as the first author, but also "to him," and "for him," as the ultimate end, "are all things." (Rom. xi. 36. 1 Cor. viii. 6. Heb. ii. 10.) And it is one of the proverbial sentences of Solomon, "The Lord hath made all things for himself, yea even the wicked for the day of evil." (Prov. xvi. 4.) For though he cannot receive any real benefit or utility from the creature, yet he can and doth in a manner receive that which hath some similitude or affinity with it. Thus God "rejoiceth," (Psal. civ. 31.) at the effects of his wisdom, power, and goodness, and taketh delight in the works of his hands. Thus doth he order and dispose of all things unto his own glory, which redoundeth from the demonstration of his attributes.

An explicit belief of this authoritative power and absolute dominion of the Almighty is necessary, First, for the breeding in us an awful reverence of his majesty, and entire subjection to his will. For to the highest excellency the greatest honour, to the supreme authority the most exact obedience is no more duty. If God be our absolute Lord, we his servants and vassals, then is there a right in him to require of us whatsoever

---

* Ille nostra servitute non indiget, nos vero dominatione illius indigemus, ut operetur et custodiat nos: et idem verus et solus est Dominus, qui non illi ad suam, sed ad nostram utilitatem salutemque, servimus. Nam si nobis indigeret, eo ipso non verus Dominus esset, cum per nos ejus adjuvarete necessitas, sub qua et ipse serviret. S. August. de Gen. ad lit. l. viii. c. 11, Dixi Domino, Deus meus est tu: quare? quantum honorem non egere. Ille non eget nostri, nos egemus ipsius; idem verus Dominus. Nam tu non valde verus Dominus servitui; ambo homines, ambo egentes Deo. Si vero putas euge tu servum tuum, ut des panem; eges et tu servi tui, ut adjuvet labores tuos. Ut ergo veniam altrum verum indiget: staque nubilus verum verus domus, et nulius verum vero servus. Audi veram Dominum, cujus verus es servus, Dixi Domino, Deus meus est tu: quare tu dominus? quantum honorem non egere. Id. ad Psal. lxix.

† Tum autem summa tuae, uti supradicta in deo est, a quo eis eum modo prorsum modo praebetur litteris, Hierem. in Aurea Car. p. 22. ed. prin. And again; "O inquit, uti tibi deum adiutorium, si vos atque eum dignum unam tuam tibi eum esse, quod, quia quidem, p. 23.

‡ Hdiem dico magis deus patrisque bovi, "O Deus Patrisque, et Dominum Bovi, Hor. ii. 241.
we can perform, and an obligation upon us to perform whatsoever he commandeth. Whosoever doth otherwise, while he confesseth, denieth him; while he acknowledgeth him with his tongue, he sets his hand against him. "Why call ye me Lord, Lord (saith our Saviour), and do not the things which I say?" (Luke vi. 46.)

Secondly, This belief is also necessary to breed in us equanimity and patience in our sufferings, to prevent all murmuring, repining, and objecting against the actions or determinations of God, as knowing that he, who is absolute Lord, cannot abuse his power; he, whose will is a law to us, cannot do any thing unwisely or unjustly. "Let the potsherd strive with the potsherds of the earth: shall the clay say to him that fashioneth it, What makes thou?" (Isa. xlv. 9.) But let the man after God's own heart rather teach us humble and religious silence. "I was dumb (saith he), and opened not my mouth, because thou didst it." (Psal. xxxix. 9.) When Shimei cast stones at him, and cursed him, let us learn to speak as he then spake: "The Lord hath said unto him, Curse David: who shall then say, Wherefore hast thou done so?" (2 Sam. xvi. 10.)

Thirdly, The belief of God's absolute dominion is yet farther necessary to make us truly and sufficiently sensible of the benefits we receive from him, so as by a right value and estimation of them to understand how far we stand obliged to him. No man can duly prize the blessings of heaven, but he who acknowledgeth they might justly have been denied him; nor can any be sufficiently thankful for them, except it be confessed that he owed him nothing who bestowed them.

But as the original word for Almighty is not put only for the Lord of Hosts, but often also for the Lord Shaddai; so we must not restrain the signification to the power authoritative, but extend it also to that power which is properly operative, and executive. In the title of the Lord of Sabaoth we understand the rule and dominion of God, by which he hath a right of governing all: in the name Shaddai we apprehend an infinite force and strength, by which he is able to work and perform all things. For whether we take this word in composition, as signifying the All-sufficient; whosoever is able to suppeditate all things to the sufficing all, must have an infinite power; or whether we deduce it from the root denoting vastation or destruction; whosoever can destroy the being of

* Εκαί τόις ἀστὴ καὶ καταραγὴ καὶ νῖσος καὶ τού δικαίου τού πνεύμα τινες κατις θυσίας πρὸς τούτων ἐνα δέ τοι ἐξήκ.
† So R Solomon will have it compounded of τος the pronoun and τις, ὦ τις ἄνθρωπος because in God there is sufficiency, that is, sufficient power over every creature: from whence the LXX. Ruth i. 20, 21. Job xxi. 15. xxxii. 2. translate it θυσία, as Symmachus, Job xxi. 3. and Aquila with him, Ezek. i. 24.
‡ καὶ τοὺς ναρτατίδ, διευκύατι, περιδείπτη; from whence γὰρ the destroyer; and because utter destruction requireth power equi-
I BELIEVE IN GOD THE FATHER ALMIGHTY. 69

all things, and reduce them unto nothing; must have the same power which originally produced all things out of nothing, and that is infinite. Howsoever the first notion of Almighty necessarily inferreth the second, and the infinity of God's dominion speaketh him infinitely powerful in operation.* Indeed in earthly dominions, the strength of the governor is not in himself, but in those whom he governeth: and he is a powerful prince whose subjects are numerous. But the King of kings hath all power in himself all power of execution, as well as right of dominion. Were all the force and strength of a nation in the person of the king, as the authority is, obedience would not be arbitrary, nor could rebellion be successful: whereas experience teacheth us that the most puissant prince is compelled actually to submit, when the stronger part of his own people hath taken the boldness to put a force upon him. But we must not imagine that the Governor of the world ruleth only over them which are willing to obey, or that any of his creatures may dispute his commands with safety, or cast off his yoke with impunity. And if his dominion be uncontrollable, it is because his power is irresistible. For man is not more inclinable to obey God than man; but God is more powerful to exact subjection, and to vindicate rebellion. In respect of the infinity, and irresistibility of which active power we must acknowledge him Almighty; and so, according to the most vulgar acceptation, give the second explication of his omnipotence.†

But because this word Almighty is twice repeated in the Creed,‡ once in this first Article, and again in the sixth, where Christ is represented sitting at the right hand of God the Father Almighty: and although in our English and the Latin the same words be expressed in both places, yet in the ancient Greek copies there is a manifest distinction; being the word in the first Article may equally comprehend God's power in operation, as well as authority in dominion; whereas that in the sixth speaketh only infinity of power, without relation to authority or dominion: I shall therefore reserve the explication of the latter unto its proper place, designing to

* Homer hath well joined these two: Ἑπὶ πάντα πατέσας. And this etymology rather than the former, seemeth to be confirmed by the prophet, Isa. viii. 6. "Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand, καὶ χρήσης. It shall come as a destruction from the Almighty (destructor)."

† Hoc nisi credamus, pene citatur ipsum nostrae fidei confessionis initium, qua nos in Deum Patrem Omnipotentem credere confitemur. Neque enim veraciter ob alium vocatur Omnipotens, nisi quoniam quicquid vult potest, nec voluntate cujusquam creatur voluntatis omnipotentis impeditur effectus." S. August, Euchir. c. 96.

‡ Artic. 1. Πεπείθον τις: θεόν πατέρα πατρικάτος. Artic. 6. καθεξής εἰς ἐδραὶ ἐκείνον πατήσας παντοδύναμον: as it is in the ancient copy of the Creed, taken out of the library of Bene't College; and set forth by the Archbishop of Armagh.
treat particularly of God's infinite power where it is most peculiarly expressed; and so conclude briefly with two other interpretations which some of the ancients have made of the original word, belonging rather to philosophy than divinity, though true in both. For some have stretched this word Almighty according to the Greek notation,* to signify that God holdeth, encircleth, and containeth all things. "Who hath gathered the wind in his fists? who hath bound the waters in a garment? who hath established all the ends of the earth?" (Prov. xxx. 4.) who but God? "Who hath measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and meted out heaven with the span, and comprehended the dust of the earth in a measure?" (Isa. xl. 12.) who but he? Thus then may he be called Almighty, as holding, containing, and comprehending all things.

Others extend it farther yet, beyond that of containing or comprehension, to a more immediate influence of sustaining or preservation.† For the same power which first gave being unto all things, containeth the same being unto all. "God giveth to all, life, and breath, and all things. In him we live, move, and have our being," (Acts xvii. 25, 28.) saith the strangest philosopher that ever entered Athens, the first expositor of that blind inscription, "To the unknown God." "How could any thing have endured, if it had not been thy will? or been preserved, if not called by thee?" (Wisd. xi. 25.) as the wisdom of the Jews confesseth. Thus did the Levites stand and bless: "Thou, even thou, art Lord alone: thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the sea, and all that is therein, and thou preservest them all." (Neh. ix. 6.) Where the continual conservation of the creature is in equal latitude attributed unto God with their first production. Because there is an absolute necessity of preserving us from returning unto nothing by annihilation, as there was for first bestowing an existence on us by creation. And in this sense God is undoubtedly Almighty, in that he doth sustain, uphold, and constantly preserve all things in that being which they have.

From whence we may at last declare what is couched under this attribute of God, how far this omnipotency extends

---

* As Theophilus bishop of Antioch, giving account of those words which are attributed unto God, as θεός, κύριος, ἀληθις, tells us he is called παντεκτάω, eti αύτος, τα πάντα κρατεῖ και ἀναψηφεῖ, τα γαρ ἐν τινὶ σφραγεῖ, και τα βασιλεῖα των ἀδελφών, και τα πέπτα τῆς ὁμομοίωσιν ἐστιν τῷ χειρί αὐτῶν ἐστι. Ad August. l. i. p. 71. ed. Colon. 1686.

itself, and what every Christian is thought to profess, when he addeth this part of the first Article of his CREED, I believe in God the Father Almighty.

As I am persuaded of an infinite and independent Essence, which I term a God, and of the mystery of an eternal generation by which that God is a Father: so I assure myself that Father is not subject to infirmities of age, nor is there any weakness attending on the "Ancient of days;" (Dan. vii. 9. 13. 22.) but, on the contrary, I believe omnipotency to be an essential attribute of his Deity, and that not only in respect of operative and active power (concerning which I shall have occasion to express my faith hereafter), but also in regard of power authoritative, in which I must acknowledge his antecedent and eternal right of making what, and when, and how he pleased, of possessing whatsoever he maketh by direct dominion, of using and disposing as he pleaseth all things which he so possesseth. This dominion I believe most absolute in respect of its independency, both in the original, and the use or exercise thereof: this I acknowledge infinite for amplitude or extension, as being a power over all things without exception; for plentitude or perfection, as being all power over every thing without limitation; for continuance or duration, as being eternal without end or conclusion. Thus I believe in GOD THE FATHER ALMIGHTY.

Maker of Heaven and Earth.

Although this last part of the first Article were not expressed in the ancient CREEDS,* yet the sense thereof was delivered in the first rules of faith,† and at last these particular

* For we find it not mentioned by St. Augustine de Fide et Symboli; neither hath Rufinus expounded it in the Aquelian, or noted it to be found in the Roman or oriental CREEDS. Leo, reciting the three first articles in his epistle to Flavianus, maketh no mention of it. Epist. 10. Maximus Taurinensis hath it not in Traditio Symboli, nor Petrus Chrysologus in his Sermons, amongst six several expositions. It is not in the Homilies of Eusebius Gallicanus, or the exposition of Venantius Fortunatus. Marcellus bishop of Aquylea left it at Rome with Julianus; nor did Arius in his catholic confession unto Constantine acknowledge it. Neither are the words to be found in the Latin or Greek copy of the Creed, written about the beginning of the eighth century, and published out of the MSS. by the most reverend and learned Archbishop of Armagh; or in that which Etherius and Beatus produced against Elipandus archbishop of Toledo, towards the end of the seventh century.

† As in that delivered by Irenaeus: 'Elice dein patetem pantokrator, to thn peripoin kata tov oikovv Kai tov gyn Kai tvx dakhos Kai pai tov av tov. Ader. Har. 1. 1. c. 2. And that by Tertullian: 'Unum omnino Deum esse, nec alium praeter mundi conditorem, qui universa de nihil produserit.' De praece. adv. Har. c. 13. And that under the name of Novatian, not in formal words, but with an (id est) by way of explication: Regula exigu, veritatis ut primo omnium credamus in Deum Patrem et Dominium Omnipotentem, id est, rerum omnium perfectissimum conditorem, qui cadum alta sublimite suspenderit, terram dejecta mole solidavit, maria soluto liqueo diffusi, et hoc omnia propriis et condignis instrumentis et ornata et plena digestis.' De Trin. c. i. It was also observed by Origen, that the Christians were wont most frequently to mention God under that as the most common
words inserted both in the Greek and Latin confessions. And indeed the work of creation most properly followed the attribute of omnipotency, as being the foundation of the first, and the demonstration of the second explication of it. As then we believe there is a God, and that God Almighty; as we acknowledge that same God to be the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, and in him of us: so we also confess, that the same God the Father made both heaven and earth. For the full explication of which operation, it will be sufficient, first to declare the latitude of the object, what is comprehended under the terms of heaven and earth; secondly, to express the nature of the action, the true notion of creation, by which they were made; and thirdly, to demonstrate the Person to whom this operation is ascribed.

For the first, I suppose it cannot be denied as the sense of that Creed, that under the terms of heaven and earth are comprehended all things: because the first rules of faith did so express it; and the most ancient Creeds had, either instead of these words, or together with them, the Maker of all things visible and invisible, which being terms of immediate contradiction, must consequently be of universal comprehension; nor is there anything imaginable which is not visible, or invisible. Being then these were the words of the Nicene Creed; being the addition of heaven and earth in the Constantinopolitan could be no diminution to the former, which they still retained together with them, saying, I believe in one God the Father Almighty, Maker of heaven and earth, and of all things visible and invisible; it followeth, that they which in the Latin Church made use only of this last addition, could not choose but take it in the full latitude of the first expression.

And well may this be taken as the undoubted sense of the Creed, because it is the known language of the sacred Scriptures. "In six days (saith Moses) the Lord made heaven and earth:" (Exod. xxi. 17.) in the same time, saith God himself, "the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is." (Exod. xx. 11.) So that all things by those two must be understood which are contained in them; and we know no being which is made or placed without them. When God would call a general rendezvous, and make up a universal auditor, the
prophet cries out, "Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth." (Isa. i. 2.) When he would express the full splendour of his majesty, and utmost extent of his actual dominion, "Thus saith the Lord, the heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool." (Isa. lxvi. 1.) When he would challenge unto himself those glorious attributes of immensity and omnipresence, "Do not I fill heaven and earth? saith the Lord." (Jer. xxiii. 24.) These two then taken together signify the Universe, or that which is called the World. St. Paul hath given a clear exposition of these words in his explication of the Athenian altar: "God that made the world and all things therein, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, dwelleth not in temples made with hands." (Acts xvii. 24.) For being God is necessarily the Lord of all things which he made (the right of his direct dominion being clearly grounded upon the first creation), except we should conceive the apostle to exempt some creature from the authoritative power of God, and so take some work of his hand out of the reach of his arm; we must confess that heaven and earth are of as large extent and ample signification as the world and all things therein. Where it is yet farther observable, that the apostle hath conjoined the speech of both Testaments together. For the ancient Hebrews seem to have had no word in them which singly of itself did signify the world, as the Greeks had, in whose language St. Paul did speak; and therefore they used in conjunction the heaven and earth, as the grand extremities within which all things are contained.* Nay, if we take the exposition of the later writers in that language, those two words will not only as extremities comprehend between them, but in the extension of their own significations contain all things in them. For when they divide the Universe into three worlds,† the inferior, the superior, and the middle world; the lower is wholly contained in the name of earth, the other two under the name of heaven. Nor do the Hebrews

* Calvin: οἱ πάντες σχεδόν ἐξεβάλλον τας ἄκρας, οἱ πάντες τα και γη, τα μεσα συμπεριλαμβανομενοι στοιχεία. τες δε ἢκες φημι; ὅτι γε μετὰ το κινητα παντὸς ἐμπεριλάμβανας καὶ το τοιοῦτο μεν ἄχρη πάντων ἡ γη, πέρας δι τούτων ο πάντα περισσώοιρες; τούτων δε αὐτῶν, ἄρχη μεν ὁ οὐρανος, πέρας δι τοπίων ἡ γη; μενα δι σύμφωνοι καὶ τις ρητα τα λοιπα τιμα περιλαμβανομεν στοιχεία. Jo. Philip. de Mundo Creat. 1. i. c. 5. Το μεν οὔρανος ο εἰρήνα (το φύσις) το περιζ το παντος ατεινιας. το δι περιγορία τ κινητα εν δε ουρανος αλλως μεν το κινητα άρχη, αλλως δι το περιχώστος ϕρον. Hierot. in Ann. Carm. v. 52. p. 243.

† For the Rabbinus usually divide the whole frame of things into παρθενενε των three worlds: the first, καιροίς αποθεοις the inferior, or ἄνωθεν του the di-pressed and lowest world; ἄνωθεν τα δια that is this world, say they, to wit, this globe of earth on which we live. This they divide into three parts; βασιλεύοντος the desert, solitary and uninhabitable places. καιροίς αποθεοις far from the habitations of men, and ἄνωθεν the highest heavens, the earth inhabited. The second is called καιροίς αποθεοις and ἄνωθεν the middle or immemorial world; υπερηφανος to the superior world; διοικητης σωματων this is the world of angels, διοικητης of God, of souls. υπερηφανος the spiritual world. Now being these three compre- hend all things imaginable; being the first is sufficiently expressed in τοπιν the earth, and the last in ἄνωθεν the heaven; it followeth that, in the sense of the Hebrews, heaven and earth signify all things.
ARTICLE I.

only use this manner of expression, but even the Greeks themselves; and that not only before, but after* Pythagoras† had accustomed them to one name. As therefore under the single name of World or Universe,‡ so also under the conjunctive expression of heaven and earth, are contained all things material and immaterial, visible and invisible.

But as the apostle hath taught us to reason, "When he saith all things are put under him, it is manifest that he is excepted which did put all things under him:" (1 Cor. xv. 27.) so when we say, all things were made by God, it is as manifest that he is excepted who made all things. And then the proposition is clearly thus delivered: All beings whatsoever beside God were made. As we read in St. John concerning the World, that "the world was made by him;" (John i. 10.) and in more plain and express words before, "All things were made by him, and without him was not any thing made that was made." (John i. 3.) Which is yet farther illustrated by St. Paul: "For by him were all things created that are in heaven and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers; all things were created by him." (Col. i. 16.) If then there be nothing imaginable which is not either in heaven or in earth, nothing which is not either visible or invisible, then is there nothing beside God which was not made by God.

This then is the unquestionable doctrine of the Christian faith, that the vast capacious frame of the World, and every thing any way contained and existing in it, hath not its essence from or of itself, nor is of existence absolutely necessary; but what it is, it hath not been, and that being which it hath was made, framed, and constituted by another. And as "every house is built by some man;" (Heb. iii. 4.) for we see the earth bears no such creature of itself; stones do not grow into a wall, or first hew and square, then unite and fasten themselves together in their generation; trees sprout not cross like dry and sapless beams, nor do spars and tiles spring with a natural uniformity into a roof, and that out of stone and mortar: these are not the works of nature, but superstructions and additions to her, as the supplies of art, and the testimonies of the understanding of man, the great artificer on earth: so, if the World itself be but a house.§ if the earth, which "hangeth

* καὶ τὰς ἀκολουθίας, εἰς ἑνὸς θεοῦ.

† ἤμωνάμερος πρῶτος ἔκμασε τὴν τοῦ θανὸν περίτοιον, κάρμαν, ἐκ τῆς ἐν αὐτῷ τάξεως.

‡ Ὁ Μεναδεμος διέξερε, ἵλικ ἐρη ἐκ καλοῦ, καὶ τὰ ἐν εἰς τάξιν τάτης.

§ Πτολ. in Gorg., p. 152. ed. Bomp.
upon nothing,” (Job xxvi. 7.) be the foundation, and the glorious spheres of heaven the roof (which hath been delivered as the most universal hypothesis), if this be the habitation of an infinite intelligence, the temple of God;* then must we acknowledge the world was built by him, and consequently, that “he which built all things is God.” (Heb. iii. 4.)

From hence appears the truth of that distinction, Whatever hath any being, is either made or not made: whatsoever is not made, is God; whatsoever is not God is made. One uncreated and independent essence; all other depending on it, and created by it. One of eternal and necessary existence; all other indifferent, in respect of actual existing, either to be or not to be, and that indifferency determined only by the free and voluntary act of the first Cause.

Now because to be thus made includes some imperfection, and among the parts of the world, some are more glorious than others; if those which are most perfect presuppose a Maker, then can we not doubt of a creation where we find far less perfection. This house of God, though uniform, yet is not all of the same materials, the footstool and the throne are not of the same mould; there is a vast difference between the heavenly expansions. This first aerial heaven, where God setteth up his pavilion, where “he maketh the clouds his chariot, and walketh upon the wings of the wind,” (Psal. civ. 3.) is not so far inferior in place as it is in glory to the next, the seat of the sun and moon, the two great lights, and stars innumerable, far greater than the one of them. And yet that second heaven is not so far above the first as beneath the “third,” (2 Cor. xiii. 2.) into which St. Paul was caught. The brightness of the sun doth not so far surpass the blackness of a wandering cloud, as the glory of that heaven of presence surmounts the fading beauty of the starry firmament. For in this great temple of the World, in which the Son of God is the high-priest, the heaven which we see is but the veil, and that which is above, the Holy of Holies. This veil indeed is rich and glorious, but one day to be rent, and then to admit us into a far greater glory, even to the Mercy seat and Cherubim. For this third heaven is the “proper habitation”† (Jude ver. 6.) of the blessed angels, which constantly attend upon the throne. And if those most glorious and happy spirits, those “morning stars which sang together, those sons of God which shouted for joy when the foundations of the earth were laid,” (Job xxxviii. 7. 4.) if they and their habitation were made; then can we no ways doubt of the production of all other creatures so much inferior unto them.

* Lucretius calls the heavens: ‘Mundi magnum et versatile templum.’ l. v.

† Ιδιον εικοστόροιν.
Forasmuch then as the angels are termed "the sons of God," it sufficiently denoteth that they are from him, not of themselves; all filiation inferring some kind of production: and being God hath but one proper and only-begotten Son, whose propriety and singularity consisteth in this, that he is of the same increased essence with the Father, all other offspring must be made, and consequently even the angels created sons; of whom the Scripture speaking saith, "Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire." (Psalm. civ. 4.) Although those words, at first spoken by the Psalmist, do rather express the nature of the wind and lightning; yet being the author of the Epistle to the Hebrews hath applied the same to the angels properly so called, we cannot but conclude upon his authority, that the same God who "created the wind," (Amos iv. 13.) and "made a way for the lightning of the thunder," (Job xxviii. 26.) hath also produced those glorious spirits; and as he furnished them with that activity there expressed, so did he frame the subject of it, their immaterial and immortal essence.

If then the angels and their proper habitation, the far most eminent and illustrious parts of the world were made; if only to be made be one character of imperfection; much more must we acknowledge all things of inferior nature to have dependence on their universal Cause, and consequently this great Universe, or all things, to be made, beside that One who made them.

This is the first part of our Christian faith, against some of the ancient philosophers, who were so wildly fond of those things they see, that they imagined the Universe to be infinite and eternal,* and, what will follow from it, to be even God himself. It is true that the most ancient of the heathen were not of this opinion, but all the philosophy for many ages delivered the World to have been made.†

† "Διὰ μὲν οὖν οἵτινες εἰσὶ ψανθ, εἰσάθ' ἴδον νεωθε νοιν εἰς τὸν παγκόσμιον, οὐσία πάντα γένεσθαι γείναι δὲ τὰ μὲν ἁρφετα διαμένει, τὰ δὲ πληθυσμενα μάκτηται μεν οἳ τείν τοῦ 'Ηνείς, εἰτὸς δὲ καὶ τὰς ἄλλας εἰ πρὸς ψυκτος φυσικόερπαντες, says Aristotle, De Caelo, l. iii. c. 1. In which words he manifestly attributes the doctrine of the creation of the world not only to Hesiod, but to all the first natural philosophers: which learning, beginning with Prometheus the first professor of that science, continued in that family amongst the Atheniada, who all successively delivered that truth. After them the Ionian philosophy did acknowledge it, and the Italian received it by Pythagoras, whose scholars all maintained it beside Ocellus Lukanus, the first of them that fancied the world not made, whom Plato, though he much esteemed him, yet followed not; for there is nothing more evident than that he held the world was made. Λεγομένων δὲ, δι’ τὸν αὐτίκα γίνεται καὶ τὰ πάντα τὸ θεία καὶ φυσικά ἑστήκαν, ἀρχικά
When this tradition of the Creation of the World was delivered in all places down successively by those who seriously considered the frame of all things, and the difference of the most ancient poets and philosophers from Moses was only in the manner of expressing it; those which in after-ages first denied it, made use of very frivolous and inconcluding arguments, grounding their new opinions upon weak foundations.

For that which in the first place they take for granted as an axiom of undoubted truth, that* 'Whatsoever hath a beginning, must have an end,' and consequently, 'Whatsoever shall have no end, hath no beginning,' is grounded upon no general reason, but only upon particular observation of such things here below, as from the ordinary way of generation, tend in some space of time unto corruption. From whence, seeing no tendency to corruption in several parts of the World, they conclude that it was never generated, nor had any cause or original of its being. Whereas, if we would speak properly, future existence or non-existence hath no such relation unto the first production. Neither is there any contradiction that at the same time one thing may begin to be, and last but for an hour, another continue for a thousand years, a third beginning at the same instant remain for ever: the difference being either in the nature of the thing so made, or in the determinations of the will of him that made them. Notwithstanding then their universal rules, which are not true but in some limited particulars, it is most certain the whole world was made, and of it part shall perish, part continue unto all eternity; by which something which had a beginning shall have an end, and something not.

The second fallacy which led them to this novelty was the very name of Universe, which comprehended in it all things; from whence they reasoned thus: If the World or Universe were made; then were all things made; and if the World shall be dissolved, then all things shall come to nothing;† which is impossible. For if all things were made, then must either all, or at least something, have made itself, and so have been the.

* p. 304. ed. Bipont. In which words he delivers not only the generation of the universe, but also the true cause thereof, which is the goodness of God. For he which asks this plain and clear question: πάντως ἂν ἔστιν ἄρχον ἂρχον ἄρχειν ἄρχειν ὑπερέχειν; ἦ γένος, ὃ τοῖς άρχειν, and answers the question briefly with a γένος, p. 302; he which gives this general rule upon it: τὸ δ' αὖ γενομένον σαμαίν ὑπ' αὐτῷ τις άρκειν ἐκαὶ γενέται· and then immediately concludes: τὸ κέν οὖν παντὶν καὶ παντίκειν τὸν τοῦ πάντος ἐξελεύθη τὸ ἐξελεύθηται. οὐαίτ' αὐτῷ καὶ οὕτως ἐνασχίδον λέγειν. p. 303. cannot (notwithstanding all the shifts of his Greek expositors) be imagined to have conceived the world not made. And Aristotle, who best understood him, tells us clearly his opinion in τῷ Τιμήου (from whence I cited the precedent words) ἢπιλ γὰρ φαιν. τὸν οἰκουμένην (where by the way observe that in Plato's Τίμαιος φανάς and κόσμος are made syno- nymous) γενέται μὲν, οὐ μὲν φαντάσμα. De Caelo, l. i. c. 10.

† Ocellus Lucanus, Μετά τῆς τοῦ παντοῦ φάστεις, which book Aristotle hath made use of, and transcribed in many parts.

cause of itself as of the effect, and the effect of itself as of the cause, and consequently in the same instant both have been and not been, which is a contradiction. But this fallacy is easily discovered: for when we say the Universe or all things were made, we must be always understood to except him who made all things, neither can we by that name be supposed to comprehend more than the frame of heaven and earth, and all things contained in them; and so he which first devised this argument hath himself acknowledged. *

Far more gross was that third conceit, That, if the World were ever made, it must be after the vulgar way of ordinary natural generations: in which two mutations are observable, the first from less to greater, or from worse to better; the second from greater to less, or from better to worse. (The beginning of the first mutation is called generation, the end of it perfection: the beginning of the second is from the same perfection, but concluded in corruption or dissolution.) † But none hath ever yet observed that this frame of the World did ever grow up from less to greater, or improve itself from worse to better: nor can we now perceive that it becomes worse or less than it was, by which decretion we might guess at a former increase, and from the tendency to corruption collect its original generation. This conceit, I say, is far more gross. For certainly the argument so managed proves nothing at all, but only this (if yet it prove so much), that the whole frame of the World, and the parts thereof which are of greater perfection, were not generated in that manner in which we see some other parts of it are: which no man denies. But that there can be no other way of production beside these petty generations, or that the World was not some other way actually produced, this argument doth not endeavour to infer, nor can any other prove it.

The next foundation upon which they cast off the constant doctrine of their predecessors, was that general assertion, That it is impossible for any thing to be produced out of nothing, or to be reduced unto nothing: 3 for whence it will inevitably follow, that the matter of this World hath always been, and must always be. The clear refutation of which difficulty

* To δὲ ὃν καὶ τὸ πάν ὕμαδα τὸν σύμπαντα κύριον διὰ γὰς τούτο καὶ τὸς προπομογίας ἔστω, ἰτι τὸν ὕπαντα δὲ κοσμο-Σύμα. Ocellus, c. 1. p. 506.
† Πάν τὸ γεντικὸς ἀρχή οἰκον καὶ διεκλούσες ἐβδέλυνε δύο ἐπικρίνεται μεταβολάς, μίν μὲν τὸν ἀπὸ τῶν μείζονις ἕπι τὸ μείζον, καὶ τὸν ἄτο τοῦ χείρος ἕπι τὸ βλέπτον ἀπόκριθαν δὲ τὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ μικροῦ ἕπι τὸ μεῖζον, καὶ τὸν ἄτο τοῦ βλέπτους ἕπι τὸ χείρον. Εἰς οὖν καὶ τὸ δόλο καὶ τὸ πάν γινώσκει ἕπι τοῦ μείζον, μετέβαλε, καὶ ἄτο τοῦ χείρος ἕπι τὸ βλέπτον. Ocellus, c. 1. p. 506.
‡ Τὸ δὲ ὃν καὶ τὸ πάν ὕμαδα ἡμῖν ἢ τὸν παρὰ τούτον τοιούτος ὑπό τὸν γενέας τοῦτον ἐκβάλομεν, ὡς μὲν ἔπι τὸ βλέπτον καὶ τὸ μεῖζον μεταβολά, ὡς τὸν χείρον τοῦτον καὶ τὸ μείζον γενεαίς, ἀλλ' ἂν κατὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἀναπτύξιμος ἔστω, καὶ ἴσον καὶ ἔμαν αὐτὸ ἐκαύτω. Ocellus, c. 1. p. 507.
§ ᾿Αμείραρχον γὰρ τὸ τὸ ἀποτελέσθαι, ἐκ τῶν μέιν ταῖς, η ἔτες τὸ μὲν ἐν ἀναλογίαν ἐδιδυνήσας ἕμαθα καὶ ἀναλύει τὸ πάν. Ocellus, c. 1. p. 511.
requires an explication of the manner how the World was made: the second part before propounded for the exposition of this Article.

Now that the true nature and manner of this action may be so far understood as to declare the Christian faith, and refute the errors of all opposers, it will be necessary to consider it first with reference to the object or effect; secondly, in relation to the cause or agent; thirdly, with respect unto the time or origination of it.

The action by which the heaven and earth were made, considered in reference to the effect, I conceive to be the production of their total being; so that whatsoever entity they had when made, had no real existence before they were so made. And this manner of production we usually term creation, as excluding all concurrence of any material cause, and all dependence of any kind of subject, as presupposing no privation, as including no motion, as signifying a production out of nothing; that is, by which something is made, and not any thing preceding out of which it is made.* This is the proper and peculiar sense of the word creation: not that it signifies so much by virtue of its origination or vulgar use in the Latin tongue; nor that the Hebrew word used by Moses, "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth," (Gen. i. 1.) hath of itself any such peculiar acceptation. For it is often used synonymously, with words which signify any kind of production or formation, and by itself it seldom denotes a production out of

* So I conceive it best expressed by Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury: 'Dictum aliquod esse factum de nullo, cum intelligimus esse quidem factum, sed non esse aliquid unde sit factum.' Monolog. c. 8.

† 'Creatio apud nos generatio vel nativitas dicitur, apud Gravcos vero sub nomine creationis verbum factum et conditionis acceptius.' S. Hieron. ad Eph. c. 4.

‡ אבר is promiscuously used with העש which is of the greatest latitude, denoting any kind of effection, and with ירא which rather implies a formation out of something, from whence ירא a potter. For the first, we read Gen. ii. 3. that "God rested from all his work," והיה אלהים בראש הימים that not that on the sixth day he did the work of two days, that he might rest on the seventh, as Rabbi Solomon; not that in six days he made the roots of things that they might afterwards produce the like, as Aben Ezra; not these or any other fancies of the Rabbins; as if אבר signified one work, and העש another; for they both express the production, as appears clearly in the following verse, "These are the generations of the heavens and of the earth, ובאבת them when they were created, והיה şi in the day that the Lord God made the heaven and the earth." So Isa. xlv. 12. "I have made the earth, and created man upon it," where the first expresseth the proper, the second the improper creation. Which indifferent acceptation appears in collating Psal. cxv. 13. cxxiv. 2. with Isa. xxxii. 13. xlv. 18. as also Isa. xvii. 7. with Ex. xxi. 1. From whence the LXX. translate ירא indifferently תואתו or תאזו. For the second, ירא is usually rendered by the Targum אבר and by the LXX. though generally פאץ, yet sometimes תואתו. And that it hath the same significance, will appear by conferring Gen. ii. 7. with Isa. xlv. 12. and not only so, but by that single verse, Isa. xliii. 1. "Now thus saith the Lord אלהים that created thee, O Jacob, ירא and he that formed thee, O Israel." Lastly, all these are jointly used in the same validity of expression, Isa. xliii. 7. "Every one that is called by my name; for ירא י have created him for my glory, ועגינתי י have formed him, יכע עגינתי I have made him."
nothing, or proper creation, but most frequently the making of one substance out of another pre-existing, as the fishes of the water; (Gen i. 21.) and man of the dust of the earth; (Gen. i. 27. ii. 7.) the renovating or restoring any thing to its former perfection, (Psal. li. 10. Isa. lxv. 17.) for want of Hebrew words in composition; or lastly, the doing some new or wonderful work,* the producing some strange and admirable effect, as the opening the mouth of the earth, (Numb. xvi. 30.) and the signal judgments on the people of Israel. (Isa. lxv. 7.)

We must not therefore weakly collect the true nature of creation from the force of any word which by some may be thought to express so much, but we must collect it from the testimony of God the Creator, in his Word, and of the World created, in our reason. The opinion of the Church of the Jews will sufficiently appear in that zealous mother to her seventh and youngest son: "I beseech thee, my son, look upon the heaven and the earth, and all that is therein, and consider that God made them of things that were not:" (2 Macc. vii. 28.) which is a clear description of creation, that is, production out of nothing. But because this is not by all received as canonical, we shall therefore evince it by the undoubted testimony of St. Paul, who, expressing the nature of Abraham's faith, propoundeth "him whom he believed as God who quickeneth the dead, and calleth those things which be not, as though they were." (Rom. iv. 17.) For, as to be called in the language of the Scripture is to be, ("Behold what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God," saith St. John in his first Epistle, (iii. 1.) who in his Gospel (i. 12.) told us, "he hath given us power to become the sons of God:"") so to call is to make, or cause to be. As where the prophet Jeremy saith, "Thou hast caused all this evil to come upon them," (Jer. xxxii. 23.) the original may be thought to speak no more than this, thou hast called this evil to them. He therefore "calleth those things which be not, as if they were," who maketh those things which were not, to be, and produceth that which hath a being out of that which had not, that is, out of nothing. This reason, generally persuasive unto faith, is more peculiarly applied by the apostle to the belief of the creation: for "through faith (saith he) we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that the things which are seen were not made of things which do appear." (Heb. xi. 3.) Not as if the earth, which we see, were made of air, or any more subtil body, which we see not; nor as if those "things which are seen" were in equal latitude commensurable

* 'Creatio atque conditio nunquam nisi in magis operate nominatur: veri causa, mundus creatus est, urbs condita est: domus vero, quamvis magna sit, adificata potius dicitur, quam condita vel creatas. In magis enim operibus atque facturis verbum creationis assumitur.' S. Hieron. ad Eph. c. 4.
with the worlds which were framed: but that those "things which are seen," that is, which are, were made of those "which did not appear,"* that is, which were not.

Vain therefore was that opinion of a real matter coeval with God as necessary for production of the World by way of subject, as the eternal and Almighty God by way of efficient. For if some real and material being must be presupposed by indispensable necessity, without which God could not cause any thing to be, then is not be independent in his actions, nor of infinite power and absolute activity, which is contradictory to the divine perfection. Nor can any reason be alleged why he should be dependent in his operation, who is confessed independent in his being.

And as this coequity of matter opposeth God's independency, the proper notion of the Deity, so doth it also contradict his all sufficient. For if, without the production of something beside himself, he cannot make a demonstration of his attributes, or cause any sensibility of his power and will for the illustration of his own glory; and if, without something distinct wholly from himself, he cannot produce any thing, then must he want something external:† and who soever wanteth any thing is not all-sufficient. And certainly he must have a low opinion and poor conception of the infinite and eternal God, who thinks he is no other known to be omnipotent than by the benefit‡ of another. Nor were the framers of the CREED so wise in prefixing the Almighty before Maker of heaven and earth, if out of a necessity of material concurrence, the making of them left a mark of impotency rather than omnipotency.

The supposition then of an eternal matter is so unnecessary where God works, and so derogatory to the infinity of his power, and all-sufficiency of himself, that the latter philosophers,§ something acquainted with the truth which we profess,

* For I take μὴ ἐκ φαντασμῶν in this place to be equivalent unto εἰς ἕκ τετεινον in the Maccabees, and that of the same sense with εἰς ἕκ τετεινον, as the Syriac translation, "quia illa non ex iis quae non conceptionem tur.

† Which manner of speech may be observed even in the best Greek authors; as in Aristotle: μεταβαλλει οὐ τῷ μεταβαλλει τεταρταχείτω, ὥς γαρ ἐκ ὑποκείμενων εἰς ὑποκείμενον, οὐ τῷ ὑποκείμενων εἰς εἰς ὑποκείμενον, ἢ τῷ ὑποκείμενων εἰς ὑποκείμενον, ἢ ἐκ ὑποκείμενου εἰς ὑποκείμενον. Phus. 1. c. 1. t. 7. Where εἰς ὑποκείμενον is the same with εἰς εἰκόνα ὑποκείμενον, and οὐ ἐκ ὑποκείμενου with εἰς μὴ ὑποκείμενον.

‡ Nemo enim non eget eo de cujus utitur; nemo non subiectur ei cujus eget ut possit uti. Sic et nemo de alio utendis, non minor est eo de cujus utitur; et nemo qui praestat de suo uti, non in hoc superior est eo cui praestat uti.* Tertull. adv. Hermog. c. 8.

† Grande revera beneficium contulit, ut haberet hodie per quem Deus cognoscereetur et omnipotens vocaretur: nisi quod jam non omnipotens, si non et hoc potens, ex nihil omnium proferret. †Ibid. *Quoniam ab homine divina illa vis differret, si, ut homo, sic etiam Deus ope indiget alienus: indiget antem si nihil molei potest, nisi ab altero illi materia ministretur. †Lactan. l. ii. c. 9.

§ As Hierocles: Καὶ τὸ καταλέγων σε τοῦ τουτού, ὥσπερ τι καὶ τῶν Πλατανίων τινες εἰς ἐν τῶν πειρῶν τὸν δειμουργὸν δεῖ τι διακόσμως ἐνομισέως εἶναι; εἰ γὰρ οὐκ εἰσήκουσαν αὐτοτεκτὸν ὑποταγήναι δυνατον, καὶ στοῖχον ἐν δίδυμον ἀθέτων τινὰ; ἐν αὐτῷ ἀκολούθηται ἔλεος εὐνοίας, καὶ τῇ μὲν παρ' αὐτοῦ ὑποταγήναι φύσει καταχριστίας, μόνον δειμουργίας δυναμός. De Provid. et Fato, p. 6.
ARTICLE 1.

though rejecting Christianity, have reproved those of the school of Plato, who delivered, as the doctrine of their master, an eternal companion, so injurious to the Father and Maker of all things.

Wherefore to give an answer to that general position, "That out of nothing nothing can be produced," which Aristotle* pretends to be the opinion of all natural philosophers, I must first observe, that this universal proposition was first framed out of particular considerations of the works of art and nature. For if we look upon all kinds of artificers,† we find they cannot give any specimen of their art without materials. Being then the beauty and uniformity of the World shews it to be a piece of art most exquisite; hence they conclude that the Maker of it was the most exact artificer,‡ and consequently had his matter from all eternity prepared for him. Again, considering the works of nature, and all parts of the World subject to generation and corruption, they also§ observed that nothing is ever generated but out of something pre-existent, nor is there any mutation wrought but in a subject, and with a presupposed capability of alteration. From hence they presently collected, that if the whole World were ever generated, it must have been produced out of some subject, and consequently there must be a matter eternally pre-existing.

Now what can be more irrational, than from the weakness of some creature to infer the same immobility in the Creator, and to measure the arm of God by the finger of man? Whatsoever speaketh any kind of excellency or perfection in the artificer, may be attributed unto God: whatsoever signifieth any infinity, or involveth any imperfection, must be excluded from the notion of him. That wisdom, prescience, and pre-conception, that order and beauty of operation which is required in an artist, is most eminently contained in him, who hath "ordered all things in measure, and number, and weight:" (Wisd. xi. 20.) but if the most absolute idea in the artificer's understanding be not sufficient to produce his design without hands to work, and materials to make use of, it will follow no more that God is necessarily tied unto pre-existing matter, than that he is really compounded of corporeal parts.

Again, it is as incongruous to judge of the production of

* Παν το γνήσιων ανάγκη γίνεσθαι η εις θύτων η εις μαθ ήτοι θύτων δε το μαθ εις μαθ ήτοι γίνεσθαι απόστειν περ για τοις δια των διαφορών της διας άνωντοι σε περ φύσιν. Psych. I. i. c. 1. b. 34.

† Υιότιτς τιμερ χρυσόν και τιμησεις καθαρόν εστιν, η είπα οντι κατα τοις θησεις και υπο τοις ευχα της καθαρόν οντως εις ηπαρδασμόν της γίνεται, ηπο τοις καθαρομην γίνεται αυτον ου ηπαρδασμόν της γίνεται, αύτη τοις καθαρομην γίνεται αυτον ου ηπαρδασμόν της γίνεται, ή εις γίνεται τη γνώσην, ή εις τα φυτα και τα ζην εκ σφαλματος. Aristot. Phys. I. i. c. 7.
The World by those parts thereof which we see subject to generation and corruption: and thence to conclude, that if ever it had a cause of the being which it hath, it must have been generated in the same manner in which they are; and if that cannot be, it must never have been made at all. For nothing is more certain than that this manner of generation cannot possibly have been the first production even of those things which are now generated. We see the plants grow from a seed; that is their ordinary way of generation: but the first plant could not be so generated, because all seed in the same course of nature is from the pre-existing plant. We see from spawn the fishes, and from eggs the fowls receive now the original of their being: but this could not at first be so, because both spawn and egg are sejungeable from the fish and fowl. Indeed, because the seed is separable from the body of the plant, and in that separation may long contain within itself a power of germination: because the spawn and egg are sejungeable from the fish and fowl, and yet still retain the prolific power of generation; therefore some might possibly conceive that these seminal bodies might be originally scattered on the earth, out of which the first of all those creatures should arise. But in viviparous animals, whose offspring is generated within themselves, whose seed by separation from them loseth all its seminal or prolific power, this is not only improbable, but inconceivable. And therefore being the philosophers* themselves confess, that whereas now all animals are generated by the means of seed, and that the animals themselves must be at first before the seed proceeding from them; it followed that there was some way of production antecedent to and differing from the common way of generation, and consequently we see done in this generation can be no certain rule to understand the first production. Being then that universal maxim, that ‘nothing can be made of nothing,’ is merely calculated for the meridian of natural causes, raised solely out of observation of continuing creatures by successive generation, which could not have been so continued without a being ante-

* These words of Aristotle are very observable, in which he disputes against Spenipappus and the Pythagoreans, who thought the rudiments of things first made, out of which they grew into perfection: "Οσοι δὲ ἐπαλαμβάνοντες, δεσποτεὶς οἱ Πυθαγόρειοι καὶ Σπενίππαπος, τὸ ἀρχόν καὶ κάλλιστον μᾶλλον ἐν ἄρχον εἶναι, διὰ τὸ ἐν τῷ φύτῳ καὶ τῶν ζῴων τὰς ἀρχὰς αὐτίκα μὲν εἶναι, τὰ δὲ καλὸν καὶ τὸ τέλεον ἐν τοῖς ἐν τοῖς, οἷον ὑπόθεσι ωστάναι, τὸ γὰρ σπίρμα ἤ ἄρτιν ἦλθεν προτέρων τελεῖν καὶ τὸ πρῶτον ὡς σπίρμα ἦλθεν, ἀλλὰ τὸ τέλεον, ὅσον πρῶτον ἄρσενον ἄν φαίνεται εἶναι τοῦ σπίρματος, οὐ τὸν ἐν τοῖς γεννικόν, ἀλλὰ ἄρτιν ἤ ὡς τὸ σπίρμα. Metaph. xii. c. 7. By which words Aristotle hath sufficiently destroyed his own argument, which we produced before out of the first of the Physics, and is excellently urged in that philosophical piece attributed unto Justin Martyr. Εἰς πρῶτον ἦλθε τὸ σπίρμα σπίρμα, καὶ ὑπέρτησε τὸ ἐκ σπίρματος γεννικόν, καὶ γεννήθη ἁμέρα μέρα, τῇ μὲν γενέσεί τινος κείμενον ἐκ σπίρματος γεννικοῦν ὑπόκειται τὸ σπίρμα· τῇ δὲ γενέσεί τοῦ σπίρματος ὑποκείεσθαι τὸ σπίρμα ὡς ἀνακόμην. οἷον ἀρά ἀπὸ τὰ δύο καὶ τὰ φυτὰ ἐκ σπίρματος. Aristot. Dison. Eneids. art. 1. "Ὅδε οὖν ὁ ἐκ τοῦ σπίρματος ἢν ἐγένετο τὸ ἄνθρωπον, οὔτε τὸν δύο ἐμεῖς τὴν ἁλεκτρούσα· τις δ’ ἁλεκτρούσας τὸν δύο ἢ, καὶ τὸ σπίρμα τῶν ἄνθρωπος λήγομεν. Plut. Symposium. 1. ii. prov. 3."
cedent to all such succession; it is most evident it can have no place in the production of that antecedent or first being, which we call creation.

Now when we thus describe the nature of creation, and under the name of heaven and earth comprehend all things contained in them, we must distinguish between things created. For some were made immediately out of nothing, by a proper, some only mediatel y, as out of something formerly made out of nothing, by an improper kind of creation. By the first were made all immaterial substances, all the orders of angels, and the souls of men, the heavens, and the simple or elemental bodies, as the earth, the water, and the air. "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth;" (Gen. i. 1.) so in the beginning, as without any pre-existing or antecedent matter. This earth, when so in the beginning made, was "without form and void," (Gen. i. 2.) covered with waters likewise made, not out of it but with it, the same which, "when the waters were gathered together unto one place, appeared as dry land." (Gen. i. 9.) *By the second, all the "hosts of the earth," (Gen. ii. 1.) the fowls of the air, and the fishes of the sea; "Let the earth (said God) bring forth grass, the herb yielding seed, and the fruit-tree yielding fruit after his kind." (Gen.i.11 ) "Let the waters bring forth abundantly the moving creature that hath life, and fowl that may fly above the earth;" (Gen.i.20.) and more expressly yet, "Out of the ground God formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air." (Gen. ii. 19.) And well may we grant these plants and animals to have their origination from such principles, when we read, "God formed man out of the dust of the ground;" (Gen. ii. 7.) and said unto him whom he created in his own image, "Dust thou art." (Gen. iii. 19.)

Having thus declared the notion of creation in respect of those things which were created, the next consideration is of that action in reference to the agent who created all things. Him therefore we may look upon first as moved; secondly, as free under that motion; thirdly, as determining under that freedom, and so performing of that action. In the first we may see his goodness, in the second his will, in the third his power. I do not here introduce any external impulsive cause, as moving God unto the creation of the world; for I have presupposed all things distinct from him to have been produced out of nothing by him, and consequently to be posterior not only to the motion but the actuation of his will. Being then nothing can be antecedent to the creature beside God himself, neither can any thing be a cause of any of his actions but what is in him; we must not look for any thing extrinsical unto him, but wholly acquiesce in his infinite goodness, as the only moving

* 'Hic visibilis mundus ex materia que a Deo facta fuerat, factus est et ornatus,' Genad. c. 10.
and impending cause; "There is none good but one that is God," (Matt. xix. 17.)* saith our Saviour; none originally, essentially, independently good, but he. Whatsoever goodness is found in any creature is but by way of emanation from that fountain, whose very being is diffusive, whose nature consists in the communication of itself. In the end of the sixth day "God saw every thing that he had made, and beheld it was very good": (Gen. i. 31.) which shews the end of creating all things thus good, was the communication of that by which they were, and appeared so.

The ancient heathens have acknowledged this truth;† but with such disadvantage, that from thence they gathered an undoubted error. For from the goodness of God, which they did not unity conceive necessary, infinite, and eternal,‡ they col-


‡ Ἀνάρχη διὰ τοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ ἀρχάγχαττον ὡστὶ τοῦ κύριου, οἷον τοῦ τόπον ἂν ἐκείνον οἷον, καὶ τὸν κύριον ἀποδιδοσθ' ἐξ ἐν τὸν καὶ πρὸς τὸ δικαιοσύνην τὰς άκιντάς τοιαύτας τρισκελεῖσθαι φασὶν, οὐσίαν τινες ιδίας. Salustius de Diis et mundi, c. 7. Εἰ γὰρ ἀρχαίον μᾶλλον ποιεῖται, τὰς εἰς τὸ ποιεῖν μεταβολεῖσθαι εἰ δι' τὸ ποιεῖν, τὸ δὲ εἰ δὲ ἀκιντικά πρὸς εὐροτόμοις, Hierocles de Fato et PROVID. p. 19. Neither doth he mean any less, when in his sense he thus describes the first Cause of all things: "Εστιν 'ας (so I read it, not έστιν', as the printed copies, or έστιν, as Cursierius) δ' τὸ πρῶτον ἡμῶν αὐτὸν ἀκρωτικὸν πάντα ἀνέκτησεν, καὶ τὴν αὐτοκεφαλίαν τῆς Ἐκκλησίας τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἐκκλησίας, καὶ τὴν ἀρχάγχαττα ὡς ἐπικύκλων ἐχών, ἡλικίας καθαρὰ κἀ' αὐτόν, καὶ δ' αὐτὸν τὰ παραφέυται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀγαθῷ (so I read it, not σταντάνοι πρὸς τὸ εἰς εἰσίν, as the printed). Hierocles in Aur. Cyn. p. 21. Εἰς τὴν ἑξομολογίαν ἀρχήν τῆς ἀρχαίας τοῦ παρόντος ἐς τὴν προσφέρειν ἐστὶν δὲ τὸν δικαστὴν ἐξετασάμενον δικαστὴν τὸ δικαστῆς· τὰς δὲ τὰ παντὸς κατὰ τὴν ἀρχαίαν ἀξίωσιν, καὶ δ' αὐτὸς λόγος ἀρχήν τε ἐνευματικώς, καὶ τὴν ἀμέτρητον τῶν πα-
lected that whatsoever dependeth of it must be as necessary and eternal, even as light must be as ancient as the sun, and a shadow as an opacious body in that light. If then there be no instant imaginable before which God was not infinitely good, then can there likewise be none conceivable before which the World was not made. And thus they thought the goodness of the Creator must stand or fall with the eternity of the creature.

For the clearing of which ancient mistake, we must observe, that as God is essentially and infinitely good without any mixture of deficiency, so is he in respect of all external actions or emanations absolutely free without the least necessity. Those bodies which do act without understanding or preconception of what they do, as the sun and fire give light and heat, work always to the utmost of their power, nor are they able at any time to suspend their action. To conceive any such necessity in the divine operations, were to deny all knowledge in God, to reduce him into a condition inferior to some of the works of his own hands, and to fall under the censure contained in the Psalmist's question, "He that planted the ear, shall he not hear? he that formed the eye, shall he not see? he that teacheth man knowledge, shall he not know?" (Psal. xciv. 9, 10.) Those creatures who are endued with understanding, and consequently with a will, may not only be necessitated in their actions by a greater power, but also as necessarily be determined by the proposal of an infinite good: whereas neither of these necessities can be acknowledged in God's actions, without supposing a power beside and above omnipotency, or a real happiness beside and above all-sufficiency. Indeed if God were a necessary agent in the works of creation, the creatures would be of as necessary a being as he is; whereas the necessity of being is the undoubted prerogative of the first cause. "He worketh all things after the counsel of his own will," (Ephes. i. 11.) saith the apostle: and wheresoever counsel is, there is election, or else it is vain; where a will, there must be freedom, or else it is weak. We cannot imagine that the all-wise God should act or produce any thing but what he determineth to produce; and all his determinations must flow from the immediate principle of his will. If then his determinations be free, as they must be coming from that principle, then must the actions which follow them be also free. Being then the goodness of God is absolutely perfect of itself, being he is in himself infinitely and eternally happy, and this happiness as little capable of augmentation as of diminution; he cannot be thought to look upon any thing without himself as determining his will to the desire, and necessitating to the production of it. If then we consider God's goodness, he was moved; if his all-sufficiency, he was not necessitated: if we look upon his will, he freely determined; if on his power, by that determination he created the World.
Wherefore that ancient conceit of a necessary emanation of God's goodness in the eternal creation of the World will now easily be refuted, if we make a distinction in the equivocal notion of goodness. For if we take it as it signifieth 'a rectitude and excellency of virtue and holiness, with a negation of all things morally evil, vicious, or unholy,' so God is absolutely and necessarily good: but if we take it in another sense, as indeed they did who made this argument, that is, rather for beneficence, or communicativeness of some good to others; then God is not necessarily, but freely, good, that is to say, profitable and beneficial. For he had not been in the least degree evil or unjust, if he had never made the World or any part thereof, if he had never communicated any of his perfections by framing any thing beside himself. Every proprietary therefore being accounted master of his own, and thought freely to bestow whatever he gives; much more must that one eternal and independent Being be wholly free in the communicating his own perfections without any necessity or obligation. We must then look no farther than the determination of God's will in the creation of the World.

For this is the admirable power of God, that with him to will is to effect, to determine is to perform. So the elders speak before him that sitteth upon the throne; "Thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure (that is, by thy will) they are and were created." (Rev. iv. 11.) Where there is no resistance in the object, where no need of preparation, application, or instrumental advantage in the agent, there the actual determination of the will is a sufficient production. Thus God did make the heavens and the earth by willing them to be. This was his first command unto the creatures, and their existence was their first obedience. "Let there be light,"† this is the injunction; "and there was light," that is the creation. Which two are so intimately and immediately the same, that though in our and‡ other translations those words, let there be, which express the command of God, differ from the other there was, which denote the present existence of the creature; yet in the original there is no difference at all, neither in point nor letter. And yet even in the diversity of the translation the phrase seems so expressive of God's infinite power, and immediate efficacy of his will, that it hath raised some admiration of Moses in the§ enemies of the religion both of the Jews and

* So Clemens Alexandrinus speaks of God: Ψεύτω τη βουλαθθαι δημιουργείται, και τω μόνω ἔθελεν αὐτὸν ἔσται το γεγονότα. Prorept. c. 4. fin.
† Γεννηθηναι φίλος, και το πρόταγμα ἕγγεν τν. S. Basil. in Heeram. Homlit. ii. § 7. Όταν δὲ φανε ὧδο και ἐκαὶ πρόταγμα ἄρχωσαν, τόν εἰς το έσθενατι καίνην ἄρχαμεν άν είδε πρόταγματος χρηστατιζον. Id. ibid. Τότε δυναστίας διότι έθελόματι μόνω δημιουργοῦν, ομο η τη βουλήν εννυσταμάτων τος κτίσμας; Id. i. ii. adv. Eunom. § 21.
‡ As yeouδήναν φίλος, και ἐγένετο φίλος, Πιντ λυχνία, et facta est lux: or as Aquila, γεννηθήνα, και ἐγένετο, as Symmachus, έστω, και ἐγένετο, all with a difference: whereas in the Hebrew it is a most expressive and significant tautology, יש שם שם.
§ As Dionysius Longinus, peri ὕμων, Sect. 9. Ταύτη και το τούδαυν θεσμον
Christians. "God is in the heavens, he hath done whatsoever he pleased,"* saith David; (Psal. cxv. 3.) yea, in the making of the heavens; he therefore created them, because "he pleased;" nay, more, he thereby created them, even by willing their creation.

Now although some may conceive the creature might have been produced from all eternity by the free determination of God's will, and it is so far certainly true, that there is no instant assignable before which God could not have made the World; yet as this is an Article of our faith, we are bound to believe the heavens and the earth are not eternal. "Through faith we understand the worlds were framed by the word of God." (Heb. xi. 3.) And by that faith we are assured, that whatsoever possibility of an eternal existence of the creature may be imagined, actually it had a temporal beginning; and therefore all the arguments for this World's eternity are nothing but so many erroneous misconceptions. "The Lord possessed me in the beginning of his way, before his works of old (saith Wisdom). I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, or ever the earth was:" (Prov. viii. 22, 23.) And the same Wisdom of God being made man, reflecteth upon the same priority, saying, "Now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine ownself, with the glory which I had with thee before the World was." (John xvii. 5.) Yea, in the same Christ are we "blessed with all spiritual blessings, according as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the World." (Ephes. i. 3, 4.) The impossibility of the origination of a circular motion, which we are sure is either in the heaven or earth, and the impropriety of the beginning of time, are so poor exceptions, that they deserve not the least labour of refutation. The actual eternity of this World is so far from being necessary, that it is of itself most improbable; and without the infallible certainty of faith, there is no single person carries more evidences of his youth, than the World of its novelty.†

It is true indeed, some ancient accounts there are which would persuade us to imagine a strange antiquity of the World, far beyond the annals of Moses, and account of the same Spirit which made it. The‡ Egyptian priests pretended an exact

---

* Πάντα ὦ θεία ἑλθένσαι ἐπὶ ὡς ἐν τῷ ὕπερ ὢν καὶ ἐν τῇ γῇ ἤσκε ὅτι οὐκ ἦν προὶ τοῦ καινομεροῦ τῶν ἐν τῇ γῇ μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς τῶν κτίσιος ἄνω θεάματα ἦσαν. Ὁ Θεός ἰδίως αὐτῷ μεῖν. S. Chrysost. l. ii. σεβὴ τῷ ἀκτα- 
† As even Lucretius confesseth, and that out of the principles of Epicurus, l. v. 331.
‡ Plato tells us of an account which an Egyptian priest gave to Solon, in which the Athenians were nine thousand years old, and those of Sais eight thousand: Προτέρου μὲν τῷ παπ’ ἓτο τότε τὸν κόσμον ἔγερεν ἥλθος ἐν τῇ τε καὶ ἦν ἱδαίτε τῶν περίμα πολλαδὸν λεγόν,
chronology for some of their records, and the Chaldeans or Assyrians far outreckon them, in which they delivered not only a catalogue of their kings, but also a table of the eclipses of the sun and moon.

But for their number of years nothing is more certain than their forgery; for the Egyptians did preserve the antiques of other nations as well as their own, and by the evident fallacy in others have betrayed their own vanity. When Alexander entered Egypt with his victorious army, the priests could shew him out of their sacred histories an account of the Persian empire, which he gained by conquest, and the Macedonian, which he received by birth, of each for eight thousand years;\(^4\) whereas nothing can be more certain, out of the best historical account, than that the Persian empire, whether begun in Cyrus or in Medus, was not then three hundred years old. They then who made so large additions to advance the antiquity of other nations, and were so bold as to present them to those who so easily might refute them (had they not delighted to be deceived to their own advantage, and taken much pleasure in an honourable cheat), may without any breach of charity be suspected to have extended the account much higher for the honour of their own country. Beside, their catalogues must needs be ridiculously incredible, when the Egyptians make the first kings' reigns above twelve hundred years a-piece;\(^5\) and the

\(^{\text{4}}\) This fallacy appeareth by an epistle which Alexander wrote to his mother Olympias, mentioned by Athenagoras, Minutius Felix, St. Cyprian, and St. Augustin. \(^{\text{5}}\) Persarum autem et Macedonum imperium usque ad ipsum Alexandrum, cui loquebatur, plus quam octo millium annorum ille constituit; cum apud Gracos Macedonum usque ad mortem Alexandri quadringenti octoginta quinque reperiantur anni, Persarum vero, donec ipsius Alexander victoria mortuus: ducenti et triginta tres computatur. S. August. de Civ. Dei, i. xii. c. 10.
Assyrians theirs about forty thousand: except we take the Egyptian years for months, the Assyrian for days; and then the account will not seem so formidable.

Again, for the calculation of eclipses, as it may be made for many thousand years to come, and be exactly true, and yet the World may end to-morrow; because the calculation must be made with this tacit condition, if the bodies of the earth, and sun, and moon, do continue in their substance and constant motion so long: so may it also be made for many millions of years past, and all be true, if the World have been so old: which the calculation doth not prove, but suppose. He then who should in the Egyptian temples see the description of so many eclipses of the sun and moon, could not be assured that they were all taken from real observation, when they might be as well described out of prophetic supposition.

Besides, the motions of the sun, which they see together and with authority equal to that of their other observations, are so incredible and palpably fabulous, that they take off all credit and esteem from the rest of their narrations. For with this wild account of years, and seemingly accurate observations of the heavens, they left it written to posterity, that the whole course of the celestial motions was four times changed; so that the sun hath twice risen in the east and set in the and twenty σάρι belonging to the reign of the ten kings four hundred and thirty-two thousand years. Neither was this the account only of Abydenus, but also of Berossus; neither was it the interpretation only of Eusebius, but also of Alexander Polyhistor, who likewise expresseth: τὸ χρόνον τῆς βασιλείας αὐτῶν σάρις ἑκατὸν εἰκοσι, ἤτοι ἐκ τῶν μορφῶν τεσσαρακοσίων τριῶν καὶ διοί χιλιάδων. This seemed so highly incredible, that two ancient monks, Anianus and Panodorus, interpreted those Chaldean years to be but days, so that every σάρι should consist of three thousand six hundred days, that is, nine years, ten months and a half, and the whole one hundred and twenty σάρι for the ten kings eleven hundred and eighty-three years, six months, and odd days. This is all which Jos. Scaliger, or Jacobus Gaird, could find concerning this Chaldean computation; and here is the first of these complaints that none but Hesychius makes mention of this account. I shall therefore supply them not only with another author, but also with a diverse and distinct interpretation. Σάρις μέρην καὶ ἀριθμὸς σαράντα Χαλδαίων: οἱ γὰρ σάρι σάρι ποιούσιν ἑκατόν τοὺς θεοὺς εὐθύς ὥσπερ δὲν τινὶ καὶ μαζὶ εἶναι: οὐκ εἰσὶν, ὥσπερ μεταφράσει τοῦ εὐκαθορισμοῦ των τεσσαρακοσίων τριῶν, tò οὐ μορφῶν τεσσαρακοσίων τριῶν καὶ διοί χιλιάδων. This is, according to the translation of Pottus: Sari apud Chaldaeos est mensura et numerus: nam 120 Sari factant annos "422, nisi quantum 18 et sex mensibus. Well might he fix his N. L. or, non liquet, to these words; for, as they are in the printed books, there is no sense to be made of them; but by the help of the MS. in the Vatican library we shall both supply the defect in Suidas, and find a third valuation of the σάρι. Thus then that MS. represents the words: οἱ γὰρ σάρι σάρι ποιούσιν ἑκατόν τοὺς θεοὺς, κατὰ τῷ Χαλδαίῳ ξύροι, ἐπιτρέμει μιᾶς εἰς τὸν αὐτόν τὸν ἑκατόν, ὥσπερ δὲν τινὶ καὶ μαζὶ εἶναι. And so the sense is clear. Σάρις, according to the Chaldee account, comprehends two hundred and twenty-two months, which come to eighteen years and six months; therefore one hundred and twenty σάρι make two thousand and twenty-two years and twenty years; and therefore for ἔκατον, I read, leaving out the last δ, ἔκατον, that is, two thousand two hundred and twenty.
west, as it now does; and, on the contrary, twice risen in the west and set in the east. And thus these prodigious antiquities confute themselves.*

What then are these feigned observations and fabulous descriptions for the World's antiquity, in respect not only of the infallible annals of the Spirit of God, but even of the constant testimonies of more sober men, and the real appearances and face of things, which speak them of a far shorter date?

If we look into the historians which give account of ancient times, may, if we persevere in the fictions of the poets, we shall find the first to have no footsteps, the last to feign no actions of so great antiquity. † If the race of men had been eternal, or as old as the Egyptians and Chaldees fancy it, how should it come to pass that the poetical inventions should find no actions worthy their heroic verse before the Trojan or the Theban war, or that great adventure of the Argonauts? For whatsoever all the Muses, the daughters of Memory, could rehearse before those times, is nothing but the creation of the World, and the nativity of their gods.

If we consider the necessaries of life,‡ the ways of freedom

by their vain ambition in astrological predictions. And indeed those observations of the Chaldees being curiously searched into by Calisthenes, appointed by Aristotle for that purpose, were found really to go no farther than one thousand nine hundred and three years before Alexander, as Porphyry hath declared, who was no friend to the account of Moses. Δια τό μέν των ἕκαστων τοιαύτης παρατηρησις ἐν Βαβυλὼνις πιστεύεισθαι παραπροηγεῖται, for in the Iliad and the Aeneid the Chaldeans set no bar to the poetical refugees which the agriculture of Homer and the Eros of Virgil were, in their time, supposed to be. We have no scrupulous historians but the ancients left no vestige of their time behind them. Simpl. ad ν. Aristotel. de Calo, p. 125.

† This argument is therefore to me the stronger, because made by him who cannot be thought a favouter of our religion, because he was a contemnister of none, Epicurus, whose mind is thus delivered by Lucretius, l. v. 325.

‡ Pliny gives a large account of these, l. vii. c. 56, and Lucretius makes use of this argument, l. v. 333.

* Quare etiam quaedam nunc artes expoliuntur, Nunc etiam augescunt, nunc addita navigis sunt. Multa: modo organici melicoce peppercre sonores: Denique mutahe hac rerum ratioque reperta est. Nuper, et hanc primas cum primis ipse repertus Nunc ego sum in patrias qui possim vertere voces.
and commerce amongst men, and the inventions of all arts and sciences, the letters which we use, and languages which we speak, they have all known originals, and may be traced to their first authors. The first beginnings were then so known and acknowledged by all, that the inventors and authors of them were reckoned amongst their gods, and worshipped by those to whom they had been so highly beneficial: which honour and adoration they could not have obtained, but from such as were really sensible of their former want, and had experience of a present advantage by their means.

If we search into the nations themselves, we shall see none without some original: and were those *authors extant who have written of the first plantations and migrations of people, the foundations and inhabiting of cities and countries, the first rudiments would appear as evident as their later growth and present condition. We know what ways within two thousand years people have made through vast and thick woods for their habitations, now as fertile, as populous, as any. The Hercynian trees, in the time of the Caesars, occupying so great a space as to take up a journey of sixty days, + were thought even then coeval with the World. † We read without any show of contradiction, how this western part of the World hath been peopled from the east: and all the pretence of the Babylonian antiquity is nothing else, but that we all came from thence. Those eight persons saved in the Ark, descending from the Gordian mountains and multiplying to a large collection in the plain of Sinar, made their first division at that place; and that dispersion, or rather dissemination, hath peopled all other parts of the World, either never before inhabited, or dispeopled by the flood.

These arguments have always seemed so clear and undeniable, that they have put not only those who make the World eternal, but those also who confess it made (but far more ancient than we believe it), to a strange answer, to themselves uncertain, to us irrational.

For to this they replied, that this World § hath suffered many

* I mean, not only such as wrote the building of particular cities, as Apollonius Rhodius Καίσος κτῖσις, Xenophon Ἐρημίταις κτῖσις, Crito Συμμαχοῦ κτῖσις, and Philochorus Ἐλληναις κτῖσις; but those more general, as Aristotile Καίσος καὶ θεοτύπως, Polymo Κτίσεις πλας ν Ἰονίσι, Chorone Πόλεως κτίσεις, Callimachus κτίσεις καὶ πόλεως, Hellenius Κτίσεις ἑκείν καὶ σώλεως, and the indefinite κτίσεις written by Dercyllus, Dionysius, Hippys, Chloriphan, Trismachus, and others.

† 'Silvarum, Hercynia, dierum sex aginta iter occupans, ut major alis, ita et notior.' Pompon. Met. l. iii. c. 5.

‡ 'Hercyniae silvae roborum vastitas intacta aevis et congenita mundo, prope immortali sorte miracula excedit.' Pini. l. xvi. c. 5.

§ Thus Ocellus, who maintained the World was never made, answers the argument brought from the Greek histories which began with Inachus, as the first subject, not author of history (as Nega- ruela in his Annotations mistakes Ocellus): διο καὶ τῆς ἀρχαίας ἑτορίας ἀρχαῖ τὸ Ιδαχὺ εἶναι τοῦ Ἀργείου, περιεκ- τείνων εἰς, οἷον ἀνὸ τὸν τῶν ἄγγελος στομάχι, ἀλλά τῆς γενεαίς μετασχέσεις κατ' αὐτὴν, c. iii. § 5. So that he will have Inachus to be the first not absolutely, but since
alterations, by the utter destructions of nations and depopulations of countries, by which all monuments of antiquity were defaced, all arts and sciences utterly lost, all fair and stately fabrics ruined, and so mankind reduced into paucity, and the World often again returned into its infancy. This they conceived to have been done oftentimes in several ages, sometimes by a deluge of water, sometimes by a torrent of fire; and, lest any of the elements might be thought not to conspire to the destruction of mankind, the air must sweep away whole empires at once with infectious plagues, and earthquakes swallow up all ancient cities, and bury even the very ruins of them. By which answer of theirs they plainly afford two great advantages to the Christian faith. First, Because they manifestly shew that they had a universal tradition of Noah's flood, and the overthrow of the whole World: Secondly, Because it was evident to them, that there was no way to save the eternity or antiquity of the World, or to answer this argument drawn from history and the appearances of things themselves, but by supposing innumerable deluges and deflagrations. Which being merely feigned in themselves, not proved (and that first* by them who, say they, are not subject themselves unto them, as the Egyptians did, who by the advantage† of their peculiar

the last great alteration made in Greece; and then he concludes that Greece hath often been, and will often be, barbarous, and lose the memory of all their actions: ἀλλὰ καὶ γάρ γεγένον καὶ ἦταν βασιλεύς ἡ Ἑλλάς, εἰ ποτ' ἀδίστατον μόνον γοιμίνα μετάτητος, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὑπ' αὐτές τις φύσεως εὑρίσκεσθαι μείζονα μείζονα γενειακήν, ἀλλὰ γὰρ μεταρθήσαν καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀρχιν παλαιώτερα. Ocellus de Uniterro, ibid. Thus Plato, who asserted the creation of the World, but either from eternity, or such antiquity as does not much differ from it, brings in Solon inquiring the age of the Greek histories, as of Phoroneus, and Niobe, Dencalon and Pyrrha; and an Egyptian priest answering, that all the Greeks were boys, and not an old man amongst them, that is, they had no ancient monuments, or history of any antiquity, but rested contented with the knowledge of the time, since the last great mutation of their own country: Πολλαὶ γὰρ κατὰ πολλὰ ἡμέρας γεγόναν αἰώνιαν καὶ ἔσττατοι, διὸ μὲν καὶ ἔστατα μέγατα, μιμίας δὲ ἦλασε ἐτερία δερχόμεναι. In Timaeo, p. 241. Origen of Celsius: Εἰ δὲ πολλὰ ἐν παντὶ αἰῶνις σωφρότερος γεγονάν, πολλὰς δὲ ἓπικλέσεις, καὶ ἐπετείων ἴτι τὸ ἑαυτοῖς κατασκευαῖς ἐναγγέλλων γεγονάν, σαφῶς τὸν ἄκουσιν αὐτοῦ δυναμικοῖς παράστητο ποτέ κατ' αὐτὸ τοῦ κόσμου ἐξήνθη. 1. 1. § 19. And Lucretius the Epicurean, who thought the World but few thousand years old, as we believe, and that it should at last be consumed, as we also are persuaded, thinks this answer of theirs so far from being a refutation of the former, that he admits it as a confirmation of the latter part of his opinion. De Rerum Natura, l. v. 339.

* Quod si forte fuisset antehac eadem omnia credis, Sed perissius hominum torrenti secla vapor, Ant cecidisse urbes magno vexamine mundi, Aut ex imbribus assiduis exisse rapaces Per terras annus atque oppida cooperuisse: Tatnam quippe magis victus fateare necesse est, Exitum quoque terrai coquie futurum.

† So that Egyptian priest in Plato's Timeæus tells Solon that the fable of

Phaethon did signify a real conflagration of the World; but so as all which lived in mountains or dry parts of the earth were scorched and consumed, but of those who lived near the seas or rivers in the valleys, some were preserved.
situation feared neither perishing by fire nor water, serve only for a confirmation of Noah's flood so many ages past, and the surer expectation of St. Peter's fire, we know not how soon to come.

It remaineth then that we steadfastly believe, not only that the "heavens and earth, and all the host of them" (Gen. ii. 1.) were made, and so acknowledge a creation, or an actual and immediate dependence of all things on God; but also that all things were created by the hand of God, in the same manner, and at the same time, which are delivered unto us in the books of Moses by the Spirit of God, and so acknowledge a novelty, or no long existence of the creature.

Neither will the novelty of the World appear more plainly unto our conceptions, than if we look upon our own successions. The vulgar accounts, which exhibit about five thousand six hundred years, though sufficiently refuting an eternity, and allaying all conceits of any great antiquity, are not yet so properly and nearly operative on the thoughts of men, as a reflection upon our own generations. The first of men was but six days younger than the being, not so much than the appearance, of the earth: and if any particular person would consider how many degrees in a direct line he probably is removed from that single person Adam, who bare together the name of man and of the earth from whence he came, he could not choose but think himself so near the original fountain of mankind, as not to conceive any great antiquity of the World. For though the ancient heathens did imagine innumerable ages and generations of men past, though Origen did fondly seem to collect
the days of eternity?* But Methodius, bishop and martyr, hath well concluded that disputation: ταύτα ποιεῖ ο Σεβαστός σπουδάζων, καὶ ὅσα σιὰ ναισί. [Vid. p. 83.] * By the Greeks called γνεσίς, which are successions of generations from father to son: as in St. Matt. i. 17. Indeed sometimes they take it for other spaces of time: as Artemidorus observes, for seven years. Κατ᾽ ἑνόυ μὲν ἐν της ἀ. ἀ. θείν καὶ δέχοντι οἱ ἱστορικοί, τῶν δέ γενεσίων (not πετ. τοῦ, as Wolffius and Perus would correct it) μενυα (not μόνον, as Suidas) φασμένω, τίνα παρακαλέσατε (not παρακαλέσατον, as Suidas transcribing him negligently) λήγετε. Sometimes they interpret it twenty, twenty five, or thirty years, as appears by Hesychius. And by that last account they reckoned the years of Nestor: Κατ’ ἑνός δὲ Χ. ἢ βαθι καὶ τῶν Νεστοράς βελτισταὶ ποιεῖν κανέναν ἐν γνεσίναι. So Artemidorus and the Grammariæ. Although I cannot imagine that to be the sense of Homer. Δ. Α. 250. οὖν ἀδύνατον μὲν γενεάς μερῶν διαφέρον τῆς ἑτερίας, εἰ τι πάροιχον ἀμα τριλιτ ν εἰ ἐγκινητός. And I conceive that gloss in Hesychius, ἐπὶ διατείματι τὸ χαίον τῶν μὲν κατ᾽ αὐτὰ βιβλιοκάτωστον, to be far more properly applicable to that place. But, in the sense of which we now speak, it is taken for the third part ordinarily of a hundred years; as Herodotus, mentioning the Egyptian feigned genealogies: κατὰ τρειτιῶν μὲν ἅνδρων γενεάς διέλθετο μέγα, ἐνά τρισ ἑκατον περιεκινητός τῶν γε-
thirty generations removed from Adam. And indeed thus admitting but the Greek account of less than five thousand years since the flood, we may easily bring all sober or probable accounts of the Egyptians, Babylonians, and Chinese, to begin since the dispersion at Babel. Thus having expressed at last the time so far as it is necessary to be known, I shall conclude this second consideration of the nature and notion of creation.

Now being under the terms of heaven and earth, we have proved all things beside God to be contained, and that the making of all these things was a clear production of them out of nothing; the third part of the explication must of necessity follow, that he which made all things is God. This truth is so evident in itself; and so confessed by all men, that none did ever assert the World was made, but withheld affirmed that it was God who made it. There remaineth therefore nothing more in this particular, than to assert God so the Creator of the World as he is described in this Article.

Being then we believe in God the Father, maker of heaven and earth, and by that God we expressed already a singularity of the Deity; our first assertion which we must make good is, That the one God did create the World. Again, being whosoever is that God, cannot be excluded from this act of creation, as being an emanation of the Divinity, and we seem by these words to appropriate it to the Father, beside whom we shall hereafter shew that we believe some other persons to be the same God; it will be likewise necessary to declare the reason why the creation of the World is thus signally attributed to God the Father.

The first of these deserves no explication of itself, it is so obvious to all who have any true conception of God. But because it hath been formerly denied (as there is nothing so senseless but some kind of heretics have embraced, and may be yet taken up in times of which we have no reason to presume better than of the former), I shall briefly declare the creation of the World to have been performed by that one God, the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ.

As for the first, there is no such difference between things of the World, as to infer a diversity of makers of them, nor is the least or worst of creatures in their original, any way derogatory to the Creator. "God saw every thing that he had made, and behold it was very good," (Gen. i. 31.) and consequently likely to come from the Fountain of all goodness, and fit always to be ascribed to the same. Whatsoever is evil, is not so by the Creator’s action, but by the creature’s defection.

In vain then did the heretics of old, to remove a seeming inconvenience, remove a certain truth; and while they feared
to make their own god evil,* they made him partial, or but half the Deity, and so a companion at least with an evil god. For dividing all things of this World into nature substantially evil, and substantially good, and apprehending a necessity of an origination conformable to so different a condition, they imagined one God essentially good, as the first principle of the one, another god essentially evil, as the original of the other. And this strange heresy began upon the first spreading† of

* 'Inde Manichæus, ut Deum a conditione malorum liberet, alterum male induttum auctorem.' S. Hier. in Nabh. c. 3.
† For we must not look upon Manes as the first author of the heresy, though they who followed him were called from him Manichæans. Nor must we be satisfied with the relation of Socrates, who allots the beginning of that heresy, μικρὰ τε-πετασματικά λόγια, while before Constantine, being. Epiphanius asserts, the first author of it. * 'Cyril. hic τὸ πρώτον ἐνα τα ἑρατοτροπίταν περὶ τῶν χρῶν τῆς ἀπο-στόλας, in have gone to Jerusalem even about the apostles' times. St. Hier. ix. §. 3. Manes then, formerly called Cubricius, (not Urbanus, as St. Augustin,) who disseminated this heresy in the days of Aurelian or Probus the emperor, about the year 277, had a predecessor, though not a master, called first Peroephantius, after Buddas. For this Buddas left his books and estate to a widow, who saith Epiphanius, biid. ἦσας πολλὰ τῶν χρῶν τῶν ἄκτων, continued with his estate and books a long time, and at last bought Cubricus for her servant. This Buddas had a former master called Sythianus, the first author of this heresy. Besides these, between Sythianus and Cubricus there was yet another teacher of the doctrine, called Zaranes. 'Τινὶ οὖν πρὸ τῶν Μάνην ἤτερη τῆς κακίας διαδέχεται παίνει, ἐνωτία ὅπως ἔκπαθεν. If then we insert this Zaranes into the Manichæan pedigree, and consider the time of the widow between Buddas and Cubricus, and the age of Cubricus, who was then but seven years old, as Socrates testifies, when he resolved to buy him, and discover the heresy to him; there will be no reason to doubt of the relation of Epiphanius that Sythianus began about the apostolical times. Nor need we any of the abatements in the animadversions of Ptolemaeus, much less that the traduction of Epiphanius, who cites Origen as an ascensor of the Christian faith against this heresy; for though he certainly died before Manes spread his doctrine, yet it was written in several books before him, not only in the time of Buddas, to whom Socrates and Suidas attribute them, but of Sythianus, whom St. Cyril and Epiphanius make the author of them. Neither can it be objected that they were not Manichæans before the appearance of Manes; for I conceive the name of Manes (thought by the Greeks to be a name taken up by Cubricus, and proper to him) not to be any proper or peculiar name at all, but the general title of heretic in the Syrian tongue. For I am loath to think that Theodorot and the author in Suidas were so far mistaken, when they call Sycshianus Manes, as to conceive Cubricus and he were the same person; when we may with much better reason conclude that both Sythianus and Cubricus had the same title. For I conceive Manes at first rather a title than a name, from the Hebrew מַנְאֶשׁ or μανάς signifying a heretic. And although some of the Rabbins derive their מַנְאֶשׁ from Manes, yet others make it more ancient than he was, referring it to Tzadok and Bajethoos, called מַנְאֶשׁ מֶשֶפְּר בִּשָּׁלְדָה the first or chief heretics, who lived one hundred years before Christ. Wherefore it is far more rational to assert, that the who began the heresy of the Manichæes was called מַנְאֶשׁ as a heretic in the oriental tongues, and from thence Mānas by the Greeks, (to comply with μαναίος or madness in their language,) than that Mānas was first the name of a man counted a heretic by the Christians; and then made the general name of all heretics, and particularly for the Christians by the Jews. Which being granted, both Sythianus and Cubricus might well at first have the name of Manes, that is, heretic. However, the antiquity of that heresy will appear in the Marcionites, who differed not in this particular from the Manichæes. * Dios Prou- ticus Deos affert tantum quas Symplegadas naufragis suis: quern negare non potuit, id est, creatorem, id est, nostrum; et quem probare non potuit, id est, suum. Passus infelix bujos prasumptionis insctuunt de simplici capitulo Dominici pronuntiationis, in homines non in Deos disponentis exempla illis bone et male arbos, quod neque bona malos neque mala bones proferat fractus? Tertull. adv. Marcion, l. i. c. 2. This Marcion lived in the days of Antoninus Pius, and as Euseb. testifieth, Justin Martyr wrote agains.
the Gospel; as if the greatest light could not appear without a shadow.

Whereas there is no nature originally sinful, no substance in itself evil, and therefore no being which may not come from the same fountain of goodness. "I formed the light, and create darkness; I make peace, and create evil; I the Lord do all these things," (Isa. xlvi. 7.) saith he who also said, "I am the Lord, and there is none else. there is no god besides me." (Isa. xlvi. 5.) Vain then is that conceit which framed two gods, one of them called Light, the other Darkness; one good, the other evil; refuted in the first words of the Creed, I believe in God, maker of heaven and earth.

But as we have already proved that one God to be the Father, so must we yet farther shew that one God the Father to be the Maker of the World. In which there is no difficulty at all: the whole Church at Jerusalem hath sufficiently declared this truth in their devotions. "Lord, thou art God which hast made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is: against thy holy child Jesus, whom thou hast anointed, both Herod and Pontius Pilate with the Gentiles and the people of Israel were gathered together." (Acts iv. 24. 27.) Jesus then was the child of that God which made the heaven and the earth, and consequently the Father of Christ is the Creator of the World.

We know that Christ is the light of the Gentiles by his own interpretation; we are assured likewise that his Father gave him, by his frequent assertion: we may then as certainly conclude that the Father of Christ is the Creator of the World, by the prophet's express prediction: "For thus saith God the Lord, he that created the heavens and stretched them out, he which spread forth the earth, and that which cometh out of it; I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles." (Isa. xlii. 5, 6.)

And now this great facility may seem to create the greater difficulty: for being the apostles teach us, that the Son made all things, and the prophets that by the Spirit they were produced, how can we attribute that peculiarly in the Creed
unto the Father, which in the Scriptures is assigned indifferently to the Son and to the Spirit? Two reasons may particularly be rendered of this peculiar attributing the work of the creation to the Father. First, in respect of those heresies arising in the infancy of the Church, which endeavoured to destroy this truth, and to introduce another creator of the World, distinguished from the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ. An error so destructive to the Christian religion, that it raseth even the foundations of the Gospel, which refers itself wholly to the promises in the Law, and pretends to no other god, but that God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob; acknowledgeth no other speaker by the Son, than him that spake by the prophets: and therefore whom Moses and the prophets call Lord of heaven and earth, of him our blessed Saviour signifies himself to be the Son, rejoicing in spirit, and saying, “I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth.” (Luke x. 21.) Secondly, in respect of the paternal priority in the Deity, by reason whereof that which is common to the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, may be rather attributed to the Father, as the first person in the Trinity. In which respect the apostle hath made a distinction in the phrase of emanation or production: “To us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.” (1 Cor. viii. 6.) And our Saviour hath acknowledged, “The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father do.” (John v. 19.) which speaketh some kind of priority in action, according to that of the person. And in this sense the Church did always profess to believe in God the Father, Creator of heaven and earth.*

The great necessity of professing our faith in this particular appeareth several ways, as indispensably tending to the illustration of God’s glory, the humiliation of mankind, the provocation to obedience, the aversion from iniquity, and all consolation in our duty.

God is of himself infinitely glorious, because his perfections are absolute, his excellences indefective, and the splendour of his glory appeareth unto us in and through the works of his hands. “The invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead.” (Rom. i. 20.) For “He hath made the earth by his power, he hath established the world by his wisdom, and hath stretched out the heavens by his discretion.” (Jer. x. 12. li. 15.) After a long enumeration of the wonderful works of the creation, the Psalmist breaketh forth into this pious meditation, “O Lord,

* Stabat fides semper in Creatore et Christo ejus.” Tertull. adv. Marcion. l. i. c. 21. “Non alia agnosenda erit traditio Apostolorum, quam que hodie apud ipso-
how manifold are thy works! in wisdom hast thou made them all." (Psal. civ. 24.) If then the glory of God be made apparent by the creation, if he have "made all things for himself," (Prov. xvi. 4.) that is, for the manifestation of his glorious attributes, if the "Lord rejoiceth in his works," because "his glory shall endure for ever." (Psalm. civ. 31.) then is it absolutely necessary we should confess him Maker of heaven and earth, that we may sufficiently praise and glorify him. "Let them praise the name of the Lord," saith David, "for his name alone is excellent, his glory is above the earth and heaven." (Psal. cxlviii. 13.) Thus did the Levites teach the children of Israel to glorify God: "Stand up and bless the Lord your God for ever and ever: and blessed be thy glorious name, which is exalted above all blessing and praise. Thou, even thou, art Lord alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their hosts, the earth, and all things that are therein." (Neh. ix. 5, 6.) And the same hath St. Paul taught us: "For of him, and through him, and to him, are all things, to whom be glory for ever. Amen." (Rom. xi. 36.) Furthermore, that we may be assured that he which made both heaven and earth will be glorified in both, the prophet calls upon all those celestial hosts to bear their part in his hymn: "Praise ye him all his angels, praise ye him all his hosts. Praise ye him sun and moon, praise ye him all ye stars of light. Praise him ye heavens of heavens, and ye waters that be above the heavens. Let them praise the name of the Lord, for he commanded, and they were created." (Psal. cxlviii. 2—5.) And the twenty-four elders in the Revelation of St. John "fell down before him that sitteth on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns," the emblems of their borrowed and derived glories, "before the throne," the seat of infinite and eternal majesty, "saying, Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory, and honour, and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created." (Rev. iv. 10, 11.) Wherefore, "if the heavens declare the glory of God," (Psal. xix. 1.) "and all his works praise him," then "shall his saints bless him, they shall speak of the glory of his kingdom, and talk of his power." (Psal. cxliv. 10, 11.) And if man be silent, God will speak; while we through ingratitude will not celebrate, he himself will declare it, and promulgate: "I have made the earth, the man and the beast that are upon the ground, by my great power, and by my outstretched arm." (Jer. xxvii 5.)

Secondly, The doctrine of the World's creation is most properly effectual towards man's humiliation. As there is nothing more destructive to humanity than pride, and yet not any thing to which we are more prone than that; so nothing can be more properly applied to abate the swelling of our proud conceptions, than a due consideration of the other works of God,
MAKER OF HEAVEN AND EARTH. 101

with a sober reflection upon our own original. "When I consider the heavens, the work of thy fingers, the moon and the stars which thou hast ordained;" (Psal. viii. 3.) when I view those glorious apparent bodies with my eye, and by the advantage of a glass find great numbers, before beyond the power of my sight, and from thence judge there may be many millions more, which neither eye nor instrument can reach; when I contemplate those far more glorious spirits, the inhabitants of the heavens, and attendants on thy throne: I cannot but break forth into that admiration of the prophet, "What is man, that thou art mindful of him?" What is that offspring of the earth, that dust and ashes? "What is that son of man, that thou visitest him?" (Psal. viii. 4.) What is there in the progeny of an ejected and condemned father, that thou shouldst look down from heaven, the place of thy dwelling, and take care or notice of him? But if our original ought so far to humble us, how should our fall abase us? That of all the creatures which God made, we should comply with him who first opposed his Maker, and would be equal unto him from whom he new received his being. All other works of God, which we think inferior to us, because not furnished with the light of understanding, or endued with the power of election, are in a happy impossibility of sinning, and so offending of their Maker: the glorious spirits which attend upon the throne of God, once in a condition of themselves to fall, now by the grace of God preserved, and placed beyond all possibility of sinning, are entered upon the greatest happiness, of which the workmanship of God is capable: but men, the sons of fallen Adam, and sinners after the similitude of him, of all the creatures are the only companions of those "angels which left their own habitations," (Jude ver. 6.) and are "delivered into chains of darkness to be reserved unto judgment." (2 Pet. ii. 4.) How should a serious apprehension of our own corruption, mingled with the thoughts of our creation, humble us in the sight of him, whom we alone of all the creatures by our unrepented sins drew unto repentance? How can we look without confusion of face upon that monument of our infamy, recorded by Moses, who first penned the original of humanity, "It repented the Lord that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart!" (Gen. vi. 6.)

Thirdly, This doctrine is properly efficacious and productive of most cheerful and universal obedience. It made the prophet call for the commandments of God, and earnestly desire to know what he should obey. "Thy hands have made me and fashioned me: give me understanding that I may learn thy commandments." (Psal. cxix. 73.) By virtue of our first production, God hath undeniably absolute dominion over us, and consequently there must be due unto him the most exact and complete obedience from us. Which reason will appear
more convincing, if we consider of all the creatures which have been derived from the same fountain of God's goodness, none ever disobeyed his voice but the devil and man. "Mine hand," saith he, "hath laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens; when I call unto them they stand up together." (Isa. xlvi. 13.) The most loyal and obedient servants which stand continually before the most illustrious prince are not so ready to receive and execute the commands of their sovereign lord, as all the hosts of heaven and earth to attend upon the will of their Creator. "Lift up your eyes on high, and behold who hath created these things, that bringeth out their hosts by number: he calleth them all by names, by the greatness of his might, for that he is strong in power, not one faileth," (Isa. xli. 26.) but every one maketh his appearance, ready pressed to observe the designs of their commander-in-chief. Thus the Lord commanded and "they fought from heaven, the stars in their courses fought against Sisera." (Judg. v. 20.) He "commanded the ravens to feed Elias, and they brought him bread and flesh in the morning, and bread and flesh in the evening;" (1 Kings xvii. 4, 6.) and so one prophet lived merely upon the obedience of the fowls of the air. He spake to the devouring whale, "and it vomited out Jonah upon the dry land;" (Jonah ii. 10.) and so another prophet was delivered from the jaws of death by the obedience of the fishes of the sea. Do we not read of "fire and hail, snow and vapour, stormy wind, fulfilling his word?" (Psal. cxxviii. 8.) Shall there be a greater coldness in man than in the snow? More vanity in us than in a vapour? More inconstancy than in the wind? If the universal obedience of the creature to the will of the Creator cannot move us to the same affection and desire to serve and please him, they will all conspire to testify against us and condemn us, when God shall call unto them saying, "Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth, for the Lord hath spoken: I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against me." (Isa. i. 2.)

Lastly, The creation of the World is of most necessary meditation for the consolation of the servants of God in all the variety of their conditions; "Happy is he whose hope is in the Lord his God, which made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that therein is." (Psal. cxlvii. 5, 6.) This happiness consistseth partly in a full assurance of his power to secure us, his ability to satisfy us. "The earth is the Lord's, and the fulness thereof, the world and they that dwell therein. For he hath founded it upon the seas, and established it upon the floods." (Psal. xxiv. 1, 2.) By virtue of the first production he hath a perpetual right unto, and power to dispose of, all things: and he who can order and dispose of all, must necessarily be esteemed able to secure and satisfy any creature. "Hast thou not known, hast thou not heard, that the everlasting God, the
Lord, the Creator of the ends of the earth, fainteth not, neither is weary!" (Isa. xl. 28.) There is no external resistance or opposition where Omnipotency worketh, no internal weakness or defection of power where the Almighty is the agent; and consequently there remaineth a full and firm persuasion of his ability in all conditions to preserve us. Again, this happiness consisteth partly in a comfortable assurance, arising from this meditation, of the will of God to protect and succour us, of his desire to preserve and bless us. "My help cometh from the Lord, who made heaven and earth: he will not suffer thy foot to be moved," (Psal. cxxi. 2, 3.) saith the prophet David; at once expressing the foundation of his own expectancy and our security. "God will not despise the work of his hands," (Job x. 5.) neither will he suffer the rest of his creatures to do the least injury to his own image. "Behold (saith he,) I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work. No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord." (Isa. liv. 16, 17.)

Wherefore to conclude our explication of the first Article, and to render a clear account of the last part thereof; that every one may understand what it is I intend, when I make confession of my faith in the Maker of Heaven and Earth, I do truly profess, that I really believe, and am fully persuaded, that both heaven and earth and all things contained in them have not their being of themselves, but were made in the beginning; that the manner by which all things were made was by mediate or immediate creation; so that antececdently to all things beside, there was at first nothing but God, who produced most part of the World merely out of nothing, and the rest out of that which was formerly made of nothing. This I believe was done by the most free and voluntary act of the will of God, of which no reason can be alleged, no motive assigned, but his goodness; performed by the determination of his will at that time which pleased him, most probably within one hundred and thirty generations of men, most certainly within not more than six, or at farthest seven, thousand years. I acknowledge this God, Creator of the World, to be the same God who is the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ: and in this full latitude, I believe in God the Father Almighty, maker of heaven and earth.
ARTICLE II.

And in Jesus Christ, his only Son, our Lord.

The second Article of the Creed presents unto us, as the object of our faith, the second person of the blessed Trinity; that as in the Divinity there is nothing intervening between the Father and the Son, so that immediate union might be perpetually expressed by a constant conjunction in our Christian confession. And that upon no less authority than of “the Author and Finisher of our Faith,” (Heb. xii. 2.) who in the persons of the apostles gave this command to us, “Ye believe in God, believe also in me.” (John xiv. 1.) Nor speaketh he this of himself, but from the Father who sent him: for “this is his commandment, that we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ.” (1 John iii. 23.) According therefore to the Son’s prescription, the Father’s injunction, and the sacramental institution, as we are baptized, so do we* believe in the name of the Father, and the Son.

Our blessed Saviour is here represented under a threefold description: first, by his nomination, as Jesus Christ; secondly, by his generation, as the only Son of God; thirdly, by his dominion, as our Lord.

But when I refer Jesus Christ to the nomination of our Saviour, because he is in the Scriptures promiscuously and indifferently sometimes called Jesus, sometimes Christ, I would be understood so as not to make each of them equally, or in like propriety, his name. “His name was called Jesus, which was so named of the angel before he was conceived in the womb:” (Luke ii. 21.) “who is also called Christ,” (Matt. i. 16.) not by name, but by office and title. Which observation, seemingly trivial, is necessary for the full explication of this part of the Article: for by this distinction we are led unto a double notion, and so resolve our faith into these two propositions, ‘I believe there was and is a man, whose name was actually, and is truly in the most high importance, Jesus, the Saviour of the world.’ ‘I believe the man who bare that name

* ‘Eadem regula veritatis docet nos credere post Patrem etiam in Filium Dei, Christum Jesum, Dominum Deum nostrum, sed Dei Filium; hujus Dei qui et unus et solus est, conditor sæculorum, nomine. Novat. de Trinit. c. 9.
† ‘Si tamen nomen est Christus, et non appellatio potius; Unactus enim significatur. Unactus autem non magis nomen est, quam vestitus, quam calceatus, accidens nominis res.’ Tertull. adv. Prax. c. 28. ‘Quorum nominum alterum est reiprimum, quod ab Angelo impositum est; alterum accidens, quod ab unctione convenit.’ Ibid. ‘Christus commune dignitatis est nomen, Jesus proprium vocabulum Salvatoris.’ S. Hieron. in Matt. xvi. 20. ‘Jesus inter homines nominatur; nam Christus non proprium nomen est, sed nuncupatio potestatis et regni,’ Lactan. de rer. Sep. l. iv. c. 7. ‘Dum dicitur Christus, commune nomen dignitatis est; dum Jesus Christus, proprium vocabulum Salvatoris est.’ Isidor. Orig. l. vii. c. 2 Τονες καλεῖται φιλεόμενος. S. Cyril. Car. lech. 10.
to be the Christ, that is, the Messias promised of old by God, and expected by the Jews.

For the first, it is undoubtedly the proper name of our Saviour, given unto him, according to the custom of the Jews, at his circumcision: and as the Baptist was called John, even so the Christ was called Jesus. Beside, as the imposition was after the vulgar manner, so was the name it-elf of ordinary use. We read in the Scriptures of "Jesus which was called Justus," a fellow-worker with St. Paul; (Col. iv. 11.) and of a "certain sorcerer, a Jew, whose name was Barjesus," (Acts xiii. 6.) that is, the son of Jesus. Josephus, in his History, mentioneth one Jesus the son of Ananus, another the son of Saphates, a third the son of Judas, slain in the temple: and many of the high-priests, or priests, were called by that name; as the son of Damnaeus, of Gamaliel, of Onias, of Phabes, and of Thebuth. Ecclesiasticus called the Wisdom of Jesus the son of Sirach, and that Sirach the son of another Jesus. St. Stephen speaks of the "tabernacle of witness brought in with Jesus into the possession of the Gentiles;" (Acts vii. 44, 45.) and the Apostle in his explication of those words of David, "To-day if you will hear his voice," (Psal. xcvi. 7.) observeth that, "if Jesus had given them rest, then would he not afterwards have spoken of another day." (Heb. iv. 8.) Which two Scriptures being undoubtedly understood of Joshua, the son of Nun, teach us as infallibly that Jesus is the same name with Joshua. Which being at the first imposition in the full extent of pronunciation Jehovah, in process of time contracted to Jeshuah, by the omission of the last letter (strange and difficult to other languages.), and by the addition of the Greek termination, became Jesus.

Wherefore it will be necessary, for the proper interpretation of Jesus, to look back upon the first that bare that name, who was the son of Nun, of the tribe of Ephraim, the successor of Moses, and so named by him, as it is written, "and Moses called Oshea, the son of Nun, Jehovah." (Num. xiii. 16.) His first name, then, imposed at his circumcision, was Oshea, or Hoshea: the same with the name of the "son of Azaziah, ruler of Ephraim," (1 Chron. xxvii. 20.) of the "son of Elah, king of Israel," (2 Kings xvii. 1.) of the "son of Beerih, the prophet:" (Hos. i. 1.) and the interpretation of this first name


† First יושע as generally in the books of Moses, in Joshua, Judges, Samuel, the Kings, yeu even in Haggai and Zechariah: then contracted into יוע, as in the 1 Chron. xxix. 11. 2 Chron. xxxi. 15. and constantly in Ezra and Nehemiah. Next the last letter י was but lightly pronounced, as appears by the Greek translation, 1 Chron. vii. 7. where יוע is rendered in the Roman and Alexandrian copies יושע, in the Aldus and Complutænian editions יושע, and by Eusebius, who expresseth it truer than those copies, יושע. At last י was totally left out both in the pronunciation and the writing, and the whole name of Joshua contracted to יוש. 
Hoshea is Saviour. Now we must not imagine this to be a total alteration, but observe it as a change not trivial or inconsiderable. And being Hoshea was a name afterwards used by some, and Jehoshua, as distinct, by others, it will necessarily follow, there was some difference between these two names; and it will be fit to inquire what was the reason, and in what the force of the alteration doth consist.

First, therefore, we observe that all the original letters in the name Hoshea are preserved in that of Joshua; from whence it is evident, that this alteration was not made by a verbal mutation, as when Jacob was called Israel, nor by any literal change, as when Sarai was named Sarah, nor yet by dimunution or mutation; but by addition, as when Abram

* Osee in lingua nostra Salvatorem nominat, quod nomen habuit etiam Josue filius Nun, ante quem et a Deo vocabulum mutatur.' S. Hier. in Osee, c. 1. l. 1. adv. Joaquinum, col. 474. I read indeed of other interpretations among the Greeks, no good expositors of the Hebrew names: as in an ancient MS. of the LXX. Translation of the Prophets, now in the library of Cardinal Barberini, at the beginning of Hosea, 'Hosei, neutum, and again, 'Hosei, etc., sic vocat, s. supr. (Of which the first and last are far from the original: and the middle agreeable with the root, not with the conjugation, as being derived from ναός not in Niphal, but in Hiphil.) And in another MS. of the Prophets in the King's library at St. James's, 'Hosei, ευν.νιον, ε πελατ, and again, 'Hosei, εμα. σαμίωνος, which is the interpretation inserted into Hesychius; in whom for 'Hosei we must read 'Hosei and so I suppose Salmasius intended it, though the Holland edition hath made his emendation 'Hosei.

† As the Samaritan Pentateuch makes it the same name, which he was first named, and which he had afterwards; as if Moses had only called Osee, Oseea.

‡ So Justin Martyr speaks of Hosea as μετατομαζόμενος του Ισραηλ διαρκες. And comparing it with that alteration of Jacob's name: του Ίσραηλ εκαστου του Ισραηλ προστατευτηκεν θεος, και του Ισραηλ ιδιοτης εκπληκτης θεος εκπληκτης, where, to pass by his mistake in supposing him first named Israel, and after called Jacob, he makes the alteration of Hosea to Joshua equal to that of Jacob to Israel. Dial. cum Tryph, p. 84. 314. 538. 540. The reason whereof was the Greek version of the name, who for Hosea transliterated it Άσους εποιεσαται Μακεδονιος του Άσου του Ναου, Ισραηλ. Numh. xiii. 16. 'Dum Mosas successor desistit, Nave transferred, etc., de pristino nomine, ut inequit vocari Jesu.' Tertull. adv. Jud. c. 9. et adv. Marciou. l. iii. c. 16. 'igitur Moyses his administratis Ausem quendam nomen praenomen populato, qui eos revocaret ad patrum terram.' S. Clem. Rom. l. i. c. 17. ου γαρ εστιν γενος (Μωσεως) τουαι διαλεγομεν τη του Ισραηλ ορκομενον προστατη, διοτα, ει της του Ισραηλ μετα της γνωσης αυτης τελεσαται, καλεσαν: Ισραηλ αυτης χαρακτης, Esch. Ecl. Hist. l. i. c. 3. Thus was the Hosea something disguised by Auses, and was further estranged yet by those who frequently called him Naose, as Esch. Demonstr. Evang. l. v. c. 17. thrice.

§ This Justin Martyr charges upon the Jews as neglected by them, and affirms the reason why they received not Jesus for the Christ, was their not observing the alteration of Hosea, into Joshua or Jesus: Άσους καλομενος Ισραηλοτων Ιακωβ εκαλες, τοτε του εορ της, δε του αυτοις ερευς, εικ απιστεις, εικ φασινεταις, τοργαιεις χειλει, ει Χριστος, και αναγεννησειν αυ ους, Dial. cum Tryph, p. 540. And whereas they spake much of the change made in the names of Abram and Sarai, which were but of a letter, they took no notice of this total alteration of the name; so he: Ιδι ει τι μεν ει θορα πρωτα προσεποιηθεν τω Αβρααμοι διαρκεας αναγεννησεις, και δια ει τι ει τω ζωρω διαρκεας διαρκεας κοινωνης. Ιδι λε τε το πατρους ωσαν το Ιουσ εω του ναου ελα συν μετατομαζομεν τω Ιουσ, εο ζειν; ibid. Where, to pass by the vulgar mistake of the Greeks, who generally deliver the addition of α in the name of Abraham, and ϕ in the name of Sarah, when the first was an addition of ι, the second a change of ει into ι, he would make that of Hosea into Jesus a far more considerable alteration than that of Abraham, or of Sarah.
was called Abraham. Secondly, it must be confessed that there is but one literal addition, and that of that letter which is most frequent in the Hebrew names: but being thus solemnly added by Moses, upon so remarkable an occasion as the viewing of the land of Canaan was, and that unto a name already known, and after used; it cannot be thought to give any less than a present designation of his person to be a Saviour of the people, and future certainty of salvation included in his name unto the Israelites by his means. Thirdly, though the number of the letters be augmented actually but to one, yet it is not improbable that another may be virtually added, and in the signification understood. For being the first letter of Hoshea will not endure a duplication, and if the same letter were to be added, one of them must be absorbed; it is possible another of the same might be by Moses intended, and one of them suppressed. If then unto the name Hoshea we join one of the titles of God, which is Jah, there will result from both, by the custom of that Hebrew tongue, Jehoshua, and so not only the instrumental, but also the original cause of the

For it may well be thought that is added to make the name Jerus the same with the third person of the future in Hiphil, ירש. For although the characteristic letter of the conjugation Hiphil be excluded in the future tense, and so the regular word be more frequently in use; yet sometimes it is expressed, as it is used. 1 Sam. xvi. 47. ירש ויהי קְרָבָא דָּרוֹן לְאָלָם וּרְאוּשׁוֹ. And all the assembly shall know that the Lord saith (or will say) not with sword and spear: and Psal. cxvi. 6. ירושי ינ עָרֵר I was brought low, and he helped me. And although there be another in the future than in the name, yet being it is also found sometimes with the lesser Chiric, and so without the latter כ, or without any Chiric at all, as frequently with the addition of י, ירוש, there is no reason, but ירוש, the name of the son of Nun, may be of the same force, as consisting of the same letters with the third person of the future in Hiphil. Again, being added to the future, as formative there-of, stands in the place of for the avoiding of confusion with conjunctive which is nothing else than the abbreviation of ירש, we may well assign at least this emphasis to the mutation which Moses made: that whereas before there was nothing but salvation barely in his name, now there is no less than he shall save in which the י is a peculiar designation of the person, and the shall or tense a certainty of the futuritn. Thus will the design of Moses appear to be nothing else but a predication or confirmation of that which was not before, but by way of des-

sire or ommoration; and this only by chang-

ing the imperative into the future, יִרְשֶׁה, the expectation of the people, into יִרְשֶׁה, the ratification of Moses. So did the ancients understand it to the Greeks Jesus is σαβατον Ωςει, to the Latins, Salvator Dii. So Eusebius De nature. Euseb. 1. iv. ad juvem. "Εις τὴν σωτηρίαν Ωςει, τον Χριστον φανε τον 'Ιουν μετατελεσθαι δυναμενοι. 'Ιουν μεν γαρ πει 'Εριπης εις τον του 'Ιουν μετατελεσθαι δυναμενοι. Where nothing can be more certain than that is taken for the name of God, and the εις τον του του 'Ιουν μετατελεσθαι δυναμενοι, which words seem plainly to signify that Jesus is interpreted Saviour, because is in the Hebrew tongue signifies salvation. I confess the words may be strained to the same sense with those of Eusebius, but not without some force, and contrary to what he seemeth to intend. Especially considering those which followed him in the same mistake, as Moschopulus pei χρησιν, p. 6. Εις τον του του 'Ιουν μετασχεται, δε θεος περ 'Εριπης την σωτηριαν. Whereas is in Eusebius is certainly no other than ירוש, and ירוש than ירוש, and is not contracted of ירוש, the salvation of God. Nor is this only the opinion of Eusebius, but of St. Jerome, a man much better acquainted with the Hebrew language; who on the first chapter of Hosea.
Jews' deliverance will be found expressed in one word: as if Moses had said, 'This is the person by whom God will save his people from their enemies.'

Now being we have thus declared that Jesus is the same name with Joshua; being the name of Joshua was first imposed by divine designation, as a certain prediction of the fulfilling to the Israelites, by the person which bare the name, all which was signified by the name; being Jesus was likewise named by a more immediate imposition from heaven, even by the ministration of an angel: it followeth, that we believe he was infallibly designed by God to perform unto the sons of men whatsoever is implied in his nomination. As therefore in Hoshea there was expressed salvation, in Joshua at least was added the designation of that single person to save, with certainty of preservation, and probably even the name of God, by whose appointment and power he was made a Saviour; so shall we find the same in Jesus. In the first salutation, the angel Gabriel told the blessed Virgin, she should 'conceive in her womb, and bring forth a son, and should call his name Jesus.' (Luke i. 31.) In the dream of Joseph the angel of the Lord informed him not only of the nomination, but of the interpretation or etymology;* "thou shalt call his name Jesus, for he shall save his people from their sins." (Matt. i. 21.) In which words is clearly expressed the designation of the person He, and the futurition of salvation certain by him, He shall save. Beside that other addition of the name of God, propounded in Joshua as probable, appeareth here in some degree above probability, and that for two reasons. First, Because it is not barely said that He, but as the original raiseth it, He himself shall save. Joshua saved Israel not by his own power, not of himself, but God by him; neither saved he his own people, but the people of God: whereas Jesus himself, by his own power, the power of God, shall save his own people, the people of God. Well therefore may we understand the interpretation of his name to be God the Saviour. Secondly, Immediately upon the prediction of the name of Jesus, and the interpretation given by the angel, the evangelist expressly observeth, "All this was done that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet saying, Behold, a vir-

shewing that Joshua had first the same name with that of the prophet, saith: "Non enim (ut made in Græcis codicibus legiur et Latinis) Ause dictus est, quod nihilominus intelligitur, sed Ose, id est, Salvator; et additum est ejus nominis Dominus, ut Salvator Dominii dicatur.' Comment, in Ose, c. i. 1. col. 9. What then was it but that the Dominus added to his name? For as in the name of Esias, St. Jerome acknowledges the addition, the name of God: 'Interpretatur autem Esias, Salvator Dominii.' Comment in Is. c. i. 1. col. 2. in the same manner did he conceive it in the name of Joshua, only with this difference, that in the one it begins, in the other it concludes the name. 2. Jesus Hebrew Sermon Salvator dicatur. Exegetologiam ergo nominis ejus Evangelista signavit, dictus, Vocatus nonem ejus Jesus, quia nase salvum facit populum sumum.' S. Hier. Comment, in Matt. c. i. 21. col. 587.

† Ad re, i.e.
gin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is God with us.” (Matt. i. 22, 23.) Several ways have been invented to shew the fulfilling of that prophecy, notwithstanding our Saviour was not called Emmanuel; but none can certainly appear more proper, than that the sense of Emmanuel should be comprehended in the name of Jesus: and what else is God with us, than God our Saviour? Well there’zath the evangelist conjoined* the prophet and the angel, asserting Christ was therefore named Jesus, because it was foretold he should be called Emmanuel, the angelical God the Saviour being in the highest propriety the prophetical God with us.

However, the constant Scripture interpretation of this name is Saviour. So said the angel of the Lord to the amazed shepherds, " Unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour which is Christ the Lord.” (Luke ii. 11.) So St. Paul to the Jews and Gentile proselytes at Antioch, "Of this man’s seed hath God, according to his promise, raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus.” (Acts xiii. 23.) Which explication of this sacred name was not more new or strange unto the world, than was the name itself so often used before. For the ancient Grecians usually gave it at first as a title to their gods, + whom

* Βλάστης Ἰσραήλων διόγγαντο καὶ προφητεύετο, μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ μεταφέροντα γαρ τὸ μετέχειν ἐν Θεῷ. Ἡ γέννησις αὐτοῦ ἦσαν ἡ Δαβίδ, ἤ τετέλεσε τὸ πάθος, τί μετά διόλου διστάσατο Ἰακώβας. 

+ Τοιούτως προφητεύετο: "Εἰς τὸν Δαβίδ διακατέφυλεν βασιλεὺς ὁ προφήτης αὐτοῦ εἰς τῆς φυλής τοῖς λαοῖς." (I Chron. xvii. 14.)
after any remarkable preservations they styled saviours, and under that notion built temples, and consecrated altars to them. Nor did they rest with their mistaken piety, but made it stoop unto their baser flattery, calling those men their saviours* for whom they seemed to have as great respect and honour as for their gods.

Nor does it always signify so much as that it may not be attributed to man: for even in the Scriptures the Judges of Israel were no less than their saviours. "When the children of Israel cried unto the Lord, the Lord raised up a

but of the original and occasion of it. For when Caesar and Pollux thrust the sons of Theseus out of Athens, and made Menestheus king, he gave them first this name: Χιά υπάτα πρωτα το Μινωείος δικαία τε και σωτήρας ενώπιος. Εἰσίν. Ταν. Ημ. L. 4. c. 3. Beside these, we read in the ancient inscriptions: Αὐτοίποις Σωτῆρες and again: Αὐτοίποις καὶ Ἱρίες Σωτηρίς. For as they had their female deities, so did they attribute this title to their goddesses, and that both in the masculine and the feminine gender. As to Venus, Αφροδίτη Θεά Παντάκλη καὶ Σωτῆρες to Diana, Αρτέμιδοι Σωτῆρες, as the same collection of inscriptions hath it. Thus Pherecrates, Ἡμῖν αὕτης τις πέλας διὰ ταῦτας Σωτηρίς, and Sophocles, Τυχή γά τοι Σωτῆρις. (Εἰς. Τυρ. 80.) Thus the epigram extant in Suidas,

Φωσφόρος, ὁ Σωτήρ, ἔπι Παλλάδος ἐπιτάξι
κληρον.

*Ἀστρειπ.*

Οδίπος ἡτ αἱμῶν καὶ πτέρυγας καὶ ἄλεσικαν περσικακίας. Θεοδικ. Σερ. ν. 390. of Hercules. The Baisics, an ancient people in Peloponnesus, "Ἀστρεύμενοι γυμνάζονται οἵτινες. Προ. Ην. Ἐορράου, c. v. 500. Their temple and statue in the city Trachon was built and named by Pherecrates at his safe return from Ciste. The Messenians prevented by her the Persians, ἐπὶ τέλει σωτήρας ἀριστοτελεία ἐπιταύτα 'Ἀστρεύμενος' and upon the same occasion another of the same bigness set up at Paphos. Ιδομ. But this title especially was given to Minerva. Σωτηρὶς η ἀκούσα πέρα τις Ἑλληνες. Ησυχήν. Ἐντε χρόνοι ἄνευντος Σωτηρὶς λαγμοίν, καὶ Σωτηρὶς. Σηστ. Αριστ. ο. Ηναυα, ο. 381. Aristotle in his will obliged Nicaros to a dedication, Δι Σωτηρὶς καὶ ἀκούσα εὐσεβεία. Λεον. ο. Ην. Αρίστ. Ι. ν. π. 117. And in general they invoked God under the notion of Σωτήρ, as Plato in Timaes: οὗτός ἐς καὶ νῦν ἐς ἄρχη τοις λαγμοιν Σωτηρὶς ἐς τοις καὶ ἄνδρος διηγομένης πρὸς το τῶν εἰκόνων δύναμιν δι' αὐτίνοις ἑστεκαλομένοις, τολμάν ἄρχαις λαγμοὶ. p. 341.

* This was the constant title of the first Ptolemy, the son of Lagus, given to him by the Rhodians. Οὐγκατα μὲν ἔν κατὰ τα αὐτὰ Πτολεμαῖοι σφην, ἄλλα δὲ ἐπικλήσεις ἄλλας καὶ γὰρ φιλοιεύτερα καλοῦντο, καὶ οὐδέποτε ἔτορον, τοῦ δὲ τοῦ Ἀρχον εὐστήρα, παρεδόθην τοῦ συντ. τοῦ βίου. Ρινσ. Αἰνίς, c. v. 6. Which name first given him by the Rhodians was no way expressed in his usage of the Syrians, as is observed by Josephus: ἐκ καὶ τοῦ συντ. ἐπάπταν ὑπὸ Πτολεμαίου τοῦ Ἀρχον εὐστήρας τότε χρησαμενοῖς τα ἑσπεριν άπιτευμα τῆς ἐπικυρίας. Antiq. Jud. I. ν. c. 1. This was so familiar, that the Tertullian used the title instead of the name. 'Post eum (sc. Alexanderum) regnavit illic in Alexandria Soter annis 35.' Adv. Judæos. c. 8. Thus Antigonus was first called by the Greeks their Εὐσεβεῖς, or benefactor, then Σωτήρ, καὶ οὐνίων: οὐ μόνον ἐκράν παρ' αὐτοῦ τὸν καιρὸν Εὐσεβεῖς, ἄλλα καὶ μεταλλάξας, Σωτήρ Παλμ. I. ν. c. 9. Thus we read of Demetrius, who restored the Athenians to their liberty: ἰεροπριτευοντας καὶ βούλετις ἰκαλεσαν ἐπανωρθήσας τῶν Δημαρκίων, Σωτήρ καὶ Εὐσεβείς ἐπανωρθεύτης. Plot. in Vita. c. ix. And not only so, but numbered Demetrius and Antigonus among their DEI SOTERES; and instead of their annual archon, whose name they used in their distinction of years, they created a place of these DEI SOTERES, as the same author testifieth: ενδοτε Σωτηρίς ἀνευραμένος, καὶ τοῦ ὁποίου καὶ πατρον ἀρχοντα καταποίησε, ἵππα Σωτηρίς ἵππους, καὶ ἱπποτας κατατοίχισε, συνα Νικαίοις ἑιρεμοντας καὶ ονοματο πάντωσυν, c. vi. Appian relates of Demetrius that he received this title from the Babylonians. Τιμαοῖος ἐπανώτατον ἅπασι πάντῃ τοις Βαβυλονικῖς ἀρχομένος, εἴ τε καὶ Σωτήρ διαχείμασι τοις Βαβυλονικῖς ἄρθρα, De Bell. Syr. c. 47. Lucian's mistake in his Salutation tells us of Αὐτίκος ὁ Σωτήρ, and Appian gives us the routing of the Gauls as the cause of that title: ἐκ καὶ Σωτήρ ἐπικλήσει γαλάτας ἐκ τῆς Δυσάρεις ἐκ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐξελέσας. Ib. c. 65. And in process of time this title grew so customary and familiar, that the Sicilians bestowed it upon Verres their oppressor. "Itaque illum non solum patronum istius insulæ, sed etiam Soteram inscriptum vidit Syracusius," says Cicero, 4. Verr. c. 63.
 deliverer to the children of Israel, who delivered them, even Othniel the son of Kenaz." (Judg. iii. 9.) And again, "When they cried unto the Lord, the Lord raised them up a deliverer, Ehud the son of Gera." (Judg. iii. 15.) Where, though, in our translation we call Othniel and Ehud deliverers, yet in the original they are plainly termed saviours.*

Now what the full import and ultimate sense of the title of saviour might be, seemed not easy to the ancients: and the best of the Latins thought the Greek word so pregnant and comprehensive, that the Latin tongue had no single word able to express it.

But whatsoever notion the heathen had of their gods or men which they styled saviours, we know this name belongeth unto Christ in a more sublime and peculiar manner. "Neither is there salvation in any other; for there is none other name under heaven given among men whereby we must be saved." (Acts iv. 12.)

It remaineth therefore that we should explain how and for what reason Christ truly is, and properly is called, our Saviour. First, then, I conceive, one sufficient cause of that appellation

---


So Cicero in the place before cited, having said he saw Venus inscribed Soter, goes on: 'Hoc quomum est, ita magis: At Latino una verbo expressi non possit.' But though in Cicero's time there was no Latin word used in that sense; yet not long after it was familiar. For as in the Greek inscriptions we read often dedications at Σωτήρ: so in the Latin we find often Divi Soteri, or Conservatori, sometimes Savi Salvator, or Saliatur: all which are nothing else but the Latin expressions of the Greek inscriptions. And without question Σωτήρ might have been rendered Sopitator, and even Sospe, as it was used in the days of Ennius. 'Sospe, salvus: Ennius cameos sospitem praebuit possit.' Festus. Neither indeed could the Sicilians mean any more of Verres, by the word Soter, than fully spake of himself, when he styled himself Servatorem Reipub. Pro Planc. c. 36. At least Tacitus did conceive that Conservator is as much as Soter, when speaking of Milichus, who detected the conspiracies to Nero, he saith: 'Milichus prœmiis dutius Conservatoris sibi nomen, Graeco ej is rei vocabulo, assumpsit.' Annal. i. xx. c. 71. He took to himself the name of Conservator, in a Greek word which signifies so much, and without question that must be Σωτήρ. However, the first Christians of the Latin Church were some time in doubt what word to use as the constant interpretation of Σωτήρ, so frequent and essential to Christianity. Tertullian useth Salvatoris. But, as some books read it, Salvatoris: 'Ergo jam non unus Deus, nec unus Salvatoris, si duo salvatis artifices, et unique altero indigens.' De carne Christi, c. 14. and shows it was so translated in the Philippian Epistle, ch. 20. 'Et quidem de terra in caelum, ubi nostri municipiis Philippienses quoque ab Apostolo discunt; Unde et Salvatoris nominare expectamus Jesus Christum.' De Resur. Carnis, c. 47. St. Hilary thought Salvatoris a sufficient interpretation: 'Est autem Salutarius ipso illo nomine quo Jesus nuncupatur. Jesus enim secundum Hebraicam linguan Salutaris est.' In Psal. cxxviii. St. Augustin is indifferent between that and Salvator: 'Deus salvos faciendo Dominus est Jesus, quod interpretagtur Salvator, sede Sallaturs.' And so Lactantius. At last they generally used the word Salvator. First Tertullian: 'Christus in illo significatur, taurus ub utranque dispositionem: alis ferus, ut Judae, alit maasuctus, ut Salvator.' adv. Marcian. i. iii. c. 18. Which word of his was rather followed by his imitator St. Cyprian, after whom Arnobius used it, after him his disciple Lactantius: and from thence it continued the constant language of the church, till the late innovators burst it out of the Latin translation.
to consist in this, that he hath opened and declared unto us the only true way for the obtaining eternal salvation, and by such patertaction can deserve no less than the name of Saviour. For if those apostles and preachers of the Gospel, who received the way of salvation from him, which they delivered unto others, may be said to save those persons which were converted by their preaching; in a far more eminent and excellent manner must he be said to save them, who first revealed all those truths unto them. St. Paul "provoked to emulation them which were his flesh, that he might save some of them;" (Rom. xi. 14.) and "was made all things to all men, that he might by all means save some." (1 Cor. ix. 22.) He exhorted "Timothy to take heed unto himself, and unto the doctrine, and continue in them; for in doing this he should both save himself and them that heard him," (1 Tim. iv. 16.) And St. James speaks in more general terms; "Brethren, if any of you do err from the truth, and one convert him; let him know, that he which converteth a sinner from the error of his way, shall save a soul from death." (Jam. v. 19, 20.) Now if these are so expressly said to save the souls of them which are converted by the doctrine which they deliver, with much more reason must Christ be said to save them, whose ministers they are, and in whose name they speak. "For it was he which "came and preached peace to them which were afar off, and to them that were nigh." (Eph. ii. 17.) The will of God concerning the salvation of man was revealed by him. "No man hath seen God at any time: the only-begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him." (John i. 18.) Being then "the Gospel of Christ is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth," (Rom. i. 16.) being they which preach it at the command of Christ are said to save the souls of such as believe their word, being it was Christ alone "who brought life and immortality to light through the Gospel:" (2 Tim. i. 10.) therefore he must in a most eminent and singular manner be acknowledged thereby to save, and consequently must not be denied, even in this first respect, the title of Saviour.

Secondly. This Jesus hath not only revealed, but also procured, the way of salvation; not only delivered it to us, but also wrought it out for us; and so "God sent his Son into the world, that the world through him might be saved." (John iii. 17.) We were all concluded under sin, and, being the wages of sin is death, we were obliged to eternal punishment, from which it was impossible to be freed, except the sin were first remitted. Now this is the constant rule, that "without shedding of blood is no remission. It was therefore necessary that Christ should appear to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself." (Heb. ix. 22, 23, 26.) And so he did, for he "shed his blood for many, for the remission of sins," (Matt. xxvi. 28.) as himself profess-
eth in the sacramental institution: “he bare our sins in his own body on the tree,” (1 Pet. ii. 24.) as St. Peter speaks; and so in him “we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins.” (Col. i. 14.) And if “while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us: much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath by him.” (Rom. v. 8, 9.) Again, we were all enemies unto God, and having offended him, there was no possible way of salvation, but by being reconciled to him. If then we ask the question, as once the Philistines did concerning David, “Wherewith should we reconcile ourselves unto our master?” (1 Sam. xxix. 4.) We have no other name to answer it but Jesus. For “God was in Christ reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them.” (2 Cor. v. 19.) And as under the law “the blood of the sin-offering was brought into the tabernacle of the congregation to reconcile withal in the holy place;” (Lev. vi. 30.) so it pleased the Father through the Son, “having made peace by the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself.” (Col. i. 20.) And thus it comes to pass, that us “who were enemies in our mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled in the body of his flesh through death.” (Ibid. 21, 22.) And upon this reconciliation of our persons must necessarily follow the salvation of our souls. “For if when we were enemies, we were reconciled unto God by the death of his Son; much more being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.” (Rom. v. 10.) Furthermore, we were all at first enslaved by sin, and brought into captivity by Satan, neither was there any possibility of escape but by way of redemption. Now it was the Law of Moses, that if “any were able, he might redeem himself:” (Lev. xxv. 49.) but this to us was impossible, because absolute obedience in all our actions is due unto God, and therefore no act of ours can make any satisfaction for the least offence. Another law gave yet more liberty, that he who “was sold might be redeemed again; one of his brethren might redeem him.” (Lev. xxv. 48.) But this in respect of all the mere sons of men was equally impossible, because they were all under the same captivity. Nor could they satisfy for others, who were only unable to redeem themselves. Wherefore there was no other brother, but that Son of man, which is the Son of God, who was like unto us in all things, sin only excepted, which could work this redemption for us. And what he only could, that he freely did perform. For “the Son of man came to give his life a ransom for many:” (Matt. xx. 28.) and as he came to give, so he “gave himself a ransom for all.” (1 Tim. ii. 6.) So that in him “we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins.” (Eph. i. 7.) For we are “bought with a price:” (1 Cor. vii. 23.) for we are “redeemed, not with corruptible things, as silver and gold; but with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and
without spot.” (1 Pet. i. 18, 19.) He then which hath obtained for us remission of sins, he who through himself hath reconciled us to God, he who hath given himself as a ransom to redeem us, he who hath thus wrought out the way of salvation for us, must necessarily have a second and a far higher right unto the name of Jesus, unto the title of our Saviour.

Thirdly, Beside the promulgating and procuring, there is yet a farther act, which is, conferring of salvation on us. All which we mentioned before was wrought by virtue of his death, and his appearance in the Holy of Holies: but we must still believe he “is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.” (Heb. vii. 25.) For now being set down at the right hand of God, he hath received all power both in heaven and earth; and the end of this power which he hath received is, to confer salvation upon those which believe in him. For the Father gave the Son “this power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as he hath given him; ” (John xvii. 2.) that he should raise our bodies out of the dust, and cause our corruptible to put on incorruption, and our mortal to put on immortality: and upon this power we are to expect salvation from him. For we must “look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ, from heaven, who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.” (Phil. iii. 20, 21.) And “unto them that thus look for him shall he appear the second time, without sin unto salvation.” (Heb. ix. 28.) Being then we are all to endeavour that our “spirits may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus:” (1 Cor. v. 5.) being St. Peter hath taught us, that “God hath exalted Christ with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour;” (Acts. v. 31.) being the conferring of that upon us which he promised to us, and obtained for us, is the reward of what he suffered: therefore we must acknowledge that the actual giving of salvation to us is the ultimate and conclusive ground of the title Saviour.

Thus by the virtue of his precious blood Christ hath obtained remission of our sins, by the power of his grace hath taken away the dominion of sin, in the life to come will free us from all possibility of sinning, and utterly abolish death, the wages of sin; wherefore well said the angel of the Lord, “Thou shalt call his name Jesus, for he shall save his people from their sins;” (Matt. i. 21.) well did Zacharias call him “a horn of salvation;” (Luke i. 69.) Simeon, “the salvation of God;” (Luke ii. 30.) St. Paul, “the Captain and Author of eternal salvation;” (Heb. ii. 10. v. 9.) St. Peter, “a Prince and a Saviour,” (Acts v. 31.) correspondent to those Judges of Israel, raised up by God himself to deliver his people from the hands of their enemies, and for that reason called saviours
AND IN JESUS, &c.

115 "In the time of their trouble (say the Levites), when they cried unto thee, thou heardest them from heaven, and according to thy manifold mercies thou gavest them saviours, who saved them out of the hand of their enemies." (Neh. ix. 27.)

The correspondence of Jesus unto those temporal saviours will best appear, if we consider it particularly in Joshua, who bare that salvation in his name, and approved it in his actions. For, as the son of Sirach saith, "Jesus the son of Nave was valiant in the wars, and was the successor of Moses in prophecies, who, according to his name, was made great for the saving of the elect of God." (Ecclus. xlvi. 1.) Although therefore Moses was truly and really "a ruler and deliverer," (Acts vii. 35,) which is the same* with saviour; although the rest of the judges were also by their office rulers and deliverers, and therefore styled saviours, as expressly Othniel and Ehud are; yet Joshua, far more particularly and exactly than the rest, is represented as a type of our Jesus, and that typical singularity manifested in his name.† For first, he it was alone, of all which passed out of Egypt, who was designed to lead the children of Israel into Canaan, the land of promise flowing with milk and honey. Which land as it was a type of the heaven of heavens, the inheritance of the saints, and eternal joys flowing from the right hand of God; so is the person which brought the Israelites into that place of rest‡ a type of him who only can bring us into the presence of God, and there prepare our mansions for us, and assign them to us, as Joshua divided the land for an inheritance to the tribes. Besides, it is further observable, not only what Joshua did, but what Moses could not do. The hand of Moses and Aaron brought them out of Egypt, but left them in the wilderness, and could not seat them in Canaan. Joshua, the successor, only could effect that in which Moses failed. Now nothing is more frequent in the phrase of the Holy Ghost, than to take Moses for the doctrine delivered, or the books written by him, that is, the Law;§

* Ρώστε, εὐτέρως ουτρικτίζήν. And again: Ἡ αὐτή, ο Ζεὺς, ο ἀλευθέρος η λυτράτεις. He-such.
† Quantum attinet ad propheticum apparatum, nec geri nec dici aliquid posit insignius, quandoquidem res perducta est usuque ad hominum expressionem. S. August, contra Faust. l. xvi. c. 19.
‡ Ου τὸν τρίτον εὐσίδο εἰσήγαγα εἰς τὸν ἄγιον γὰρ τὸν θαλό, οὐχ Μωυσῆς, καὶ οὐ Κυρίας, οὐ χήρως δοκίμαι αὐτὸν τοῖς εὐκαθεξεῖ μετ' αυτῷ, εἰτὸν καὶ Ἰούστοις ἡ Χριστός τοῦ λαοῦ ἡμῶν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὸν οὐρανόν, καὶ διαμετέρεσθαν τὸν ἄγιον γὰρ ἁγιάτα. Justin. Dial. cum Tryph. p. 310.
from whence it followeth, that the death of Moses and the succession of Joshua prefigured the continuance of the Law till Jesus came, “by whom all that believe are justified from all things, from which we could not be justified by the Law of Moses.” (Acts xiii. 39.) “The Law and the prophets were until John: since that the kingdom of God is preached.” (Luke xvi. 16.) Moses must die, that Joshua may succeed. “By the deeds of the Law there shall no flesh be justified (for by the Law is the knowledge of sin); but the righteousness of God without the Law is manifested, even the righteousness of God, which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe.” (Rom. iii. 20—22.) Moses indeed seems to have taken Joshua with him up into the mount: (Exod. xxiv. 13.) but if he did, sure it was to enter the cloud which covered the mount where the glory of the Lord abode: for without Jesus,* “in whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge,” (Col. ii. 3.) there is no looking into the secrets of heaven, no approaching to the presence of God. The command of circumcision was not given unto Moses, but to Joshua; nor were the Israelites circumcised in the wilderness, under the conduct of Moses and Aaron, but in the land of Canaan, under their successor. For “at that time the Lord said unto Joshua, Make thee sharp knives, and circumcise again the children of Israel the second time.” (Jos. v. 2.) Which speaketh *Jesus to be the true circumciser, the author of another circumcision than that of the flesh commanded by the Law, even “the circumcision of the heart, in the spirit, and not in the letter;” (Rom. ii. 29.) that which “is made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh,” (Col. ii. 11.) which is therefore called “the circumcision of Christ.” (Ibid.) Thus if we look upon Joshua as the “minister of Moses,” (Exod. xxiv. 13. Jos. i. 1.) he is even in that a type of Christ, the “minister of the circumcision for the truth of God,” (Rom.

est, per novæ legis gratiam, provenire habebar, circumcisa nobis petrina aece, id est, Christi præceptis (petra enim Christus multus modis et figuris praedicatorus est), ideo esvir qui in hujus Sacramenti imagine parabatur, etiam nominis Dominii in imaginarum est figura, ut Jesus nominatur.” Tertull. adv. Judæos, c. 9. et adv. Marcián. I. iii. c. 16. *Hie vero Moysi etiam successit, ut ostenderet novum legem, per Jesum Christum datam, veteri legi successoram, quæ data per Mosseos fut.; Lectam, de vero Sap. l. iv. c. 17. *In cujus comparatione (Moysee) improbatus est, ut non ipse introducere populum in terram promissionis; ne videatur Lex per Mosseos, non ad salvandum, sed ad convincendum peccatoresm data, in regnum celatum introducere putaretur, sed gratia et veritas per Jesum Christum facta.” S. August. contra Faustum, l. xvi. c. 19. *Jesus dux qui populum educaverat de Egypto, Jesus qui interpretatur Salvator, Mosse mortuo et sepulcro in Munh, hoc est, Lege mortua, in Evangelium cupit inducere populum suum.” S. Hieron. in Psal. lxxxvi.

*Moyses in nobis intravit, ut specta et occultâ circumciseret, adeunte sibi socio Jesu, quia non sine vero Jesu postest incerta supienia, et occultâ comprehenderet. Et ideo in specie Jesu Nata veri Salvatpris significatbat affectuosa praebenta, per quem ierent omnes sanguinarios Deum, qui Legem ipsetaret Evangelium revelaret.” S. Ambros. in Psal. xlviii.

*Non enim prophetae sibi ait, Et dixit Dominus ad me; sed ad Jesum: ut ostenderet quod non de se locutetur, sed de Christo, ad quem tuum Deus locutetur. Christi enim figuram gerebat ille Jesus. Lectam, de vero Sap. l. iv. c. 17.
If we look on him as the successor of Moses, in that he representeth Jesus, inasmuch as "the law was given by Moses, but grace and truth came by Jesus Christ." (John i. 17.) If we look on him as now judge and ruler of Israel, there is scarce an action which is not clearly predictive of our Saviour. He begins his office at the banks of Jordan, where Christ is baptized, and enters upon the public exercise of his prophetical office. He chooses there twelve men out of the people, to carry twelve stones over with them; as our Jesus thence began to choose his twelve apostles, those foundation-stones in the Church of God, whose "names are in the twelve foundations of the wall of the holy city, the new Jerusalem." (Rev. xxi. 14.) It hath been observed, that the saving Rahab the harlot alive, foretold what Jesus once should speak to the Jews, "Verily I say unto you, that the publicans and harlots go into the kingdom of God before you." (Matt. xxi. 31.) "He said in the sight of Israel, Sun, stand thou still upon Gibeon: and the sun stood still in the midst of heaven, and hasted not to go down about a whole day," (Jos. x. 12, 13.) Which great miracle was not only wrought by the power of him whose name he bare, but did also signify that, in the latter days, towards the setting of the sun, when the light of the world was tending unto a night of darkness, "the Sun of righteousness shall arise with healing in his wings," (Mal. iv. 2) and, giving a check to the approaching night, become the true light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world." (John i. 9.)

But to pass by more particulars, Joshua smote the Amalekites, and subdued the Canaanites; by the first making way to enter the land, by the second giving possession of it. And Jesus our "Prince and Saviour," (Acts v. 31.) whose "kingdom was not of this world," (John xviii. 36.) in a spiritual manner goeth in and out before us against our spiritual enemies, subduing sin and Satan, and so opening and clearing our way to heaven; destroying the last enemy, death, so giving us possession of eternal life. [Thus do we believe the man called


† St. Cyril addeth that he divided the land by twelve men: Δέκα δὲ διάφορας τῆς κληρονομίας καθέναν ἐκ τῶν Ναου ὅπε, καὶ διάκονος τοῖς ἀποστόλοις κερκώς τῆς ἀθλοθέσεως εἰς τῶν τε καθαρίαν ἀποστέλλει· ὁτίς. Und.

‡ By the same St. Cyril: Παστάσαντος οὖς τὴν παρά ισχαρίων τὸ ὀνομάζεται δὲ ἀκριβῶς φιλοτικοῦ τῶν τῶν Ναου ὅπε, καὶ πάντας ἐν οἷα προφητεύοντων ὡς εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν τοῦ Θεοῦ. Ibid.

§...
Jesus to have fulfilled in the highest degree imaginable, all which was but typified in him who first bare the name, and in all the rest which succeeded in his office, and so to be the Saviour of the world; “whom God hath raised up, a horn of salvation for us, in the house of his servant David, that we should be saved from our enemies, and the hands of all that hate us.” (Luke i. 69. 71.)

The necessity of the belief of this part of the Article is not only certain, but evident: because there is no end of faith without a Saviour, and no other name but this by which we can be saved, and no way to be saved by him but by believing in him. For “this is his commandment, that we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and he that keepeth his commandment dwelleth in him and he in him.” (1 John iii. 23, 24.) From him then, and from him alone, must we expect salvation, acknowledging and confessing freely there is nothing in ourselves which can effect or deserve it for us, nothing in any other creature which can promerit or procure it to us. For “there is but one God, and one mediator between God and man, the man Christ Jesus.” (1 Tim. ii. 5.) It is only “the beloved Son, in whom God is well pleased;” (Matt. iii. 17.) he is “clothed with a vesture dipped in blood;” (Rev. xix. 13.) he hath “trodden the wine-press alone.” (Isa. lxiii. 3.) “We like sheep have gone astray, and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.” (Isa. liii. 6.) “By him God hath reconciled all things to himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth or things in heaven.” (Col. i. 20.) By him alone is our salvation wrought: for his sake then only can we ask it, from him alone expect it.

Secondly, This belief is necessary, that we may delight and rejoice in the name of Jesus, as that in which all our happiness is involved. At his nativity an angel from heaven thus taught the shepherds, the first witnesses of the blessed incarnation; “Behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people. For unto you is born this day in the city of David, a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.” (Luke ii. 10, 11.) And what the angel delivered at present, that the prophet Isaiah, that old evangelist, foretold at distance. When “the people which walked in darkness should see a great light; when unto us a child should be born, unto us a son should be given: then should they joy before God, according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.” (Isa. ix. 2, 6, 3.) When “God shall come with recompense, when he shall come and save us; then the ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Sion with songs, and everlasting joy upon their heads.” (Isa. xxxv. 4, 10.)

ου, καθ' χαριν κυριαρχήσεως. "Οτι κυβ. αυτ' (lxvi.) πάλαι ἰστησόμεθα ὅτι συνεργάζομαι, ἵππως πάντα τίν τινες τοῦ ἱσταμένον ὅ τις ἀναπτύσσεται, ἀκατάρακτον, ἀλλ' ὅ τινς τοῦ ζωόν, τότε τις ἐν πάση φαντάσματι. έποιεῖται, Βαρνάβης Ἐπιστ. ε. 9. ατ. 13.
AND IN JESUS, &c. 119

Thirdly, The belief in Jesus ought to inflame our affection, to kindle our love towards him, engaging us to hate all things in respect of him, that is, so far as they are in opposition to him, or pretend to equal share of affection with him. "He that loveth father or mother more than me is not worthy of me, and he that loveth son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me," (Matt. x. 37.) saith our Saviour; so forbidding all prelation of any natural affection, because our spiritual union is far beyond all such relations. Nor is a higher degree of love only debarred us, but any equal pretension is as much forbidden. "If any man come to me (saith the same Christ), and hate not his father and mother, and wife and children, and brethren and sisters, yea and his own life also, he cannot be my disciple." (Luke xiv. 26.) Is it not this Jesus in whom the love of God is demonstrated to us, and that in so high a degree as is not expressible by the pen of man? "God so loved the world, that he gave his only-begotten Son." (John iii. 16.) Is it not he who shewed his own love to us far beyond all possibility of parallel? For "greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends;" (John xv. 13.) but "while we were yet sinners (that is, enemies), Christ died for us," (Rom. v. 8.) and so became our Jesus. Shall thus the Father shew his love in his Son? Shall thus the Son shew his love in himself? And shall we no way study a requital? or is there any proper return of love but love? The voice of the Church, in the language of Solomon, is, "my love:" (Cant. ii. 7. iii. 5. viii. 4.) nor was that only the expression of a spouse, but of Ignatius,* a man, after the apostles, most remarkable. And whosoever considereth the infinite benefits to the sons of men flowing from the actions and sufferings of their Saviour, cannot choose but conclude with St. Paul, "If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be anathema, maran-atha." (1 Cor. xvi. 22.)

Lastly, The confession of faith in Jesus is necessary to breed in us a correspondent esteem of him, and an absolute obedience to him, that we may be raised to the true temper of St. Paul, who "counted all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus our Lord, for whom he suffered the loss of all things, and counted them but dung, that he might win Christ." (Phil. iii. 8.) Nor can we pretend to any true love of Jesus, except we be sensible of the readiness of our obedience to him: as knowing what language he used to his disciples, "If ye love me, keep my commandments;" (John xiv. 15.) and what the apostle of his bosom spake, "This is the love of God, that we keep his commandments." (1 John v. 3.) His own disciples once marvelled, and said, "What manner of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him?" (Matt. viii. 27.) How much more should we wonder at all dis-

* "ο ἱκει ἵπτει, ἵππαλγερα. Epist. ad Roman. c. 7."
obedient Christians, saying, What manner of men are these, who refuse obedience unto him whom the senseless creatures, the winds and the sea, obeyed? Was the name of Jesus at first sufficient to cast out devils? (Mark ix. 38. Luke ix. 49.) and shall man be more refractory than they? Shall the exorcist say to the evil spirit, I adjure thee by the name of Jesus, (Acts xix. 13.) and the devil give place? Shall an apostle speak unto us in the same name, and we refuse? Shall they obey that name which signifieth nothing unto them; for "he took not on him the nature of angels," (Heb. ii. 16.) and so is not their Saviour? And can we deny obedience unto him, who "took on him the seed of Abraham," (Ibid.) "and became obedient to death, even the death of the cross," (Phil. ii. 8.) for us, that he might be raised to full power and absolute dominion over us, and by that power be enabled at last to save us, and in the mean time to rule and govern us, and exact the highest veneration from us? For "God hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee shall bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth." (Phil. ii. 9, 10.)

Having thus declared the original of the name Jesus, the means and ways by which he who bare it expressed fully the utmost signification of it; we may now clearly deliver, and every particular Christian easily understand, what it is he says, when he makes his confession in these words, I believe in Jesus: which may be not unaptly in this manner described. I believe not only that there is a God, who made the World; but I acknowledge and profess that I am fully persuaded of this, as of a certain and infallible truth, that there was and is a man, whose name by the ministry of an angel was called Jesus, of whom, particularly Joshua, the first of that name, and all the rest of the judges and saviours of Israel, were but types. I believe that Jesus, in the highest and utmost importance of that name, to be the Saviour of the world; insomuch as he hath revealed to the sons of men the only way for the salvation of their souls, and wrought the same way out for them by the virtue of his blood, obtaining remission for sinners, making reconciliation for enemies, paying the price of redemption for captives; and shall at last himself actually confer the same salvation, which he hath promulgated and procured, upon all those who unfeignedly and steadfastly believe in him. I acknowledge there is no other way to heaven besides that which he hath shewn us, there is no other means which can procure it for us but his blood, there is no other person which shall confer it on us but himself. And with this full acknowledgment, I believe in Jesus.
HAVING thus explained the proper name of our Saviour, Jesus, we come unto that title of his office usually joined with his name, which is therefore the more diligently to be examined, because the Jews* who always acknowledge him to be Jesus, ever denied him to be Christ, and "agreed" together, therefore that if any man did confess that he was Christ, he should be put out of the synagogue." (John ix. 22.)

For the full explication of this title, it will be necessary, First, To deliver the signification of the word; Secondly, To shew upon what grounds the Jews always expected a Christ or Messias; Thirdly, To prove that the Messias promised to the Jews is already come; Fourthly, To demonstrate that our Jesus is that Messias; and Fifthly, To declare in what that union, by which Jesus is Christ, doth consist, and what are the proper effects thereof. Which five particulars being clearly discussed, I cannot see what should be wanting for a perfect understanding that Jesus is Christ.

For the first, We find in the Scriptures two several names, Messias and Christ, but both of the same signification; as appereth by the speech of the woman of Samaria, "I know that Messias cometh, which is called Christ;" (John iv. 25.) and more plainly by what Andrew spake unto his brother Simon, "We have found the Messias, which is, being interpreted, the Christ." (John i. 41.) Messias in the Hebrew tongue, Christ in the Greek.* Messias; the language of Andrew and the


† From מ essiu in the Hebrew, μεσσις in the Greek, by changing ו into εις, by omitting מ a guttural not fit for their pronunciation, and by adding τ as their ordinary termination, מ is turned into Μεσσις. That this was the Greek Μεσσις, and the Latin Christians, is evident; and yet the Latins living at a distance, strangers to the customs of the Jews, and the doctrine of the Christians, mistook this name, and called him Christos, from the Greek Χριστός. So Suetonius in the life of Claudius, c. 25. "Judaeos impulsi sub Christo assidue tumulentes Roma expulsit." Which was not only his mistake, but generally the Romans at first, as they named him Christus, so they called us Christiani. "Sed et cum perperam Christianos pronunciatar a vobis (nam nec nominis certa est notitia penes vos) de suavitate vel benignitate compositum est." Tertull. adv. Gentes, c. 3. "Sed exponenda hujus nominis ratio est proprie ignorantium errorem, qui eum immutata litera Christum solent dicere." Lactan. de rer. Sup. I. iv. c. 7. Upon which mistake Justin Martyr justifies the Christians of his time: "Εκείνοι ἔσον γινεν τοῦ καταγεγραμμένου ἠθου ἄνθρωπος, Ἰησοῦς τοῦ τε Ιησοῦς μιανθείς τα ὑπ' ἐχθαρμίν, p. 34. And again: Χριστιανί (or rather Χριστιανοί) γε γένε τοῦ καταγεγραμμένου το δὲ Ἰησοῦς μιανθείς το δῆμον. Apol. 2. p. 57. It was then the ignorance of the Jewish affairs which caused the Romans to name our Saviour Christus, and the true title is certainly Christianus. "Χριστοῦ μὲν, κατά το Κυριοῦ, South Justin. Apol. p. 1. 41. Το τοῦ Χριστοῦ ὄνομα πρώτα Ματσάτ τι; Χριστιανός ἰπταιειν, εὐσεβάς Φασα. Dom. Eclog. 1. iv. c. 15. "Quoniam Graeci veteres Χριστιανός decebant ungi, quod nunc διηγησάμεν, ob hanc rationem nos eum Christianum nuncupamus, id est, uexatum, qui Hebraice Messias dictat." Lactan. de rer. Sup. i. iv. c. 7. So the Latins generally Christus a Chrismate: and without question Χριστις is from κηρισται. Yet I conceive the first signification of this word among the Greeks bath not been lithereto. 
sufficiently discovered. The first of the ancients in whom I meet with the word χρήσις is Ἐσχυλος the tragedian, and in him I find it had another sense than now we take it in; for in his language that is not χρήστων which is anointed, but that with which it is anointed; so that it signifies not the subject of unction, but the ointment itself in the subject. The place is this in his Prometheus Vincit, ver. 768.

Ὁδὲ ἀλήθεια, οὐδὲν, οὐδὲ βρώμοι, οὕτω χρήστων, αὐλῇ χαμάληκον

Prometheus shews himself to be the inventor of the art of physic, that before him therefore there was no medicine, neither to be taken internally by eating or by drinking, nor externally by way of unction, as the Scholast very well expounds it: Οὐκ ὅτι ὁδὲν βούθυνα σαρκάσια εἰπά διὰ χρήστων προφητείας (which is εἰπά βρώμοιν in Ἐσχυλος) οὔτε δὲ δὲ ἤμερις ἱεράς (which is ὅτι χρήστων) οὗτος διὰ πάντων (ὑπὲρ ὑπὲρ διὰ τοῦ πεποτοῦ). So Eustathius: Τίς φαρμακέως ίδειν παρ᾿ Ομηρίαι, ἐπεξετάζει, διὸς τοῦ ἔμφύλευ, ἅπαντα χαμάληκα εἰς ὁμς πατέντος τοῦ Ἑρμῆς καὶ χρήσις αὐλῇ χαμάληκον καὶ πιπτα κατὰ τὸν Ἀριστοφάνειον, ποτάτα, ποτὰ τὸ πίπτειν. Ad I 1, 2. As therefore from τὸ πίπτειν, so from χρῆστων, χρήστων. And as πεποτά is not that which receiveth drink, but that draw which is received, not quod nutritum, but quod nutritum est; so χρήσις is not that which is anointed, but that which is received by anointing. So the Scholast upon Aristophanes. Plin. v. 717. Τῶν φαρμάκων τα μιν εἶναι καταπλαστά, τὰ δὲ χρήστα, τὰ δὲ πεποτά. And the Scholast of Theocritus: ἦσσον, ἦταν τὰ φαρμάκα τα μιν εἶναι χρήστα, ἦσσον, ἦταν χρήσις εἰς σφυρασίας τὰ δὲ πεποτά, ἦσσον, ἦταν πιπτα. Τά δὲ ἐπίπτατα, ἦσσον, ἔτερα ἐπίπτατω λεγεῖ, Idyl. xi. 1. So that χρήσις in his judgment is the same with ἐγχύσιον in Theocritus. l. s. 1.

Οὐδὲν πιττών ἐγχύτα περίκες φαρμάκων ἄλλα, καίκη, οὐδὲ ἐγχύσιον, έμνος δοκεῖ, οὐδὲ ἐπιπτάτων.

Ἡ ταῖς Παρθίδοις

In the same sense with Ἐσχυλος did Euripides use χρηστον φαρμακον in Πηρρολύκη, v. 516.

Πάντες δὲ χρήσιτος ὁ πεπό τὸ φαρμακόν; and not only those ancient poets, but even the later orators; as Dion Chrysostomus: Πολὺ γὰρ χείρων καὶ διερφασμάτων σάφες καὶ νοούστος ὁ χαμάληκα, μᾶ δὲ χρῆσις υπὸ φαρμάκων χρήσιτον ὁ πεπό. Ov. ep. 78.

And the LXX. have used it in this sense, as when the Hebrew speaks of εὐλογίαν καὶ ἐγχύσιον, they translate it to τῶν ἐγχύσιον ἣν τὴν αἰσθήσει τοῦ λαοῦ τῶν χρήσιτον, Lev. xxvi. 10. And again ver. 12. ἐγχύσιον δι' ὑπὲρ ὑπὲρ διὰ τοῦ χρήσιτον ἀπεστdził. Olives paraphrasing then is φαρμάκοις, which in Exodus xxxii. 7. xxxv. 13. xl. 9. the same translators, correspondent to the Hebrew phrase, call χαμάληκας, and more frequently φαρμάκων. The place of Sophocles is something doubtful, Thucin. 602.

Οὐδὲν μιᾶς παντίκρους

Τῶν πεποτῶν παραφρέω

Συγκροτεί, ἵπτων παράστηκεν Σπείρης.

for though the Scholast takes it in the ordinary sense, παραφρέω, I lay on the πέπτον, ἤγει τὸ χρήσιτον πεπότα, συγκροτεί, and ἵπτων τῷ παραφρέοντος δὲ τῷ πεποτώ, yet both τῶν πεποτῶν before it, and συγκροτεί after, seem to incline to the former sense, and in the next page ἐγχύσιον is clearly attributed to the ointment, v. 657.

Τὸ φαρμακον πεποτέν ἔτρωπον, ἐκτὸς γάρ τὸν ἄριστον ἐν τῷ ἄριστω, ἐν κυρίῳ ταύτῃ ἐναλήθεια, ἐν κυρίῳ ταύτῃ.

Ἑκας ἐν ἀρτι χρήσιτον ἐπικυρίαν τοῦ, from whence Deiunara says presently, v. 691. ἐγχύτα μακαλι. But though it appears from hence that the first use of the word χρήσις among the Greeks was to signify the act or matter used in unction, not the subject or person anointed: yet in the vulgar acceptance of the LXX. it was most constantly received for the person anointed, of the same validity with χρυσέως or κερυμματῖς (Suidas χρήστως, δὲ κερυμματίς ἐν ἄλλοις), as also with διερφασμα. For though Lactantius in the place fore-cited seems to think that word an improper version of the Hebrew πέπτον, Unde in quibusdam Graecis scrupulis, quae male de Hebraitis interpretata sunt, ἐπιπτείματος, id est, ἐγχύσιον, scripsum inventur, ἀπὸ τοῦ ἀδειπτείματος; yet the LXX. have so translated it. Numb. iii. 3. ἀφίεται ἔπιπτείματος. And although Athenius hath observed, l. xv. c. 39. τῶν μαρτυρίων τα μείν ἐττ κερυμματα, τα δὲ ἐγχύσια, and in the vulgar use of the words there is no difference, as he himself speaks a little after: τὰ δὲ κερυμματα τὰ πεποτων ἐγχύσια μεταγενήσαντες καὶ ἔπιπτείματα. And Plutarch, Symp. i. 11, ex. c. 4. Πέπτον περὶ τὸν ἐστιν συναφεστίωσιν χωμαῖς ἐν μέσῳ ἀνελημμένην ἐν ἑλληνίσκονται χορὸν αὐτοῦ τὸ κερυμματα ὁ τ συγκροτεί. So Hesych. ἀνελημμένη, ἐναλήθεια χρήστος, κερυμματίς.
of them both is, the anointed. St. Paul and the rest of the apostles, writing in that language, used the Greek name, which the Latins did retain, calling him constantly Christus; and we in English have retained the same, as universally naming him Christ.

Nor is this yet the full interpretation of the word, which is to be understood not simply according to the action only, but as it involveth the design in the custom of anointing. For in the Law whatsoever was anointed was thereby set apart, as ordained to some special use or office: and therefore under the notion of unction we must understand that promotion and ordination. "Jacob poured out oil on the top of a pillar," (Gen. xxviii. 18.) and that anointing was the consecration of it. Moses anointed the tabernacle and all the vessels, and this anointing was their dedication. Hence "the priest that is anointed" (Lev. iv. 3.) signifieth, in the phrase of Moses, the high-priest, because he was invested in that office at and by his anunction. When therefore Jesus is called the Messiah or Christ, and that long after the anointing oil had ceased, it signified no less than a person set apart by God, anointed with most sacred oil, advanced to the highest office, of which all those employments under the Law, in the obtaining of which oil was used, were but types and shadows. And this may suffice for the signification of the word.

That there was among the Jews an expectation of such a Christ to come, is most evident. The woman of Samaria could speak with confidence, "I know that Messias cometh." (John iv. 25.) And the unbelieving Jews, who will not acknowledge that he is already come, expect him still. Thus we find "all men musing in their hearts of John, whether he were the Christ or not." (Luke iii. 15.) When Jesus taught in the Temple, those which doubted said, "When Christ cometh, no man knoweth whence he is;" (John vii. 27.) those which believed said, "When Christ cometh, will he do more miracles than these which this man hath done?" (John vii. 31.) Whether therefore they doubted, or whether they believed in Jesus, they all expected a Christ to come; and the greater their opinion was of him, the more they believed he was that Messias. "Many of the people said, Of a truth this is the prophet: others said, This is the Christ." (John vii. 40, 41.) As soon as John began to baptize, "the Jews sent priests and Levites from Jerusalem, to ask him, Who art thou?" (John i. 19.) that is, whether he were the Christ or no, as appeareth out of his answer, "And he
confessed and denied not, but confessed, I am not the Christ.”
(John i. 20.) For as they asked him after, “What then, Art thou Elias? and he said, I am not: Art thou that prophet? and he answered, No:” (John i. 21.) so without question their first demand was, ‘Art thou the Christ?’ and he answered, ‘I am not:’ from whence it clearly appeareth that there was a general expectation among the Jews of a Messias to come; nor only so, but it was always counted among them an article of their faith,† which all were obliged to believe who professed the Law of Moses, and whosoever denied that, was thereby interpreted to deny the Law and the Prophets. Wherefore it will be worth our inquiry to look into the grounds upon which they built that expectation.

It is most certain that the Messias was promised by God, both before and under the Law. God said unto Abraham, “In Isaac shall thy seed be called:” (Gen. xvi. 12.) and we know that was a promise of a Messias to come, because St. Paul hath taught us, “Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, unto seeds as of many, but as of one, and to thy seed, which is Christ.” (Gal. iii. 16.) The Lord said unto Moses, “I will raise them up a prophet from among their brethren like unto thee.” (Acts iii. 22. vii. 37.) And St. Peter hath sufficiently satisfied us, that this prophet promised to Moses is Jesus the Christ. (Acts iii. 20.) Many are the prophecies which concern him, many the promises which are made of him: but yet some of them very obscure; others, though plainer, yet have relation only to the person, not to the notion or the word Messias. Wheresoever he is spoken of as the Anointed, it may well be first understood of some other person; except one place in Daniel, where Messiah is foretold “to be cut off:” (Dan, ix. 26.) and yet—even there the Greek translation hath not the Messiah, but the Unction. It may therefore seem something strange, how so universal an expectation of a Redeemer under the name of the Messias should be spread through the church of the Jews.

But if we consider that in the space of seventy years of the Babylonish captivity the ordinary Jews had lost the exact understanding of the old Hebrew language before spoken in Judea, and therefore when the Scriptures were read unto them, they found it necessary to interpret them to the people in the Chaldee language, which they had lately learned: as when Ezra the Scribe brought the book of the Law of Moses before the congregation, the Levites are said to have caused the people to understand the Law, because “they read in the book, in the Law of God distinctly, and gave the sense, and caused them to

* So Nonnus hath expressed, what in the evangelist is to be understood:
Μοσεῖον δ’ ἱέραν ομολογοῦσι ἐξεί μοῦ,  
Τις σὺ πέλας; μὰ Χριστὸς ἔριες;—

† Auctor Sepher Ikkarim, I. iv. c. ult. Maimon. Tract. de Regibus. c. 11.
understand the reading." (Neh. viii. 8.) Which constant interpretation begat at last a Chaldee translation of the Old Testament to be read every sabbath in the synagogues: and that being not exactly made word for word with the Hebrew, but with a liberty of a brief exposition by the way, took in, together with the text, the general opinion of the learned Jews. By which means it came to pass that not only the doctrine, but the name also, of the Messias was very frequent and familiar with them. Insomuch that even in the Chaldee paraphrase now extant, there is express mention of the Messias in above seventy places, besides that of Daniel. The Jews then informed by the plain words of Daniel,* instructed by a constant interpretation of the Law and the Prophets read in their synagogues every sabbath-day, relying upon the infallible predictions and promises of God, did all unanimously expect out of their own nation, of the tribe of Judah, of the family of David, a Messias or a Christ, to come.

Now this being granted, as it cannot be denied, our next consideration is of the time in which this promise was to be fulfilled: which we shall demonstrate out of the Scriptures to be past, and consequently that the promised Messias is already come. The prediction of Jacob upon his death-bed is clear and pregnant, "The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and to him shall the gathering of the people be." (Gen. xlix. 10.) But the sceptre is departed from Judah, neither is there one lawgiver left between his feet. Therefore Shiloh, that is, the Messias, is already come. That the Jewish government hath totally failed, is not without the greatest folly to be denied: and therefore that Shiloh is already come, except we should deny the truth of divine predictions, must be granted. There then remains nothing to be proved, but that by Shiloh is to be understood the Messias: which is sufficiently manifest both from the consent of the ancient Jews, and from the description immediately added to the name. For all the old paraphrasts call him expressly the Messias; and the words which follow, "to him shall the gathering of the people be," (Gen. xlix. 10.) speak no less; as giving an explication of his person, office, or condition, who was but darkly described in the name of Shiloh.

* Celsus the Epicurean acknowledged that both the Jews and Christians did confess that the prophets did foretell a Saviour of the world. Or. ad. Celsam. i. In. § 1. And this Saviour, with Onkelos renders it אַשְׁרֵיהּ מִלְטָהּ שֶׁלֶשׁ and Jonathan and the Jerusalem Targum, יְרוּשָלָם בָּבֶל׃ Beside the Cabalists did generally so interpret it, because אַשְׁרֵיהּ according to their computation, made the same number with the letters of מסי, and in the Talmud, ed. Sandheim, Rabbi Johanan asking what was the name of the Messias, they of the school of R. Schila answer, wein שלוש his name is Shiloh, according to that which is written, until Shiloh come.
For this is the same character by which he was signified unto Abraham: "In thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed:" (Gen. xxiii. 18.) by which he is deciphered in Isaiah; "In that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek, and his rest shall be glorious:" (Isa. xi. 10.) and in Micah, "The mountain of the house of the Lord shall be established on the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills, and people shall flow unto it." (Mic. iv. 1.) And thus the blessing of Judah is plainly intelligible: "Judah thou art he, whom thy brethren shall praise; thy hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies, thy father's children shall bow down before thee." (Gen. xlix. 8.) Thou shalt obtain the primogeniture of thy brother Reuben, and by virtue thereof shalt rule over the rest of the tribes: the government shall be upon thy shoulders, and all thy brethren shall be subject unto thee. And that you may understand this blessing is not to expire until it make way for a greater, know that this government shall not fail, until there come a son out of your loins, who shall be far greater than yourself: for whereas your dominion reacheth only over your brethren, and so is confined unto the tribes of Israel; his kingdom shall be universal, and all nations of the earth shall serve him. Being then this Shiloh is so described in the text, and acknowledged by the ancient Jews to be the Messiah; being God hath promised by Jacob the government of Israel should not fail until Shiloh came; being that government is visibly and undeniably already failed, it followeth inevitably, that the Messiah is already come.

In the same manner the prophet Malachi hath given an express signification of the coming of the Messiah while the Temple stood. "Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me; and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant whom ye delight in." (Mal. iii. 1.)* And Haggai yet more clearly, "Thus saith the Lord of hosts, Yet once it is a little while, and I will shake the heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and the dry land; and I will shake all nations; and the desire of all nations shall come; and I will fill this house with glory, saith the Lord of hosts. The glory of this latter house shall be greater than the glory of the former, saith the Lord of hosts." (Hag. ii. 6, 7. 9.) It is then most evident from these predictions, that the Messiah was to come while the second Temple stood. It is as certain that the second Temple is not now standing. Therefore, except we contradict the veracity of God, it cannot be denied but the Messiah is already come. Nothing can be objected to enervate this argument, but that these prophecies concern not the Messiah; and yet the ancient Jews confessed they did, and that they do so cannot be denied. For, first,

*Kimchi on the place.
those titles, 'the angel of the covenant,' 'the delight of the Israelites,' 'the desire of all nations,' are certain and known characters of the Christ to come. And, secondly, it cannot be conceived how the glory of the second Temple should be greater than the glory of the first, without the coming of the Messiah to it. For the Jews themselves have observed that five signs of the divine glory were in the first Temple, which were wanting to the second: as the Urim and Thummim, by which the high-priest was miraculously instructed of the will of God; the ark of the covenant, from whence God gave his answers by a clear and audible voice; the fire upon the altar, which came down from heaven, and immediately consumed the sacrifice; the divine presence or habitation with them, represented by a visible appearance, or given, as it were, to the king and high-priest by anointing with the oil of unction; and, lastly, the spirit of prophecy, with which those especially who were called to the prophetical office were endued. And there was no comparison between the beauty and glory of the structure or building of it, as appeared by the tears dropped from those eyes which had beheld the former, ("For many of the priests and Levites, and chief of the fathers, who were ancient men, that had seen the first house, when the foundation of this house was laid before their eyes, wept with a loud voice;" Ezra iii. 12.) and by those words which God commanded Haggai to speak to the people for the introducing of this prophecy, "Who is left among you that saw this house in her first glory? And how do you see it now? Is it not in your eyes in comparison of it as nothing?" (Hag. ii. 3.) Being then the structure of the second Temple was so far inferior to the first, being all those signs of the divine glory were wanting in it with which the former was adorned; the glory of it can no other way be imagined greater, than by the coming of Him into it in whom all those signs of the divine glory were far more eminently contained: and this person alone is the Messiah. For he was to be the glory of the people Israel, yea, even of the God of Israel; he the Urim and Thummim, by whom the will of God, as by a greater oracle, was revealed; he the true ark of the covenant, the only propitiatory by his blood; he which was to baptize with the Holy Ghost and with fire, the true fire which came down from heaven; he which was to take up his habitation in our flesh, and to dwell among us that we might behold his glory; he who received the Spirit without measure, and from whose fulness we do all receive. In him were all those signs of the divine glory united, which were thus divided in the first Temple; in him they were all more eminently contained than in those: therefore his coming to the second Temple was, as the sufficient, so the only means by which the glory of it could be greater than the glory of the first. If then the Messiah was to come while the second Temple stood, as appeareth by God's prediction and
promise; if that Temple many ages since hath ceased to be, there being not one stone left upon a stone; if it certainly were before the destruction of it in greater glory than ever the former was; if no such glory could accrue unto it but by the coming of the Messias: then is that Messias already come.

Having thus demonstrated out of the promises given to the Jews, that the Messias who was so promised unto them must be already come, because those events which were foretold to follow his coming are already past; we shall proceed unto the next particular, and prove that the man Jesus, in whom we believe, is that Messias who was promised. First, it is acknowledged, both by the Jew and Gentile, that this Jesus was born in Judea, and lived and died there, before the commonwealth of Israel was dispersed, before the second Temple was destroyed; that is, at the very time when the prophets foretold the Messias should come. And there was no other beside him, that did with any show of probability pretend to be, or was accepted as, the Messias. Therefore we must confess he was, and only he could be, the Christ.

Secondly, All other prophecies belonging to the Messias were fulfilled in Jesus, whether we look upon the family, the place, or the manner of his birth; neither were they ever fulfilled in any person beside him: he then is, and no other can be, the Messias. That he was to come out of the tribe of Judah and family of David, is every where manifest. The Jews, which mention Messias as a son of Joseph or of Ephraim, do not deny, but rather dignify, the Son of David, or of Judah, whom they confess to be the greater Christ.* “There shall come forth one rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots, and the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him,” saith the prophet Isaiah, (vi. 1, 2.) And again, “In that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people: to it shall the Gentiles seek, and his rest shall be glorious.” (Isa. xi. 10.) Now who was it but Jesus of whom the elders spake, “Behold, the lion of the tribe of Judah, the root of David!” (Rev. v. 5.) Who but he said, “I am the root and offspring of David, and the bright and morning star?” (Rev. xxii. 16.) The Jews did all acknowledge it, as appears by the question of our Saviour, “How say the scribes that Christ is the son of David?” (Mark xii. 35.) “What think ye of Christ? whose son is he? They say unto him, The Son of David.” (Matt. xxii. 42.) and that of the people, amazed at the seeing

* The Jews have invented a double Messias: to one they attribute all those places which mention his low estate and sufferings; to the other such as speak of his power and glory. The one they style ה' ויהי יבשע, the other ה' ויהי יבשע. The son of Joseph they name also the son of Ephraim, and the Son of David the son of Judah: as the Targum, Cant. iv. 5. “Thy two breasts are like two young roes.” שinee יונג נקבות ותינש ויבשע ויהי ויהי יבשע. The Messias are the Redeemers, Messias the Son of David, and Messias the son of Ephraim.

† Which the Chaldee paraphrase thus translates, ויהי יבשע קדושה, so in many other places. The Chaldee paraphrase renders: "A king shall come out of the sons of Jesse, and the Messias out of his son's sons. So Rabbi Solomon and Kimchi.
of the blind, and speaking of the dumb, "Is not this the Son of David?" (Matt. xii. 23.) The blind cried out unto him, "Jesus, thou Son of David, have mercy on us;" (Luke xviii. 38.) and the multitude cried, "Hosanna to the Son of David." (Matt. xxi. 9.) The genealogy of Jesus shows his family: the first words of the Gospel are, "The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the Son of David." (Matt. i. 1.) The prophecy therefore was certainly fulfilled in respect of his lineage; "for it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Judah." (Heb. vii. 14.)

Besides, if we look upon the place where the Messiah was to be born, we shall find that Jesus by a particular act of Providence was born there. "When Herod had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born. And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judea." (Matt. ii. 4, 5.) The people doubted whether Jesus was the Christ, because they thought he had been born in Galilee, where Joseph and Mary lived; wherefore they said, "Shall Christ come out of Galilee? Hath not the Scripture said, That Christ cometh of the seed of David, and out of the town of Bethlehem, where David was?" (John vii. 41, 42.) That place of Scripture which they meant was cited by the scribes to Herod, according to the interpretation then current among the Jews, and still preserved in the Chaldee paraphrase,* "For thus it is written in the prophet, And thou, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, art not the least among the princes of Judah, for out of thee shall come a governor that shall rule my people Israel." (Matt. ii. 5, 6.) This prediction was most manifestly and remarkably fulfilled in the birth of Jesus, when by the providence of God it was so ordered, that Augustus should then tax the world, to which end every one should go up into his own city. Whereupon Joseph and Mary his espoused wife left Nazareth of Galilee, their habitation, and went into Bethlehem of Judea, the city of David, there to be taxed, "because they were of the house and lineage of David." (Luke ii. 4.) And, while they were there, as the days of the Virgin Mary were accomplished, so the prophecy was fulfilled; for there she brought forth her first-born son; and so unto us was born that day "in the city of David, a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord." (Luke ii. 11.)

But if we add unto the family and place, the manner of his birth also foretold, the argument must necessarily appear conclusive. The prophet Isaiah spake thus unto the house of David: "The Lord himself shall give you a sign: Behold a virgin shall conceive and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel." (Isa. vii. 14.) What nativity could be more con-

---

* Which expressly translates it thus: "Out of thee shall come forth me the Messiah, that he may exercise domination in Israel. So Rabbi Solomon, and Rabbi Kimchi and Abaihanel, "Aha."
ARTICLE II.

gruous to the nativity of a Messias than that of a virgin, which
is most miraculous! What name can be thought fitter for him
than that of Immanuel, “God with us,” (Isa. viii. 8.) whose
land Judea is said to be? The Immanuel then thus born of a
virgin was without question the true Messias. And we know
Jesus was thus born of the blessed Virgin Mary, “that it might
be fulfilled which was thus spoken of the Lord by the prophet.”
(Matt. i. 22.) Wherefore being all the prophecies concerning
the family, place, and manner of the birth of the Messias were
fulfilled in Jesus, and not so much as pretended to be accom-
plished in any other; it is again from hence apparent, that this
Jesus is the Christ.

Thirdly, He who taught what the Messias was to teach, did
what the Messias was to do, suffered what the Messias was to
suffer, and by suffering obtained all which a Messias could ob-
tain, must be acknowledged of necessity to be the true Messias.
But all this is manifestly true of Jesus. Therefore we must
confess he is the Christ. For, first, it cannot be denied but
the Messias was promised as a prophet and teacher of the peo-
ple. So God promised him to Moses; “I will raise them up
a Prophet from among their brethren like unto thee.” (Deut.
xviii. 18.) So Isaiah, Ezekiel, and Hosea, have expressed him,
as we shall hereafter have farther occasion to shew. And, not
only so, but as a greater prophet, and more perfect doctor,
than ever any was which preceded him, more universal than
they all. “I have put my Spirit upon him, (saith God) he
shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles, and the isles shall
wait for his law.” (Isa. xlii. 1. 4.) Now it is as evident that
Jesus of Nazareth was the most perfect Prophet, the Prince* and
Lord of all the prophets, doctors, and pastors, which either
preceded or succeeded him. For he hath revealed unto us the
most perfect will of God both in his precepts and his promises.
He hath delivered the same after the most perfect manner, with
the greatest authority; not like Moses and the prophets, say-
ing, Thus saith the Lord; but “I say unto you;” (Matt. v. ofien.)
not like the interpreters of Moses, for “he taught them as one
having authority, and not as the scribes:” (Matt. vii. 29.) with
the greatest perspicuity, not, as those before him, under types
and shadows, but plainly and clearly; from whence both he
and his doctrine is frequently called light: with the greatest
universality, as preaching that Gospel which is to unite all the
nations of the earth into one Church, that there might be one
Shepherd and one flock. Whatsoever then that great Prophet
the Messias was to teach, that Jesus taught; and whatsoever
works he was to do, those Jesus did.

When John the Baptist “had heard the works of Christ, he
sent two of his disciples” with this message to him, “Art

thou he that should come, or do we look for another?" (Matt.
xi. 2, 3.) And Jesus returned this answer unto him, shewing
the ground of that message, "the works of Christ," was a
sufficient resolution of the question sent; "Go and shew John
again those things which ye do hear and see: the blind receive
their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the
deaf hear, and the dead are raised up." (Matt. xi. 4, 5.) And
as Jesus alleged the works which he wrought to be a sufficient
testimony that he was the Messiah; so did those Jews acknow-
ledge it who said, "When Christ cometh, will he do more
miracles than these which this man doeth?" (John vii. 31.)
And Nicodemus, a ruler among them, confessed little less:
"Rabbi, we know that thou art a teacher come from God; for
no man can do these miracles that thou dost, except God be
with him." (John iii. 2.) Great and many were the miracles
which Moses and the rest of the prophets wrought for the rati-
fication of the Law, and the demonstration of God's constant
presence with his people; and yet all those, wrought by so
many several persons, in the space of above three thousand
years, are far short of those which this one Jesus did perform
within the compass of three years. The ambitious diligence
of the Jews hath reckoned up seventy-six miracles for Moses,
and seventy-four for all the rest of the prophets: and supposing
that they were so many (though indeed they were not), how
few are they in respect of those which are written of our Saviour!
How inconsiderable, if compared with all which he wrought!
when St. John testifieth with as great certainty of truth as
height of hyperbole, that "there are many other things which
Jesus did, the which if they should be written every one, he
supposed that even the world itself could not contain the books
that should be written." (John xxi. 25.) Nor did our Saviour
excel all others in the number of his miracles only, but in the
power of working. Whatsoever miracle Moses wrought, he
either obtained by his prayers, or else consulting with God,
received it by command from him; so that the power of miracles
cannot be conceived as immanent or inhering in him. Whereas
this power must of necessity be in Jesus, "in whom dwelt all
the fulness of the Godhead bodily," (Col. ii. 9.) and "to whom
the Father had given to have life in himself." (John v. 26.)
This he sufficiently shewed by working with a word, by com-
manding the winds to be still, the devils to fly, and the dead
to rise: by working without a word or any intervenient sign;
as when the woman which "had an issue of blood twelve years
touched his garment, and straightway the fountain of her blood
was dried up" (Mark v. 25. 29.) by the virtue which flowed
out from the greater fountain of his power. And, lest this
example should be single, we find that "the men of Gennesaret,
the "people out of all Judea and Jerusalem, and from the sea-
coast of Tyre and Sidon, even the whole multitude sought to
touch him; for there went virtue out of him, and healed them all.” (Matt. xiv. 34, 36. Luke vi. 17, 19.) Once indeed Christ seemed to have prayed, before he raised Lazarus from the grave, but even that was done “because of the people which stood by;” (John xi. 42.) not that he had not power within himself to raise up Lazarus, who was afterwards to raise himself; but “that they might believe the Father had sent him.” (Ibid.) The immanency and inherency of this power in Jesus is evident in this, that he was able to communicate it to whom he pleased, and actually did confer it upon his disciples: “Behold I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy.” (Luke x. 19.) Upon the apostles: “Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: freely ye have received, freely give.” (Matt. x. 8.) Upon the first believers: “These signs shall follow them that believe; in my name they shall cast out devils.” (Mark xvi. 17.) “He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do.” (John xiv. 12.) He then which did more actions divine and powerful than Moses and all the prophets ever did, he which performed them in a manner far more divine than that by which they wrought, hath done all which can be expected the Messiah, foretold by them, should do.

Nor hath our Jesus only done, but suffered, all which the Messiah was to suffer. For we must not with the Jews deny a suffering Christ, or fondly of our own invention make a double Messiah, one to suffer, and another to reign. It is clear enough by the prophet Isaiah what his condition was to be, whom he calls the “servant of God;” (Isa. lli. 13.) and the later Jews cannot deny but their fathers constantly understood that place of the Messiah.

* For, first, instead of those words, “Behold, my servant shall deal prudently,” the Targum hath it plainly, Behold, we the rabbins understand this of the Messiah. And the reason which he renders of their interpretation is very observable. For they say (says he), that the Messiah is stricken, as it is written, “He took our infirmities, and bare our griefs;” which are the words of the 4th verse of the 53d chapter. From whence we may perceive how the ancient Jews did join the latter part of the 52d chapter with the 53d, and expound them of the same person. Beside, he cites a certain Midrash, or gloss, which attributes the same verse to the Messiah, and that is to be found in Bereshit Rabba upon Gen. xxviii. 10. where, falling upon that place in Leeb. iv. 7. “What art thou, O great mountain, before Zerubbabel?” he answers, He is the Messiah that great mountain is the Messiah. Then asking again, Why doth he call the Messiah a great mountain? he gives this answer, Because the Messiah is greater than the fathers, as it is written, Behold, we the rabbins understand this, that is, the Messiah: which are the words of the verse before cited. And the same Bereshit Rabba upon Gen. xxi. 67. saith: Messiah the King was in the generation of the wicked; that he gave himself to seek for mercies to Israel, and to fasting and humbling himself for them, as it is written; and so produceth the words of Isa. lii. 3. From whence it appears again, that the author thereof interpreted both the chapters of the same Messias. And farther it is observable that the Midrash upon Ruth ii. 14. expounds the same verse in the same manner. And Rabbi Moses Alshech speaks yet more fully of the consent of the ancient Jewish doctors upon this place.
AND IN JESUS CHRIST, &c.
Now the sufferings of Christ spoken of by the prophet may be reduced to two parts: one in respect of contempt, by which he was despised of men; the other in respect of his death, and all those indignities and pains which preceded and led unto it. For the first, the prophet hath punctually described his condition, saying, "He hath no form or comeliness, and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him. He is despised and rejected of men." (Isa. lxi. 2, 3.) He seems to describe a personage no more amiable, an aspect indeed rather uncomely:* and so the most ancient writers have interpreted Isaiah,† and confessed the fulfilling of
it in the body of our Saviour. But what the aspect of his outward appearance was, because the Scriptures are silent, we cannot now know: and it is enough that we are assured, the state and condition of his life was in the eye of the Jews without honour and inglorious. For though, “being in the form of God he thought it not robbery to be equal with God; yet he made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant.” (Phil. ii. 6, 7.) For thirty years he lived with his mother Mary and Joseph his reputed father, of a mean profession, and was “subject to them.” (Luke ii. 51.) When he left his mother’s house, and entered on his prophetic office, he passed from place to place, sometimes received into a house, other times lodging in the fields: for while the “foxes have holes, and the birds of the air have nests, the Son of man had not where to lay his head.” (Matt. viii. 20.) From this low estate of life and condition, seemingly inglorious, arose in the Jews a neglect of his works, and contempt of his doctrine. “Is not this the carpenter’s son?” (Matt. xiii. 55.) say, farther, “Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary! & they were offended at him.” (Mark vi. 3.) Thus was it fulfilled in him, “he was despised and rejected of men, and they esteemed him not.” (Isa. liii. 3.)

This contempt of his personage, condition, doctrine and works, was by degrees raised to hatred, detestation and persecution, to a cruel and ignominious death. All which if we look upon in the gross, we must acknowledge it fulfilled in quis unque summò perstringère corpus novum, spatuminis contaminare faciem nisi merentem? De caru Christi, c. 9. And that we may be sure he pointed at that place in Isaiah, he says, that Christ was: “Ne aspectu quidem honesto: Annoncrivimus enim, inquit, de illo, sicut puerulus, sicut radix in terra sitiens, et non est species ejus neque gloria.” Adv. Marcion. i. iii. 17. and adv. Judaeos, c. 14. This humility of Christ, in taking upon him the nature of man without the ordinary ornaments of man, at first acknowledged, was afterwards denied, as appears by St. Jerome, on Isaiah iv. 1. Inglorius erit inter homines aspectus ejus, non quo forma significant hastatam, sed quod in humilitate venerit et pauptatem.” And Epist. 140. “Abaque passionibus eris in universis pulcherior est virgo de virGINE, qui non ex voluntate Dei, sed ex Deo natus est. Nisi enim habuisse et in vultu quidam celenisque sidereum, quamquam eum statim secuti fuissent Apostoli, nec qui ad comprehendendum eum venerant, correxisserent.” So St. Chrysostom interprets the words of Isaiah of his Divinity, or humility, or his passion; but those of the Psalmist, of his native corporeal beauty: Odh γὰρ θαυμάστης ὁ ιωακηστὶς μου, ἄλλα καὶ φανερώνεις ἄτοις πολλὰς ἑορκα γένεις καὶ τιμή ἡ προφανῶς διαλεύκης Ομίαι κάλλει παρά τοσοῦτος τίνι ἄβδουν. Homil. 28. in Matt. Afterwards they began to magnify the external beauty of his body, and confined themselves to one kind of picture or portraiture, with a zealous pretence of a likeness not to be denied, which eight hundred years since was known by none, every several country having a several image. Whence came that argument of the Iconoclasts, by way of query, which of those images was the true: Πέτρος ἡ σπέργα Ραμάσας, ἡ ὀψις ἧδε γραμφάτων, ἡ παρ’ Ἑλλήνων, ἡ ἡ παρ’ Ἀραμιτῶν, εἰς ἔρμοι ἄλλαλις αὐτῶν. Phædus Epist. 64. And well might none of these be like another, when every nation painted our Saviour in the nearest similitude to the people of their own country. Ἐκεῖς μὲν αὕτης ίσοπς ἐνίας γίνοντας τοῦ Ἰησοῦ ἑνήκους. “Ραμάσα δὲ μᾶλλον ἑαυτὸς ἑαυτῶς ἑαυτὸς ἑαυτῷ δὲ πᾶνα μορφὴ τοῦ σώματος, καί ἑαυτῆς ἐδέλεν ἡ ίσοπὸς. Phædus ibid. And the difference of opinions in this kind is sufficiently apparent out of those words in Suidas: Ἰησοῦς δὲ το φασὶν ὁ ἐκχύσας τῶν ἑαυτοῦ, ὡς τὸ φύλον καὶ οὐλομένου ὁμιλητὴρ ἐνεργὸς ἐκ τῆς τεκνὸς τοῦ Χριστοῦ. * He is Wiktor Tumanian’s, p. 316
him to the highest degree imaginable, that he was "a man of sorrows and acquainted with grief." (Isa. liii. 3.) But if we compare the particular predictions with the historical passages of his sufferings; if we join the prophets and evangelists together, it will most manifestly appear the Messiah was to suffer nothing which Christ hath not suffered. If Zachary say, "they weighed for my price thirty pieces of silver;" (Zech. xi. 12.) St. Matthew will shew that Judas sold Jesus at the same rate; for the chief priests "covenanted with him for thirty pieces of silver." (Matt. xxvi. 15.) If Isaiah say, that "he was wounded;" (Isa. liii. 5.) if Zachary, "they shall look upon him whom they have pierced;" (Zech. xii. 10.) if the prophet David, yet more particularly, "they pierced my hands and my feet;" (Psal. xxii. 16.) the evangelists will shew how he was fastened to the cross, and Jesus himself "the print of the nails." (John xx. 25.) If the Psalmist tells us, they should "laugh him to scorn, and shake their head, saying, He trusted in the Lord that he would deliver him, let him deliver him, seeing he delighted in him;" (Psal. xxii. 7, 8.) St. Matthew will describe the same action, and the same expression; for "they that passed by reviled him, wagging their heads, and saying, He trusted in God, let him deliver him now, if he will have him; for he said I am the Son of God." (Matt. xxvii. 39, 43.) Let David say, "My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?" (Psal. xxii. 1.) and the Son of David will shew in whose person the Father spake it, "Eli, Eli, lama sabacthani." (Matt. xxvii. 46.) Let Isaiah foretell, "he was numbered with the transgressors;" (Isa. liii. 12.) and you shall find him "crucified between two thieves, one on his right hand, the other on his left." (Mark xv. 27.) Read in the Psalmist, "in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink;" (Psal. lxix. 21.) and you shall find in the evangelist, "Jesus, that the Scripture might be fulfilled, said, I thirst: and they took a sponge, and filled it with vinegar, and put it on a reed, and gave it him to drink." (John xix. 28, Matt. xxvii. 48.) Read farther yet, "they parted my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture;" (Psal. xxii. 18.) and, to fulfil the prediction, the soldiers shall make good the distinction, "who took his garments, and made four parts, to every soldier a part, and also his coat: now the coat was without seam, woven from the top throughout. They said therefore among themselves, Let us not rend it, but cast lots for it, whose it shall be." (John xix. 23, 24.) Lastly, let the prophets teach us, that "he shall be brought like a lamb to the slaughter, and be cut off out of the land of the living;" (Isa. liii. 7, 8.) all the evangelists will declare how like a lamb he suffered, and the very Jews will acknowledge, that he was cut off: and now may we well conclude, "Thus it is written, and thus it behoveth the Christ to suffer;" (Luke xxiv. 46.) and what it so behoved him to suffer that he suffered.
Neither only in his passion, but after his death, all things were fulfilled in Jesus which were prophesied concerning the Messias. "He made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death," (Isa. liii. 9.) saith the prophet of the Christ to come: and as the thieves were burned with whom he was crucified, so was Jesus, but laid in the tomb of "Joseph of Arimathea, an honourable counsellor." (Mark xv. 43.) "After two days will he revive us, in the third day he will raise us up," saith Hosea (vi. 2.) of the people of Israel; in whose language they were the type of Christ; (Hos. xi. 1.) and the third day Jesus rose from the dead. "The Lord said unto my Lord, (saith David) Sit thou at my right hand." (Psal. ex. 1.) Now "David is not ascended into the heavens," (Acts ii. 34.) and consequently cannot be set at the right hand of God; but Jesus is already ascended and set down at the right hand of God: and so "all the house of Israel might know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom they crucified, both Lord and Christ." (Acts ii. 36.) For he who taught whatsoever the Messias, promised by God, foretold by the prophets, expected by the people of God, was to teach; he who did all which that Messias was by virtue of that office to do; he which suffered all those pains and indignities which that Messias was to suffer; he to whom all things happened after his death, the period of his sufferings, which were according to the divine predictions to come to pass: he, I say, must infallibly be the true Messias. But Jesus alone taught, did, suffered, and obtained all these things, as we have shewn. Therefore we may again infallibly conclude, that our Jesus is the Christ.

Fourthly, If it were the proper note and character of the Messias, that all nations should come in to serve him; if the doctrine of Jesus hath been preached and received in all parts of the world, according to that character so long before delivered; if it were absolutely impossible that the doctrine revealed by Jesus should have been so propagated as it hath been, had it not been divine; then must this Jesus be the Messias; and when we have proved these three particulars, we may safely conclude he is the Christ.

That all nations were to come in to the Messias, and so the distinction between the Jew and Gentile to cease at his coming, is the most universal description in all the prophecies. God speaks to him thus, as to his Son; "Ask of me, and I will give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession." (Psal. ii. 8.) It was one greater than Solomon of whom these words were spoken, "All kings shall fall down before him, all nations shall serve him." (Psal. lxxx. 11.) "It shall come to pass in the last days, (saith Isaiah ii. 2.) that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations
shall flow unto it." And again, "In that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek." (Isa. xi. 10.) And in general all the prophets were but instruments to deliver the same message, which Malachi concludes, from God: "From the rising of the sun, even to the going down of the same, my name shall be great among the Gentiles, and in every place incense shall be offered unto my name, and a pure offering: for my name shall be great among the heathen, saith the Lord of Hosts." (Mal. i. 11.) Now being the bounds of Judea were settled, being the promise of God was to bring all nations in at the coming of the Messiah, being this was it which the Jews so much opposed, as loath to part from their ancient and peculiar privilege; he which actually wrought this work must certainly be the Messiah; and that Jesus did it, is most evident.

That all nations did thus come in to the doctrine preached by Jesus, cannot be denied. For although he "were not sent but to the lost sheep of the house of Israel;" (Matt. xv. 24.) although of those many Israelites, which believed on him while he lived, very few were left immediately after his death; yet when the apostles had received their commission from him to "go teach all nations," (Matt. xxviii. 19.) and were "endued with power from on high" (Luke xxiv. 49.) by the plentiful effusion of the Holy Ghost; the first day there was an accession of "three thousand souls;" (Acts ii. 41.) immediately after we find "the number of the men, beside women, was about five thousand;" (Acts iv. 4.) and still "believers were the more added to the Lord, multitudes both of men and women." (Acts v. 14.) Upon the persecution at Jerusalem, they went through the "regions of Judea, Galilee, and Samaria," (Acts ix. 31.) and so the Gospel spread; insomuch that St. James the bishop of Jerusalem spake thus unto St. Paul, "Thou seest, brother, how many thousands (or rather how many myriads,* that is, ten thousands) of the Jews there are which believe." (Acts xxi. 20.) Beside, how great was the number of the believing Jews, strangers scattered through Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, Bithynia, and the rest of the Roman provinces, will appear out of the epistles of St. Peter, St. James, and St. John. And yet all these are nothing to the fulness of the Gentiles which came after. First, those which were before Gentile worshippers, acknowledging the same God with the Jews, but not receiving the Law; who had before abandoned their old idolatry, and already embraced the true doctrine of one God, and did confess the Deity which the Jews did worship to be that only true God; but yet refused to be circumcised, and so to oblige themselves to the keeping of the whole Law. Now the apostles preaching the same God with Moses whom they all acknowledged, and teaching that

* Πέντε μιριάδες.
circuitum, and the rest of the legal ceremonies were now abrogated, which those men would never admit, they were with the greatest facility converted to the Christian faith. For being present at the synagogues of the Jews, and understanding much of the Law, they were all of the Gentiles readyest to hear, and most capable of the arguments which the apostles produced out of the Scriptures to prove that Jesus was the Christ. Thus many of the "Greeks that came up to worship" at Jerusalem, (John xii. 20.) "devout men out of every nation under heaven," (Acts ii. 5.) not men of Israel, but yet fearing God, did first embrace the Christian faith. After them the rest of the Gentiles left the idolatrous worship of their heathen gods, and in a short time in infinite multitudes received the Gospel. How much did Jesus work by one St. Paul to the "obedience of the Gentiles by word and deed?" How did he pass from Jerusalem round about through Phœnice, Syria, and Arabia, through Asia, Achaia, and Macedonia, even to Illyricum, "fully preaching the Gospel of Christ?" (Rom. xv. 18, 19.) How far did others pass beside St. Paul, that he should speak even of his time, that the "Gospel was preached to every creature under heaven?" (Col. i. 23.) Many were the nations, innumerable the people, which received the faith in the apostles' days: and in not many years after, notwithstanding millions were cut off in their bloody persecutions, yet did their numbers equalize half the Roman empire:* and little above two ages after the death of the last apostle, the emperors of the world gave their names to Christ, and submitted their sceptres to his laws, that the "Gentiles might come to his light, and kings to the brightness of his rising;" (Isa. lx. 3.) that "kings might become the nursing fathers, and queens the nursing mothers," of the Church. (Isa. xlix 23.)

From hence it came to pass, that according to all the pre-

* Visa est mihi res digna consultatione, maxime propter perichthiantium, numerum. Multi enim omnis actatis, omnis ordinis, utriusque sexus etiam, vocantur in periculum et vocabantur. Nee enim civitates tantum, sed vicus etiam atque agros, superstitionis istius contagio pervagata est.' Plin. Epist. ad Tragionum, l. x. ep. 97. 'Tanta hominum multitudo, pars pene major civitatis cujusque, in silento et modestia agimus.' Tertull. ad Scapul. c. 2. 'Si hostes exsertos, non tantum vindices occultos agere vellemus, dessest nos vis numerorum et copiarum? Plures nimirum Mauri et Marcomanni, ipsique Parthi, vel quartecunque unius tamen loci et suorum finium gentes, quam totius orbis. Hesterni sumus, et vestra omnia implevimus, urbes, insulas, castella, municipia, conciliaula, castra ipsa, tribus, decurias, palatum, senatorum, forum.' Id. Apolog. c. 37. 'Potius ex inermes, nec rebelles, sed tantummodo discordes, solius diversi invidia adversus vos dimicasse. Si enim tanta vis hominum in aliquem orbis remoti situm abrupsissimus a robis, suffulisset utique dominationem vestram tot qualiamcunque amissio civium, ino etiam et ipsa destinatioiium punisset: procul dubio expavisisset ad solutidinem vestrum, ad silentium rerum, et supraparem quemdam quasi morte urbibus: quassisset quis in ea imperasset.' Id. ibid. And Ireneus, who wrote before Tertullian, and is mentioned by him, speaks of the Christians in his time living in the Court of Rome: "Quid autem et qui qui in regali aula sunt fidèles? Nonne ex eis, quae Cesariis sunt, habent utilitatem, et his, qui non habent, unusquisque secundum suam virtutem praestat?"
dictions of the prophets, the one God of Israel, the Maker of heaven and earth, was acknowledged through the world for the only true God: that the Law given to Israel was taken for the true Law of God, but as given to that people, and so to cease when they ceased to be a people; except the moral part thereof, which, as a universal rule common to all people, is still acknowledged for the Law of God, given unto all, and obliging every man: that all the oracles of the heathen gods, in all places where Christianity was received, did presently cease, and all the idols or the gods themselves were rejected and condemned as spurious. For the Lord of Hosts had spoken concerning those times expressly, “it shall come to pass in that day, that I will cut off the names of the idols out of the land, and they shall no more be remembered: also I will cause the prophets and the unclean spirit to pass out of the land.” (Zech. xiii. 2.)

Now being this general reception of the Gospel was so anciently, so frequently foretold, being the same was so clearly and universally performed; even this might seem sufficient to persuade that Jesus is Christ. But lest any should not yet be fully satisfied, we shall farther shew, that it is impossible Jesus should have been so received for the true Messias, had he not been so; or that his doctrine, which teacheth him to be the Christ, should be admitted by all nations for divine had it not been such. For whether we look upon the nature of the doctrine taught, the condition of the teachers of it, or the manner in which it was taught, it can no way seem probable, that it should have had any such success, without the immediate working of the hand of God, acknowledging Jesus for his Son, the doctrine for his own, and the fulfilling by the hands of the apostles what he had foretold by the prophets.

As for the nature of the doctrine, it was no way likely to have any such success. For, first, it absolutely condemned all other religions, settled and corroborated by a constant succession of many ages, under which many nations and kingdoms, and especially at that time the Roman, had signally flourished. Secondly, it contained precepts far more ungrateful and troublesome to flesh and blood, and contrariant to the general inclination of mankind; as the abnegation of ourselves, the mortifying of the flesh, the love of our enemies, and the bearing of the cross. Thirdly, it enforced those precepts seemingly unreasonable, by such promises as were seemingly incredible and unperceivable. For they were not of the good things of this world, or such as afford any complacency to our sense; but of such as cannot be obtained till after this life, and necessarily presuppose that which then seemed as absolutely impossible, the resurrection. Fourthly, it delivered certain predictions which were to be fulfilled in the persons of such as should embrace it, which seem sufficient to have kept most part of the world from listening to it, as dangers, losses, afflictions, tribu-
ARTICLE II.

lations; and, in sum, “all that would live godly in Christ Jesus should suffer persecution.” (2 Tim. iii. 12.)

If we look upon the teachers of this doctrine, there appeared nothing in them which could promise any success. The first revealer and promulger bred in the house of a carpenter, brought up at the feet of no professor, despised by the high-priests, the Scribes and Pharisees, and all the learned in the religion of his nation; in the time of his preaching apprehended, bound, buffeted, spit upon, condemned, crucified; betrayed in his life by one disciple, denied by another; at his death distrusted by all. What advantage can we perceive towards the propagation of the Gospel in this author of it, “Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumbling-block, and unto the Greeks foolishness?” (1 Cor. i. 23.) What in those which followed him, sent by him, and thence called apostles, men by birth obscure, by education illiterate, by profession low and inglorious? How can we conceive that all the schools and universities of the world should give way to them, and the kingdoms and empires should at last come in to them, except their doctrine were indeed divine, except that Jesus, whom they testified to be the Christ, were truly so?

If we consider the manner in which they delivered this doctrine to the world, it will add no advantage to their persons, or advance the probability of success. For in their delivery they used no such rhetorical expressions, or ornaments of eloquence, to allure or entice the world; they affected no such subtlety of wit, or strength of argumentation, as thereby to persuade or convince men; they made use of no force or violence to compel, no corporal menaces to all right mankind unto a compliance. But in a plain simplicity of words they nakeyly delivered what they had seen and heard, “preaching, not with enticing words of man’s wisdom, but in the demonstration of the Spirit.” (1 Cor. ii. 4.) It is not then rationally imaginable, that so many nations should forsake their own religions so many ages professed, and brand them all as damnable, only that they might embrace such precepts as were most unacceptable to their natural inclinations, and that upon such promises as seemed not probable to their reason, nor could have any influence on their sense, and notwithstanding those predictions which did assure them, upon the receiving of that doctrine, to be exposed to all kind of misery: that they should do this upon the authority of him who for the same was condemned and crucified, and by the persuasion of them who were both illiterate and obscure: that they should be enticed with words without eloquence, convinced without the least subtlety, constrained without any force. I say, it is no way imaginable how this should come to pass, had not the doctrine of the Gospel, which did thus prevail, been certainly divine; had not the light of the Word, which thus dispelled the clouds of all
former religions, come from heaven: bad not that "Jesus, the author and finisher of our faith," (Heb. xii. 2.) been the true Messiah.

To conclude this discourse. He who was in the world at the time when the Messiah was to come, and no other at that time or since pretended; he who was born of the same family, in the same place, after the same manner, which the prophets foretold of the birth of the Messiah; he which taught all those truths, wrought all those miracles, suffered all those indignities, received all that glory, which the Messiah was to teach, do, suffer, and receive; he whose doctrine was received in all nations, according to the character of the Messiah: he was certainly the true Messiah. But we have already sufficiently shewed that all these things are exactly fulfilled in Jesus, and in him alone. We must therefore acknowledge and profess, that this Jesus is the promised Messiah, that is, the Christ.

Having thus manifested the truth of this proposition, Jesus is the Christ, and shewed the interpretation of the word Christ to be anointed; we find it yet necessary, for the explication of this Article, to inquire what was the end or immediate effect of his anointing, and how or in what manner he was anointed to that end.

For the first, as the Messiah was foretold, so was he typified; nor were the actions prescribed under the Law less predictive than the words of the prophets. Nay, whosoever were then anointed, were therefore so, because he was to be anointed. Now it is evident, that among the Jews they were wont to anoint those which were appointed as kings over them: so "Samuel said unto Saul, The Lord sent me to anoint thee to be king over his people, over Israel." (1 Sam. xv. 1.) When Saul was rejected, and David produced before Samuel, "the Lord said, Arise, anoint him, for this is he." (1 Sam. xvi. 12.) And some may have contented themselves with this, that the Messiah was to be a king. But not only the kings, but beside and long before them, the high priests were also anointed; insomuch as the anointed, in their common language, signified their high-
priest. And because these two were most constantly anointed, therefore divers have thought it sufficient to assert, that the Messias was to be a king and a priest. * But being not only the high-priests and kings were actually anointed (though they principally and most frequently); for "the Lord said unto Elias, Go anoint Hazael to be king over Syria, and Jehu the son of Nimshi shalt thou anoint to be king over Israel, and Elisha the son of Shaphat shalt thou anoint to be prophet in thy room;" (1 Kings xix. 15, 16.) Therefore hence it hath been concluded that the three offices of prophet, priest, and king, belonged to Jesus as the Christ;† and that upon good reason. For the commonwealth of Israel was totally ordered and disposed, both in the constitution and administration of it, for and with respect unto the Messias. The constitution of that people was made by a sejunction and separation of them from all other nations on the earth: and this began in Abraham, with a peculiar promise of a seed in whom all the nations should be blessed, and be united into one religion. That promised seed was the Messias, the type of whom was Isaac. This separation was continued by the administration of that commonwealth, which was "a royal priesthood:" (1 Pet. ii. 9.) and that administration of the people did consist in three functions, prophetical, regal, sacerdotal; all which had respect unto the Messias,‡ as the scope of all the prophets, and the complement of their prophecies, as the Lord of the Temple, and the end of all the sacrifices for which the Temple was erected, as the heir

* νυμισμαν, by way of explication; whereas, verses the 5th and 16th of the same chapter, and vi. 22, they render it by a bare translation, ἐν ἀναμν. & της της; which by the vulgar Latin is translated, Sacerdos qui jure patri succedere, because no other but the son, which succeed the father in the office of the high priest, was afterwards anointed: as the Arabic, Et similitur sueroides successor de filius suis. For in the anointing of Aaron and his sons, Christus filius Messias: let us extend the idea, as Leti Ben Gerson, 1 Kings i.

† As Lacantius: 'Erat Judeis ante praceptum, ut sacrum conficirent unguentum, quum perumci possent ii, qui vocabantur ad sacerdociun vel ad regnum.' i. iv. c. 7. And St. Augustin; 'Prioribus Veteris Testamenti temporibus ad duos solas personas pertinuit unctio.' Enarr. 2. Psalm. xlvii. § 2. 'Christus vel Pontificale vel Regium nomen est. Nam prins et Pontifices unguento christinatis consecrabantur et reges.' Ruff. in Symb. § 8.

‡ Τούτο τὸ χρίσμα μὲν μόνον 'αγίασις παραδόθη, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς μετὰ ταῦτα προφήταις καὶ βασιλεύσων, οἷς καὶ αὐτὸς τὸν χρίσματος μένος ἔχει ἐν τῷ ἑαυτῷ. Euseb. Demonst. Ewng. 1. iv. c. 13. and Hist. 1. i.c. 3. Wherefore St. Augustin, recollecting a place, in his eighty-three questions, in which he had taught the two fishes in the Gospel, 'duas illas personas significare quibus populus ille regebatur, ut per eas conciliorum modernam acciperet, regiam scilicet et sacerdotalem, ad quas etiam sacrosancta illa unctio pertinebat,' makes this particular retractation: 'Dicoendum potius fuit, maxime pertinuit, quomina unctos aliquando legitimus et prophetas.' Retract. i. c. 20.

§ Οὐ μὲνος δὲ ἀρχα τῶν 'αγίασεων τετιμουμένως τῷ τῷ χριστοῦ κατεκάμψει παρ' ἑδραίων ὀψαίς ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς βασιλείς, οἷς καὶ αὐτοῖς, πωλοίτες διὰ αὐτὸ προσφέρεται χρίσμα, εἰκονικὸς τοῦ τῆς χριστοῦ αὐτοῦ ἵππος ὥσπερ δὲ καὶ αὐτός, τῆς τοῦ μιᾶς καὶ ἁλυδίως χριστοῦ, τοῦ κατὰ πάντας βασιλεύσων διὰ τῆς λόγου, βασιλικῆς καὶ ἀγίως ἄνωσις τῶν τῶν δέ εἰσεῖν ἑαυτῷ ἐξοφλητοῖς δέ καὶ ἀπότομος τῶν παραστάσεως τῶν δε χρήσαστας χρίσματος τῶν τῶν γεγονότοι παραδόθησαν. οἷς τῶν ἐποίκους τῆς ἐπὶ τῶν ἐκλείθα χριστι, τοῦ βασιλείου καὶ σκύρου λόγων, ἀναγνώσαι ἐγών, μενον ἄρχισιν τῶν λόγων, καὶ μένων ἀπάντας τῆς πλῆθος βασιλείας, καὶ μένων περίφροντο ἀγίασε υμῖν τούς τώρα τιμώντας. Euseb. Hist. Ewcl. i. i. c. 3.
of an eternal priesthood "after the order of Melchizedek," (Psal. ex. 4.) and of the throne of David, or an everlasting kingdom. Being then the separation was to cease at the coming of the Messias, being that could not cease so long as the administration of that people stood, being that administration did consist in those three functions, it followeth that those three were to be united in the person of the Messias, who was to make all one, and consequently, that the Christ was to be Prophet, Priest, and King.

Again, the redemption or salvation which the Messias was to bring, consisteth in the freeing of a sinner from the state of sin and eternal death, into a state of righteousness and eternal life. Now a freedom from sin in respect of the guilt could not be wrought without a sacrifice propitiatory, and therefore there was a necessity of a priest; a freedom from sin in respect of the dominion could not be obtained without a revelation of the will of God, and of his wrath against all ungodliness, therefore there was also need of a prophet; a translation from the state of death into eternal life is not to be effected without absolute authority and irresistible power, therefore a king was also necessary. The Messias, then, the Redeemer of Israel, was certainly anointed for that end, that he might become Prophet, Priest, and King. And if we believe him whom we call Jesus, that is, our Saviour and Redeemer, to be Christ, we must assert him by his sanction sent to perform all these three offices.

That Jesus was anointed to the prophetic office, though we need no more to prove it than the prediction of Isaiah, "The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the Gospel to the poor;" (Isa. lxi. 1.) the explication of our Saviour, "This day is the Scripture fulfilled in your ears;" (Luke iv. 21.) and the confession of the synagogue at Nazareth, who "all bare him witness, and wondered at the gracious words which proceeded out of his mouth;" (Luke iv. 22.) yet we are furnished with more ample and plentiful demonstrations; for whether we consider his preparation, his mission, or his administration, all of them speak him fully to have performed it. To Jeremiah indeed God said, "Before thou camest forth out of the womb, I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations;" (Jer. i. 5.) and of John the Baptist, "He shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb." (Luke i. 15.) And if these became singular prophets by their preparative sanctification, how much more eminent must his prophetic preparation be, to whose mother it is said, "The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee?" (Luke i. 35.) If the Levites must be "thirty years old, every one that came to do the service of the ministry," (Numb. iv. 47.) Jesus will not enter upon the public administration of this office "till he begin to be about thirty years of age." (Luke iii. 23.) Then doth the
“Holy Ghost descend in a bodily shape like a dove upon him: then must a voice come from heaven, saying, Thou art my beloved Son, in thee I am well pleased.” (Luke iii. 22.) Never such preparations, never such an inauguration of a prophet.

As for his mission, never any was confirmed with such letters of credence, such irrefragable testimonials, as the formal testimony of John the Baptist, and the more virtual testimony of his miracles. “Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord,” saith God by Malachi. (iv. 5.) And John went “before him in the spirit of Elias,” (Luke i. 17.) saith another Malachi, even an angel from heaven. This John, or Elias, saw the Spirit descend on Jesus, “and bare record, that this is the Son of God.” (John i. 34.) The Jews took notice of this testimony, who “said unto him, Rabbi, he that was with thee beyond Jordan, to whom thou barest witness, behold the same baptizeth, and all men come unto him;” (John iii. 26.) and Jesus himself puts them in mind of it, “Ye sent unto John, and he bare witness unto the truth;” (John v. 33.) nay, they themselves confessed his testimony to be undeniable, “John did no miracle, but all things that John spake of this man were true.” (John x. 41.) But though the witness of John were thus cogent, yet the testimony of miracles was far more irrefragable; “I have greater witness than that of John (saith our Saviour); for the works which my Father hath given me to finish, the same works that I do, bear witness of me, that the Father hath sent me.” (John v. 36.) Notwithstanding the precedent record of John, Jesus requireth not an absolute assent unto his doctrine without his miracles: “If I do not the works of my Father, believe me not.” (John x. 37.) But upon them he challengeth belief: “But if I do, though ye believe not me, believe the works: that ye may know and believe that the Father is in me, and I in him.” (John x. 38.) If then Moses and other prophets, to whom God gave the power of miracles, did assert their mission to be from God by the divine works which they wrought; much more efficacious to this purpose must the miracles of Jesus appear, who wrought more wonders than they all. Never therefore was there so manifest a mission of a prophet.

Now the prophetical function consisteth in the promulgation, confirmation, and perpetuation of the doctrine containing the will of God for the salvation of man. And the perfect administration of the office must be attributed unto Jesus. For “no man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him.” (John i. 18.) He gave unto the apostles the words which his Father gave him. (John xvii. 8. 14.) Therefore he hath revealed the perfect will of God. The confirmation of this doctrine cannot be denied him, who lived a most innocent and holy life to persuade it, for “he did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth:”
And in Jesus Christ, &c. 145

(1 Pet. ii. 22.) who wrought most powerful and divine works to confirm it, and was thereby "known" to be "a teacher from God;" (John iii. 2.) who died a most painful and shameful death to ratify it, "witnessing a good confession before Pontius Pilate;" (1 Tim. vi. 13.) which in itself unto that purpose efficacious, was made more evidently operative in the raising of himself from death. The propagation and perpetual succession of this doctrine must likewise be attributed unto Jesus, as to no temporary or accidental prophet, but as to him who instituted and instructed all who have any relation to that function. For "the Spirit of Christ was in the prophets:" (1 Pet. i. 11.) and "when he ascended up on high, he gave gifts unto men." (Eph. iv. 8.) For "he gave some apostles, and some prophets, and some pastors and teachers; for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ." (Eph. iv. 11, 12.) It is then most apparent that Jesus was so far Christ, as that he was anointed to the prophetical office, because his preparation for that office was most remarkable, his mission unto that office was undeniable, his administration of that office was infallible.

Now as Jesus was anointed with the unction of Elizeus to the prophetical, so was he also with the unction of Aaron to the sacerdotal office. Not that he was called after the order of Aaron; "for it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Judah, of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood:" (Heb. vii. 14.) but after a more ancient order, according to the prediction of the Psalmist, "the Lord hath sworn and will not repent. Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek." (Psal. cx. 4. Heb. vii. 21.) But though he were of another order, yet whatsoever Aaron did as a priest was wholly typical, and consequently to be fulfilled by the Messiah, as he was a Priest. For the priesthood did not begin in Aaron, but was translated and conferred upon his family before his consecration. We read of "the priests which came near the Lord;" (Exod. xix. 22.) of "young men of the children of Israel which offered burnt-offerings, and sacrificed peace-offerings of oxen unto the Lord;" (Exod. xxiv. 5.) which without question were no other than the first-born, to whom the priesthood did belong. Jesus, therefore, as the first-begotten of God, was by right a Priest, and being anointed unto that office, performed every function, by way of oblation, intercession, and benediction. "Every high priest is ordained to offer gifts and sacrifices: wherefore it is of necessity that this man Jesus, if he be a high-priest, have somewhat also to offer." (Heb. viii. 3.) Not that he had any thing beside himself, or that there was any peculiar sacrifice allowed to this Priest; who, "when he cometh into the world, saith, Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, * For the Hebrew ינו סｙ signify¬ ing juvemns, by all the Targums is rendered יבש that is primogenitus: and so the Arabic and Persian translations.
but a body hast thou prepared me:” (Heb. x. 5.) and, “by the offering of this body of Jesus Christ are we sanctified.” (Heb. x. 10.) For he who is our Priest hath “given himself an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet smelling savour.” (Eph. v. 2.)*

Now when Jesus had thus given himself a propitiatory sacrifice for sin, he ascended up on high, and entered into the Holy of Holies not made with hands, and there appeared before God as an atonement for our sin. Nor is he prevalent only in his own oblation once offered, but in his constant intercession. “Who is he that condemneth? (saith the apostle), it is Christ that died, yea rather that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God; who also maketh intercession for us.” (Rom. viii. 34.) Upon this foundation he buildeth our persuasion, that “he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.” (Heb. vii. 25.) Nor must we look upon this as a servile or precarious, but rather as an efficacious and glorious intercession, as of him to whom all power is given both in heaven and earth. Besides these offerings and intercedings, there was something more required of the priest, and that is blessing. “Aaron was separated, that he should sanctify the most holy things, he and his sons for ever, to burn incense before the Lord, to minister unto him, and to bless in his name for ever.” (1 Chron. xxiii. 13.) We read of no other sacerdotal act performed by Melchizedek the priest of the most high God, but only that of blessing, and in that respect both of God and man: First, “He blessed man, and said, Blessed be Abram of the most high God, possessor of heaven and earth: then, Blessed be the most high God, which hath delivered thine enemies into thine hand.” (Gen. xiv. 19, 20.) Now it is observable what the Rabbins have delivered, that at the morning sacrifice the priests under the Law did bless the people with the solemn form of benediction, but at the evening sacrifice they blessed them not; to shew that in the evening of the world, the last days, which are the days of the Messias, the benediction of the Law should cease, and the blessing of the Christ take place. When Zachariah the priest, the father of John Baptist, the forerunner of our Saviour, “executed his office before God in the order of his course,” and the whole multitude of “the people waited for him,” to receive his benediction, “he could not speak unto them,” (Luke i. 8. 21, 22.) for he was dumb; shew-
ing the power of benediction was now passing to another and far greater priest, even to Jesus, whose doctrine in the mount begins with blessed; who, when he left his disciples, "lift up his hands and blessed them." (Luke xxiv. 50.) And yet this function is principally performed after his resurrection, as it is written, "Unto you first, God, having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning every one of you from his iniquities." (Acts iii. 26.) It cannot then be denied that Jesus, who offered up himself a most perfect sacrifice and oblation for sin, who still maketh continual intercession for us, who was raised from the dead, that he might bless us with an everlasting benediction, is a most true and most perfect Priest.

The third office belonging to the Messias was the regal, as appeareth by the most ancient tradition of the Jews, and by the express predictions of the prophets. "Yet have I set my king (saith the Psalmist), upon my holy hill of Sion." (Psal. ii. 6.) "Unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given, and the government shall be upon his shoulder," saith the prophet Isaiah, (ix. 6.) who calleth him the "Prince of peace," shewing the perpetuity of his power, and particularity of his seat. "Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice, from henceforth even for ever." (Isa. ix. 7.) All which most certainly belongs unto our Jesus, by the unerrng interpretation of the angel Gabriel, who promised the blessed Virgin that "the Lord God" should "give unto" her son "the throne of his father David, and he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever, and of his kingdom there shall be no end." (Luke i. 32, 33.) He acknowledgeth himself this office, though by a strange and unlikely representation of it, the riding on an ass; but by that it was "fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, Tell ye the daughter of Sion, Behold thy King cometh unto thee, meek, and sitting on an ass." (Matt. xxi. 4, 5.) He made as strange a confession of it unto Pilate; for when he said unto him, "Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth." (John xviii. 37.) The solemn inauguration into this office was at his ascension into heaven, and his session at the right hand of God: not but that he was by right a King before, but the full and public execution was deferred till then, "when God raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places, far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion." (Eph. i. 20, 21.) Then he, whose "name is called the Word of God, had on his vesture and on his

* For the Chaldee paraphrase in the most places where it mentioneth the Messias doth it with the addition of king. מַלֶךְ נָסָי.
thigh a name written, King of kings, and Lord of lords.” (Rev. xix. 13. 16.)

This regal office of our Saviour consisteth partly in the ruling, protecting, and rewarding of his people; partly in the coercing, condemning, and destroying of his enemies. First, he ruleth in his own people, by delivering them a Law by which they walk: by furnishing them with his grace, by which they are enabled to walk in it. Secondly, he protecteth the same, by helping them to subdue their lusts, which reign in their mortal bodies; by preserving them from the temptation of the world, the flesh, and the devil; by supporting them in all their afflictions; by delivering them from all their enemies. Thirdly, whom he thus rules and protects here, he rewards hereafter in a most royal manner, making them “kings and priests unto God and his Father.” (Rev. i. 6.) On the contrary, he sheweth his regal dominion in the destruction of his enemies, whether they were temporal or spiritual enemies. Temporal, as the Jews and Romans, who joined together in his crucifixion. While he was on earth he told his disciples, “There be some standing here, which shall not taste of death till they see the Son of man coming in his kingdom;” (Matt. xvi. 28.) and in that kingdom he was then seen to come, when he brought utter destruction on the Jews by the Roman armies, not long after to be destroyed themselves. But beside these visible enemies, there are other spiritual, those which hinder the bringing in of his own people into his Father’s kingdom, those which refuse to be subject unto him, and consequently deny him to be their King; as all wicked and ungodly men, of whom he hath said, “These mine enemies, which would not that I should reign over them, bring hither, and slay them before me.” (Luke xix. 27.) Thus sin, Satan, and death, being the enemies to his kingdom, shall all be destroyed in their order. “For he must reign till he hath put all his enemies under his feet: and the last enemy that shall be destroyed is death.” (1 Cor. xv. 25, 26.) Thus is our “Jesus” become the “Prince of the kings of the earth;” (Rev. i. 5.) thus is the “Lamb” acknowledged to be “Lord of lords, and King of kings.” (Rev. xvii. 14.)

Wherefore seeking we have already shewed that the prophetic, sacerdotal, and regal offices were to belong unto the promised Messias, as the proper end and immediate effect of his union; seeking we have likewise declared how Jesus was anointed to these offices, and hath and doth actually perform the same in all the functions belonging to them: there remaineth nothing for the full explication of this particular concerning the Christ, but only to shew the manner of this union, which is very necessary to be explained. For how they were anointed under the Law, who were the types of the Messias, is plain and evident, because the manner was prescribed, and the materials were visible: God appointed an oil to be made, and appro-
priated it to that use; and the pouring that oil upon the body of any person was his anointing to that office for which he was designed. But being that oil so appropriated to this use was lost many hundred years before our Saviour's birth, being the custom of anointing in this manner had a long time ceased, being howsoever we never read that Jesus was at all anointed with oil; it remaineth still worthy of inquiry, how he was anointed, so as to answer to the former unctions; and what it was which answered to that oil, which then was lost, and was at the first but as a type of this which now we search for.

The Jews* tell us, that the anointing oil was hid in the days of Josiah, and that it shall be found and produced again when the Messias comes, that he may be anointed with it, and the kings and high-priests of his days. But though the loss of that oil bespoke the destruction of that nation, yet the Christ which was to come needed no such unction for his consecration; there being as great a difference between the typical and correspondent oil, as between the representing and represented Christ. The prophet David calleth it not by the vulgar name of oil of unction, but the "oil of gladness." (Psal. xlv. 7.) For though that place may in the first sense be understood of Solomon, whom when Zadok the priest anointed, "They blew the trumpet, and all the people said, God save king Solomon. And all the people came up after him, and the people piped with pipes, and rejoiced with great joy, so that the earth rent with the sound of them;" (1 Kings i. 39, 40.) though from thence it might be said of him, "Thy God hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows;" (Psal. xlv. 7.) yet being those words are spoken unto God, as well as of God, ("therefore God, thy God"‡) the oil with which that God is anointed, must in the ultimate and highest sense, signify a far greater gladness than that at Solomon's coronation was, even the fountain of all joy and felicity in the Church of God.

The ancients‡ tell us that this oil is the Divinity itself, and

* Cum ipse esset Christus, quia hic est

† Duo personas, eujus qui unctus est

‡ Duo personae, ejus qui unctus est

Dei, et qui unxit, intellige. Unde et

Aquila Elohim verbum Hebraicum

non nominativo caso, sed vocativo, inter-

pretatur, dicens bai: et nos propter intel-

lignantiam Dee posimus, quod Latina ling-

gua non accipit, ne quis perverse putet

Deum dilecti et amantissimi et Regis bis


* Quod sequitur, Unxit te, Deus, Deus

utrn primum Dei vocativo caso intel-

ligendum est, sequens nominativo; quod

satis miror cur Aquila non, ut cooperat in

primo versiculo, vocativo caso interpre-

tatus sit, sed nominativo, his nominans

Deum, qui supradictum unxit Deum.

Ibid. Ibid.
in the language of the Scriptures it is the Holy Ghost. St. Peter teacheth us "how God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost, and with power." (Acts x. 38.) Now though there can be no question but the Spirit is the oil, yet there is some doubt, when Jesus was anointed with it. For we know the angel said unto the blessed Virgin, "the Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee, shall be called the Son of God." (Luke i. 35.) From whence it appeareth that from the conception, or at the incarnation Jesus was sanctified by the Holy Ghost, and the power of the Highest; and so consequently, as St. Peter spake, he was "anointed then with the Holy Ghost, and with power."* Again, being we read that after he was thirty years of age, the Spirit "like a dove descended and lighted upon him;" (Matt. iii. 16.) and he, descending in the power of the Spirit into Galilee, said unto them of Nazareth, "This day is this Scripture fulfilled in your ears, (meaning that of Isaiah, lxi. 1.) The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the Gospel;" (Luke iv. 18.) hence hath it been also collected, that his unction was performed at his baptism.† Nor need we contend which of these two was the true time of our Saviour's unction, since neither is destructive of the other, and consequently both may well consist together. David, the most undoubted type of the Messias, was anointed at Bethlem; for there "Samuel took the horn of oil, and anointed him in the midst of his brethren: and the Spirit of the Lord came upon David from that day forward." (1 Sam. xvi. 13.) Of which unction those words of God must necessarily be understood, "I have found David my servant; with my holy oil have I

---

*Hoc omnia carni convenient, cui piissimam et gloriassimam Verbum unitum est pro salute concutorum. Cassiodorus in Psalm. xlv.

† St. Jerome, mentioning that place of the Psalm: "Quando consortium nominatur, naturam carnis intellige: quia Deus consortes substantiae non habet. Et quia erat unctio spiritualis et nequaquam humani corporis, (ut fuit in sacerdotibus Judaeorum) idcirco pra consortibus, id est, ceteris sanctis, unctus esse memoratur. Cujus unctio illo expellet est tempore quando baptizatus est in Jordane, et Spiritus Sanctus in specie Columbae descendent super eum, et transit in illo." Comment. in Psalm. c. 61. "In illa columna quae super ipsum post baptismam descendit, cum sacramento baptismatis, et vesta sacerdotii jurata suscepit, fuso videlicet super eam oleo exultationis, de quo Psalmista cantit; Uniat te, inquit, Deus, Deus tuus." Petrus Damianus, Opuscul. vi. c. 4.
To Odulrias, the son of David, was first sanctified and anointed with the Holy Ghost at his conception, and thereby received a right unto, and was prepared for, all those offices which belonged to the Redeemer of the World: but when he was to enter upon the actual and full performance of all those functions which belonged to him, then doth the same Spirit which had sanctified him at his conception, visibly descend upon him at his inauguration. And that most properly upon his baptism; because, according to the customs of those ancient nations, washing was wont to precede theirunctions: * wherefore “Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: And lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove.” (Matt. iii. 16.) As David sent Solomon to be anointed at Gihon: from whence

* As appears by those entertainments so frequently mentioned by Homer in his Odyssey; as when Telemachus is entertained by Nestor:

> Τίπτ ρε παλημαχών και ηλικίασιν, Νίττορες επικεφαλής Σωκράτης Νεκταρίας.

> Αυτὰς ἐπι κόσμον τε καὶ ἱδρυες λιπὸς θεῖος. Od. γ. 463.

And Telemachus and Pisistratus are invited to the court of Menelaus:

> "Εξ' ἔταραίοις βατέτες ἱδρυες κόσμων."

> Τοὺς ὑπερὶ οὗ τοίον κοσμοῦ καὶ χρίσμαθειαν. Od. δ. 48.

Thus Ulysses is entertained, Od. θ. thus Pyraeus and Telemachus, Od. p. And Venus returning to Paphus, is so ordered by the Charites;

> Ἑνδεῖ δὲ μνὲς Χάρτις κόσμων καὶ χρίσμαθειαν ἀρχηγότητι, οἷα ζοικεῖ εἰπενόνθεν πριν ἐνώπιος. Od. θ. 364.

So Helena speaks of her entertaining Ulysses in a disguise;

> Ἀλλ' ὅτι δὲ μνὲς ἑγὼν ἑδονον καὶ χρίσμαθεια. Od. δ. 252.

It is apparent that this was the custom of the ancient Greeks. Of which Eustathius gives this reason: Ἑλαιὸν ἐχθρίστο τοὺς ἅρτας ἐμπλάττοντες τῶν σφακτικῶν πίμας, διὰ τὰ μετὰ λυτράν στίγμαν τοῦ ἱδρύσατα. This custom was so ancient and general, that the Greeks had one word to express this anointing with oil after washing with water, which they called χρύτλη καὶ χυτύκες. Etymol. Xylthvai, οἷς ἀλαζόν τὸ ἀλαζήν ἀλάζα τὸ ἐπὶ λυτρών ἠλαζέων. Schol. Aristoph. Vesp. v. 500. Χυτλά τα κοῖνον, τὸ ἱδρυν οἰκίᾳ τὸ αὐτῶν ἡμῶν τὸ σφακτεῖα ἠλαζέων. 

> Χυτλά, το τἰ ἐπὶ θαυμάσει λασών, καὶ χυτύκες, τὸ ἀλάζα μετὰ τὸ λυτρών. Hence, when Nausicaa went unto the pools to wash, her mother gave her a box of oil. Od. z. 79.

> Δἀχαὶ δὲ χυτυκεῖα ἐν λακκῷ θρύγγον θαυμάσιον, Εἰς χυτυκεῖαν ἐνα ἀρρενίστους προστίθην. Where the old Scholast, χυτλάτατο, λακαράμαν ἠλαζεῖται and Eustathius, Εἰς χυτλάτατο, αὐτὶ τοῖς, ὅπερ μετὰ λυτρῶν χυτυκεῖαν θαυμάσιον which exposition is warranted by the performance aftermentioned,

> Αἴ τι λακαράμαν καὶ ἠλαζεῖται λι' θαυμάσιον. v. 96.

And as this was the ancient custom of the Greeks, so was it also the common custom of the Jews, as appears by the words of Naomi to Ruth, “wash thyself, therefore, and anoint thee, and put thy raiment upon thee.” Ruth iii. 3.
arose that ancient observation of the Rabbins, that 'kings were not to be anointed but by a fountain.'*

Now as we have shewn that Jesus was anointed with the Holy Ghost, lest any should deny any such descention to be a proper or sufficient unction, we shall farther make it appear, that the effusion, or action of the Spirit, eminently contained whatever the Jews have imagined to be performed or signified by those legal anointings. Two very good reasons they render why God did command the use of such anointing oil, as in respect of the action. First, that it might signify the divine election of that person, and designation to that office: from whence it was necessary that it should be performed by a prophet, who understood the will of God. Secondly, that by it the person anointed might be made fit to receive the divine influx. For the first, it is evident there could be no such infallible sign of the divine designation of Jesus to his offices, as the visible descent of the Spirit attended with "a voice from heaven," instead of the hand of a prophet, saying, "This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased." (Matt. iii. 17.) For the second, this spiritual unction was so far from giving less than an aptitude to receive the divine influx, that it was that divine influx, nay, the Divinity itself, the Godhead dwelling in him bodily.

In respect of the matter, they give two causes why it was oil, and not any other liquor. First, because of all other, it signifies the greatest glory and excellency. The olive was the first of trees mentioned as fit for sovereignty, in regard of its "fitness, wherewith they honour God and man." (Judg. ix. 9.) Therefore it was fit that those persons which were called to a greater dignity than the rest of the Jews, should be consecrated by oil, as the 'best sign of election to honour. And can there be a greater honour than to be the Son of God, the beloved Son, as Jesus was proclaimed at this unction, by which he was consecrated to such an office, as will obtain him a name far above all names? Secondly, they tell us that oil continueth uncorropted longer than any other liquor. And indeed it hath been observed to preserve not only itself but other things from corruption; hence they conclude it fit their kings and priests, whose succession was to continue for ever, should be anointed

* They say in the Gemara, that this is a maxim of the doctors, אומתת עדת רחמים ותלוי על הנבואה: Aburbanel in 50 Exod. The end of which ceremony was to shew the prolonging of his kingdom, who was so anointed; and the original is referred to the anointing of Solomon, 1 Kings i. 39. For so it followed in the Talmud, וakedirs מרבי כתובין ט蹢ינן מלכטם. Aburbanel ibid.

' 'Unguenta optime servavant in alabastris, odores in oleo.' Plin. Hist. 1. xiii. c. 2. 'Existimatur et ehori vin licando a carie utile esse. Civit simulacrum Saturni Romae intus oleo repleto est.' Id. l. xv. c. 7. And whosoever made that statue at Rome, seems to have had his art out of Grecian, from that famous ivory statue made by Phidias. Τυχωνοφαινεται καθαιρεται το κατασκευασμενον Πιθωνι οίκας, (κακορεριοις δε τιτιν δε) διαν ειρινοις περιπλάνης ομοι τοις στίξις, ουποριον πιν αγοραμάτως, ἀναστῶν ας ὑποβαλεῖν κατασκευασμένος. Proclus apud S. Epiphani. Haer. iv. v. § 18.
with oil, the most proper emblem of eternity. But even by this
device of their own, their unction has ceased, being the suc-
cession of their kings and priests is long since cut off, and their
eternal and eternizing oil lost long before; and only that one
Jesus, who was anointed with the most spiritual oil, "con-
tinueth ever; and therefore hath an unchangeable priesthood,
as being made not after the law of a carnal commandment, but
after the power of an endless life." (Heb. vii. 24, 16.)

Beside, they observe, that simple oil, without any mixture
was sufficient for the candle-stick; but that which was designed
for unction must be compounded with principal spices, which
signify a good name, always to be acquired by those in places
of greatest dignity by the most laudable and honourable ac-
tions. And certainly never was such an admixture of spices as
in the unction of our Saviour, by which he was endued with all
variety of the graces of God, by which he was enabled to "offer
himself a sacrifice for a sweet-smelling savour." (Eph. v. 2.)
For as he was "full of grace and truth: so of his fulness have
we all received, grace for grace;" (John i. 14, 16.) and as we
"have received anointing of him," (1 John ii. 27.) so we "are
unto God a sweet savour of Christ." (2 Cor. ii. 15.)

Again, it was sufficient to anoint the vessels of the san-
tuary in any part: but it was particularly commanded that the
oil should be poured upon the head of the kings and priests,
as the seat of all the animal faculties, the fountain of all
dignity, and original of all the members of the body. This
was more eminently fulfilled in Jesus, who, by his unction, or
as Christ, became "the head of the Church:" (Col. i. 18.) nay,
the "head of all principality and power, from which all the
body by joints and bands having nourishment ministered, and
knit together, increaseth with the increase of God." (Col.
ii. 10, 19.)

Lastly, They observe, that though in the vessels nothing
but a single unction was required; yet in the kings and
priests there was commanded, or at least practised, both
unction and effusion; as it is written "He poured of the
anointing oil upon Aaron's head, and anointed him to sanctify
him;" (Lev. viii. 12.) the first to signify their separation, the
second to assure them of the falling of the Spirit upon them.
Now what more clear, than that our Christ was anointed by
effusion, whether we look upon his conception, "the Holy
Ghost shall come upon thee;" (Luke i. 35.) or his inaugura-
tion, "the Spirit descended and lighted upon him?" (Matt.
iii. 16.) And thus, according unto all particulars required by
the Jews themselves to complete their legal unctions, we have
sufficiently shewed that Jesus was, as most eminently, so most
properly, anointed with the Spirit of God.

* According to the Etymology in the Hebrew language, of which Abarbanel here
takes notice;
Wherefore being we have shewn that a *Messias* was to come into the world; being we have proved that he is already come, by the same predictions by which we believe he was to come; being we have demonstrated that *Jesus* born in the days of Herod, was and is that promised *Messias*; being we have farther declared, that he was *anointed* to those offices, which belonged to the *Messias*, and actually did and doth still perform them all; and that his anointing was by the immediate effusion of the Spirit, which answereth fully to all things required in the legal and typical unction: I cannot see what farther can be expected for explication or confirmation of this truth, that *Jesus is the Christ*.

The necessity of believing this part of the Article is most apparent, because it were impossible he should be our *Jesus*, except he were the *Christ*. For he could not reveal the way of salvation, except he were a prophet; he could not work out that salvation revealed, except he were a priest; he could not confer that salvation upon us, except he were a king; he could not be Prophet, Priest, and King, except he were the *Christ*. This was the fundamental doctrine which the apostles not only testified, as they did that of the resurrection, but argued, proved, and demonstrated out of the Law and the Prophets. We find St. Paul, at Thessalonica, “three sabbath-days, reasoning with them out of the Scriptures, opening and alleging that Christ must needs have suffered and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus whom I preach unto you, is Christ.” (Acts xvii. 2, 3.) We find him again at Corinth “pressed in spirit, and testifying to the Jews, that *Jesus was Christ*.” (Acts xviii. 5.) Thus Apollos, by birth a Jew, but instructed in the Christian faith by Aquila and Priscilla, “mighty convinced the Jews, and that publicly, shewing by the Scriptures, that Jesus was Christ.” (Acts xviii. 28.) This was the touchstone by which all men at first were tried, whether they were Christian or anti-Christian; “For whosoever believeth (saith St. John) that Jesus is the Christ, is born of God.” (1 John v. 1.) What greater commendation of the assertion of this truth? “Who is a liar (saith the same apostle), but he that denieth that Jesus is the Christ? This man is the antichrist, as denying the Father and the Son.” (1 John ii. 22.) What higher condemnation of the negation of it?

Secondly, As it is necessarily to be believed as a most fundamental truth, so it hath as necessary an influence upon our conversations; because except it hath so, it cannot clearly be maintained. Nothing can be more absurd in a disputant, than to pretend to demonstrate a truth as infallible, and at the same time to show it impossible. And yet so doth every one who professeth faith in *Christ* already come, and liveth not according to that profession: for thereby he proveth, as
far as he is able, that the true Christ is not yet come, at least that Jesus is not he. We sufficiently demonstrate to the Jews that our Saviour, who did and suffered so much, is the true Messias; but by our lives we recall our arguments, and strengthen their wilful opposition. For there was certainly a promise, that when Christ should come, "the wolf should dwell with the lamb, and the leopard should lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together, and a little child should lead them;" (Isa. xi. 6.) that is, there should be so much love, unanimity, and brotherly kindness in the kingdom of Christ, that all ferity and inhumanity being laid aside, the most different natures and inclinations should come to the sweetest harmony and agreement. Whereas if we look upon ourselves, we must confess there was never more bitterness of spirit, more rancour of malice, more heat of contention, more manifest symptoms of envy, hatred, and all uncharitableness, than in those which make profession of the Christian faith. It was infallibly foretold, that "when the Law should go forth out of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem, they should beat their swords into plough-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks: nation should not lift up sword against nation, neither should they learn war any more:" (Isa. ii. 3, 4.) whereas there is no other art so much studied, so much applauded, so violently asserted, not only as lawful, but as necessary. Look upon the face of Christendom, divided into several kingdoms and principalities: what are all these but so many public enemies, either exercising or designing war? The Church was not more famous, or did more increase by the first blood, which was shed in the primitive times through the external violence of ten persecutions, than now it is infamous, and declines through constant violence, fraud, and rapine, through public engagements of the greatest empires in arms, through civil and intestine wars, and, lest any way of shedding Christian blood should be unassayed, even by massacres. It was likewise prophesied of the days of the Messias, that all idolatry should totally cease, that all false teachers should be cut off, and unclean spirits restrained. (Zech. xiii. 2.) And can we think that the Jews, who really abhor the thoughts of worshipping an image, can ever be persuaded there is no idolatry committed in the Christian church? Or can we excuse ourselves in the least degree from the plague of the locusts of Egypt, the false teachers? Can so many schisms and sects arise and spread, can so many heresies be acknowledged and countenanced, without false prophets and unclean spirits? If then we would return to the bond of true Christian love and charity, if we would appear true lovers of peace and tranquillity, if we would truly hate the abominations of idolatry, false doctrine, and heresy, let us often remember what we ever pro-
fess in our Creed, that Jesus is the Christ, that the kingdom of the Messiah cannot consist with these impieties.

Thirdly: The necessity of this belief appeareth, in respect of those offices which belong to Jesus, as he is the Christ. We must look upon him as upon the prophet anointed by God to preach the Gospel, that we may be incited to hear and embrace his doctrine. Though Moses and Elias be together with him in the mount, yet the voice from heaven speaketh of none but Jesus, "Hear ye him." (Matt. xvii. 5.) He is that Wisdom, "the delight of God," crying in the Proverbs, "Blessed is the man that heareth me, watching daily at my gates, waiting at the posts of my doors." (Prov. viii. 30, 34.) "There is one thing needful, (saith our Saviour,) and Mary chose that good part, who sat at Jesus' feet, and heard his word." (Luke x. 42. 39.) Which devout posture teacheth us, as a willingness to hear, so a readiness to obey; and the proper effect, which the belief of this prophetical office worketh in us, is our obedience of faith. We must farther consider him as our high-priest, that we may thereby add confidence to that obedience. For we have "boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus; yea, having a high-priest over the house of God, we may draw near with a true heart, in full assurance of faith." (Heb. x. 19. 21, 22.) And as this beareth an adherence and assurance in us, so it requireth a resignation of us. For if Christ have redeemed us, we are his; if he died for us, it was that we should live to him: if we be "bought with a price," we are no longer our own; but we must "glorify God in our body, and in our spirits, which are God's." (1 Cor. vi. 20.) Again, an apprehension of him as a King, is necessary for the performance of our true and entire allegiance to him. "Send the Lamb to the Ruler of the earth," (Isa. xvi. 1.) do him homage, acknowledge him your King, shew yourselves faithful and obedient subjects. We can pretend, and he hath required, no less. As soon as he let the apostles understand, that, "all power was given unto him in heaven and earth," he charged them to "teach all nations, to observe all things whatsoever he commanded them." (Matt. xxviii. 18, 20.) Can we imagine he should so strictly enjoin subjection to "higher powers," (Rom. xiii. 1.) the highest of whom are here below, and that he doth not expect exact obedience to him who is exalted "far above all principalities and powers, and is set down at the right hand of God?" (Eph. i. 21, 20.) It is observable, that in the description of the coming of the Son of man, it is said, "the King shall say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you:" (Matt. xxv. 34.) which title as it secures hope, in respect of his power; as it magnifies our reward, by the excellency of our inheritance; so also it teacheth us the indispensable condition of obedience.
Fourthly, The belief of Jesus the Christ, is necessary to instruct us what it is to be a Christian, and how far we stand obliged by owning that name. Those who did first embrace the faith, were styled ‘disciples,’ * (as when the “number of the disciples were multiplied,” Acts vi. 1. 7.) or ‘believers,’ (Acts v. 14. 1 Tim. iv. 12.) or ‘brethren,’ (Acts and Epistles, often) or ‘men of the church,’ † or ‘callers upon the name of Christ,’ (Acts ix. 21.) or ‘men of the way,’ ‡ or by their enemies ‘Nazarenes,’ (Acts xxiv. 5.) and ‘Galicans.’ (Acts ii. 7.) But in a short time they gained a name derived from their Savious, though not from that name of his which signifieth salvation; for, from Christ, they were called ‘Christians.’ A title so honourable, and of such concernment, that St. Luke hath thought fit to mention the city in which that name was first heard. ‘And the disciples were called Christians first at Antioch,’ (Acts xi. 26.)§ as the Scriptures assure us; so

* For when our Saviour gave that command to his apostles, ‘parcevate ovn maθhtuoughte xatv tiv εξων, Go make all nations disciples, they which delivered the Gospel, were maθhtuoughtes, which they were taught it and received it, were at that time maθhtuoughtes, and after by a name habitual, maθhtuought, translated by Tertullian discoues, ordinary discipulis. maθhtuought ovn ευτων, as maθhtuought pαi pατω των Κυιουν, των των Κυιουν παρεθηκατε, ουτω εκουν αιτων, τωσοτων, ακον των λημν αυτων, πιστευον τω και πιστευον αυτων ως δικαιοι, και δικαιοι, και δικαιολογοι ελεημονια, ειτω ευτων οικος οικον. S. Basil, de Baptism. l. i. § 2. Thus then, in the language of the Scriptures, maθhtuoughtov, is to make a disciple; and, maθhtuoughtov παρακολουθοντες καις, Acts xiv. 21. maθhtuoughtov των, (to be a disciple; as, Joseph of Arimathoe, ἤπειρον των, Matt xxviii. 57. maθhtuoughtov την: the same; as, φραγματευς, maθhtuoughtov την, παρακολουθοντες των, of disciples, when disciples, the same, as, ἄνω υπομνηματικος, of the Synagogue of the Hebrews, Matt. xiii. 39. Thus maθhtuoughtov την, is often used by S. Basil de Hap- padda, whose title is: ‘ὅτι δε πρώτων maθhtuoughtov των, και των κατακεκτησεν των ἁγων maθhtuoughtov, according to our Saviour’s method. Hence those which were first converted to the faith, were called maθhtuoughtai, as the disciples of Christ their doctor and master.

† Of the της κατακλυσμας, as when Herod stretched forth his hand, κατακλυσακας εις την της κατακλυσμας to mischief some of them which were of the Church.

‡ As when Saul went down to Da- mausus with a commission: ἔγεις ἐν παι την των Ἰουδαίων ἐντος αὐγες ται και για καρ, διἀμαντης ἢ για της Επισκοπης. Acts ii. 19. we translate it, any of this way, when there was no way mentioned to which the pronoun this should have relation; nor is it διδω in the Greek any more than the way. So when St. Paul went to the Synagogue at Corinth, divers were hardened and believed not, κακονευτην την οἶνον ἐναντίων τον κυρίων, Acts xix. 9. here we translate it, spoke evil of that way; but Beza has left his Antenuus pronomen was fugitor, which he had from Erasmus, and hath otherwise supplied it, male logomteres de vio Deo; and the old translation, which in the former had κυριος την, in this hath simply inacutaciones viro; and certainly it διδω is nothing but the way. Again, at Ephesus, ἀψυτον δι κατα την κωμον ἑνωμεν της γης περι της οἰκου, Acts xix. 23. δε των, V. Transl. Beza again omittet Deo, but it is nothing but the way. Thus Felix put off St. Paul, ἀψυτοντες δι της περι της οἰκου, till he had a more exact knowledge of the way. V. Translat de vi a ha; Beza, ad sectam istam. Whereas then the phrase is so simply and so frequently the same, it can be nothing else but the word then in use in signity the religion which the Christians professed. And so some also of the ancients seem to have spoken, as appears by the language of the Medehizianens: Χαστε οἰκει, τις ἱερα παρει εν πελατε κωμο την των της γης, ὑπενθυμον ἀποκλις ἐν της στρατιωτικης, και οὑτιντην εμαθείς της, and in that description of the Galician preservation; Ερμον ης δι της σκευης ἡ παρει πατετε πεπεσον. κατα αυτων ἄλωμεν της σκευης, και ἐνδυον προσωπον τως πρασον σκευης. ἀλλα και δια της σκευης αυτων επεξεργασατο της οἰκου. Euseb. Hist. l. v. c. 1. p. 204.

§ St. Luke noteth the place, but neither the time when, nor person by whom this name was given. Tertullian seems to make it as ancient as the reign of Tiberius: ‘Tiberius ego, cujus tempore no
named by Euodius the bishop of that place, as ecclesiastical history informs us. A name so no sooner invented, but embraced by all believers, as bearing the most proper signification of their profession, and relation to the Author and Master whom they served. In which the primitive Christians so much delighted, that before the face of their enemies they would acknowledge no other title but that, though hated, reviled, tormented, martyred for it. Nor is this name of greater honour to us, than obligation. There are two parts of the seal of the foundation of God, and one of them is this, "Let every one that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity." (2 Tim. ii. 19.) It was a common answer of the ancient martyrs, 'I am a Christian, and with us no evil is done.' The very name was thought to speak something of emendation; and whosoever put it on, became the better man. Except such reformation accompany our profession, there is no advantage in the appellation nor can we be ho-

men Christianum in seculum introivit.' Apol. c. 5. But I concerte indeed, he speaks not of the name, but of the religion; for so he may well be thought to expound himself, saying soon after: 'Census istius disciplinarum, ut jam edulimus, a Tiberio est.' c. 7. However, the name of Christism is so not ancient as Tiberius, nor, as I think, as Caues. Some ancient author in Suidas assures us, that it was first named in the reign of Claudius, when St. Peter had ordained Euodius bishop of Antioch. 'Istæm di esti istor Khlaui Kaoi. Petrus vol. æstetulæ χριστιανιν τον Ελληνικον εκκλησιαν. derived et incipit Euodius και Γαλατιαν, χριστιανιν. Suid. in Naufragia and in Christiæ. And Johannes Antiochenus confirms not only the time, but tells us that Euodius the bishop was the author of the name: Kai esti. aitò (Khlaui) χριστιανιν άκολου- σκον ἄν τοποταυτον Ελληνικον περιο- μελέτοντα πεπίδηκτας, παλαιοτρο- δικα τον πλοῦσα χριστιανιν και Γαλατιαν εκκλησιαν. Thus the name Christian was first brought into use at Antioch, by Euodius the bishop of the place, and hath ever since been continued as the most proper appellation which could be given unto our profession, being derived from "the Author and finisher of our faith." At some secta ordinor in nomine utique suo anctoris. Quod nori, si aliquam disciplina de magistro cognomomentum sectatoribus suis inductus! Nonne philosophi de anctoris suis nuncupatur Platoonic, Epicurei, Pythagorici? Etiam a locis conventiculorum et stationum sua- rum Stoici, Academicin? Nonne Medici ab Erasistrato, et Grammatici ab Ari- starcho, coquie etiam ab Apici? Neque tamen quenquam offendit professorio nominis cum institutione transmissa ab in- stitutoro.' Tertull. Apol. c. 3. * As we read of Sancus, a deacon at Vienna, in a hot persecution of the French Church, who being in the midst of torments, was troubled with several qustions, which the Gentiles usually then asked, to try if they could extort any confession of any wicked actions practised secretly by the Christians; yet would not give any other answer to any question, than that he was a Christian. *ταῦτα παρατίθεντες αντιπρομεθέατο αυτούς, ἂν τις μετά τού τών κατημένων θείων, μετά ὑποηυς, μετά πτωχέων τών τινών, μετά τούτων δηλούσις εἰς ἄλλα προς πάντα τα ἑπεξεργασμένα ἀπε- κριτα τῷ Παύλῳ φυσικ. χριστιανιν εἰς τοῦτο καὶ ἀντι δύνατος, καὶ ἀντι πτωχούς, καὶ ἀντι ἀσόβιους ἑποληκτικού καθα- ληρίαν. Euseb. Hist. Eccl. l. 3. The same doth St. Chrysostom testify of St. Lucian: Ποίησας πράγματα, Χριστιανοί, φασι. Τί έίχες ἐπιταλαμώς; Χριστιανοί μη. Tίνας περγάμου; ή δε πρέπει διαφατικά, ἑτε χριστιανοί εἰς. Ord. 75. † So Blandinus in the French persecution: 'Μη αὑτες ἀνδρικες καὶ ἀνάρωνς καὶ ἀνάρων τῶν συμβαλλόντων, τὸ λέγειν χτις χριστιανιν εἰμι, καὶ ποιεί οὕτω φαύλον γνώναι. Euseb. Hist. Eccl. l. 1. c. 1. ‡ Alii quos ante hoc nomen vagos, vilebs, improbos soverant, ex ipso denotant quod laudant, cecitato odii in suffragium impingunt. Quæ mulieres! quam lascivia! quam festiva! qui juvenes! quam lascivius! quam ambiguis! faci sunt Christiani: ita nomen emendationis imputatur.' Ter- tull. Apol. c. 3. § Totum in id revoluit, ut qui Christiani nominalis opus nce agit, Chris-
our Christians, our necessary belief. 

For he be therefore called Christ, because anointed; as we derive the name of Christian, so we do receive our unction, from him. For as "the precious unction upon the head ran down upon the beard, even Aaron's beard, and went down to the skirts of his garments" (Psal. cxxxiii. 2.) so the Spirit, which without measure was poured upon Christ our head, is by him diffused through all the members of his body. For "God hath established and anointed us in Christ:" (2 Cor. 1. 21.) "We have an unction from the Holy One, and the anointing which we have received from him, abideth in us." (1 John ii. 20. 27.) Necessary then it cannot choose but be, that we should know Jesus to be the Christ: because he is Jesus, that is, our Saviour, by being Christ, that is, anointed; so we can have no share in him as Jesus, except we become truly 'Christians,' and so be in him as Christ, anointed with that unction from the Holy One.

Thus having run through all the particulars at first designed for the explication of the title Christ, we may at last clearly express, and every Christian easily understand, what it is we say, when we make our confession in these words, I believe in Jesus Christ. I do assent unto this as a certain truth, that there was a man promised by God, foretold by the prophets, to be the Messias, the Redeemer of Israel, and the expectation of the nations. I am fully assured by all those predictions, that the Messias so promised, is already come. I am as certainly persuaded, that the man born in the days of Herod of the Virgin Mary, by an angel from heaven called Jesus, is that true Messias, so long, so often promised: that, as the Messias, he was anointed to three special offices, belonging to him as the mediator between God and man; that he was a Prophet, revealing unto us the whole will of God, for the salvation of man; that he was a Priest, and hath given himself a sacrifice for sin, and so hath made an atonement for us; that he is a King, set down at the right hand of God, far above all principalities and powers, whereby, when he hath subdued all our enemies, he will confer actual, perfect, and eternal happiness upon us. I believe this unction, by which he became the true Messias, was not performed by any material oil, but by the Spirit of God, which he received as the Head, and conveyeth to his members. And in this full acknowledgment, I believe in Jesus Christ.
ARTICLE II.

His only Son.

After our Saviour's nomination immediately followeth his filiation: and justly after we have acknowledged him to be the Christ, do we confess him to be the Son of God; because these two were ever inseparable, and even by the Jews themselves accounted equivalent. Thus Nathanael, that true Israelite, maketh his confession of the Messias: "Rabbi, thou art the Son of God, thou art the King of Israel." (John i. 49.) Thus Martha makes expression of her faith: "I believe that thou art the Christ the Son of God, which should come into the world." (John xi. 27.) Thus the high-priest maketh his inquisition: "I adjure thee by the living God, that thou tell us whether thou be the Christ, the Son of God." (Matt. xxvi. 63.) This was the famous confession of St. Peter: "We believe and are sure, that thou art that Christ the Son of the living God." (John vi. 69.) And the Gospel of St. John was therefore written, that "we might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God." (John xx. 31.) Certain then it is, that all the Jews, as they looked for a Messias to come, so they believed that Messias to be the Son of God (although since the coming of our Saviour they have denied it):* and that by reason of a constant interpretation of the second psalm, as appropriated unto him. And the primitive Christians did at the very beginning include this filial title of our Saviour together with his names into the compass of one word.+ Well therefore, after we have expressed our faith in Jesus Christ, is added that, which always had so great affinity with it, the only Son of God.

In these words there is little variety to be observed, except that what we translate the only Son,‡ that in the phrase of the

---

* For when Celsus, in the person of a Jew, had spoken these words: καὶ έπίθη εξόμολον της μακρας ἐπονομασίας μου, διότι θεομετέορος εστιν, τινί εναπόθετον επονομασίαν ἐστιν, τινί ξυρατεί θεον καὶ τινί δέδοκα κολαστέα; Origen says they were most improperly attributed to a Jew, who did look indeed for a Messias, but not for the Son of God, i.e. not under the notion of a Son. "In homine et nomino et nomen nonemphatis in prophetae eis nomen θεομετέορος;" ‡ That is, Ipsum sine usu Christus, Christus uniceps Dei, qui est et Dominus nostor unicus, et ad Fidem referunt et Dominum potest." So St. Augustine in Enchirid., c. 34, and Leo i. Epist. 10. Which is therefore to be observed, because in the ancient copies of those epistles, the word unicus was not to be found, as appeareth by the discourse of Vigilanus, who, in the fourth book against Justinus, hath these words: "Hic primatus uno dulibus volumine quae Leonis objeccione I pistoles, cuphus hic primo capitulum iste, nec si quis, proposuit; Fideum universitas proficetur credere se in Deum Patrem omnipo- tentem, et in Jesus Christum, Fidum ejus, Dominum nostrum." i. iv. § 1. That which he aims at, is the tenth epistle of Leo, in which those words are found, bu.

† The Latins indeed generally use the word nunicum. So Rufinus: "Et in unico filio ejus:" § 8, 9. Which is so far from being in his apprehension the same with unicus, that he refers it as well to Lord as Son: "Hic est, Jesus Christus, Fidus unicus Dei, qui est et Dominus nostro unicus, et ad Fidem referunt et Dominum potest." So St. Augustine in Enchirid., c. 34, and Leo i. Epist. 10. Which is therefore to be observed, because in the ancient copies of those epistles, the word nunicum was not to be found, as appeareth by the discourse of Vigilanus, who, in the fourth book against Justinus, hath these words: "Hic primatus uno dulibus volumine quae Leonis objeccione I pistoles, cuphus hic primo capitulum iste, nec si quis, proposuit; Fideum universitas proficetur credere se in Deum Patrem omnipotem, et in Jesus Christum, Fidum ejus, Dominum nostrum." i. iv. § 1. That which he aims at, is the tenth epistle of Leo, in which those words are found, bu.
Scripture, and the Greek Church is, the only-begotten. It is
then sufficient for the explication of these words, to shew how
Christ is the Son of God, and what is the peculiarity of his
generation; that when others are also the sons of God, he
alone should so be his Son, as no other is or can be so; and
therefore he alone should have the name of the only-begotten.

First, then, It cannot be denied that Christ is the Son of
God, for that reason, because he was by the Spirit of God born
of the Virgin Mary; for that which is conceived (or begotten)*
in her, by the testimony of an angel, is of the Holy Ghost; and
because of him, therefore the Son of God. For so spake the
angel to the Virgin; "The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee,
and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore
also that holy thing which shall be born of thee (or which is
begotten of thee) shall be called the Son of God." (Luke i. 35.)
And the reason is clear, because that the Holy Ghost is God.
For were he any creature, and not God himself, by whom our
Saviour was thus born of the Virgin, he must have been the
Son of a creature, not of God.

with the addition of unicum, which, as it
seems, then was not there: as appears yet
farther by the words which follow, § 2.
1 Mirror taken quonodo bunc locum iste
notavit, et illum prætermisit, ubi unici
filii commemorationem idem beatus Leo
facit, dicens, Idem vero sempiterne geni-
toris unigenitus sempiternus, natus de
Spiritum sancto Maria Virgine: which
words are not to be found in the same epistle.
Nowsoever it was in the first copies of Leo:
both Rufinus and St. Augustine, who were
before him, and Maximus Taurinensis,
Chrysologus, Etherius and Beatus, who
were later, read it, and in Jesum Christum
filium ejus unicum. But the word used in
the Scripture, and kept constantly by the
Greeks, is ἀποκλίνω, the only-begotten.
* For the original it is τι is αὐτῷ γεννάθη
and it is the observation of St. Basil, "ιερητά, το κυρίον, ἄλλα, τι γεννάθη. Homil.
in Sacel. Christ. Gen. § 4. Indeed the vulgar
translation renders it, quod in ea naturat, and in St. Luke, quod nascetur sanctum; but
must be confessed this was the most ancient translation. For so
Tertullian read it: "Per virginem dicitis natum, non ex virgine, et in vulva, non ex
vulva, quia et Angelus in somnis ad
Joseph, Näm quod in ea naturat, inquit,
de Sp. S. est." De carne Christi, c 19. and
of that in St. Luke: "Hæc et ab Angelo
exceperat secundum nostrum Evangelium,
Propheca, quod in te nascetur, vocabitur
sanctum, filius Dei." Adv. Marcian. i. iv. c.
7. Yet quod in ea natura est cannot be pro-
per, while it is yet in the womb; nor can
the child first be said to be born, and then
that the mother shall bring it forth. It
is true indeed, γεννᾶται signifies not always
to beget, but sometimes to bear or bring
forth; as ἡ γυναῖκα ἐκδέχεται γεννᾶται ὑπὸ
τοῦ Σατάροι. Luke ii. 13. and verse 57. καὶ ἐγεννᾶτο ὑπὸ τοῦ δι' ἑαυτοῦ γεννᾶτος ἐν Βηθλεὲμ,
Matt. ii. 1. must necessarily be understood of Christ's nativity, for it is most certain
that he was not begotten or conceived at
Bethlehem. And this without question
must be the meaning of Herod's inquisition,
πό εἰς Ἰησοῦς γεννᾶται, where the
Messias was to be born. But though γεννᾶται
have sometimes the signification of bearing
or bringing forth; yet τι in αὐτῷ γεννάθη
cannot be so interpreted, because it speaks
of something as past, when as yet Christ
was not born; and though the conception
was already past, and we translate it so,
"which is conceived," yet St. Basil re-
jects that interpretation: γεννᾶται is one
thing, συλλέγεται another. Seeing then
the nativity was not yet come, and γεννᾶται
speaks of something already past, there-
fore the old translation is not good, quod
in ea naturat est. Seeing, though the con-
ception indeed was past, yet γεννᾶται sig-
nifieth not to conceive, and so is not pro-
perly to be interpreted, that which is con-
ceived. Seeing γεννᾶται is most properly to
beget, as is γεννᾶται the generative faculty:
therefore I conceive the fittest interpretation
of those words, τι in αὐτῷ γεννᾶται,
that which is begotten in her. And because
the angel in St. Luke speaks of the same
thing, therefore I interpret τι γεννᾶται κα
σύ, in the same manner, that which is
begotten of thee.
ARTICLE II.

Secondly, It is as undoubtedly true, that the same Christ, thus born of the Virgin by the Spirit of God, was designed to so high an office by the special and immediate will of God, that by virtue thereof he must be acknowledged the Son of God. He urgeth this argument himself against the Jews; "Is it not written in your law, I said, Ye are gods?" (John x. 34.) Are not these the very words of the eighty-second Psalm? (ver. 6.) "If he called them gods," if God himself so spake, or the Psalmist from him, if this be the language of the Scripture, if they be called gods "unto whom the word of God came (and the Scripture cannot be broken," nor the authority thereof in any particular denied), "Say ye of him whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world," whom he hath consecrated and commissioned to the most eminent and extraordinary office, "say ye of him, Thou blasphemest, because I said I am the Son of God?" (John x. 35, 36.)

Thirdly, Christ must therefore be acknowledged the Son of God, because he is raised immediately by God out of the earth unto immortal life. For "God hath fulfilled the promise unto us, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee." (Acts xiii. 33.) The grave is as the womb of the earth; Christ, who is raised from thence, is as it were begotten to another life: and God who raised him, is his Father. So true it must needs be of him, which is spoken of others, who are "the children of God, being the children of the resurrection." (Luke xx. 36.) Thus was he "defined, or constituted, and appointed the Son of God with power by the resurrection from the dead:" (Rom. i. 4.) neither is he called simply the first that rose, but with a note of generation, "the first-born from the dead." (Col. i. 18.)

Fourthly, Christ, after his resurrection from the dead, is made actually heir of all things in his Father's house, and Lord of all the spirits which minister unto him, from whence he also hath the title of the Son of God. "He is set down on the right hand of the Majesty on high; being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they. For unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee?" (Heb. i. 3—5.) From all which testimonies of the Scriptures it is evident, that Christ hath this fourfold right unto the title of the Son of God: by generation, as begotten of God; by commission, as sent by him; by resurrection, as the first-born; by actual possession, as heir of all.

But beside these four, we must find yet a more peculiar ground of our Saviour's filiation, totally distinct from any which belongs unto the rest of the sons of God, that he may be clearly and fully acknowledged the only-begotten Son. For although to be born of a virgin be in itself miraculous, and
justly entitles Christ unto the [title of the] Son of God; yet it is not so far above the production of all mankind, as to place him in that singular eminence, which must be attributed to the only-begotten. We read of "Adam the son of God," as well as "Seth the son of Adam:" (Luke iii. 38.) and surely the framing Christ out of a woman cannot so far transcend the making Adam out of the earth, as to cause so great a distance as we must believe between the first and second Adam. Beside, there were many, while our Saviour preached on earth, who did believe his doctrine, and did confess him to be the Son of God, who in all probability understood nothing of his being born of a virgin; much less did they foresee his rising from the dead, or inheriting all things. Wherefore, supposing all these ways by which Christ is represented to us as the Son of God, we shall find out one more yet, far more proper in itself, and more peculiar unto him, in which no other son can have the least pretence of share or of similitude, and consequently in respect of which we must confess him the only-begotten.

To which purpose I observe, that the actual possession of his inheritance, which was our fourth title to his Sonship, presupposes his resurrection, which was the third: and his commission to his office, which was the second, presupposeth his generation of a virgin, as the first. But I shall now endeavour to find another generation, by which the same Christ was begotten, and consequently a Son before he was conceived in the virgin's womb. Which that I may be able to evince, I shall proceed in this following method, as not only most facile and perspicuous, but also most convincing and conclusive. First, I will clearly prove out of the Holy Scriptures, that Jesus Christ, born of the Virgin Mary, had an actual being or subsistence, before the Holy Ghost did come upon the Virgin, or the power of the Highest did overshadow her. Secondly, I will demonstrate from the same Scriptures, that the being which he had antecedently to his conception in the Virgin's womb, was not any created being, but essentially divine. Thirdly, We will shew that the divine essence which he had, he received as communicated to him by the Father. Fourthly, We will declare this communication of the divine nature, to be a proper generation, by which he which communicateth, is a proper Father, and he to whom it is communicated, a proper Son. Lastly, We will manifest that the divine essence was never communicated in that manner to any person but to him, that never any was so begotten besides himself; and consequently, in respect of that divine generation, he is most properly and perfectly the only-begotten Son of the Father.

As for the first, that Jesus Christ had a real being or existence, by which he truly was, before he was conceived of the Virgin Mary, I thus demonstrate. He which was really in heaven, and truly descended from thence, and came into the
world from the Father, before that which was begotten of the Virgin ascended into heaven, or went unto the Father, he had a real being or existence before he was conceived in the Virgin, and distinct from that being which was conceived in her. This is most clear and evident, upon these three suppositions not to be denied. First, That Christ did receive no other being or nature after this conception before his ascension, than what was begotten of the Virgin. Secondly, That what was begotten of the Virgin had its first being here on earth, and therefore could not really be in heaven till it ascended thither. Thirdly, That what was really in heaven, really was; because nothing can be present in any place, which is not. Upon these suppositions certainly true, the first proposition cannot be denied. Wherefore I assume; Jesus Christ was really in heaven, and truly descended from thence, and came into the world from the Father, before that which was begotten of the Virgin ascended into heaven, or went unto the Father; as I shall particularly prove by the express words of the Scripture. Therefore I conclude, that Jesus Christ had a real being or existence before he was conceived in the Virgin, and distinct from that being which was conceived in her. Now that he was really in heaven before he ascended thither, appeareth by his own words to his disciples; “What and if you shall see the Son of man ascend up where he was before?” (John vi 62).* For he speaketh of a real ascension, such as was to be seen or looked upon, such as they might view as spectators. The place to which that ascension tended, was truly and really the heaven of heavens. The verb substantive, not otherwise used, sufficiently testifieth not a figurative but a real being, especially considering the opposition in the word before. Whether we look upon the time of speaking then present, or the time of his ascension, then to come, his being or existing in heaven was before. Nor is this now at last denied, that he was in heaven before the ascension mentioned in these words, but that he was there before he ascended at all. We shall therefore farther shew that this ascension was the first; that what was born of the Virgin was never in heaven before this time of which he speaks: and being in heaven before this ascension, he must be acknowledged to have been there before he ascended at all. If Christ had ascended into heaven before his death, and descended from thence, it had been the most remarkable action in all his life, and the proof thereof of the greatest efficacy towards the disseminating of the Gospel. And can we imagine so divine an action, of so high concernment, could have passed, and none of the evangelists ever make mention of it? Those who are so diligent in the description of his nativity and circumcision, his oblation in the Temple, his reception by Simeon, his adoration by the wise men; those who have de-

* ἑλάστε as it came to pass, ἔλαστεν αὐτῷ ἐπέφθα, Acts i. 9, orον ἢ.
scribed his descent into Egypt; would they have omitted his ascent into heaven? Do they tell us of the wisdom which he shewed, when he disputed with the doctors? And were it not worthy our knowledge, whether it were before he was in heaven or after? The diligent seeking of Joseph and Mary, and their words when they found him, "Son, why hast thou dealt so with us?" (Luke ii. 48.) shew that he had not been missing from them till then, and consequently not ascended into heaven. After that he went down to Nazareth, and "was subject unto them:" (Luke ii. 51.) and I understand not how he should ascend into heaven, and at the same time be subject to them; or there receive his commission and instructions as the great legate of God, or ambassador from heaven, and return again unto his old subjection; and afterwards to go to John to be baptized of him, and to expect the descent of the Spirit for his inauguration. Immediately from Jordan he is carried into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil, and it were strange if any time could then be found for his ascension: for "he was forty days in the wilderness," (Mark i. 13.) and certainly heaven is no such kind of place; he was all that time "with the beasts," who undoubtedly are none of the celestial hierarchy; and "tempted of Satan," (Ibid.) whose dominion reacheth no higher than the air. Wherefore in those forty days Christ ascended not into heaven, but rather heaven descended unto him; "for the angels ministered unto him." (Ibid.) After this he "returned in the power of the Spirit into Galilee," (Luke iv. 14.) and there exercised his prophetic office: after which there is not the least pretence of any reason for his ascension. Beside, the whole frame of this antecedent or preparatory ascension of Christ is not only raised, without any written testimony of the word or unwritten testimony of tradition, but is without any reason in itself, and contrary to the revealed way of our redemption. For what reason should Christ ascend into heaven to know the will of God, and not be known to ascend thither? Certainly the Father could reveal his will unto the Son as well on earth as in heaven. And if men must be ignorant of his ascension, to what purpose should they say he ascended, except they imagine either an impotency in the Father, or dissatisfaction in the Son? Nor is this only asserted without reason, but also against that rule to be observed by Christ, as he was anointed to the sacerdotal office. For the Holy of Holies "made with hands was the figure of the true (that is, heaven itself)," (Heb. ix. 24.) into which "the high-priest alone went once every year:" (Ibid. 7.) and Christ as our high-priest "entered in once into the Holy place." (Ibid. 12.) If then they deny Christ was a priest before he preached the Gospel, (Mark ii. 2.) then did he not enter into heaven, because the high-priest alone went into the type thereof, the Holy of Holies. If they confess he was, then
did he not ascend till after his death, because He was to enter in but once, and that not without blood. Wherefore being Christ ascended not into heaven till after his death, being he certainly was in heaven before that ascension, we have sufficiently made good that part of our argument, that Jesus Christ was in heaven before that which was begotten of the Virgin ascended thither. Now that which followeth, will both illustrate and confirm it; for as he was there, so he descended from thence before he ascended thither. This he often testifieth and inculcath of himself: "the bread of God is he, which cometh down from heaven; and, I am the living bread which came down from heaven." (John vi. 33. 51.) He opposeth himself unto the manna in the wilderness, which never was really in heaven, or had its original from thence. " Moses gave you not that bread from heaven," (John vi. 32.) but the Father gave Christ really from thence. Wherefore he saith, "I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me." (John vi. 38.) Now never any person upon any occasion is said to descend from heaven, but such as were really there before they appeared on earth, as the Father, the Holy Ghost, and the angels: but no man, however born, however sanctified, sent, or dignified, is said thereby to descend from thence; but rather when any is opposed to Christ, the opposition is placed in this very origination. John the Baptist was "filled with the Holy Ghost even from his mother's womb;" (Luke i. 15.) born of an aged father and a barren mother, by the power of God: and yet he distinguisheth himself from Christ in this; "he that cometh from above is above all: he that is of the earth is earthy, and speaketh of the earth; he that cometh from heaven is above all." (John iii. 31.) Adam was framed immediately by God, without the intervention of man or woman: and yet he is so far from being thereby from heaven, that even in that he is distinguished from the second Adam. For "the first man is of the earth, earthy; the second man is the Lord from heaven." (1 Cor. xv. 47.) Wherefore the descent of Christ from heaven doth really presuppose his being there, and that antecedently to any ascent thither. For "that he ascended, what is it, but that he also descended first?" (Eph. iv. 9.) So St. Paul, asserting a descent as necessarily preceding his ascension, teacheth us never to imagine an ascent of Christ as his first motion between heaven and earth; and consequently, that the first being or existence which Christ had, was not what he received by his conception here on earth, but what he had before in heaven, in respect whereof he was with the Father, from whom he came. His disciples believed that he "came out from God:" and he commended that faith, and confirmed the object of it by this assertion: "I came forth from the Father, and am come into the world; again, I leave the world, and go to the Father." (John xvi. 27, 28.) Thus,
having by undoubted testimonies, made good the latter part of the argument. I may safely conclude, that being Christ was really in heaven, and descended from thence, and came forth from the Father, before that which was conceived of the Holy Ghost, ascended thither; it cannot with any show of reason be denied that Christ had a real being and existence antecedent unto his conception here on earth, and distinct from the being which he received here.

Secondly, We shall prove not only a bare priority of existence, but a pre-existence of some certain and acknowledged space of duration. For whosoever was before John the Baptist, and before Abraham, was some space of time before Christ was man. This no man can deny, because all must confess the blessed Virgin was first saluted by the angel six months after Elizabeth conceived, and many hundred years after Abraham died. But Jesus Christ was really existent before John the Baptist, and before Abraham, as we shall make good by the testimony of the Scriptures. Therefore it cannot be denied, but Christ had a real being and existence some space of time before he was made man. For the first, it is the express testimony of John himself; “This is he of whom I spake, He that cometh after me, is preferred before me, for he was before me.” (John i. 15.) In which words, first, he taketh to himself a priority of time, speaking of Christ, “he that cometh after me:” for so he came after him into the womb, at his conception; into the world, at his nativity; unto his office, at his baptism; always after John, and at the same distance. Secondly, He attributeth unto Christ a priority of dignity, saying, “he is preferred before me;” as appeareth by the reiteration of these words, “He it is who coming after me, is preferred before me, whose shoe’s hatchet I am not worthy to unloose.” (John i. 27.) The addition of which expression of his own unworthiness sheweth, that to be “preferred before him” is the same with being “worthier than he,” to which the same expression is constantly added by all the other three evangelists. Thirdly, He rendereth the reason or cause of that great dignity which belonged to Christ, saying, “for (or rather, because) he was before me.” (John i. 15.) And being the cause must be supposed different and distinct from the effect, therefore the priority last mentioned cannot be that of dignity. For to assign any thing as the cause or reason of itself, is a great absurdity, and the expression of it a vain tautology. Wherefore that priority must have relation to time or duration (as the very tense, “he was before me,” sufficiently signifieth), and so be placed in opposition to his coming after him. As if John the Baptist had thus spoken at large: ‘This man Christ Jesus, who came into the world, and entered on his prophetical office six months after me, is notwithstanding of far more worth and greater dignity than I am; even so much greater, that I must acknowledge
myself unworthy to stoop down and unloose the latchet of his shoe: and the reason of this transcendent dignity is, from the excellency of that nature which he had before I was; for though he cometh after me, yet he was before me.'

Now as Christ was before John, which speaks a small, so was he also before Abraham, which speaks a larger, time. Jesus himself hath asserted this pre-existence to the Jews: 'Verily, verily, I say unto you, before Abraham was, I am.' (John viii. 58.) Which words, plainly and literally expounded, must evidently contain this truth. For, first, Abraham in all the Scriptures never hath any other signification than such as denotes the person called by that name; and the question to which these words are directed by way of answer, without controversy, spake of the same person. Beside, Abraham must be the subject of that proposition, 'Abraham was;' because a proposition cannot be without a subject, and if Abraham be the predicate, there is none. Again, as we translate 'Abraham was,' in a tense signifying the time past; so it is most certainly to be understood, because that which he speaks unto, is the pre-existence of Abraham, and that of a long duration; so that whatsoever had concerned his present estate or future condition had been wholly impertinent to the precedent question. Lastly, The expression, 'I am,' seeming something unusual or improper to signify a priority in respect of any thing past, because no present instant is before that which preceded, but that which followeth; yet the* use of it sufficiently maintaineth, and the nature of the place absolutely requireth, that it should not here denote a present being, but a priority of existence,

* So Nonnus here more briefly and plainly than usual: c. viii. v. 107.

'Abacle πίνα γένος ὑποκρ., ἐγώ πέλαξ. So John xiv. 9. τοσοῦτον χρόνον μα' ὑπάρχον ει, και εἰς ἐρχομας με; Hæve I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me? 'And John xvi. 27. οτι α' ἐρχεται εστιν, because you have been (or continued) me from the beginning. Thus Nonnus: v. 110.

ἔξ ἐρχεται γεμάτης ολοι ἐπόμενος ἔργαν. John vi. 1 πρός το εἶδεν τα ὕπολος τα ἲστεος μη εἰσεται. When the people saw that Jesus was not there. Nor only doth St. John use thus the present tense for that which is past, but as frequently for that which is to come. For as before, τοσοῦτον χρόνον μα' ὑπάρχον ει, so on the contrary, εἰς μὴν ἐρχοται μετα' ὑπάρχον εἰμι, John vii. 53. and εἰς το εἰμι ἐγώ, και διά κακον δ εἴρην εσται, John xii. 26. xiv. 3. xvn. 24. Wherefore it is very indifferent whether (John vii. 31.) we read ἐν εἰμι ἐγώ, or εἰμι εἰμι. For Nonnus seems to have read it εἰμι by his translation, v. 130.

εἰς ἐρχετει το περι ἐχνον α' and the Jews' question, v. 33. τοῦ ὑπάρχον μελλων περιελθεναι, shows they understood it so: for this εἰμι, though of a present form, is of a future signification. Ἀρχετος, εἰμι, περιαλθεις. And so it agreeth with that which follows, John viii. 21. εἰς το θεον ἐντάγει, εἰμις ο διάκονον Ελεημον. If we read εἰμι, as the old translation, ubi ego sum, it will have the force of ἔχω, and agree with the other, εις το θεον ειχ, και θεω αναθη. However, it is clear, St. John useth the present εἰμι either in relation to what is past, or what is to come, and is therefore to be interpreted as the matter in hand requireth. And certainly, the place now under our consideration can admit no other relation but to the time already past, in which Abraham lived. And we find the present tense in the same manner joined with the aorist elsewhere; as Psal. xx. 2. πρὸ τοῦ δὲ γεννηθα, και πλησίων τον γη και την κολοσσαντα, και ἀπο ἀνωτας, ἐς το ανωτας, συ ει. What can be more parallel than, πρὸ τοῦ δὲ γεννηθα, το πρὶς ἀνθρωπον γεννηθα, και ευ ειμι, καὶ ευ ειμι; in the same manner, though by another word: πρὸ τοῦ δὲ γεννηθα, πρὶς δὲ πάντως οὐκ ειμι; καὶ εύ ειμι; Prov. viii. 23.
together with a continuation of it till the present time. And then the words will plainly signify thus much: 'Do you question how I could see Abraham, who am not yet fifty years old? Verily, verily, I say unto you, before* ever Abraham, the person whom you speak of, was born, I had a real being and existence (by which I was capable of the sight of him), in which I have continued until now.' In this sense certainly the Jews understood our Saviour’s answer, as pertinent to their question, but in their opinion blasphemous; and therefore "they took up stones to cast at him." (John viii. 59.)

This literal and plain explication is yet farther necessary; because those who once recede from it, do not only wrest and pervert the place, but also invent and suggest an answer unworthy of and wholly misbecoming him that spake it. For (setting aside the addition of the light of the world, which there can be no shew of reason to admit), whether they interpret the former part ("before Abraham was") of something to come, as the calling of the Gentiles, or the latter ("I am") of a pre-existence in the divine foreknowledge and appointment; they represent Christ with a great asseveration, highly and strongly asserting that which is nothing to the purpose to which he speaks, nothing to any other purpose at all; and they propound the Jews senselessly-offended and foolishly exasperated with those words, which any of them might have spoken as well as he. For the first interpretation makes our Saviour thus speak: 'Do you so much wonder how I should have "seen Abraham," who am "not yet fifty years old!"' (John viii. 57.) Do ye imagine so great a contradiction in this? I tell you, and be ye most assured that what I speak unto you at this time, is most certainly and infallibly true, and most worthy of your observation, which moves me not to deliver it without this solemn asseveration ("Verily, verily, I say unto you"), before Abraham shall perfectly become that which was signified in his name, "the father of many nations," (Gen. xvii. 4.) before the Gentiles shall come in, "I am." Nor be ye troubled at this answer, or think in this I magnify myself: for what I speak is as true of

* So the Ἐθιοπικὸς Version: 'Amen dico vobis, priusquam Abraham nasci
terret, tui ego;' and the Persian: 'Veri,
vero vobis dico, quod noundum Abraham
factus erat, cum ego eram.'

† This is the shift of the Socinians, who make this speech of Christ elliptical, and then supply it from the 12th verse. "I am the light of the world." 'Quod vero ea verba, Ego sum, sint ad eum modum supplessa, ac si ipse subjiciasset iis, Ego
sum factus erat, cum ego eram.'

Catech. Racov. Sect. iv. c. 1. p. 57. Where-as there is no ground for any such connexion. That discourse of the light of the world was in the treasury, ver. 29, that which followeth was not, at least appeared not to be so. Therefore the ellipsis of the 24th and 25th verses is not to be supplied by the 12th, but the 24th, from the 23d, εἰς τὸν ἔθνος Ἰουα, and the 25th, either from the same, or that which is most general, his office, ἔσας ἐν Χριστῷ. Again, ver. 31, it is very probable that a new discourse is again begun, and therefore if there were an ellipsis in the words alleged, it would have no relation to either of the former supplies, or if to either, to the latter; but indeed it hath to neither.
you, as it is of me; before Abraham be thus made Abraham, ye are. Doubt ye not therefore, as ye did, nor ever make that question again, whether I have seen Abraham." The second explication makes a sense of another nature, but with the same impertinency: 'Do ye continue still to question, and that with so much admiration? Do you look upon my age, and ask, "Hast thou seen Abraham?"' I confess it is more than eighteen hundred years since that patriarch died, and less than forty since I was born at Bethlehem: but look not on this computation, for before Abraham was born, I was. But mistake me not, I mean in the foreknowledge and decree of God. Nor do I magnify myself in this, for ye were so.' How either of these answers should give any reasonable satisfaction to the question, or the least occasion of the Jews' exasperation, is not to be understood. And that our Saviour should speak any such impertinences as these interpretations bring forth, is not by a Christian to be conceived. Wherefore being the plain and most obvious sense is a proper and full answer to the question, and most likely to exasperate the unbelieving Jews; being those strained explications render the words of Christ, not only impertinent to the occasion, but vain and useless to the hearers of them; being our Saviour gave this answer in words of another language, most probably incapable of any such interpretations: we must adhere unto that literal sense already delivered by which it appeareth Christ had a being, as before John, so also before Abraham (not only before Abram became Abraham, but before Abraham was Abram), and consequently that he did exist two thousand years before he was born, or conceived by the Virgin.

Thirdly, We shall extend this pre-existence to a far longer space of time, to the end of the first World, nay to the beginning of it. For he which was before the flood, and at the creation of the world, had a being before he was conceived by the Virgin. But Christ was really before the flood, for he preached to them that lived before it; and at the creation of the World, for he created it. That he preached to those before the flood, is evident by the words of St. Peter, who saith, that Christ 'was put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit; by which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison, which sometimes were disobedient, when once the long-suffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the Ark was a preparing.' (1 Pet. iii. 18—20.) From which words it appeareth that Christ preached by the same Spirit, by the virtue of which he was raised from the dead: but that Spirit was not his soul, but something of a greater power. Secondly, That those to whom he preached, were such as were disobedient. Thirdly, That the time when they were disobedient, was the time before the flood, while the ark was preparing.* It is cer-
tain then that Christ did preach unto those persons, which in the days of Noah were disobedient, all that time “the long-suffering of God waited,” and consequently, so long as repentance was offered. And it is as certain that he never preached to them after they died; which I shall not need here to prove, because those against whom I bring this argument deny it not. It followeth therefore, that he preached to them while they lived, and were disobedient; for in the refusing of that mercy, which was offered to them by the preaching of Christ, did their disobedience principally consist. In vain then are we taught to understand St. Peter of the promulgation of the Gospel to the Gentiles after the Holy Ghost descended upon the apostles, when the words themselves refuse all relation to any such times or persons. For all those of whom St. Peter speaks, were disobedient in the days of Noah. But none of those to whom the apostles preached, were ever disobedient in the days of Noah. Therefore, none of those to whom the apostles preached, were any of those of whom St. Peter speaks. It remaineth therefore, that the plain interpretation be acknowledged for the true, that Christ did preach unto those men which lived before the flood, even while they lived, and consequently that he was before it. For though this was not done by an immediate act of the Son of God, as if he personally had appeared on earth, and actually preached to that old World; but by the ministry of a prophet,* by the sending of Noah, the eighth preacher of righteousness: (2 Pet. ii. 5)† yet to do any thing by another

* * Prophetae ab ipso habentes donum in illum prophetaverunt.* Barnabae Epist. c. 4. al. 5.
† I have thus translated this place of St. Peter, because it may add some advantage to the argument: for if Noah were the eighth preacher of righteousness, and he were sent by the Son of God; no man, I conceive, will deny that the seven before him were sent by the same Son: and so by this we have gained the pre-existence of another thousand years. However, those words, ἅλι ἐγὼς Ναὸς δικαιοσύνης κύριος ἐστίν, may be better interpreted than they are, when we translate them, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness. For, first, if we look upon the Greek phrase, ἐγὼς Ναὸς, may not be the eighth person, but one of eight, or Noah with seven more; in which it signifieth not the order in which he was in respect of the rest, but only con-signifieth the number which were with him. As when we read in the *Sopplices of Aeschylus, v. 715.*

Τὸ γὰρ τεκνών σέβας, Τίττων τε β’ ἐν θείματι. Δίκαι γεγενήσατο μεγαστότιμοι, we must not understand it, as if honour due to parents, were the third commandment at Athens, but one of the three remarkable laws left at Eleusis by Triptolemus. So Porphyrius: *facel iu kal Τριπτόλεμος ἄυστους νοείοττες, καὶ τοῦ ἤθους ἀντίς τιμή Πτέρυγα, ἐχθρόνιον ἰερόν διαμανόν Ἠλευσίων τράγον τοῖς τιμάνθις καταλληλοῦν άρχα μὲ σέβεσθαι.* De Abstinent. ab Anim. Ev., 1.iv. ad fin. Which words are thus made use of by St. Jerome, who hath made use of most part of that fourth book of Porphyrius: *' Xenocrates Philosophus de Triptolemii legibus apud Athenienses tria tantum praecipita in Templo Eleusinæ residere scribit; Honorandos Parentes, Venerandos Deos, Carnibus non vescendum.' adr. Johannis. l. ii. col. 528. Where we see honour due to parents the first precept, though by Aeschylus called the third, not in respect of the order, but the number. Thus Dinarchus the orator: Καὶ τὰς Σεληνιαί διὰς αἱ εἰς ἵπποις κατατέκας δικαστές αὐτίς. From whence we must not collect that the person of whom he speaks, was the tenth in order of that office, so that nine were necessarily before or above him; and many more might be after or below him: but from hence it is inferred, that there were ten lepers waiting on the Σελῆνιον Σταῖ, and no more, of which num-
not able to perform it without him, as much demonstrates the existence of the principal cause, as if he did it of himself without any intervening instrument.

The second part of the argument, that Christ made this World, and consequently had a real being at the beginning of it, the Scriptures manifestly and plentifully assure us. For the same Son, "by whom in these last days God spake unto us, is he, by whom also he made the worlds." (Heb. i. 2.) So that as "through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God." (Heb. xi. 3.) so must we also believe that they were made by the Son of God.* Which the apostle doth not only in the entrance of his epistle deliver, but in the sequel prove. For shewing greater things have been spoken of him than ever were attributed to any of the angels, the most glorious of all the creatures of God; amongst the rest he saith, the Scripture spake, "Unto the Son, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever. And not only so, but also, Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth, and the heavens are the work of thine hands. They shall perish, but thou remainest: and they all shall wax old as doth a garment; and as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed; but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail." (Heb. i. 8. 10—12.) Now whatsoever the person be to whom these words were spoken, it cannot be denied but he was the Creator of the World. For he must be acknowledged the Maker of the earth, who laid the foundation of it; and he may justly challenge to himself the making of the heavens, who can say they are the work of his hands. But these words were spoken to the Son of God, as the apostle himself acknowledgeth, and it appeareth out of the order and series of the chapter; the design of which is to declare the supereminent excellency of our Saviour Christ. Nay, the conjunction and refers this place of the Psalmist† plainly to the former, of which he had said

* It being in both places expressed in the same phrase by the same author, δει τοις αιωνις ιπότην, Heb. i. 2. διότι ουμιλιαν κατηγορεί οτις αιωνια ρήματι θεοί.

† The answer of Socinus to this conjunction is very weak, relying only upon the want of a comma after καί in the Greek, and et in the Latin. And whereas it is evident that there are distinctions, in the Latin and Greek copies after that conjunction, he flies to the ancientest copies, which all men knew were most careless of distinctions, and urgeth that there is no addition of rvsum or the like after καί, whereas in the Syriac translation we find expressly that addition: הָעוּדָה.
expressly, "but unto the Son he saith." As sure then as "Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever," was said unto the Son; so certain it is, "Thou, Lord, hast laid the foundations of the earth," was said unto the same. Nor is it possible to avoid the apostle's connexion by attributing the destruction of the heavens, out of the last words, to the Son, and denying the creation of them out of the first, to the same. For it is most evident that there is but one person spoken to, and that the destruction and the creation of the heavens are both attributed to the same. Whosoever therefore shall grant, that the apostle produced this Scripture to shew that the Son of God shall destroy the heavens, must withhold acknowledge that he created them; whosoever denieth him to be here spoken of as the Creator, must also deny him to be understood as the destroyer. Wherefore being the words of the Psalmist were undoubtedly spoken of and to our Saviour (or else the apostle hath attributed that unto him which never belonged to him, and consequently the spirit of St. Paul mistook the spirit of David); being to whomsoever any part of them belongs, the whole is applicable, because they are delivered unto one; being the literal exposition is so clear, that no man hath ever pretended to a metaphorical: it remaineth as an undeniable truth, grounded upon the profession of the Psalmist, and the interpretation of an apostle, that the Son of God created the World. Nor needed we so long to have insisted upon this testimony, because there are so many which testify as much, but only that this is of a peculiar nature and different from the rest. For they which deny this truth of the creation of the World by the Son of God, notwithstanding all those Scriptures produced to confirm it, have found two ways to avoid or decline the force of them. If they speak so plainly and literally of the work of creation, that they will not endure any figurative interpretation, then they endeavour to shew that they are not spoken of the Son of God. If they speak so expressly of our Saviour Christ, as that by no machination they can be applied to any other person, then their whole design is to make the creation attributed unto him appear to be merely metaphorical. The place before alleged is of the first kind, which speaketh so clearly of the creation or real production of the World, that they never denied it: and I have so manifestly shewed it spoken to the Son of God, that it is beyond all possibility of gainsaying.

Thus having asserted the creation acknowledged real unto Christ, we shall the easier persuade that likewise to be such, which is pretended to be metaphorical. In the Epistle to the Colossians we read of the Son of God, "in whom we have redemption through his blood:" (Col. i. 14.) and we are sure those words can be spoken of none other than Jesus Christ. He therefore it must be, who was thus described by the apostle; "who is the image of the invisible God, the first-born of every
article. For by him were all things created that are in heaven and that are in earth, visible and invisible; whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him. And he is before all things, and by him all things consist." (Col. i. 15—17.) In which words our Saviour is expressly styled the "first-born of every creature,"* that is, begotten by God, as the Son of his love,† antecedently to all other emanations, before any thing proceeded from him, or was framed and created by him. And that prece- dency is presently proved by this undeniable argument, that all other emanations or productions came from him, and whatsoever received its being by creation, was by him created. Which assertion is delivered in the most proper, full, and pregnant expressions imaginable. First, In the vulgar phrase of Moses, as most consonant to his description; "for by him were all things created that are in heaven, and that are in earth;" signifying thereby, that he speaketh of the same creation. Secondly, By a division which Moses never used, as describing the production only of corporeal substances: lest therefore those immaterial beings might seem exempted from the Son's creation, because omitted in Moses's description, he addeth "visible and invisible;" and lest in that invisible World, among the many degrees of the celestial hierarchy, any order might seem exempted from an essential dependence upon him, he nameth those which are of greatest eminence, "whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers," and under them comprehended all the rest. Nor doth it yet suffice, thus to extend the object of his power by asserting all things to be made by him, except it be so understood as to acknowledge the sovereignty of his person, and the authority of his action. For lest we should conceive the Son of God framing the World as a mere instrumental cause which worketh by and for another, he sheweth him as well the final as the efficient cause; for "all things were created by him and for him." Lastly, Whereas all things first received their being by creation, and when they have received it, continue in the same by virtue of God's conservation, "in whom we live, and move, and have our being;" lest in any thing we should be thought not to depend immediately upon the Son of God, he is described as the Conserver, as well as the Creator; for "he is before all things, and by him all things consist." If then we consider the two last-cited verses by themselves, we cannot

* "The first-born of every creature" is taken by Origen for an expression declaring the Divinity of Christ, and used by him as a phrase in opposition to his humanity to express the same: "Εἷς τῶν τῶν παραπλασίων. Αἰ δὲ τούτου των τῶν εἰς έσσεν τούτων τούτων, δι' αὐτὸν τὸν ναυακούστακος τιτάκας εἰσίν. οὐ καί η οὐκ εἶπεν η οὐκ εἶπεν, καί η ἀλήθεια, καί η ζωή, καί το εὔσεβες μανάστεμεναι ἀλλά τις χειρότερος, ὡς καί τοις τοτε παραπλασίων αἰ δὲ τούτου του τους κατ' οὐκ οὐκ. Νῦν δὲ καί μεπτι κατηκτικάς κατηκτικάς εἰς τὸν ἀληθινόν οἰνόν ἀληθινόν ἀληθινόν ἀληθινόν ἀληθινόν ἀληθινόν. Lib. ii. adv. Celsum, §. 25.

† In relation to the precedent words, ver. 13. το εὐσεβες κατηκτικας, for that what ἀγαπητης was the οὐς περὶ της.
deny but that they are a most complete description of the Creator of the World; and if they were spoken of God the Father, could be no way injurious to his majesty, who is no where more plainly or fully set forth unto us as the Maker of the World.

Now although this were sufficient to persuade us to interpret this place of the making of the world, yet it will not be unfit to make use of another reason, which will compel us so to understand it. For undoubtedly there are but two kinds of creation in the language of the Scriptures, the one literal, the other metaphorical; one old, the other new; one by way of formation, the other by way of reformation. • "If any man be in Christ, he is a new creature," saith St. Paul (2 Cor. v. 17.): and again, "in Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision, but a new creature." (Gal. vi. 15.) Instead of which words he had before, "faith working by love." (Gal. v. 6.) "For we the workmanship of God, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them." (Eph. ii. 10.) From whence it is evident, that a new creature is such a person as truly believeth in Christ, and manifesteth that faith, by the exercise of good works; and the new creation is the reformation or bringing man into this new condition, which, by nature and his first creation, he was not in. And therefore he who is so created, is called a new man, in opposition to "the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts:" (Eph. iv. 22.) From whence the apostle chargeth us to be "renewed in the spirit of our mind, and to put on that new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness;" (Eph. iv. 23, 24.) and "which is renewed in knowledge, after the image of him that created him." (Col. iii. 10.)

The new creation then is described to us as consisting wholly in renovation,* or a translation from a worse unto a better condition by way of reformation; by which those who have lost the image of God, in which the first man was created, are restored to the image of the same God again, by a real change, though not substantial, wrought within them. Now this being the notion of the new creation, in all those places which undoubtedly and confessedly speak of it, it will be necessary to apply it unto such Scriptures, as are pretended to require the same interpretation. Thus therefore I proceed. If the second or new creation cannot be meant by the apostle in the place produced out of the Epistle to the Colossians, then it must be interpreted

---

* άνακαίνισις or άνακαμάνωσις as the new man, νεώς ἁμησίας, or καινής ἁμησίας. The first ἀνακαίνισις: the last, ἀνακαμάνωσις, both the same. Suidas, άνακαίνισις, ἀνακαμάνωσις, which is the language of the New Testament. This renovation being thus called καινὴ κτῖσις, the ancients framed a proper word for it, which is, ἀνάκτησις: ἰὸς ὑπερτάλεται πάντας τῶν ἐν ἄνθρωποι κατὰ τοῦ φύσεως καὶ κατὰ τοῦ σώματος αὐτῆς. Just, Qu. et Resp. ad Graves, p. 167. This new creation doth so necessarily infer an alteration, that it is called by St. Paul a metamorphosis, μεταμορφώσθη τῇ ἀνακαίνισις τὸν νεών Ἰησ. Rom. xiii. 9.
of the first. For there are but two kinds of creation mentioned in the Scriptures, and one of them is there expressly named. But the place of the apostle can no way admit an interpretation by the new creation, as will thus appear: the object of the creation, mentioned in this place, is of as great latitude and universality as the object of the first creation, not only expressed, but implied, by Moses. But the object of the new creation is not of the same latitude with that of the old. Therefore that which is mentioned here, cannot be the new creation. For certainly if we reflect upon the true notion of the new creation, it necessarily and essentially includes an opposition to a former worse condition, as the new man is always opposed to the old; and if Adam had continued still in innocency, there could have been no such distinction between the old man and the new, or the old and the new creation. Being then all men become not new, being there is no new creature but such whose "faith worketh by love," being so many millions of men have neither faith nor love, it cannot be said that by Christ "all things were created anew that are in heaven and that are in earth," when the greatest part of mankind have no share in the new creation. Again, we cannot imagine that the apostle should speak of the creation in a general word, intending thereby only the new, and while he doth so, express particularly and especially those parts of the old creation which are incapable of the new, or at least have no relation to it. The angels are all either good or bad; but whether they be bad, they can never be good again, nor did Christ come to redeem the devils, or whether they be good, they were always such, nor were they so by the virtue of Christ's incarnation, for "he took not on him the nature of angels." (Heb. ii. 16.) We acknowledge in man kind a new creation, because an old man becomes a new; but there is no such notion in the celestial hierarchy, because no old and new angels: they which fell, are fallen for eternity; they which stand, always stood, and shall stand for ever. Where then are the recreated "thrones and dominions?" Where are the recreated "principalities and powers?" All those angels of whatsoever degrees were created by the Son of God, as the apostle expressly affirms. But they were never "created" by a new creation unto "true holiness and righteousness," (Eph. iv. 22.) because they always were truly righteous and holy ever since their first creation. Therefore except we could yet invent another creation, which were neither the old nor the new, we must conclude, that all the angels were at first created by the Son of God; and as they, so all things else, especially man, whose creation* all the first writers of the Church of God expressly

* • Ad hoc Dominus sustinuit pati pro anima nostra, cum sit orbis Terrarum Dominus, cui dixit die ante constitutionem seculi, Faciam hominem ad imaginem et similitudinem nostram? Barnabæ Epist. c. iv. And again: Μη συγκροτήσεις το θρόνον και τα θρόνα, ήδη, θεία νοὴν ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ, και τὴν γένεσιν εἰς τὸν θρόνον θεοῦ, κοσμίαν ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ, και τοὺς θρόνους κοσμίαν ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ, και τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ. Οὐκ οὖν ἦσαν κοσμίοι οἱ θρόνοι τῶν παραγόντων τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρόνους τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τὸν κόσμον τοῦ θεοῦ, κοσμίσεις τοὺς θρό

attribute unto the Son, asserting that those words, "Let us make man," (Gen. i. 26.) were spoken as by the Father unto him.

Nor need we doubt of this interpretation, or the doctrine arising from it, seeing it is so clearly delivered by St. John: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the beginning was God. All things were made by him, and without him was not any thing made that was made." (i. 1—3.) Whereas we have proved Christ had a being before he was conceived by the Virgin Mary, because he was at the beginning of the World; and have also proved that he was at the beginning of the World, because he made it; this place of St. John gives a sufficient testimony to the truth of both the last together. "In the beginning was the Word;" and that Word made flesh is Christ: therefore Christ was in the beginning. "All things were made by him:" therefore he created the World. Indeed nothing can be more clearly penned, to give full satisfaction in this point, than these words of St. John, which seem with a strange brevity designed to take off all objections, and remove all prejudice, before they teach so strange a truth. Christ was born of the Virgin Mary, and his age was known to them for whom this Gospel was penned. St. John would teach that this Christ did make the World, which was created at least four thousand years before he was so. Under that name he shews at first that he had a being in the beginning;* when all things were to be created, and consequently were not yet, then in the beginning was the Word, and so not created. This is the first step, the Word was not created when the World was made. The next is, that the same Word which then was, and was not made, at the same time, "was with God,"† when he made all things;

† Ἰδιῶς τῷ Θεῷ, that is, παρὰ τῷ Ἰησοῦ, that is, by God. As Nonnus:

Πατρὸς ἐν οἴκοις, ἀντίκεισι συνόροις Ἑρώτ., c. i. 4.

As Wisdom speaketh, Prov. viii. 30. then I was by him, ὄνομα ἐργατάς αὐτῷ, Chald. γίγνεται et erat in latere ejus. Moschopulus, περὶ σχέσεως, p. 25. Ἰδιῶς τῷ Θεῷ, τευτον, κατὰ τῷ Θεῷ. As: "Al aθεα-

φαι αὐτῶν οἵοις οὐχι πάσαι σφιξάμεις οὕτω;} Matt, xiii. 56. καὶ ἀνεῖμεν ἑαυτῷ πᾶς νάμας. Mark xiv. 49. πρὸς ἐμας δὲ τοὺς παραμείνει. 1 Cor

xvi. 6. Πιστιτευμένως διακοινών ἠπεί Χρι-

στοῦν, δὲ πρὸ αὐτῶν παρά Πατρίς τί, καὶ ἰδιῶς ἐρωτοῦν. Ignat. ad Magnes. c. 6.
and therefore well may we conceive it is he to whom "God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness;" (Gen. i. 26.) and of whom those words may be understood, "Behold, the man is become as one of us." (Gen. iii. 22.) After this, lest any should conceive the creation of the World too great and divine a work to be attributed to the Word; lest any should object, that none can produce anything out of nothing but God himself: he addeth, That "the Word," as he "was with God," so "was he also God." Again, lest any should divide the Deity, or frame a false conception of different gods, he returns unto the second assertion, and joins it with the first, "The same was in the beginning with God:" and then delivers that which at the first seemed strange, but now after those three propositions, may easily be accepted; "All things were made by him, and without him was not any thing made that was made." For now this is no new doctrine, but only an interpretation of those Scriptures which told us, God made all things by his Word before. For "God said, Let there be light; and there was light." (Gen. i. 3.) And so "by the Word of the Lord were the heavens made, and all the hosts of them by the breath of his mouth." (Psal. xxxiii. 6.) From whence "we understand that the worlds were framed by the Word of God." (Heb. xi. 3. 2 Pet. iii. 5.) Neither was it a new interpretation, but that which was most familiar to the Jews, who in their synagogues, by the reading of the paraphrase* or the interpretation of the

* I conceive this Chaldee paraphrase to represent the sense of the Jews of that age, as being their public interpretation of the Scripture. Wherefore what we find common and frequent in it, we cannot but think the vulgar and general opinion of that nation. Now it is certain that this paraphrase doth often use the word of God, for nisi God himself, and that especially with relation to the creation of the world. As Is. xiv. 12. "I was God before the mountains, and created the earth, and created man upon it, saith the Lord, the Holy One of Israel; which the Chaldee translates $\;\text{אֶלְכָּלַיִם}$. I made the earth, and created man upon it. In the same manner, Jer. xxviii. 5. I made the earth, and men and beasts on the face of the earth; the Targum $\text{עַלְכָּלֵי הַשָּׁמָּיִם}$. And Isa. lviii. 13. My hand also founded the earth: the Chaldee $\text{נָחַלָה}$. And most clearly Gen. i. 26. we read, Et creavit Deus hominem: the Jerusalem Targum, Verbum dominii creavit hominem. And Gen.iii.8 And raqerem verem Domini Dei: the Chaldee paraphrase: and Et audierunt verem Domini Dei: Now this which the Chaldee paraphrase called סְדֵדָה סְדֵדָה as appeareth by Philo the Jew, who wrote before St. John, and reckons in his Divinity, first פָּרָּשָּׁת לוֹ זַּעְלֵה, then וַיֵּשֶׁב יָמִים, וְיֵשֶׁב יְהוָה לֹאֵת, Quaest. et Solvit. Frag. p. 625. vol. ii. ap. Euseb. Prep. Evang. l. vii. c. 13. Whom he calls: οὗτος ὁ Κύριος Λόγος, πρωτόγονος υἱός. De Agricult. p. 308. vol. i. He attributes the creation of the World to this Λόγος, whom he terms: θεόπνοος ψωμί, οὗ τὸ τοῦ θεοῦ καταλαμβάνει. De Flammae coelis, ad fin. p. 102. vol. i. Εις δὲ τὸν θεόν Λόγον αὐτὸ τοῦ θεοῦ, καὶ κακταστέων θεον προς χρηστάσεως ἐνεργοποίησε. Idem, Alleg. lb. ii. al. iii. p. 106. vol. i. Where we must observe, though Philo makes the Λόγος, of whom he speaks, as instrumental in the creation of the World; yet he taketh it not for a bare expression of the will of God, but for a God, though in the second degree, and expressly for the Son of God. Nor ought we to look on Philo Judaeus in this as a Platonist, but merely as a Jew, who refers his whole doctrine of this Λόγος to the first chapter of Genesis. And the rest of the Jews before him, who had no such knowledge out of Plato's school, used the same notion. For as Is. xlviii. 13. the hand of God, is by the Chaldee paraphrase translated the Word of God: so in the book of Wisdom, θεον προτοτοκίας σου Κύριε καὶ κατάστασιν τοῦ κόσμου, Sap. xi. 17. is changed into διὰ παραβάθειαν...
Hebrew text in the Chaldee language, were constantly taught, that the Word of God was the same with God, and that by that Word all things were made. Which undoubtedly was the cause why St. John delivered so great a mystery in so few words, as speaking unto them who at the first apprehension understood him. Only that which as yet they knew not was, that this Word was made flesh, and that this Word made flesh was Jesus Christ. Wherefore this exposition being so literally clear in itself, so consonant to the notion of the Word, and the apprehension of the Jews; it is infinitely to be preferred before any such interpretation as shall restrain the most universals to a few particulars, change the plainest expressions into figurative phrases, and make of a sublime truth, a weak, useless, false discourse. For who will grant that "in the beginning" must be the same with that in St. John's first Epistle (i. 1.) "from the beginning," especially when the very interpretation involves in itself a contradiction? For "the beginning" in St. John's Epistle, is that in which the apostles saw, and heard, and touched the Word: "the beginning" in his Gospel was that in which "the Word was with God," that is, not seen nor heard by the apostles, but known as yet to God alone, as the new exposition will have it. Who will conceive it worthy of the apostle's assertion, to teach that the Word had a being in the beginning of the Gospel, at what time John the Baptist began to preach; when we know the Baptist taught as much, who therefore "came baptizing with water, that he might be made manifest unto Israel?" (John i. 31.) when we are sure that St. Matthew and St. Luke, who wrote before him, taught us more than this, that he had a being thirty years before? when we are assured, it was as true of any other then living as of the Word, even of Judas who betrayed him, even of Pilate who condemned him? Again, who can imagine the apostle should assert that the Word was, that is, had an actual being, when as yet he was not actually the Word? For if "the beginning" be, when John the Baptist began to preach, and the Word, as they say, be nothing else

\[\frac{\text{His Only Son.}}{179}\]
but he who speaketh, and so revealeth the will of God; Christ had not then revealed the will of God, and consequently was not then actually the Word, but only potentially or by designation. Secondly, It is a strange figurative speech, "the Word was with God," that is, was known to God, especially in this apostle's method. "In the beginning was the Word;" there must signify an actual existence; and if so, why in the next sentence ("the Word was with God") shall the same verb signify an objective being only? Certainly though to be in the beginning be one thing, and to be with God, another; yet to be in either of them is the same. But if we should imagine this being understood of the knowledge of God, why we should grant that thereby is signified, he was known to God alone, I cannot conceive. For the proposition of itself is plainly affirmative, and the exclusive particle only added to the exposition, maketh it clearly negative. Nay more, the affirmative sense is certainly true, the negative as certainly false. For except Gabriel be God who came to the Virgin; except every one of the heavenly host which appeared to the shepherds, be God; except Zachary and Elizabeth, except Simeon and Anna, except Joseph and Mary, be God; it cannot be true that he was known to God only, for to all these he was certainly known. Thirdly, To pass by the third attribute, "and the Word was God," as having occasion suddenly after to handle it; seeing the apostle hath again repeated the circumstance of time as most material, "the same was in the beginning with God," and immediately subjoined those words, "all things were made by him, and without him was not any thing made that was made;" how can we receive any exposition, which referreth not the making of all these things to him in the beginning? But if we understand the latter part of the apostles, who, after the ascension of our Saviour, did nothing but what they were commanded and empowered to do by Christ, it will bear no relation to the beginning. If we interpret the former, of all which Jesus said and did in the promulgation of the Gospel, we cannot yet reach to the beginning assigned by the new expositors: for while John the Baptist only preached, while in their sense the Word was with God, they will not affirm that Jesus did any of these things that are here spoken of. And consequently, according to their grounds, it will be true to say, "In the beginning was the Word, and that Word in the beginning was with God, insomuch as in the beginning nothing was done by him, but without him were all things done, which were done in the beginning." Wherefore, in all reason we should stick to the known interpretation, in which every word receiveth its own proper signification, without any figurative distortion, and is preserved in its due latitude and extension, without any curtailing restriction. And therefore I conclude, from the undeniable testimony of St. John, that at the beginning, when the heavens and the earth and all the
hosts of them were created, all things were made by the Word, who is Christ Jesus being made flesh; and consequently, by the method of argument, as the apostle antecedently by the method of nature, that in the beginning Christ was. He then who was in heaven, and descended from thence before that which was begotten of the Virgin ascended thither, he who was before John the Baptist and before Abraham, he who was at the end of the first World, and at the beginning of the same; he had a real being and existence, before Christ was conceived by the Virgin Mary. But all these we have already shewed belong unto the Son of God. Therefore we must acknowledge, that Jesus Christ had a real being and existence before he was begotten by the Holy Ghost: which is our first assertion, properly opposed to the Photinians.*

The second assertion, next to be made good, is, that the being which Christ had, before he was conceived by the Virgin, 

...
was not any created, but the divine essence, by which he always was truly, really, and properly God. This will evidently and necessarily follow from the last demonstration of the first assertion, the creating all things by the Son of God; from whence we inferred his pre-existence, "in the beginning" assuring us as much that he was God, as that he was, "For he that built all things was God." (Heb. iii. 4.) And the same apostle which at the same time tells us, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God." (John i. 3. 1.) "Where "in the beginning" must not be denied unto the third proposition, because it cannot be denied unto the second. Therefore "in the beginning, or ever the earth was, the Word was God," (Prov. viii. 23.) the same God with whom he was. For we cannot, with any show of reason, either imagine that he was with one God, and was another, because there can be no more supreme Gods than one; or conceive that the apostle should speak of one kind of God in the second, and of another in the third proposition; in the second, of a God eternal and independent; in the third, of a made and depending God.* Especially, first considering that the eternal God was
* And that upon so poor a ground as the want of an article, because in the first place it is, το πέρε το Θεόν, in the second, Θεός τον Αβγον, not θεος from hence to conclude, δε Θεος is one God, that is, κατ' εξωθιν, the supreme God, Θεος another, not the supreme, but one made by him. Indeed, they are beholden to Epi- phanias for this observation, whose words are these: 'Εαν ειπαμεν, Θεος, άνω του αδημοιου, τον τυρυχιαν θεαν θεων των ένθεων, η Θεος του έντα (or rather ουκ έντα) έαν δε ειπαμεν, δ Θεος, δηλω ας απo του αδημοιου, τον ους πεμανενεν αληθι τε και καινεσκεπεν. Sarmarit. Hares. 35. x. §. 4. But whosoever shall apply this rule to the sacred Scrip- tures will find it most fallacious. In the beginning, εποιευσαν δ Θεος τον ουρανον και την γη, undoubtedly belongs to the true and supreme God: but it does not thence fol- low, that πνευμα Θεου ιερον πνευμα τον θεαν, should be understood of the spirit of another or inferior God. Certainly St. John (i. 6.) when he speaks of the Bap- tist, έχεις άνωτατo; οπερτελεται: ποιηθεν Θεος, meant, he had his commission from heaven: and when it is spoken of Christ, (ver. 12.) έκ νυμφαι του εξωθιν της Θεου γνωσθηκα, and again, (ver. 13.) εκ Θεου έγεννηθεσα, it must be understood of the true God the Father. In the like manner, (ver. 18.) Θεος ολος άνως παντως, if it were taken τον Θεον of any ever called God; nay, even of Christ Jesus as man, it were certainly false. How can then any deny the Word to be the supreme God, because he is called simply Θεος, when St. John in the four next places, in which he speaketh of the supreme God, mentioneth him without an article? This criticism of theirs was first the observation of Asterius the Arian: Οιχ εστιν δ μακαριος Παθος Χριστος κηρυσσει την τη Θεου ενομαζει, η τη την Θεου σωματι, άλλα δε εκ της προσθες, δυσμαθ Θεου, και Θεου σωματι άλλοι μεν ειναι την ιδιαν αυτω του Θεου δυσμα- μιν την εμφασιν αυτω και συναπαχωμαις αγνωσττα, κηρυσσει. These are the words of Asterius recorded by Athanasius, Oral. 2. contra Arianos, §. 37. In which place, notwithstanding, none can deny but Θεος is twice taken without an article for the true and supreme God. Thus Didymus of Alexandria de Sp. S. would distinguish between the person and the gift of the Holy Ghost, by the addition or defect of the article: 'Apostoli, quando intelligi volunt personam Spiritus Sancti, addunt articulum, το πνευμα, sine quo Spiritus Sancti bona donantur,' Interpret. S. He- ruph. And Athanasius objects against his adversaries denying the Holy Ghost to be God, that they produced places out of the prophets to prove him a creature, where πνευμα had not so much as an article prefixed, which might give some colour to interpret it of the Holy Spirit. Ουν γας ως δει το δισθων η χη τη παρα τω
so constantly among the Jews called "the Word," the only reason which we can conceive, why the apostle should thus use this phrase: and then observing the manner of St. John's writing, who rises strangely by degrees, making the last word of the former sentence the first of that which followeth: as, "In him was life, and the life was the light of men; and the light shineth in darkness, and the darkness comprehended it not: so, in the beginning was the Word, and the Word," (John i. 4, 5.) which so was in the beginning, "was with God, and the Word was God;" that is, the same God with whom the Word was in the beginning. But he could not be the same God with him any other way, than by having the same divine essence. Therefore the being which Christ had, before he was conceived by the Virgin, was the divine nature by which he was properly and really God.

Secondly, He who was subsisting in the form of God, and thought himself to be equal with God (in which thought he could not be deceived, nor be injurious to God), must of necessity be truly and essentially God; because there can be no equality between the divine essence, which is infinite, and any other whatsoever, which must be finite. But this is true of Christ, and that antecedently to his conception in the Virgin's womb, and existence in his human nature. For, "being (or rather subsisting)" in the form of God, he thought it not robbery to be equal with God: but emptied himself, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men." (Phil. ii. 6, 7.) Out of which words naturally result three propositions fully demonstrating our assertion. First, That Christ was in the form of a servant, as soon as he was made man. Secondly, That he was in the form of God, before he was in the form of a servant. Thirdly, That he was in the
torn of God, that is, did as truly and really subsist in the
divine nature, as in the form of a servant, or in the nature of
man. It is a vain imagination, that our Saviour then first ap-
peared a servant, when he was apprehended, bound, scourged,
crucified. For they were not all slaves which ever suffered
such indignities, or died that death; and when they did, their
death did not make, but find them, or suppose them servants.
Beside, our Saviour in all the degrees of his humiliation never
lived as a servant unto any master on earth. It is true, at first
he was subject, but as a son, to his reputed father and un-
doubted mother. When he appeared in public, he lived after
the manner of a prophet, and a doctor sent from God, accom-
panied with a family as it were of his apostles, whose master
he professed himself, subject to the commands of no man in
that office, and obedient only unto God. "The form" then
"of a servant" which he "took upon him," must consist in
something distinct from his sufferings, or submission unto
men; as the condition in which he was, when he so submitted,
and so suffered. In that he was "made flesh," (John i. 14.)
sent "in the likeness of sinful flesh," (Rom. viii. 3.) subject
unto all infirmities and miseries of this life, attending on the
sons of men fallen by the sin of Adam: in that he was "made
of a woman, made under the Law," (Gal. iv. 4.) and so obliged
to perform the same; which Law did so handle the children
of God, as that they differed nothing from servants: in that
he was born, bred, and lived in a mean, low, and abject condi-
tion; "as a root out a dry ground, he had no form nor
cameliness, and when they saw him, there was no beauty that
they should desire him; but was despised and rejected of men,
"a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief:" (Isa. liii. 2, 3.)
In that he was thus made man, he "took upon him the form
of a servant." Which is not mine, but the apostle's explica-
tion; as adding it not by way of conjunction, in which there
might be some diversity, but by way of apposition, which sig-
nifeth a clear identity. And therefore it is necessary to ob-
serve, that our translation of that verse is not only not exact,
but very disadvantageous to that truth, which is contained in
it. For we read it thus: "He made himself of no reputation,
and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the
likeness of men." Where we have two copulative conjunc-
tions, neither of which is in the original text,* and three dis-
tinct propositions, without any dependence of one upon the
other; whereas all the words together are but an expression of
Christ's eximiunion, with an explication shewing in what it con-

* "ALLiamto \κείνης, \παρε\ρέθει \άνω \να-
βαν, τημαξηνωθαι \ναξιτηνς \κα\ιτας; which
is also exactly observed by the Vulgar
Latin, Sed sanctus eximianit, formam
servi accipiens, in similitudine hominum

\textit{Son}, where \textit{pavim} is added by appo-
sition to \textit{\κα\ιτας}, and have both equal re-
lation to \textit{\κείνης}: or, which is all one,
\textit{\κείνης} \παρε\ρέθει, \παρε\ρέθει \κα\ιτας. Phil. ii. 7.
sisteth: which will clearly appear by this literal translation, "But emptied himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in the likeness of men." Where if any man doubt how Christ 'emptied himself,' the text will satisfy him, "by taking the form of a servant;" if any still question how he took the form of a servant, he hath the apostle's resolution, "by being made in the likeness of men." Indeed, after the expression of this exinanition, he goes on with a conjunction, to add another act of Christ's humiliation; "And being found in fashion as a man," being already by his exinanition in the form of a servant, or the likeness of men, "he humbled himself, and became (or rather becoming)* obedient unto death, even the death of the cross." (Phil. ii. 8.) As therefore his humiliation consisted in his obedience unto death, so his exinanition consisted in the assumption of the form of a servant, and that in the nature of man. All which is very fitly expressed by a strange interpretation in the Epistle to the Hebrews. For whereas these words are clearly in the Psalmist, "Sacrifice and offering thou didst not desire, mine ears hast thou opened:" (Psal. xl. 6.) the apostle appropriateth the sentence to Christ; "When he cometh into the world, he saith, Sacrifice and offering thou wouldst not, but a body hast thou prepared." (Heb. x. 5.) Now being the boring of the ear under the Law, (Exod. xxi. 6. Deut. xv. 17.) was a note of perpetual servitude, being this was expressed in the words of the Psalmist, and changed by the apostle into the preparing of a body; it followeth that when Christ's body first was framed, even then did he assume the form of a servant.

Again, it appeareth out of the same text, that Christ was in the form of God before he was in the form of a servant, and consequently, before he was made man. For he which is presupposed to be, and to think of that being which he hath, and upon that thought to assume, must have that being before that assumption; but Christ is first expressly said to be in the form of God, and, being so, to think it no robbery to be equal with God, and notwithstanding that equality, to take upon him the form of a servant: therefore it cannot be denied but he was before in the form of God. Beside, he was not in the form of a servant, but by the emptying himself, and all exinanition necessarily presupposeth a precedent plentitude; it being as impossible to empty any thing which hath no fulness, as to fill any thing which hath no emptiness. But the fulness which Christ had, in respect whereof assuming the form of a servant, he is said to empty himself, could be in nothing else but in the form of God, in which he was before. Wherefore, if the

* ἔκβαλεν ἐκ τοῦ, γεμίσεις ἐκεῖνος. For in both these verses there is but one conjunction, joining together two acts of our Saviour, his first exinanition, or ἔκβαλεν, and his further humiliation, or ἐξαίρεσις: the rest are all particles added for explication to the verbs.
assumption of the form of a servant be contemporary with his eximiation; if that eximination necessarily presupposeth a plenteus as indispensably antecedent to it; if the form of God be also coeval with that precedent plenteus; then must we confess, Christ was in the form of God before he was in the form of a servant: which is the second proposition.

Again, it is as evident from the same Scripture, (Phil. ii. 6.) that Christ was as much "in the form of God," as "the form of a servant," and did as really subsist in the divine nature, as in the nature of man. For he was so "in the form of God," as thereby "to be equal with God."* But no other form beside

* Tι έστιν ηα ηα εις. 'Pariari Deo.'


'Esse aequalis Deo.' Leporius, Lib. Emendat., p. 15. opus. Dogm. Vet. V. Script. Par. 1630. Thus all express the notion of equality, not of similitude: nor can we understand any less by τι εστιν ηα, than τον εικονιν, εις and ιαν being indifferently used by the Greeks, as Pindar, Olymp. Od. ii. 109.

Τινδ δι' ουκετιστι αι, 'I see.'

Τινδ εις αμαρσεν αη, ον ιχουσε, αυτοστερον.

Επελα νεμοται βλη-

tον.

So whom the Greeks call ισητον, Homer Ια ια μα, Odys. ο. 519.

Τιν εστιν ηα ονδ ηεα οικετοιν ειςιντατιν.

Where ηα has not the nature of an ad-

verb, as belonging to εικονιν, but of a noun referred to the antecedent τον, or including an adverb added to a noun, τον εις ισητον. The collection of Grotius from this verse is very strange: εις ηα Θεος, 'est spectari tanquam Deum.' As if he should have said εικονις signifies spectator, therefore εις signifies spectator. This he was forced to put off thus, be-

cause the strength of our interpretation, rendering an equality, lies in the verb substantiae τι εις. As Dionysius of Alexandria very anciently: κατη τουτον, και ταπανων τοις ικετοις, ικετου δε στομα, ιεα ουκετιστιν ειναι. I. p. ad Paulum Samout. For we acknowledge that ηα by itself oft-times signified no more than instar, and so infereth nothing but a similitude: as we find it frequently in the Book of Job. Where it sometimes an-

sweth to the inseparable particle 2; as, 


οιηδο sicut caesum, ηα τοσο, x. 10. 

οιηδο quasi putredo, ηα quac speciem, LXX. ηα εκαθο, xiii. 28. 

οιηδο sicut aquam, ηα τοσο, 

xv. 16. 

οιηδο sicut aequam, ηα εκαθο, 

xxiv. 20. 

οιηδο sicut tatum, ηα τοσο, 

xxvii. 16. 

οιηδο sicut veninum, ηα δι

σχολοι, xxix. 14. 

οιηδο quasi bos, ηα βεαυιν, 

xi. 15. Where we see the Vulgar Latin

useth for the Hebrew, quasi, sicut, tan-

quam, the LXX. ηα. Sometimes it an-

swerseth to no word in the original, but 

supplieth a similitude understood, not 

expressed, in the Hebrew: as, την τα

quanum putram, ηα τοσο, xi. 12. 

οιηδο sicut, ηα εκαθο, 

vid. ηα τοσο, xxx. 19. Once it rendered an Hebrew 

word rather according to the intention, 

and the signification: *ναι is compara-

bitur eius, ad verbum praeberia cewros, 

την τοσο, xii. 12. So that in all these 

places it is used adverbially for instar, 

and in none hath the addition of τι εις 

to it. As for that answer of Socinus, that 

Christ cannot be God, because he is said 

to be equal with God: 'I tanum abst 

ut, albo quod Christus sit aequalis Deo, 

sequatur ipsum esse aequum et summum 

Deum, ut potus ex hoc ipso necessario 

consequatur non esse aequum et summum 

Deum. Nemo enim sibi ipsi aqualis 

esse potest.' Socin. ad B. c. Weth. as if 

there could be no predication of equality, 

where we find a substantial identity: it is 

most certainly false, because the most 

exact speakers use such language as this 

is. There can be no expressions more 

exact and pertinent than those which are 

used by geometricians, neither can there 

be any better judges of equality than they 

are; but they most frequently use that 

expression in this notion, proving an 

equality, and inferring it from identity. 

As in the fifth proposition of the first 

Element of Each, two lines are said to 

contain an angle equal to the angle con-

tained by two other lines, because they 

contained the same angle, or γωνιαν κα

vov, and the basis of one triangle is supposed 

equal to the basis of another triangle, be-

cause the same line was basis to both, or 

βας κανωι. In the same manner cer-

tainly may the Son be said to be equal to 

the Father in essence or power, because 

they both have the same essence or 

power, that is, ωις και ιως κανωι, 

Ocell. de Universo. 'Αλλ δει κατα τον και 

ατον εικονιν ιως και τον και διανε αυτῳ 

εκαθο, c. 1. c. 6.
the essential, which is the divine nature itself, could infer an equality with God. "To whom will ye liken me, and make me equal, saith the Holy One?" (Isa. xl. 25. xlvii. 5.) There can be but one infinite, eternal, and independent Being; and there can be no comparison between that and whatsoever is finite, temporal, and depending. He therefore who did truly think himself equal with God, as being in the form of God, must be conceived to subsist in that one infinite, eternal, and independent nature of God. Again, the phrase, "in the form of God," not elsewhere mentioned, is used by the apostle with respect unto that other, of "the form of a servant," exegetically continued "in the likeness of man;" and the respect of one unto the other is so necessary, that if the form of God be not as real and essential as the form of a servant, or the likeness of man, there is no force in the apostle's words, nor will his argument be fit to work any great degree of humiliation upon the consideration of Christ's exarnation. But by the form is certainly understood the true condition of a servant, and by the likeness infallibly meant the real nature of man: nor doth the fashion, in which he was found, destroy, but rather assert the truth of his humanity. And therefore, as sure as Christ was really and essentially man, of the same nature with us, in whose similitude he was made; so certainly was he also really and essentially God, of the same nature and being with him, in whose form he did subsist. Seeing then we have clearly evinced from the express words of St. Paul, that Christ was in the form of a servant as soon as he was made man; that he was in the form of God before he was in the form of a servant; that the form of God in which he subsisted, doth as truly signify the divine, as the likeness of man the human nature: it necessarily followeth, that Christ had a real existence before he was begotten of the Virgin, and that the being which he had, was the divine essence, by which he was truly, really, and properly God. Thirdly, He which is expressly styled Alpha and Omega, the first and the last, without any restriction or limitation, as he is after, so was before any time assignable, truly and essentially God. For by this title God describeth his own being, and distinguisheth it from all other. "I the Lord, the first, and with the last, I am he." "I am he, I am the first, I also am the last." "I am the first, and I am the last, and beside me there is no God." (Isa. xli. 4. xlviii. 12. xlv. 6.) But Christ is expressly called Alpha and Omega, the first and the last. He so proclaimed himself by "a great voice, as of a trumpet, saying I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last." (Rev. i. 11. Which answereth to that solemn call and proclamation in the prophet, "Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called. (Isa. xlviii. 12.) He comforteth St. John with the majesty of this title, "Fear not, I am the first and the last." (Rev. i. 17.) Which words were spoken by "one like unto the Son of man,"
(Ibid. 13.) by him "that liveth, and was dead, and is alive for evermore;" (Ibid. 18.) that is undoubtedly, by Christ. He upholdeth the Church of Smyrna in her tribulation by virtue of the same description. "These things saith the first and the last, which was dead and is alive." (Rev. ii. 8.) He ascertained his coming unto judgment with the same assertion, "I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last." (Rev. xxi. 13.)* And in all these places this title is attributed unto Christ absolutely and universally, without any kind of restriction or limitation, without any assignation of any particular in respect of which he is the first or last; in the same latitude and eminence of expression, in which it is or can be attributed to the supreme God. There is yet another Scripture, in which the same description may seem of a more dubious interpretation: "I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the ending, saith the Lord, which is, and which was, and which is to come, the Almighty." (Rev. i. 8.) For being it is "the Lord" who so calls himself, which title belongeth to the Father and the Son, it may be doubted whether it be spoken by the Father or the Son; but whether it be understood of the one or of the other, it will sufficiently make good what we intend to prove. For if they be understood of Christ, as the precedent and the following words imply, then is he certainly that Lord, "which is, and which was, and which is to come, the Almighty;" that is, the supreme eternal God, of the same divine essence with the Father, who was before described by "him which is, and which was, and which is to come," (Rev. i. 4.) to whom the six-winged beasts continually cry, "Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come:" (Rev. iv. 8.) as the familiar explication of that name which God revealed to Moses. (Exod. iii. 14.) If they belong unto the supreme God the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ; then did he so describe himself unto St. John, and express his supreme Deity, that by those words, "I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the ending," he might be known to be the one almighty and eternal God; and, consequently, whosoever should assume that title, must attribute as much unto himself. Wherefore being Christ hath so immediately, and with so great solemnity and frequency, taken the same style upon him by which the Father did express his Godhead; it followeth, that he hath declared himself to be the supreme, almighty, and eternal God. And being thus the Alpha and the first, he was

* With the article so much elsewhere stood upon, τά Α καὶ τά Ω, δ ἡμετέροι, καὶ δ ἐσχάτοι, The Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last. For we must not take τά Α as the grammarians do, by which they signify only the letter written in that figure, and called by that name. As appeared by Eratosthenes, who was called Bota, not τά ἐσχάτοι, as Suidas corruptly. Hesychius Illustrius, from whom Suidas had that passage: ἐρατοσθένεις διὰ το δευτέρου πάντα εἰσὶ παιδίων τούτων ἅγγειλέντως, Ετός ἐκάλεσεν. And Marcellus Heraclitas in Petriol: Καὶ μετ᾽ ἑκατον ἐρατοσθήνεις, τον Ετός ἐκάλεσεν ο τοῦ Μουσών ἀρχουσίτης.
before any time assignable, and consequently before he was conceived of the Virgin; and the being which then he had was the divine essence, by which he was truly and properly the almighty and eternal God.

Fourthly, He whose glory Isaiah saw in the year that king Uzziah died, had a being, before Christ was begotten of the Virgin, and that being was the divine essence, by which he was naturally and essentially God; for he is expressly called "the Lord, Holy, holy, holy, the Lord of hosts, whose glory filleth the whole earth;" (Isa. vi. 1. 3.) which titles can belong to none beside the one and only God. But Christ was he whose glory Isaiah saw, as St. John doth testify, saying, "These things said Esaias, when he saw his glory, and spake of him:" (John xii. 41.) and he whose glory he saw, and of whom he spake, was certainly Christ: for of him the apostle treateth in that place, and of none but him. "These things spake Jesus and departed. But though he (that is, Jesus) had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him," (Ibid. 36, 37.) that is, Christ who wrought those miracles. The reason why they believed not on him was, "That the saying of Esaias the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spake, Lord, who hath believed our report?" (Ibid. 38.) and as they did not, so they could not believe in Christ, "because that Esaias said again, He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their hearts; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their hearts, and be converted, and I should heal them." (Ibid. 39, 40.) For those who God foresaw, and the prophet foretold, should not believe, could not do it without contradicting the prescience of the one, and the predictions of the other. But the Jews refusing to assent unto the doctrine of our Saviour, were those of whom the prophet spake: for "these things said Esaias when he saw his glory, and spake of him." (Ibid. 41.) Now if the glory which Isaiah saw, were the glory of Christ, and he of whom Isaiah in that chapter spake, were Christ himself; then must those blinded eyes and hardened hearts belong unto these Jews, and then their infidelity was so long since foretold. Thus doth the fixing of that prophecy upon that people, which saw our Saviour's miracles, depend upon Isaiah's vision, and the appropriation of it unto Christ. Wherefore St. John infallibly hath taught us, that the prophet saw the glory of Christ, and the prophet hath as undoubtedly assured us, that he whose glory then he saw, was the one omnipotent and eternal God; and consequently both together have sealed this truth, that Christ did then subsist in that glorious majesty of the eternal Godhead.

Lastly, He who, being man, is frequently in the Scriptures called God, and that in such a manner, as by that name no other can be understood but the one only and eternal God, he had an existence before he was made man, and the being
which then he had was no other than the divine essence; because all novelty is repugnant to the Deity, nor can any be that one God, who was not so from all eternity. But Jesus Christ being in the nature of man, is frequently in the sacred Scriptures called God; and that name is attributed unto him in such a manner, as by it no other can be understood but the one almighty and eternal God.

Which may be thus demonstrated. It hath been already proved, and we all agree in this, that there can be but one divine essence, and so but one supreme God. Wherefore were it not said in the Scriptures, there are "many gods:" (1 Cor. viii. 4.) did not he himself who is supreme call others so; we durst not give that name to any but to him alone, nor could we think any called God to be any other but that one. It had been then enough to have alleged that Christ is God, to prove his supreme and eternal Deity: whereas now we are answered, that there are "gods many," and therefore it followeth not from that name, that he is the one eternal God. But if Christ be none of those many gods, and yet be God; then can he be no other but that one. And that he is not to be numbered with them, is certain, because he is clearly distinguished from them, and opposed to them. We read in the Psalmist, "I have said, Ye are gods, and all of you are children of the Most High." (Psal. lxxxii. 6.) But we must not reckon Christ among those gods, we must not number the only-begotten Son among those children. For "they knew not, neither would they understand, they walked on in darkness:" (Ibid. 5.) and whosoever were gods only as they were, either did, or might do so. Whereas Christ, in whom alone dwelt "all the fulness of the Godhead bodily," (Col. ii. 9.) is not only distinguished from, but opposed to, such gods as those, by his disciples saying, "Now we are sure that thou knowest all things;" (John xvi. 30.) by himself proclaiming, "I am the light of the world: he that followeth me, shall not walk in darkness." (John viii. 12.) St. Paul hath told us, "there be gods many, and lords many;" but withal hath taught us, that "to us there is but one God, the Father, and one Lord Jesus Christ." (1 Cor. viii. 5, 6.) In which words, as the Father is opposed as much unto the many lords, as many gods; so is the Son as much unto the many gods as many lords; the Father being as much Lord as God, and the Son as much God as Lord. Wherefore being we find in Scripture frequent mention of one God, and beside that one an intimation of many gods, and whosoever is called God, must either be that one, or one of those many; being we find our blessed Saviour to be wholly opposed to the many gods, and consequently to be none of them, and yet we read him often styled God: it followeth, that that name is attributed unto him in such a manner, as by it no other can be understood but the one almighty and eternal God.
Again, those who deny our Saviour to be the same God with the Father, have invented rules to be the touchstone of the eternal power and Godhead. First, Where the name of God is taken absolutely, as the subject of any proposition, it always signifies the supreme power and majesty, excluding all others from that Deity. Secondly, Where the same name is any way used with an article, by way of excellency, it likewise signifies the same supreme Godhead as admitting others to a communio of Deity, but excluding them from the supremacy. Upon these two rules they have raised unto themselves this observation, That whenever the name of God absolutely taken is placed as the subject of any proposition, it is not to be understood of Christ; and wheresoever the same name is spoken of our Saviour by way of predicate, it never hath an article denoting excellency annexed to it; and consequently leaves him in the number of those gods, who are excluded from the majesty of the eternal Deity.

Now though there can be no kind of certainty in any such observations of the articles, because the Greeks promiscuously often use them or omit them, without any reason of their usurpation or omission (whereof examples are innumerable); though if those rules were granted, yet would not their conclusion follow, because the supreme God is often named (as they confess) without an article, and therefore the same name may signify the same God when spoken of Christ, as well as when of the Father, so far as can concern the omission of the article: yet to complete my demonstration, I shall shew, first, That the name of God taken subjectively is to be understood of Christ. Secondly, That the same name with the article affixed is attributed unto him. Thirdly, That if it were not so, yet where the article is wanting, there is that added to the predicate, which hath as great a virtue to signify that excellency as the article could have.

St. Paul, unfolding the mystery of godliness, hath delivered six propositions together, and the subject of all and each of them is God. "Without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifested in the flesh, justified in the spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory." (1 Tim. iii. 16.) And this God which is the subject of all these propositions must be understood of Christ, because of him each one is true, and all are so of none but him; he was the Word which was God, and was made flesh, and consequently "God manifested in the flesh." Upon him the Spirit descended at his baptism, and after his ascension was poured upon his apostles, ratifying his commission, and confirming the doctrine which they received from him: wherefore he was "God justified in the Spirit." His nativity the angels celebrated, in the discharge of his office they ministered unto him, at his resurrection and ascension they were present, always ready to confess and adore him: he he was therefore "God seen of angels." The apostles preached
unto all nations, and he whom they preached was Jesus Christ. (Acts viii. 5. 35. ix. 20. xi. 20. xvii. 3. 18. xix. 13. Rom. xvi. 25. 2 Cor. i. 19. Phil. i. 18.) The Father “separated St. Paul from his mother's womb, and called him by his grace to reveal his Son unto him, that he might preach him among the heathen:” (Gal. i. 15, 16.) therefore he was “God preached unto the Gentiles.” John the Baptist spake “unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.” (Acts xix. 4.) “We have believed in Jesus Christ,” (Gal. ii. 16.) saith St. Paul, who so taught the gaoler trembling at his feet, “Believe in the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved:” (Acts xvi. 31.) he therefore was “God believed on in the World.” When he had been forty days on earth after his resurrection, he was taken visibly up into heaven, and sat down at the right hand of the Father: wherefore he was “God received up into glory.” And thus all these six propositions, according to the plain and familiar language of the Scriptures, are infallibly true of Christ, and so of God, as he is taken by St. John, (i. 1.) when he speaks those words, “the Word was God.” But all these cannot be understood of any other, which either is, or is called, God. For though we grant the divine perfections and attributes to be the same with the divine essence, yet are they never in the Scriptures called God; nor can any of them with the least show of probability be pretended as the subject of these propositions, or afford any tolerable interpretation. When they tell us that “God,” that is, the will of God,* “was manifested in the flesh,” that is, was revealed by frail and mortal men, and “received up into glory,” that is, was received gloriously on earth,† they teach us a language which the Scriptures‡ know not, and the Holy Ghost never used, and as no attributes, so no person but the Son can be here understood under the name of God: not the

---

* Deus, i. e. voluntas ipsius de servandis hominibus, per homines infirmos et mortales perfecte patefacta est, &c. Catech.Ravep. ad Quast. 39.
† ‘Insignem in modum et summa cum gloria recepta fuit.’ Ibid. 16.
‡ For θεός is not θεόν θεόν, much less is ἀναληφθήν received or embraced. Elias speaketh not of his reception, but his ascension, when he saith to Elisha: Τί παρασέκουσα τον θεόν; & ἀναληφθῆναι ἀπὸ σοῦ; 2 Kings ii. 9. and ver. 10. Καὶ ἔθετε με ἀναληφθέως ἀπὸ σοῦ, καὶ ἔσται σοι δύτως. When he actually ascended, as the original θεόν, it is no otherwise translated by the Septuagint, than ἀναληφθηκεν ἡμῶν ἐν σωσίας μοι ἐς τὸν οὐρανόν. ver. 11. Which language was preserved by the Hellenizing Jews: ὁ ἀναληφθηκεν ἐν καλαπασῖν περιε, Sirac. xviii. 9. and again: ἀναληφθηκεν ἐν εἰς τὸν οὐρανόν, 1 Mac. ii. 58. Neither did they use it of Elias only, but of Enoch also: οὗτος εἰς ἄκινητον ἐκεῖ ἐστὶ, καὶ γέρον ἀνειλθηκεν ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς. Sirac. xlix. 14. The same language is continued in the New Testament of our Saviour's ascension: ἀναληφθῆνει τὸν οὐρανόν, Mark xvi. 19. ὁ ἀναληφθηκεν ἐπὶ θεϊκαῖ τὸν οὐρανόν, Acts i. 11. and singularly, ἀναληφθηκεν, Acts i. 2. and, ἀναληφθηκεν ἐπὶ θεϊκαῖ, Acts i. 92. As therefore ἀναληφθηκεν τοῦ Μωσίου, in the language of the Jews, was not the reception of Moses by the Israelites, but the assumption of his body; so ἀναληφθηκεν τοῦ Χριστοῦ is the ascension of Christ, Luke ix. 51. Wherefore this being the constant notion of the word, it must so be here likewise understood, ἀναληφθηκεν αὐτῷ as the Vulgar Latin (whose authority is pretended against us), assumption est in gloria; rendering it here by the same word by which he always translated ἀναληφθηκεν.
Holy Ghost, for he is distinguished from him, as being justified by the Spirit; not the Father, who was not manifested in the flesh, nor received up into glory. It remaineth therefore, that, whereas the Son is the only person to whom all these clearly and undoubtedly belong, here are jointly attributed unto God, as sure as the name of God is expressed universally in the copies* of the original language, so thus absolutely and subjectively taken must it be understood of Christ.

* For being the Epistle was written in the Greek language, it is enough if all those copies do agree. Nor need we be troubled with the observation of Grotius on the place: 'Suspicious mobis banc lectionem faciunt interpretes veteres, Latinus, Syrus, Arabis, et Ambrosius, qui omnes legerunt ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ θεοῦ.' I confess the Vulgar Latin reads it otherwise than the Greek, Quod manifestum est in carmine; and it cannot be denied but the Syriac, however translated by Transelius, agreeth with the Latin; and both seem to have read δ οὐδὲν instead of οὐδὲν. But the joint consent of the Greek copies and interpreters are above the authority of these two translators; and the Arabic set forth in the Biblia Polyglotta agree thump with them. But that which Grotius hath farther observed is of far greater consideration: 'Addit Hincmarus opusculo 55. ille θεος hic positum a Nestorianis.' For if at first the Greeks read δ ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ θεοῦ, and that δ were altered into οὐδὲν by the Nestorians, then ought we to correct the Greek copy by the Latin, and confess there is not only no force, but not so much as any ground or colour for our arguments. But first, it is no way probable that the Nestorians should find it in the original, and make it οὐδὲν, because that by so doing they had overthrown their own assertion, which was, that God was not incarnate, nor born of the Virgin Mary; that God did not ascend unto heaven, but Christ by the Holy Ghost remaining upon him, καὶ τοῦ ἀνείλθην αὐτῷ χειρόσαμεν. Concil. Ephes. par. i. cap. 17. Secondly, it is certain that they did not make this alteration, because the Catholic Greeks read it θεος; before there were such heretics, so called. 'Nestoriani a Nestorio Episco, Patriarcha Constantinopolitano.' S. August. Heres. Nestorius, from whom that heresy began, was Patriarch of Constantinople after Sisinnius, Sisinnius after Atticus, Atticus after Nectarius, who succeeded Joannes, vulgarly called Chrysostomus. But St. Chrysostom read not δ, but οὐδὲν, as appears by his Commentaries upon the place: Ἰησοῦς θεοῦ γεννηθέντιν εἰς σαρκί, τοιαύτην, δ θεομυρογείς. Orig. 11. And St. Cyril, who by all means opposed Nestorius upon the first appearance of his heresy, wrote two large epistles to the Queens Pulchera and Eudokia, in which he makes great use of this text. In the first, after the repetition of the words as they are now in the Greek copies, he proceeded thus: Τι; δ εν σαρκί φανερωθηκε; δ δέκα, ὅτι πάντα τι καὶ πάντα τι ἐν θεῷ πτωχός: ἔχοντι δύναμιν εἰς τὸν οὐρανόν καὶ τὸν αἰώνα, Θεός: εἰρηναίον ἐν σαρκί, de Hebr. Ep. 1. v. par. ii. p. 124. Wherefore in St. Paul he read θεος, God, and took that God to be the Word. In the second, repeating the same text verbatim, he managed it thus against Nestorius: Εί θεος; δ εν λόγος εισαφθήκει λόγος, καὶ οὐ δύνατο μετέπειτα τὸ εἶναι θεός, ἀλλ' ἐν οἷς ἐν οἷς ἐν διαδεχομένων μεγά λόγων. Αἱ δὲ τοῦ καὶ οἰκειόνομον μεγά λόγων ἡ προηγούμενη τὸν οὐρανόν καὶ καθεξής ἄνθρωπος, οὐδὲν αἰωνίων, οὐδὲν αἰώνιον αἰωνίων, οὐδὲν κατά οἶκον. And in the explanation of the second anathematism, he makes use of no other text but this to prove the hypothetical union, giving it this gloss or exposition: Τῇ θεῷ τι, η χρυσάνθη δ σαρκί; τοιαύτην γένος σαρκί δ εν θεῷ πατρί δόξα, &c. The same he urges in his Scholion de Unigeniti Incarnatione. So also Theodoret contemporary with St. Cyril: θεος γὰρ δι' αὐτῷ καὶ θεος μόνος, καὶ ἀνθρωποις ἐν αὐτῷ μια θεότητι, σαρκί δι' αὐτών μια ψυχή καὶ μια θεοτροφία. In Sam., γὰρ τὸν θεόν ἐρχεται, &c. Ad Timoth. Ep. 1. c. iii. 16. tom iii. p. 478. Thirdly, Hincmarus does not say that the Nestorians put θεος into the Greek text, but that he which put it in was cast out of his bishoprick for a Nestorian. His words are these: 'Quidam nimium ipsis Scripturas verbos invitationem instatuarunt: sicut Macedonius Constantinopolitani Episcopus, qui ad Anastasio Imperatore idea a Civitate expulsus legent, quoniam falsavist Evangelia, et idum Apostoli loce canu ubi dicit, quod apparuit in carne, justicia est in Spiritu, per cognitionem Graecarum literarum. ο in θ modo mutando falsavit. Ubi enim habuit Qui, hoc est οι monosyllabum Graecum, litera
Again, St. Paul speaketh thus to the elders of the church of Ephesus; "Take heed unto yourselves, and to all the flock over which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood." (Acts xx. 28.) In these words this doctrinal proposition is clearly contained, God hath purchased the Church with his own blood. For there is no other word either in or near the text which can be joined with the verb, except the Holy Ghost, to whom the predicate is repugnant, both in respect of the act, or our redemption, and of the means, the blood. If then the Holy Ghost hath not purchased the Church; if he hath not blood to shed for our redemption, and "without shedding of blood there is no remission;" (Heb. ix. 22,) if there be no other word to which, according to the literal construction, the act of purchasing can be applied; if the name of God, most frequently joined to his Church, be immediately and properly applicable by all rules of syntax to the verb which followeth it: then is it of necessity to be received as the subject of this proposition, then is this to be embraced as infallible Scripture-truth, God hath

mutata 0 in Θ vertit; et fecit Θ, id est at essest, Deus apparuist per carnea. Quapropter sanctam Nestorianos fuit expulsus. Hinem. Opus. lv. c. 15. Now whereas Hincmarus says expulsus legitur, we read not in Evagrius, or the Excerpta of Theodotus, or in Ioannes Malala, that Macedonius was cast out of his bishoprick for any such falsation. It is therefore probable that he had it from Liberatus, a deacon of the Church of Carthage, who wrote a Breviary, collected partly out of the ecclesiastical histories and the acts of the Councils, partly out of the relations of such men as he thought fit to believe, extant in the fourth Tome of the Councils. In which, chap. xxix. we have the same relation, only with this difference, that Θ is not turned into Ω, but into Ω, and so Ω becomes not Ω, but Ω. So that the first Greek copies are not said to have read it Ω, but Ω, and so not to have relation to the mystery, but to the person of Christ; and therefore this makes nothing for the Vulgar Latin. Secondly, whereas Hincmarus says there was but one letter changed, no such mutation can of Ω make ΘΕΩΣ, it may ΩΕΙ, as we read in Liberatus; and then this is nothing to the Greek text. The "ly, Macedonius was no Nestorian, but Anastasius an Euchitian, and he ejected him, not [some of the earlier editions omit not] as he did other Catholic bishops under the pretense of Nestorianism, but for other reasons. However, Macedonius could not falsify all the Greek copies, when as well those which were before his time, as those which were written since, all acknowledge ΘΕΩΣ. And if he had been ejected for substituting ΘΕΩΣ; without question Anastasius would have taken care for the restoring Ω, which we find not in any copy. It remaineth therefore that the Nestorians did not falsify the text by reading ΘΕΩΣ, but that the ancient Greek fathers read it so; and, consequently, being the Greek is the original, this Lession must be acknowledged authentical.

* Τιν ἔκλατεν τῷ ΘΕΟЮ. Forthouth the Church be properly the Church of Christ, Matt. xvi. 18. Col. i. 24. and in the plural we read once Αἱ ἔκλατεν τῷ Χριστῷ, Rom. xi. 16. as we do of the churches of God, 1 Cor. xi. 16. of Thess. i. 4. 1 Thess. ii. 14. yet Αἱ ἔκλατεν τῷ ΘΕΟЮ, is frequently used; as, 1 Cor. i. 2. x. 32. xiv. 9. xi. 22. 2 Cor. i. 1. 1 Tim. iii. 15. but Αἱ ἔκλατεν τῷ Χριστῷ not once named. And therefore we have no reason to alter it in this text, or to fancy it first written ΧΡΙΣΣΤΟΥ, and then made ΘΕΟΥ, when it is so often written ΘΕΟΥ, not ΧΡΙΣΣΤΟΥ. Some MSS. as the Alexandrian, Cantabrigian, and New Coll. MSS. read it τῷ Κυρίῳ, and the interpreter of Irenæus, regere Ecclesiam Domini, l. iii. c. 14. Others represent Κυρίῳ τῷ ΘΕΟΥ, followed by the Arabic interpreter; which makes not at all against our argument, but, because in this particular unusual, not like to be true. The Syriac translating it ΧΡΙΣΣΤΟΥ, (ΣΥΡΙΑΚΟΣ not DOMINO, as it is in the Latin translation) gives rather an exposition than a version.
purchased the Church with his own blood. But this God may and must be understood of Christ; it may, because he hath; it must, because no other person which is called God hath so purchased the Church. We "were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, but with the precious blood of Christ." (1 Pet. i. 18, 19.) With this price were we bought; and therefore it may well be said, that Christ our God "hath purchased us with his own blood." But no other person which is, or is called, God, can be said so to have purchased us, because it is an act belonging properly to the mediatorship; and "there is but one Mediator between God and men:" (1 Tim. ii. 5.) and the Church is "sanctified, through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all." (Heb. x. 10.) Nor can the expression of this act, peculiar to the Son, be attributed to the Father, because this blood signifies death: and though the Father be omnipotent, and can do all things, yet he cannot die. And though it might be said that he purchased us, because he gave his Son to be a ransom for us, yet it cannot be said that he did it by "his own blood:" for then it would follow, that he gave not his Son, or that the Son and the Father were the same person. Beside, it is very observable, that this particular phrase of "his own blood," is in the Scripture put by way of opposition to the blood of another;* and howsoever we may attribute the acts of the Son unto the Father, because sent by him; yet we cannot but acknowledge that the blood and death was of another than the Father. "Not by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood, he entered in once into the holy place;" (Heb. ix. 12.) and whereas "the high-priest entered every year with the blood of others, Christ appeared once to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself." (Ibid. 25, 26.) He then which purchased us wrought it by his own blood, as a high-priest opposed to the Aaronical, who made atonement by the blood of others. But the Father tooketh no priestly office, neither could he be opposed to the legal priest, as not dying himself, but giving another. Wherefore whosoever the Father and the Son are described together as working the salvation of man, the blood by which it is wrought is attributed to the Son, not to the Father: as when St. Paul speaketh of the "redemption that is in Jesus Christ, whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness;" (Rom. iii. 24, 25.)† his

* ἰδιὸς αἷμας is opposed to ἰδιὸς ἀλλήτορος.
And therefore it is observable, that the author of the Racorian Catechism, in his Answer to this place of Scripture, doth never make the least mention of ἰδιὸς or proprium, but only affirms that the blood of Christ may be called the blood of God the Father; and to idem verbis did Socinus answer to Wickus before, but in his whole Answer concealed the force of ἰδιὸς; whereas the strength of our argument lies in those words, ἵνα τῷ ἰδίῳ αἵματι, or ἵνα τῷ ἀρχαίῳ αἵματι, as the Alexandrian MSS. and one mentioned by Beza, ἵνα τῷ αἵματι του ἰδίου.

† ὃς πρεσβύτευτος ὁ Θεὸς ἡ λαυτασίαν διὰ τῆς πιστεύσεως τοῦ αὐτοῦ αἵματος, εἰς ἱδαιμόν τὴν διακοσμόν αὐτοῦ.
that is, his own righteousness, hath reference to God the Father; but his, that is, his own blood, must be referred to Christ the Son. When he glorifieth the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, attributing unto him, that he hath blessed, elected, predestinated, adopted, accepted us, made known unto us the mystery of his will, and gathered us together in one; in the midst of this acknowledgment be brings in "the Beloved in whom we have redemption through his blood," (Eph. i. 6, 7.) as that which cannot be attributed to the Father. Christ hath blessed us; and the apostle saith the Father hath blessed us which is true, "because he sent his Son to bless us." (Acts iii. 26.) Christ hath made known unto us the will of his Father; and the apostle saith, the Father "hath made known unto us the mystery of his will;" (Eph. i. 9.) because he sent his Son to reveal it. Christ hath delivered us; and the Father is said to "deliver us from the power of darkness;" (Col. i. 13.) not that we are twice delivered, but because the Father delivereth us by his Son. And thus these general acts are familiarly attributed to them both; but still a difference must be observed and acknowledged in the means and manner of the performance of these acts. For though it is true, that the Father and the Son revealed to us the will of God; yet it is not true that the Father revealed it by himself to us; but that the Son did so, it is. They both deliver us from sin and death; but the Son "gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us;" (Gal. i. 4.) the Father is not, cannot be said to have given himself, but his Son; and therefore the apostle giveth thanks unto the Father, "who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son, in whom we have redemption through his blood." (Col. i. 13, 14.) Now this blood is not only the blood of the new Covenant, and consequently of the Mediator; but the nature of this Covenant is such, that it is also a Testament, and therefore the blood must be the blood of the testator; "for where a testament is there must also of necessity be the death of the testator." (Heb. ix. 16.) But the testator which died is not, cannot be, the Father, but the Son; and consequently the blood is the blood of the Son, not of the Father. It remaineth therefore that God, who purchased the Church with his own blood, is not the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, or any other which is called God, but only Jesus Christ the Son of God, and God. And thus have I proved the first of the three assertions, that the name of God absolutely taken and placed subjectively, is sometimes to be understood of Christ.

The second, That the name of God invested by way of excellency with an article, is attributed in the Scriptures unto Christ, may be thus made good. He which is called Emmanuel, is named God by way of excellency; for that name, saith St. Matthew, "being interpreted, is God with us:" (Matt. i. 23.)
and in that interpretation the Greek* article is prefixed. But Christ is called Emmanuel: “that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying, Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel.” (Ibid. 22, 23.) Therefore he is that “God with us,” which is expressed by way of excellency, and distinguished from all other who are any ways honoured with that name: for it is a vain imagination to think that Christ is called Emmanuel, but that he is not what he is called: as “Moses built an altar, and called the name of it Jehovah Nissi,” (Exod. xvii. 15.) and “Gideon” another called “Jehovah Shalom;” (Judg. vi. 24.) and yet neither altar was Jehovah: as Jerusalem was called “the Lord our righteousness;” (Jer. xxxiii. 16.) and yet that city was not the Lord. Because these two notions, which are conjoined in the name Emmanuel, are severally true of Christ. First, he is Emmanuel, that is, with us, for he hath “dwelt among us:” (John i. 14.) and when he parted from the earth, he said to his disciples, “I am with you always, even to the end of the world.” (Matt. xxviii. 20.) Secondly, he is El, and that name was given him, as the prophet testifieth, “For unto us a child is born, unto us a Son is given: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, the mighty God.” (Isa. ix. 6) He then who is both properly called El, that is, God, and is also really Emmanuel, that is, with us, he must infallibly be that Emmanuel who is “God with us.” Indeed, if the name Emmanuel were to be interpreted by way of a proposition, ‘God is with us,’ as “the Lord our righteousness,” and “the Lord is there,” (Ezek. xlviii. 35.) must be understood where they are the names of Jerusalem; then should it have been the name not of Christ but of his Church: and if we under the Gospel had been called so, it could have received no other interpretation in reference to us. But being it is not ours, but our Saviour’s name, it bears no kind of similitude with those objected appellations, and is as properly and directly to be attributed to the Messias as the name of Jesus. Wherefore it remaineth that Christ be acknowledged God with us, according to the evangelical interpretation, with an expression of that excellency which belongeth to the supreme Deity.

Again, he to whom St. Thomas said, “My Lord and my God,” (John xx. 28.) or rather, ‘The Lord of me, and the God of me;’ he is that God before whose name the Greek article is prefixed, which they require, by way of excellency. But St. Thomas spake these words to Christ.§ For Jesus spake unto

* Και ἐκλέκτος ὑπὸ ὅρμα αὐτοῦ Ἔμμανουθ, ὁ ἀντι προφητευμένος, Μνθ' ἐμαύν ὁ Θεός.
† Εὐ καὶ μεθ' ἐμαύν ῥημαί.
‡ Ἑλλας τι.
§ I. Iesus it hath been answered, that these words are not to be referred to Christ, but to God the Father. So Theodorus Mopsuestenus in his Commentary on St. John: ‘Thomas quidem, cum sic credidisset, Dominus meus et Deus meus dicit, non ipsum Domum mæm et Deum dicens non enim resurrectionis scientia docebat
Thomas, "and Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God." And in these words * he made confession of

et Deum esse eum qui resurrexit), sed quia pro miraculo facta Deum collaudat. Sugg. V. Collat. 4 As if Thomas had intended only to have praised God for raising Christ. But first, it is plain that Thomas answered Christ; secondly, that he spake unto him, that is to Christ, and consequently, that the words which he spake belong to Christ; thirdly, that the words are a confession of his faith in Christ, as our Saviour doth acknowledge. And whereas Francisca Davids did object, that in a Latin Testament he found not et dixit ei, but et dixit without ei, it is sufficiently disconvenienced by Socinus in his epistle, affirming that all the Greek and Latin copies had it, except that one which he had found: and therefore the omission must be imputed to the negligence of the printer.

...of Thomas, did attribute the name of God to our Saviour with an article. Indeed to me there is no doubt but St. Thomas in these words did make as true and real a confession of his faith concerning the person of Christ, as St. Peter did, when he "answered and said, Thou art Christ, the Son of the living God." Matt. xvi. 16. and, consequently, that he is Christ, and so recite do as properly belong unto him, as St. Peter's di XeXis is. As therefore Christ saith to his disciples, You call me the Logos, and I say, and you say well, for I am so. As for the objection of Socinus, that though LOGIS be here spoken of Christ, and that with an article the, yet that article is of no force because of the following pronoun mou, is most groundless: for the article the cannot have relation to the following pronoun mou, nisi in the apostaticotonomia tivn abhov en evde in myn evde kai abhov paradidinti, as that great critic Apollonius Alexandrinus observes, I. i. de Sytax. s. 30. And if for mou, it were eis idios, yet even that article would belong to theis, for in these words, de theis eis idios, neither article belongs to idios, but both to theis: for, as the same critic observes in the same case, the abhov theis eis idios mou tivn abhov anaphretan oik othe ev tivn, eis idios mou, patinaxenetai ti ete tivn abhov, idios mou tivn tivn antirrwmia phrjebai. So that if the theis be the supreme God, then the theis mou must be my supreme God: as when David speaks to God eis theis, eis theis mou, pro pei ebriv. Psal. Ixii. 1. the latter is of as great importance as the former. So again, Psal. xlix. 5. eis phrjebai mou kai mou mou, and xlv. 5. eis idios mou ontos, eis theis idios mou, and Ixii. 12. eis theis mou, kai eis theis mou, eis theis mou. I dare not therefore say to any person that he is eis theis mou, except that I do believe that he is eis theis. Wherefore I conclude that the words of St. Thomas, di XeXis mou kai eis theis mou, are as fully and highly significative as those of David: PrQeXis tivn theis eis theis mou, eis theis mou kai eis theis mou, Psal. v. 2, or those, de theis mou, de koi mou, de koi mou, de koi mou, Psal. xxxi. 25. or those, that will not are joined together, eis theis mou, eis theis mou, Psal. xxxxi. 3. or those of St. John in the Revelation, iv. 11. as they lie in the Alexandrian and Complutensian copies: Aixeis eis, de koi mou, de theis mou o Aogn, kai ethere, &c. or that lastly in the most ancient hymn, Koi eis theis, de theis tivn theis —— eis phrjebai mou.
his faith; for our Saviour replied, "Thomas, because thou hast seen me, thou hast believed." (Ibid. 29.) And let him be the Lord of me, and the God of me, who was the Lord and the God of an apostle.

Nor have we only their required testimony of Christ's supreme Divinity, but also an addition of verity asserting that supremacy. For he is not only termed the God, but, for a farther certainty, the true God; and the same apostle, who said "the Word was God," lest any cavil should arise by any omission of an article, though so frequently neglected by all, even the most accurate authors, hath also assured us that he is the true God. For, "we know (saith he) that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding that we may know him that is true: and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life."* (1 John v. 20.) As therefore we read in the Acts, of the "wor. which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ; he is Lord of all:" (x. 36.) where it is acknowledged that the Lord of all is by the pronoun he + joined unto Jesus Christ, the immediate, not unto God, the remote antecedent; so likewise here the true God is to be referred unto Christ, who stands next unto it, not unto the Father, spoken of indeed in the text, but at a distance. There is no reason alleged why these last words should not be referred to the Son of God, but only this, that in grammatical construction they may be ascribed to the Father. As when "another king arose which knew not Joseph, the same dealt subtilly with us and our kindred;" (Acts vii. 18, 19.) the same referreth us not to Joseph, but to the king of Egypt. Whereas, if nothing else can be objected but a possibility in respect of the grammatical construction, we may as well say that Joseph dealt subtilly with his kindred as the king of Egypt; for whatsoever the incongruity be in history, it makes no solecism in the syntax. Wherefore being Jesus Christ is the immediate antecedent to which the relative may properly be referred; being the Son of God is he of whom the apostle chiefly speaketh; being this is rendered as a reason why "we are in him that is true," by being "in his Son," to wit, because that Son "is the true God;" being in the language of St. John the constant title of our Saviour is "eternal life;" being all these reasons may be drawn out of the text itself, why the title of the true God should be attributed to the Son, and no one reason can be raised from thence, why it should be referred to the Father: I can conclude no less, than that our Saviour is the true God, so styled in the Scriptures by way of eminence, with an article prefixed, as the

* Οὐτίς ἔστιν ὁ ἀληθινὸς Ἐστιν τις ὁ ἀληθινός αἰών. 'Hic agitur non solum de vero Deo, sed de illo uno vero Deo, ut articulis in Graeco additius indicat.' Catech. Racov. sect. iv. c. 1.
† Ościc for sc, as Acts viii. 26. ἡπε εἰκενεκαίει οὐ Πάσιν ἠθνῖν ἑρμος, quae est deserta.
first Christian writers which immediately followed the apostles did both speak and write.*

But, thirdly, Were there no such particular place in which the article were expressed, yet shall we find such adjuncts fixed to the name of God when attributed unto Christ, as will prove equivalent to an article, or whatsoever may express the supreme Majesty. As when St. Paul doth magnify the Jews, "out of whom, as concerning the flesh, Christ came, who is over all, God blessed for ever, Amen." (Rom. ix. 5.) First, it is evident that Christ is called God,† even he who came of


† Tertullian,

And the exposition of Pliny to Trajan testifies the same, l. x. ep. 97. 'Quod essent statio die ante lucem convenire, cumque Christo quasi Deo dicere.'

† Though some would leave God out of the text, upon this pretence, because St. Cyrilian, in lb. ii. ad Judasos, § 6. citing this place, leaves it out. But that must needs be by the negligence of some of the scribes, as is evident. First, because Manutius and Morellius found the word Deus in their copies, and both the MSS. which Pamelius used acknowledge it. Secondly, because St. Cyrilian produceth the text to prove quod Deus Christus; and reckneth it among the rest in which he is called expressly God. Thirdly, because Tertullian, whose disciple St. Cyrilian professed himself, did both so read it, and so use it: 'Solum autem Christum potero Deus dicere, sicut idem Apostolus, ex quibus Christus, qui est (inquit) Deus super omnia benevolentiam in aeternum.' Adv. Prax. c. 13. And again in the same book: 'Hunc et Paulus conspexit, nec tamen Patrem visit. Nomine, inquit, vidi Jesum? Christum autem et ipsum Deum cognominavit: Quorum Patres et ex quibus Christus secundum carnem, qui est per (vel super) omnia Deus benevolentiam in aeternum.' c. 15. Novatian de Trinitate, c. 13. used the same argument. And another ancient author very expressly: 'Rogo te, Deum credas esse Filium, an non? Sine dubio, responsurus esse, Deum; quia etsi negare volueris, sanctis Scripturis convinceris, dicente Apostolo, Ex quibus Christus secundum carnem, qui est super omnia Deus benevolentiam in aeternum.' So also St. Augustin: 'Non solum Patre Deus est, sicut etiam omnibus Hareticis concedit, sed etiam Filius; quod, velint nolint, coguntur fateri, dicente Apostolo, Qui est super omnia Deus benevolentiam in aeternum.' De Trin. l ii. c. 13. et contra Faustum, l. xvi. c. 15. As for the objection, that St. Chrysostom doth not signify in his commentaries that he read θεον in the text: I answer, that neither does he signify that he read ὑπὸ τοῦ Πατρὸς, for in his exposition he passeth over wholly ὑπὸ τοῦ Πατρὸς, but it doth not follow that he read not ὑπὸ τοῦ Πατρὸς in the text. But when he repeats the words of the apostle, he agrees wholly with the Greek text, ὑπὸ τοῦ Πατρὸς, for κατὰ τὸν Σωτῆρα τοῦ Πατρὸς, and doth not totally as Lachmann, and Theodoret, who lived not long after him, both not only acknowledge the words, but give a full exposition of them: ἑκάστης μὲν ἡ τοῦ κατὰ τὰ σάρκα παρόδου παραδόθη τῷ δεισίδου Χριστῷ τοῦ δεισίδου ἀλλ' ἄλλην ἐν τῷ παραισχομένῳ, τῷ γεγομένῳ κατὰ βόρειον κατὰ δυστέρα, κατὰ τὸν διηθετήταρ θεόν καὶ παραδόθη σαρκὶ καὶ ψυχῆς, τὸ ψυχονομικὸν θεὸν καὶ παραδόθη σαρκὶ καὶ ψυχῆς, τὸ κατὰ σάρκα, κατὰ τὸν Βορείτα, τὸν ἀλλήν κατὰ τὰ σάρκα κατὰ τὸν Δυστέρα, κατὰ τὸν Βορείτα, τὸν ἀλλήν κατὰ τὰ σάρκα κατὰ τὸν Δυστέρα, κατὰ τὸν Βορείτα, τὸν ἀλλήν κατὰ τὰ σάρκα κατὰ τὸν Δυστέρα, κατὰ τὸν Βορείτα, τὸν ἀλλήν κατὰ τὰ σάρκα κατὰ τὸν Δυστέρα, κατὰ τὸν Βορείτα, τὸν ἀλλήν κατὰ τὰ σάρκα κατὰ τὸν Δυστέρα, κατὰ τὸν Βορείτα, τὸν ἀλλήν κατὰ τὰ σάρκα κατὰ τὸν Δυστέρα, κατὰ τὸν Βορείτα, τὸν ἀλλήν κατὰ τὰ σάρκα κατὰ τὸν Δυστέρα, κατὰ τὸν Βορείτα, τὸν ἀλλήν κατὰ τὰ σάρκα κατὰ τὸν Δυστέρα, κατὰ τὸν Βορείτα, τὸν ἀλλήλοις καὶ τὸν Άσσαλσφάτα.
the Jews, though not as he came of them, that is, according to the flesh, which is here distinguished from his Godhead. Secondly, he is so called God as not to be any of the many gods, but the one supreme or most high God; 

Thirdly, he hath also added the title of blessed, which of itself elsewhere signifieth the supreme God, and was always used by the Jews to express that one God of Israel. Wherefore it cannot be conceived St. Paul should write unto the Christians, most of which then were converted Jews or proselytes, and give unto our Saviour not only the name of God, but also add that title which they always gave unto the one God of Israel, and to none but him; except he did intend they should believe him to be the same God whom they always in that manner, and under that notion, had adored. As therefore the apostle speaketh of “the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which is blessed for evermore”; (2 Cor. xi. 31.) of “the Creator, who is blessed for ever, Amen;” (Rom. i. 25.) and thereby doth signify the supreme Deity, which was so glorified by the Israelites; and doth also testify that we worship the same God under the Gospel, which they did under the Law: so doth he speak of Christ in as sublime a style, “who is over all, God blessed for ever, Amen;” (Rom. ix. 5.) and thereby doth testify the equality, or rather identity, of his Deity. If we consider the scope of the apostle, which is to magnify the Israelites by the enumeration of such privileges as belonged peculiarly to that chosen nation (the most eminent of which was contained in the genealogy of our Saviour), we shall find their glory did not consist in this, that Christ at first was born of them a man, and afterwards made a God, for what great honour could accrue to them by the nativity of a man, whose

* To κατα σάρκα opposed unto το κατά πνεύμα. As Rom. i. 3. where κατα σάρκα is used without an article, because κατά πνεύμα, to which it is opposed, followeth, and so the opposition is of itself apparent. But here being κατά πνεύμα is not to be expressed in the following words, the article το, signifying of itself a distinction or exception, sheweth that it is to be understood.

† As Mark xiv. 61. Εδώ Χριστὸς ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ θεοῦ εἶπεν; “Art thou the Christ the Son of the blessed? Wherein the Vulgar attribute is taken for God himself, which is usually added to the name of God, as 2 Cor. xi. 31. ὁ θεὸς, ὃς εἰνεκὼς εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα, τους αἰῶνας τος αἰῶνας ἐκείνος, or to any description of him, as Ἐκείνος εἰς τὸ κτίσμα παρὰ τοῦ κτίσματος, εἰς τὸν εὐλογητὸν εἰς τοὺς αἰῶνας, Ἀμήν. Rom. i. 23. And these expressions of St. Paul are consonant to the ancient custom of the Jews, who, when the priests in the sanctuary rehearsed the name of God, were wont to answer, Blessed be his name for ever. Insomuch as the Blessed One did signify in their language as much as the Holy One, and both, or either of them, the God of Israel. Hence are so frequent in the Rabbinus, καὶ πρὸς καὶ τὸν Ἃγιον ὁ ἅγιος, and καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἁγιόν, that they are written by abbreviation καὶ ἰδίως καὶ τὸ ἅγιον, καὶ τὸ ἃγιον, Blessed be God for ever, Amen and Amen.
Godhead is referred not to his birth, but to his death? whereas this is truly honourable, and the peculiar glory of that nation, that the most high God blessed for ever should " take on him the seed of Abraham," and come out of the Israelites "as concerning the flesh." Thus every way it doth appear, the apostle spake of Christ as of the one eternal God.

He then who was the Word which in the beginning was with God, and was God, he whose glory Esaias saw as the glory of the God of Israel; he who is styled Alpha and Omega, without any restriction or limitation; he who was truly subsisting in the form of God, and equal with him before he was in the nature of man; he who being man is frequently called God, and that in all those ways by which the supreme Deity is expressed: he had a being before Christ was conceived by the Virgin Mary, and the being which he had was the one eternal and indivisive divine essence, by which he always was truly, really, and properly God. But all these are certainly true of him in whom we believe, Jesus Christ, as hath been proved by clear testimonies of the sacred Scriptures. Therefore the being which Christ had before he was conceived of the Virgin, was not any created, but the divine essence; nor was he any creature, but the true eternal God: which was our second assertion, particularly opposed to the Arian heresy.*

The third assertion, next to be demonstrated, is, That the divine essence which Christ had as the Word, before he was conceived, was not of himself, but by communication from God the Father. For this is not to be denied, that there can be but one essence properly divine, and so but one God of infinite wisdom, power, and majesty; that there can be but one person originally of himself subsisting in that infinite Being,† because a plurality of persons so subsisting would necessarily infer a multiplicity of gods; that the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ is originally God, as not

* This heresy was so called from two who bare the same name, and fell at the same time into the same opinion; one of them being a presbyter, and rector of a church in Alexandria, the other a deacon: as Alexander the bishop of Alexandria, in his epistle extant in Theodoret: Et si η προλογεταιτης αποφυγει, απο προειρετα μας, Αριστος, απο ἡ πρεσβυρον έλεγα, Et quia, "Arion, Πτερον, &c. Ex. Hist. L. i. c. 3. an. In the epistle of the Arrians to Alexander, he is reckoned amongst the Presbyters: "Αριστος, Αρχιλαχτος, Αρχιλαχτος, Καστανος, Σαραπαντος, Αριστος, περιεματαρυς. Of these two Phoebeus contra Arianum. c. 20. " Παρει τιλιμ έσσε μην αναρχικον, ut Sabelius, aut duos substantiarum, ut Arius." The heresy is so well known, that it needs no explication: and indeed it cannot be better described than in the anathematism of the Nicene Council: Τοις δε λεγονται, η πιει δε εικι η, και πιει γνωριμαι εικι η, και διε ιακ ον διανα κινητο, ει εν εκπληκσι εγκαινης δε εικιος φασκοντας ειπα, η καταυστον, ε νεκρω, η τρισεν τω νου τω Σωβ. τοιοτος απο-ς εσεχεσι το ελθουντα και "Αποστολικον Εκ- κλησια. Thus translated by St. Hilary: " Εοις autem qui dixim, erat quando non erat, et autemnam nasceretur non erat, et quod de non exstantibus factus est, vel ex alia substantia aut essentia, dicentes esse conversibilium et immutabilia Deum hos anathematizat Catholica Ecclesia, de Synod. c. 84.

receiving his eternal being from any other. Wherefore it necessarily followeth that Jesus Christ, who is certainly not the Father, cannot be a person subsisting in the divine nature originally of himself; and consequently, being we have already proved that he is truly and properly the eternal God, he must be understood to have the Godhead communicated to him by the Father, who is not only eternally, but originally God. "All things whatsoever the Father hath are mine,"* (John xvi. 15.) saith Christ; because in him is the same fulness of the Godhead, and more than that the Father cannot have: but yet in that perfect and absolute equality there is notwithstanding this disparity, that the Father hath the Godhead not from the Son, or any other, whereas the Son hath it from the Father: Christ is the true God and eternal life; but that he is so, is from the Father: "for as the Father hath life in himself, so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself," (John v. 26.)† not by participation, but by communication. It is true, our Saviour was so in the form of God, that he thought it no robbery to be equal with God: but when the Jews sought to kill him because he "made himself equal with God," he answered them, "Verily, verily, I say unto you, The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father do:" (John v. 18, 19.)‡ by that connexion of his operations, shewing the reception of his essence; and by the acknowledgment of his power, confessing his substance from the Father. From whence he which was equal, even in that equality confesseth a priority, saying, "The Father is greater than I." (John xiv. 28.)§ The Son equal in respect of his nature, the Father greater in reference to the communication of the Godhead. "I know him

---

* Πάντα εστι Χριστός τοις υιοις ουκ εστιν, ὁ ρήματα των υιοις τοτε εστιν, οδοι αυτον ουκ ετιν, ουκ ετιν υιοις, ουκ ετινι ουκ ἐνα, ουκ ετινι και ουκ ετινι και ουκ ετινι εις των υιοις των υιοις. S. Greg. Naz. Orat. 2. de Filio.

† Hoc dixit, Vitam dedit Filio ut haberet eam in semetipso, tanquam diceret Pater, qui est vita in semetipso, genuit Filium qui esset vita in semetipso. Pro eo enim quod est genuit, voluit intelligi dedit, tanquam si cuiquam diceresmus, dedit tibi Deus esse." S. August. Tract. 19. in Ioan. § 13. Et Paulus post: "Quid ergo Filio dedit? dedit ei ut Filii esset; genuit ut vita esset; hoc est, dedit habere ei vitam in semetipso, ut esset vita non egens vita, ne participando intelligatur habere vitam. Si enim participando haberet vitam non in semetipso, possit et annullando esse sine vita: hoc in Filio ne accipias, ne cogites, ne credas. Manet ergo Pater vita, manus et Filii vita. Pater vita in semetipso, non a Filio; Filii vita in semetipso, sed a Patre." Ibid. So again, de Trinit. l. i. c. 12. "Ple-

rumque dicit, dedit mihi Pater, in quo vult intelligi quod cum genneraret Pater; non ut tanquam jam existenteo et non habenti dederit aliquod, sed ipsum dedisse ut haberet, genuisse ut esset."

‡ *Tanquam diceret, Quid scandalizasti estis quia Patrem meum dixi Deum, quia aequalis me facio Deo? Ut sum aequalis, ut non ille a me, sed ego ab illo simil. Hoc enim intelligitur in his verbis, Non potest Filium a se facere quicquam, &c. hoc est quicquid Filii habet ut faciat, a Patre habet ut faciat. Quare habet a Patre ut faciat? quia a Patre habet ut possit, quia a Patre habet ut sit. Filii enim hoc est esse quod posse." S. August. Tract. 20. in Ioan. § 4. Paulus post: "Hoc est, Non potest Filii a se quicquam facere, quod esset, si diceret, non est Filii a se. Etenim si Filii est, natus est; si natus est, ab ilium est de quo natus est." Ibid. § 8.

And being the divine nature, as it is absolutely immaterial and incorporeal, is also indivisible, Christ cannot have any part of it only communicated unto him, but the whole, by which he must be acknowledged coessential, + of the same substance

* So St. Augustin hath observed: 'Ab ipso, inquit, sun, quia Filius de Patre; et quicquid est filius, de illo est cujus est filius. Ideo Dominum Jesum dicimus Deum de Deo; Patrem non dicimus Deum de Deo, sed tantum Deum. Et dicimus Dominum Jesum lumen de lumine; Patrem non dicimus lumen de lumine, sed tantum lumen. Ad hoc ergo pertinet quod dixit, 'Ab ipso sun.' Tract. 31. in Ioan. §. 4. From hence then did the Nicene Council gather those words of their Creed: 'Et ex patre, et ex filio, et ex Spiritu Sancto.' But not immediately, for they were partly in some of the Oriental Creeds before; as appeareth by that confession which Eusebius presented to the Council, as containing what he had believed and taught ever since his baptism, in which he had these words: καὶ εἰς ἑνὸς Κυρίου ἑνὸς Χριστοῦ, τῷ τῶν Θεόν λόγῳ, Εὐαγγελία τῆς ἡμῶν. And as Eusebius calls him Life of Life, so others, Power of Power, and Wisdom of Wisdom. 'Ideo Christus virtus et sapientia Dei, quia de Patre virtute et sapientia etiam ipse virtutis et sapientiae est, sicut lumen de Patre lumine, et etsi vitae apud Deum Patrem utique fontem vitae.' S. August. de Trin. l. vii. c. 3. And not only so, but Essence of Essence. 'Pater et filius simul una sapientia, quia una essentia; et singulatim sapientia de sapientia, sicut essentia de essentia.' Ibid. c. 2.

† 'Omnipotentia, which is coessential or con-substantial, is not to be taken of a part of the divine essence, as if the Son were a part of the essence of the Father, and so of the same nature with him; which was the opinion of the Manichees. οἷς ἐκ Οὐκαλετής προβλήθη τὸ γένεσι τοῦ πατρὸς Θεολογίαν. οἷς ἐκ Μακρεῖας μακροῦ ἡμοῦ σιν τοῦ Πατρὸς τὸ γένεσιν εὐπρόσωπας. As Arius in his epistle to Alexander; by the interpretation of St. Hilary. 'Nec ut Valentinius, prolationem natum Patris commentatus est; nec, sicut Manicheens, partem unius substantiae Patris natum exposuit.' De Trin. l. vi. c. 9. 'Quod Hilarus ita Latine reddidit, tamen ἡμοῦ σιν id significaret, quod partem substantiae habet ex toto resectam, says Dionysius Petavius, without any reason; for St. Hilary clearly translates ἡμοῦ σιν barely unius substantiae, and it was in the original αἰώνιος ἡμοῦ σιν, which he expressed by partem unius substantiae. Under this notion first the Arians pretended to refuse the name ἡμοῦ σιν, as Arius in the same epistle signifieth, lest thereby they should admit a real composition and division in the Deity; Et τὸ ἐν γαστρὶ, καὶ τὸ ἐν Πατρὶ ἔδώκα, ἡμοῖς τῷ Θεόν καὶ τῷ τάξει ἐπὶ τους κοινών, τοσοῦτος ίδεῖ τὸν Πατρὶ, καὶ διαφέρει, καὶ τετοιται. And St. Jerome testifieth thus much not only of Arius and Eunomius, but also of Origen before them: 'Habetur Dialogus apud Gracios Origem, et Candidi Valenti- manae Heresecos defenseris. Quos duas Andabatas digilibantes spectasse me fatare. Dicit Candidus, Filium de Patris esse substantia, errans in eo quod προ- βολαν ass certó: Regione Origenes, iuxta Arianum et Eunomium, repugnant cum vel proututum esse vel natura, ne Deus Pater dividatur in partes.' Apul. l. ii. in Ruffin. col. 737. And therefore Eusebius, bishop of Caesarea, refused not to subscribe to the Nicean Creed, being so interpreted as that objection might be taken away: τὸ ἐν τοῖς ὑπολογισταῖς, ἐν συναφείᾳ τοῖς ὑπολογισταῖς ἀναλογίας τοῦ ἐν Πατρὶ; τοῦ μὲν τοῦ Πατρὶ, ἡμοῖς, οὐ μὴν ἐν τῷ μακρῳ ἑμοῖς τοῦ Πατρὶ. Inter On, Athanas. de Deoet. Nic. Suy. §. 5. Upon this confession he subscribed to that clause begotten of the substance of the Father, which was not in his own Creed. And again: Oiota δέ καὶ τὸ ἡμοῦ σιν, τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ τιν, ἠγαθοσιμίως ὁ λόγος συνιστοῦντος κατὰ τῶν συνιστῶν τρεῖς, οὐδε τοῦ ἡμοῦ σιν ἑπεξετασθείς, οὔτε γὰρ κατὰ διαφέρειν τοῖς ἑπεξετασθείς, οὔτε κατὰ ἀποτομημα, οὔτε,
with the Father; as the Council of Nice determined, and the ancient fathers before them taught. Hence appeareth the truth of those words of our Saviour, which raised a second motion in the Jews to stone him; “ I and the Father are one.” (John x. 30.) where the plurality of the verb, and the neutrality of the noun, with the distinction of their persons, speak a perfect identity of their essence. And though Christ say, “the Father is in me, and I in him;” (Ibid. 38.) yet withal he saith, “I came out from the Father;” (John xvi. 28, xvii. 8.) by the former shewing the Divinity of his essence, by the latter the origination of himself. We must not look upon the divine nature as sterile,* but rather acknowledge and admire the fecundity and communicability of itself, upon which the creation of the World dependeth: God making all things by his Word, to whom he first communicated that omnipotence which is the cause of all things. And this may suffice for the illustration of our third assertion, that the Father hath communicated the divine essence to the Word, who is that Jesus who is the Christ.

The fourth assertion followeth, That the communication of the divine essence by the Father, is the generation of the Son; and Christ, who was eternally God, not from himself, but from the Father, is the eternal Son of God. That God always had a Son, appeareth by Agur’s question in the Proverbs of Solomon; “Who hath established all the ends of the earth; what is his name? and what is his Son’s name? if thou canst tell.” (xxx. 4.) And it was the chief design of Mahomet to deny this truth, because he knew it was not otherwise possible to prefer himself before our Saviour. One prophet may be

---

*Ibid. § 7. Upon this acknowledgment he was persuaded to subscribe to the other clause also, (added to that Creed which he himself gave in to the Council) being of one substance with the Father: which clause was inserted by the Council, at the instance of Constantine the emperor. Now as the Manichees made use of the word ὅμοιος to express their errors concerning the nature of God and the person of Christ; so the ancient fathers, before the Nicene Council, had used the same in a true catholic sense, to express the unity in essence of the Father and the Son; as appeareth by the confession of the same Eusebius: Ἐνεπὶ καὶ τῷ παλαιῷ δόγματι τοις, καὶ ἐπιτείμισι ἐπιστάσεως, καὶ συρρύγασις ἐρωμαν, ἐπὶ τῆς τοῦ σωτῆρος καὶ μονὰς Συκολαύς τῷ τοῦ ἡμιούσιον συγχρησαμένως ἤσσαστ. ibid. § 7. Wherefore the other Eusebius of Nicomedia, understanding the ancient catholic sense, confessed, that if they believed Christ to be the true begotten, and not created, Son of God, they must acknowledge him ἀμαντόν, which the Arians endeavoured to make so odious; and therefore the Council in opposition to them determined it: 'Quid est alud cur Hominon Patri nolunt Filium dici, nisi quia nolunt veram Dei Filiam, sicut Auctor ipsorum Eusebus Nicomediensis Epistola sua prodict, diecns, Si verum, inquit, Dei Filium, et in creatum dicens, Homoisation cum Patre incipiamus confiteri. Hac cum lecta esset Epistola in Concilio Niceno, hoc verbum in Tractatu fidei posuerunt Patres, quod id viderant adversaries esse formidum, ut tamen evasit ab ipsis gladio ipsis nefandae causa heræsis amputaret.' S. Ambros. l. iii. de Fide, c. 13. De voce ὁμοιοίος, vide Dionys. Pater. de Trinit. l. iv. c. 6.

* Ἀλπαθων γάρ τὸ τόν εἰσην ἤμεσον τῆς φυσικῆς γονεῖοτος. Damasc. de Fide. Orat. i. i. c. 3.

† Ei δὲ μη καργώσως εστὶν αὐτὸ ἢ Θεία ὑστία, ἂν ἤμεσος, κατ' αὐτὸς, ἡς φίλης μη ψαύταιος, καὶ τοῦτο ἐστι' ἡς ὑμνομάχον ἐκλέγος αὐτὸν ἤτον λεγεῖν τοῖς αἰτεχολογο- ταις S. Athanas. Orat. ii. contra Arian. § 2.
greater than another, and Mahomet might persuade his credulous disciples that he was greater than any of the sons of men; but while any one was believed to be the eternal Son of God, he knew it wholly impossible to prefer himself before him. Wherefore he frequently inculcates that blasphemy in his Alcoran, * that God hath no such Son, nor any equal with him: and his disciples have corrupted the Psalm of David, (ii. 7.) reading (instead of "Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.") 'Thou art my prophet, I have educated thee.' The later Jews, † acknowledging the words, and the proper literal reading of them, apply them so unto David, as that they deny them to belong to Christ; and that upon no other ground, than that by such an exposition they may avoid the Christian's confession. But by the consent of the ancient Jews, by the interpretation of the blessed apostles, we know these words belong to Christ, and in the most proper sense to him alone. "For, unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee?" (Heb.

* This is often repeated there, and particularly in the last chapter but one, called Alcoran: 'Ex bene Deus meus. Deus aeternus, qui nescem, nec generis est, et cui nullus est equalis.' And the Saracenica set forth by Sylvurgius, mention this as the first principle of Mahometanism: "Otii qui Deus est, potestas eum data est et potestas eum nomen est, et nomen Dei est, potestas eum nomen est et potestas eum nomen est. Hist. Compund. p. 426. ed. Par. 1617.

And we read of his ridiculous history, that Christ, after his ascension into heaven, was accused by God for calling himself his Son; and that he denied it, as being so named by men without any authority from him: 'Otii aulianta eum Christum in eum olim poteo et potestas eum nomen est, et potestas eum nomen est. Hist. Compund. p. 426. ed. Par. 1617.

† Alhazzabadius in his Kanzu: 'Dicatum Dei omnipotentis ad Jesum (qui propitiatus sit et pacem concedat Deus), Tu es Nativus, Propheta mens, ego waladotha, forti te; at dixerunt Christiani, Tu es Bonnus, Filius mens, ego waladotha, te genui. Longe est supra hac Deus.' And to the same purpose Enoch Atbir: 'In Evangelio dixit Isae, ego waladotha, et educavi te; at Christiani, dempta litera lam altera, ipsum ei filium statutum. Qui longe elatus est super te quae dicitur.' Whereas then the apostles attributed those words of the psalm to Christ, the Mahometans, who could not deny but they were spoken of the Messias, were forced to corrupt the text: and for that they pretend the eminency and excellency of the Godhead, as if it were beneath the majesty of God to beget a son, or be a Father: and indeed whosoever would bring in another prophet greater than Christ, as he was than Moses, must do so.

‡ I say, the later Jews so attribute those words to David, as if they belonged not to the Messias; but the ancient Jews understood them of the Christ: as appeared not only out of those places in the evangelists, where the Christ and the Son of God are synonymous; but also by the testimony of the later Jews themselves, who have confessed no less. So Rabbi David Kimchi in the end of his commentaries on the second psalm, thus: Some interpret this psalm of God and Mungoy, and the anointed is Messias the king; and so our doctors of happy memory have expounded it. And Rabbi Solomon Jarchi not only confeseth that the ancient Rabbinis did interpret it of the Messias, but shews the reason why the later Jews understood it rather of David, that thereby they might the better answer the argument of the Christians deduced from thence. By which means the Messias becomes the Son of God, and so fulfils the prophecy, and is preferred to the others, and so the Messias is better illustrated, than if the Messias had been only the Son of David.

Our doctors have expounded it of the Messias: but as to the literal sense, and for the answering heretics (that is, in their language, Christians), it is rather to be interpreted of David, in his own person.
i. 5.) as the apostle argues. And if he had spoken them unto any other man, as they were spoken unto him, the apostle's argument had been none at all.

Now that the communication of the divine essence by the Father (which we have already proved) was the true and proper generation by which he hath begotten the Son, will thus appear: because the most proper generation which we know, is nothing else but a vital production of another in the same nature, with a full representation of him from whom he is produced. Thus man begetteth a son, that is, produceth another man of the same human nature with himself; and this production, as a perfect generation, becomes the foundation of the relation of paternity in him that produceth, and of filiation in him that is produced. Thus after the prophetic benediction, "Be fruitful and multiply; Adam begat in his own likeness, after his image:" (Gen. i. 28. v. 3.) and by the continuation of the same blessing, the succession of human generations hath been continued. This then is the known* confession of all men, that a son is nothing but another produced by his father in the same nature with him. But God the Father hath communicated to the Word the same divine essence by which he is God; and consequently he is of the same nature with him, and thereby the perfect image and similitude of him, and therefore his proper Son. In human generations we may conceive two kinds of similitude; one in respect of the internal nature, the other in reference to the external form or figure. The former similitude is essential and necessary; it being impossible a man should beget a son, and that son not be by nature a man: the latter accidental; not only sometimes the child representing this, sometimes the other parent, but also oftentimes neither. The similitude then,* in which the propriety of generation is preserved, is that which consisteth in the identity of nature: and this communication of the divine essence by the Father to the Word is evidently a sufficient foundation of such a similitude; from whence Christ is called "the image of God," "the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person." (2 Cor. iv. 4. Heb. i. 3.)

Nor is this communication of the divine essence only the proper generation of the Son, but we must acknowledge it far more proper than any natural generation of the creature, not only because it is in a more perfect manner, but also because the identity of nature is most perfect. As in the divine

---

* και τὸν άτίμην πάση καὶ αὐτολειτουργόν ζευγανώνα, ή δι' αυτός ἐν τῇ αἰτίᾳ τῆς γενεακτίτου οἰκίας καὶ φόσον. Phot. Epist. 1.

This is in the language of Aristotle: Τὸ παράπνευμα ἐνεργεῖ ἐν τῷ ζωντὶ ζῷων μὲν ζωόν, φότων μὲν φωτόν. And St. Basil, lib. ii. contra Eunomius. §. 22. fin. Πατρί τινα μὴ λαμπρὰν, ἵ ἐν ἑαυτῷ τούτῳ κατὰ τὸν ἱερανὸν ἑαυτῷ φόσον τὸν ἁγίον παραστάχθην.

* οἴκτιαν πάσαν, hominum, homo, in quibusdam similis, in quibusdam sit dissimilis patri; tamen quia ejusdem substantiae est, negari versus filius non potest, et quia versus est filius, negari ejusdem substantiae non potest." S. August. contra Maximin. Arian. i. ii. c. 15. §. 2.
essence we acknowledge all the perfections of the creatures, subtracting all the imperfections which adhere unto them here in things below: so in the communication we must look upon the reality without any kind of defect, blemish, or impurity. In human generation the son is begotten in the same nature with the father, which is performed by derivation, or decision of part of the substance of the parent: but this decision includeth imperfection, because it supposeth a substance divisible, and consequently corporeal; whereas the essence of God is incorporeal, spiritual, and indivisible; and therefore his nature is really communicated, not by derivation or decision, but by a total and plenary communication. In natural conceptions the father necessarily preceded the son, and begateth one younger than himself; for being generation is for the perpetuity of the species, where the individuals successively fail, it is sufficient if the parent can produce another to live after him, and continue the existence of his nature, when his person is dissolved. But this presupposeth the imperfection of mortality wholly to be removed, when we speak of him who inhabiteth eternity: the essence which God always had without beginning, without beginning he did communicate; being always Father, as always God. Animals when they come to the perfection of nature, then become prolifical;* in God eternal perfection sheweth his eternal fecundity. And that which is most remarkable, in human generations the son is of the same nature with the father, and yet is not the same man; because though he hath an essence of the same kind, yet he hath not the same essence; the power of generation depending on the first prolifical benediction, increase and multiply, it must be made by way of multiplication, and thus every son becomes another man. But the divine essence, being by reason of its simplicity not subject to division, and in respect of its infinity incapable of multiplication, is so communicated as not to be multiplied; insomuch that he which proceedeth by that communication, hath not only the same nature, but is also the same God. The Father God, and the Word God; Abraham man, and Isaac man: but Abraham one man, Isaac another man; not so the Father one God, and the Word another, but the Father and the Word both the same God. Being then the propriety of generation is founded in the essential similitude of the Son unto the Father, by reason of the same which he receiveth from him; being the full perfect nature of God is communicated unto the Word, and that more intimately and with a greater unity or identity

* Πάντα δὲ εἶσα ἔδει τίλλει γεννά· τοῦ ὁ ἀληθινός, ἀληθινὸς γεννὰ. Ἑνεκ. de Prep. Evang. et Platon. I. xi. § 17. Ἀληθινὸς γεννᾶς ὡς ἐν τῷ χρώμιν γεννήτω, διὸ τὸ ἀληθινὸς τῆς φύσεως. Στὶς δὲ ἀληθινὸς ἐν κυρίῳ, διὰ τοῦ ἀληθινὸς τῆς φύσεως. Αἱ τίλλων τῆς φύσεως. S. Athan. Orat. i. contra Arian. § 14. This was it which so much troubled the Arians, when they heard the Catholics constantly asserting ἀληθινὸς ἐν κυρίῳ, ἁμα παθή, ἁμα νεκρ.
than can be found in human generations: it followeth that this communication of the divine nature is the proper generation by which Christ is, and is called the true and proper Son of God. This was the foundation of St. Peter's confession, "thou art the Son of the living God;" (Matt. xvi. 16. John vi. 69.) this the ground of our Saviour's distinction, * "I ascend unto my Father, and your Father." (John xx. 17.) Hence did St. John raise a verity, more than only a negation of falsity, when he said, we "are in the true Son:" (1 John v. 20.) for we which are in him are true, not false sons: but such sons we are not as the "true Son." Hence did St. Paul draw an argument of the infinite love of God towards man, in that "He spared not his own proper Son." (Rom. viii. 32.) Thus have we sufficiently shewed, that the eternal communication of the divine essence by the Father to the Word was a proper generation by which Christ Jesus always was the true and proper Son of God: which was our fourth assertion. 

The fifth and last assertion followed, that the divine essence was so peculiarly communicated to the Word, that there was never any other naturally begotten by the Father; and in that respect Christ is the only-begotten Son of God. For the clearing of which truth, it will first be necessary to inquire into the true notion of the only-begotten; and then shew how it belongs particularly to Christ, by reason of the divine nature communicated by way of generation to him alone. First, therefore, We must avoid the vain interpretation of the ancient heretics,† who would have the restraining term only to belong, not to the Son, but to the Father; as if the only-begotten were no more than begotten of the Father only. Which is both contrary to

† This was the fallacy which Eunomius endeavoured to put upon the Church, as appears by those words of his delivered and answered by St. Basil: Diá τοῦτο γὰρ, φησι, μονογενὴς, ἐπειδὴ παρὰ μὲνον τὸν ἄνωθεν δοκεῖτο γενέσθαι καὶ κτισθῆναι τυλίγοντας γέγονεν ὑπογειώς αὐτὸν. Eunom. I. ii. § 20. as if monogenes were only παρὰ μὲνον, and unigenitus were nothing else but genitus ob uno. This St. Basil refuteth copiously; first, from the language of the Scriptures and the usage of mankind:

the language of the Scriptures, and the common custom of men, who use it not for him who is begotten of one, but for him who alone is begotten of any.

Secondly, We must by no means admit the exposition of the later heretics,* who take the only-begotten to be nothing else but the most beloved of all the sons; because Isaac was called the only son of Abraham, (Gen. xxii. 2. 12. 16.) when we know that he had Ishmael beside; and Solomon said to be the onlybegotten before his mother,† when David had other children even by the mother of Solomon. For the only begotten and the most-beloved are not the same; the one having the nature of a cause in respect of the other, and the same cannot be cause and effect to itself. For though it be true, that the only son is the beloved son; yet with this order, that he is therefore beloved, because the only, not therefore the only because beloved. Although therefore Christ be the only-begotten and the beloved Son of God, yet we must not look upon these two attributes as synonymous, or equally significant of the same thing, but as one depending on the other; unigeniture being the foundation of his singular love. Beside, Isaac was called the only son of Abraham for some other reason than because he was singularly beloved of Abraham, for he was the only son of the free-woman, the only son of the promise made to Abraham, which was first this, “Sarah shall have a son,” and then, “in Isaac shall thy seed be called.” (Gen. xviii. 14. xxi. 12.) So that Isaac may well be called the only son of Abraham in reference to the promise, as the apostle speaks expressly; “By faith Abraham when he was tried, offered up Isaac, and he that had received the promises offered up his only-begotten son.” (Heb. xi. 17.) Avoiding therefore these two expositions, as far short of the true notion of the only-begotten; we must look upon it in the most proper, full, and significant sense, as signifying a son so

* The Socinians make very much of this notion, and apply it so unto Christ, as that thereby they might avoid all necessity of an eternal generation. So the Racovian Catechism: ‘Causa cur Christi ista attributa (sc. proprium et unigenitum Dei Filii esse) competant, hac est; quod inter omnes Dei filios et precipius sit, et Deo carissimus; quemadmodum Isaac, quia Abrahano carissimus et haeres existit, unigenitus vocatus est, Heb. xi. 17. licet fratre Ismaelem habuerit; et Solomon unigenitus coram matre sua, licet plures ex eadem matre fratres fuerint, x Paral. iii. 1. 2, 3, 8c. Sec. iv. c. 1. p. 113. And that this might be applied to the interpretation of the Creed, Schlichtingius hath inserted it as a material observation: ‘Nam hic unicus seu unigenitus filius nominatur, qui cæteris longe carior est Patri, longeque praestanter:’ and confirms the interpretation with those two testimonies concerning Isaac and Solomon. But certainly this observation of theirs is vain, or what else they say is false. For if Christ be called the Son of God, because conceived by the Holy Ghost, and none else was ever so conceived, then is he the only-begotten by virtue of his generation. And if so, then is he not the only-begotten, as Isaac and Solomon were, that is, by the affection and predation of their parents. Or if Christ were the only-begotten, as Isaac and Solomon were, then was he not conceived after a singular manner, for the brethren of Solomon no way differed from him in their generation. It is plain therefore that this interpretation was invented, that when all the rest should fail, they might stick to this.
† [See Prov. iv. 3.]
begotten as none other is, was, or can be: so as the term restrictive only shall have relation not only to the Father generating, but also to the Son begotten, and to the manner of the generation. It is true, the Father spake from heaven, saying, "Thou art my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased," (Mark i. 11.) and thereby we are to understand, that whosoever of us are beloved by the Father, are so beloved in and through the Son. In the same manner Christ is the only-begotten Son of God; and as many of us as God hath bestowed his love upon, that we should be called the sons of God, are all brought into that near relation by our fellowship with him, who is by a far more near relation the natural and eternal Son.

Having thus declared the interpretation of the word, that, properly, as primogeniture consisteth in prelation, so unigeniture in exclusion; and that none can be strictly called the only-begotten, but he who alone was so begotten: we shall proceed to make good our assertion, shewing that the divine essence was peculiarly communicated to the Word, by which he was begotten the Son of God, and of none any was so begotten beside that Son.

And here we meet with two difficulties: one shewing that there were other sons of God said to be begotten of him; to whom either the divine essence was communicated, and then the communication of that to the Word made him not the only-begotten; or it was not communicated, and then there is no such communication necessary to found such filiation: the other, alleging that the same divine essence may be communicated to another beside the Word, and not only that it may, but that it is so, to the person of the Holy Ghost; whence either the Holy Ghost must be the Son of God, and then the Word is not the only-begotten; or if he be not the Son, then is not the communication of the divine essence a sufficient foundation of the relation of sonship. These two objections being answered, nothing will remain farther to demonstrate this last assertion.

For the first, we acknowledge that others are frequently called the sons of God, and that we call the same God our Father which Christ called his; "both he that sanctifieth, and

* Eunomius would have it only παρὰ μόνου, in relation to the Father only. St. Basil shews that no way proper, and shews that μονογενὴς is not he which παρὰ μόνου but μόνου γεγένηται. adv. Eunom. i. ii. § 21. St. Cyril adds these two παρὰ μόνου and μόνου together, in relation to the Father and the Son: Μονογενὴς κατὰ φύσιν ἐν θεῷ πατρὶς Δόμισθαι λόγος, ἦ τι μόνου ἐν μονω γεγένηται τοῦ πατρές. Epist. 1. ad Regin. as Rufinus doth in unicus: 'Ideo subjungit unicum hunc esse Filium Dei, unus enim de uno nascitur.' 

§ 9. St. Gregory Nazianzen adds to these two a third, in respect of the manner; Μονογενὴς δὲ οἷς ἦτο μόνου ἡ μονών καὶ μόνον, ἀλλ' ὁ Πατρὸς καὶ λογιστώτας, οἷς ἐς τα τῷ σώματα. Orat. 2. de Filio, p. 590. So he something obscurely and corruptly; but plainly enough in Damascene, who aims often to deliver himself in the words of Nazianzen: Ἀναγίνεται μονογενὴς, τοῦ μόνου τοῦ πατρος μίας ἐγενεθει, οἳν γὰρ ἀκολουθεί ἐκείνη χάριν τῇ τοῦ οὐρ τοῦ θεοῦ γινωσκώ, οὗτος γὰρ ἐστιν ἀλλὰ νόμις τῷ θεῷ. De Orthod. Fid. l. i. c. 9.
they who are sanctified, are all of one: for which cause he is not ashamed to call us brethren:" (Heb. ii. 11.) we confess that those whom St. Paul "hath begun through the Gospel,"* may well be termed the "begotten of God, whose seed remaineth in them:" but withal, we affirm that this our regeneration is of a nature wholly different from the generation of the Son. We are first generated;† and have our natural being; after that regenerated, and so receive a spiritual renovation, and by virtue thereof an inheritance incorruptible: whereas the generation of Christ admits no regeneration, he becoming at once thereby God and Son and heir of all. The state of sonship which we come into is but of adoption, shewing the generation by which we are begotten to be but metaphorical; whereas Christ is so truly begotten, so properly the natural Son of God, that his generation‡ clearly excludeth the name of

---

* 1 Cor. iv. 15. 'En xer Xristo hupov da toj evagwroux e\n\na\n\na\n\na\n\na\n\na\n\na\n\na\n\na\n\na\n\na\n\na\n\na\n\n
† Nos genuit Deus, ut filii ejus simul, quos fecerat ut homines esset. Unicum autem genuit, non solum ut Filus esset, quod ipse non est, sed etiam ut Deus esset, quod et Pater est.* § August. de Cons. Evang. l. ii. c. 3. In the book of Celsus, there was a Jew introduced speaking thus to Christ: 'et tuto legge, eti piac utrumque, et secum inperitus marcians, ute eti Deum, ti ei de aliqua belli saxa, qui is thus answered by Origen: Hie est ius cui, dei pae\n\na\n\n
‡ First, it is most certain that the Word of God, as the Word, is not the adopted, but the natural son of God. 'Non est Dei Filius Deus fabus, nec Deus adoptivus, nec Deus nuncupativus, sed Deus verus.' * S. Hilar. de Trin. l. v. c. 5. 'Hic etiam Filius Dei natura est Filium, non adoptione.' * Concl. Tolet. 11. 'Tota est uti filii, fioni, et oj Sistis, venie\n\na\n\na\n\n
---

* This they maintained by forged testimonies of some fathers, and by the Liturgy of the Church of Toledo, composed by Hildephonsus, as the Roman by Gregory. In the Mass de Cana Domini: 'Qui per adoptivum hominis passionem, dum quo non indulsit corpore;* and in the Mass de Ascensione Domini: * Hodie Salvator noster per adoptionem carnis, sedem repetivit Deitatis.' To this the Synod opposed their determination in Sacraulaba: * Quod ex te nascetur sanctorum vocatur filius Dei, non adoptivus sed verus, non alienus sed proprius.' And again: * Porro adoptivus dici non potest qui alienus est ab eo a quo dictur adoptivus; et gratia ei adoptio tribuitur, quoniam non ex debito, sed ex indulgentia
adoption; and not only so, but when he becometh the Son of man, even in his humanity refuseth the name of an adopted Son. For "when the fulness of time was come, God sent forth his Son made of a woman, made under the Law, to redeem them that were under the Law, (not that he, but) that we might receive the adoption of sons." (Gal. iv. 4, 5.) He then whose generation is totally different from ours whom he calleth brethren; he whom in the sacred Scriptures the Spirit nameth the true Son, the Father sometimes his own, sometimes his beloved, but never his adopted Son;* he who by those proper and peculiar appellations is distinguished from us,† who can claim no higher filiation than that which we receive by the privilege of adoption: he is truly the only-begotten Son of God, notwithstanding the same God hath begotten us by his Word; and the reason why he is so, is, because the divine essence was communicated unto him in his natural and eternal generation, whereas only the grace of God is conveyed unto us in our adoption. Indeed if we were begotten of the essence of God as Christ was, or he were only by the grace of God adopted,‡ as we are, then could he by no propriety of speech be called the only Son, by reason of so many brethren: but being we cannot aspire unto the first, nor he descend unto the latter, it remaineth we acknowledge him, notwithstanding the first difficulty, by virtue of his natural and peculiar generation, to be the only-begotten Son.

tantummodo adoptione praestatur: siue nos aliquando, cum essesmus peccando filii irae, ahemi eramus a Deo, per proprium et verum Filium, qui non egit adoptionem, adoptio nobis filiorum dominat est." And of this they give us the true ground in the Synodic Epistle: 'Unitas personae quae est in Dei filio et filio Virginis, adoptionis tollit injuriam.'

* 'Legi et relegi Scripturas, Jesum Filium Dei unsquam adoptione inveni.' Ambrosiaster Com. in Ep. ad Rom. * Dices mihi, Cur times adoptrum Christum Dominum nominare? Deco tibi, quia nec Apostoli eum sic nominarent, nec sancta Dei et Catholica Ecclesia consuetudinem habuit sic eum appellare.' Synod. Epist. Concil. Franceford. * From whence they charge all those to whom they write that Synodic Epistle, that they should be satisfied with such expressions as they found in the Scriptures: 'Intelligite, fraternes, quae legitis, et nolite nova et incorrigita nomina fingere, sed quae in S. Scriptura inveniuntur, tenete, Nec.'

† St. Augustin hath observed, that St. Paul made use of aliaSraria, that he might distinguish the filiation of Christ from ours: *'At vero eum nos, quisbus dedid Deus potestatem filios ejus fieri, de natura utique substantia sua non nos genuit, sicut unicum Filium, sed utique dilectione adoptavit. Quo verbo Apostolus sepe att non ob alium intelligitur, nisi ad discernendum Unigenitum?' De cons. Evang. l. ii. c. 3. And St. Ambrose takes notice, that the name of true destroyeth that of adopted: 'Adoptivum non dicimus filium esse natura; sed eum dictum natura esse filium, qui versus est filius.' De Iucurn. Sacr. c. 8.

‡ 'Si unicos, quomodo adoptivus, dum multi sunt adoptivi filii? Unicos itaque de multis non potest dici.' Concil. Franceford. * Quod si etiam Unigenitus Filius factus dicitur ex gratia, non vere genitus ex natura, proculdubio nomen et veritatem Unigeniti perdidit, postquam frater hanc jam crepit: privatur enim hujus veritate nominis, si in Unigenito non est de Patre veritas naturalis.' Fulgentius ad Thrasim. l. iii. c. 3. * Si divina illa Filii sempiternaque nativitas non de natura Dei Patris, sed ex gratia creditur substantissime, non debet Unigenitum vocari, sed tantummodo genitus. Quoniam sicut ei nomen geniti largitas adoptionis paterna contribuit, sic nam ab Unigeniti nomine nobis quoque tributa communio paterna adoptionis exclusit. Unigeniti enim non vocatur, quamvis genitus possit vocari, cum genitus.' Iob. c. 4.
But though neither men nor angels be begotten of the substance of God, or by virtue of any such natural generation be called sons; yet one person we know, to whom the divine essence is as truly and really communicated by the Father as to the Son, which is the third person in the blessed Trinity, the Holy Ghost. Why then should the Word by that communication of the divine essence become the Son, and not the Holy Ghost by the same? or if, by receiving the same nature, he also be the Son of God, how is the Word the only Son? To this I answer, that the Holy Ghost receiveth the same essence from the Father which the Word receiveth, and thereby becometh the same God with the Father and the Word: but though the essence be the same which is communicated, yet there is a difference in the communication; the Word being God by generation, the Holy Ghost by procession: and though every thing which is begotten procedeth, yet every thing which proceedeth is not begotten. Wherefore in the language of the sacred Scriptures and the Church, the Holy Ghost is never said to be begotten, but to proceed from the Father; nor is he ever called the Son, but the Gift of God. Eve was produced out of Adam, and in the same nature with him, and yet was not born of him, nor was she truly the daughter of Adam; whereas Seth proceeding from the same person in the similitude of the same nature, was truly and properly the son of Adam. And this difference was not in the nature produced, but in the manner of production; Eve descending not from Adam as Seth did, by way of generation, that is, by natural fecundity. The Holy Ghost proceedeth from the Father in the same nature with him, the Word proceedeth from the same person in the same similitude of nature also; but the Word proceeding is the Son, the Holy Ghost is not, because the first procession is by way of generation, the other is not. As therefore the regeneration and adoption of man, so the procession of the Holy Ghost doth no way prejudice the eternal generation, as pertaining solely to the Son of God.

Seeing then our Saviour Jesus Christ had a real being and existence before he was conceived by the Virgin Mary; seeing

* Non omne quod procedit, nascitur; sicut omne quod nascitur, procedit.' S. August. contra Max. 1. ii. c. 14, § 1. Who gives the same solution to the same argument: ' Queritis a me: Si de substantia Patris est Filius, de substantia Patris est etiam Spiritus Sanctus, cur unus Filius sit, et alius non sit Filius? Ego respondeo, sive cupis, sive non cupis: De Patre est Filius, de Patre est Spiritus S.; sed ille genitus est, iste procedens.' Ibid. Παλατια προτοφαιρεσ, το φημευ τη εικονα γε τον απαντης φωνα του λοχα και τον Αγιον Πνευμα τη μεν, ου λοχα, εκ του νου γενομενον τη δε, ου Πνευμα, ικπορομενον. ξυμ-

πιτες γαρ το λοχα τη Πνευμα, ου φυγμενω-

μενα, ἀλλα ξυναι και παραγενται και ἐκπο-


† 'Nunquam fuit non Pater, a quo Fi-

lius natus, a quo Spiritus Sanctus non

natus, quia non est Filius.' Gennad. de

Eccl. Dog. c. 1. ' Deus Pater innasci-

bilis non ex aliquo, Deus Filii unigeni-

tus ex aliquo, hoc est, ex Patre, Spiritus

S. innascibilia ex aliquo, hoc est, ex Pa-


Vet. V. Script. Par. 1650. ' Quod neque

natum neque factum est, Spiritus S. est,

qui a Patre et Filio procedit.' S. Ambros.

in Symb. Apost. al. de Trinit. c. 3.
the being which he had antecedently to that conception was not any created, but the one and indivisible divine essence; seeing he had not that Divinity of himself originally, as the Father, but by communication from him; seeing the communication of the same essence unto him was a proper generation; we cannot but believe that the same Jesus Christ is the begotten Son of God: and seeing the same essence was never so by way of generation communicated unto any,* we must also acknowledge him the only-begotten, distinguished from the Holy Ghost, as Son; from the adopted children, as the natural Son.

The necessity of the belief of this part of the Article, that Jesus Christ is the proper and natural Son of God, begotten of the substance of the Father, and by that singular way of generation the only Son, appeareth first in the confirmation of our faith concerning the redemption of mankind. For this doth shew such an excellency and dignity in the person of the Mediator as will assure us of an infinite efficacy in his actions, and value in his sufferings. We know "it is not possible that the blood of bulls and goats should take away sins:" (Heb. x. 4.) and we may very well doubt, how the blood of him, who hath no other nature than that of man, can take away the sins of other men; there appearing no such difference as will shew a certainty in the one, and an impossibility in the other. But since we may be "bought with a price," (1 Cor. vi. 20. vii. 23.) well may we believe the blood of Christ sufficiently "precious," (1 Pet. i. 19.) when we are assured that it is the "blood of God:" (Acts xx. 28.) nor can we question the efficacy of it in "purging our conscience from dead works," if we believe "Christ offered up himself through the eternal Spirit." (Heb. ix. 14.) If we be truly sensible of our sins, we must acknowledge that in every one we have offended God; and the gravity of every offence must needs increase proportionably to the dignity of the party offended in respect of the offender: because the more worthy any person is, the more reverence is due unto him, and every injury tendeth to his dishonour; but between God and man there is an infinite disproportion; and therefore every offence committed against him, must be esteemed as in the highest degree of injury. Again, as the gravity of the offence beareth proportion to the person offended; so the value of reparation ariseth from the dignity of the person satisfying; because the satisfaction consisteth in a reparation of that honour which by the injury was eclipsed; and all honour doth increase proportionably as the person yielding it is honourable. If then by every sin we have offended God, who is of infinite eminency, according unto which the injury is aggravated; how shall we ever be secure of our reconciliation unto

God, except the person who hath undertaken to make the reparation be of the same infinite dignity; so as the honour rendered by his obedience may prove proportionable to the offence and that dishonour which arose from our disobedience! This scruple is no otherwise to be satisfied than by a belief in such a Mediator as is the only-begotten Son of God, of the same substance with the Father, and consequently of the same power and dignity with the God whom by our sins we have offended.

Secondly, The belief of the eternal generation of the Son, by which he is the same God with the Father, is necessary for the confirming and encouraging a Christian in ascribing that honour and glory unto Christ which is due unto him. For we are commanded to give that worship unto the Son which is truly and properly divine; the same which we give unto God the Father, who “hath committed all judgment unto the Son, that all men should honour the Son even as they honour the Father.” (John v. 22, 23.) As it was represented to St. John in a vision, when he heard “every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, saying, Blessing, honour, glory, and power be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb, for ever and ever.” (Rev. v. 13.) Again we are commanded “to fear the Lord our God, and to serve him;”* (Deut. vi. 13.) and that with such an emphasis, as by him we are to understand him alone, because “the Lord our God is one Lord.” (Ibid. 4.) From whence if any one arose among the Jews, teaching under the title of a prophet to worship any other beside him for God, the judgment of the Rabbins was,† that notwithstanding all the miracles which he could work, though they were as great as Moses wrought, he ought immediately to be strangled, because the evidence of this truth, that one God only must be worshipped, is above all evidence of sense. Nor must we look upon this precept as valid only under the Law, as if then there were only one God to be worshipped, but since the Gospel we had another; for our Saviour hath commended it to our observation, by making use of it against the devil in his temptation, saying, “Get thee hence Satan, for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.” (Matt. iv. 10.) If then we be obliged to worship the God of Israel only; if we be also commanded to give the same worship to the Son, which we give to him; it is necessary that we should believe that the Son is the God of Israel. “When the Scripture bringeth in the first-

* The emphasis appears in this, that it is not barely rendereth et seruit ei, but rendereth et ipse serui, with such a peculiar restriction, as is expressed by the Chaldee paraphrase, 하물 fiat seruit et in conspectu eiusmod servit; by the LXX. αἰτη τιμηθήσεται, and that restriction approved by our Saviour, Matt. iv. 10.

† Moses Maim. Praefat. in Seder Zeraim.
begotten into the world, it saith, Let all the angels of God worship him;” (Heb. i. 6.) but then the same Scripture calleth that first-begotten “Jehovah,” (Isa. xii. 2.)* and “the Lord of the whole earth.” (Psal. xcviii. 5.) For a man to worship that for God which is not God, knowing that it is not God, is affected and gross idolatry; to worship that as God which is not God, thinking that it is God, is not in the same degree, but the same sin: to worship him as God, who is God, thinking that he is not God, cannot be thought an act in the formality void of idolatry. Lest therefore while we are obliged to give unto him divine worship, we should fall into that sin which of all others we ought most to abhor, it is no less necessary, that we should believe that Son to be that eternal God, whom we are bound to worship, and whom only we should serve.

Thirdly, Our belief in Christ as the eternal Son of God, is necessary to raise us unto a thankful acknowledgment of the infinite love of God appearing in the sending of his only-begotten Son into the world to die for sinners. This love of God is frequently extolled and admired by the apostles. “God so loved the world,” (saith St. John, iii. 16.) that he gave his only-begotten Son.” “God commended his love towards us, (saith St. Paul, Rom. v. 8. viii. 32.) in that while we were yet sinners Christ died for us: in that he spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all.” “In this (saith St. John again, 1 Ep. iv. 9, 10.) was manifested the love of God towards us, because that God sent his only-begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him. Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.” If we look upon all this as nothing else, but that God should cause a man to be born after another manner than other men, and when he was so born after a peculiar manner, yet a mortal man, should deliver him to die for the sins of the world; I see no such great expression of his love in this way of redemption, more than would have appeared if he had redeemed us any other way. It is true indeed that the reparation of lapsed man, is no act of absolute necessity in respect of God, but that he hath as freely designed our re-demption as our creation; considering the misery from which we are redeemed, and the happiness to which we are invited, we cannot but acknowledge the singular love of God even in the act of redemption itself; but yet the apostles have raised that consideration higher, and placed the choicest mark of the love of God, in the choosing such means, and performing in that manner our reparation, by sending his only-begotten into the world; by not sparing his own Son, by giving and delivering him up to be scourged and crucified for us: and the estimation of this act of God’s love must necessarily increase

* E. de monogone lstein, kptpr ev ev lstein, odycon eva evkhis tâ kptstâ koumian.
Thed. Hucet. Fab. 1. v. c. 2.
proportionably to the dignity of the Son so sent into the world; because the more worthy the person of Christ before he suffered, the greater his condescension unto such a suffering condition; and the nearer his relation to the Father, the greater his love to us for whose sakes he sent him to suffer. Wherefore to derogate any way from the person and nature of our Saviour before he suffered, is so far to undervalue the love of God, and consequently, to come short of that acknowledgment and thanksgiving which is due unto him for it. If then the sending of Christ into the world, were the highest act of the love of God which could be expressed; if we be obliged unto a return of thankfulness some way correspondent to such infinite love; if such a return can never be made without a true sense of that infinity, and a sense of that infinity of love cannot consist without an apprehension of an infinite dignity of nature in the person sent: then it is absolutely necessary to believe that Christ is so the only-begotten Son of the Father, as to be of the same substance with him, of glory equal, of majesty co-eternal.

By this discourse in way of explication, every Christian may understand what it is he says, and express his mind how he would be understood when he maketh this brief confession, I believe in Christ the only Son of God. For by these words he must be thought to intend no less than this: I do profess to be fully assured of this assertion, as of a most certain, infallible, and necessary truth, that Jesus Christ, the Saviour and Messiah, is the true, proper, and natural Son of God, begotten of the substance of the Father; which being incapable of division or multiplication, is so really and totally communicated to him, that he is of the same essence with him, God of God, Light of light, very God of very God. And as I assert him to be the Son, so do I also exclude all other persons from that kind of sonship, acknowledging none but him to be begotten of God by that proper and natural generation: and thereby excluding all which are not begotten, as it is a generation; all which are said to be begotten, and are called sons, but are so only by adoption, as it is natural. And thus I believe in God the Father, and in Jesus Christ his only Son.

Our Lord.

After our Saviour's relation founded upon his eternal generation, followeth his dominion in all ancient Creeds,* as the necessary consequent of his filiation. For as we believe him to be the Son of God, so must we acknowledge him to be

* For though in the first rules of faith mentioned by Irenæus and Tertullian we find not Dominum nostrum, yet in all the Creeds afterwards we find those words; probably inserted because denied by the Valentinians, of whom Irenæus: Διὰ τὸν τῷ Σατανᾶ ἀντέχειν, εὐδ. γὰρ Κύριον ἐγγέμερον αὐτῷ δίκαια. Ι. ι. c. 1.
our Lord, because the only Son must of necessity be heir and Lord of all in his Father's house, and all others which bear the name of sons, whether they be men or angels, if compared to him, must not be looked upon as sons of God, but as servants of Christ.

Three things are necessary, and more cannot be, for a plenary explication of this part of the Article; first, the proper notation of the word Lord in the Scripture phrase, or language of the Holy Ghost; secondly, The full signification of the same in the adequate latitude of sense, as it belongs to Christ; thirdly, The application of it to the person making confession of his faith, and all others whom he involves in the same condition with himself, as saying not my, nor their, but our Lord.

First then we must observe, that not only Christ is the Lord, but that this title doth so properly belong unto him, that the Lord alone absolutely taken is frequently used by the evangelists and apostles determinately for Christ,* insomuch that the angels observe that dialect, "Come see the place where the Lord lay." (Matt. xxviii. 6.) Now for the true notation of the word,+ it will not be so necessary to inquire into the use or origination of the Greek, much less into the etymology of the correspondent Latin, as to search into the notion of the Jews, and the language of the Scriptures, according unto which the evangelists and apostles spake and wrote.

And first, it cannot be denied, but that the word which we translate the Lord was used by the interpreters of the Old


† For whosoever shall consider the signification of Kéros in the Scriptures, I think he will scarce find any footsteps of the same in the ancient Greeks. In our sacred Writ it is the frequent name of God, whereas I imagine it is not to be found so used by any of the old Greek authors. Julius Pollux, whose business is to observe what words and phrases may be properly made use of in that language, tells us the gods may be called θεοί or δαίμονες, but mentions not Kéros, as neither proper, nor any name of God with them at all. Nor did they anciently use it in their economics; where their constant terms were not Kéros, but ἀστυπότας and δάκται: and they had then another kind of notion of it, as appears by the complaint of the servant in Aristophanes. Pint. 6.

Τῶν σύμματος γὰρ οἱ εἰκὸν τῶν χῶρων
Κρατίσθαι δαίμονες, ἀλλὰ τῶν ἱεραποιητῶν.

In which words, if they were interpreted by the Scripture usage, Kéros would signify the master, and ἱεραποιήτες the person bought, that is, the servant; whereas the place requires an interpretation wholly contrary; for ἱεραποιήτες is not here ἱεραποιήτες, but ἱεροπάσας, or ἱεροπάσες, as the scholiast, Suidas, and Moschopulus have observed, that is, not the servant, but the master who bought him. And though those grammarians bring no other place to prove this active signification beside this of Aristophanes, by which means it might be still questionable whether they had rightly interpreted him without any authority, yet Prynchus will sufficiently secure us of this sense: "Ἐν τῷ Κάστην ἵεραποιήτες ἀπὸ τὸν δύσταν ἐκαλεῖται ἀνθρώπων ἐν τῶν ἄνευ τῶν προσωπῶν ματὼν τὸ ἱεραποιήτην ἰσιμ. Ἔν τῷ Κάστην, τότε ἴσιμ ἰσιμ, ἵεραποιήτην, ὁ ἀνθρώπος, ἵπτεται ἐν τῇ ἱεραποιήτῃ ἐκείνῃ τῷ ἱεραποιήτῃ ἰσιμ. Ἔν τῷ Κάστην, τότε ἴσιμ ἰσιμ, ἵεραποιήτην, ὁ ἀνθρώπος, ἵπτεται ἐν τῇ ἱεραποιήτῃ ἐκείνῃ τῷ ἱεραποιήτῃ ἰσιμ."
Testament sometimes for men, with no relation unto another than human dominion.* And as it was by the translators of the Old, so is it also by the penmen of the New.† But it is most certain that Christ is called Lord in another notion than that which signifies any kind of human dominion, because as so, “there are many Lords,” (1 Cor. viii. 5.) but he is in that notion Lord, (1 Cor. viii. 6. Eph. iv. 5.) which admits of no more than one. They are only “masters according to the flesh;” (Coloss. iii. 22.) he “the Lord of glory, the Lord from heaven,” (1 Cor. ii. 8. xv. 47.) “King of kings, and Lord of all other lords.” (Rev. xix. 16.)

Nor is it difficult to find that name amongst the books of the Law in the highest and full signification: for it is most frequently used as the name of the supreme God, sometimes for El or Elohim, sometimes for Shaddai or the Rock, often for Adonai, and most universally for Jehovah, the undoubted proper name of God, and that to which the Greek translators long before our Saviour’s birth, had most appropriated the name of Lord, not only by way of explication, but distinction and particular expression. As when we read, “thou whose name alone is Jehovah, art the most high in all the earth.” (Psal. lxxxiii. 18.) and when God so expresseth himself, “I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by the

* As πάπα is generally translated χήρα, when it signifies lord or master in respect of a servant or inferior. So Sarah called her husband, Gen. xviii. 12. 1 Pet. iii. 6. So Eleazer his master Abraham, Gen. xxiv. frequently. Thus Rachel saluted her father Laban, Gen. xxxv. 35. and Jacob his brother Esau, Gen. xxxviii. 8. Potiphar is the κήρος of Joseph whom he bought, Gen. xxxix. 2. &c. and Joseph in power is so saluted by his brethren, Gen. xl. 10 and acknowledged by his servant, Gen. xlv. 5. The general name in the law of Moses for servant and master is πάπα and κήρος, Exod. xxi. 2. 4. It is in indeed so plain that the ancient Jews used this word to signify no more than human power, that we find printed the name of man so translated, is 1 Sam. xvii. 51. τὸν πάπα τὸν μαχητὴν καθὼς τοῦ κηροῦ μετὰ τοῦ αἰτίου.

† For κήρος is used in relation and in opposition to πατέρα, Acts xvi. 16. in the sense which the latter, not the ancient Greeks used it: πατέρα, τούτο εἶναι τῆς σπέρματος τῆς τῶν τιμιῶν οὗ δὲ ἐξέχρησεν ἡ τῆς πατρότητος, as Philippius observes. As it is opposed to σικέρα, Luke xvi. 13. (accord¬

ing to that of Etymol Kýres τοῦ προτοῦ τοῦ σικέρος τοῦ σικέρος) to διάλαξις, Matt. x. 24. xviii. 23. &c. And in the apostolical rules pertaining to Christian economics, the master and servant are διάλαξις καὶ κήρος. As also by way of ad-

dition κήρος τοῦ τερματίου, Matt. ix. 38. κήρος τοῦ μεταλληκτῆς, Matt. xx. 8. κήρος τοῦ διακοσμοῦ, Mark xiii. 35. Inso much as κήρος is sometimes used by way of address or salutation of one man to another, (as it is now generally among the later Greeks, and as Dominus was anciently among the Latins. ‘Quomodo obvius, si nomen non occurrat, Dominus salutamus.’ Sen. epist. 3.) not only of servants to masters, as Matt. xiii. 27. or sons to parents, as Matt. xxi. 50. or inferiors to men in authority, as Matt. xvii. 63. but of strangers; as when the Greeks spoke to Philip, and desired him, saying, κήρε, σικέραν τοῦ Ἱωάννου Ἰδωρ, John xii. 21. and Mary Magdalen speaking unto Christ, but taking him for a gardener, κήρε, καὶ σικέραν αὐτοῦ, John xv. 15. And it cannot be denied but this title was sometimes given to our Saviour himself, in no higher or other sense than this; as when the Samaritan woman saw him alone at the well, and knew no more of him than that he appeared to be one of the Jews, she said, Κύριε, ἄντιλαμα ὦ ἱερείς, καὶ το τι περί ἑστὼς Βασίλειον, John iv. 11. And the infirm man at the pool of Bethesda, when he wist not who it was, said unto him, Κύριε, ἀντιλαμα ὦ ἱερείς, John v. 7. The blind man, in whom he had restored his sight, with the same salutation maketh confession of his ignorance, and his faith, Ἴχθεῖς Ἱησοῦς; και πτεστείον Ἰησοῦς, John ix. 36. 38.
name of God Almighty, but by my name Jehovah, was I not known unto them." (Exod. vi. 3.) In both these places, for the name Jehovah the Greek translation, which the apostles followed, hath no other name but Lord; and therefore undoubtedly by that word which we translate the Lord* did they understand

* I know it is the vulgar opinion, that κυρίος properly answereth unto Ἰς, and the reason why it was also used for Ἰς is no other than because the Jews were wont to read Adonai in the place of Jehovah. Of which observation they make great use who deny the Divinity of Christ. "Quin enim Adonai pro Jehovah in lectione Hebrewum verborum substinti consuetit, ideone illusitam interpretatio hine accommodat," says Cosselinus de Deo et Attrib. c. 14. But first it is not probable that the LXX. should think κυρίος to be the proper interpretation of Ἰς, and give it to Jehovah only in the place of Adonai; for if they had, it would have followed, that where Adonai and Jehovah had met together in one sentence, they would not have put another word for Adonai, to which κυρίος was proper, and place κυρίος for Jehovah, to whom of itself (according to their observation) it did not belong. Whereas we read not only Ἰς Ἰς translated διάποντα κυρίος, Gen. xv. 2, 3, and Ἰς Ἰς τὸ ἱδίονου διάπονες κυρίος, Isa. I. 24, but also Ἰς Ἰς τοῦ ἱδίονου κυρίος, Nehem. x. 29. Secondly, the reason of this assertion is most uncertain. For though it be confessed that the Masoreths did read Ἰς where they found Ἰς, and Josephus before them expresses the sense of the Jews of his age, that the τητραγραφήματος was not to be pronounced, and before him Philo speaks as much; yet it followeth not from thence, that the Jews were so superstitious above three hundred years before; which must be proved before we can be assured that the LXX. read Adonai for Jehovah, and for that reason translated it κυρίος. Thirdly, as we know no reason why the Jews should so confound the names of God; so were it now very irrational in some places to read Ἰς for Ἰς: As when God saith, Exod. vi. 3 "I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob," place Ἰς Ἰς Ἰς Ἰς, though the Vulgar translation renders it, In Deo omnipotente, et nom eneum Adonai non viuisci eis, and thereby make an apparent sense no way congruous to the intended importance of the Holy Ghost (for it cannot be imagined either that God should not be known to Abraham by the name Adonai or that it were any thing to the present intendment, which was to encourage Moses and the Israelites by the interpretation of the name Jehovah); yet we have no reason to believe that the LXX. made any such heterogeneous translation, which we read, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἰδίου τοῦ Κυρίου. Thus again, where God speaks unto Moses, ὡς Κυρίος ὁ πρῶτος ὁ θεός, κυρίος, ὁ θεός τῶν παθήσεων ἡμῶν, ἐπισκεπτόμεθα με τοῖς δομίζοι, τούτω μετὰ τοῦ ἱδίον αὐτοῦ, Exod. III. 15. whosoever thinks κυρίος stands for Adonai, doth injury to the translators; and whosoever readeth Adonai for Jehovah, puts a force upon the text. As also when the prophet David saith, "that men may know that thou whose name alone is Jehovah, art the most high over all the earth." Ps. lxxxi. 13. I confess the ancient fathers did, together with the Jews, read Adonai for Jehovah in the Hebrew text, as appeareth by those words of Epiphanius de Ponderibus, § 6. Adonai, Ἰς, χρυσός, ἱερομοσολογία, ἠκονίδι, which very corruptly represents part of the first verse of the 111st psalm, Ἰς Ἰς Κυρίος ὁ θεός τοῦ ἱδίου ὑπὸ τοῦ ἵπτε τὸν ἱδίον ἡμῶν, but plainly enough render Ἰς Adonai. Notwithstanding it is very observable, that they were wont to distinguish Κυρίος, in the Greek translations where it stood for Jehovah, from κυρίος where it stood for Adonai; and that was done by adding in the margin the tetragrammaton itself, Ἰς which by the ignorance of the Greek scribes, who understood not the Hebrew characters, was converted into four Greek letters, and so made a word of no signification, μὴν. This is still extant in the copy of the text of Isaiah printed by Curterius with the Commentary of Procopius, and St. Jerome gives an account of it in the Greek copies of his age: 'Nomen τητραγραφήματος, quod κυρίος, id est, ineffabile, putaverunt, quod haec litterae scribunt, joel δὲ he ἤν εἰ ὡς he ἦν, quod quidam non intelligentes, proper elementorum simuladum, cum in Graecis libris rererentur, pipi legere consueuerunt.' Epist. 136. Neither did the Greeks only place this μὴν in the margin of their translations, but when they described the Hebrew text in Greek characters they used the same μὴν for Ἰς, and consequently did not read Adonai for Jehovah. An example of this is to be found in that excellent copy of the prophets according to the LXX. collated with the rest of the translators, in the library of the most eminent Cardinal Barbari; where at the 13th verse of the 2nd
he proper name of God, Jehovah. And had they placed it there as the exposition of any other name of God, they had made an interpretation contrary to the manifest intention of the Spirit: for it cannot be denied but God was known to Abraham by the true importance of the title Adonai, as much as by the name of Shaddai; as much by his dominion and sovereignty, as by his power and all-sufficiency: but by any experimental and personal sense of the fulfilling of his promises his name Jehovah was not known unto him: for though God spake expressly unto Abraham, "All the land which thou seest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed for ever," (Gen. xiii. 15. xxvi. 3.) yet the history teacheth us, and St. Stephen confirmeth us, that "he gave him none inheritance in it, no not so much as to set his foot on, though he promised that he would give it to him for a possession." (Acts vii. 5.) Wherefore when God saith he was not known to Abraham by his name Jehovah, the interpretation of no other name can make good that expression: and therefore we have reason to believe the word which the first Greek translators, and after them the apostles, used, may be appropriated to that notion which the original requires; as indeed it may, being derived from a verb of the same significatio with the Hebrew root,* and so denoting the essence or chapter of Malachi these words are written after the translation of Aquila, Symmachus, and Theodotion, out of the Hebrew text, after the manner of Origen's Hexaplia, of which there is an excellent example in that MS. Oυκαν, στηθι, Θεον, χριστον, δημα, ερμας εως, (1. 69) πιστι, δοξος, σωσικα, μετα, αθεω, εις, αναμνησ, ωυδοκην, φωνον, μεταθων, which are a very proper expression of these following Hebrew words, according to the punctuation and reading of that age. ευθυς φασιν της τρεις των Ἰουδαίων μετα της δωρον ιδιοτητος τοιαυτης εις τον πυθαναι τον ιδιον των πατερων τινων ειτε δι' αυτου ειτε δι' αυτον ἀναφερεται. By which it is evident that Origen in his Hexaplia, from whence undoubtedly that ancient scholiast took his various translations, did not read 'Abbaei in that place; but kept the Hebrew characters, which they who understood them not, formed into those Greek letters πιστι. And certainly the preserving of the name Jehovah in the Greek translations was very ancient, for it was described in some of them with the ancient characters: as St. Jerome testifieth: 'Et nomen Dominii Tetragrammaton in quisque jam Graecis voluminibus usque hodie antiquis expressum litteris inveniendum.' Ep. 106. Being then we cannot be assured that the LXX. read ιηρι for τατησιν being they have used Κερεις for Jehovah, when they have made use of the general word θεος for Adonai; being in some places Adonai cannot he read for Jehovah, without manifest violence offered to the text: it followeth, that it is no way probable that Κερεις should therefore he used for Jehovah, because it was taken for the proper significatio of Adonai.

* It is acknowledged by all that τατησι is from τατησι or τατησι, and God's own interpretation proves no less τατησι τατησι τατησι Exod. iii. 11. And though some contend that futurition is essential to the name, yet all agree the root signifies nothing but esse or existence, that is, τε ειναι, or ὑπαρχειν. Now as from τατησι in the Hebrew τατησε, so in the Greek ἄντο τοι Κερεις Κερεις. And what the proper significatio of Κερεις is, no man can teach us better than Hesychius, in whom we read Κερεις, ὑπαρχειν, τοῦχαν, κερεις prima longa, κερεις prima brevi. Sophoc. Edip. Colon. v. 1158.

Παρ. 8

SOCH. 1. 597. 8.

Schol. Ουκαν ενωτ, αντι τοι, εκπον, διειν το επηχυςιν. Hence was κερει by the Attics used for εστιν sit; so I take it from the words of the scholiast upon Sophocles: το κερει περιταρμαινεις φηναι κα ταυταια και ταυτα τινας ἃτικα, ἢ προ των κεριν μετα επτατειν τω ν υπαρχειν, κερει διειν, κερει τω Κερει κερειν. Not that they used it by an apocope, taking ω from κερει, but that κερει was taken in the sense of κερειν or κερουτες, from κερει, ὑπαρχειν, κερειν, επι or ὑπαρχειν, as the scholiast upon those words of Sophocles. Electr. v. 349. Διδασκαλις Κερεις κερεις, διειν, επχυςιες. Neither know I better how to render κερει than
existence of God, and whatsoever else may be deduced from thence, as revealed by him to be signified thereby.

Could not this also be true of the Hebrew name, as we find it often expressed even among the Gentile Greeks, because they thought the Greek κύριος to be a proper interpretation, as being reducible to the same signification. For even they which are pretended to have read Ainnon for Jehovah, as Origen, St. do acknowledge that the heathens and the ancient heathens descending from the Jews had a name which they did express the Hebrew Jehovah. We know that oracle preserved by Macrobius, Saturnal., lib. i. c. 18.

From whence considering the name τὸν proceeding from that root, and giving relation to that sense, they made use of the word κύριος for the standing interpretation of that name, as being equivalent to ὅς. We have no reason then to conceive either that they so translated it out of the superstition of the Jews (as some would persuade us, whom we have already refuted) or because they had no letters in the Greek language by which they could express the Hebrew name, whereas we find it often expressed even among the Gentile Greeks, because they thought the Greek κύριος to be a proper interpretation, as being reducible to the same signification. For even they which are pretended to have read Ainnon for Jehovah, as Origen, St. do acknowledge that the heathens and the ancient heathens descending from the Jews had a name which they did express the Hebrew Jehovah. We know that oracle preserved by Macrobius, Saturnal., lib. i. c. 18.

And Didoros hath taught us from whence that name first came, mentioning Moses in this manner, l. i. c. 94. Μωϋσαις Μακεδόνια τῶν Ἱεροσολύμων θεότερον λέγεται. And Theodoret more expressly, Quast. 11. τῆς Πατρίδος, καλούντες μᾶλλον Ναζωνίδας. Porphyrius, l. iv. cont. Christian. tells us, Schonnacher had his relations of the Jews, ἡ Ἑρωδεία, τοῦτον τοῦ τοῦ Παλαιστίνης. Lusebius (as we formerly mentioned) saith, Ἡρώδειος τοῦτον οὗτος τοῦτον τοῦ τοῦτος, τὸν διότι οὗτος οὗτος, τὸν διότι τοῦτον οὗτος. And the LXX. Jer. xxxii. 6. have rendered παντὰς τὰς Λατρείας, id est, Dominus justus, saith St. Jerome. And as the heathens and the first Christians, so the heretics had among them the pronunciation and expression of the name τὸν. As ιησοῦς, ἐναπαύσετα, ἐναπαύσετα, ἐμφανίσετα. And the LXX. Jer. xiiii. 4. have rendered ἐκ τοῦ Τρωποῦ τὸ Ἰσχίον, id est, Dominina justus, saith St. Jerome. And as the heathens and the first Christians, so the heretics had among them the pronunciation and expression of the name τὸν. As the Valentinian was baptized in τὸ ἰνακτά τῷ Ἰα. Iren. l. i. c. 21. §. 3. and the Ophian had their several gods, among the rest: ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ τοῦ Κομοῦ τοῦ Ἐχθροῦ καὶ τοῦ Ἰα. Ἰα. cx. c. 1. §. 3. So I read it, not as it is in the edition of Hescheius, Ἰα. in one word, or Ἰα. as our learned countryman Nicholous Fullerus hath endeavoured in vain to rectify it; but Ἰα. that is, the Ophian took the name Ἰα. from the Jews, among whom it signifies the same which is called ʾibḥ. For that it ought so to be read, appeareth by the former
Being then this title Lord thus signifieth the proper name of God Jehovah, being the same is certainly attributed unto Christ in a notion far surpassing all other lords, which are rather to be looked upon as servants unto him: it will be worthy our inquiry next, whether as it is the translation of the name Jehovah it belong to Christ; or whether though he be Lord of all other lords, as subjected under his authority, yet he be so inferior unto him whose name alone is Jehovah, as that in that propriety and eminency in which it belongs unto the supreme God it may not be attributed unto Christ.

This doubt will easily be satisfied, if we can shew the name Jehovah itself to be given unto our Saviour; it being against all reason to acknowledge the original name, and to deny the interpretation in the sense and full importance of that original. Wherefore if Christ be the Jehovah, as so called by the Spirit of God; then is he so the Lord, in the same propriety and eminency in which Jehovah is. Now whatsoever did belong to the Messias, that may and must be attributed unto Jesus, as being the true and only Christ. But the Jews themselves acknowledge that Jehovah shall be known clearly in the days of the Messias, and not only so, but that it is the name which properly belongeth to him.* And if they cannot but confess so much who only read the prophecies, as the eunuch did without an interpreter; how can we be ignorant of so plain and necessary a truth, whose eyes have seen the full completion, and read the infallible interpretation of them? If they could see “Jehovah the Lord of hosts” to be the name of the Messias, who was to them “for a stone of stumbling and rock of offence,” (Isa. viii. 13. 14) how can we possibly be ignorant of it, who are taught by St. Paul, that in Christ this prophecy was fulfilled, “As it is written, Behold, 1 lay in Sion a stumbling-stone, and rock of offence, and whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.” (Rom. ix. 33.) It was no other than Jehovah who spake these words, “I will have mercy upon the house of Judah, and will save them by the Lord (Jehovah) their God, and will not save them by bow nor sword.” (Hos. i. 7.)† Where not only he who is described as the original and principal cause, that is, the Father who gave his Son, but also he who is the immediate efficient of our salvation, and that in opposition to all other means or instrumental causes, is called Jehovah; who can be no other than our Jesus, because “there is no other name:

words of Origin: Οὗτος τὸν λαθότα τὴν
παλαθαλή καὶ ζήσαντα ἐπὶ τὸν ἱερὸ
ἐν ἡλικίᾳ λάτρεια
καὶ μετρήσεις
τῆς
θροισ-
σῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
παραφηγῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τῆς
τenance, and in the Latin Latin, but without sense: whereas dividing the words, the sense is manifest, and the reason of the former emendation apparent. Being then there were so many among the Greeks, which

did in all ages express the Hebrew name, it can be no way probable that the LXX should avoid it as inexpressible in their language.

* As Midrasch Tillim on Psal. xxxi. Echa Rabati Lam. i. 6.

† Where it is further observable that the Chaldee paraphrase hath חַדֹּלְשׁ for מַדָּלְשׁ by the word of Jehovah, for לֹא-

Jehovah.
under heaven given unto men whereby we must be saved.’ (Acts iv. 12.) As in another place he speaketh, ‘I will strengthen them in the Lord (Jehovah), and they shall walk up and down in his name saith the Lord (Jehovah);’ (Zechar. x. 12.) where he which strengtheneth is one, and he by whom he strengtheneth is another, clearly distinguished from him by the personal pronoun, and yet each of them is Jehovah, and ‘Jehovah our God is one Jehovah.’ (Deut. vi. 4.) Whatsoever objections* may be framed against us, we know Christ is the

* Two adversaries we have to the exposition of this place, the Jew and the Socinian; only with this difference, that we find the less opposition from the Jew, from whom, indeed, we have so ample a concession as will destroy the other’s contradiction. First, Socinian answers, the name belongeth not to Christ, but unto Israel: and that it so appears by a parallel place in the same prophet, Jer. xxxii. 15, 16. Socin, reijt. Jac. Weits, cap. 6. Catech. Racov. de Pers. Christi, c. 1. Crelleius de Deo et Attrib. i. i. c. 11. To this we first oppose the constant interpretation of the Jews, who attribute the name Jehovah to the Messias from this one particular text. As in the Sepher Ikkarim. l. ii. c. 6. The Scripture calleth the name of the Messias ‘Jehovah our righteousness,’ and in Midrashic Hillel on Psal. xxii. cap. 2, ‘The name Jehovah is the name of the Messias, and it is said (Exod. xv. 3.) “The Lord is a man of war, Jehovah is his name.” And it is written of the Messias, (Jer. xxiii. 6.) “And this is the name which they shall call him, Jehovah our righteousness.” Thas Echa Rabati, Lam. i. 6. המ רבי אלמה אמה היה משע"ז אמה גדר עד מים, זיקנה, ואמה גדר עד מים, זיקנה. What is the name of the Messias? R. Abba said, Jehovah is his name; as it is said (Jer. xxiii. 6.) ‘And this is the name which they shall call him, Jehovah our righteousness.’ The same he reports of Rabbi Levi. The Rabbins then, though enemies to the truth which we deduce from thence, constrained by the literal importance of the text, did acknowledge that the name Jehovah did belong to the Messias. And as for the collection of the contrary from the parallel place pretended, there is not so great a similitude as to enforce the same interpretation. For whereas in Jerem. xxiii. 6. it is expressly said, ית 미 is this the name, in the xxxiii. 16. it is only ית without any mention of a name; and surely that place cannot prove Jehovah to be the name of Israel, which speaks not one word of the name of Jerusalem: for where we read in Crelleins, ‘hoc scilicet nomen est,’ all but hoc is not in Scripture, but the gloss of Crelleins, and hoc itself cannot be warranted for the interpretation of מַיָּס וְqoּו דָּרֶשָׁ: the simplest interpretation of those words אֶלֶּה אָרָּה יְהוֹוָה is, he calleth Jerusalem, is the Lord our righteousness, that is, Christ. And thus the first answer of Socinian is invalid: which he easily foreseeing, hath joined with the Jewish Rabbins in the second answer, admitting that ‘Jehovah our righteousness’ is the name of the Messias, but withal denying that Christ is that Jehovah. To which purpose they assert these words, ‘Jehovah our righteousness,’ to be delivered by way of proposition, not of apposition; and this they endeavour to prove by such places of Scripture as seem to infer as much. As Moses built an altar, and called the name of it ‘Jehovah Nissi,’ Exod. xvii. 15. Gideon built an altar unto the Lord, and called it ‘Jehovah Shalom,’ Judg. vi. 24. And the name of the city in the last words of Ezekiel is ‘Jehovah Shammah.’ In all which places it is most certain, that the Jehovah is not predicated of that of whose name it is a part; but is the subject of a proposition, given by way of nomination, whose verb substantive or copula is understood. But from thence to conclude, that ‘the Lord our righteousness’ can be no otherwise understood of Christ than as a proposition, and that we by calling him so, according to the prophet’s prediction, can understand no more thereby, than that God the Father of Christ doth justify us, is most irrational. For first, It is therefore necessary to interpret those names by way of a proposition of themselves, because Jehovah cannot be the predicate of that which is named; it being most apparent, that an altar or a city built cannot be God; and whatsoever is not Jehovah without addition, cannot be Jehovah with addition. But there is no incongruity in attributing of that name to Christ, to whom we have
"righteous branch raised unto David, the King that shall reign and prosper, in whose days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely;" (Jer. xxiii. 5, 6.) we are assured that "this is his name whereby he shall be called, The Lord our righteousness:" (Ibid.) "the Lord," that is, Jehovah, the expression of his supremacy; and the addition of "our righteousness" can be no diminution to his majesty. If those words in the prophet, "Sing and rejoice, O daughter of Sion; for lo, I come, and I will dwell in the midst of thee, saith the Lord (Jehovah)," (Zech. ii. 10.) did not sufficiently of themselves denote our Saviour who dwelt amongst us, as they certainly do; yet the words which follow would evince as much; "And many nations shall be joined to the Lord in that day, and shall be my people; and I will dwell in the midst of thee, and thou shalt know that the Lord of hosts hath sent me unto thee:" (Ibid. 11.) for what other Lord can we conceive dwelling in the midst of us, and sent unto us by the Lord of hosts, but Christ?

And as the original Jehovah was spoken of Christ by the holy prophets; so the title of Lord, as the usual interpretation of that name, was attributed unto him by the apostles. In that signal prediction of the first age of the Gospel, God promised by Joel, that "whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord (Jehovah) shall be delivered:" (Joel ii. 32.) and St. Paul hath assured us that Christ is that Lord, by proving from thence, that "whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed;" and inferring from that, "if we confess with our mouth the Lord Jesus, we shall be saved:" (Rom. x. 9. 11.) For if it be a certain truth, that whosoever confesseth the Lord Jesus shall be already proved it actually given: and our adversaries who teach that the name Jehovah is sometimes given to the angels representing God, must acknowledge that it may be given unto Christ, whom they confess to be above all angels, and far more fully and exactly to represent the Father. Secondly, That which is the addition in those names cannot be truly predicated of that thing which bears the name. Moses could not say that altar was his exaltation, nor Gideon that it was his peace. And if it could not so be predicated by itself, it could neither be by apposition, and, consequently, even in this respect, it was necessary to make the name a proposition. But our righteousness may undoubtedly be predicated of him, who is here called by the name of "the Lord our righteousness:" for the apostle hath expressly taught us, that he is made unto us righteousness," 1 Cor. i. 30. And if it may be in itself, there can be no repugnancy in its predication by way of apposition. Thirdly, That addition of our righteousness doth not only truly belong to Christ, but in some manner properly and peculiarly so, as in that notion it can belong to no other person called Jehovah, but to that Christ alone. For he alone "is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth," Rom. x. 4. And when he is said to be "made unto us righteousness," 1 Cor. i. 30. he is thereby distinguished from God the Father. Being then Christ is thus peculiarly called our righteousness in the Gospel, being the place of the prophet forementioned speaketh of this as a name to be used under the Gospel, being no other person called Jehovah is ever expressly called our righteousness in the Gospel; it followeth, not only that Christ may be so called, but that the prophecy cannot otherwise be fulfilled, than by acknowledging that Christ is "the Lord our righteousness:" and, consequently, that is his name, not by way of proposition, but of apposition and appropriation; so that being both Jehovah and our righteousness, he is as truly Jehovah as our righteousness.
saved;" and the certainty of this truth depend upon that foundation, that "whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed;" and the certainty of that in relation to Christ depend upon that other promise, "Whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved:" (Ibid. 13.) then must the Lord in the thirteenth verse of the tenth chapter to the Romans be the same with the Lord Jesus in the ninth verse; or else St. Paul's argument must be invalid and fallacious, as containing that in the conclusion which was not comprehended in the premises. But the Lord in the ninth verse is no other than Jehovah, as appeareth by the prophet Joel from whom that scripture is taken. Therefore our Saviour in the New Testament is called Lord, as that name or title is the interpretation of Jehovah.

If we consider the office of John the Baptist peculiar unto him, we know it was "he of whom it is written (in the prophet Malachi, iii. 1.) I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me:" (Matt. xvi. 10.) we are sure he which spake those words was Jehovah "the Lord of hosts;" and we are sure that Christ is that Lord before whose face John the Baptist prepared the way. "The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness, (saith Isaiah, xl. 3.) Prepare ye the way of the Lord (Jehovah):" and "this is he that was spoken of by the prophet Isaiah," saith St. Matthew (iii. 3.) this is he of whom his father Zechariah did divinely presage, "Thou, child, shalt be called the Prophet of the Highest, for thou shalt go before the face of the Lord to prepare his way." (Luke i. 76.) Where Christ is certainly the Lord, and the Lord undeniably Jehovah.*

* I say therefore undeniably, because it is not only the undoubted translation of the name ה' in the prophet (which of itself were sufficient); but also is delivered in that manner which is (though unreasonably) required to signify the proper name of God, פִּינָיתָא רָאָא פִּינָיתָא קָפִּי, not פִּינָיתָא קָפִּי, that is, without, not with, an article. For now our Saviour's Deity must be tried by a kind of school divinity, and the most fundamental doctrine, maintained as such ever since the apostles times by the whole Catholic Church, must be examined, censured, and condemned, as it is, 5, 72. Socinus first makes use of this observation against Wiccus, and after him Crellius hath laid it as a grave and serious foundation, and spread it out into its several corners, to uphold the fabric of his superstitions. First: * Vox Jehovah magis quam caretur Dei nominia proprietum naturam sequitur; idem etiam Graeca Κύριος, cum pro illa ponitur, proprietam indolem, qua licet, significatur. Lib. de Deo, c. 14. Secondly: * Propriis nominibus articulus libentius substantiatur, licet eum etiam sepe concinnitatis potius quam necessitatis causa admitatur. Idem fit in voce Κύριος cum pro Jehovah ponitur. * Ibid. Thirdly: * Hac est causa cur in Novo Testamento, maxime apud Lucam et Paulum, vox Κύριος, cum Deum summum designat, articulo libentius cureat; at cum de Christo subjective ususurpetur, raro articulus omissitur. * Ibid. What strange uncertainties are these, to build the denial of so important an article as Christ's Divinity upon? He does not say absolutely Jehovah is the proper name of God, but only that it does more follow the nature of proper names than the other names of God. And indeed it is certain that sometimes it hath the nature of an appellative, as Deut. vi. 4. וְיִשְׂרָאֵל יְהוָה וְיִשְׂרָאֵל צְדָקָתָם "the Lord our God is one Lord;" and yet if it be not always and absolutely a proper name, though all the rest were granted to be true, the argument must be of no validity. Again, he cannot say an article is never affixed to a proper name, but only that libentius substantiatur, it is rather omitted than affixed; which yet is far from a certain or a true rule, espe-
Ner is this the only notation of the name or title Lord taken in a sense divine, above the expression of all mere human power and dominion; for it is often used as the interpretation of the name Jehovah, so it is also for that of Adon or Adonai. "The Lord said unto my Lord," saith David (Psal. cx. 1.) that is, in the original, Jehovah unto Adon; and that Adon is the Word,* that Lord is Christ. We know the Temple at Jerusalem was the Temple of the most high God, and the Lord of that Temple in the emphasis of an Hebrew article
cially in the language of the New Testament. For no man can deny Jesus to be the proper name of Christ, given him according to the law at his circumcision, and so be taken in the Holy Scriptures, Luke ii. 21, and yet whoever shall read the Gospel of St. Matthew, will find it ten times in his lessons with an article, for once without it. And in the Acts of the Apostles, written in a more Attic style, St. Paul is oftenest styled εποίηκεν than simply παρείκεν. So Balaam, Gallo, &c. Some persons we find in the New Testament, whom, if we should stay till we found them without an article, we should never call by their names at all; as Apelles, Balak, &c. Thirdly, διὰ Κυρίου is often so used for that God who is the Father with an article, and Κύριος for the Son without an article, (for the Father, Matt. i. 22, ii. 15. v. 33. xxii. 14. Mark xii. 36. Luke i. 6. 9. 15. 25. 46. ii. 15. 22. 23. x. 2. Acts ii. 25. 34. iii. 19. xvii. 27. Rom. xv. 11. 1 Cor. x. 26. xvi. 7. 2 Cor. v. 11. Eph. v. 17. 19. Col. iii. 16. 20. 23. 2 Thess. iii. 3. 2 Tim. i. 16. Heb. viii. 2. 11. xi. 11. Jam. iv. 10. 15. 1 Pet. ii. 3. For the Son, Matt. iii. 3. xxii. 43. 45. Mark i. 3. Luke i. 76. ii. 11. iii. 4. xx. 44. John i. 23. Acts ii. 36. x. 16. 21. xxi. 11. Rom. vi. 9. 12. xiv. 6. 8. 14. xvi. 2. 8. 11—13. 22. 1 Cor. i. 3. iv. 17. vii. 22. 23. 39. ix. 1. 2. xvi. xi. 11. xii. 5 xiv. 37. xv. 38. xvi. 10. 19. 2 Cor. i. 2. ii. 12. iv. 5. x. 17. xi. 17. xii. 13. 1. Gal. i. 3. v. 10. Eph. 1. 2. ii. 21. iv. 1. 3. 17. v. 8. vi. 1. 4. 10. 21. 23. Phil. i. 2. iii. 11. 19. 24. 29. i. 1. 20. iv. 1. 2. 10. Col. i. 9. 2. vii. 17. 18. 24. iv. 7. 17. 1 Thess. i. 1. iii. 5. vi. 1. 15. 17. xii. 2. 2 Thess. i. 2. 9. ii. 13. iii. 4. 1 Tim. i. 1. 2 Tim. ii. 24. Tit. i. 2. Philen. 3. 16. 20. Jam. i. 1. 2 Pet. iii. 8. 10. 2 John 3. Jude 14. Rev. xiv. 13. xix. 16.) I say, they are thus so often used, that though they equal not the number of their contrary acceptations, yet they come so near, as to yield no ground for any such observation, as if the Holy Ghost intended any such article-distinction. Nay, it is most evident that the sacred pennaent intended no such
distinction, because in the same place speaking of the same person, they usually observe the idleness of adding or omitting the article. As Jam. v. 11. Τοίον επιθύμητο 16ος κατοικίας, και τον θεόν Κυρίου επιτύθη σαλοπαπάλαργες επιστολοπάπαργες Κύριος και κτισμόν. 2 Tim. i. 16. Πάντα φανερά διὰ Κύριος. Επιστολα παρά Κυρίου διαφέρεται τα δικαια. 1 Cor. vii. 17. Καθαρήν εἰς καθαρόν εἰς Κύριον, έστω περιπατείντα. ver. 22. Ο γάρ έν Κυρίον καθαρεύσει δίκαιον, διεθνέται εις Κυρίον εστι. See Rom. xiv. 1—8. Wherefore being Jehovah is not affirmed absolutely to be a proper name; being if it were, yet it appears that it is not the custom of the New Testament to use every proper name often without an article than with one; being διὰ Κύριου is so often taken for him whom they acknowledge God, and Κύριος for him whom they cannot deny to be the Christ: it followeth that Christ, acknowledged to be the Lord, cannot by any virtue of an article be denied to be the true Jehovah. We must not then think to decide this controversy by the articles, of which the sacred penmen were not curious, and the transcribers have been very careless; nor is there so great uncertainty of the ancient MSS. in any thing as in the words and articles of Κύριος and Θεός. The Vulgar edition, Rev. i. 8. hath λέγω διὰ Κύριον only, the Complutensis λέγεται Κύριος διὰ Θεον. Plautine, λέγει διὰ Κύριον διὰ Θεον, against the Socinian rule, who will have an accession by διὰ Θεον, and a diminution by διὰ Κύριον. As Rev. iv. 11. Αίματος διὰ Κύριον, αίματος τίνος θανάτου in other MSS. Αίματος διὰ Θεον, διὰ Κύριον και διὰ Θεον. Αίματος διὰ Βερον. διὰ Θεον τίνος θανάτου. 1 Cor. xi. 27. το διάκονον τού Κυρίου δι' ευγενείας, others with an addition, το πατήρων του Κυρίου, διέπεσεν τούς Κυρίου και διέπεσεν τούς Θεον, το θανάτου την αἰματον. 1 Cor. xiv. 37. the Vulgar edition, δίδωμι τον Κυρίου ευγενείαν, the Complutensis, τον Κυρίου και τον Θεον. So where we usually read Χριστόν, divers ancient MSS. have Κυρίου. Lastly, it is observable that even in these words of the Creed, which we now expound, Κύριος is spoken expressly of Christ without an article, for so we read it: και εν υιον δι' ευγενείας, Κυρίου ομοιον. * Chaldee paraphrase.
was Christ, as appeareth by that prophet, "The Lord* whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in." (Mal. iii. 1.)

Now this notation, as it is the interpretation of Adon, signifies immediately and properly dominion implying a right of possession, and power of disposing. Which doth not only agree with that other notion of Jehovah, but presupposes it, as following and flowing from it. For he who alone hath a being or existence of himself, and thereby is the fountain of all things beside himself, must be acknowledged to have full power and dominion over all: because every thing must necessarily belong to him from whom it hath received what it is. Wherefore being Christ is the Lord, as that title is taken for Jehovah, the name of God, expressing the necessary existence and independence of his single being, and consequently the dependency of all others upon him; it followeth, that he be acknowledged also the Lord, as that name expresseth Adon, signifying power authoritative and proper dominion. Thus having explained the notation of the word Lord, which we propounded as the first part of our exposition; we come next to the second, which is, to declare the nature of this dominion, and to shew how and in what respect Christ is the Lord.

Now for the full and exact understanding of the dominion seated or invested in Christ as the Lord, it will be necessary to distinguish it according to that diversity which the Scriptures represent unto us. As therefore we have observed two natures united in his person, so must we also consider two kinds of dominion belonging respectively to those natures; one inherent in his Divinity, the other bestowed upon his humanity; one, as he is the Lord the Maker of all things, the other as he is made Lord of all things.

For the first, we are assured that "the Word was God," (John i. 1.) that by the same Word "all things were made, and without him was not any thing made that was made;" (Ibid. 3.) we must acknowledge that whosoever is the Creator of all things must have a direct dominion over all, as belonging to the possession of the Creator, who made all things. Therefore the Word, that is, Christ as God, hath the supreme and universal dominion of the World. Which was well expressed by that famous confession of no longer doubting, but believing Thomas, "my Lord and my God." (John xx. 28.)

For the second, it is also certain that there was some kind of lordship given or bestowed on Christ, whose very unction proves no less than an imparted dominion; as St. Peter tells us, that he was "made both Lord and Christ." (Acts ii. 36.) What David spake of man (Psal. viii. 5, 6;) the Apostle hath applied peculiarly unto him, "Thou crownedst him with glory and honour, and didst set him over the works of thy hands
Thou hast put all things in subjection under his feet.” (Heb. ii. 7, 8.)

Now a dominion thus imparted, given, derived, or bestowed, cannot be that which belongeth unto God as God, founded in the divine nature, because whatsoever is such is absolute and independent. Wherefore, this lordship thus imparted or acquired appertaineth to the human nature, and belongeth to our Saviour as the Son of man. The right of judicature is part of this power; and Christ himself hath told us, that the Father “hath given him authority to execute judgment, because he is the Son of man;” (John v. 27.) and by virtue of this delegated authority, the “Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels, and reward every man according to his works.” (Matt. xvi. 27.) Part of the same dominion is the power of forgiving sins; as pardoning, no less than punishing, is a branch of the supreme magistracy: and Christ did therefore say to the sick of the palsy, “Thy sins be forgiven thee, that we might know that the Son of man had power on earth to forgive sins.” (Matt. ix. 2. 6.) Another branch of that power is the alteration of the Law, there being the same authority required to abrogate or alter, which is to make a law: and Christ asserted himself to be “greater than the Temple,” shewing that the “Son of man was Lord even of the sabbath-day.” (Matt. xii. 6. 8.) This dominion thus given unto Christ in his human nature was a direct and plenary power over all things, but was not actually given him at once, but part while he lived on earth, part after his death and resurrection. For though it be true that “Jesus knew,” before his death, “that the Father had given all things into his hands:” (John xiii. 3.) yet it is observable that in the same place it is written, that he likewise knew “that he was come from God, and went to God:” and part of that power he received when he came from God, with part he was invested when he went to God; the first to enable him, the second, not only so, but also to reward him. “For to this end Christ both died, rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living.” (Rom. xiv. 9.) After his resurrection he said to his disciples, “All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.” (Matt. xxvii. 18.) “He drank of the brook in the way, therefore he hath lift up his head.” (Psal. cx. 7.) Because “he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross: therefore God hath also highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name; that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth; and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.” (Phil. ii. 8—11.) Thus for and after his death he was instated in a full power and dominion over all things, even as the Son
of man, but exalted by the Father, "who raised him from the
dead, and set him at his right hand in the heavenly places,
far above all principality and power, and might and dominion,
and every name that is named, not only in this world, but
also in that which is to come: and hath put all things under
his feet, and gave him to be head over all things to the Church." (Eph. i. 20—22.)

Now as all the power given unto Christ as man had not the
same beginning in respect of the use or possession; so neither,
when begun, shall it all have the same duration. For part of
it being merely economical, aiming at a certain end, shall then
cease and determine, when that end for which it was given
shall be accomplished: part, being either due upon the union
of the human nature with the divine, or upon covenant, as a
reward for the sufferings endured in that nature, must be coeval
with that union and that nature which so suffered, and con-
sequently must be eternal.

Of the first part of this dominion did David speak, when by
the spirit of prophecy he called his Son his Lord; "The Lord
said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand until I make
thine enemies thy footstool;" (Psal. cx. 1.) where the continu-
ation of Christ's dominion over his enemies is promised to be
prolonged until their final and total subjection. "For he must
reign till he hath put all things under his feet." (1 Cor. xv. 25.)
And as we are sure of the continuation of that kingdom till
that time, so are we assured of the resignation at that time.
For "when he shall have put down all rule, and all authority
and power, then shall he deliver up the kingdom to God, even
the Father." (1 Cor. xv. 24.) "And when all things shall be
subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject
unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in
all." (Ibid. 28.) Thus he which was appointed to "rule in the
midst of his enemies" (Psal. cx. 2.) during their rebellion, shall
resign up his commission after their subjection.

But we must not look upon Christ only in the nature of a
general, who hath received a commission, or of an ambassador,
with perfect instructions, but of the only Son of God, em-
powered and employed to destroy the enemies of his Father's
kingdom; and though thus empowered and commissioned,
though resigning that authority which hath already had its
perfect work, yet still the only Son and heir of all things in his
Father's house, never to relinquish his dominion over those
whom he hath purchased with his own blood, never to be de-
prived of that reward which was assigned him for his suffer-
ings: for if the prize which we expect in the race of our im-
perfect obedience be an immovable crown, if the weight of
glory which we look for from him be eternal; then cannot his
perfect and absolute obedience be crowned with a fading
power, or he cease ruling over us, who hath always reigned in,
ns. We shall for ever reign with him, and he will make us priests and kings; but so that he continue still for ever High-
priest and King of kings.

The certainty of this eternal dominion of Christ, as man, we
may well ground upon the promise made to David, because by
reason of that promise Christ himself is called David. For so
God speaketh concerning his people; “I will set up one
shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant
David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.
And I the Lord will be their God, and my servant David a
prince among them. I the Lord have spoken it.” (Ezek.
xxxiv. 23, 24.) Now the promise was thus made expressly to
David, “Thy house and thy kingdom shall be established for
ever before thee, thy throne shall be established for ever.”
(2 Sam. vii. 16.) And although that term for ever* in the
Hebrew language may signify oft-times no more than a certain
duration so long as the nature of the thing is durable, or at
the utmost but to the end of all things; and so the economical
dominion or kingdom of Christ may be thought sufficiently to
fulfil their promise, because it shall certainly continue so long
as the nature of that economy requireth, till all things be per-
formed for which Christ was sent, and that continuation will
insufflably extend unto the end of all things: yet sometimes
also the same term for ever signifies that absolute eternity of
future duration which shall have no end at all; and that it is
so far to be extended particularly in that promise made to
David, and to be fulfilled in his Son, is as certain as the pro-
mise. For the angel Gabriel did give that clear exposition to
the blessed Virgin, when in this manner he foretold the glory
of him who was then to be conceived in her womb; “The Lord
God shall give unto him the throne of his father David: and
he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever, and of his
kingdom there shall be no end.” (Luke i. 32, 33.) Nor is this
clearer in Gabriel’s explication of the promise, than in Daniel’s
prevision of the performance, who “saw in the night visions,
and behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of
heaven; and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought
him near before him. And there was given him dominion and
glory, and a kingdom, that all people and languages should
serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which
shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be
destroyed.” (Dan. vii. 13, 14.)

Thus Christ is Lord both by a natural and independent do-
minion: as God the creator, and consequently the owner of
the works of his hands: and by a derived, imparted, and de-
pendent right, as man, sent, anointed, raised and exalted, and
so made Lord and Christ: which authority so given and be-
stowed upon him is partly economical, and therefore to be

* ט"י

OUR LORD.
resigned into the hands of the Father, when all those ends for which it was imparted are accomplished: partly so proper to the union, or due unto the passion, of the human nature. that it must be coeval with it, that is, of eternal duration.

The third part of our explication is, the due consideration of the object of Christ's dominion, inquiring whose Lord he is, and how ours. To which purpose first observe the latitude, extent, or rather universality of his power, under which all things are comprehended, as subjected to it. For "he is Lord of all." (Acts x. 36.) saith St. Peter, of all things, and of all persons; and he must be so, who made all things as God, and to whom all power is given as man. To him then all things are subjected whose subjection employeth not a contradiction. "For he hath put all things under his feet: but when he saith all things are put under him, it is manifest that he is excepted which did put all things under him." (1 Cor. xv. 27.) God only then excepted, whose original dominion is repugnant to the least subjection, all things are subject unto Christ; whether they be things in heaven, or things on earth. In heaven he is far above all principalities and powers, and "all the angels of God worship him;" (Heb. i. 6.) on earth all nations are his inheritance, "and the uttermost parts of the earth are his possession.” (Psal. ii. 8.) Thus Christ is certainly our Lord, because he is the Lord of all; and when all things were subjected to him, we were not excepted.

But in the midst of this universality of Christ's regal authority it will be farther necessary to find some propriety of dominion, by which he may be said to be peculiarly our Lord. It is true, he made us, and not we ourselves, we are the work of his hands; but the lowest of his creatures can speak as much. We are still preserved by his power, and as he made us, so doth he maintain us; but at the same time he feedeth the ravens and clotheth the lilies of the field. Wherefore beside his original right of creation, and his continued right of preservation, we shall find a more peculiar right of redemption, belonging properly to the sons of men. And in this redemption, though a single word, we shall find a double* title to a most just dominion, one of conquest, another of purchase.

* For the right understanding of this double title involved in the word redemption, it will be necessary to take notice of the ways by which human dominion is acquired, and servitude introduced. 'Servi aut nascentur, aut fiunt,' saith the Civilian, Inst. i. tit. 3, but in Theology we say more, 'Servi et nascentur, et fiunt.' Man is born the servant of God his maker, man is made the servant of his Redeemer. Two ways in general they observed by which they came to serve, who were not born slaves. 'Font aut jure gentium, id est, captivitate; aut jure civili, cum liber homo major viri et amnis ad pretium participandum esse veedores est.' Two ways then also there were by which dominion over those servants was acquired, by conquest or by purchase, and both these were always accounted just. Dionysius Halicarnassaeus, an excellent historian, a curious observer of the Roman customs, and an exact judge of their actions, being a Grecian, justifieth the right which the masters in Rome claimed over their servants upon
We were first servants of the enemy of God; for him we obeyed, “and his servants we are to whom we obey: when Christ through death destroyed him that had the power of death, that is, the devil, and delivered us; he spoiled principalities and powers, and made a show of them openly, triumphing over them.” (Rom. vi. 16. Heb. ii. 14. Col. ii. 15.) But contrary to the custom of triumphing conquerors, he did not sell, but buy us; because while he saved us, he died for us, and that death was the price by which he purchased us; even so this dying victor gave us life: upon the cross, as his triumphant chariot, he shed that precious blood which bought us, and thereby became our Lord by right of redemption, both as to conquest and to purchase.

Beside, he hath not only bought us, but provided for us; whatever we have, we receive from him as the master of the family; we hold of him all temporal and eternal blessings, which we enjoy in this, or hope for in another life. He is the “Prince of Life,” (Acts iii. 15.) and “by him we live;” (John vi. 57.) he is “the Lord of glory,” (1 Cor. ii. 8.) and we are “called by his Gospel to the obtaining of the glory of our Lord.” (2 Thess. ii. 14.) Wherefore he hath us under his dominion; and becomes our Lord by right of promotion.

Lastly, men were not anciently sold always by others, but sometimes by themselves; and whosoever of us truly believe in Christ, have given up our names unto him. In our baptismal vow we bind ourselves unto his service, “that henceforth we will not serve sin; but yield ourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and our members as instruments of righteousness unto God: that, as we have yielded our members servants to uncleanness, and to iniquity unto iniquity; even so we should yield our members servants to righteousness unto holiness.” (Rom. vi. 13. 19.) And thus the same dominion is acknowledged by compact, and confirmed by covenant; and so Christ becomes our Lord by right of obligation.

The necessity of believing and professing our faith in this part of the Article appeareth, first, in the discovery of our con-
dition; for by this we know that we are not our own, neither our persons nor our actions. "Know ye not (saith St. Paul, 1 Cor. vi. 19, 20.) that ye are not your own? for ye are bought with a price." And ancient servitude, to which the Scriptures relate, put the servants wholly in the possession\(^*\) of their master; so that their persons were as properly his as the rest of his goods. And if we be so in respect of Christ, then may we not live to ourselves but to him; for in this the difference of service and freedom both properly consist: \(\dagger\) we cannot do our own wills, \(\dagger\) but the will of him whose we are. Christ took upon him the form of a servant: and to give us a proper and perfect example of that condition, he telleth us, "I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me." (John vi. 38.) First, therefore, we must conclude with the apostle, reflecting upon Christ's dominion and our obligation, that "none of us liveth to himself, and no man dieth to himself. For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; or whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore, or die, we are the Lord's." (Rom. xiv. 7, 8.)

Secondly, The same is necessary both to enforce, and invite us to obedience: to enforce us, as he is the Lord, to invite us, as Christ the Lord. If we acknowledge ourselves to be his servants, we must "bring into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ." (2 Cor. x. 5.) He which therefore died, and rose, and revived, that he might become the Lord both of the dead and living, maketh not that death and resurrection efficacious to any but such as by their service acknowledge that dominion which he purchased. He, "though he were a Son, yet learned obedience by the things which he suffered; and being made perfect, he is become the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him" (Heb. v. 8, 9.) Thus the consideration of the power invested in him, and the necessity of the serv

\[\text{\scriptsize \(\dagger\)}\]

\[\text{\scriptsize \(\dagger\)}\]

\[\text{\scriptsize \(\dagger\)}\]

\[\text{\scriptsize \(\dagger\)}\]

\[\text{\scriptsize \(\dagger\)}\]

\[\text{\scriptsize \(\dagger\)}\]
vice due unto him, should force us to obedience; while the consideration of him whom we are thus obliged to serve should allure and invite us. When God gave the Law with fire and thunder, the affrighted Israelites desired to receive it from Moses, and upon that receipt promised obedience. “Go thou near (said they to him), and hear all that the Lord our God shall say; and speak thou unto us, and we will hear it and do it.” (Deut. v. 27.) If they interpret it so great a favour to receive the Law by the hands of Moses; if they made so ready and cheerful a promise of exact obedience unto the Law so given; how should we be invited to the same promise, and a better performance, who have received the whole will of God revealed to us by the Son of man, who are to give an account of our performance to the same man set down at the right hand of the Father? He first took our nature to become our brother, that with so near a relation he might be made our Lord. If then the patriarchs did cheerfully live in the land of Goshen, subject to the power and command of Egypt, because that power was in the hand of Joseph their exalted brother; shall not we with all readiness of mind submit ourselves to the divine dominion now given to him who gave himself for us? Shall all the angels worship him, and all the archangels bow down before him, and shall not we be proud to join with them?

Thirdly, The belief of Christ’s dominion is necessary for the regulation of all power, authority, and dominion on earth, both in respect of those which rule, and in relation to those that obey. From hence the most absolute monarchs learn, that the people which they rule are not their own but the subjects of a greater prince, by him committed to their charge. Upon this St. Paul doth ground his admonition to masters, “Give unto your servants that which is just and equal, knowing that ye also have a master in heaven.” (Col. iv. 1.) God gave a power to the Israelites to make hired servants of their brethren, but not slaves; and gives this reason of the interdiction, “For they are my servants which I brought forth out of the land of Egypt; they shall not be sold as bondmen.” (Lev. xxv. 42.) What tenderness then should be used towards those who are the servants of that Lord who redeemed them from a greater bondage, who bought them with a higher price? From hence those which are subject learn to obey the powers which are of human ordination, because in them they obey the Lord of all. Subjects bear the same proportion, and stand in the same relation to their governors, with servants to their masters: and St. Paul hath given them this charge, “Obey in all things your masters according to the flesh; and whatsoever you do, do it heartily, as to the Lord and not unto men; knowing that of the Lord ye shall receive the reward of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ.” (Col. iii. 22—24.) Neither do we learn from hence only whom, but also how, to obey. For while we look
upone one *Lord* in heaven, while we consider him as the "Lord of lords," we regulate our obedience to them by our service due to him, and so are always ready to obey, but in the *Lord*.

Lastly, This title of our Saviour is of necessary belief for our comfort and encouragement. For being Lord of all, he is able to dispose of all things for the benefit of those which serve him. He who commanded the unconstant winds and stilled the raging seas, he who multiplied the loaves and fishes, and created wine with the word of his mouth, hath all creatures now under exact obedience, and therefore none can want whom he undertaketh to provide for. "For the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him." (Rom. x. 12.) Many are the enemies of those persons who dedicate themselves unto his service; but our enemies are his, and part of his dominion is therefore given him, and to continue in him until all his enemies be made his footstool. Great is the power of the lusts of our flesh, which war in our members; but his grace is sufficient for us, and the power of that spirit by which he ruleth in us. Heavy are the afflictions which we are called to undergo for his sake: but if we suffer with him, we shall reign together with him: and blessed be that dominion which makes us all kings, that he may be for ever Lord of lords, and King of kings.

After this explication, every Christian may perceive what he is to believe in this part of the Article, and express himself how he would be understood when he maketh this profession of his faith, I believe in Christ our *Lord*. For thereby we may and ought to intend this much: I do assent unto this as a certain and infallible truth, taught me by God himself, that Jesus Christ, the only Son of God, is the true Jehovah, who hath that being which is originally and eternally of itself, and on which all other beings do essentially depend: that by the right of emanation of all things from him, he hath an absolute, supreme, and universal dominion over all things as God: that as the Son of man he is invested with all power in heaven and earth; partly economical, for the completing our redemption, and the destruction of our enemies, to continue to the end of all things, and then to be resigned to the Father; partly consequent unto the union, or due unto the obedience of his passion, and so eternal, as belonging to that kingdom which shall have no end. And though he be thus Lord of all things by right of the first creation and constant preservation of them, yet is he more peculiarly the Lord of us who by faith are consecrated to his service: for through the work of our redemption he becomes our Lord both by the right of conquest and of purchase; and making us the sons of God, and providing heavenly mansions for us, he acquires a farther right of promotion, which, considering the covenant we all make to serve him, is at last completed in the right of a voluntary obligation. And thus I believe in Christ our *Lord*. 
ARTICLE III.

Which was conceived by the Holy Ghost,
born of the Virgin Mary.

These words, as they now stand, clearly distinguish the conception of Jesus from his nativity, attributing the first to the Holy Ghost, the second to the blessed Virgin; whereas the ancient Creeds made no such distinction; but without any particular express mention of the conception, had it only in this manner, who was born by the Holy Ghost of the Virgin Mary; or of the Holy Ghost and the Virgin Mary; understanding by the word born, not only the nativity, but also the conception and generation. This is very necessary to be observed, because otherwise the addition of a word will prove the diminution of the sense of the Article. For they who speak only of the operation of the Holy Ghost in Christ's conception, and of the manner of his birth, leave out most part of that which was anciently understood under that one term of being born of the Holy Ghost and of the Virgin Mary.

That therefore nothing may be omitted which is pertinent to express the full extent, and comprehend the utmost signification of this Article, we shall consider three persons mentioned, so far as they are concerned in it. The first is he who was conceived and born; the second, he by whose energy or operation he was conceived; the third, she who did conceive and bear him.

* Deum Judaei sic praeclare solum, ut neget filium ejus; neget simul cum eo unum esse, qui natus est de Spiritu Sancto ex Maria Virgine. Naciatanvs. Qui natus est de Spiritu Sancto ex Maria Virgine. Ruffinus in Synodinum, § 12. Natus de Spiritu S. et Maria Virgine. S. August. Ench. ad Laurent. c. 54, 57, et 58. As also the Council of Frandford in Sacrosyllabo. Natus est per Spiritum S. ex Virgine Maria. S. August. de Fide et Symb. c. iv. § 8. * Nomine de Spiritu S. et Virginie Maria Dei filius unicus natus est? Ideo, de Prodest. Sanct. c. 13. Et paulo post: Quia natus est de Spiritu S. ex Maria Virgine. Qui natus est de Spiritu S. ex Maria Virgine. S. Leo Epist. x. c. 2. Maximus Taurin. Chrysol. Ethikons. Auctor Symbol. ad Catechum. So also Venantius Fortunatus. From whence Fulgentius de Fide ad Petrum Diaconum: Natum de Spiritu S. ex Maria Virgine, in Symbolo acceptum, et corde ad justitiam credit, et ore ad salutem S. Ecclesia confundetur. Item praelicandum est quomodo Filus Dei incarnatus est de Spiritu S. ex Maria pænæst-Virginæ. c. 2. Capitul. Caroli 82. and Alcuinus l. iii. de Trinitat. c. 1. * Dictor in Symbolo Catholice fidei, quod Christus de Spiritu S. et ex Maria Virgine sit natus. In the ancient MS. transcribed by the learned Archbishop of Armagh: The generatio ex patribus Ave, et Magis tis pædibus. So Paulus Saucicatus in his litth proposition: * nec est generatio ex proiebus Ave, et Magis tis pædibus. These, omitted in the Nicene Creed, were put in by the Council of Constantinople, upon the occasion of the Apollinarian heresy, as was observed by Diogenes bishop of Cyzicum in the Council of Chalcedon: * ως ἀγνός πατερεξ τεκτικόν τον ἱεραρχή, Καὶ ἐκ τοῦ τεκτικού. In the several expositions among the sermons de Tempore, falsely attributed to St. Augustin: * Qui conceptus est de Spiritu S. natus ex Virgine Maria. So Eusebius Gallicanus, Homil. ii. de Symbolo, p. 354. And from thence it hath so continued, as we now read it, Which was conceived by the Holy Ghost, born of the Virgin Mary.
ARTICLE III.

For the first, the relative in the front of this comes clearly back unto the former Article, and tells us that he which was thus conceived and born was Jesus Christ, the only Son of God. And being we have already demonstrated that this only Son is therefore called so, because he was begotten by the Father from all eternity, and so of the same substance with him; it followeth that this Article at the first beginning, or by virtue of its connexion, can import no less than this most certain, but miraculous, truth, that he* which was begotten by the Father before all worlds, was now in the fulness of time conceived by the Holy Ghost, and born of the Virgin Mary. Again, being by the conception and birth is to be understood whatsoever was done towards the production of the human nature of our Saviour; therefore the same relative, considered with the words which follow it, can speak no less than the incarnation of that person. And thus even in the entry of the Article we meet with the incarnation of the Son of God, that great mystery wrapt up in that short sentence of St. John, “the Word was made flesh.” (i. 14.)

Indeed the pronoun hath relation not only unto this, but to the following Articles, which have their necessary connexion with and foundation in this third; for he who was conceived and born, and so made man, did in that human nature suffer, die, and rise again. Now when we say this was the Word, and that Word was God, being whosoever as God cannot cease to be so, it must necessarily follow, that he was made man by joining the human nature with the divine. But then we must take heed lest we conceive, because the divine nature belongeth to the Father, to which the human is conjoined, that therefore the Father should be incarnate, or conceived and born. For as certainly as the Son was crucified, and the Son alone; so certainly the same Son was incarnate, and that Son alone. Although the human nature was conjoined with the Divinity, which is the nature common to the Father and the Son; yet was that union made only in the person of the Son. Which doctrine is to be observed against the heresy of the Patrissians,† which was both very ancient and far diffused, making

* Hunc, quem dumam de Patre natum ineffabiliter uniuscuiusque. S. Apollinaris, S. Ambrosii, et alii (H. Episc. Corun.) 4. 5. 1. But certainly this heresy was ancianter than Noetus; for the Patrissians are named by St. Clement, Ep. 73, and Paulinus his master chargeth it upon Praxev, De negoia Deo. Praxev Romae praecivit, Præphetum expulit, et Heresam multa in Patristico lugavat, et Patrum crucifixit. Adv. Prax. c. 1. And expressing the absurdity of that opinion: ‘Quae post temporis Patris nati et Patris passio, ipsa Dei Dominus Omnipotens Jesus Christus praecipit’ c. 2. And De Prax. adv. Heret. Post hos omnes...
the Father to be incarnate, and becoming man to be crucified. But this very CREED was always thought to be a sufficient
conformation of that fond opinion,* in that the incarnation is

etiam Praxseis quidam Haereticum intro-
duXit, quam Victorinus corroborabatur cura-
vit. Hic Deum Patrem Omnipotentem Jesum Christum esse dicit, hunc cruci-
fixum passuque contendit; mortuum praeteren sepsum si sedere ad dextram suam, cum profana et sacrilega temeritate proponit.' c. 53. After Praxseis, Noetus took the same.

'Textum Legem in patetia Patris divini, saque Epiphanii, and being questioned for it, he answered: 'At

gar hanc patonam. Ino Ites in, in Iqvi
temac, sae IVqo avto avno-
Sivt, piotebita, apotevstai. Herei. lvi. 

§. 1. He thought the Father and the Son to be the same person, and therefore if
the Son, the Father to be incarnate: 'I

pata, in Xristov, Iqvi

yn avto vni

patia, on ova et avno

Sivt. S. Eiphani.

Annelepb. t. i. l. ii. §. 11. After the Nue-
tianii followed the Sabellianii. So Phili-

liarius: 'Saeulios Discipulus ejus, qui similitudinem sui Doctoris igitur seculus est, unde et Sabellianii posten sunt ap-

ellati, qui et Patripassianii, et Praxseis a

Praxeis, et Hermesianii ab Hermogenese, 

quem fuerint in Africa, qui et etsi senti-

etes abjecti sunt ab Ecclesia Catholic.'

In Biblioth. Patr. Lat. t. iv. p. 602. So

St. Augustin; 'Saeulianii dicti sunt qui-
dam Haeretici, qui vocantur et Patri-

passianii, qui dicunt ipsam Patrem passu

esse.' Trans. S. in. luv. This I confess

is denied by Epiphaniius, who acknow-

ledged Sabellianii to have followed Noetus

in many things, but not in the incarnata

ion or passion of the Father: 'Saeulian-
i in hoc debant estis (l. esttus, id est, 

Noetus), vel est us, id est, Nota, as St. 

Augustin, Notus.)' Exlezizis: paq, tuito

moq, 1qveti, yar me Ipsevetaq to patetia.

Annelep. t. i. l. ii. §. 16. This St. Au-

gustin wonders very much at in Epipha-
niius: 'Saeulianii, inquit, similia Noto
dogmatiquones, prater hoc quod dicit Pat-

rem non esse passum; quomodo de Sae-

belliani intelligi potest, cum sic inquietur di
cere Patrem passum, ut Patripassianoi

quum Sabellianus vocatus nonparentur!' 

S. Augustin. Her. 11. Indeed, the Latin

fathers generally call the Sabellians Pa-

trippassius; and not only so, but Theo-
doret doth so describe them as professing

one person: 'Ev my to talos avo patetia

vkaloi to to, is de to kai, avo ev evi}

Theol. i. ii. §. 9. After the Sabellianii succeeded in

the same heresy the Priscillianista,
as appeareth by Pope Leo, who shews

they taught but one person of the Father,

Son, and Holy Ghost: 'Quod blasphemie

genus de Sabellii opinione sumperunt,
cujus discipuli etiam Patripassiani merito

nuncupantur; quia si ipse est Filii qui

et Pater, crux Filii Patris est passio, et

quicquid in forma servi Filii Patri obedi-

diendo sustinuit, totum in se Pater ipse

suscepit.' Ep. 93. c. 1. Thus the Patri-

passian heresy, beginning from Praxseis

and Hermogenese, was continued by

Noetus, Sabellius, and Priscillianus, and

mingled with all their several heresies,

the sum and substance of which is thus

well set down by Victorinus Afer: 'Patri-

passiani Deum solum esse dicunt quem

nos patrem dicimus; ipsum solum exisi-

dentem et effectorem omnim, et venisse

non solum in mundum, sed et in caroem,

et alia omnia que nos Filium fecisse dic-


* It appeareth plainly that Tertullian

confuted Praxseis, by reducing him to

these words of the Creed. For when he

had first declared: 'Nos unicum quidem

Deum credimus (which was the objec-

tion of Praxseis) sub hac tamen dispensa-

tione, quam ekeiroum dicimus, ut uni Dei

et Filius sermo ipsius, qui ex ipso pro-

cesserit, per quem omnia facta sunt, et

in quse factum est nihil,' c. 2. Then he

subjoined: 'Hunc nissum a Patre in

Virginem, et ex ca natum hominem et

Deum, filium hominis et filium Dei, et

cognominatum Jesum Christum. Hunc

passum, hunc mortuum, et sepultum, sec-

cundum Scrifuras, et resuscitatum a

Patre, et in caelos resurrectum, et pro an-
dextram Patris, venturum judicare viros

e mortuos.' ibid. And that we may be

assured he used these words out of the

Creed, it followeth: 'Hunc Regulam ab

initio Evangelii decurrescit, ccc.' ibid.

This is yet farther evident out of Epipha-
niius, who tells us the eastern doctors

confuted Noetus in the same manner,

by reducing him to the words of the

Creed: "Ev my to talos avo patetia

kai a ev to Tertullian: 'Nos unicum quidem Deum

credimus;') all' 'a orizamatiou aoxal avo patetia

ev to Xristov egoget, all' 'a orizamati aoxal

Xristov avo tov, otopia a ta tima, aropi-

vamia kai avo aavtan, aov staata, aopla

ev to oooget, oto a ev aev to patetia,

avexizis tov aropi aontas kai taqrois. Her.

57. §. 1. And when the argument of

Tertullian against Praxseis, and the

Greeks against Noetus drawn from

the Creed did not sufficiently convince

the Patripassians, the Church of Aquileia,

to exclude them wholly, added these two

words to the first article, i.e., ibidem, and

R
not subjoined to the first, but to the second, Article; we do not say, I believe in God the Father Almighty, which was conceived, but in his only Son, our Lord, which was conceived by the Holy Ghost.

First then, We believe that he which was made flesh was the Word, that he which took upon him the nature of man was not the Father nor the Holy Ghost, nor any other person but the only-begotten Son. And when we say that person was conceived and born, we declare he was made really and truly man, of the same human nature which is in all other men, who by the ordinary way of generation are conceived and born. For the "Mediator between God and man is the man Christ Jesus:" (1 Tim. ii. 5.) that since "by man came death, by man also should come the resurrection of the dead." (1 Cor. xv. 21.) As sure then as the first Adam and we who are redeemed are men, so certainly is the second Adam and our Mediator man. He is therefore frequently called the "Son of man," and in that nature he was always promised. First, "to Eve," (Gen. iii. 15.) as her seed, and consequently her son. Then to Abraham, "In thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;" (Gen. xxii. 18.) and that "seed is Christ," (Gal. iii. 16.) and so the son of Abraham. Next to David, as his "son to sit upon his throne;" (2 Sam. vii. 12—16.) and so he is "made of the seed of David according to the flesh, (Rom. i. 3.) the son of David, the son of Abraham," (Matt. i. 1.) and consequently of the same nature with David and with Abraham. And as he was their son, so are we his brethren, as descending from the same father Adam; "and therefore it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren." (Heb. ii. 17.) For he "laid not hold on the angels, but on the seed of Abraham." (Ibid. 16.) And so became not an angel, but a man.

As then man consisteth of two different parts, body and soul, so doth Christ: he assumed a body, at his conception, of the blessed Virgin. "Forasmuch as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same." (Heb. ii. 14.) The verity of his body stands upon the truth of his nativity;* and the actions and passions of his life shew the nature of his flesh.

* In Symph. ut carmen Christi negaret, negavit etiam nativitatem, aut ut nativitatem negaret, negavit et car
*nem scilicet, ne invicem sibi testimo-
He was first born with a body which was "prepared for him," (Heb. x. 5.) of the same appearance with those of other infants; he grew up by degrees, and was so far from being sustained without the accustomed nutrition of our bodies, that he was observed even by his enemies to come "eating and drinking," (Matt. xi. 19.) and when he did not so, he suffered hunger and thirst. Those ploughers never doubted of the true nature of his flesh, who "ploughed upon his back and made long furrows." (Psal. cxxxix. 3.) The thorns which pricked his sacred temples, the nails which penetrated through his hands and feet, the spear which pierced his sacred side, give sufficient testimony of the natural tenderness and frailty of his flesh. And lest his fasting forty days together, lest his walking on the waters and traversing the seas, lest his sudden standing in the midst of his disciples when the doors were shut, should raise an opinion that his body was not true and proper flesh; he confirmed first his own disciples, "feel and see," that a "spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me to have." (Luke xxiv. 39.) As therefore we believe the coming of Christ, so must we confess him to have come in the verity of our human nature, even in true and proper flesh. With this determinate expression was it always necessary to acknowledge him: for "every spirit that confesseth Jesus Christ come in the flesh, is of God; and every spirit that confesseth not Jesus Christ come in the flesh, is not of God." (1 John iv. 2, 3.) This spirit appeared early in opposition to the apostolical doctrine; and Christ, who is both God and man, was as soon denied to be man as God. Simon Magus,* the arch-heretic, first began, and many after followed him.

And certainly, if the Son of God would vouchsafe to take the frailty of our flesh, he would not omit the nobler part, our soul, without which he could not be man. For "Jesus increased in wisdom and stature;" (Luke ii. 52.) one in respect of his body, the other of his soul. Wisdom belongeth not to the flesh, nor can the knowledge of God, which is infinite, increase: he then whose knowledge did improve together with

* Simon Magus first made himself to be Christ; and what he feigned of himself, that was attributed by others unto Christ. 'Dixerat se in mente Sina Legem Mosi in Patris persona dedisse Judaeis, tempore Tiberii in Filii persona putative apparsisse.' S. August. Heres. 1. So St. Cyril represents him: οἷον ἐκ σαρκὶ, ἀλλὰ ὄντις, ὡς Χριστῷ Ἰησοῦν φανερώθη. Catech. 6. From this δοκιμών of his invention arose the heresy of the Δοκιμαῖος. For Saturinus or Saturninus followed his disciple Menander with his putative tautum haminem, as Irenæus; and in phantasmate tautum venisse, as Tertullian speaks, Adv. Heret. c. 46. After him Valentinus and his followers, Epiphanes, Isidore, and Secundus; then the Marcionians, Heracleonite and Ophite, Cerdon, Marcion, Lucanus, and generally the Manichees. Those were the Δοκιμαῖοι or Φαντασταῖοι, all conspiring in this, that Christ was not really what he appeared, nor did truly suffer what he seemed to endure. This early heresy appeareth by the opposition which St. Ignatius made unto it in his epistles.
his years must have a subject proper for it, which was no other than a human soul. This was the seat of his finite understanding and directed will, distinct from the will of his Father, and consequently of his divine nature; as appeareth by that known submission, “not my will, but thine be done.” (Luke xxii. 42.)

This was the subject of those affections and passions which so manifestly appeared in him: nor spake he any other than a proper language, when before his suffering he said, “My soul is exceeding sorrowful, even unto death.” (Matt. xxvi. 38.)

This was it which on the cross, before the departure from the body, he recommended to the Father: teaching us in whose hands the souls of the departed are: for “when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit; and having said thus, he gave up the ghost.” (Luke xxiii. 46.) And as his death was nothing else but the separation of his soul from his body; so the life of Christ as man did consist in the conjunction and vital union of that soul with the body. So that he which was perfect God, was also perfect man, of a reasonable soul and human flesh subsisting. Which is to be observed and asserted against the ancient heretics,* who taught that Christ assumed human flesh, but that the Word or his Divinity was unto that body in the place of an infirming soul.

* Of this kind two several sects were most remarkable, the Arians and the Apollinarians. Arius taught that Christ had nothing of man but the flesh, and with that the Word was joined. “Aemcs de e piękna miocip, υνίς ωπόψιν τῆς Στοιχείου οἰκολογίαις. οτί τού ἐκ σει μην ἀδιήλπτων τοιοῦτοι εἰς τῇ ἐκσετήσει τῆς ΖΩῆς, τῶν λόγων ἐν τῷ σαρκί λόγῳ γεγονεῖν. Athan. de Adv. Christ. c. Apollinar. l. ii. §. 3. So Felicianus the Arius, in Tigil. de Unitate Trin. c. 17. “ita enim a majusioris nostris semper est traditum, quod Christi corpus ad vicem animalis communis ipsius Filii Dei habitus animat; nec accesseonem animalis spiritus indigens fuerit, cui interitus fons vitae potuit conferre quad vixit.” Eunomius followed him in this particular: “Αμέως δὲ καὶ Εὐκλείς εὐμαι μεν αὐτῶν ἐφανερώθησαν. Συναίνεσσα δὲ φωνῆς ἐνρημονεῖ τὸν χριστιαν. Thod. l. v. cont. Hær. c. 11. Apollinaris distinguished between the soul and the mind, the φως and the νοῦς, and acknowledged that the Word assumed the body and the soul, or φως of man, but not the mind or spirit, or the νοῦς, but the Word itself was in the place of that. “Απολλιναρις Απολλινaris institutis, qui de anima Christi ab Ecclesia Catholica disenserunt, ducteis, sicut Ariant, Deum Christum carnem sine anima susciperre. In questione testimonii Evangelicis victi, mentem, qua rationalis est anima hominis, non fusse in anima Christi, sed pro hac ipsum verbum in ea fusisse, dixerunt.” This was then the clear difference between the Arian and Apollinarian heresies: “Apollinaris quidem carnis et animae naturae sita mente assumptissae Deum credunt, Ariae vera carnis tantummodo.” Farcudius, l. ix. c. 5. p. 382. So that two things are to be observed in the Apollinarians, their philosophy and their divinity: their philosophy, in making man consist of three distinct parts, the body, the soul, and the mind; their divinity, in making the human nature of Christ to consist but of two, the body and the soul, and the third to be supplied by the Word. Which is excellently expressed by Nemesius de Nat. Homin. in respect of his philosophy: "Τοις μὲν, ὡς ἂν ἰδίᾳ καὶ Πλατωνίᾳ, ἔλλων οὐκ οἷα τὸν φως, καὶ ἄλλω τὸν ἱεροπομαζόμενον, ἐπὶ τῶν τὸν ἀνθρώπον συναπτώμενον, ἐβάλλεται, σώματι, καὶ φωσι, καὶ νοῷ. Οἷς ὀφθαλμοῖς, καὶ Ἀστυλαιράς ἐκ τῆς λαθείας γενόμενοι ἐπισκόποι τούτων γὰρ περισσώς τὸν ἥμισυ τῆς οἰκίας δόξης, καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ πνευμάτωμα κατὰ τὸ εἰκόνων ὁμοίως. c. l. i. iii. And by Theodoret in respect of his Divinity: "Σαμαραθινικά δὲ τὸν Θεὸν ἐρισε μέγα, σώμα, καὶ ζωήν ἐπισκόπειτο ὑπὲρ τῆς οἰκίας, ἀλλὰ τὴν ἄλλον, τὴν φυσικὴν, ὑπὸ ζωτικήν, τοῖς ὁμοιό-ζουσίων, τὸν δὲ νοοῦ ἀλλὰ την παρὰ τὴν φωσιν εἰ- κας βια, ὡς ἐρισάν ἀνελπισθείς, ἀλλ' ἀργίας τὴν ζωὴν φύσιν εἰς τὸ περιόριστο τοῦ νοον τῆς χριστιαν. Hær. Fab. l. iv. §. 8.
Thus the whole perfect and complete nature of man was assumed by the Word, by him who was conceived and born of a woman, and so made a man. And being the divine nature which he had before could never cease to be what before it was, nor ever become what before it was not; therefore he who was God before by the divine nature which he had, was in this incarnation made man by that human nature which he then assumed; and so really and truly was both God and man. And thus the third Article from the conjunction with the second, teacheth us no less than the two natures really distinct in Christ incarnate.

For if both natures were not preserved complete and distinct in Christ, it must be either by the conversion and transsubstantiation of one into the other, or by commixtion and confusion of both into one. But neither of these ways can consist with the person of our Saviour, or the office of our Mediator. For if we should conceive such a mixture and confusion of substances as to make a union of natures, we should be so far from acknowledging him to be both God and man, that thereby we should profess him to be neither God nor man, but a person of a nature as different from both, as all mixed bodies are distinct from each element which concurs unto their composition. Besides, we know there were in Christ the affections proper to the nature of man, and all those infirmities which belong to us, and cannot be conceived to belong to that nature of which the divine was but a part. Nor could our humanity be so commixed or confounded with the Divinity of our Saviour, but that the Father had been made man as much as the Son, because the divine nature is the same both of the Father and the Son. Nor ought we to have so low an esteem of that infinite and independent Being, as to think it so commixed with or immersed in the creature.

Again, as the confusion, so the conversion of natures is impossible. For first, we cannot with the least show of probability conceive the divine nature of Christ to be transsubstantiated into the human nature; as those whom they call Flan- drian Anabaptists in the Low-Countries at this day maintain. There is a plain repugnancy even in the supposition; for the
nature of man must be made, the nature of God cannot be made, and consequently cannot become the nature of man. The immaterial, indivisible, and immortal Godhead cannot be divided into a spiritual and incorruptible soul, and a carnal and corruptible body; of which two humanity consisteth. There is no other Deity of the Father than of the Son; and therefore if this was converted into that humanity, then was the Father also that man, grew in knowledge, suffered, and died. We must not therefore so far stand upon the propriety of speech, when it is written, (John i. 14.) “The Word was made flesh,” as to destroy the propriety both of the Word and of the flesh.*

Secondly, We must not, on the contrary, invent a conversion of the human nature into the divine, as the Eutychians of old did fancy. For sure the incarnation could not at first consist in such a conversion, it being unimaginable how that which had no being should be made by being turned into something else. Therefore the humanity of Christ could not at the first be made by being the Divinity of the Word. Nor is the incarnation so preposterously expressed, as if the flesh were made the Word, but that the Word was made flesh. And if the manhood were not in the first act of incarnation converted into the divine nature, as we see it could not be; then is there no pretence of any time or manner, in or by which it was afterwards so transubstantiated.† Vain therefore was that old conceit of Eutyches, as appeared by his own confession in the Council of Chalcedon: "Omnes in 18. quodcumque generis, in cuiuslibet partibus mundi, 

* In that proposition, & λόγος σιάξ ἐγένετο, there hath been strange force used by men of contrary judgments, and for contrary ends, as to the word ἐγένετο. The Socinians endeavoured to prove it can have no other sense than simply fuit, the Word was flesh: the Flandrian Anabaptists stretching it to the highest sense of factum est, the Word was made flesh. It is confessed that the verb γενέσθαι in the use of the Greek language is capable of either interpretation: it is also acknowledged that the most ancient interpreters were divided in their renditions. For the Syriac rendered it καὶ ἔγέται· εἰτό; the ancient Latin, Et verbum caro fuit; the ancient Latin, Et verbum caro factum est. It cannot be denied but in the Scriptures it hath been used in differently in either sense. And the same old Vulgar translation in some places renders it, as the Syriac doth here, Matt. xvi. 16. γένεσθαι διὸν φίλομα δί οί δύσιν, Etate ergo prudenter sunt scriptae; and 25. Αρματα τὰ μαθεῖν ὑπογίνεται διέ διδασκαλίας εἰς χριστόν. Sufficient discipulo ut sit scient magister eius. From whence it is evident that they placed not the force in the signification of the word γενέσθαι, but in the circumstance of the matter in which it was used. However, neither of these interpretations prove either of these opinions. For if it be acknowledged that the Word was flesh, and it hath been already proved and presupposed by St. John in his precedent discourse, that the Word had a former being antecedent to his being flesh; it followeth, that he which was before the Word, and was not flesh, if after he were flesh, must be made such. And so the Socinian observation falls. Again, if he which was made flesh was the Word, and after he was made such was still the Word, as certainly he was, and is still the same; then his being made or becoming flesh can no way evacuate that nature, in which he did before subsist. And so the Flandrian interpretation is of no validity.

† This was the proper opinion of Eutyches, as appeared by his own confession in the Council of Chalcedon: “Omnes in 18. quodcumque generis, in cuiuslibet partibus mundi, 

[Article III. continued]
it ceased wholly to be what it was, and so there was but one, that is, the divine nature remained. This is sufficiently expressed by St. Leo, who was the strongest opposer of him, and speaketh thus of his opinion, Serm. B. de Natu. 'Hic autem sacrelegi profannus assertor munitum quidem in Christo duarum confession est naturatum; sed ipsa unione id dixit effectum, ut ex duabus una remaneret, nullatemus alterius existente substantia.' And the Eranistes in the dialogue of Theodoret arguing for that opinion, being urged to declare whether in that union one nature was made of them both, or one remaining, the other did not so, answered plainly: 'Egy vtc Stotam 

Theodoret.*

Eutyches, de duo-

Certe Sacramenta que sumimus corporis et sanguinis Christi in actione mysteriorum celebrantur. Satis ergo nobis evidenter ostenditur, hoc nobis de ipso Christo Domino sentium, quod in ejus imaginem profitemur, celebramus, et sumnumus, ut sicut in bane, salicet, in Divinam, transans, Spiritus perficiente, substantiam, permaneantes tamen in sua proprietate natura; sic illud ipsum mysterium principale, cujus nobis efficaciam virtutemque veraciter representant, ex quibus constat proprieta permanebatur, unus Christum, quia integrum verumque, permanere demonstrat.' In which words it is plain he affirms the union of the human nature of Christ to be the principal mystery, the representation of that mystery to be in the sacrament of the eucharist: he concludes from thence, that as in the representation the substance of the bread and wine remaineth in the propriety of their own nature, so the human nature of Christ in the greater mystery doth still remain. In the margin of this place in the Bibliotheca Patrum there is printed Caute, as if there could be any danger in observing the sense of the fathers, when they speak so expressly and considerately. In the same manner we find a disputation between a heretic and a catholic in the second dialogue of Theodoret, where Eranistes, as a heretic, asks Orthodoxus by what names he calls the bread and wine after consecration; who answers, The body and blood of Christ: from whence Eranistes argues, p. 83. "Eirop tiiirav avvmsdvo tov doxastonikov sw-
rmatos te kai aipatos alla mi'n eis tov is.

Eutyches was, is certainly known, and the nature of the sacrament was generally made use of as an argument to confute it. Gelasius bishop of Rome hath written an excellent book against Eutyches, de duarum naturum in Christo, in Bibloth. Patr. Lot. i. v. par. 5. p. 671, in which he proved that Eutychian doctrine is, certainly known, and the nature of the sacrament was generally made use of as an argument to confute it. What then the heretic says in answer to this argument, and argues that which he disputes against is the transubstantiation of the human nature into the divine. The argument which he makes use of against it is drawn from the eucharist: 'Certe Sacramenta que sumimus corporis et sanguinis Christi Divina res est, propter quod et per eadem Divina eliciens consortes nature: et tamen esse non descript substantia vel natura Pantis et Vinit. Et certe immagino ut similitudo corporis et sanguinis Christi in actione mysteriorum celebrantur. Satis ergo nobis evident et ostenditur, hoc nobis de ipso Christo Domino sentium, quod in ejus imagine profitemur, celebramus, et sumnmmus, ut sicut in bane, salicet, in Divinam, transans, Spiritus perficiente, substantiam, permaneantes tamen in sua proprietate natura; sic illud ipsum mysterium principale, cujus nobis efficaciam virtutemque veraciter representant, ex quibus constat proprieta permanebatur, unus Christum, quia integrum verumque, permanere demonstrat.' In which words it is plain he affirms the union of the human nature of Christ to be the principal mystery, the representation of that mystery to be in the sacrament of the eucharist: he concludes from thence, that as in the representation the substance of the bread and wine remaineth in the propriety of their own nature, so the human nature of Christ in the greater mystery doth still remain. In the margin of this place in the Bibliotheca Patrum there is printed Caute, as if there could be any danger in observing the sense of the fathers, when they speak so expressly and considerately. In the same manner we find a disputation between a heretic and a catholic in the second dialogue of Theodoret, where Eranistes, as a heretic, asks Orthodoxus by what names he calls the bread and wine after consecration; who answers, The body and blood of Christ: from whence Eranistes argues, p. 83. "Eo tivon tivv dudovow ovdo lovasteigmatos tiv eis tiv koi melon tiv dudovow tiv avvmsdvo tiv dudovow odo. As the symbols of the body and blood of Christ are one thing before consecration, and after that change their name, and become another; so the body of Christ after his ascension is changed into...
Being then he which is conceived was the only Son of God, and that only Son begotten of the substance of the Father, and so always subsisted in the divine nature; being by the same conception he was made truly man, and consequently assumed a human nature; being these two natures cannot be made one either by commixtion or conversion, and yet there can be but one Christ subsisting in them both, because that only Son was he which is conceived and born: it followeth, that the union which was not made in the nature, was made in the person of the Word; that is, it was not so made, that out of both natures one only should result, but only so, that to one person no other should be added.

Nor is this union only a scholastic speculation, but a certain and necessary truth, without which we cannot have one Christ, but two Christs, one Mediator, but two Mediators; without which we cannot join the second Article of our Creed with the third, making them equally belong to the same person; without which we cannot interpret the sacred Scriptures, or understand the history of our Saviour. For certainly he which was before Abraham, was in the days of Herod born of a woman; which he preached in the days of Noah, began to preach in the days of Tiberius, being at that time about thirty years of age; he was demonstrated the Son of God with power, who was the seed of David according to the flesh; he who died on the cross, raised him from the dead who died so, being put to death through the flesh, and quickened by the Spirit; (1 Pet. iii. 18.) he was "of the fathers as concerning the flesh," who was "God over all blessed for ever." (Rom. ix. 5.) Being these and the like actions and affections cannot come from the same nature, and yet must be attributed to the same person;

the divine substance. To this Orthodoxus answers: "Εἷλος αἰς θρησείς ἀρχῶν. You are taken in your own nets. Oθεὶ γὰρ μετὰ τοῦ ἀναμικτοῦ τα μεστασυμβολά ἑξετάσει φέσεως, μιᾶς γὰρ εἰς τῆς πρώτης φύσεως, καὶ τοῦ σωματος, καὶ τοῦ κοσμός, καὶ ἐναντίον τοῦ κόσμου, αὐτὰ καὶ πρῶτον ήτο. The bread and wine even after consecration leave not their own nature, but remain in their former substance, shape, and form. In the same manner: Καὶ ἐκεῖθεν τὸ σῶμα τὸ μέν πρῶτον ἑως ἐχθρία καὶ σηχία και περιγραφών, καὶ ἄλλα ἀπὰ ἐπὶ ἐπιν. τὸν τοῦ σώματος οὐσίαν. The body of Christ hath the same form, figure, and shape, and indeed the same bodily substance. And when Erasites still objects, that the bread is called the body, and not bread; Orthodoxus answers that he is mistaken: ὅτι γὰρ σῶμα μιᾶς, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄρρητος ἕως ἀνωμάτητα, εὖτες αὐτὸς ἐκ τοῦ πρώτου παρηγορήσων, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκ σῶμα ἐπὶ ἀνωμάτητα σωμάτων. For it is not only called the body, but also bread of life, and the body itself we call the divine body. Who sees not then, that Theodoret believed no more that the bread is converted into the body, than that the body is converted into the Divinity of Christ? Who perceiveth not that he thought the bread to be as substantially and really bread after the consecration, as the body of Christ is really a body after his ascension? The same argument is used by St. Chrysostom upon the same occasion against the Apollinarians in his epistle ad Caesariuin, not yet published in Greek, and by Ephraim in the Philo Bibliotheca against the Eutychians. As therefore all the μεταστάσεις of the sacramental elements maketh them not cease to be of the same nature which before they were; so the human nature of Christ, joined to the divine, doth not the nature of humanity, but continueth with the Divinity as a substance in itself distinct; and so Christ doth subsist not only εἷς, but in duabus naturis, as the Council of Chalcedon determined against Eutyches.
as we must acknowledge a diversity of natures united, so must we confess the identity of the person in whom they are conjoined, against the ancient heresy of the Nestorians, condemned in the Council of Ephesus.

By the Holy Ghost.

Having thus dispatched the consideration of the first Person concerned in this Article, and the actions contained in it so far as distinctly from the rest they belong to him, we descend unto the other two concerned in the same; and first to him whose operation did precede in the conception, the Holy Ghost. Which second part some may think to require a threefold consideration; first, of the conception; secondly, of the person; thirdly, of the operation. But for the person or existence of the Holy Ghost, that is here only mentioned obliquely, to be reserved for another Article, where it is propounded directly. And for the conception itself, that

*This heresy doth most formally contradict these words of the Creed, because it immediately denies this truth, that the eternal Son of God was conceived and born. And in vain did Nestorius seek not only to avoid it in the Nicene Creed, but to make use of the words of the Creed even against the unity of the person of Christ. St. Cyril had well objected the series, order, and consequence of that confession: "Eφο ε ἄγια καὶ μεγάλα Σωτηρίας, αὐτὸν ἐκ Θεοῦ Πατρὸς κατὰ φύσιν ὑπὸ μορφῆν, τὸν ἐκ Θεοῦ ἁλφαμοῦ Θεοῦ ἔλεγον, τὸ φύς τὸ ἐκ τοῦ θετικός, τὸν ἐν τῇ πάντα παντοκράτεις ὁ Πατὴρ, κατελείψει, σαρκακινά τε καὶ ἀναγεννήσει, παθῶν, ἀνασκόπησε τῷ θρή νημέρα, καὶ ἀπελεύνει εἰς οὐράνιον." Epist. 3. p. 25. The strength of this objection lies in this, that Christ, the only-begotten Son, begotten of the Father before all worlds, was incarnate. The answer of Nestorius was in this manner: "Πεπείδημεν εἰς τὸ τότε ἡμᾶς Ἰησοῦς Χριστόν, τὸν θεόν αὐτοῦ τὸν μορφήν: σκώπον πολυτελὼν ἡμᾶς Ἰησοῦς Χριστός, καὶ μορφήν, καὶ υἱόν, πιστῆν ΄Ιησοῦς, τὰ κατὰ τὴν ἰδιότητα καὶ ἀνθρώπως, ως Υἱόν, ὑστατα τότε τὸν τοῦ ἀναγεννησεις, καὶ τοῦ πάθους, καὶ τῆς ἀνασκόπησις." Ebd. p. 26. And the strength, or rather the weakness, thereof is this: that first the Council placed the names of Jesus Christ, and the only-begotten Son, names common to the Divinity and humanity of Christ; and then upon them built the doctrine of his incarnation. Whereas it is evident that, supposing the only-begotten a term common to the humanity and Divinity, yet the Council clearly expounds it of the eternal generation, adding imme-
diately, begotten of his Father before all worlds; neither is there any word between that exposition and the incarnation, but such as speak wholly of Christ as God. Therefore that only begotten Son, who was begotten of his Father before all worlds, descended from heaven, and was incarnate. Thus St. Cyril in his second epistle to Nestorius, and Nestorius in his second to him. Which mistake of his seems yet more strange to me, when I consider in the same epistle of Nestorius that fundamental truth asserted, which of itself sufficiently, nay, fully confines his heresy: for he acknowledgeth the name of Christ to be, ὁ πάθος καὶ παθητής οὐράς ἐν μονοδιά προεμπεμεθηνυμένος, ibid. And consequently, Christ himself to be a single person in a double nature,passible and impassible: which once granted, it evidently followeth, that he which was born from eternity, was also born in time, for by those several nativities he had those several natures; that he which was impassible as God, might, and did suffer as man, because the same person was of no impassible and a possible nature; impassible as God,passible as man. Wherefore by that which Nestorius hath confessed, and notwithstanding that which he hath objected, it is evident out of the Nicene Creed, that the Son of God, begotten of his Father before all worlds, was incarnate and made man; and as evident out of the Apostles' Creed, especially expounded by the Nicene, that the same only-begotten Son was conceived by the Holy Ghost, and born of the Virgin Mary.
belongeth not so properly to the Holy Ghost, of whom the act cannot be predicated. For though Christ was conceived by the Holy Ghost, yet the Holy Ghost did not conceive him, but said unto the Virgin, “Thou shalt conceive.” (Luke i. 31.) There remaineth therefore nothing proper and peculiar to this second part, but that operation of the Holy Ghost in Christ’s conception, whereby the Virgin was enabled to conceive, and by virtue whereof Christ is said to be conceived by him.

Now when we say the conception of our Saviour was wrought by the operation of the Spirit, it will be necessary to observe, first, What is excluded by that attribution to the Spirit; secondly, What is included in that operation of the Spirit.

For the first of these, we may take notice in the salutation of the angel, when he told the blessed Virgin she should conceive and bring forth a son, she said, “How shall this be, seeing I know not a man?” (Luke i. 34.) By which words she excluded first all men, and then herself: all men, by that assertion, “I know not a man;” herself, by the question, “How shall this be, seeing” it is so? First, our Melchizedek had no father on earth; in general, not any man, in particular, not Joseph. It is true, “his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph;” but it is as true, “before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost.” (Matt. i. 18.) We read in St. Luke, (ii. 27.) that “the parents brought up the child Jesus into the temple;” but these parents were not the father and the mother, but as it followeth, “Joseph and his mother marvelled at those things which were spoken of him.” (Ibid. 33.) It is true, Philip calleth him “Jesus of Nazareth, the son of Joseph;” (John i. 45.) and which is more, his mother said unto him, “Behold, thy father and I have sought thee sorrowing;” (Luke ii. 48.) but this must be only the reputed father of Christ, he being only, “as was supposed, the son of Joseph, which was the son of Eli.” (Luke iii. 23.) Whence they must needs appear without all excuse, who therefore affirm our Saviour to have been the proper son of Joseph, because the genealogy belongs to him; whereas in that very place where the genealogy begins, Joseph is called the supposed father. How can it then therefore be necessary Christ should be the true son of Joseph, that he may be known to be the son of David, when in the same place where it is proved that Joseph came from David, it is denied that Christ came from Joseph? And that not only in St. Luke, where Joseph begins, but also in St. Matthew, where he ends the genealogy. “Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.” (Matt. i. 16.)* Howseover then the genealogies are described, whether one belong to Joseph,

* Indeed in our translation, whom may relate to both, as well as one, and to Joseph as well as Mary; but in the original it evidently belongs to Mary: Τὸν Ἰωσήφ τὸν ἡγεμόνα Μαρίας, ἥ αὕτη ἔγενεν Ισραήλ.
the other to Mary, or both to Joseph, it is from other parts of the Scriptures infallibly certain, not only that Christ descended lineally from David according to the flesh, but also that the same Christ was begotten of the Virgin Mary, and not by Joseph.

Secondly, As the blessed Virgin excluded all mankind, and particularly Joseph, to whom she was then espoused, by her assertion; so did she exclude herself by the manner of the question, shewing that of herself she could not cause any such conception. Although she may be thought the "root of Jesse," yet could she not germinate of herself; though Eve were the mother of all living, yet generation was founded on the divine benediction which was given to both together: for "God blessed them, and said unto them, Be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth." (Gen. i. 28.) Though Christ was promised as the "seed of the woman," yet we must not imagine that it was in the power of woman to conceive him. When the Virgin thinks it impossible she should conceive because she knew not a man, at the same time she confesseth it otherwise as impossible, and the angel acknowledgeth as much in the satisfaction of his answer, "For with God nothing shall be impossible." (Luke i. 37.) God then it was who immediately and miraculously enabled the blessed Virgin to conceive our Saviour; and while Mary, Joseph, and all men are denied, no person which is that God can be excluded from that operation.

But what is included in the conception by the Holy Ghost, or how his operation is to be distinguished from the conception of the Virgin, is not so easily determined. The words by which it is expressed in Scripture are very general: First, as they are delivered by way of promise, prediction, or satisfaction to Mary; "The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee;" (Luke i. 35.) Secondly, as they suppose the conception already past; "When his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost;" (Matt. i. 18.) and give satisfaction unto Joseph, "Fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife, for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost:" (Ibid. 20.) Now being the expressions in the Scriptures are so general, that from thence the operation of the Spirit cannot precisely be distinguished from the concurrence of the Virgin; much less shall we be able exactly to conclude it by that late distinction made in this Article, conceived by the Holy Ghost, born of the Virgin; because it is certain that the same Virgin also conceived him according to the prophecy, (Isa. vii. 14.) "Thon shalt conceive and bear a son:" and therefore notwithstanding that distinction, the difficulty still remains, how he was conceived by the Spirit, how by the Virgin. Neither will any difference
of prepositions* be sufficient rightly to distinguish these operations. Wherefore there is no other way to bound or determine the action of the Holy Ghost, but by that concurrence of the Virgin which must be acknowledged with it. For if she were truly the mother of Christ (as certainly she was, and we shall hereafter prove), then is there no reason to deny to her in respect of him whatsoever is given to other mothers in relation to the fruit of their womb; and consequently, no more is left to be attributed to the Spirit, than what is necessary to cause the Virgin to perform the actions of a mother. When the Scripture speaketh of regeneration, or the second birth, it demeth all which belongeth to natural procreation, describing the "sons of God" as begotten "not of bloods,

* As conceptus de Spiritu S., natus ex Maria Virginis. St. Augustin indeed hath delivered a distinction between de and er, after this manner, speaking to those words of the apostle: 'Quoniam ex ipso, et per ipsum, et in ipso, sunt omnia.' Ex ipso non hoc significant quod de ipso. Quod enim de ipso est, potest dici ex ipso; non autem omne quod ex ipso est, recte dicitur de ipso. Ex ipso enim cum et terra, quia ipse fecit ea: non autem de ipso, quin non de substantia sua. Sicut aliquis homo si gignat filium, et factit domum, ex ipso filius, ex ipso domus; sed filius de ipso, sicut domus de terra et ligno.' De Nat. Boni adv. Manich. c. 27. This distinction having no foundation in the Latin tongue, is ill made use of for the illustration of this Article, because in the Greek language of the Testament there is no such diversity of prepositions, for as we read of Mary, εας ἐκ τινος, so also of the Holy Ghost, εκ του γεννησαι ἐκ των πνευματων · διονυσιον, and τη πρωτη γεννησαι ἐκ πνευματος · ἐστιν · διονυσιος. It is therefore said as well εκ πνευματος, as εις Μαγαρ. Again, the Vulgar observeth no such difference, as rendering for the one, de quo natura est Jesus, and for the other, in utero habens de Spiritu S. Correspondently in the Greek Greeds, συλληφθη τι εκ πνευματων, γεννησαι εις Μαγαρ, or as in the Nicene, εις πνευματα και Μαγαρ. And the Latin not only de Spiritu S. et Maria Virginis, but sometimes de Spiritu S. et Maria Virginis, and de Maria Virginis, Chrysologus and St. Augustin often de Trinitate. Wherefore in vain have the schools first accepted of St. Augustin's distinction, and then applied it to Christ's conception; first taking the preposition de to signify no less than a procession from the substance of the cause, and then acknowledge Christ so begotten of the Holy Ghost, because the eternal Son who was so begotten was of the same substance with the Holy Ghost. Thus Thomas Aquinas has delivered the subtility, Sum. p. 3. q. 32. a. 2. 'In Spiritu S. duplex habito consideratur respectu Christi. Nam ad ipsum filiam Dei, quin dicitur esse conceptus, habet habitudinem consubstantialitatis; ad corpus autem ejus habet habitudinem causae efficientis. Haec autem prepositio de utramque habitudinem designat, sicut cum dicitur hominem aliquem esse de suo patre. Et idem convenienter dicere possimus Christum esse conceptum de Spiritu S. hoc modo, quod efficientiam Sp. S. referetur ad corpus assumptum, consubstantialitas vero ad personam assumendum.' But this distinction of consubstantiality and effectual causality can make nothing for the propriety of the phrase; for the preposition de signifieth the material cause as well as the efficient, it must do so in respect of that which is the effect, if it require that the thing which is made be made of the substance of that de quo est: then must Christ, according unto that which is made, be made of the substance of the Holy Ghost; or, to speak in the words of the Scripture, 'Quod in ea natum est, de Spiritu Sancto est.' Where either that which was conceived in the Virgin must be acknowledged of the substance of the Holy Ghost, or else the preposition de must not be taken in St. Augustin's sense. However, being there is but one preposition εις, common to both in the original Greek, being the vulgar translation useth de in differently for either; being where they have distinguished de and er, they have attributed er, which doth not signify consubstantiality, to the Virgin, of whom they confess he did assume the substance of his body, and de, which signifieth (as they say) consubstantiality to the Holy Ghost, of whose substance he received nothing: it followeth, that the difference in the prepositions can no way declare the different concurrence of the Spirit and the Virgin in Christ's conception.
nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God:’” (John i. 13.) and in the incarnation of our Saviour, we remove all will or lust of the flesh, we deny all will of man concurring; but as the _bloods_ in the language of the Hebrews did signify that substance of which the flesh was formed in the womb, so we acknowledge in the generation of _Jesus Christ_, that he was made of the substance of his mother.

But as he was so made of the substance of the Virgin, so was he not made of the substance of the Holy Ghost, whose essence cannot at all be made. And because the Holy Ghost did not beget him by any communication of his essence, therefore he is not the father of him, though he were conceived by him. And if at any time I have said, _Christ_ was begotten by the Holy Ghost of the Virgin Mary, if the ancients speak as if he generated* the Son, it is not so to be understood, as if the Spirit did perform any proper act of generation, such as is the foundation of paternity.

Again, as the Holy Ghost did not frame the human nature of _Christ_ out of his own substance; so must we not believe that he formed any part of his flesh of any other substance than of the Virgin. For certainly he was of the fathers according to the flesh, and was as to that truly and totally the son of David and Abraham. The Socimians, who will acknowledge no other way before _Christ’s_ conception by which he could be the only-begotten Son of God, have been forced to invent a strange conjunction in the nature of _Christ_: one part received from the Virgin, and so consequently from David and Abraham, from whom that Virgin did descend; another framed by the Spirit,† and conjoined with it; by the

* As Chrysologus, Serm. 37. ‘Ubi Spiritus generat, Virgo parturit, totum divinum generatur, nihil humum.’ And Serm. 62. ‘Stupendi mundo solus aperit quid est, quod Spiritus generat, Virgo concipit, Virgo partur.’
† ‘Deus ipsem ad sanguinem Mariae addidit aliam materiam, ex quibus deinde Christus conceptus et natus est.’ Smalcius, _De Veret et Naturalis Dei Filio_, c. 2. ‘Verum manet generationem et hanc dicit posse, quatenus in Deum ex cadere potest, si ad sanguinem Mariæ addita sit ex parte Dei materia, ex qua cum sanguine Mariæ juncta natus sit Christus.’ In. c. 5. What this was thus added to the substance of the Virgin, he elsewhere explains: ‘Nos Dei virum in Virginis uterum aliquam substantiam creatam vel immisisse aut ibi creasse affirmamus, ex qua, juncto eo quod ex ipsius Virginis substantia accessit, verus homo generatus fuit.’ This he doth not only without any authority affirm, but ground upon the subsistence of Christ. For so it follows: ‘Alias enim homo ille Dei filius a conceptione et nativitate proprie non fuisset.’ And again: ‘Necessitas magna fuerit Christus ab initio vitae sue esset Dei Filius, quia futurus non fuisset, nisi Dei virtute aliquid creatum fuisset quod ad constitutendum Christi corpus una cum Mariæ sanguine concurrerit.’ Thus while they deny the eternal generation of the Son, they establish a temporal in such manner as is not consonant with that word which they pretend wholly to follow, and have made a body of Christ partly descending from the Father, partly not: and whereas as man he is like us in all things, sin only excepted; they have invented a body, partly like ours, partly not, and so in no part totally like. Indeed some of the ancients did speak so as to make the Holy Ghost the _semem Dei_; as Tertullian: ‘Ergo jam Dei filius ex Patris Dei semine, i. e. Spiritu, ut esset hominis filius, caro et sola erat ex hominis carne sumenda sine viri semine. Vacabat enim viri semen quod habentem Dei semen.’ _De car
ARTICLE III.

one part of which humanity he was the son of man, as by the other part he was the Son of God.

The belief of this is necessary to prevent all fear or suspicion of spot in this Lamb, of sin in this Jesus. Whatsoever our original corruption is, however displeasing unto God, we may be from hence assured there was none in him, in whom alone God hath declared himself to be well pleased. "Who can bring a clean thing out of an unclean?" saith Job (xiv. 4.); a clean and undefiled Redeemer out of an unclean and defiled nature? He whose name is Holiness, whose operation is to sanctify, the Holy Ghost. Our Jesus was like unto us in all things as born of a woman, sin only excepted, as conceived by the Holy Ghost. This original and total sanctification of the human nature was first necessary, to fit it for the personal union with the Word, who, out of his infinite love, humbled himself to become flesh, and at the same time, out of his infinite purity, could not defile himself by becoming sinful flesh. Secondly, The same sanctification was as necessary in respect of the end for which he was made man, the redemption of mankind: that as the first Adam was the fountain of our impurity, so the second Adam should also be the pure fountain of our righteousness. "God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, condemned sin in the flesh;" (Rom. viii. 3.) which he could not have condemned, had he been sent in sinful flesh. "The Father made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin, that we might be made the righteousness of God in him;" (2 Cor. v. 21.) which we could not have been made in him, but that he "did no sin," (1 Pet. ii. 22.) and knew no sin. For, whosoever is sinful wanteth a Redeemer; and he could have redeemed none, who stood in need of his own redemption. We are redeemed "with the precious blood of Christ:" (1 Pet. i. 19.) therefore precious, because "of a Lamb without blemish, and without spot." (Ibid.) Our atonement can be made by no other high-priest than by him who is "holy, harmless, undefiled, and separate from sinners."

Christ, c. 18. And St. Hilary calls it; "Sementivam inuenit Spiritus efficaciam." l. 2, de Trin. c. 26. But in this they only understood the operation of the Spirit, loco seminis. And whosoever spake of any proper semen, they abstorted; as appears by the 191st Sermon de Tempore: "Nec ut quidam sceleratissimi opinantur, Spiritum S. Icimnas pro semine fuisse, sed potestas et virtute Creatoris operatum." I know not whether be the most folly; to make the Holy Ghost the father, as these men have done, by creating part of his body by way of seminal conjunction; or to make the same Spirit mother of Christ, as the Nazarenes did. "In Evangelio Hebraorum quod lecitant Nazaræi, Salvator inducitur loquens, Molo me arripuit mater mea, Spiritus Sanctus." There is only this difference, that one is founded upon the authority of Scripture, the other upon the authority of a pretended, but no Scripture: the one maketh the Holy Ghost a partial, the other a total mother.

* Ilid unum peccatum, quod tam magnum in loco et habitu tanta felicitatis admissum est, ut in uno homine origine, atque, ut ita dixerim, radicaliter, totum genus humanum damnaueret, non solvitur ac diluitur nisi per unum Medi- atorem Dei et hominum, hominem Christum Jesum, qui solus potuit ita nasci, ut ei opus non esset renasci." & August. Enchirid. cap. 48.
(Heb. vii. 26.) We cannot "know that he was manifested to take away our sins,"* except we also know that "in him is no sin." (1 John iii. 5.) Wherefore, being it is so necessary to believe the original holiness of our human nature in the person of our Saviour; it is as necessary to acknowledge that way by which we may be fully assured of that sanctity, his conception by the Holy Ghost.

Again, it hath been observed+ that by this manner of Christ's conception is declared the freedom of the grace of God. For as the Holy Ghost is God, so is he also called the Gift of God: and therefore the human nature in its first original, without any precedent merit,‡ was formed by the Spirit, and in its formation sanctified, and in its sanctification united to the Word; so that the grace was coexistent, and in a manner connatural with it. The mystery of the incarnation is frequently attributed in the Scriptures to the love, mercy, and goodness of God. "Through the tender mercy of our God the day-spring from on high hath visited us." (Luke i. 78.) In this "the kindness and love of God our Saviour towards man appeared." (Tit. iii. 4.) And though these and such other Scriptures speak properly of the love and mercy of God to man alone, offered unto him in the incarnation of our Saviour, and so directly exclude the merits of other men only; yet because they speak so generally with reference to God's mercy, they may well be thought to exclude all universally. Especially considering the impossibility of merits in Christ's humanity, in respect of his conception; because all desert necessarily precedeth its reward, and Christ was not man before he was conceived, nor can that merit which is not.

Thirdly, Whereas we are commanded to be holy, and that even as he is holy; by this we learn from what foundation this holiness must flow. We bring no such purity into the world, nor are we sanctified in the womb; but as he was sanctified at his conception, so are we at our regeneration. He was conceived not by man, but by the Holy Ghost, and we are "not of

* `In quo non est peccatum, ipse venit auferre peccatum. Nam si esset in illo peccatum, auferendum esset illi, non ipse auferret.' S. August. Tract. 4, in 1 Ioan. §. 8.

† By St. Augustin: "Ex hoc quod de Spiritu S. est secundum hominem nativitas Christi, quid aliud quam ipsa gratia demonstratur." Enchir. c. 37.

‡ `Modus iste quo natus est Christus de Spiritu S. non sicut filius, et de Maria Virgine sicut filius, insinuat nobis gratiam Dei, qua homo, nullis precedentibus meritis, in ipsa exordio naturae sua quo esse cupit, Verbo Dei copulatur in tam tam personae unitatem, ut idem ipse esset filius Dei qui filius hominum, et filius hominis qui filius Dei: ac sic in humanae naturae assumptione fieret quodammodo ipsa gratia naturalis, quae nullum peccatum posset admittere. Quae gratia propertea per Spiritum S. fuerat significanda, quia ipse proprium sic est Deus, ut etiam dicatur Dei Domum.' Id. ibid. c. 40.

§ `Cum ad naturam Dei non pertineat natura humana, ad personam tamen unigeniti Filii Dei per gratiam pertinet humana natura; et tantum gratiam, ut nulla sit major, nulla prosors aequalis. Neque enim illam susceptionem hominis ulla merita praecesserant, sed ab illa susceptione meri et quae causa cuperunt.' S. August. Tract. 82. in Ioan.
ARTICLE III.

blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God." (John i. 13.) The same overshadowing power which formed his human nature, reformeth ours; and the same Spirit assueth us a remission of our sins,* which caused in him an exemption from all sin. He which was born for us upon his incarnation, is born within us upon our regeneration.†

All which considered, we may now render a clear explication of this part of the Article, whereby every person may understand what he is to profess, and express what is the object of his faith, when he saith, I believe in Jesus Christ, which was conceived by the Holy Ghost. For hereby he ought to intend thus much: I assent unto this as a most necessary and infallible truth, that the only-begotten Son of God, begotten by the Father before all worlds, very God of very God, was conceived and born, and so made man, taking to himself the human nature, consisting of a soul and body, and conjoining it with the divine in the unity of his person. I am fully assured that the Word was in this manner made flesh, that he was really and truly conceived in the womb of a woman, but not after the manner of men; not by carnal copulation, not by the common way of human propagation, but by the singular, powerful, invisible, immediate operation of the Holy Ghost, whereby a Virgin was beyond the law of nature enabled to conceive, and that which was conceived in her was originally and completely sanctified. And in this latitude I profess to believe in Jesus Christ, which was conceived by the Holy Ghost.

Born of the Virgin Mary.

The third person considerable in this third Article, is represented under the threefold description of her name, condition, and action. The first telleth us who it was, it was Mary; the second informeth us what she was, a virgin; the third teaches us what she did, she conceived and bare our Saviour, and brought forth the Son of God; which was born of the Virgin Mary.

The evangelist, relating the annunciation, taketh particular notice of this name; for shewing how an angel was sent unto a "virgin espoused to a man," he first observed that his "name was Joseph:" and then that the "virgin's name was Mary:" (Luke i. 27.) not for any peculiar excellency in the name itself, or any particular application to the Virgin arising from the

* "Et gratia fit ab initio fidei sae homo quicunque Christianus, qua gratia homo illi subministri sit Christus. De ipso Spiritu et hic renatus, de quo est ille natus. Eadem spiritu ut in nobis remissio peccatorum, quo Spiritu factum est ut nulnum huberet ille peccatum." S. August. de Prudent. Sanct. c. 15.
† "Noli desperare; quod semel naturum est ex Maria, quod itidem et in nobis nascerat." S. Hieron. Comm. in Psalm. lxxxiv. 17.
BY THE HOLY GHOST.

257

omination of it, as some have conceived: but only to denote that singular person who was then so well known to all men, being espoused unto Joseph, as appeareth by the question of his admiring countrymen, "Is this not the carpenter's son? Is not his mother called Mary?" (Matt. xiii. 55.) Otherwise the name was common even at that time to many; to the sister of Lazarus, (John xi. 1.) to the mother of James and Joses, (Matt. xxvii. 56.) to the wife of Cleophas, (John xix. 25.) to the mother of John, whose surname was Mark, (Acts xii. 12.) to her who was of Magdala in Galilee, (Luke viii. 2.) to her who bestowed much labour on St. Paul, (Rom. xvi. 6.) Nor is there any original distinction between the name of these, and of the mother of our Lord. For as the name of Jesus was the

* For some have thought the dignity of the Virgin to be denoted in her name. As Gregory Nyssen (or rather his interp-ulator) Homil. in Natal. Christi: "Epi-


† This is to be observed, by reason of some learned men, who make the name of the Virgin different from that of others called Mary in the Gospel, upon two grounds, in respect of the accent, and the termination; the one being Maria, the other Maga: the first with a Hebrew termination, indeclinable, and the accent
same with Joshua, so this of Mary was the same with Miriam. The first of which name recorded was the daughter of Amram, the sister of Moses and Aaron, a prophetess; to whom the bringing of Israel out of Egypt is attributed as well as to her brethren. "For I brought thee up out of the land of Egypt (saith the Lord), and redeemed thee out of the house of servants; and I sent before thee Moses, Aaron, and Miriam." (Mic. vi. 4.) As she was exalted to be one of them who brought the people of God out of the Egyptian bondage; so was this Mary exalted to become the mother of that Saviour, who through the red sea of his blood hath wrought a plenteous redemption for us, of which that was but a type: and even with the confession of the lowliness of a handmaid she seems to bear that exaltation in her name.

Again, because no Greek word eodeth in μ, to make it current in that language, it was necessary to alter the termination, according to their custom; as for Annibal Ἀννίβας, Asdrubal Ἀσδρούμας, Amilkar, Αμιλκαρ, and Kain, Καίν. This was to be done sometimes by addition; as Νίξ, Νίξη, 'Αδέη, Αδώνις, Δημήτρις, Ιωάννης, Εκάτη, Εφασίς, Λαμπρός, Αδώνις, 'Αδριανός, Αμάτωμας, and 'Αδριανός. And so for Μαρία, Μαρίαμ, or Μαρίαμος. Moreover, the form of the παρόν αδέλφων, of Mary, the sister of Moses; whom in another place he calls Μαρίαν αδέλφου Μαρίας. Therefore he thought the name of Miriam to be the same with Mary. And as the Greeks were wont to add their own terminations to exotic words; so did they at other times leave out the exotic terminations, if thereby their own were left. As for Μιλές εν Μαρία Αδηνία, for Μιλές εν Αδηνία, Αράη, and Ζαγά, for Μιλές Εαγά, for Μαρία, Μαρίας. Wherefore from the Hebrew Mirjam came, by variety of pronunciation, at first the Syriac Maryām; and from the Syriac Marjam, at first, only by variation of the pronunciation, Μαργάμ, then for the propriety of termination, Μαρία. 

† For though that interpretation Dominius may seem to some conveniently enough from ἀδηνία, yet that being rather from the Chaldees, cannot so well agree with Miriam; nor is the μ so properly added at the end, as to the beginning of a Hebrew word, where it is usually in words of simple signification Hebraistical. Agatho, though τοις may signify sacerda mortis, or illuminatus, which Στέφων rejected; and stella (or rather stella, which is properly τοις) mortis, or sanctum mare, which he rather embraced; yet these compositions are not so proper or probable at all, especially in a name disyllable. Though the Jews themselves deduce it from τοις, to signify the bitterness of the Egyptian bondage, as we read.
BORN OF THE VIRGIN MARY.

259

Beside this name of the blessed Virgin, little hath been discovered to us. Christ, who commended the faith of the congregation, the love of Mary Magdalen, the excellences of John the Baptist, hath left not the least encomium of his mother. The evangelists, who have so punctually described the city, family, and genealogy, of Joseph, make no express mention of her relations, only of her cousin Elizabeth, who was of the tribe of Levi, "of the daughters of Aaron." (Luke i. 5.) Although it be of absolute necessity to believe that he who was born of her descended from the tribe of Judah, and the family of David; yet hath not the Scripture clearly expressed so much of her, nor have we any more than an obscure tradition of her parents Joachim and Anna.*

Wherefore the title added to that name maketh the distinction: for as divers characters are given to several persons by which they are distinguished from all others of the same common nomination, as Jacob is called Israel, and Abraham the friend of God, or father of the faithful; so is this Mary sufficiently characterized by that inseparable companion of her name, the Virgin.† For the full explication whereof more cannot be required, than that we shew, first, That the Messias was to be born of a virgin, according to the prediction of the prophets; secondly, That this Mary, of whom Christ was born, was really a virgin when she bare him according to the rela-

* I call this a tradition, because not in the written word: and observe, because the first mention we find of it was in the fourth century. Epiphanius first informs us, who speaking of Joseph, says he knew thus much: 'Gosiakia miai deis autin to plastei, kai Eeliai tis phe ton, kai ev mepis tis Anos, kai ev patris Iakeime, Harpes. 78. §. 17. Again: Ei aggelos proskeveitai ou Eilei, stique melanon ton apo Anos ginomenan, ton ev ton Iakeime, ton Ana didorphvtsin, Harpes. 79. §. 3, where he makes mention of the history of Mary, and the tradition concerning her nativity, 'H tis Magiastetria, kai patradhes exeun, soti eidos ton patr autis Iakeim ev ton irphri, soti eidos ton samophoria, &c. Demas. Orath. Ordal. I. iv. c. 13. and Orat. contra Celsum de Panthere, I. iv. c. 19. Hillel, T. mich. 21, §. 2. But this history of Mary was, or of what authority those traditions were, we cannot learn out of Epiphanius. What the interpolator of Gregory Nyssen's Homily produceth, he confessed taken from apocryphal writings. And divers of the like relations descended from the primitive greatest heretics. The Goostics had a book among them, which was called Tha Moa. Epiphan. Harpes. 26. §. 12. Amongst the Manichese Seleucus wrote the history of the Virgin. And the Protevangelum Jacobi deceived many in relations of this nature. Among which many being certainly false, it is not now easy (if at all possible) to distinguish what part of them or particular is true, 'Quod de generatione Maria Faustus posuit, quod patrem habuerit ex tribu Levi sacerdotem quendam nomine Joachim, quia Canonicum non est, non me costringit,' saith St. Augustin, I. xxii. contra Faustum, c. 9.

ARTICLE III.

The obdurate Jew, that he might more easily avoid the truth of the second, hath most irrationally denied the first; resolved rather not to understand Moses and the prophets, than to acknowledge the interpretation of the apostles. It will therefore be necessary from those oracles which were committed unto them, to shew the promised Messiah was to be born after a miraculous manner, to be the son of a woman, not of a man. The first promise of him seems to speak no less, "the seed of the woman shall bruise the serpent's head:"

(15) (Gen. iii. 15.) for as the name of seed is not generally or collectively to be taken for the generation of mankind, but determinately and individually for that one seed, which is Christ; so the woman is not to be understood with relation unto man, but particularly and determinately to that sex from which alone immediately that seed should come.

According to this first evangelical promise followed that prediction of the prophet, "The Lord hath created a new thing on the earth, A woman shall compass a man." (Jer. xxxi. 22.) That new creation of a man is therefore new, and therefore a creation, because wrought in a woman only, without a man, compassing a man. Which interpretation of the prophet is ancient, literal, and clear,* and whatsoever the Jews have invented to elude it, is frivolous and forced. For while they force the phrase of compassing a man, in the latter part of the prediction, to any thing else than a conception, they do not only wrest the Scripture, but contradict the former part of the promise, making the new creation neither new, as being often done, nor a creation, as being easy to perform.

* For it is not to be denied that the proper signification of הקדש is circumvolve or cingere. *R. Judah has observed but one interpretation of this word, הכה נח: and Kimchi testifeth that all words which come from the root כב signify encompassing or circulation. Therefore those words, רברבר כב must literally import no less than that a woman shall encompass, or enclose a man, which, with the addition of a new creation, may well bear the interpretation of a miraculous conception. Especially considering that the ancient Jews did acknowledge this sense, and did apply it determinately to the Messias: as appeareth in Bereshit Rabba Parash. B.4, where shewing that God doth heal with that with which he woundeth, he saith, As he punished Israel in a virgin, so would he also heal them with a virgin, according to the prophet, "The Lord hath created a new thing on the earth, a woman shall compass a man." By the testimony of R. Huna in the name of R. Idi, and R. Josuah the son of Levi, This is Messiah the King, of whom it is written, (Psalm ii. 7.) "This day have I begotten thee." And again in Midsch Tihim, upon the 2d Psalm, R. Huna in the name of R. Idi, speaking of the sufferings of the Messiah, saith, That when his hour is come, God shall say, יא ל דבר making evident I must create him with a new creation. And so (by virtue of that new creation) he saith, This day have I begotten thee. From whence it appeareth that this sense is of itself literally clear, and that the ancient Rabbinis did understand it of the Messias; whence it followeth that the latter interpretations are but to avoid the truth which we profess, that Jesus was born of a virgin, and therefore is the Christ.
BORN OF THE VIRGIN MARY.

261

But if this prophecy of Jeremy seem obscure, it will be sufficiently cleared by that of Isaiah, "Behold a virgin shall conceive and bear a son, and shall call his name Emmanuel." (Isa. vii. 14.) The ancient Jews immediately upon the promulgation of the Gospel,* understanding well how near this place did press them, gave three several answers to this text: First, denying that it spoke of a virgin at all; † secondly, asserting that it could not belong to Jesus; ‡thirdly, affirming that it was fully completed in the person of Hezekiah.§ Whereas the original word was translated a virgin, by such interpreters|| as were Jews themselves, some hundred years before our Saviour's birth. And did not the notation of the word, and frequent use thereof in the Scriptures, persuade it, the wonder of the sign given by the Lord himself would evince as much. But as for that conceit, that all should be fulfilled in Hezekiah, it is so manifestly and undoubtedly false, that nothing can make more for the confirmation of our faith. For this sign was given and this promise made ("a virgin shall conceive and bear a son") at some time in the reign of Ahaz. This "Ahaz reigned but sixteen years in Jerusalem;" (2 Kings xvi. 2.) and Hezekiah his son, who succeeded him, "was twenty and five years old when he began to reign," (2 Kings xviii. 2.) and therefore born several years before Ahaz was king, and consequently not now to be conceived when this sign was given. Thus while the ancient Jews name him only to fulfil the prophecy in whom it

* How soon these objections were made use of by the Jews, will appear by Justin Martyr, the first writer which made any considerable explication and defence of the Christian religion: who, in his dialogue with Trypho the Jew, shews us what were the objections of the Rabbin's: "Enim si deo et iis insinuasti esse totem virum, postea vestra in Regnum Ihesu, rege et eternitate, est egressa divina insignia ejus quae de eo nuncius. Equidem Esaias praeclarat Iohananem vocari opertore, deque virutum sanctorum Damasci et spolia Samarina adversus regem Assyriorum. Porro, inquantum, etsi qui veni neque sub ejusmodi nomine est dictus, neque re bellica functus." Tertull. adv. Judaeos, c. 9.

† So Justin testifieth of the Jews, speaking to Trypho, and in him to them: "Exegi igitur in pertractationem ut ejusdem regis Iesu nomen fuisse et esse eternum." Trypho replies again to Justin: "Idem est dictum de Iesu Christo in materia apologicae, unde dicebas ejus singulorum nomen Christi esse sempiternum, p. 261. And Trypho replies again to Justin: "Idem est dictum de Iesu Christo in materia apologicae, unde dicebas ejus singulorum nomen Christi esse sempiternum, p. 261.

‡ The LXX. "την τε παθεις την γενναν χειρισθείς." It is true, the rest of the interpreters, concurring with the objection of the Jews, translated it, "την τε χειρισθείς, i.e. adolescentula, or juvenula." But as their antiquity so their authority is far short of the LXX. especially in this case. I shall not need to shew how the origination of χειρισθείς from χειρα proves no less. We know the affinity of the Punic tongue with the Hebrew; and by the testimony of St. Jerome, 'Lingua Punica, quam de Hebreworum fontibus munare dictur, proprius virgo alma appellatur.' V. Lib. Quast. Helv. in Gen. c. 24. v. 43.
is impossible it should be fulfilled, they plainly shew, that for any knowledge which they had, it was not fulfilled till our Saviour came: and therefore they cannot with any reason deny but that it belonged unto the Messias, as divers of the ancient Rabbins thought and confessed: and is yet more evident by their monstrous error, who therefore expected no Messias in Israel,* because they thought whatsoever was spoken of him to have been completed in Hezekiah. Which is abundantly enough for our present purpose, being only to prove that the Messias promised by God, and expected by the people of God before and under the Law, was to be conceived and born of a virgin.

Secondly, As we are taught by the predictions of the prophets, that a virgin was to be mother of the promised Messias; so are we assured by the infallible relations of the evangelists, that this Mary the mother of Jesus, whom we believe to be Christ, was a virgin when she bare him, when she “brought forth her first-born son.” That she was a virgin when and after she was espoused unto Joseph, appeareth by the narration of St. Luke (i. 27.); “for the angel Gabriel was sent from God to a virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph.” After the salutation of that angel, that she was still so, appeareth by her question, “How shall this be, seeing I know not a man?” That she continued so after she conceived by the Holy Ghost, is evident from the relation of St. Matthew: for when she was “espoused unto Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost.” (Matt. i. 18.) That she was a virgin not only while she was with child, but even when she had brought forth, is also evident out of his application of the prophecy: “Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son.” (Matt. i. 23.) For by the same prediction it is as manifest that a virgin should bring forth, as conceive a son.† Neither was her act of par-

* It is the known saying of Hillel, recorded in Sanhedrin, c. Chelek, פא ה והש תושק יתא יפכ נסכית שכר פאוכי: There is no Messias to the Israelites, because they have already enjoyed him in the days of Hezekiah. Divers of the latter Rabbins endeavour to mollify these words of Hillel by their several expositions, but in vain. And R. Joseph understood him better, who thought he took away all expectation of a Messias, and therefore fairly prayed for him, Condonet Dominus hoc R. Hillel. However, it appears that from two principles, whereof one was false, he gathered that false conclusion. For first, he thought those words in Isaiah were spoken of the Messias: which proposition was true. Secondly, he conceived that those were spoken of Hezekiah, and fulfilled in him: which proposition was false. From hence he inferred, that the Israelites were not to expect a Messias after Hezekiah: which conclusion was also false.

† Ille est virgo quae in utero concept, virgoque perp efilium. Sic enim scriptum est, Ecce virgo in utero concepit, et pariet Filium. Non enim concepturam tantummodo Virginem, sed et pariturn Virginem dixit.” S. Ambros, Epist. 7, ad Sisirim. So he argued from the prophecy, and St. Augustin from the Creed: “Si vel per nascentem corrupseretur ejus integritas, non jam ille de Virgine nascetur: tumque falsa, quod absit, de virgine natum tota consiceretur Ecclesia, quae, imitans ejus matrem, quotidie parit membra, et Virgin est.” Enchir. c. 34. As also St. Ambrose in the same epistle: “Quia potuit Virgo concepere, potuit Virgo generare, quia semper copius conve-
BORN OF THE VIRGIN MARY. 263

tnition more contradictory to virginity, than that former of conception.

Thirdly, We believe the mother of our Lord to have been not only before and after his nativity, but also for ever, the most immaculate and blessed Virgin. For although it may be thought sufficient as to the mystery of the incarnation,* that when our Saviour was conceived and born, his mother was a virgin; though whatsoever should have followed after, could have no reflexive operation upon the first-fruit of her womb; though there be no farther mention in the Creed, than that he was born of the Virgin Mary: yet the peculiar eminency and unparalleled privilege of that mother, the special honour and reverence due unto that Son, and ever paid by her, the regard of that Holy Ghost who came upon her, and the power of the Highest who overshadowed her, the singular goodness and piety of Joseph, to whom she was espoused, have persuaded the Church of God in all ages to believe that she still continued in the same virginity, and therefore is to be acknowledged the Ever-Virgin Mary.† As if the gate of the sanctuary in the prophet Ezekiel were to be understood of her: "This gate shall be shut, it shall not be opened, and no man shall enter in by it; because the Lord, the God of Israel, hath entered in by it, therefore it shall be shut." (Ezek. xliv. 2.)

Many, indeed, have taken the boldness to deny this truth, because not recorded in the sacred writ;‡ and not only so

dat, partus sequatur. Sed si doctrinis non creditur sacerdotum, creditur sanctae


† For so the Greek Church always called her ἄπανταγόνη, and from them the Latins, Sempem Virgo.

‡ First we read in the time of Origen, that some did maintain the virginity of Mary no longer than to Christ's nativity. 'In tantam nescio quis prorupit insaniam, ut assereret negatamuisse Mariam a Salvatore, eo quod post nativitatem illius juncta fuerit Josepho.' Homil. 7. in Lucam. Tertullian himself was produced as an asseter of the same opinion; nor does St. Jerome deny it, though I think he might have done it. Apollinaris, or at least his followers, delivered the same, says Epiphanius, and Eunomius with him, τὸν ἤνθεον μετὰ τὸν ἄφρατον κυριοταν συνάπτειν εἰς σηπερίαν τῇ σάρκιν, αὐτὸν οὐκ ἀληθερατίας, as Photius out of Philostorgius. Not that these words in Photius were the words of Philostorgius, for he was clearly an Euno- mian, and therefore would never express their opinions with so ó σηπερίαν. And as he always condemned Eunomius, so he was not condemned but by an Euno- mian, that is, a man of his own sect. As that epigram, "Ευνομιανην. Ἰστοςεν ἑκληστα θεω χαραττει σεφιτη. Which I therefore mention, because Got- tofred hath made an unnecessary emendation in the verse, ἑκληστας δ' ἀλιω, and a worse interpretation in the inscription, taking the Eunomian to be a Catholic, and the name of the sect for the name of a man; and confirming this error by a greater mistake, saying Eunomius was the name of a man, twice spoken of in Suidas, once in Ευνομιανης and again in ἀλωος. It is true indeed Suidas saith ex- pressly, Ευνομιανην, ένοις κυριον, and immedi- ately adds these words, τὸν οὐκ ἐκληστας ἀλωος ένοις διεπαθει τῇ ονομ αὐτοτι, as if Be- llicosus had baptized one whose name
but to assert the contrary as delivered in the Scriptures, but with no success. For though, as they object, St. Matthew testifieth that Joseph “knew not Mary, until she had brought forth her first-born son,” (Matt. i. 25.) from whence they would infer, that afterwards he knew her; yet the manner of the Scripture language produceth no such inference.* When God said to Jacob, “I will not leave thee until I have done that which I have spoken to thee of,” (Gen. xxviii. 15.) it followeth not that when that was done, the God of Jacob left him. When the conclusion of Deuteronomy was written, it was said of Moses, “No man knoweth of his sepulchre unto this day;” (Deut. xxxiv. 6.) but it were a weak argument to

was Eunomius. But the words are taken out of Procopius in Hist. Arcana, p. 2, from whence it appears that he who was baptized was by name Theodosius, and by sect an Eunomian. And whatsoever his name was who wrote that epigram on the History of Philostorgius, he was certainly by sect an Eunomian, and that was intended in the inscription, written without question by some Catholic, who thought no man could commend the History of Philostorgius but one of his own opinion. These contradistinctions of the perpetual virginity of the mother of our Lord afterwards increased to a greater number, whom Epiphanius calls by a general name Antidicomarianitae. And from him St. Augustin: * Antidicomarianitae appellati sunt Heretici, qui Marie Virginitati usque adeo contradicunt, ut affirmam eam post Christum natum vido suo suisse commixtum. 1 de Hares. 56. condemned under that name by the sixth general Council, Art. 2. [xii.] The same were called by the Latins, Helvidiani, from Helvidius (a disciple of Augustinius the Arian), whose name is most made use of, because refuted by St. Jerome. He was followed by Jovinian, a monk of Milan, as St. Jerome testifieth; though St. Augustin delivereth his opinion otherwise: "Virginitatem Marie destruеhant, dicens eam pariendo suisse corruptam." Hares. 82. And Bonosus, a bishop in Macedonia, referred by the Council of Capua to the judgment of Anysius bishop of Thessalonica, was condemned for the same, as appeared by the 79th Ep. of St. Ambrose, written to Theophilus and Anysius: * Sane non possimus negare de Maria bilius juere reprehensum, meritoque vestram Sanctitatem abhorruitisse, quo ex eodem utero virginali, ex quo secundum carmen Christus natus est, alias partus effusus sit." This is the catalogue of those by the ancients accounted heretics, for denying the perpetual virginity of the mother of our Lord.

* For in the word ἐστι there is no such force. Τὸ εὖς οὖ πάντως ἀντιδιπείται τῷ μελλόντι, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν μία μὲν τὸ δὲ τίθεται, τὸ μετὰ τύπου δὲ οὐκ ἤκκινεναι, S. Greg. Naz. Orat. 2. de Filio. Τὸ εὖς παλλακὸς χέρων μὲν τιθέντοις πεπαρθὸντοις, κατὰ δὲ τὸν ἀληθῶς τὸ ἄρθρον δείκνυον. S. Basil, Homil. in Sanct. Christ, Gen. ν. 5. Τὸ ἔξοδο τῆς γραφῆς τῷ μέντον τῷ μέντον τῶν ψυχῶν, S. Chrysost. in Mott. Homil. 5. Τὸ ἔξοδο τῶν πολλῶν καὶ τῷ τοῦ ἐννοίακι̣ν ἢ τῇ θρήσκῳ υἱόσωμα μείναιν. Isid. Pelus. lib. i. ep. 18. Τὸ εὖς πολλάκις οὐκ εὑρίσκων ἢ τῷ χειρὸν λέγει, ἀλλὰ τῷ τοῦ αὐτοῦ πληγαμέρας. Adr. Isag. in S. S. Τὸ ἔξοδο εὑρίσκει μὲν πρὸς ἀντιδιπείτων τοῦ ἐξερέων χειρὸν παραλαμβάνοντας, εἰσὶν δὲ οὐκ ἐδῶκες μεγάλου μὲν ἑργῶν καὶ Εἰσπροτείνων καθάπες καὶ τῷ οὐ μὲν πρὸς ἀντιδιπείτων ἐξερέων χειρὸν τινὸς, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκ νεκροῦς ὑποκάθισεν ἀπεράντων διαστάματος. Phot. ep. 50. In the same manner it is observed by the Greek grammarians of πρὶν, that if any one declared that he did it not πρὶν before such a thing were done, it followeth not that he did it when or after that thing was done. As when Helenas saw and knew Ulysses a spy in Troy, she promised upon oath that she would discover him to none till she was safe returned to the Grecian fleet;

Καὶ ἔφυσε καρπήν πρῶτον ἑρκείς, Μὴ μὲν πρὶν ὦλθε μετὰ Τρώων ἀκροβοῖα, Πρὶν γάρ τιν χείρας τε Θεᾶς καλεῖ μὲν αὐτής ἑκάστας. Od. Δ. ν. 233.

And yet it is not likely (says Eustathius), that Helenas did ever discover Ulysses to the Trojans after he was returned: ἐν δὲ τῷ, Μὴ πρὶν ὦλθε μετὰ Τρώων ἀκροβοῖα, πρὶν αὐτῷ εἰς μὲν ἑκάστην, εἰς χείρας μὲν δεῖ καὶ ὕποτασσέντα τὸ ἀκροβότον ἵππον ὦλθε τοῖς μετὰ Τρώων, ἐσθημάτως τὸν ἑναντίον τοῦ, μὲν πρὶν συνήκα τὸ νεώτερον τοῦ, πρὶν τίνι νεώτερον, (ὅτι τὰ τῇ θεά τε θεόδε τέκνη τῆς ἐκάστης τοῦ ὄλθεσιν τοῖς ὄλθεσιν πρὶν τῷ ὦλθε, μὲν τοῖς ὥσπερ τῇ Ζεάς καὶ καλεῖς, ἵππον ἑκάστης. A negation anteceding πρὶν or ἐστι, is no affirmation following them.
infer from thence, that the sepulchre of Moses hath been known ever since. When Samuel had delivered a severe prediction unto Saul, he "came no more to see him until the day of his death;" (1 Sam. xv. 35.) but it were a strange collection to infer, that he therefore gave him a visit after he was dead. "Michal the daughter of Saul had no child until the day of her death;" (2 Sam. vi. 23.) and yet it were a ridiculous stupidity to dream of any midwifery in the grave. Christ promised his presence to the apostles "unto the end of the world;" (Matt. xxi. 20.) who ever made so unhappy a construction as to infer from thence, that for ever after he would be absent from them?

Again, it is true that Christ is termed the first-born son of Mary,* from whence they infer she must needs have a second; but might as well conclude, that wheresoever there is one, there must be two. For in this particular the Scripture-notation of priority excluded an antecedent, but inferreth not a consequent: it supposeth none to have gone before, but concludes not any to follow after. "Sanctify unto me (saith God) all the first-born;" which was a firm and fixed law, immediately obliging upon the birth: whereas if the first-born had included a relation to a second, there could have been no present certainty, but a suspension of obedience; nor had the first-born been sanctified of itself, but the second birth had sanctified the first. And well might any sacrilegious Jew have kept back the price of redemption due unto the priest,† nor could it have been required of him, till a second offspring had appeared; and so no redemption at all had been required for an only son. Whereas all such pretences were unheard of in the Law, because the original Hebrew word‡ is not capable of any such construction; and in the Law itself it carrieth with it a clear interpretation, "Sanctify unto me all the first-born: whatsoever openeth the womb among the children of Israel, both of man and beast, it is mine." (Exod. xiii. 2.) The aper- tion of the womb determineth the first-born;§ and the law of

* For I shall not deny that Christ was called the first-born in respect of his mother, though Epiphanius thought that a sufficient answer: Oüx estis, qui es misce pueri pertotius autem? Exque estis autem, quia es misce pueri pertotius autem?... Exempli gratia, quod non est puero per puerum autem?...(Exod. xiii. 17, 18.)

† Thus Jerome makes his plea: *Quid me in unius mensis stringis articulo? quid primogenitus vocas, quem an sequuntur fratrres ignoro? Exspecta donec nascatur secundus: nihil debeo sacerdoti, nisi et ille fuerit procreatus, per quem is qui ante natus est incipiat esse primogenitus.* Advers. Heid. col. 413.

‡ § Definit servos Dei, quid sit Primogenitus: Omne, inquit, quod aperit unum et ali, sed ante quem nullus." S. Hieron, adv. Heid. col. 413. It is observed by Servius, on that of Virgil's Aenid. i. 5. "Troja qui primus ab oris," that primus is post quem nullus.

§ The law of

et ali, sed ante quem nullus.' S. Hieron, adv. Heid. col. 413. It is observed by Servius, on that of Virgil's Aenid. i. 5. "Troja qui primus ab oris," that primus is post quem nullus.

† Thus Jerome makes his plea: *Quid me in unius mensis stringis articulo? quid primogenitus vocas, quem an sequuntur fratres ignoro? Exspecta donec nascatur secundus: nihil debeo sacerdoti, nisi et ille fuerit procreatus, per quem is qui ante natus est incipiat esse primogenitus.* Advers. Heid. col. 413.

‡ § Definit servos Dei, quid sit Primogenitus: Omne, inquit, quod aperit unum

et ali, sed ante quem nullus.' S. Hieron, adv. Heid. col. 413. It is observed by Servius, on that of Virgil's Aenid. i. 5. "Troja qui primus ab oris," that primus is post quem nullus.
redemption excludeth all such tergiversation: "Those that are redeemed, from a month old thou shalt redeem;" (Num. xviii. 16.) no staying to make up the relation, no expecting another birth to perfect the redemption. Being then "they brought our Saviour to Jerusalem to present him to the Lord;" as it is written in the Law of the Lord, Every male that openeth the womb shall be called holy to the Lord;" (Luke ii. 22, 23.) it is evident he was called the first-born of Mary according to the notion of the Law of Moses, and consequently that title inferreth no succession, nor proveth the mother to have any other offsping.

Indeed, as they thirdly object, it cannot be denied but that we read expressly in the Scriptures of the brethren of our Lord: "He went down to Capernaum, he, and his mother, and his brethren," (John ii. 12.) and, "While he talked unto the people, his mother and his brethren stood without, desiring to speak with him." (Matt. xii. 46.) But although his mother and his brethren be named together, yet they are never called the sons of his mother; but the question is not whether Christ had any brethren, but whether his mother brought forth any other children? It is possible Joseph might have children before Mary was espoused to him; and then as he was reputed and called our Saviour's father, so might they well be accounted and called his brethren, as the ancient fathers, especially of the Greek Church, have taught. Nor need we thus assert that Joseph had any offspring, because the language of the Jews includeth in the name of brethren not only the strict relation of

* Origen first delivereth it on St. Matt. and Eusebius sheweth his opinion, speaking of St. James the brother of our Lord, Hist. Ecle. i. ii. c. 1. Tota oèha kai iàkouβων τον των Κουανυ γενοσεον εϊδελιν, οτι δε kai οτος ιωσηφ αρμαστο παις, τον δε Χριστων πατης ο ιωσηφ. So we read, as it is set forth by R. Stephenson. But in my hook, collated with an ancient MS. "On δε kai οτος υδις των Ιωσηφ του ιερουσαλην οιοε πατης του Χριστου. Which is much more plain; for αρμαστο παις is nothing so pertinent in this particular, as υδις δε. So Epiphanius: ον γαρ ο Ιωσηφ οτος υδις τω Γενοσεον εϊδελιν ιουσιν, οικ απο Μακεδιας. Harus. 29. §. 4. And Harus. 42. §. 12. speaking of the rest he calls them: τοις υδις ιωσηφ εις της οτος αυτου άλλης γενοσεος, Thus St. Hilary: Η Homines pravissimis hinc prasumunt opinionibus sub anciaturatatem, quod phares Dominum nostrum frater babissue sit traditum, quasi Maria illi fuisse, et non potius Joseph ex prope conjugio suscepti. Com. in Matt. c. 1. Thus also St. Ambrose de Virg. And generally all the fathers to that time, eis1 the Greeks afterwards. St. Chrysostom, St. Cyril, Euthymius, Theophylact, Ecumenius, and Nicephorus. These all seem to have followed an old tradi-

lact, Ecumenius, and Nicephorus. These all seem to have followed an old tradi-

iction, which is partly still continued, in Epiphanius: "Εσεχι δε οτος ο ιωσηφ του μεν πρωτης αυτω γυναικα εν της φυλης Ιουανα και κουκη αυτη αυτη παθες την αρμαστο ες πισσαρας μεν αρμασας, Εκδίκας δε τουν. Harus. 78. §. 7. The first of these six children was James; μετ’ αυτην δε γενεσε τον ευος και λομωμενε, έπι τα μετ’ αυτων ομιλει, έπι σειτα "Ιουανα και δε Συρωττες, η Μωαη, και η Σαλαμην και λομωμενε, Ibid. 8. Thus had the Greeks a distinct relation of the sons and daughters of Joseph, and of the order of their generation. Whose authority I shall conclude with that of Jobius (Ecc. I. xix. "Εις πατης και αδελφως ηπι υγι δοκουμαι τον απατης, οικ εκ του πνηματο και παιομον τωμος έξελεται, άλλα τας εν δικαιοτηθη διαλαμποντος τωμους γαρ ιωσηφ, και ου του των παιδων. In Phot. Biblioth. Πατ. 33. col. 642. And that of Amphichites Jun. Ιπτιπτεσαν δε πατης και ει την ευος ηπι, καθες ματαομει ο Ευακαλωτις, και την ποιη μεδαχενες το ελευθ, γηρας μακιν ιωσηφ και έλησες παντι τον κομμα, δο και κομμα I τον Χριστου δος δος παιτως ειναι. Op. in Deip. in fin.
fraternity, but also the larger of consanguinity; and therefore it is sufficient satisfaction for that expression, that there were such persons allied unto the blessed Virgin. "We be brethren," (Gen. xiii. 8.) said Abraham unto Lot; when Abraham was the son of Terah, Lot of Haran, and consequently not his brother, but his nephew, and, as elsewhere properly styled, "the son of his brother." (Gen. xii. 5.) "Moses called Michael and Elzaphan the sons of Uzziel the uncle of Aaron, and said unto them, Come near, carry your brethren from before the sanctuary:" (Lev. x. 4.) whereas those brethren were Nadab and Abihu, the sons, not of Uzziel, but of Aaron. "Jacob told Rachel that he was her father's brother, and that he was Rebekah's son;" (Gen. xxix. 12.) whereas Rebekah was the sister of Rachel's father. It is sufficient therefore, that the evangelists, according to the constant language of the Jews, call the kindred of the blessed Virgin the brethren and sisters of her only son; which indeed is something the later, but the most generally approved, answer.*

And yet this difficulty, though usually no farther considered,

* The first, I conceive, who returned this answer was St. Jerome, in a tractate written in his youth at Rome against Helvidius, wherein, after a long discourse of several acquiescences of brethren in the Scriptures, he thus concludes: "Restat igitur, ut fratres eos intelligas appellatos cognatione, non affectu, non gentis privilegio, non natura, quo modo Lot Abraham, quo modo Jacob Iacobus est appellatus frater." Ad loc. col. 443. And as for the other opinion of those which went before him, he says it was grounded merely upon an apocryphal history, Com. in Matt. c. xiii. 49. col. 639. "Quidam fratres Dominii de alia uxor Joseph filios suscipiantur, sequentes deliramenta Apocryphorum, et quandam Escham mulierem confingentes." Indeed Origen himself, followed in this particular by the Greek Church, did confess no less; who tells the authors from whom that interpretation first arose: "Fratres autem Jesu putabant nonnulli esse, (ex traditione Hebraeorum sumpta occasione, ex evangelio quod titulum habet juxta Petrum, aut ex libro Jacobi) filios Joseph ex priore uxor, quae conversarat ipsi sacerdote. Duxit Mariam." In Matt. xiii. 55. This Jacobus mentioned by Origen, is the same with him whom Eusebius mentions in Haerem., p. 70. ed. Lugd. 1629. "Αρετή δέ τιν Ιστροφων, το εν ιστροφων περι τις αγιας Μαρια; Ιακωβος τις, της ιστροφως. Where he reckons Joseph inter tots χρηστον, et Epiphanius calls Ιακωβος: Ευφασιας, Lib. de Vit. B. Mariae. Verg. St. Jerome therefore of observing that the former opinion of Joseph's sons was founded merely upon an apocryphal writing, and being ready to assert the virginity of Joseph as well as Mary, first invented the other solution in the kindred of Mary, as founded not only in the language, but also testimony of the Scriptures: "Quidam fratres Dominii de alia uxor Joseph filios suscipiantur, sequentes deliramenta Apocryphorum, et quandam Escham mulierem confingentes. Nos autem sicut in libro quem contra Helvidium scripsimus contestari, fratres Dominii non filios Joseph, sed consobrinos Salvatoris, Maris liberos intelligimus materterae Dominii, quam esse dictur mater Jacobi minoris et Joseph et Judae, quos in alio Evangelio loco fratres Dominii legimus appellatos. Fratres autem consobrinos dici omnis Scriptura demonstrat." S. Hier. in Matt. xii. 19. col. 639. After St. Jerome, St. Augustin embraced this opinion: "Consanguiuei Virginis Mariae fratres Dominii dicebatur. Era enim consuetudinis Scripturarum appellate fratres quoslibet consanguisenos et cognitionis propinquos." In Ioan. Tract. 24. § 3. Item Tract. 10. § 2. et contra Panstum. 1. xxii. c. 35. Although therefore he seem to be indifferent in his exposition of the Epistle to the Galatians, i. 15. "Jacobus Dominii frater, vel ex filiis Joseph de alia uxor, vel ex cognatione Mariae matris ejus, debet intelligi;" yet because this exposition was written while he was a presbyter, and those before mentioned after he was made a bishop; therefore the former was taken for his undoubted opinion, and upon his and St. Jerome's authority, hath been generally since received in the Latin Church.
is not fully cleared; for they which impugned the perpetual virginity of the mother of our Lord, urged it farther, pretending that as the Scriptures called them the brethren of Christ, so they also shewed them to be the sons of Mary the mother of Christ. For first, the Jews express them particularly by their names, "Is not his mother called Mary? and his brethren, James, and Joses, and Simon, and Judas?" (Matt. xiii. 55.) Therefore James and Joses were undoubtedly the brethren of Christ, and the same were also as unquestionably sons of Mary:* for among the women at the cross we find "Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James and Joses." (Matt. xxvii. 56.) Again, this Mary they think can be no other than the mother of our Lord, because they find her early in the morning at the sepulchre with Mary Magdalene and Salome; (Mark xvi. 1.) and it is not probable that any should have more care of the body of the son than the mother.† She then who was certainly present at the cross, was not probably absent from the sepulchre: wherefore they conclude, she was the mother of Christ, who was the mother of James and Joses, the brethren of Christ.

And now the urging of this argument will produce a greater clearness in the solution of the question. For if it appear that Mary the mother of James and Joses was different and distinguished from Mary the Virgin; then will it also be apparent that the brethren of our Lord were the sons of another mother, for James and Joses were so called. But we read in St. John, that "there stood by the cross of Jesus, his mother, and his mother's sister, Mary the wife of Cleophas, and Mary Magdalene." (John xix. 25.) In the rest of the evangelists we find at the same place "Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James and Joses;" (Matt. xxvii. 56. Mark xv. 40.) and again at the sepulchre, "Mary Magdalene and the other Mary?" (Matt. xxviii. 1) wherefore that other Mary, by the conjunction of these testimonies, appeareth to be Mary the wife of Cleophas, and the mother of James and Joses; and consequently James and Joses, the brethren of our Lord, were not the sons of Mary his mother, but of the other Mary,‡ and therefore called his brethren according to the language of the Jews, because that the other Mary was the sister of his mother.


† Here Helvidius excluding triumphed: "Quam miserum ert et impium de Maria nec sentire, ut cum alie femina curam sepulturas habuerint, matrem ejus dicamus absentem!" Ibid. col. 445.

‡ 'Jacobs qui appellatur frater Domini, cognomeno Justas, ut nominil existimant, Joseph ex alia uxor e, ut autem mihi videtur, Maria sororis Matris Domini, cujus Iannes in libro suo meminit, filius.' S. Hieron. in Catalogo Script. Ecclesi. n. 4. col. 346. "Sunt in sepulcro ubi posistum est corpus Domini, nec autem nec postea mortuus jacuit: sic uter us Maria nec autem nec postea quicquam mortale suspetit." S. August. in Ioan. Tract. 28.
Notwithstanding therefore all these pretensions, there can be nothing found to raise the least suspicion of any interruption of the ever-blessed Mary's perpetual virginity. For as she was a virgin when she conceived, and after she brought forth our Saviour; so did she continue in the same state and condition, and was commended by our Saviour to his beloved disciple, as a mother only now of an adopted son.

The third consideration belonging to this part of the Article is, how this Virgin was a mother, what the foundation was of her maternal relation to the Son of God, what is to be attributed unto her in this sacred nativity, beside the immediate work of the power of the Highest, and the influence of the Holy Ghost. For we are here to remember again the most ancient form of this Article, briefly thus delivered, born of the Holy Ghost, and Virgin Mary; as also that the word born* was not taken precisely for the nativity of our Saviour, but as comprehending in it whatsoever belonged to his human generation; and when afterward the conception was attributed to the Spirit, the nativity to the Virgin; it was not so to be understood, as if the Spirit had conceived him, but the blessed Virgin, by the power and operation of the Spirit.

First, therefore, we must acknowledge a true, real, and proper conception, by which the Virgin did conceive of her own substance the true and real substance of our Saviour,† according to the prediction of the prophet, "Behold, a virgin shall conceive," (Isa. vii. 14.) and the annunciation of the angel, "Behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb."‡ (Luke i. 31.) From whence our Saviour is expressly termed by Elizabeth "the fruit§ of her womb." (Luke i. 42.)

Secondly, As she did at first really and properly conceive, so did she also nourish and increase the same body of our Saviour, once conceived, by the true substance of her own; by which "she was found with child of the Holy Ghost," (Matt. i. 18.) and is described going with Joseph "to be taxed, being great with child,"¶ (Luke ii. 5,) and pronounced happy by that loud cry of the woman in the Gospel, "Blessed is the womb that bare thee." (Luke xi. 27.)§

Thirdly. When Christ was thus conceived, and grew in the womb of the blessed Virgin, she truly and really did bring forth a son, by a true and proper parturition; and Christ thereby was properly born, by a true nativity.** For as we read, "El-

---

* Prenata
† 'Tantum ad naticitatem carnis ex se dedit, quantum ex se feminae edendorum corporum susceptis originibus impondant.' S. Hil. l. x. de Trinit. c. 15.
‡ That is, by a proper conception, solvabat in yastri: the Syriac in one word, in quem ac si diceres, reutrescere. So the L.Y.V. translated the simple γαστρί by yastri advocati. As therefore in yastri ἰχθυς expresseth a proper gravitation, so doth in ἵσσας, solvabat in a proper conception. According to that expression of Gregory Nazianzen: θεόν μει, οτι χνος ἱλάθην ἄνθρωποις ἔν, οτι νύμφων κυστίσω. Ep. i. ad Cledon.
§ Heb. יבשׂ יָזָר יִזְזָּר
¶ Ou τη γνῶσις
§ 'Η κυνη δὲ βαστάσασά σε,
** Πεπληροφορηθάνως εἰς τὸν Κύριον ἡμῶν
zabeth's full time and came, that she should be delivered and she brought forth a son;' (Luke i. 57.) so in the like simplicity of expression, and propriety of speech, the same evangelist speaks of Mary, "The days were accomplished that she should be delivered, and she brought forth her first-born son." (Luke ii. 6, 7.)

Wherefore from these three, a true conception, nutrition, and parturition, we must acknowledge that the blessed Virgin was truly and properly the mother of our Saviour.* And so is she frequently styled the mother of Jesus, in the language of the evangelists, and by Elizabeth particularly, the mother of her Lord, as also by the general consent of the Church (because he which was born of her was God)† the Deipara;‡ which

* Veri et proprii filii quis nisi ab-surdissimus neget vere et proprie esse matrem? Forma exhibited in the Councils. "Iocet et ad credendum difficile, et dignum controversia videbatur, utrum Deum illa Virgo genuerit, ceterum quod vere et proprie genuerit, quicumque est ille quem genuit, nulli dignum discantionis appareat." Ibid.
† Huc igitur in hæc Deverta se quod igitur evosa; The d. Amb. disp. 12.
‡ This name was first in use in the Greek Church, which delighting in the happy compositions of that language, called the blessed Virgin Theotokia. From whence the Latins in imitation styled her Virginem Deiparam et Deigenitricem. Mursia in his Glossary, sets the original of this title in the time of Justinian: 'Auditem hoc nomen est matri Domini ac Servatoris nostri Jesu Christi a Synudo V. Constantinopolitana tempore Justiniani.' Whereas this was not the original, but the confirmation of that title. 'In hac Synodo Catholice est institutum, ut Beata Maria semper virgo Theotokos diceretur; quia sicut catholica fides habet, non hominem solum, sed vere Deum et hominem genuit.' Paul. Waruy, de Gest. Langobard. i. vi. c. 14. So speaketh he of the same Synod; and it is true, for the seventh Canon of the same synod thus: Ei tis kata anarti tou kata-xristiakon Theotokon loyia tis avrás, idou, de avrás, Theoloukion avrás—allassa μαθ κοινα κατ' ἀλλοθρούς Theotokin autou ἀλλοθρούς—τι πουεται ἀλλοθρούς. Otherwise in this Council it was but confirmed what had been determined and settled long before; and therefore Photius says thereon, epist. 1. Aυτὴ η Υἱοθετημένη παλιὰ τα μικρά παραφέροντα δρόμητα τις το παντότι ἔχειν—and it utterly cut off the heresy of Nestorius, which then began to grow up again. Now part of the heresy of Nes-
and after he produced them, affirmed that they all did use it; there are but three of those who expressly mention it, Athanasius, Antiochus, and Ammon, Epist. ad Regum de lect. Fid. p. 47, seqq. And it is something to be admired, that he should so name the other six, and recite those places out of them which had it not, when there were before him so many beside them that used it. As Gregory Nazianzen: Εἰ τις οὐ Θεότοκον τινα Μαρίν έπολαμάζοι, χαίς ἐστι τῆς Θεότοκες. Epist. 1. ad Ciodon, and in his first oration de Filio speaking of the difference of his generation from that of others: Ποῦ γάρ ἐν τοῖς αὐτῶν ἔργον Θεότοκον παρέχων; And St. Basil asserteth: μὲν κατάδιχετα τὰς φυλετάσσεις τὴν ἔκοιμα, ἵτι πεποίηται εἶναι σαρκίσεις ἡ Θεότοκος. Hom. in sanct. Christ. Gen. 5. § 5. And that in the time of St. Basil and St. Gregory, this term was usual, appeareth by the objection of Julian, who derided the Christians for thinking God could be horn of a woman: Θεότοκον δὲ ἡμᾶς παρέχον Μαρινα καλοῦντες. S. Cyril. Alex. c. Jul. 1. vii. Before both these Eusebius speaketh of Helena, who built a church at Bethlehem: η θεατεία τῆς Θεότοκες τοῦ κυρίου μεταμετομοιοῦσα κατεκηρύσσει. De vita Const. L. ii. c. 43. And before Eusebius, Alexander bishop of Alexandria: Ἀφεξ ὡρίζειν τῷ Κορος ἡμῶν ἑν τοῖς χριστίς, σύμα προεκλάζεται, καὶ ὁ βούκει, εἰ τῆς Θεότοκος μέριμα. Ep. ad Alex. ep. Thed. L. i. c. 4. Before him Dionsius Alexander, calls our Savior: τοῦ σταυρικτοῦ ἐς ἀγία παρθένου καὶ Θεότοκος μαρίνος. Epist. ad Panum. Summi. p. 276. l. i. Biblioth. Patr. Gr. Par. 1654. And speaking of the words of Isaiah, "a virgin shall conceive:" δικειμένου εἰς τοὺς Θεότοκος της σιωπα, ἡ παρθένος διανοεῖ. Resp. ad quest. 5. And in the answer to the same question: Πεπολμάτω ἡμῶν ἐξανεάται, καὶ πείλεται τὸ δύσεις τοῦ ζωτίου ἡ ἀμείρωστος σκιά τοῦ Θεοῦ, Μαρία ἡ Θεότοκος, καὶ παρθένος. And again: οὐτωσοι λέγει καὶ πὲρ τοῦ γεννήθης εἰς τῆς Θεότοκου. In answer to the seventh question: Διὰ τὸ φεύγεις εἰς Ἀγίου τοῦ ζωτικοῦ ζῶα τῆς Θεότοκος. Ἐρχάς ἐν ἀγάλαις; φευγόν τὴν καταφυήν ἡμᾶς. And so often. Nay, yet before him Origem did not only use, but expounded at large the meaning of that title Θεότοκος, in his first tome on the Epistle to the Romans, as Socrates and Liberatus testify. Well therefore did Antiochus, bishop of Antioch, urge the ancient fathers against Nestorius, calling it: περισσοτέρως ὡς καὶ τετραμενόν πολλῷς τῶν Πατέρων. And again: Πωλίκης τῶν Πατέρων καὶ συντέχου, καὶ γραφώ, καὶ ῥηθώ. Τότῳ γὰρ τὸ δίκαιο, λέγων εἰ, συλλαβών τὰ περικεφαλαία παράτειναι ὑπὸ τὰς χρυσαπάτεις αὐτῶν πολλά καὶ ἑπισκόπημα, οὐ τῷ με κρίσιμον ὀποῖο περιβάλλοντο τὰς χρυσαπάτεις. Concil. Ephes. p. 1. c. 51.

* Although Θεότοκος may he extended to signify as much as the mother of God, because τόυτον doth sometimes denote as much as γυνή, and therefore it hath been translated Dei genitrix as well as Deipara: yet those ancient Greeks which call the Virgin Θεότοκος, did not call her μαρίνα τοῦ Θεοῦ. But the Latins translating Θεότοκος Dei genitrix, and the Greeks translating Dei genitrix θεοτόκος, they both at last called her plainly the mother of God. The first which the Greeks observed to style her so, was Leo the Great, as was observed by Ephraim Patriarch of Theopolis, whose words have been very much mistaken by two learned men, Dionysius Petavius and Leo Allatus, who have produced them to prove that Leo Magnus was the first man which ever used the word Θεότοκος. A strange error this must needs appear in so great a person as a patriarch, and that of the Greek Church; and indeed not imaginative, considering how well he was versed in those controversies, and how he compared the words of Leo with those of the ancient Greek fathers, and particularly of St. Cyril. His words are these in his epistle ad Zenobium: Πεπολμάτω Μαρίναν Λαός έγένεσεν αὐτήν λέγοντας, ως μέτα τοῦ δικαιοῦ, ἀνείπετο ἡ ἡμᾶς Θεότοκος, τὸν πρὸ αὐτοῦ πατέρα διαφερούσης ομοίας μακρὰ τὸν φανερώθη, that is, Leo was the first who in plain terms called the Θεότοκος, that is, Mary, the mother of God: whereas the fathers before him spake not the same in express words.' Petavius and Allatus have clearly mistaken the proposition, making the subject the predicate, and the predicate the subject, as if he had first called the mother of God Θεότοκος, whereas he is said first to call the Θεότοκος mother of God, as appeareth by the article added to the subject, not to the predicate. But if that be not sufficient, his meaning will appear by another passage to the same purpose, in his epistle ad Synodeticum. "Οτι μετά τοῦ πατρόν μαίνη ἐλευθέρων ανέιπεν, ἐν ὁλίγη, καὶ πέταν μαίνω τοῦ, ἐν μέτοχο τοῦ Κυρίου μαίνη ἐλότα πρὸς μαίνω Τριάκοντα διὰ τοῦ ἅλλου μαίνη τοῦ λέγων αὐτῶς ὡς δίς λέων ἡ Παῖδος προμαίνω.
The necessity of believing our Saviour thus to be born of the Virgin Mary, will appear both in respect of her who was the mother, and of him who was the son.

In respect of her it was therefore necessary, that we might perpetually preserve an esteem of her person proportionable to so high a dignity. It was her own prediction, "From henceforth all generations shall call me blessed:' (Luke i. 48.) but the obligation is ours, to call her, to esteem her so. If Elizabeth cried out with so loud a voice, "Blessed art thou among women," (Ibid. 42.) when Christ was but newly conceived in her womb; what expressions of honour and admiration can we think sufficient, now that Christ is in heaven, and that mother with him? Far be it from any Christian to derogate from that special privilege granted her, which is incommunicable to any other.‡ We cannot bear too reverend a regard unto the mother of our Lord,' so long as we give her not that worship which is due unto the Lord himself. Let us keep the language of the primitive Church: 'Let her be honoured and esteemed, let him be worshipped and adored.'§

In respect of him it was necessary, first, that we might be assured he was made, or begotten of a woman, and consequently that he had from her the true nature of man. "For he took not upon him the nature of angels," (Heb. ii. 16.) and therefore saved none of them, who for want of a Redeemer, are "reserved in everlasting chains under darkness, unto the judgment of the great day." (Jude 6.) And man once fallen had been, as deservedly, so irrevocably condemned to the same condition, but that "he took upon him the seed of Abraham." (Heb. ii. 16.)

Therefore as he took the Lord and God to be synonymous; so he thought Elizabeth first styled Mary, the mother of God, because she called her the mother of her Lord; and after Elizabeth, Leo was the first who plainly styled her so, that is, the mother of God." And that we may be yet farther assured of his mind, he produceth the words of Leo the pope, in his epistle to Leo the emperor: 'Anathematizetur ergo Nestorius, qui beatam Virginem Mariam non Dei, sed hominis tantummodo, credit genitricem.' Epist. 97. c. 1. Where plainly genitrix Dei is translated ματὴρ Θεος and Θεοτόκος is added by Ephraim out of custom in the subject, being otherwise not at all in Leo's words. It is therefore certain that first in the Greek Church they termed the blessed Virgin Θεότοκος, and the Latins from them Dei genitrix, and mater Dei, and the Greeks from them again ματὴρ Θεος, upon the authority of Leo, not taking notice of other Latins, who styled her so before him.

* * * Non sequenda est multieribus construit qua genuit majestatem.' Author lib. de singulari. Clericorum.

† 'Elizabeth et Zacharias nos docere possunt quin inferiores sunt B Mariae matri Domini sanctitate, quae consecuta in se habituantis Dei libere proclamat, Fecit ergo ex hoc beatam me divinam omnes generationes.' S. Hier. adv. Pelag. lib. i. col. 231.

‡ 'Absit ut quisquam S. Mariam divinae gratiae privilegium, ut speciali gloriam, fraudare conetur.'

For being we are "partakers of flesh and blood," we could expect no redemption but by him who "likewise took part of the same." (Ibid. 14.) We could look for no Redeemer, but such a one who by consanguinity was our brother. And being there is but one Mediator between God and man, the man Christ Jesus, we cannot be assured that he was the Christ, or is our Jesus, except we be first assured that he was a man. Thus our Redeemer, the man Christ Jesus, was born of a woman, that he might redeem both men and women; † that both sexes might rely upon him, who was of the one, and from the other.

Secondly, It was necessary we should believe our Saviour conceived and born of such a woman as was a most pure and immaculate virgin. For as it behoved him in all things to be made like unto us; so in that great similitude a dissimilitude was as necessary, that he should be "without sin." (Heb. iv. 15.) ‡ Our Passover is slain, and behold the Lamb that taketh away the sins of the world; but the lamb of the passover must be without blemish. Whereas then we draw something of corruption and contamination by our seminal tradition from the first Adam; our Saviour hath received the same nature, without any culpable inclination, because born of a virgin, without any seminal tradition. Our High-priest is "separate from sinners," (Heb. vii. 26.) not only in the actions of his life, but in the production of his nature. For as Levi was in the loins of Abraham, § and paid tithes in him, and yet Christ, though the son of Abraham, did not pay tithes in him, but receive them in Melchizedeck: so though we be in the loins of Adam, may be all said to sin in him; yet Christ, who descended from the same Adam according to the flesh, was not partaker of that sin, but an expiation for it. For he which is contained in the seminal virtue of his parent, is some way under

* Under that notion did the ancient Jews expect him, as appeareth by the Fargum, Cantic. viii. 1. 'Vera est mater ejus, quae speravit in semitam substantiam ex semine Virginis, semine carnem nostrae sed non in carne, sed in substantia imperabilis.' When the Messias shall reveal himself, the sons of Israel shall say unto him, Thou shalt be unto us as a brother.

† 'Hominis liberatio in utroque sexu debutt apparer. Ergo, quia virum operetur sanctipere, qui sexus honorabilior est, conveniens erat ut feminaei sexus libriter hic appareret, quod ille vir de feminae natura est.' S. August. Quast. I. 138, q. 11. 'Nolite vos ipsos contemnere, viri filii Dei virum suscipi: non legit vos ipsas contemnere, feminae filii Dei natura ex feminae est.' Idem de Agone Christiano, c. xi. § 12.

‡ 'Non cum ceo peccatis mater ejus in utero aluit, quem Virgo concepit, Virgo peperit.' S. August. Tract. 4. in Ioan. § 10. 'Ergo ecce Agnus Dei. Non habebit iste traducem de Adam; carnem tantum sumpsit de Adam, peccatum non assumpsit.' Ibid. 'Verbum caro factum est similitudo carnis peccata omnino nostra suscipit, nullam reatum vitium fenerex ex traduce prevaricationis exortum.' Ioan. IV. Epist. ad Constamentum. § 'Levi in umbra Abraham fuit, secundum concupiscientiam carnalem; Christus autem, secundum solam substantiam corporalem. Cum eum sit in semine et visibilis corporeitate et invisibilibus ratio, utrvumque ecurrit ex Abraham, vel etiam ex ipso Adam, usque ad corpus Mariæ, quia et ipsum eo modo conceptum et exortum est: Christus autem visibilem carnem substantiam de carne Virginis sumpsit; ratio vero conceptionis ejus non a semine virili, sed longe aliter ac desuper venit.' S. August. de Gen. ad lit. 1. x. c. 20.
his natural power, and therefore may be in some manner concerned in his actions: but he who is only from him by his natural substance according to a passive or obediential power, and so receiveth not his propagation from him, cannot be so included in him, as to be obliged by his actions, or obnoxious to his demerits.

Thirdly, It was necessary that we should believe Christ born of that person, that Virgin Mary which was espoused unto Joseph, that thereby we might be assured that he was of the family of David. For whatsoever promises were made of the Messias, were appropriated unto him. As the seed of the woman was first contracted to the seed of Abraham, so the seed of Abraham was next appropriated to the Son of David. He was to "be called the Son of the Highest, and the Lord God was to give unto him the throne of his father David." (Luke i. 32.) When Jesus asked the Pharisees, "What think ye of Christ? whose son is he? they said unto him, The son of David." (Matt. xxii. 42.) When Herod demanded of the chief priests and scribes, "where Christ should be born; they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judea," (Matt. ii. 4, 5.) because that was "the city of David," whither Joseph went up with Mary, his espoused wife, because he was of the house and lineage of David." (Luke ii. 4.) After John the Baptist, the forerunner of Christ, was born, Zacharias blessed the Lord God of Israel, who had "raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David." (Luke i. 69.) The "woman of Canaan," the "blind men sitting by the way-side," and those other "blind that followed him," cried out, "Have mercy on us, O Lord, thou Son of David." (Matt. xv. 22. xx. 30. ix. 27.) The very children, out of whose mouths God perfected praise, were "crying in the temple, and saying, Hosannah to the Son of David." (Matt. xxi. 15.) And when the blind and dumb both spake and saw, "all the people were amazed, and said, Is not this the Son of David?" (Matt. xii. 23.) Thus by the public and concurrent testimonies of all the Jews, the promised Messias was to come of the house and lineage of David; for "God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins according to the flesh he would raise up Christ to sit upon his throne." (Acts ii. 30.) It was therefore necessary we should believe that our Saviour "was made of the seed of David according to the flesh;" (Rom. i. 3.) of which we are assured, because he was born of that Virgin Mary who descended from him, and was espoused unto Joseph, who descended from the same, that thereby his genealogy might be known.

The consideration of all which will at last lead us to a clear

* 'Atqui hinc magis Christum intelligere debebis ex David deputatum carnali genere, ob Maria Virginis censum. De hoc enim promiso juratur in Psalmo ad David, Ex fructu ventris tuus collocabo super thronum tuum. Tertull. l. iii. adv. Marcionem, c. 20.
explanation of this latter branch of the Article, whereby every Christian may inform himself what he is bound to profess, and being informed, fully express what is the object of his faith in this particular, when he saith, I believe in Jesus Christ who was born of the Virgin Mary. For hereby he is conceived to intend thus much: I assent unto this as a most certain and infallible truth, that there was a certain woman, known by the name of Mary, espoused unto Joseph of Nazareth, which before and after her espousals was a pure and unspotted virgin, and being and continuing in the same virginity, did, by the immediate operation of the Holy Ghost, conceive within her womb the only-begotten Son of God, and, after the natural time of other women, brought him forth as her first-born son, continuing still a most pure and immaculate virgin; whereby the Saviour of the World was born of a woman under the Law, without the least pretence of any original corruption, that he might deliver us from the guilt of sin; born of that Virgin which was of the house and lineage of David, that he might sit upon his throne, and rule for evermore. And in this latitude I profess to believe in Jesus Christ, born of the Virgin Mary.

ARTICLE IV.

Suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified, dead, and buried.

This Article hath also received some accession in the particular expressions of Christ's humiliation. For the first word of it, now generally speaking of his passion, in the most ancient Creeds was no way distinguished from his crucifixion; for as we say, suffered and crucified, they only crucified under Pontius Pilate:* nor was his crucifixion distinguished from

* 'Crucifixus sub Pontio Pilato, et sepultus.' Rufin. in Symb. §. 16. Cassianus de incarn. Domini, l. vi. c. 4. 'Credimus in eum qui sub Pontio Pilato crucifixus est et sepultus.' S. August. de Fide et Symb. c. v. §. 11. et de Trinitat. l. i. c. 14. 'Caput nostrum Christus est, crucifixum et sepultum, resuscitatum ascendit in caelum.' Idem, in Psal. cxxxii. 'Qui sub Pontio Pilato crucifixus est et sepultus.' Mss. Taurin. Chrysol. Euseb. Gallic. de Symb. Hom. ii. p. 334. 'Toi eti Pontov Pilato piemailva, tajiva.' 'Qui sub Pontio Pilato crucifixus et sepultus.' MSS. Armach. And besides these, a witness without exception, Leo the Great: 'Unigenitum Filium Dei crucifixum et sepultum, omnes etiam in Symbolo confessurer.' Epist. x. c. 5. Afterwards the Passion was expressed: 'Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus et sepultus.' Etherius Uxam. And the Death: 'Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus, et sepultus.' Auctor lib. de Symb. ad Cuthenum, §. 6. Not but both these were expressed before in the rule of faith by Tertullian, but without particular mention of the crucifixion. Adv. Prax. c. 2. 'hunc passum, hunc mortuum, et sepultum.' as Optatus: 'Passus, mortuos, et sepultus resurrexit.' lib. i. c. 1. 'Passus, sepultus, et tertia die resurrexit.' Capitol. Caroli 82. And generally the ancients did understand determinately his crucifying, by that more comprehensive name of his suffering. For as Marcellus and

275
276. **ARTICLE IV.**

his death, but where we read, **crucified, dead, and buried,** they only, **crucified and buried.** Because the chief of his sufferings were on the cross, and he gave up the ghost there; therefore his whole passion and his death were comprehended in his crucifixion.

But again, being he suffered not only on the cross; being it was possible he might have been affixed to that cursed tree, and yet not have died; therefore the Church thought fit to add the rest of his sufferings, as antecedent, and his death, as consequent to his crucifixion.

To begin then with his passion in general. In those words, **He suffered under Pontius Pilate,** we are to consider part as substantial, part as circumstantial. The substance of this part of the Article consisteth in our Saviour's passion, he suffered: the circumstance of time is added, declared by the present governor, **under Pontius Pilate.**

Now for the explication of our Saviour's passion, as distinct from those particulars which follow in the Article, more I conceive, cannot be required, than that we shew, *who it was that suffered, how he suffered, what it was he suffered.*

First, If we would clearly understand him that suffered in his full relation to his passion, we must consider him both in his office, and his person; as *Jesus Christ,* and as the only-begotten Son of God. In respect of his office, we believe that he who was the *Christ* did suffer; and so we make profession to be saved by faith in a suffering *Messias.* Of which that we may give a just account, first, We must prove that the promised *Messias* was to suffer: for if he were not, then by professing that our *Jesus* suffered, we should declare he was not *Christ.* Secondly, We must shew that *Jesus,* whom we believe to be the *Messias,* did really and truly suffer: for if he did not, then while we proved the true *Messias* was to suffer, we should conclude our *Jesus* was not that *Messias.* Thirdly, It will be farther advantageous for the illustration of this truth, to manifest that the sufferings of the *Messias* were determined and foretold, as those by which he should be known. And fourthly, It will then be necessary to shew that our *Jesus* did truly suffer whatsoever was determined and foretold. And more than this cannot be necessary to declare *who* it was that suffered, in relation to his office.

For the first of these, that the promised *Messias* was to suffer, to all Christians it is unquestionable; because our Saviour did constantly instruct the apostles in this truth, both before his death, that they might expect it, (Mark ix. 12.) and after, that they might be confirmed by it. (Luke xxiv. 26. 46.)

St. Cyril have οὐσίαν καὶ ταφίνα, Ensebins and the Nicene Council to the same purpose, have παθίνα only in their Creeds. As Clemens Alex. *Paliog.* I. ii. c. 3. Την εἰς θνη μισθίων, τη εἰς παθίνα ὕμνον. Which was farther enlarged afterwards by the Council of Constantinople into οὐσίαν, καὶ παθίνα, καὶ ταφίνα.
And one part of the doctrine which St. Paul disseminated through the world was this, "that the Christ must needs have suffered." (Acts xvii. 3.)

But because these testimonies will satisfy only such as believe in Jesus, and our Saviour himself did refer the disbelieving Jews to the Law and the Prophets, as those who testified of him; we will shew from thence, even from the oracles committed to the Jews, "how it was written of the Son of man, that he must suffer many things," (Mark ix. 12.) and "how the Spirit of Christ which was in the prophets testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ." (1 Pet. i. 11.)

The fifty-third chapter of Isaiah is beyond all question a sad, but clear description of a suffering person: "a man of sorrows and acquainted with grief," "wounded and afflicted," "brought to the slaughter," and "cut off out of the land of the living." But the person of whom that chapter treateth was certainly the Messiah, as we have formerly proved by the confession of the most ancient Jews, and may farther be evidenced both from them and from the place itself.* For surely no man's soul can be "made an

* Page 111, we shewed by the authority of the Targum, the Bereshith Rab- bar, and the Midrash upon Ruth, and by the confession of Solomon Jarchi and Moses Abshech, that the ancient Rab- bins did interpret that chapter of the Messiah: which might seem a sufficient acknowledgment. But because this is the most considerable controversy betwixt us and the Jews, it will not seem unnecessary to prove the same truth by further testimonies. In the Talmud Cod. Sanhedrin, to the question, What is the name of the Messiah? it is answered, נושר in the leper. And the reason of the name is there rendered, נושר because it is spoken in this, Isa. lvi. 4. "Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken," i. e. עונה. And because עונה is used of the leprosy, Levit. xiii. 13. therefore from עונה they concluded his name to be a leper, and consequently did interpret that place of the Messias. In the Pesikta it is written, תָּנָא רֹבֶּה אָם יִשְׂרָאֵל שֶׁיֵּשׁ מִצְלֶג עַטְרֵת אתו "God produced the soul of the Mes- sias, and said unto him, Wilt thou redeem my sons after six thousand years? He answered, I will. Wilt thou bear the chastisements, to take away their sins? Wilt thou bear our griefs?" And he answered, I will. He shall bear with joy." Which is a clear testimony, considering the opinion of the Jews, that all souls of men were created in the beginning, and so the soul of the Messias to suffer for the rest. The shift of the Jews, turning these expressions off from the Messias, and attributing of them to the people as to one, is something ancient: for we find that Origen was urged with that exposition, in a disputation with the Jews: Μεμεριαί δὲ διὰ τὸ οἷον τοὺς λεγόμενοι παρὰ Ἰουδαίων σφόδροι ἐκκρατείας τοῖς προφηταίς πάτων τῶν χριστιανίων: ἐφ' οίς ἠλέησαν ἡ Ἰουδαία, τούτων ἐκείνων ταῖς διάσπασις της και πληγής, η δυνατί πρὸς να νεώναι της σφαγίας της ἑπτάπολης ἑδίκετο. Adi. Cels. i. c. 53. Thus the Jew interpreted those places, Isa. liii. 14. "His visage was so marred more than any man," liii. 15. "that which had not been told them, they shall see," liii. 3. "a man of sorrows and acquainted with grief," and applied them to the people of Israel in their dispensations. But Origen did easily refute him, by retorting other places of the same prophecy; as lii. 4. "Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows," ver. 5. "He was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities, and with his stripes we are healed:" ἵμαρτον γὰρ, says he, ἐν ταῖς ἁμαρτίαις γενόντων, καὶ διδόντως, ἐκ τῶν τῶν εὐαγγελίων, εἰκανὰ διὰ τοῦ λαοῦ ἱεροῦ, εἰκος καὶ αἱ δοκίμα τοῦ ἑλ- γῆν, τούτα λεγομένα. Ibid. But especially he confounded the Jew with those words of the 8th verse, "He was cut off out of the land of the living, for the transgressions of my people was he stricken;" Παραδόθηντοι δὲ ἢμάνατοι διὰ τῆς φαναρίας τῆς λίτης τοῦ, ἀπὸ τῶν ἀνιμων τοῦ λαῶ
offering for our sins,” but our Saviour’s: nor hath God “laid on any man the iniquity of us all,” but on our Redeemer.

“Upon” no person but the Messias “could the chastisement of our peace” be; nor “with any stripes could we be healed” but his. It is sufficiently then demonstrated by the prophet, that the suffering person whom he describes was to be the Christ, in that he “bare our griefs,” and “carried our sorrows.”

This prediction is so clear, ever since the serpent was to “bruise the heel of the woman’s seed,” that the Jews, who were resolved to expect a Messias which should be only glorious, have been enforced to invent another, which should suffer. And then they answer us with a distinction of their own invention; that a Messias was to redeem us, and a Messias was to suffer for us: but the same Messias was not both to redeem us and to suffer for us. For they say that there are two several persons promised under the name of the Messias;* one of the tribe of Ephraim, the other of the tribe of Judah; one the son of Joseph, the other the son of David; the one to precede, fight, and suffer death, the other to follow, conquer, reign, and never to die. If then our Saviour were a Christ, we must confess he was a suffering Messias, and, consequently, according to their doctrine, not a Saviour. For if he were the son of David, then, say they, he was never to die; or if he ever died, he was not that Messias which was promised to sit upon the throne of David. And while we confess our Saviour died, and withal assert his descent from the house of David, we do, in their opinion, involve ourselves in a contradiction.

But this distinction of a double Messias, is far from prevailing over our belief: first, because it is in itself false, and therefore of no validity against us; secondly, because it was first invented to counterfeit the truth, and so very advantageous to us.

* So indeed the Jews expected a double Messias, one ὢ θη ρ ης ᾧ ρ ρ θ ρ α ρ ρ θ α η η θ η ι ρ θ λ η ρ η α and Messias the son of Joseph, the other ω θ η ρ ης ω ρ η ρ η ρ α ρ ρ ης η ρ η α η ρ η θ α η η θ η ι ρ θ λ η ρ η α η ρ η θ λ η ρ η α Messias the son of David. See the Targum expressly upon Canticles, iv. 5. יִתְנָה מָכָר הַזָּנוֹשִׁים Two are thy delirers which shall deliver thee, Messias the son of David, and Messias the son of Ephraim: and in the same manner chap. vii. 5. This, that paraphrase, nothing so ancient as the rest, is conceived to have taken out of the Talmud in Masecheth Socca, where cap. 5, inscribed הַזָּנוֹשִׁים, God saith to Messias the son of David, הַזָּנוֹשִׁים Ask what thou wilt (according to the second Psalm), and I will give it thee. * Who seeing the Messias the son of Joseph which was slain, asked of God nothing but life. Thus from the Talmud and the latter Targum, the Rabbins have generally taught a double Messias, one the son of David, the other of Joseph. As Solomon Jarchi, Isa. xxiv. 10. Zech. xii. 10. Aben Ezra, Zech. ix. 9. Malachi. iii. 1. Kimchi, Zech. xii. 10. whom the latter Jews constantly follow. And thus Marcion the heretic seems to have learned of the Jews, and to have taught with some alteration in favour of his own opinion. * Constitutit his temporibus a Deo quondam ignoto revelatus sit in salutatione omnium gentium; alium, qui a Deo creatore in restitutione Judaicae status sit destinatus, quandoque venturus? Tertull. adv Marciun. l. iv. c. 6.
That it is in itself false, will appear, because the Scriptures never mention any Messias of the tribe of Ephraim, neither was there ever any promise of that nature made to any of the sons or offspring of Joseph. Besides, as we acknowledge but one Mediator between God and man, so the Scriptures never mention any Messias but one. Under whatsoever title he is represented to us, there can be no pretence for a double person. Whether the "seed of the woman," or the "seed of Abraham," whether "Shiloh," or the "son of David," still one person promised: and the style of the ancient Jews before our Saviour was, not they, but he, which is to come.* The question which was asked him, when he professed himself to be Christ, was, whether it was he which was to come, or whether they were to look for another? Not that they could look for him, and for another also. The objection then was, that Elias was not yet come, and therefore they expected no Messias till Elias came. Nor can the difference of the Messias's condition be any true reason of imagining a double person, because in the same place the prophets, (Zech. ix. 9. Isa. ix. 6.) speaking of the same person, indifferently represent him in either condition. Being then, by the confession of all the Jews, one Messias was to be the son of David, whom Elias was to precede; being by the tenor of the Scriptures there was never promise made of more Christs than one, and never the least mention of the tribe of Ephraim with any such relation; it followeth, that that distinction is in itself false.

Again, that the same distinction, framed and contrived against us, must needs be in any indifferent person's judgment advantageous to us, will appear, because the very invention of a double person is a plain confession of a twofold condition; and the different relations, which they prove not, are a convincing argument for the distinct economies, which they deny not. Why should they pretend to expect one to die, and another to triumph, but that the true Messias was both to triumph and to die, to be humbled and to be exalted, to put on the rags of our infirmity before the robe of majesty and immortality? Why should they tell of one Mediator to be conquered, and the other to be victorious, but that the serpent was to bruise the heel of the seed of the woman, and the same seed to bruise his head? Thus, even while they endeavour to elude, they confirm our faith; and, as if they were still under the cloud, their error is but as a shadow to give a lustre to our truth. And so our first assertion remaineth firm; the Messias was to suffer.

Secondly, that Jesus, whom we believe to be Christ, did suffer, we shall not need to prove, because it is freely confessed by all his enemies. The Gentiles acknowledged it; the Jews triumphed at it. And we may well take that for granted, which

* 'ο Ιησους.
is so far from being denied, that it is objected. If hunger and thirst, if revilings and contempt, if sorrows and agonies, if stripes and buffettings, if condemnation and crucifixion, he suffered, Jesus suffered. If the infirmities of our nature, if the weight of our sins, if the malice of man, if the machinations of Satan, if the hand of God could make him suffer, our Saviour suffered. If the annals of times, if the writings of his apostles, if the death of his martyrs, if the confession of the Gentiles, if the scoffs of the Jews, be testimonies, Jesus suffered. Nor was there ever any which thought he did not really and truly suffer, but such as withal irrationally pretended he was not really and truly man.*

Thirdly, to come yet nearer to the particular acknowledgment of this truth, we shall further show that the promised Messias was not only engaged to suffer for us, but by a certain and express agreement betwixt him and the Father, the measure and manner of his sufferings were determined, in order to the redemption itself which was thereby to be wrought; and what was so resolved, was before his coming in the flesh revealed to the prophets, and written by them, in order to the reception of the Messias, and the acceptance of the benefits to be procured by his sufferings.

That what the Messias was to undergo for us was predeter-
SUFFERED. 281

mined and decreed, appeareth by the timely acknowledgment of the Church unto the Father: "Of a truth, against thy holy child Jesus, whom thou hast anointed, both Herod and Pontius Pilate, with the Gentiles, and the people of Israel, were gathered together, for to do whatsoever thy hand and thy counsel determined before to be done." (Acts iv. 27, 28.) For as when the two goats were presented before the Lord, that goat was to be offered for a sin-offering, upon which the lot of the Lord should fall; and that lot of the Lord was lift up on high in the hand of the high-priest, and then laid upon the head of the goat which was to die: (Lev. xvi. 8.) so the hand of God is said to have determined what should be done unto our Saviour, whose passion was typified by that sin-offering. And well may we say that the hand of God, as well as his counsel, determined his passion, because he was "delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God." (Acts ii. 23.)

And this determination of God's counsel was thus made upon a covenant or agreement between the Father and the Son, in which it was concluded by them both what he should suffer, what he should receive. For beside the covenant made by God and man, confirmed by the blood of Christ, we must consider and acknowledge another covenant from eternity, made by the Father with the Son. Which partly is expressed by the prophet, "If he shall make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days;" (Isa. liii. 10.) partly by the apostle, "Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me) to do thy will, O God." (Heb. x. 7.) In the condition of "making his soul an offering for sin," we see propounded whatsoever he suffered; in the acceptation, "Lo, I come to do thy will, O God," we see undertaken whatsoever was propounded. The determination therefore of our Saviour's passion was made by covenant of the Father who sent, and the Son who suffered.

And as the sufferings of the Messias were thus agreed on by consent, and determined by the counsel of God; so they were revealed by the Spirit of God unto the prophets, and by them delivered unto the Church; they were involved in the types, and acted in the sacrifices. Whether therefore we consider the prophecies spoken by God in the mouths of men, they clearly relate unto his sufferings by proper prediction; or whether we look upon the ceremonial performances, they exhibit the same by an active representation. St. Paul's apology was clear, that he said "none other things but those which the prophets and Moses did say should come, that Christ should suffer." (Acts xxvi. 22.) The prophets said in express terms, that the Messias, whom they foretold, should suffer: Moses said so in those ceremonies which were instituted by his ministry. When he caused the Passover to be slain, he said that
ARTICLE IV.

Shiloh was the Lamb slain before the foundations of the World. When he set the brazen serpent up in the wilderness, he said, the Son of man should be lifted up upon the cross. When he commanded all the sacrifices for sin, he said, without effusion of blood there was no remission, and therefore the Son of God must die for the sins of men. When he appointed Aaron to go into the Holy of Holies on the day of atonement, he said, Christ, our High-priest, should never enter through the veil into the highest heavens, to make expiation for us, but by his own blood. If then we look upon the fountain, the eternal counsel of the will of God; if we look upon the revelation of that counsel, either in express predictions, or ceremonial representations, we shall clearly see the truth of our third assertion, that the sufferings of the promised Messias were predetermined and foretold.

Now all these sufferings which were thus agreed, determined, and revealed, as belonging to the true Messias, were undergone by that Jesus of Nazareth, whom we believe to be the true Christ. Never was there any suffering type which he outwrote not, never prediction of any passion which he fulfilled not, never any expression of grief and sorrow which he felt not. When the appointed time of his death approached, he said to his apostles, “Behold, we go up to Jerusalem, and all things that are written by the prophets concerning the Son of man shall be accomplished.” (Luke xviii. 31.) When he delivered them the blessed sacrament, the commemoration of his death, he said, "Truly the Son of man goeth as it was determined." (Luke xxii. 22.)* After his resurrection, he chastised the dulness of his disciples, who were so overwhelmed with his passion, that they could not look back upon the antecedent predictions; saying unto them, “O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken! Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory!” (Luke xxiv. 25, 26.) After his ascension, St. Peter made this profession before the Jews, who had those prophecies, and saw his sufferings, “Those things which God before had shewed by the mouth of all his prophets, that Christ should suffer, he hath so fulfilled.” (Acts iii. 18.) Whatsoever therefore was determined by the counsel of God; whatsoever was revealed by the prophets concerning the sufferings of the Messias, was all fulfilled by that Jesus whom we believe to be, and worship as, the Christ. Which is the fourth and last assertion pronounced to express our Saviour’s passion in relation to his office.

Having considered him that suffered in his office, we are next to consider him in his person. And being in all this Article there is no person expressly named or described, we must look back upon the former, till we find his description and his name.

* κατὰ τὸ ἀφορμαῖν.
The Article immediately preceding leaves us in the same suspension; but for our satisfaction refers us to the former, where we find him named Jesus, and described the only begotten Son of God.

Now this Son of God we have already shewn to be therefore truly called the only-begotten, because he was from all eternity generated of the essence of the Father, and therefore is, as the eternal Son, so also the eternal God. Wherefore by the immediate coherence of the Articles, and necessary consequence of the Creed,* it plainly appeareth, that the eternal Son of God, God of God, very God of very God, suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified, dead and buried. For it was no other person who suffered under Pontius Pilate, than he who was born of the Virgin Mary; he who was born of the Virgin Mary, was no other person than he who was conceived by the Holy Ghost, he who was conceived by the Holy Ghost, was no other person than our Lord; and that our Lord no other than the only Son of God: therefore by the immediate coherence of the Articles it followeth, that the only Son of God, our Lord, suffered under Pontius Pilate. That Word which was in the beginning, which then was with God, and was God, in the fulness of time being made flesh, did suffer. For the princes of this world "crucified the Lord of glory;" (1 Cor. ii. 8.) and "God purchased his Church with his own blood." (Acts xx. 28.)† That person who was begotten of the Father before all worlds, and so was really the Lord of glory, and most truly God, took upon him the nature of man, and in that nature being still the same person which before he was, did suffer. When our Saviour fasted forty days, there was no other person hungry, than that Son of God who made the world: when he sat down weary by the well, there was no other person felt that thirst, but he who was eternally begotten of the Father, the fountain of the Deity: when he was buffeted and scourged, there was no other person sensible of those pains, than that eternal Word which before all worlds was impassible: when he was crucified and died, there was no other person which gave up the ghost, but the Son of him, and so of the same nature with him, "who only hath immortality." (1 Tim. vi. 16.) And thus we conclude our first consideration propounded, viz. Who it was that suffered: affirming that, in respect of his office, it was the Messiah; in respect of his person, it was God the Son.

But the perfect probation and illustration of this truth requireth first a view of the second particular propounded, How, or in what he suffered. For while we prove the person suffering to be God, we may seem to deny the passion, of which the per-

* This is that insepáribilis connexiio in the Creed, which Cassianus urgeth so much against Nestorius, De Incarn. i. vi.
† 'Dominum passum symboli tenet auctoritas, et Apostolus tradidit, dicens, Si enim cognovisset, nunquam Dominum gloriae crucifixissent.' Vigil. advers. Eu- tych. i. ii. § 8.
fection of the Godhead is incapable. The divine nature is of infinite and eternal happiness, never to be disturbed by the least degree of infelicity, and therefore subject to no sense of misery. Wherefore while we profess that the Son of God did suffer for us, we must so far explain our assertion, as to deny that the divine nature of our Saviour suffered. For being the divine nature of the Son is common to the Father and the Spirit, if that had been the subject of his passion, then must the Father and the Spirit have suffered. Wherefore as we ascribe the passion to the Son alone, so must we attribute it to that nature which is his alone, that is, the human. And then neither the Father nor the Spirit will appear to suffer, because neither the Father nor the Spirit, but the Son alone, is man, and so capable of suffering.

Whereas then the humanity of Christ consisteth of a soul and body, these were the proper subject of his passion; nor could he suffer any thing but in both or either of these two. For as “the Word was made flesh,” (John i. 14.) though the Word was never made* (as being in the beginning God), but the flesh, that is, the humanity, was made, and the Word assuming it became flesh: so saith St. Peter, “Christ suffered for us in the flesh.” (1 Pet. iv. 1.) in that nature of man which he took upon him: and so God the Son did suffer, not in that nature in which he was begotten of the Father before all worlds, but in that flesh which by his incarnation he became. For he was “put to death in the flesh, but quickened in the Spirit;” (1 Pet. iii. 18.)† suffered in the weakness of his humanity, but rose by the power of his Divinity. As he “was made of the seed of David, according to the flesh,” (Rom. i. 3.) in the language of St. Paul; so was he “put to death in the flesh,” in the language of St. Peter: and as he was “declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the Spirit of holiness;” (Rom. i. 4.) so was he “quickened by the Spirit.” Thus the proper subject and recipient of our Saviour’s passion, which he underwent for us, was that nature which he took from us.

Far be it therefore from us to think, that the Deity, which is immutable, could suffer; which only hath immortality, could die. The conjunction with humanity could put no imperfection upon the Divinity; nor can that infinite nature by any external acquisition be any way changed in its intrinsical and essential perfections.‡ If the bright rays of the sun are thought

---

* ο λόγος σάρξ ἐγένετο, ἐνα καὶ ὁ λόγος δέ εἶ φύσις, καὶ τάρκα ἐγέρ. ο λόγος ἐν ἑτ σάρκι καὶ τὴν Σάρκαν ἀνέβηστε, ἐν μορφῇ τῆς ἀνθρωπίνης μάχης τάφου καὶ ἑδον ἐστισθε. S. Athanas. de Ineun. Dom. l. i. c. 12.

† Adeo salva est utiusque proprietas substantiae, ut et Spiritus res suas egent in illo, id est, virtutes et opera et signa, et caro passiones suas functa sit, estiens sub Diáboleo, sitiens sub Samaritide, ëns Lazarum, anxia usque ad mortem, doneque et mortua est.” Tertull. advers. Per. c. 57. Clemens Alexandr. Pedag. l. i. c. 5.

to insinuate into the most noisome bodies without any pollution of themselves, how can that spiritual essence contract the least infirmity by any union with humanity?*  We must neither harbour so low an estimation of the divine nature, as to conceive it capable of any diminution; nor so mean esteem of the essence of the Word, as to imagine it subject to the sufferings of the flesh he took; nor yet so groundless an estimation of the great mystery of the incarnation, as to make the properties of one nature mix in confusion with another. These were the wild collections of the Arian and Apollinarian heretics,† whom the Church hath long since silenced by a sound and sober assertion, That all the sufferings of our Mediator were subjected in his human nature.

And now the only difficulty will consist in this, how we can reconcile the person suffering, with the subject of his passion; how we can say that God did suffer, when we profess the Godhead suffered not. But this seeming difficulty will admit an easy solution, if we consider the intimate conjunction of the divine and human nature, and their union in the person of the Son. For thereby those attributes which properly belong unto the one, are given to the other; and that upon good reason.‡ For being the same individual person is, by the conjunction of the nature of God and the nature of man, really and truly both God and man; it necessarily followeth, that it is true to say, God


† This danger is the rather to be unfolded, because it is not generally understood. The heresy of Arius, as it was condemned by the Council of Nice, is known to all. But that he made the nature of the Word to suffer in the flesh, is not so frequently or plainly delivered. This Phæadius (the first of the Latin Church who wrote against the Arians) charged them with: 'Duplicem hunc statum, non conjunctum sed confusum, volunti videri; ut etiam unius vestrum, id est Episola Potami, que ad Orientem et Occidentem transmissa est, qua asserit, carne et spiritu Christi coagulatis per suinquinem Marinum, et in unum corpus redactis, passibilum Deum factum. Hoc ideo, ne quis illum ex eo crederet, quem impassibilibus satis constat.' Lib. xxxiv. Arius, c. 7. And again: 'Non ergo est spiritus caro, nec caro spiritus, quod isti volunt egregii Doctores, ut factis sit scielicus Dominus et Deus noster ex hac substantiarum permutatione passibilis. Ideo autem passibilibus voluit dici, ne ex impassibili credatur.' Cap. 8. Mæten Æov

‡ Αριανοί φασίζουσι, σάρξ μένων ἑσπερινώς ἐναι, ἡν τοῦ Χριστοῦ, τῆς δὲ τοῦ πάθους κατανέυσται, εἰς τὴν ἐπάνω οὐκ ἔστιν. S. August. Lib. de Incarn. Dom. i. i. c. 13. Of this St. Hilary is to be understood: 'Sed eorum omnium hic sensus, ut opinentur, metum mortis in Dei Filium incidisse, qui asservant non de aternitate prolatum, neque de infinitate paterna substantiae existuisse, sed ex nullo illum qui omnibus creavit effectum; ut assumptus ex uillo sit, et corpus ex opere, et confirmatus ex tempore. Et ideo in eo doloris anxietas, ideo spiritus passio cum corporis passione.' Com. in Matt. c. 51. §. 5. Where clearly he argues against the Arians. The right understanding whereof, is the only true way to reconcile those harsh sayings of his, which so troubled the Master of the Sentences, and the whole Schools ever since.

† Per indissolubilitatem unitatem Verbi et carnis, omnia que carnis sunt adscribatur et Verbo, quomodo et quod Verbi sunt praeditur et carne.' Orig. in Ep. ad Rom. l. i. c. 1. Αν δὲ τὴν ἀρχήν ἀρχήν τῆς τοῦ πρόαρχον τοῦ σωμάτος καὶ τῆς προσεξο- δουλίας ἔκποντος, ἀνυψώθησαται τὰ ἁγιάτα ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τῆς ἀρχής τοῦ Θεού, καὶ τῆς ἐνια τῶν ἀρχῶν, κατονικαί Τούδιον, Greg. Nyss. Ep ad Theoph. Χρυσ. μεντόν εἴπαι, ὡς ἐν ἐς συν κοιντοί τὰ ἁγιάτα. Theodoret. Dial 3. c. 17.
is man, and as true, A man is God; because in this particular he which is man is God, and he which is God is man. Again being by reason of the incarnation it is proper to say, God is man, it followeth unavoidably, that whatsoever necessarily belongeth to the human nature, may be spoken of God; otherwise there would be a man to whom the nature of man did not belong, which were a contradiction. And being by virtue of the same incarnation it is also proper to say, A man is God, by the same necessity of consequence we must acknowledge, that all the essential attributes of the divine nature may truly be spoken of that man; otherwise there would be one truly and properly God, to whom the nature of God did not belong, which is a clear repugnancy. Again, if the properties of the divine nature may be truly attributed to that man which is God, then may those actions which flow from those properties, be attributed to the same. And being the properties of the human nature may be also attributed to the eternal Son of God, those actions or passions which did proceed from those properties, may be attributed to the same Son of God, or God the Son. Wherefore as God the Son is truly man, and as man truly possible and mortal; so God the Son did truly suffer, and did truly die. And this is the only true communication of properties.*

Not that the essential properties of one nature are really communicated to the other nature, as if the Divinity of Christ were possible and mortal, or his humanity of original omnipotence and omnipresence; but because the same God the Son was also the Son of man, he was at the same time both mortal and eternal: mortal as the Son of man, in respect of his humanity; eternal, as the Son of God, in respect of his Divinity. The sufferings, therefore, of the Messias were the sufferings of God the Son: not that they were the sufferings of his Deity, as of which that was incapable; but the sufferings of his humanity, as unto which that was inclinable. For although the human nature was conjoined to the divine, yet it suffered as much as if it had been alone; and the divine as little suffered, as if it had not been conjoined: because each kept their respective properties distinct, without the least confusion in their most intimate conjunction. From whence at last the person suffering is reconciled to the subject of his passion: for God the Son being not only God, but also man, suffered, though not in his Deity, by reason of which he is truly God; yet in his humanity, by which he who is truly God, is as truly man. And thus we conclude our two first disquisitions: Who it was that suffered; in respect of his office, the Messias, in respect of his person, God the Son: How it was he suffered; not in his Deity, which is impassible, but in his humanity, which he assumed, clothed with our infirmities.

* Called by the Schools ordinarily communicatio idiomatum, by the ancient Greek divines 'Ἀνθέσις, and sometimes 'Ἀντιμετάγασις.
SUFFERED.

287

Our next inquiry is, What this God the Son did suffer, as the Son of man; not in the latitude of all his sufferings, but so far as they are comprehended in this Article: which first prescindeth all the antecedent part, by the expression of time under Pontius Pilate, who was not governor of Judea long before our Saviour's baptism; and then takes off his concluding passion, by adding his crucifixion and his death. Looking then upon the sufferings of our Saviour in the time of his preaching the Gospel, and especially before his death, we shall best understand them, by considering them in relation to the subject or recipient of them. And being we have already shewed his passion was wholly subjected in his human nature, being that nature consisteth of two parts, the soul and body; it will be necessary to declare what he suffered in the body, what in the soul.

For the first, As we believe the Son of God took upon him the nature of man, of which the body is a part; so we acknowledge that he took a true and real body, so as to become flesh of our flesh, bone of our bone. This body of Christ, really and truly human, was also frail and mortal, as being accompanied with all those natural properties which necessarily flow from the condition of a frail and mortal body: and though now the same body, exalted above the highest heavens, by virtue of its glorification, be put beyond all possibility of passion; yet in the time of his humiliation, it was clothed with no such glorious perfection: but as it was subject unto, so it felt, weariness, hunger, and thirst. Nor was it only liable to those internal weaknesses and natural infirmities, but to all outward injuries and violent impressions. As all our corporal pain consists in that sense which ariseth from the solution of that continuity which is connatural to the parts of our body; so no parts of his sacred body were injuriouly violated by any outward impression, but he was truly and fully sensible of the pain arising from that violation. Deep was that sense, and grievous was that pain which those scourges produced, when "the ploughers ploughed upon his back, and made long their furrows:" (Psalm cxxix. 3.) the dilaceration of those nervous parts created a most sharp and dolorous sensation. The coronary thorns did not only express the scorn of the imposers, by that figure into which they were contrived, but did also pierce his tender and sacred temples to a multiplicity of pains, by their numerous acuminations. That spear directed by an impertinent malice, which opened his side, though it brought forth water and blood, caused no dolorous sensation, because the body was then dead; but the nails which pierced his hands and feet, made another kind of impression, while it was yet alive and highly sensible. Thus did the body of the Son of man truly suffer the bitterness of corporal pains and torments inflicted by violent external impressions.
As our Saviour took upon him both parts of the nature of man, so he suffered in them both, that he might be a Saviour of the whole.* In what sense the soul is capable of suffering, in that he was subject to animal passion. Evil apprehended to come tormented his soul with fear, which was as truly in him in respect of what he was to suffer, as hope in reference to the recompense of a reward to come after and for his sufferings. Evil apprehended at present tormented the same with sadness, sorrow, and anguish of mind. So that he was truly represented to us by the prophet, as "a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief;" (Isa. lii. 3.) and the proper subject of that grief he hath fully expressed, who alone felt it, saying unto his disciples, "My soul is exceeding sorrowful, even unto death." (Matt. xxvi. 38.)

We ought not, therefore, to question whether he suffered in his soul or no; but rather to endeavour to reach, if it were possible, the knowledge how far, and in what degree, he suffered; how bitter that grief, how great that sorrow and that anguish was. Which though we can never fully and exactly measure; yet we may infallibly know thus much, both from the expressions of the Spirit of God, and from the occasion of his sufferings, that the griefs and sorrows which he felt, and the anguish which he underwent, were most incomparably far beyond all sorrows of which any person here was sensible or capable.

The evangelists have in such language expressed his agony, as cannot but raise in us the highest admiration at the bitterness of that passion. "He began to be sorrowful," saith St. Matthew (xxvi. 37.) "He began to be sore amazed," saith St. Mark (xiv. 33.) "and to be very heavy," say both: (Ibid.) and yet these words in our translation come far short of the original expression,† which render him suddenly, upon a pre-

* * * Qui suscepit animam, suscepit animal passioneum.* S. Ambros. de Fide, I. ii. c. 3.

† The words in the original are three, λυπηθαι, ἐκπάθθηθαι, and ἀθανασία. Λυπηθαι the first is of a known and ordinary signification, but in this case it is to be raised to the highest degree of its possible significance, as appears by the words which follow, περιμεθεται τὸ γώμα. For, as the ancient grammarians observe, η περιμεθήσεται, ἀπὸ τοῦ γόματος, and again, ἡ περιμεθήσεται ἀπὸ τοῦ διστηρίου, κατά δόγμα υποθέσεται καὶ περιτίθεσθαι: and therefore περιμεθησθαι of itself must signify a man possessed with an excessive grief; as in Aeschylus Euménid. 161. περίμεθησθαι, κηρεῖ, that is, according to the scholiast, περατετοῦσθαι. But beside this Greek notation, here is to be observed a reference to the words of David, Psal. lxxv. 11: τινί περιμεθησθαι τὸ γώμα; τινὰ παθησθαι. So that it doth not only signify an excess of sorrow surrounding and encompassing the soul; but also such as brings a consternation and dejection of mind, bowing the soul under the pressure and burden of it. And if neither the notion of the word, nor the relation to that place in the Psalms, did express that sorrow, yet the following part of our Saviour's words would sufficiently evidence it, ἓν δὲ, ὅταν ἦν, it was a sorrow which like "the pangs of death compassed" him, and like "the pains of hell got hold upon" him, Psalm cxvi. 3. The second word used by St. Mark alone in λυπηθαι, which with the vulgar Latin is paure, but in the language of the Greeks bears a higher sense, ἀθανασία, signifies the ἔρρειξις, says Etymologus: and Hesychius, ἄθανασία. ἐρρειξις. ἔρρειξις. Gloss. Vetus. ἔρρειξις. stupor. Philoponos, preserved by Eustathius in M. Θάμας μὲ τὸ ἔρρειξις ἔρρειξις ἔρρειξις ἐκ τῆς λεμφᾶς. From whence the verb ἔρρειξις, in termination active, in signification passi
sent and immediate apprehension, possessed with fear, horror, and amazement, encompassed with grief, and overwhelmed with sorrow, pressed down with consternation and dejection of mind, tormented with anxiety and disquietude of spirit.

This he first expressed to his disciples, (Matt. xxvi. 38, 39. Mark xiv. 34, 35.) saying, "My soul is exceeding sorrowful; and lest they should not fully apprehend the excess, adding, "even unto death," as if the pangs of death had already encompassed him, and, as the Psalmist speaks, (xxvi. 3.) "the pains of hell had got hold upon him." He "went but a little farther" before he expressed the same to his Father, falling on his face and praying, even with "strong crying and tears, unto him that was able to save him from death." (Heb. v. 7.) Nor were his cries or tears sufficient evidences of his inward sufferings, nor could the sorrows of his breast be poured forth either at his lips or eyes; the innumerable pores of all his body must give a passage to more lively representations of the bitter anguish of his soul; and therefore while he "prayed more earnestly," in that agony "his sweat was as it were great drops of blood falling down to the ground." (Luke xxi. 44.) As the Psalmist had before declared, "I am poured out like water, and all my bones are out of joint: my heart is like wax, it is melted in the midst of my bowels." (Psal. xxii. 14.) The heart

percutem esse, in Homer II. A. 199. ἐσκαρσὼν ὑ' Ἀργείας, where it is the observation of Eustathius: Τὸ ἱερόποτον ἱεράτη- 
κὸν ἕκεντε ἁρπαὶ τινα ἀπὸ ἱερά περιβλέποντας γας, καὶ ἠδυναμοῦτο, τοῦτο γας καὶ τοῦ ἁπατητοῦ Ἑσυχίου, therefore is ἡμετάρχησιν, to be surprized with horror in the highest degree even unto stupification. Gloss. Vet. ἐκθείσα
τοὐρά, ὀρόσπηστο. The third word is Ἀπεράμωσις, Vulg. Lat. tardere in St. Mark; maratus esse in St. Matthew; but it hath yet a father sense. Ἀπεράμωσις, ἀπερίδοσις, ἀγώνια, says Hesychius. Ἀπεράμωσις, τῇ ὁδῷ ἀπεράμωσις. Suidas. It signifies therefore grief and anguish in excess, as appears also by the origination of it. For, as Eustathius observes: Τὸ ἄπεραμωσόν περιόττειν ἄνωθεν ἀπεράμωσις ἢ ἐν λοιπῇ ἢ σχῆν καὶ τὴς κόμης, ἢ ἐν λογίῳ, ἢ ἐν ἄγωνίᾳ, ἢ ἐν ἀπεράμωσις. Ilid. A. From ἄπεραμωσόν ἄπεραμωσόν, from ἀπέραμωσόν ἄπεραμωσόν. It hath therefore in it the signification of ἄπεραν or ἄπεραν, satiety, or extremity. From whence it is ordinarily so expounded, as if it contained the consequence of the greatest fear or sorrow, that is, anxiety of mind, disquietude, and restlessness. Απεράμωσις, ἄπεραν καὶ ἀπεράν, ἄμεθυστον, Etymol. As Antony is expressed by Plutarch, after the loss of 8,000 men, being in want of all things necessary for the rest: Κλεπάτας πείραι
μαίνει, καὶ ἑρωστυφαῖς ἀπεράσωσεν ἄριστ., c. 51. So where the 11leb. νεμυσί is by the LXX. translated ἐκπείρασε, by Symmachus it is rendered ἀπεράριστος, Eccles. vii. 16.
of our Saviour was as it were melted with fear and astonishment, and all the parts of his body at the same time inflamed with anguish and agony; well then might that melting produce a sweat, and that inflamed and rarified blood force a passage through the numerous pores.

And as the evangelists' expressions, so the occasion of the grief, will manifest the height and bitterness thereof: For God "laid on his own Son the iniquities of us all;" (Isa. liii. 6.) and as we are obliged to be sorry for our particular sins, so was he grieved for the sins of us all. If then we consider the perfection and latitude of his knowledge; he understood all the sins of men for which he suffered, all the evil and the guilt, all the offence against the majesty, and ingratitude against the goodness of God, which was contained in all those sins. If we look upon his absolute conformity to the will of God; he was inflamed with most ardent love, he was most zealous of his glory, and most studious to preserve that right which was so highly violated by those sins. If we look upon his relation to the sons of men; he loved them all far more than any did themselves, he knew those sins were of themselves sufficient to bring eternal destruction on their souls and bodies; he considered them whom he so much loved, as lying under the wrath of God, whom he so truly worshipped. If we reflect upon those graces which were without measure diffused through his soul, and caused him with the greatest habitual detestation to abhor all sin; if we consider all these circumstances, we cannot wonder at that grief and sorrow. For if the true contrition of one single sinner, bleeding under the sting of the Law only for his own iniquities, all which notwithstanding he knoweth not, cannot be performed without great bitterness of sorrow and remorse; what bounds can we set unto that grief, what measures to that anguish, which proceedeth from a full apprehension of all the transgressions of so many millions of sinners?

Add unto all these present apprehensions, the immediate hand of God pressing upon him all this load, laying on his shoulders at once a heap of all the sorrows which can happen unto any of the saints of God; that he, being "touched with the feeling of our infirmities," (Heb. ii. 17, 18.) might become a "merciful high-priest, able and willing to succour them that are tempted." (Heb. iv. 15.) Thus may we "behold and see if there be any sorrow like unto that sorrow which was done unto him, wherewith the Lord afflicted him in the day of his fierce anger." (Lam. i. 12.) And from hence we may and must conclude, that the Saviour of man, as he took the whole nature of man, so he suffered in whatsoever he took: in his body, by internal infirmities and external injuries; in his soul, by fears and sorrows, by unknown and inexpressible anguishs. Which shews us fully (if it can be shewn) the third particular profoundly, what our Saviour suffered.
That our Saviour did thus suffer, is most necessary to believe. First, that thereby we may be assured of the verity of his human nature. For if he were not man, then could not man be redeemed by him; and if that nature in which he appeared were not truly human, then could he not be truly man. But we may be well assured that he too on him our nature, when we see him subject unto our infirmities. We know the Godhead is of infinite perfection, and therefore is exalted far above all possibility of molestation. When therefore we see our Saviour truly suffer, we know his divine essence suffered not, and thence acknowledge the addition of his human nature, as the proper subject of his passion. And from hence we may infallibly conclude, surely that Mediator between God and man was truly man, as we are men, who when he fasted was an hungry, when he travelled was thirsty and weary as we are, who being grieved wept, being in an agony sweat, being scourged bled, and being crucified died.

Secondly, It was necessary Christ should suffer for the redemption of lapsed men, and their reconciliation unto God; which was not otherwise to be performed than by a plenary satisfaction to his will. He therefore was by all his sufferings made an expiation, atonement, and propitiation, for all our sins. For salvation is impossible unto sinners without remission of sin; and remission, in the decree of God, impossible without effusion of blood. Our redemption therefore could not be wrought but by the blood of the Redeemer, but by a Lamb slain, but by a suffering Saviour.

Thirdly, It behaved Christ to suffer, that he might purchase thereby eternal happiness in the heavens both for himself the head, and for the members of his body. “He drank of the brook in the way, therefore hath he lift up his head.” (Psal. cx. 7.) “Ought not Christ to suffer, and so to enter into his own glory?” (Luke xxiv. 26.) And doth he not by the same right by which he entered into it, confer that glory upon us? The recompense of the reward was set before him, and through an intuition of it he cheerfully underwent whatsoever was laid upon him. He must therefore necessarily suffer to obtain that happiness, who is therefore happy because he suffered.

Fourthly, It was necessary Christ should suffer, that we might be assured that he is truly affected with a most tender compassion of our afflictions. For this end was he subjected to misery, that he might become prone unto mercy; for this purpose was he made a sacrifice, that he might be a compassionate high-priest: and therefore was he most unmerciful to himself, that he might be most merciful unto us.

Fifthly, It was necessary the Son of man should suffer, thereby to shew us that we are to suffer, and to teach us how we are to suffer. For “if these things were done to the green tree, what shall be done to the dry?” (Luke xxiii. 31.) Nay,
ARTICLE IV.

if God spared not his natural, his eternal, his only-begotten Son; how shall he spare his adopted sons, who are best known to be children because they are chastised, and appear to be in his paternal affection because they lie under his fatherly correction? We are therefore heirs, only because co-heirs with Christ; and we shall be kings, only because we shall reign together with him. It is a certain and invariable consequence, "if Christ be risen, then shall we also rise;" and we must look for as strong a coherence in this, other, If Christ hath suffered, then must we expect to suffer. And as he taught the necessity of, so he left us the direction in, our sufferings. Great was the example of Job, but far short of absolute perfection: the pattern beyond all exception is alone our Saviour, who hath taught us in all our afflictions the exercise of admirable humility, perfect patience, and absolute submission unto the will of God. And now we may perceive the full importance of this part of the Article, and every Christian may thereby understand what he is to believe, and what he is conceived to profess, when he makes this confession of his faith, he suffered. For hereby every one is obliged to intend thus much: I am really persuaded within myself, and do make a sincere profession of this as a most necessary, certain, and invariable truth, that the only-begotten Son of God, begotten of the Father, and of the same essence with the Father, did for the redemption of mankind really and truly suffer; not in his Divinity, which was impossible, but in his humanity, which in the days of his humiliation was subject unto our infirmities: that as he is a perfect Redeemer of the whole man, so he was a complete sufferer in the whole; in his body, by such dolorous infirmities as arise internally from human frailties, and by such pains as are inflicted by external injuries; in his soul, by fearful apprehensions, by unknown sorrows, by anguish inexpressible. And in this latitude and propriety I believe our Saviour suffered.

Under Pontius Pilate.

After the substance of this part of the Article, consisting in our Saviour's passion, he suffered, followeth the circumstance of time, declared by the present governor, under Pontius Pilate. Which though the name of a stranger to the commonwealth of Israel, and the Church of Christ, is well preserved to eternal memory in the sacred articles of our Creed. For as the Son of God by his determinate counsel, was sent into the world to die in the fulness of time, so it concerns the Church to be assured of the time in which he died. And because the ancient custom of the world was, to make their computations by their governors, and refer their historical relations to the respective times of their government: therefore that we might be properly assured of the actions of our Saviour which he did, and of his
sufferings (that is, the actions which others did to him), the present governor is named in that form of speech which is proper to such historical or chronological narrations, when we affirm that he suffered under Pontius Pilate.*

And because he only suffered under him as the present governor, but also was arraigned and condemned by him as a judge; therefore it will be necessary for the illustration of the manner, and confirmation of the truth of our Saviour's sufferings, to declare what hath been left and delivered to our knowledge, both concerning his person and his office.

For the first, we find him described by two names: nor is any other name of his extant, although, according to the general custom of the Romans,† he should have three. The first of these two is Pontius,‡ the name descended to him from the

* 'Εντι Ποντίου Πιλάτῳ. Which words are capable of a double construction. First, as they are used by St. Paul, 1 Tim. vi. 14. 'Εντι, τοῦ μακροτεροῦντος ἐν Ποντίῳ Πιλάτῳ τοῦ καθήμενον Λαοδηγόν, "Who before Pontius Pilate warned, a good confession," that is, standing before him, as before a judge. As the same person, Matt. xvi. 14. And οὐκ έξείλλεν τότε ἐν τῷ θυμῷ, 'If this come to be tried before the procurator. Thus Festus pronounced it to St. Paul, Acts xxv. 9. Σίλ-λας κρίνεται ἐν ἑαυτῷ; and St. Paul answered in the same propriety of speech, ἐν τῷ θυμάτος Καίσαρας ἵστατες εἰμί. Thus Christ tells his apostles, Mark xiii. 9. Ἐν τῇ γενέσει καὶ βασιλείᾳ σταθήσεται. And in this sense ἐν ἑαυτῷ is often used by the Greeks. Secondly, ἐν Πιλάτῳ is under Pilate, that is, in the time of his government, when and while he was procurator of Judea; as ἐν ἀρχαίοις Ἀλτα καὶ Καί-άρα, Luke iii. 2. and ἐν ἀδύνατος ἐν ἀρ-χαίοις, Mark ii. 26. Which is also accorded to the custom and language of the Greeks, as: Κατακάωμες ἐν Δικαι-ύνοις ἤγεναι. Marv. Arundel. Οὕτω δέν ἐν ἐν τῷ λαομενίδην ἶσαν καταστάντων Τρώων, Plut. Epist. xii. ad Archytam. And ἐν τούτοις βασιλείασε, in this king's reign, is the common phrase of Pausanias. Thus the Athenians among their fine ἀρχαίοι had one who was called Εὐσπάρην, because his name was used for the denotation of that year γ and the phrase was usually, ἐν τῷ μήνα, or ἐν τῷ δίων ἁρχα-τις, as I find it thrice in one place. ο μήν ἃς (Ισμήσκετε) ἐν Σοτήριον, Πιλάτῳ δὲ ἐν ἀρχαίοις γίγνεσθαι, εὑρείς σου Περικλῆς ἐκα-λέσθης. Laer. in Plutarch. i. iii. init. In the same manner did the Lacedémonians make their historical accounts by their Ephori, and the Argivi by the priestesses of Juno: 'Εντι Χρυσίνθιον ἐν Ἀργε-ί τότε τεντύνουσα διὰ Μήνα ἔργυται ἐν Ισμήσκετι, καὶ Αἰνοίφος ἐρφαίν ἐν Στεπάτω, καὶ Πυθώδης ἐν τούς μηνὰς ἄρχοντες Αὐθαίρεις. Thucyd. l. ii. c. 2. And as the Greeks thus referred all actions to the times of these governors, so did the Jews under the Roman government, to the procurators of Judea; as appears by Josephus, who mentioning the first of that office, Coponius, presently relates the insurrection of Judas Galilæus in this manner: 'Εντι τοῦτον (Κατακάωμεν) τίς ἀνήκει τιλαλαίας, Ναζαράς δοκεῖ, εἰς ἀποῦτας ἠγεῖ τις Ἴηξυ-γίνετο, de Bell. Jud. l. ii. c. 12. Then names his successor Ambivius, ἐφ' ό ν Σα-λύκης Ισμήσκει καταλίθητα: after him Rufus, ἐφ' όν ξαδρεύεται Καίσαρας. Antip. Jud. l. xviii. c. 3. And in the same manner in the Creed, πατέντα ἐντι Ποντίου Πιλάτῳ, our Saviour suffered under Pontius Pilate, that is, at the time when he was procurator of Judea; as Ignatius folly: ἔν καθύ τῇ γενέσει Ποντίου Πιλάτων. Epist. ad Magnesianos, c. 11.

† Pausanias, speaking of the Romans, saith: Τρία ἐπίτε ἄνεμα, καὶ ἐν τῇ γύμνῃ ἐκατέρτων τόναν. Achila. c. 7. And although Diomedes and Plutarch have observed, that even among the Romans there were some διώκμα, yet the praeno-men was never omitted, as Priscian affirmed: 'Ex illo tempore consuetudo te-ruit, ut in uno Romano sit abusque praeno- men.' l. ii. p. 577. ed. Putsch.

‡ Pontius and Pilatus were his nomen and cognomen, in the same manner as Jul-ius and Caesar are described by Suetonius: 'Non Caesar et Bibulo, sed Julio et Ca-sare, Coss., actum scriberent, bis eundem præponentes, nomine atque cognomine.' l. i. c. 20. Thus without a praenomen or cognomen, he is only known to us by his nomen properly called, and his cognomen. The nature of which two is thus described by the ancients: 'Nomen proprium est gentilitium, id est, quod originem gentis et familia declarat, ut Portus, Cornelius; cognomen est quod usiuscujusque pro-
original of his family, which was very ancient; the second Pilatus, as a cognominal addition distinguishing from the rest descending from the same original.

He was by birth a Roman; by degree of the equestrian order, sent by Tiberius the emperor to be a governor of Judea. For about three-score years before our Saviour’s birth, the Jews by Pompey the Great were made tributary to the Romans. And although during the life of Hircanus the high-priest, the reign of Herod and his son Archelaus, the Roman state suffered the Jews to be ruled by their own laws and governors; yet when Archelaus was banished by Augustus, they received their governors from the Roman emperor, being made a part of the province of Syria, belonging to his care. In the life of Augustus there was a succession of three, Coponius, Ambivius, and Rufus. At the beginning of the reign of Tiberius, they were governed by Valerius Gracchus, and at his departure by Pontius Pilate.

The office which this Pilate bare was the Procuratorship of Judea, as is most evident out of the history both of the Romans, from which he received his authority, and of the Jews, the letter P is here taken for the Hebrew p, to which the Latin P more properly answers: ‘Secundum est, quod quod Hebraeos P litera non habetur, nec ulium nomen est quod hoc elementum somet: abusive ignar accipienda, quasi per F litteram scripta sint,’ col. 1479. Thus did they vainly strive to find an Hebrew original, and that such a one as should represent the conditions of Pilate; when these two names are nothing else but the Roman names and cognomen of that person.


† Tacitus speaking of the Christians: ‘Auctor nominis ejus Christus, qui Tiberio imperiante per procuratorem Pontium Pilatum supplicio affectus est.’ Annal. l. xv. c. 44. And Tertullian, most skilful of their laws and customs, speaks thus of our Saviour: ‘postremo oblivat Pontio Pilato, Syriam tum ex parte Romana procuravit.’ Apolog. c. 21. Whom St. Cyprian follows: ‘Hunc magistri eorum—Pontio Pilato, qui tum ex parte Romana Syriam procuravit, tradiderunt.’ De Idol. Univ. § 7. Thus also Josephus for the Jews: ‘Προερχεται δε των Ιουδαιων ειπτερος ενδε τω Παταλοι Πιλατος.’ De Bell. Jud. l. ii. c. 14 And Philo: ‘Παταλος των ειπτερων επιτραπεζους αποδεικνυος τως Ιουδαιως.’ De Virtut. et legat. ad Caes. p. 589. vol. ii. And therefore these words of St. Luke, c. iii. 1: ἐγεννησοντος Ποντίου Πιλάτου των Ιουδαίων, were properly translated by the old inter-
over whom he exercised his dominion. But what was the office of a Procurator in those times, though necessary for our present purpose, is not so easy to determine, because it was but newly introduced into the Roman government. For before the dominion of that city was changed from a commonwealth into an empire, there was no such public office in any of the provinces; and, particularly in Judea, none till after the banishment of Archelaus, some years after our Saviour's birth. When Augustus divided the provinces of the empire into two parts, one of which he kept for his own care, and left the other to the inspection of the senate; he sent, together with the President of each province, as the governor-in-chief of the province, a Procurator, whose office was to take an account of all the tri-preter, procurator Pontio Pilato Judaeam. Thus Lucas Dexter ut annum Christi 28. 'Pontius Pilatus procurator Judaeae a Tiberio mutuatur in Judaeam.' And Justin Martyr most properly: *Τίνες Προκοπολος; Ποιεῖται Πλάτων, τον γενομενον εις Ιουδαίαν ήτις χειρος Τιβερίου Καίσαρει επιτρέπεται. Apol. ii. p. 60. And again, speaking to the emperors, by whom the procurators were sent: και Πιλάτου το το εικότερον περι Ιουδαίας γενομενον επιτρέπεται. ibid. p. 78. And again: μετα τον ιουδαιων ίσως Χριστον, τον συναπαντος εις Ποντιον, τον γενομενον επιτρέπεται την Ιουδαιαν. Dial. cum Tryph. p. 247. As also Eusebius: Δυαδέχεται Ιουδαιω κατηγορος Ιουδαιως επιτρεπτος την Ιουδαιαν καθηκοντα Πλάτως. Hist. Eccl. i. i. c. 10. And St. Jerome's translation of his Chronicon: πιλατος προκοπολος διος και ιουδαιων γιατρος. Thus it appears that Pilate of the equestrian order, was properly procurator, as that office was ordinarily given to men of that order, as Tacitus testifies: 'Ca. Julius Agriculta utrumque avrum procuratorem Caesarum habuit, quae equester nobilitas est.' In vit. Jul. Agric. c. 4. Which is to be understood concerning the imperial provinces: for into those which were of the provinces of the people, the procurators sent by Caesar were of the Libertii. For the emperor sent into all the provinces his procurators, but with this difference, as Dio observes: Εις παντα ιουδαιω κατα έκεινον το τον διονυσους, τους μεν εις τον ιπτισιαν, τους δε εις των απολογιαν, περιποιησε. Hist. i. iii. c. 15. *The Roman procurator is ordinarily in Greek authors expressed by their *ἐπιτρέπτης, as the Gloss. Latino-Grec. Procurator. *ἐπιτρέπτης. But yet they are not of the same latitude in their use: *ἐπιτρέπτης comprehending the notion of tutor, as well as procurator. Hesych. *ἐπιτρέπτης, ο προ- στατικος χειρος, και εις τε της εισοδιας, και ισο- τας. Gloss. Vet. *ἐπιτρέπτης, procurator, in- tor. *ἐπιτρέπτης therefore was used by the Greeks in both notions, whereof procurator of the Latins is but one. And in the language of the Romans, he is a procurator which undertakes to manage the business of another man. 'Procurator si negotium suscipit,' says Asconius in Dion, and Sex. Pompeius, 'Procurator absens nomine actor fit;' he to whom the care of another man's estate or affairs was committed. Gloss. Vet. *ἐστολη, Commissio, et *ἐπιστολη, procurator. In correspondence to these procurators of the affairs and estates of private persons, there were made such as did take care in every province of the imperial revenue; who, in respect of the person whom they served, were called Procuratores Caesaris, or Augustales; in respect of the countries where they served, were termed Procuratores Provinciales. Their office is best described by Dio, Hist. i. liii. c. 15. Τοις ἐπιτρέπτεσιν, ουτως γαρ τας την κοινας περιτοις, κελευσαν και προτεστατικα σειτον αναλυοντος, ηνιαξαν. We call, says he, these *ἐπιστολει, that is, Procuratores, which receive the public revenues, and dispose of them according to the commands received from the emperor. For they acted in his name, and what was done by them was accounted as done by the emperor himself. 'Quae acta dextra sunt a Procuratoribus Caesaris, sic ab eo comprobari ac sit a Caesar est' Ulpian. i. i. ff. As we read in Tacitus of the emperor Claudius: 'Scripsit audita vox Principis, parum vium rerum habendum a Procuratoribus suis judicaturn, ac si ipse statuisset.' Annal. i. xii. c. 60. And in Suetonius: 'Ut rata essent que Procuratores sui in judicando statuere cœr, a Senatu precario exigit.' Claud. Cæs. c. 12. The proper office therefore of the provincial procurator was, to receive the imperial revenues, and dispose of it as the emperor commanded, and to all intents and purposes to do such things as were necessary thereunto, with such authority, as if the emperor himself had done them.
bute, and whatsoever was due to the emperor, and to order and dispose of the same for his advantage. Neither was there, at the first institution of this office, any other act belonging properly to their jurisdiction, but such a care and disposal of the imperial revenue: which they exercised as inferior and subordinate to the President, always supreme provincial officer.

Now Judea being made part of the province of Syria, and consequently under the care of the President of that province, according to this institution, a particular Procurator was assigned unto it, for the disposing the emperor's revenue. And because the nation of the Jews were always suspected of a rebellious disposition against the Roman state, and the President of Syria, who had the power of the sword, was forced to attend upon the other parts of the province; therefore the Procurator of Judea was furnished with power of life and death,* and so administered all the power of the President, which was, as to the Jews, supreme. Which is very observable, as an eminent act of the providence of God, by which the full power of

* This appeareth by Coponius, the first proper procurator of Judea, who was brought in by Quirinus Præses of Syria, when he came to dispose of the goods of Archelaus, and to reduce Judea into the form of a province, and adjoin it to Syria. Of this Coponius Josephus writeth after this manner: Καταικα τε αυτώ (Κυρίως) ευγνωμονιασαι, γράμματα τοιαύτα έγραψαι, ἐξοφλας μισάω τοίς πλαίσιον τιτυλικό, πάσαν έξωθικήν ἵνα έν τη ακροατηρία των ἑδρανων τοιαύταις έκκεινοι τη λαυνή. And of the equestrian order, he was sent with Quirinius to govern the Jews with the supreme power. Ant. l. xvi. c. 1. And yet more expressly, as to the time, occasion, and extent, of his power: Ἐκ δε Αρχαίων Χρόνων το αυτοκράτορ άπαγορεύεται, ἐπιτρέπει τις ἑκκλησίαις παρά Συρίαν τόξον. Kατακάθινας τήματα την παρά τοις κτισίμοις ένσωσαι, μείζη των κτισιών λαβάντων. And that from this same order, he was furnished with the same power, as can be seen in the case of Lucilius Capito, procurator of Asia Minor, who was called in question for exceeding his power, and deserted therein by Tiberius: Προ- curator Asia Lucilius Capito, accusante provincia, causam dixit magna cum asseveratione Principis, non se jus nisi in servitio et pecunia familiare dedisse, Quod si vim Pretoriam usurpsset, manusque militum usus foret, spreta in eo mandata sua, audient socios. Tacit. Annal. l. iv. c. 15. And Dio upon the said example observes in general, that the procurators had no such power: Οδ γάρ ἔπροσ τούτι τις τής αυτοκρατορίας έχοντες διε- μεθη σεπέν ολίγων ποιόν, ἢ τους ταυταμίκροις προ- εδρους ἐξαπλίγαν, καὶ πρετό των διαφόρων ἐν τη διάρκεια καὶ κατά τούς κάτω άρχοντας, τοις δεξιαις διοίκησαν, l. vii. c. 11. But although the ordinary procurators had no other power, but to dispose of the revenue, and determine private causes; yet he which was vice Praesidis, had the power of the Praes: and such a procurator was Pontius Pilate in Judea, as the others who preceded him also were.
judicature in Judea was left in the hands of the resident Procurator.

For by this means it came to pass that Christ, who by the determinate counsel of God was to die, and by the prediction of the prophets was to suffer in a manner not prescribed by the law of Moses, should be delivered up to a foreign power, and so suffer death after the customs of that nation to whose power he was delivered. The malice of the obstinate Jews was high to accuse and prosecute him, but the power of the Jews was not so high as judicially to condemn him. For although the chief priests, and the elders, and the scribes, "condemned him to be guilty of death;" (Mark xiv. 64.) yet they could not condemn him to die, or pronounce the sentence of death upon him, "but delivered him up unto Pilate:" and when he refusing, said unto them, "Take ye him, and judge him according to your law," they immediately returned, "It is not lawful for us to put any man to death." (John xviii. 30, 31.) The power of life and death was not in any court of the Jews, but in the Roman governor alone, as supreme; and therefore they answered him, it was "not lawful:"* not in respect of the law of Moses, which gave them both sufficient power and absolute command to punish divers offenders with death; but in relation to the Roman empire, which had taken all that dominion from them. Forty years before the destruction of Jerusalem, the Jews themselves acknowledge that they lost this power; which is sufficient to shew that they had it not when our Saviour suffered: and it is as true that they lost it twenty years before, at the relegation of Archelans, and the coming of Coponius the Procurator with full power of life and death. Wherefore our Saviour was delivered unto Pilate, as the supreme judge over the nation of the Jews, that he might pronounce the sentence of death upon him.

But how this judge could be persuaded to an act of so much injustice and impiety, is not yet easy to be seen. The numerous controversies of the religion of the Jews did not concern the Roman governors, nor were they moved with the frequent quarrels arising from the different sects. Pilate knew well "it was for envy that the chief priests delivered him;" (Matt.

---

*I say, therefore, the Jews answered, that it was not lawful for them to put any man to death, because that power was taken out of their hands. For although St. Augustin thinks they thought it not lawful in respect of the Passover: 'Intelligendum est eos dixisse, non sibi licere interficere quenquam, propter dies festi sanctitatem, quem celebrare jam coeperant.' Tract. 14 in Ioum. and St. Cyril be of the same opinion; yet others of the ancients deliver the true cause why they apply themselves to Pilate, to be their want of power: as Ammonius most expressly, Cathe. Patr. in S. Ioum. c. xviii. p. 427.: 'Τόσον ένεκεν αυτόν εἰκ ανέλιθ, ἀλλά ἐπὶ τίνι Πιλάτου ἔγενσιν; μέλετα μὲν τό σιλιά τῆς ἀρχῆς αὐτῶν καὶ τῆς ἔξοχίας ἐπετειμεῖτο, λευτὼν ἐπί 'Ραμαίσους τόν πρεσβύταν κυριακόν, and upon these words in St. John, ibid. p. 428.: 'Εκ ἑπιτειμίης τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἑκάτ' γὰρ ἐπί 'Ραμαίσους, ἑκάτ' τούτο. So Theophylact: 'Ἀρχεῖαν αὐτὸν ἐξὶ τῷ πρεσβύτῳ, εἰκ γὰρ ἐκ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐξωστίαν ανέλιθ, θέτει τον πρεσβύταν ἐπὶ ἐκατ' ἐκατόν κυριακόν. Com. in Ioum. c. 18. And before him St. Chrysostom.
ARTICLE IV.

xxvii. 18.) and when "he had examined him, he found no fault touching those things whereof they accused him." (Luke xxiii. 14.) Three times did he challenge the nation of the Jews, "Why? what evil hath he done?" Three times did he make that clear profession, "I have found no cause of death in him." (Ibid. 22.) His own wife, admonished in a dream, "sent unto him, saying, Have thou nothing to do with that just man:"

(Matt. xxvii. 19.) and when he heard that "he made himself the Son of God, he was more afraid:" (John xix. 7, 8.) and yet notwithstanding these apprehensions and professions, he condemned and crucified him.

Here we must look upon the nature and disposition of Pilate, which inclined and betrayed him to so foul an act. He was a man of a high, rough, untractable, and irreconcilable spirit,* as he is described by the Jews, and appeared from the beginning of his government, when he brought the bucklers stamped with the pictures of Caesar into Jerusalem (which was an abomination to the Jews), and could neither be moved by the blood of many, nor persuaded by the most humble applications and submissive entreaties of the whole nation, to remove them, till he received a sharp reproof and severe command from the emperor Tiberius. After that, he seized on the Corban, that sacred treasury, and spent it upon an aqueduct: nor could all their religious and importunate petitions divert his intentions, but his resolution went through their blood to bring in water. When the Galileans came up to Jerusalem, to worship God at his own Temple, "he mingled their blood with their sacrifices." (Luke xiii. 1.) Add to this untractable and irreconcilable spirit, by which he had so often vexated the Jews, an avaricious and rapacious disposition, which prompted him as much to please them; and we may easily perceive what moved him to condemn that person to death whom he declared innocent. The evangelist telleth us that "Pilate, willing to content the people, released Barabbas unto them, and delivered Jesus to be crucified." (Mark xv. 15.) They accused him at Rome, for all the insolences and rapines which he had committed, and by this act he thought to pacify them.†

It was thus necessary to express the person under whom our Saviour suffered; first, That we might for ever be assured of the time in which he suffered.‡ The enemies of Christianity


† For that which is observed by Philo upon the dedication of the shields at the first entrance into his government, must needs be much more true at this time of our Saviour's passion, when he had committed so many insolences, viz. that he feared the Jews should complain of him to Tiberius: Τὸ τελευταῖον τοῦτο μάλιστα αὐτῶν ἐξεταίρησε, καταδίκασαν μὲ τὴν ἑπταεξάδεκα καὶ τῆς ἄλλης αὐτῶν ἐπιτροπῆς ἐξεταίρησε τὰς ὑδάτες, τὰς ἁρπαγές, τὰς αἰ-κιας, τὰς ἔποικις, τοὺς ἄκριτους καὶ ἐπαλ-λάσας φίλους, τὸν ἀνθιστὸν καὶ ἀβαλλάσας ἄνεμον διεκθέθησε. De Virtut. et Legat. ad Caium, p. 590. vol. ii.

‡ Cunctissim qui Symbolum tradiderunt, etiam tempus quo hac sub Pontio
began first to unsettle the time of his passion, that thereby they might at last deny the passion itself; and the rest of their falsehood was detected by the discovery of their false chronology.* Some fixed it to the seventh year of the reign of Tiberius,† whereas it is certain Pontius Pilate was not then Procurator in Judea; and as certain that our Saviour was baptized eight years after, "in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar." (Luke iii. 1.) Some of the Jews, lest the destruction of Jerusalem might seem to follow upon, and for, our Saviour's crucifixion, have removed it near threescore years more backward yet, placing his death in the beginning of Herod's reign,‡ who was not born till towards the death of the same king. Others have removed it further yet near twenty years,§ and so vainly tell us how he died under Aristobulus, above fifty years before his birth in Bethlehem. This they do teach their proselytes, to this end, that they may not believe so much as the least historical part of the blessed evangelists. As, therefore, they deny the time of our Saviour's passion, in design to destroy his doctrine; so, that we might establish the substance of the Gospel depending on his death, it was necessary we should retain a perfect remembrance of the time in


* So Eusebius detected some of those which lived not long before him: Οἰκίον σαφῶς ἀποκαλύπτει τὸ πλαίσιον τῶν κατὰ τοῦ Εὐαγγ. ἡμῶν ὑπομνήματα χρῆς καὶ πρὸς διαδίκησιν, in eis οὗτος αὐτὸς ἐστὶς πανταμεικτὸς χρόνος τῶν πεπλακότων ἀπέλευσεν τὸ φάσον." Hist. Eccles. l. i. c. 9.

† Εἵν τις τεταρτής δ' οὐν πατίας Τιβερίου, ἡ γένοντος τοὺς ἱδέας τῆς βεβαίως αὐτοῦ, τὰ ἀτεί τοῦ συντεχνίου αὐτοῦ πάθος τολμησαίτοι σερέσσῃ, καὶ δὴ ἐνικῶντας χρῶν καὶ 51 προτέστα ἀπὸ τῆς Ἰουδαῖες Πιλάτου. Euseb. Eccl. Hist. l. i. c. 9.

‡ Divers of the Jews place the passion of Christ in the year of their account 3724, which is sixty-nine years before our common account of the year in which he suffered. This invention of their own, grounded upon no foundation, and backed with not so much as the least probability, they deliver as a tradition among them, continued in this rhyme,

Not that they thought him taken in one year, and crucified in another; but these two unequal numbers signify the same year, the lesser number being a period of years, which, seven times numbered, equalize the greater. So that their meaning is, that after seven periods, consisting of 532 years, in the year of the world 3724, Jesus of Nazareth was crucified.

§ Others of the Jews pretend another account, viz. that Jesus was born in the year 3671, which was the fourth of Janneus, and crucified in the year 3707, which was the third of Aristobulus; making him the disciple of R. Joseph the son of Perachiah, according to that usual phrase of theirs, Οἴκος ὡς καὶ ἔφη σύμφωνα μετὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ τῆς βασιλείας Ἰούδα. Vide Sepher Ichthus.
which he died. Nor need we be ashamed that the Christian religion, which we profess, should have so known an Epocha, and so late an original. Christ came not into the world in the beginning of it, but in “the fulness of time.” (Gal. iv. 4.)

Secondly, It was thought necessary to include the name of Pilate in our Creed, as of one who gave a most powerful external testimony to the certainty of our Saviour’s death, and the innocence of his life.* He did not only profess, to the condemnation of the Jews, that he found nothing worthy of death in Christ; but left the same written to the Gentiles of the Roman empire. Two ways he is related to have given most ample testimony to the truth: first, By an express written to Tiberius,† and by him presented to the senate; secondly, By records written in tables, of all things of moment which were acted in his government.‡

* Nota quod in Pilato et axore ejus, pustum Dominum confitentibus, Gentilis populi testimonium est,' S. Hier. in Matt. xxvii.
† That Pontius Pilate wrote unto Tiberius of the death and resurrection of our Saviour, is testified by Tertullian, who was best acquainted with the Roman history: ‘Ex omnibus super Christo Pilatus et ipse jam pro sua conscientia Christianus, Caesarum Tiberio renunclavit.’ Apol. c. 21. And again: ‘Tiberius ergo, suprus tempore nomen Christianum in seculum intuivit, annonciavit sibi ex Syria Palestina, quae veritatem ilius (Christi) divinitatis prætulrat, detulit ad Senatum cum prærogativa sufragii sui.’ Ibid. c. 5. This is related by Eusebius out of Tertullian, in his Ecclesiastical History, l. ii. c. 2, and referred to the two-and-twentieth year of Tiberius in his Chron. ‘Pilato de Christianorum dogmate ad Tiberium referente, Tiberius redit ad Senatum, ut inter cætera sacra recipere put.’ The authority of this Express is grounded on the great reputation of Tertullian (as is observed also by the author of the Chronicon Alexandrinum), who concludes the relation with these words, ‘Æstrem Tertullianus δὲ Ρωμαῖος, and the general custom by which all the governors of the provinces did give account unto the emperor of all such passas as were most remarkable: Παλαιοὶ καταμαθηταὶ Ἐως τῶν τῶν λόγων ἐκρουσον τὰ παρὰ εφετὶ καταστροφαὶ τὰ τῶν Βασιλείων αὐχίν ἐπικρατοῦση σημαίνει, καὶ μὲν τῷ αὐτῷ διεδεχόμενῳ τῶν γενεαλ. Euseb. Eccl. Hist. l. ii. c. 2.
‡ The ancient Romans were desirous to preserve the memory of all remarkable passas which happened in the city: and this was done either in their Acta Senatus, or Acta divinae populi; which were diligently made and kept at Rome. In the same manner, the governors in the provinces took care that all things worthy of remark should be written in public tables, and preserved as the Acta in their government. And agreeably to this custom, Pontius Pilate kept the memoirs of the Jewish affairs, which were therefore called Acta Pilati, in which an account was given of our blessed Saviour; and the primitive Christians did appeal unto them in their disputes with the Gentiles, as to a most undoubted testimony. Justin Martyr urged them even unto the Roman emperors: Καὶ ταύτα ὑπὲρ χριστοῦ, δοθήκη μαζέων εἰς τῶν ἐπὶ Πιλᾶτου Πλατῶν γενομένων’ Acta, Apost. ii. p. 76. And again: ‘Ότι δεῦτε ταύτα ἔποιησεν, εἰς τῶν ἐπὶ Πιλᾶτου Πλατῶν γενομένων’ Acta maior, Did. p. 81. And in the differences between the Christians, they were cited by both parties. As the Tensesdecettæ alleth them for their custom of the observance of Easter, as Epiphanius testified of them: ‘Από τῶν Ἀκίνθιον Πιλᾶτου αὐχίν τὴν ἐκκλησίαν ευκρίνεια, εἰς όπις ἔφυκε, τῇ πρώτῃ μαζεύόντα Ἀπολλωνίαν τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ πεποιηθέν. Ibid. 50. §. 1. And Epiphanius urgeth the same Acta against them, but according to other copies: ‘Ετει δὲ εὐφράντες αὐτογραφα ἐν τῶν (lege Ἀκίνθιον) Πιλᾶτου, ἐν οἷς στρατεύει, πρὸ δικαίηται καλαίων Ἀπολλωνίαν τῷ παῖδες γεγονέναι. Ibid. Though the author of the eighth Polynomial in Pasch, under the name of St. Chrysostom, agreeth in this reading with the Tensesdecettæ: οἱ μὲν χριστὸς καθ ἐν ἐνία κατ’ ἑκατον ἄρχεται ἡ ἁγία τούτοις τοις ἁγίοις μεταξύ τῶν Πιλᾶτου προχώτα καὶ τὴν προσευχὴν παρὰ τοὺς Πασχάδος. Ibid. Theorizinat γινον τῇ τῇ πρὸ δικαίηται καλαίων Ἀπολλωνίαν ἐπεβόλα ἔν τῷ tom. 5. p. 942, these were also mentioned in the Acta S. Terrachi, Proh et Antonicie, c. 9. ‘Praesas dixit, Iuicque, non scis, quem invocas, Christum, hominem quodem fusse factum, sub cusa
Thirdly, It behoved us to take notice of the Roman governor in the expression of our Saviour’s passion, that thereby we might understand how it came to pass that Christ should suffer according to the Scriptures. The prophets had foretold his death, but after such a manner as was not to be performed by the Jews, according to whose law and custom, no man among them ever so died. Being then so great a prophet could not die but in Jerusalem, being the death he was to suffer was not agreeable to the laws and customs of the Jews; it was necessary a Roman governor should condemn him, that so the counsel of the will of God might be fulfilled, by the malice of the one, and the customs of the other.

And now the advantage of this circumstance is discovered, every one may express the importance of it in this manner: I am fully persuaded of this truth as beyond all possibility of contradiction, that in “the fulness of time” God sent his Son; and that the eternal Son of God, so sent by him, did suffer for the sins of men, after the fifteenth year of Tiberius the Roman emperor, and before his death, in the time of Pontius Pilate the Caesarean Procurator of Judea; who, to please the nation of the Jews, did condemn him whom he pronounced innocent, and delivered him, according to the custom of that empire, and in order to the fulfilling of the prophecies, to die a painful and shameful death upon the cross. And thus I believe in Christ that suffered under Pontius Pilate.

Was Crucified.

From the general consideration of our Saviour’s passion we proceed to the most remarkable particular, his crucifixion, standing between his passion, which it concludes, and his death, which it introduceth. For the explication whereof, it will be necessary, at first, To prove that the promised Messias was to be crucified, that he which was designed to die for our sins was to suffer on the cross; secondly, To shew that our Jesus, whom we worship, was certainly and truly crucified, and did suffer whatsoever was foretold, upon the cross; thirdly, To discover what is the nature of crucifixion, what peculiarities of suffering are contained in dying on the cross.

That the Messias was to be crucified, appeareth both by types which did apparently foreshew it, and by the prophecies which did plainly foretell it. For, though all those representations and predictions which the forward zeal of some ancient
fathers gathered out of the Law and the Prophets,* cannot be
said to signify so much; yet in many types was the crucifixion
of Christ represented, and by some prophecies foretold. This
was the true and unremovable "stumbling-block to the Jews," nor
could they ever be brought to confess the Messiah should
die that death upon a tree to which the curse of the Law be-
longed:† and yet we need no other oracles than such as are
committed to those Jews, to prove that Christ was so to suffer.

A clearer type can scarce be conceived of the Saviour of

* The ancient fathers, following the
steps of the apostles, to prove all the par-
ticulars of our Saviour's death out of the
Old Testament, have made use of those
types and prophecies which did really and
truly foreshow it; but together with them,
partly out of their own conceptions, partly
out of too much credit to the translations,
have urged those places which the Jews
may most easily evade, and we can pro-
duce but with small or no pretence. As
for the extending of the hands of Moses,
they conceive it to be a perfect type;
and Barnabas, Epist. c. 12. tells us, that
the Spirit commanded Moses, that he
should make the similitude of a cross:
λύγι ταίς την καρδίαν Μαχτ το πνεύμα, ὑνια
πεινάσαν τόπον σταυροῦ καὶ τοῦ ἀβαλλόντος πά-
σερμα, but the text assures us no more, than
that Moses held up his hands, and we can
not have any similitude of a cross. And
when both were lifted up by Aaron and
Hun, the representation is not certain.
And yet, after Barnabas, Justin tells us,
that Moses represented the cross, τὰς
χεῖρας ἐκτείνεται εἰς πέτασσα: Dist. c. Tragph.
p. 517. and Tertullian calls it habitation
Crucis, adv. Marciun. I. iii. c. 13. In
the same manner with the strange Indian
statue, which is described by Bardanes,
αι άνάλογοι έστενοι, έχουσα τας χειρας εγκα
τείνος, in το τσαφρος. Porphyri de Signe.
With less probability did they gather both
the name of Jesus, and the cross of Christ,
from the three hundred and eighteen
servants of Abraham. Ιτα δέκα, "Ητα
δέκα, ἤχει τισάν, ἐπι β τοιχωρίᾳ ἐν τῷ
τοπίῳ ἦχεν ταν χειρα, λείγια γω τω τρικοστοι
διελθοῦσιν καὶ οἰ το τσαφρος. Ἐπισ.
Buru c. 9. As if I II stood for Jesus,
and T for the cross. And yet Clemens
Alex. follows him: Φασών οὖν εἶναι το
μέν Κυριακος σημαίνει τόσα καθα το σχήμα
τρικοστοῦ σταυροῦ, τó ίτα εκ το
τοσά τούσα τοιχωρία σημαίνει το σταυρόν. Stromat.
l. vi. c. 11. As also St. Ambrose: * Nam
tab Abraham 313 duxit ad bellum, et ex
numerus trophæis hostibus reportavit,
signoque Dominica crucis et nominis," &c.
Prot. ad I. i. de Fide, §. 3. * Eos ad-
sciscit quos dignos numero fidelium judi-
cavit, qui in Domini nostri Jesu Christi
Passione credentem. Trecentos enim T
Greaca litera significant; decem et octo
autem summum I II exprimit nomen. Id.
de Abrab. l. i. c. 3. §. 15. And St. Au-
gustin of another three hundred: * Qua-
rum numerus, qua trecenti erant, signum
insignit Crucis, proper literam I TGRA-
cam, quasitie numerus significat. Quaest.
in Hept. I. vii. & 37. And Clemens Alex-
andrinus again, of the three hundred
cubits in the Ark: ἔστε δη τοις τρικοστοῖς
πίναχις συμβόλω τον κυριακον σημαίνων λέγων.
Strum. l. i. c. 11. * Sed sicut ille non
multitudine nec virtute legionum, sed jam
tum in Sacratum Crucis, cujus figura
per literam Gracan T numero trecento-
rum exprimitur, adversarios principes de-
bellavit: cujus mystetril virtute trecentis
in longum texta cubitis supradit Arca
diluvium, ut nunc Ecclesia hoc seculum
xxiv. §. 23. As unlikely a type did they
make Jacob's ladder. * Ego puto Crucem
Salvatoris illam esse scalam quam Jacob
vidit." S. Hieron. Brevar. in Psal. 91.
* Scala usque ad cedum attingens Crucis
figuram habuit; Domini innixus scala,
Christus crucifixus ostenditur." S. August.
Serm. de Temp. 79. al. 11. §. 6. These,
and many others, by the writers of the
succeeding ages, were produced out of
the Old Testament as types of the cross,
and may in some sense be applied to it
being otherwise proved, but prove it
not.

† Trypho the Jew, in the dialogue with
Justin Martyr, when he had confessed
many of the Christian doctrines, would by
no means be brought to this: Επί δη και
έμαισείτως σταυρόν διείσιν του Χριστού,
μή λέγων ἐν τῷ τρικοστῷ τισάνι οὐκέτι
προς τινὰ ἀκροαί νυνίσθείσιν εἰς τον
σταυρὸν. But afterwards granting his passion, urged
him to prove his crucifixion: Ημαίς γας
οὐδὲν ἐν τούτω διείσιν του σταυροῦ. Ibi.
So Tertullian describes the Jews: * Negantes
passionem Crucem in Christum predicatam,
et argumentantes insuper non esse credendum ut ad id genus mortis exposu-
erit Deus Filium surnm, quod ipse dixit,
Maledictus omnis homo qui peperdit in
the world, in whom all the nations of the earth were to be blessed, than Isaac was: nor can God the Father, who gave his only-begotten Son, be better expressed than by that patriarch in his readiness to sacrifice his son, "his only son Isaac, whom he loved." (Gen. xxii. 2.) Now when that grand act of obedience was to be performed, we find Isaac walking to the mountain of Moriah with the wood on his shoulders, and saying, "Here is the wood, but where is the sacrifice?" while in the command of God, and the intention and resolution of Abraham, Isaac is the sacrifice, who bears the wood. And the Christ, who was to be the most perfect sacrifice, the person in whom all nations were perfectly to be blessed, could die no other death in which the wood was to be carried; and being to die upon the cross, was, by the formal custom used in that kind of death, certainly to carry it.* Therefore Isaac bearing the wood, did signify Christ bearing the cross.†

When the fiery serpents bit the Israelites, and "much people died," Moses, by the command of God, "made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole; and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived." (Numb. xx. 9.) Now if there were no expresser promise of the Messias, than the "Seed of the woman, which should bruise the serpent’s head;" (Gen. iii. 15.) if he were to perform that promise by the virtue of his death; if no death could be so perfectly represented by the hanging on the pole, as that of crucifixion; then was that manifestly foretold which Christ himself informed Nicodemus, "As Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up." (John iii. 14.)

The paschal lamb did plainly typify that Lamb of God that taketh away the sins of the world; and the preparing of it did not only represent the cross,§ but the command or ordinance

* This custom is very considerable as to the explication of this type; and is to be therefore confirmed by the testimonies of the ancients, which are most express. バστάξιον τω των δαίμων χειρον κακούργη μέν ἰδοὺ σταυρόν αὐτῷ εμαυμάτι: οὐκέτας γὰρ ὁ σταυρὸς δανάτα, καὶ νό μελλων πεπέλευθαι πρίτνοναυτάν Βαστάξιον. Artemid. Onomast. l. ii. c. 0.1. Τό μὲν σάματι τῶν κολαζώμενων ἐκείστε τῶν κακούργην ἀκραθεί τὸ γίγνοντι σταυρόν. Plutarch. de seu Numinis Vindicta. c. 9. So these not long after our Saviour’s death. And much before it, Plautus in Carboarnia, "Puthbulum ferat per urbem, deinde affigatur Crucis." † This is not only the observation of the Christians, but the Jews themselves have referred this type unto that custom: for upon Gen. xxi. 6. "And Abraham took the wood of the burnt-offering, and laid it upon Isaac his son," the lesser Bereshith hath this note דִּבָּר ישן מֵאָבִּים as a man carries his cross upon his shoulders. ‡ The common phrase by which that death was expressed. * In Crucem tolli.' Paul. 1. 5. Sentent. Tit. 22, 23. 25. As in the Chaldee מֵאָבִּים by origination Elevatio, by use is particularly Crucifixio. § Justin Martyr shows how the manner of the roasting the paschal lamb did represent the affixing of a man upon the cross, and thereby was a type of Christ: "Τὸ κατέμειν πεδάται ἐμιδί᾽ χιλιετί, τὸν πάθος τοῦ σταυροῦ, δι᾽ αὐτὸ παχύνει εκελεύ Χριστός, εὐβάλει τὸν τὰς ὑποτέμεναν πέ- βατον, καρποτέμεναν ὑμαῖς τὸ σχήματι τοῦ σταυροῦ ὑπάται. Εἰς γὰρ διῆκος ὑπάρχειν διαπερνάται ἀπὸ τῶν κοσμίων μαρτύρων μεν ὀρείς τῆς μεραλής, καὶ εἰς πάλαι κατὰ τὸ μετάξον, χριστιάτω τοι καὶ τοῖς προερχόμεθαν. Dial. cum Tryphon., p. 258. To which Arnoldus Carnotensis alludeth: 'In veru
of the passover did foretell as much. For while it is said, "ye shall not break a bone thereof," (Exod. xii. 46.) it was thereby intimated, that the Saviour of the world should suffer that death to which the breaking of the bones belonged (and that, according to the constant custom, was the punishment of crucifixion),* but only in that death should by the providence of God be so particularly preserved, as that not one bone of his should be touched. And thus the crucifixion of the Messiah in several types was represented.

Norn was it only thus prefigured and involved in the typical resemblances, but also clearly spoken by the prophets in their particular and express predictions. Nor shall we need the accession of any lost or additional prophetical expressions, which some of the ancients have made use of: † those which are still preserved even among the Jews, will yield this truth sufficient testimonies.

When God foretells by the prophet Zachary, what he should suffer from the sons of men, he says expressly, "They shall

Crucis boni odoris assatio excoquit car-nalium sensum cruditatem; De Canna Domini, commonly attributed to St. Cyril. Nor is the roasting of this lamb any far-fetched figure of the cross; for other roasting hath been thought a proper resemblance of it: where the body of the thing roasted hath limbs, as a lamb, there it bears the similitude of a proper cross, with an erect and transverse beam; where the roasted body is only of length and uniform, as a fish, there the resemblance is of a straight and simple stem. As it is represented by Hesycharus: Σκόλιον ἡ στενοτέρα τι γῆς παλαιόν κακοφυοίς άντικαλλείαν δύνατται εἰκόνιν διά τῆς μάχης καὶ τοῦ ναόν, καθὸ τοὺς στενοτέρους ἵππους ἕτερ ἐπιβλητικον. s. i. Skolios.

* Although, indeed, it must be confessed, that the eruditio and the crucifixion were two several punishments, and that they ordinarily made the cross a lingering death: yet because the Law of Moses did not suffer the body of a man to hang upon a tree in the night, therefore the Romans, so far to comply with the Jews, did break the bones of those whom they crucified in Judea constantly; whereas in other countries they did it but occasionally.

† As Barnabas cites one of the prophets whom we know not, First, c. 12: "Ωδέων πιλάρα περὶ τῶν σταυρῶν ζηνί ἐν ἀλλὸν σφετηρά λέγοντι, Καὶ πίπτε ταῦτα στατεῖς· ἰδοὺ δὲ λέγει, "Οταν ἔλθω κληρώ καὶ ἀσσέται, καὶ οὐκ ἐν ἔλθω κληρώ ἀσσέται" which words are not to be found in any of the prophets. Thus Justin Martyr, to prove, οτι κατὰ τὸ σπαραγμὸν τῆς βασιλείας ὁ Χριστός, produceth a prophecy out of the 90th Psalm, in these words: ὁ Κύριος ἱδανηθεὶς ἄπτο τῶν ἑξιουν. p. 298. And Tertullian, who advances all his conceptions: "Age nunc, si legisti penes Prophetam in Psalmis, Domini regnavit a ligno; expecto quid intelligas, ne forte lignarium aliquem regem significaris, et non Christum qui exinde un passione Christi (lege crucis, for he himself hath it ligni, Adv. Marcion. l. iii. c. 19.) superata morte regnavit," Adv. Jud. c. 10. And in the place cited against Marcion: "Etsi enim mors ab Adam regnavit usque ad Christum, cur Christus non regnasse dicatur a ligno, ex quo crucifigo mortuus, regnum mortis excusat?" Thus they, and some after them, make use of those words, ἀπ' ξίλου, a ligni, which are not to be found either in the Greek or Latin translation, from whence they seem to produce them; nor is there any thing like them in the original, or any translation extant, nor the least mention or footsteps of them in the Catena Graeco- Latin Putram. Justin Martyr, indeed, accused the Jews for raising the words ἀπ' τῶν ἑξιουν out of the text: ἄπι τῶν ἐνδοκατοπτρομένων λέγουν τᾶς ἀν δὲ εὐερήσι− του λόγου, λέγεις βεβαιώς αὐτοῦ ταῦτα, ἀπ' τῶν ἑξιουν εἰγενεμένου γὰρ τοῦ λόγου, ἔπαιτα ἐν τοῖς ἔθεσιν, Ο Κύριος ἐβασιλεύει ἄπτο τῶν ἑξιουν, ἀφίκειτα, ἔπαιτα ἐν τοῖς ἔθεσιν, Ο Κύριος ἐβασιλεύει. p. 198. But, first, he doth not accuse them for raising it out of the original Hebrew, for his discourse is only to show that they abused the LXX. Secondly, though the Jews had raised it out of their own, it appeared not how they should have gotten it out of the Bibles in the Christians‘ hands, in which those words are not to be found.
look upon me whom they have pierced;” (Zech. xii. 10.)* and therefore shews that he speaks of the Son of God, which was to be the Son of man, and by our nature liable to vulneration; and withal foretells the piercing of his body: which being added to that prediction in the Psalms, “They pierced my hands and my feet,”† (Psal. xxi. 16.) clearly representeth and foretelleth to us the death upon the cross, to which the hands and feet of the person crucified were affixed with nails. And because these prophecies appeared so particular and clear, and were so properly applied by that disciple whom our Saviour loved, and to whom he made a singular application even upon the cross; therefore the Jews have used more than ordinary industry and artifice to elude these two predictions,‡ but in

* These words of Zachary are clear in the original, וְהַדְּרַךְ רָאִי תִּגְּנָה בְּעָדָיו although the LXX. have made another sense, kατ' ἑαυτοῦ πάντα τοῖς κατὰ κυρίαν; by translating וְהַדְָּרָךְ רָאִי תִּגְּנָה, so good; as also the Chaldee paraphrase וְיַעֲשֶׂה לַעֲשֵׂה לָetration, and the Syriac another yet, by rendering it περὶ εὐαγγελίων, as if they should look upon one, and pierce another: yet the plain construction of וְהַדְָּרָךְ רָאִי is nothing else but quem, relating to the person in the affix of the preceding וּלָא, who, being the same with him who immediately before promised to pour upon man the Spirit of grace, must needs be God. Which that the Jews might avoid, they read it not וּלָא but וּלָא, not on me, but on him, to distinguish him whom they were to pierce, from him who was to give the Spirit of grace. But this fraud is easily detected, because it is against the Hebrew copies, the Septuagint, and Chaldee paraphrase, the Syriac and Arabic translations. Nor can the Rabbins shift this place, because it was anciently by the Jews interpreted of the Messiah, as themselves confess. So R. Solomon Jarchi upon the place, שֵׁלֶשׁ דִּין וּלָא תִּגְּנָה נַחֲשָׁה Our masters have expanded this of the Messiah the son of Joseph. That they interpreted it therefore of the Messiah, is granted by them; that any Messias was to be the son of Joseph, is already denied and refuted: it remained therefore that the ancient Jews did interpret it of the true Messias, and that St. John did apply it to our Saviour according to the acknowledged exposition. And in the Bereshith Rabba, we are clearly taught thus much; for unto that question, “Who art thou, O great mountain?” (Zech. iv. 7.) he answered, וַיֹּאמֶר הַבֵּית הַבָּעָר הַגְּנָה וְאָלַחְתָּה בְּעָדָיו The great mountain is the Messias the son of David. And he proves it from, “Grace, grace unto it,” וּלְאָשֵׁר נָתַן יְהֹוָה דָּשָׁן חַיָּה because he gireth grace and supplications; as it is written, Zech. vii. 10.

† This translation seems something different from the Hebrew text as we now read it, יִפְלֹע לֹא, manus meas et pedes meos. But it was not always read as now it is. For R. Jacob the son of Chajim, in Massoreteth Magna, said that the same testiseth that he found his Παναγιες written in the text, but read, and therefore written in the margin יָאשֵׁר. The same is testified by the Masarah on Numb. xxvii. 9. citing the words of this text, and adding והֶזֶה יָאשֵׁר. And Johannes Isaac Levita confirmed it by his own experience, who had seen in an ancient copy יָאשֵׁר in the text, and יִפְלֹע in the margin. It was anciently therefore without question written יִפְלֹע as appeareth not only by the LXX. who translated ἵππος, foedus; and Aquila, who rendered it ἵππος, foedus, (in the same sense with that of Virgil, En. iii. v. 241. “Oscenaeis pelagi ferro foedare volucres.”) and the old Syriac, which translated it הַבָּעָר transfixennt; but also by the less, or marginal, Masarah, which noteth that the word יָאשֵׁר is found written alike in two places; this and Isaiah xxxviii. 18. but in divers significations: wherefore being in Isaiah it manifestly signifieth scutum leo, it must not signify the same in this; and being the Jews themselves pretend to nothing else, it followedeth that it be still read as it was, יָאשֵׁר, and translated foedus. From whence it also appeareth, that this was one of the eighteen places which were altered by the Scribes.

‡ For the Masarah in several places confesseth, that eighteen places in the Scriptures have been altered by the Scribes; and when they come to reckon the places, they mention but sixteen; the other two without question are those concerning the crucifixion of the Messias, Psalm xxii. 16. and Zech. xii. 10. For that of Zachary, a Jew confessed it to Mercerus: and that of David, we shewed before to be the other.
vain. For these two prophets, David and Zachary, manifestly did foretell the particular punishment of crucifixion.

It was therefore sufficiently adumbrated by types, and promulgated by propheticies, that the promised Messias was to be crucified. And it is as certain, that our Jesus, the Christ whom we worship, and from whence we receive that honour to be named Christians, was really and truly crucified. (Matt. xxvi. 2.) It was first the wicked design of Judas, who betrayed him to that death: it was the malicious cry of the obdurate Jews, "Crucify him, crucify him." (John xix. 15.) He was actually condemned and delivered to that death by Pilate, "who gave sentence that it should be as they required:" (Luke xxiii. 24.) he was given into the hands of the soldiers, the instruments commonly used in inflicting that punishment,* who "led him away to crucify him." (Matt. xxvii. 31.) He underwent those previous pains which customarily antecede that suffering, as flagellation, and bearing of the cross:† for "Pilate, when he had scourged Jesus, delivered him to be crucified;" (Matt. xxvii. 26.) "and he, bearing his cross, went forth into Golgotha." (John xix. 17.) They carried him forth out of the city, as by custom in that kind of death they were wont to do;‡ and there between two malefactors, usually by the Romans condemned to that punishment, they crucified him.§ And that he was truly fastened to the cross, appears by the satisfac-

* That the soldiers did execute the sentence of death given by the Roman magistrates in their provinces, and not only in the camp, is evident out of the historians of that nation.

† Sciedendum est Romanis Pilatum legibus ministrasse, quibus sanctum est, ut qui crucigisset prius flagellis verberetur." S. Hieron, ad Matt. xxvii. 26. To which Lucian alludes in his own condemnation: 'ὃς μὲν ἄντεκλειξατο δύοις ἀναστα, ἢ δια, ματαιογίας γε πρότερον. Lucian. in Pseud. c. 2. ' Multo occisi, multi capiti, alii verberati crucibus affixi.' Luc. l. xxxiii. c. 36. And l. xxviii. 'Ad palum deligatus, lacerato virgis tergo, cervicem cruci Romano subjiciem.' So Curious reports of Alexander: 'Omnis verberibus affectos sub ipsis radicibus petrae crucibus jussit affigl.' l. vii. c. 11. Thus were the Jews themselves used, who caused our Saviour to be scourged and crucified: Ματθαίωναν καὶ σπαθασανίζανας τον θανάτον τίσεων αιδών, ανεσταυρίζοντα. Joseph. resc. c. v. c. 32.

‡ This was observed both by the Jews and Romans, that their capital punishments were inflicted without their cities. And that particularly was observed in the punishment of crucifixion. Plautus;

Tully; 'Cum Mamertini more atque instituto suo crucem fixissent post urbem in via Pompeia.' V. in Ver. c. 66.

§ Thieves and robbers were usually by the Romans punished with this death. Thus Caesar used his pirates, τοῖς ἵπποις ἀνεταις; ἀνταποδείκτης. Plut. in Cato. c. 2.

'Judaeorum provincia jussit Itronem crucibus affigl.' Petron. Sat. c. 111. 'Latronem istum, miserorum pigorum meorum peremptorem, cruci affigl.' Apuleius de Am. Anv. l. iii. p. 153. ed. Elmendorst. 1621. 'Latrocinium feicit alius, quid ergo meruit? Ut suspendatur.' Sen. Epist. 7. Where suspendi is as much as crucifigi, and is so to be understood in all Latin authors which wrote before the days of Constantine. 'Famosos latrones, in hoc locis ubi grassei sunt, furca fingendos, completebus plancitur.' Cels. l. xxxiii. de poenis. Where furca fingendos is put for crucifegendos; being so altered by Tribenianus, who, because Constantine had taken away the punishment, took also the name out of the Law.
tion given to doubting Thomas, who said, "Except I shall see
in his hands the print of the nails, and put my finger into
the print of the nails, I will not believe:" and our Saviour said
unto him, "Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands:" (John xx. 25, 27.) whereby he satisfied the apostle, that he
was the Christ; and as, that the Christ was truly crucified;
against that fond heresy, which made Simon the Cyrenian not
only hear the cross, but endure crucifixion, for our Saviour.*
We therefore infer this second conclusion from the undoubted
testimonies of his followers, and undefined confessions of his
enemies, that our Jesus was certainly and truly crucified, and
did really undergo those sufferings, which were prefigured and
foretold, upon the cross.

Being thus fully assured that the Messias was to be, and
that our Christ was truly crucified, it, thirdly, concerns us to
understand what was the nature of crucifixion, what the par-
ticularities of suffering, which he endured on the cross. Nor
is this now so easily understood as once it was: for being a
Roman punishment, it was continued in that empire while it
remained heathen; but when the emperors themselves received
Christianity, and the towering eagles resigned the flags unto
the cross, this punishment was forbidden by the supreme au-
thority, out of a due respect and pious honour to the death of
Christ.† From whence it came to pass, that since it hath been
disused universally for so many hundred years, it hath not been
so rightly conceived as it was before, when the general prac-
tice of the world did so frequently represent it to the Christian's
eyes. Indeed if the word which was used to denote that pu-
nishment did sufficiently represent or express it, it were enough
to say that Christ was crucified: but being the most usual or
original word doth not of itself declare the figure of the tree,
or manner of the suffering;* it will be necessary to represent it by such expressions as we find partly in the evangelical relations, partly in such representations as are left us in those authors whose eyes were daily witnesses of such executions.

The form then of the cross on which our Saviour suffered was not a simple but a compounded figure, according to the

* The original word in the New Testament, for the tree on which our Saviour suffered, is σταυρός, and the action of crucifixion σταυρίζειν, the active σταυρίζω, and the passive σταυρίζων. Now σταυρός,

_Σταυρός_  
_είσι_  
_κατασκευής_  
_είσι_  
_καὶ_  
_σταυρίζειν._

From which the rest mentioned are manifestly derived, hath itself no other signification than of a stake. As we find it first used by I Homer,

_Σταυρός_  
_είσι_  
_κατασκευής_  
_είσι_  
_καὶ_  
_σταυρίζειν._

Now σταυρός, είσι κατασκευής είσι, καὶ είσι, καὶ κατασκευής είσι, τό μείζων είδω εμφανισσάται.—Odys. Χ. 11.

_Άρμα_ δὲ οἱ μεγάλον ἀλλὰ ποιότα _ἀνατι_  
_σταυρίζουσιν._

_—_ 

_D. Ο. 433._

These are the same which Homer else-where calls σκέλοις, and the ancient grammarians render each by other. As Eustathius: Σταυροί _είσι_ καὶ ἀναπομμαίνει _είσι_. οἱ _είσι_ αὐτῷ καὶ κατασκευής είσι, ἐρ' ᾧ τό ἀναπομμαίνεται, καὶ ἀνασταυρίζεται so he, expounding σταυρίζειν: and in the same manner expounding σκέλοις είσι τοῖς οἱ τούτων σκέλεσις καὶ σταυρίζειν, ἐς οἱ τούτων τό ἀναπομμαίνεται, καὶ ἀνασταυρίζεται. As when Homer describes the Phaeacian walls,

_— Tiγχα _μακρά_  
_Γ' λακ τοιοῦτον ἀργίταν._

_Odys. Η. 44._

he gives this exposition: _Σκέλοις δὲ καὶ τῶν είσι _είσι_ καὶ σταυρίζειν._

In the same manner Hesychius: _Σταυροί_ οἱ κατασκευήνες: σκέλοις, _χειμερινας_ καὶ _σκέλεσις_ δὲ καὶ οἱ _είσι_ _σταυροῖς_._

Thus he, expounding σταυρίζειν: and in the same manner expounding σκέλοις είσι τοῖς οἱ τούτων σκέλεσις καὶ σταυρίζειν, ἐς οἱ τούτων τό ἀναπομμαίνεται, καὶ ἀνασταυρίζεται. In both sides, they all agree in the same etymology, ἀντί τῶν ἤσταθεν, and therefore always take it for a strict standing stake, pale, or palisado. Thus κέλος: in _Antophon_ are briefly rendered ἵδε _εξίαν: but more expressly thus by Etymologus: _Κέλος, καὶ καὶ ἴσως ἐὰν κατασκευής_ καὶ _κατ' ἤσταθεν καὶ τὰ κατασκευητὰ ἐξίας, ἐκαὶ σταυρίζων καλοῦσι_._

This is the undoubtedly signification of σταυρός, in vain denied by Salmansius, who will have it first to signify the same with _forca_, and then with _crux_; first the figure of _C_, and then of _T_. Whereas all antiquity renders it no other than as a straight and sharp stake: in which signification it came at first to denote this punishment, the most simple and prime σταυρίζως ἢ ἀναπομμαίνει: being upon a single piece of wood, a _deactus_ et _ecruces stipes_. And the Greeks which wrote the Roman history, used the word σταυρίζω as well for their _palus_ as their _crux_. As when _Antony_ beheld _Antigonus_ the king of the Jews, _Dio_ thus begins to describe his execution, _Hist. Rom._

I. xii. c. 22. _Ἀντίφωνοι διαστημάτως σταυροῦ_ πρεσβύτερος: not that he crucified him, as Baronius mistakes; but that he put him to another death after the Roman custom, as those died in _Livy_. l. xxxvi. c. 29._Deligati ad palum, virisque casi, et securi percussi._ So that σταυρίζω _πρεσβύτερος_ is ad _palum_ _deligere_. Thus were the heads of men said ἀνασταυρωθέντας, as of _Niger_ and _Albinus_ in _Dio_. I. lxxv. c. 2 and _I. lxxxv. c. 7_. and _Herodian_ in _Hist. iii_. c. 24.; which cannot but he meant of a single _palus_: and we read in _Ctesias_ how _Amytus_ put _Iunius_ to death, _ἀνασταυρώντας_ _μὲν_ τις _τριτὶ σταυρῷ_; not that he crucified him upon three crosses, but pierced his body with three stakes fastened in the ground, and sharpened at the upper end. As appears by the like Persian punishment inflicted by _Parzis_: as _Parzis_ and _Mesabates_, as delivered by _Plutarch_ in _Aristides_, c. 17._προσήχθηκε Χέρμιος_ καί αὐτὸς καί τὸ μᾶς _σέφυλο_ εἰς τρεῖς _σταυροῖς_ ἀνασταυρώθηκεν, _τὸ ἦθελ_ _χειρὶ_ _παστατικῆς_ _τοσίν_ which the Latin translator renders, in _tres sustoli cruces_ (a thing impossible); whereas it was to be transversely fastened to three stakes, piercing the body lying, and thrust down upon them; which in the _Excerpta_ of _Cesius_ is delivered only in the word _ἀνασταυρώνθηκεν_. Et _Persicis_ τίς et τίs. _Σταυρίζω_ therefore is no more originally than _σκέλος_, a single stake, or an erect piece of wood upon which many suffered who were said ἀνασταυρωθέντας καὶ ἀνασκευητήσατοι. And when other _transverse_ or prominent parts were added in a perfect cross, it retained still the original name, not only of _σταυρὸν_, but also of _σκέλος_ as: _Σεφύλιος εἰς ἀνάκεριν_ _προσήχθηκε_ ἀπὸ τῶν _σκέℓος_ _χειρὸς_ _ἀνάκεριν_ _γνώζηθηκε_. Κἀ τὸν ἐκ τῶν _σκέλος_ _κατὰ_ _φόνον ἔπετε _πάντη_. _Celsus apud Orig. l. ii_. § 69. Thus in that long, or rather too long, verse written by _Audaux_ to _St. Augustin_, _Epist. 139._

_Expectat quos plea _fides_ _Christi_ de stipite pendens_.
custom of the Romans, by whose Procurator he was condemned to die. In which there was not only a straight and erected piece of wood fixed in the earth, but also a transverse beam fastened unto that towards the top thereof: * and beside these

* That the figure and parts of a Roman cross, such as that was on which our Saviour suffered, may be known, we must begin with the first composition in the frame or structure of it: and that is the conjunction of the two beams, the one erect, the other transverse; the first to which the body was applied, the second to which the hands were fastened. These two, as the chief parts of the cross, are several ways expressed: first, by the Jews, who had no one word in their language particularly to express that punishment (as being not mentioned in the law, or at all in use among them), and therefore call it by a double name, expressing the conjunction of these beams τύχῃ καὶ ταῖς, stamen et subligmen, the warp and the woof. The Greeks express the same, by the letter Τάξι, as partly appears by what is already spoken of the number 300, and is yet more evident by the testimony of Lucian, who makes maokind complain of the letter Τάξι, because τύχᾳ in imitation of that first made the cross; τῆς γὰρ τῶντι παράφασι τοις τοιούτοις, ἀκήρατας γὰρ ἐκπεπλήθησιν ἐπ᾽ αὐτά. Jud. Voc. c. 12. 'Ipsa est enim litera Graecorum Tum, nostra autem Τ, species crucis,' Tertullian, adv. Marc. l. iii. c. 22. St. Jerome affirms the same of the Samaritan Tan: but there is no similitude to be found in that which is now in use, or in any other oriental, only in the Copitic alphabet Salebhi, that is the cross Di. These two parts of the cross are otherwise expressed by the mast and yard of a ship. So Justin Martyr: ὀλίγαστα μίν γὰρ ὁ τίμηται, ἢ μὲν τότε τὸ τρόπαιον, ἢ καλεῖται ἵστον, ἢ τῇ στῇ μέγαν. Apol. ii. p. 90. And Tertullian: 'Antenna navis crucis pars est.' adv. Marcion, l. iii. c. 13. And Minutius Felix: 'Signum sane Crucis naturaliter visum in navi, cum velis tumentibus vehitur.' c. 29. And Maximus Tyriensis: 'Cum a navis tectum maris, pruns arbor erigitur, velum destindit, ut cruce Domicini facta aquarum fluentia rumpantur.' de Cruce Dom. Homil. ii. Now because the extremities of the currena are a kind of κεφαλα (as Virgil that great master of proprieties, Aen. iii. 549. 'Cornex veltarum obvittimmem anten- narum'), therefore in Greek κεφαλα is antenna: and from thence the Greek fathers applied the words of our Saviour, Matt. v. 18. Ἰηθα ἐν κεφαλας οὖ λαμ σπαραγά μετὰ τῶν μεγάλων, ἵνα ἐν πάντα γίνησθαι, to the cross of Christ; τῶν γὰρ σταυρῶν ἵνα λατι τὸ ἱρό τοῦ καθαρία τῆς πλασμᾶς. Because ίστα is like the straight piece or mast of the cross, and κεφαλα the yard or transverse part; therefore some of the ancients interpreted this place of the cross, says Theophylact on the place. And Gregory Nyssen, l. ii. de Vita Mosis, p. 217. "loquent γάρ τοις καθαρῶς θεομισθεὶς ἐν τῷ νύμε μάλαστα τὸ κατὰ τὴν σταυρῷ ἔστη αὐτῷ μυστήριον. Διὶ φεστι ποιεῖ τὸ ἔσχοργῆλ, ἐτὶ εἰκὸς τῆς ιεράς ἵνα καὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς φανερωθῇ, δι᾽ αὐτὸ πρὸς τοὺς εἰμένους τὸ τὸ ἐκ πάλινος χρησμὸν, καὶ τὴν κάθιστα, δι᾽ αὐτὸ τὸ σχῆμα τοῦ σταυροῦ κατα- γαγώτα: Not that this is the true interpretation of that place (for κεφαλα signifies a part of a letter, as in Apollonius Syntax, l. i. c. 7. τῷ αὐτοῦ κεφαλίον ἐκεΐφει), but by that they testify their apprehension of the figure of a cross; which is well expressed by Eusebius, describing the form of the cross which applied to Constantinople: 'Τὴν ἡμῖν χρυσείον κατημανωμένον, κέφαλα ἡγίσκοντο, σταυρὸν σχῆματι περι- ποιομένον.' De Vita Constant. l. i. c. 31. And this similitude of the mast and yard leads to the consideration of that part of the erected pole which was eminent above the transverse beam. For as the κεφαλασιον was above the κεφαλα, so the stipes did extend itself above the pathway. And this is evident by those expressions which make the two beams have four sides, and four extremities, as two lines cutting each other at equal angles needs must have. These Theophanes, Homil. 4. init. and Gregory Nyssen, In Christ, Resur. or. 1. p. 396. call τὰς ἄπει τοῦ μέσου τίτας τους περιβάλλων, Damascen, de Orth. Fol. l. iv. c. 12. τὰ τίτας ἄπει ἐκ τοῦ σταυροῦ διὰ τοῦ μέσου κόσμου κατέμαιναι καὶ συσρίγγειμαι. Hence Nonnus calls the cross τῆς τετρά- πλασμάς, c. xix. 91. And of these four parts the fathers interpret the height, and breadth, and length, and depth, mentioned by St. Paul, Eph. iii. 'As Gregory Nyssen: ἐφεστὶς τὸν τὸ πέτα διαφα- τικῶς τὸν καὶ συσρίγγειμαι τῷ τίτας τῶν σταυροῦ καὶ τετράπλασμάς τοῦ τίτας. Ὁ δὲ καταθέσας καὶ πλατέα καὶ μέγα, κατομίμησεν, ἐκάκτισε τὴν κεφαλας τῆς κατὰ τὸ σχῆμα τοῦ σταυροῦ Αἰ- χολομενίας ἑνωθεὶς προσελικεῖν ιοφόντωσα, ας, τῷ μέν ἐκ μέρους ἔδει εἴπειν, ἔσχον δὲ τῷ μετὰ τὸ συσρίγγειμα ἐπεκτείνων, τὸν δὲ ἐγκαμπότρος καὶ ἐκάκτισε κεφαλῆς τῷ τοῦ μέσου τα καπ.
two cutting each other transversely at right angles (so that the erected part extended itself above the transverse), there was also another piece of wood infixed into, and standing out from, that which was erected and straight up.* To that erected piece was his body, being lifted up, applied, as Moses's serpent to the pole; and to the transverse beam his hands were nailed: upon the lower part coming out from the erected piece his sacred body rested, and his feet were transfixed and fastened with nails: his head, being pressed with a crown of

* Beside the direct and transverse parts of the cross, with their four extremities, which only usually are considered, and represented in the figures, we must find yet another part, and a fifth extremity. Irenæus giving several examples of the number five, delivers it plainly thus, l. ii. c. 42. *Ipsæ habitus crucis fines et summitates habet quinque, duos in longitudinem, et unum in medio, ubi requiescit qui clavis affigitur.* Beside therefore the four extremities of the direct and transverse beams, there was a fifth ξευρ in medio (viz. of the erected palus), on which the crucified body rested. This fifth part of the cross fastened to the οντας τιμης was before Irenæus acknowledged, and described by Justin Martyr, under the notion of the horn of the rhinoceros, taken to be a figure or type of the cross: οικεικετος γας κυρατα ους ενερεις άλλω περαιστος εκ της ισημερινον ενερεις αν την εκποτι και ασυλλησι, ι μεν του ταυτος εκ των συντρο χνων, δεδομεν εκ την ισημερινον οικεικετος, ι δε της ισημερινον ενερεις: οικεικετος γας κυρατα τη ευ κυριη τιμα—
thorns, was applied to that part of the cross which stood above the transverse beam; and above his head to that was fastened the table, on which was written in Hebrew, Greek, and Latin characters, the accusation, according to the Roman custom; “and the writing was, Jesus of Nazareth, the King of the Jews.” (John xix. 19.)

Thus by the propriety of the punishment, and the titular inscription, we know what crime was then objected to the immaculate Lamb, and upon what accusation Pilate did at last proceed to pass the sentence of death upon him. It was not any opposition to the Law of Moses, not any danger threatened to the Temple, but pretended sedition and affectation of the crown objected, which moved Pilate to condemn him. The Jews did thus accuse him: “We found this fellow perverting the nation, and forbidding to give tribute to Caesar, saying that he himself is Christ a king;” (Luke xxiii. 2.) and when

* That which was written over the head of our Saviour is called simply by St. Luke ἔσημα, by St. Matthew αῖτια, by St. Mark ἐπίγραφα τῆς αἰτίας, and by St. John τίτλος, making use of a Latin word, as is observed by Nonnus:

Καὶ Πιλάτος ἔσημεν ἐπίγραφα μάκτυς γῆς Ἐλλήνων. Πράμα, τό περὶ καλουσίαν Λατινὸν τίτλον ίσον. c. xix. 100.

From all which we may collect, that there was an inscription written over the head of our Saviour, signifying the accusation and pretended crime for which he was condemned to that death, Gloss. Vet. Æthia, causa, materia, titulus. As Ovid. Trist. 3. Eleg. 1. 47.

'Causa, superposita scripto testata corone,
Servatos cives indicat hujus opere.'

that is, or cives servatos was ἐπίγραφος τῆς αἰτίας, 'causa scripto testata.' In the language of Suetonius, Calig. c. 32.

'Titulus, qui causae poenae indicavit.' As Ovid. Fast. vi. 190.

'Vixit ut occiderent damnatus crimen regni,
Hunc illi titulum longa senecta dabat.'

This was done according to the Roman custom; as we read in Dio, l. liv. c. 3. of the son of Caspi: Τὸν ἡγαίον τὸ πορώδα ἄριστον διὰ τῆς ἁγίας μέλας μετὰ γραφίματος, τὴν αἰτίαν τῶν Δαυιδικῶν αὐτοῦ δεδομένην, διαγαγότας, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἀναστατώσατος. This title was written upon a table, and that table fastened to the upper part of the cross. The Syriac, Arabic, and Persian translations render τίτλον expressely a table. And Hesychius, τίτλος, ποιόν ἐπίγραψαμε ἐχεῖν (not ἔχει), as it is printed, not the inscription itself, but that upon which the inscription was written. Thus the epistle of the French unto the Christians in Asia, represents the inscription of the Martyr Attalus in a table: Περίσσεις κύκλῳ τῶν ἄμφιβασκερῶν, πάνας αἰτίαν προεξῆκας, εἰ ἐπίγραφος ἑκάστη καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἀναστάτωσατος. Thus also in the table, Euseb. l. v. c. 1. and Sozomen, describing the invention of the cross by Helena, says there were several crosses in the same place: Καὶ ὁ χρυσὸς ἄλλον Ἐλλήνων, ἐφεξής, ἐπηρεάζοντος, ἔγγισεν καὶ γράφη... τῆς διαγωγῆς, πρὸς τὸν παντότεν εὐπορίαν. Hesych. Σαξιν, Σάξων, λείψανος, (as Julius Pullius Joinus saxis, and λείψανος, together) εἰ ὁ εἶ γράμφα τῆς σαξιν, ἀναστάτωσεν 'ἐγράφατο πεῖ; τὸν Κατάλογον τίτλον δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ, λέγει, σταυρός. His meaning is, that such a λέξημα as contained the accusation or crime of malefactors was placed upon the cross on which they suffered; and without question he spake this in reference to our Saviour's cross, because he used in a manner the same words with St. John: τίτλοι τῶν σταυρῶν, says Hesychius, εἶπεν δὲ τῶν σταυρῶν, saith St. John. It was therefore a table of wood whitened and fastened to the top of the cross, upon which the accusation or crime was written, as it is expressed by Nicephorus: Σαξιν, (as Σάξων, 읽은 렌, ἐγράφατο πεῖ; τοῦ τῆς Ἀδελλαίον κατήρα πολύν ὁ Πίλας ἀναστάτωσεν) ἐπὶ τοῦ τῆς Ἀδελλαίον τοῦ σταυροῦ, καὶ τοῦ τῆς Ἀδελλαίον τοῦ σταυροῦ, καὶ τοῦ τῆς Ἀδελλαίον τοῦ σταυροῦ (ἐπὶ τοῦ τῆς Ἀδελλαίον τοῦ σταυροῦ). Hist. Eccl. i. viii. c. 29. And thus there were, as Xanthopulus observes:

'Ὁ σταυρός, ἡμ� καὶ γραφὸς τίτλος ἦν.
Pilate sought to release him, they cried out, saying, 'If thou let this man go, thou art not Caesar's friend: whosoever maketh himself a king, speaketh against Caesar.' (John xix. 12.) This moved Pilate to pass sentence upon him, and, because that punishment of the cross was by the Roman custom used for that crime, to crucify him.*

Two things are most observable in this cross; the acerbity and the ignominy of the punishment: for of all the Roman ways of execution, it was most painful, and most shameful.† First, the exquisite pains and torments in that death are manifest, in that the hands and feet, which of all the parts of the body are most nervous, and consequently most sensible, were pierced through with nails; which caused, not a sudden dispatch, but a lingering and tormenting death: insomuch that the Romans, who most used this punishment, did in their language deduce their expressions of pains and crucification from the cross.‡ And the acerbity of this punishment appears in that those who were of any merciful disposition would first cause such as were adjudged to the cross, to be slain, and then to be crucified.§

As this death was most dolorous and full of acerbity, so it was also most infamous and full of ignominy. The Romans themselves accounted it a servile punishment, and inflicted it upon their slaves and fugitives.\

* 'Auctores seditionis aut tumultus, pro qualitatis dignitate, aut in crucem tolluntur, aut bestis obiciuntur.' *Jul. Paulus* l. v. tit. 22.

† 'Illa morte pejus nihil fuit inter omnia genera mortium.' *S. August. in Ioan. Tract. 36. § 4.* Tully calls it 'cru-delissimum teterimineque supplicium,' *V. in Ferr. c. 66. and Ausonius, 'posuit extremam.'

‡ 'Ubi dolores acerri mi exiugant, cruciat us vocatur, a cruce nominatus: pententes enim in liguo crucifixi, clavis ad lignum pedibus manibusque confixi, producunt morte necabantur. Non enim crucifi gi hoc erat occi di ; sed diu vivebatur in cruce; non quia longa vita eliegebat, sed quia mor is ipsa pretendebatur, ne dolor citius finiret.' *S. August. Tract. in Ioan. 36. § 4.* To this etymology did Terence allude in those words,

'Et illis crucibus, quos nos nostramque adolecensiam
Habet despiciatui, et quae nos semper omnibus cruciato modis.'

Eutr. a. ii. sc. iii. 91.

§ As it was observed by Julius Caesar : 'Piratas, a quibus captus est, cum in ditionem redigisset, quoniam suффикром se cruci ante juraverat, jugulari prius jussit, deinde suffigit.' *Suet. l. i. c. 74.*

|| Vulciatus Gallicanus relateth of Avidius Cassius, that in the case of some centurions which had been prosperous, in fighting without orders given: 'Rapi eos jussit et in crucem solvi, servile supplicio afferi : quod exemplum non ex- stabat.' c. 4. And *Juv.†* speaks with relation to this custom, *Sat. vi. 218.*

'Pone crucem servo.'

So *Palatstrio in Plautus, Mil. Glov. a. ii. sc. ii. 27.*

'Nisi quidem illa nos volt, qui servum
Propter amorem suum omnes crucibus contubernales dari.'

And again, *Ibid. a. ii. sc. iv. 19.*

'Noli miuitari ; scio crucem futuram nihil sepulcrum.
Ibi uel maiores sunt satis, pater, avus, proavus, abavus.'

So in *Terence, Andrv. a. iii. sc. v. 15.*

*Pam. 'Quid meritus est?'

*Dav. 'Crucem.'

And *Horace, Sat. l. i. sat. iii. 80.*

'Si quis eum servum, patiänam qui tollere jussus,
Semesos piscis tepidumque ligurerit jus,
In cruce suffigat.'

So *Capitolinus of Pertinax, c. 9.* In crucem sublatis servis: 'et *Herodian of Macrinus:* διωχετε δυο **δειπνας** κατηγγελου ευκαλπηθησαν. l. v. c. 2.
that dishonour upon any freeman; and the greatest indignity which the most undeserving Roman could possibly suffer in himself,* or could be contrived to shew their detestation to such creatures as were below human nature.† And because, when a man is beyond possibility of suffering pain, he may still be subject to ignominy in his fame; when by other exquisite torments some men have tasted the bitterness of death, after that, they have in their breathless corpses, by virtue of this punishment, suffered a kind of surviving shame.‡ And the exposing the bodies of the dead to the view of the people on the cross, hath been thought a sufficient ignominy to those who died, and terror to those who lived to see it.§ Yea, where

This punishment of the cross did so properly belong to slaves, that when servants and freemen were involved alike in the same crime, they were very careful to make a distinction in their death, according to their condition: 'Ut quisque liber aut servus, suse fortunae a quoque sumptum supplicium est.' Liv. i. iii. c. 18. And thus the servants were always crucified. As Servius observes among the Lacedaemonians: 'Servos patiubus suscipiant, filios strangulavere, nepotes uguavertur.' ad Ened. iii. v. 551. 'Noverant quidem perpetuum indicitor exilia, servus vero patibulis suffragit.' Apul. Metam. i. x. p. 244. Thus in the combustion at Rome, upon the death of Julius Caesar: 'Armatus amputata subitum; et uulgostratinites esse subsecutus ex' etiam. Segnapites ipsi, id est. Laestigiis cati et quod. Hestia catctrops. Appian. de Bell. civit. i. iii. c. 3. 'Et nocte spectaculum prehensi servi tres, et unus ex legione ventercula: servi sunt in crucem sublati, muliti servituis abscessum.' Hirtius lib. de Bell. Hispan. v. 20. So Africans: 'Graviis in Romanus quam in Latinos transfigus.existenti; illos enim, tamquam patrim fugitivos, crucibus adhibit; hos, tamquam perfidos socios, securi percurrit.' Valer. Max. i. ii. c. 7. This punishment of the cross was so proper unto servants, that servile supplicium in the language of the Romans signifies the same: and though in the words of Vulcainus before cited, they go both together, as also in Capitolinus, Marcin. c. 12. 'Nam et in crucem mullites tulit, et servubus supplicibus semper affect.' yet either is sufficient to express crucixition: as in Tacitus: 'Malm potestatm servili supplicio expiavit.' Hist. i. i. c. 11. and again: 'Sumptum de eo supplicium in servilem modum.' Hist. i. 2. c. 72. And therefore when any servants were made free, they were put out of fear of ever suffering this punishment. 'An vero servos nostros horum suppliciorum omnium metu domi-

---

* A reference to the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
† As the Capitol was betrayed by the silence of dogs, but preserved by the noise of gleeves: they preserved the memory by a solemn honouring of one yearly, and dishonouring the other.
§ As Orestes the Persian, when he had treacherously and cruelly murdered Polycrates the tyrant of Samos: aepctivns de m wim eum aip nixius epctivns aepctivns.

Herod. i. iii. c. 125. So Antiochus first cut off the head of Achaeus, and then fastened his body to a cross: Exoaeo enmy tue. aepctivns aepctivns eum: nuc et tae cerna tae cerna atma aepctivns aepctivns: nuc et tae cerna tae cerna. Polyb. i. viii. c. 18.

§ This was the design of Tarquiniius Priscus, when the extremity of labour which he had laid upon his subjects made many lay violent hands upon themselves
the bodies of the dead have been out of the reach of their surviving enemies, they have thought it highly opprobrious to their ghosts, to take their representations preserved in their pictures, and affix them to the cross. Thus may we be made sensible of the two grand aggravations of our Saviour's sufferings, the bitterness of pain in the torment of his body, and the indignity of shame in the interpretation of his enemies.

It is necessary we should thus profess faith in Christ crucified, as that punishment which he chose to undergo, as that way which he was pleased to die. First, because by this kind of death we may be assured that he hath taken upon himself, and consequently from us, the malediction of the Law. For we were all under the curse, because it is expressly written, "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things written in the book of the law to do them:" (Deut. xxvii. 26. Gal. iii. 10.) and as it is certain none of us hath so continued; for the "Scripture hath concluded all under sin," (Gal. iii. 22.) which is nothing else but a breach of the Law; therefore the curse must be acknowledged to remain upon all. But now "Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us;" (Gal. iii. 13.) that is, he hath redeemed us from that general curse, which lay upon all men for the breach of any part of the Law, by taking upon him that particular curse, laid only upon them which underwent a certain punishment of the Law; for it is written, "Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree." (Deut. xxi. 23.) Not that suspension was any of the capital punishments prescribed by the Law of Moses; not that by any tradition or custom of the Jews they were wont to punish malefactors with that death: but such as were punished with death according to the law or custom of the Jews, were for the enormity of their facts oftentimes after death exposed to the ignominy of a gibbet; and those who being dead were so hanged upon a tree, were accused by the Law.†

‡ Passim conscita nece Quiritibus tadium fugientibus, novum et inexcogitatum ante posteaque remedium invenit ille rex, ut omnium ita defunctorum ficeret crucibus corpora, spectanda cibibus simul, et feris velocibusque laceraenda. †Pit. i. xxxvi. c. 13. who makes this handsome observation of it: "Quamobrem pudor Romanii omnium proprius, qui sepe res perditas servavit in pravis, tunc quoque subvent: sed illo tempore impositum, tum erubescens cum puderet vivos, tanquam puderum esse extinctos."

Thus they used Celsius, one of the thirty tyrants of Rome, as Trebellius Poppio testifieth: "Novo injuria genere image in crucem sublatu, persolvante vulgo quasi partihlo ipsis Celsius videretur aeditus." c. 99.

* Deut. xxi. 22. "If a man have committed a sin worthy of death, and he be put to death, and thou hang him on a tree." In which words being put to death, preceded being hanged: but, I confess, in our English translation, it hath another sense, "and he be put to death," as if he were to die by hanging. And so the Vulgar Latin, Et adjudicatus morti appensus fuerit patibulo, as if he were adjudged to be hanged, and so his sentence were suspension. And the Syriac yet more expressly, et appendatur ligio atque interficiatur. But there is no such sentence contained in the original as the Vulgar, nor futuritio of death, as our English translation mentioneth. The Hebrew is מרט in Hoplaw, that is, interficatus, occidit, morti fuit; or, as in the LXX, cie trly translate it, κατά διωκσιν, and the Chaldee ἀπρχετ et occasus fuerit.
Now though Christ was not to die by the sentence of the Jews, who had lost the supreme power in causes capital, and so not to be condemned to any death according to the Law of Moses; yet the providence of God did so dispose it, that he might suffer that death which did contain in it that ignominious particularity to which the legal curse belonged, which is, the hanging on a tree. For he which is crucified, as he is affixed to, so he hangeth on, the cross; and therefore true and formal crucifixion is often named by the general word suspension, * and the Jews themselves do commonly call our blessed Saviour by that very name to which the curse is affixed by Moses; † and generally have objected that he died a cursed death. ‡

Secondly, It was necessary to express our faith in Christ crucified, that we might be assured that he hath "abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments;" (Eph. ii. 15.) which if he had not done, the strength and power of the whole Law had still remained: for all the people had said Amen to the curse upon every one that kept not the whole Law; (Deut. xxvii. 26.) "and entered into a curse and into an oath, to walk in God's law, which was given by Moses the servant of God, and to observe and do all the commandments of the Lord their God, and his judgments and his statutes." (Nehem. x. 29.) Which was in the nature of a bill, bond, or obligation, perpetually standing in force against them, ready to bring a forfeiture or penalty upon them, in case of non-performance of the condition. But the strongest obligations may be cancelled; and one ancient custom of cancelling bonds was, by striking a nail through the writing; and thus God, by our crucified Saviour, "blotted out the hand-writing of ordinances

* As we before noted on the words of Seneca: thus the Greeks do often use κρατεῖν, for crucifixere. For Curtius, speaking of the taking of Tyre by Alexander, says: 'Duo millia crucibus affixa per ingens litoris spatum pependerunt,' l. iv. c. 4. And Diodorus Siculus relating the same: Τοις δὲ νῶσιν πόντοι ὑπάς όικίστωσι τῶν δισθελήν εἰμισαν. l. xvi. c. 46. So the same Curtius testifies that Musianus was 'in crucem sublatus;' l. ix. c. 8. of whom Arianus speaks thus: τῶν κρασατάν Ἀλεξάνδρος κελθεῖ ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ γ. Λαμ. Alc. l. vi. c. 17. Thus in the language of the Scriptures, εἰς τῶν κρεμασθῶν κακῶν εὖς is one of the crucified thieves, Luke xxiii. 39. and the Jews are said to have slain our Saviour, κραμάσαντες εἰς εἴσοδον, Acts v. 30. and x. 39. The Latins likewise often use the word suspendera for crucifixere. As Ausonius, in the Idyllium, whose title is Capito cruci affixus, describes him thus, ver. 59.

‡ So Trypho the Jew objected to Justin Martyr: Οὗται δὲ δι' ὑμῖν, ήρισάσθης Χριστός ἀνώμας καὶ ἄδικος φέροντι, δι' αὐτῇ δὲ κατά τέχνα πάσην ἔν τῷ ἱερῷ τοῦ Θεοῦ περιπηπτόντι ἠταπαύσατο γας; Dial. cum Tryph. p. 249.

And when we read in Polybius, l. viii. c. 18. that they did ἀναταπαύσωσι τῷ σώματι of Achæus; Ovid describes his punishment thus, Ibis, 299.

' More vel interes capiti suspensione
Achæi,
Qui miser aurisera teste pependit aqua.'

† The words of Moses are, Deut. xxi. 23. †οί τε ποιήσαντες κακὰς, maledicunt Dei suspensus: and this word νίθα, which is of itself simply suspensus (as 2 Sam. xvii. 10. I saw Absalom ἡμέραν ἡμέραν hanged on an oak), is ordinarily attributed by the Jews to our Saviour, to signify that he was crucified. Hence they term Christians ἱσταρότας καταστρων suspensos and they call the crucifix νίθαι habet figuram suspensae.
that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross.” (Col. ii. 14.)

Thirdly, Hereby we are to testify the power of the death of Christ working in us after the manner of crucifixion.* For we are to be “planted in the likeness of his death;” (Rom. vi. 5.) and that we may be so, we must acknowledge, and cause it to appear, that “our old man was crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed;” (Ibid. 6.) we must confess, that “they that are Christ’s have crucified the flesh, with the affections and lusts;” (Gal. v. 24.) and they which have not, are not his. We must not “glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ;” nor can we properly glory in that, except by it “the world be crucified unto us, and we unto the world.” (Gal. vi. 14.)

Fourthly, By the acerbity of this passion we are taught to meditate on that bitter cup which our Saviour drank: and while we think on those nails which pierced his hands and feet, and never left that torturing activity until by their dolorous impressions they forced a most painful death, to acknowledge the bitterness of his sufferings for us, and to assure ourselves that by the worst of deaths he has overcome all kinds of death;† and with patience and cheerfulness to endure whatsoever he shall think fit to lay upon us, who with all readiness and desire suffered far more for us.

Fifthly, By the ignominy of this punishment, and universal infamy of that death, we are taught how far our Saviour descended for us, that while we were slaves and in bondage unto sin, he might redeem us by a servile death: for he "made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant; and so he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross;” (Phil. ii. 7, 8.) teaching us the glorious doctrine of humility‡ and patience in the most vile and abject condition which can befal us in this world, and encouraging us to imitate him, “who for the joy that was set before him, endured the cross, despising the shame;” (Heb. xii. 2.) and withal deterring us from that fearful sin of falling from him, lest we should “crucify unto ourselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame,” (Heb. vi. 6.) and


so become worse than the Jews themselves, who crucified the Lord of life without the walls of Jerusalem, and for that unparalleled sin were delivered into the hands of the Romans, into whose hands they delivered him, and at the same walls in such multitudes were crucified, till there remained crosses for crosses, and crosses for their bodies.*

Lastly, By the public visibility of this death, we are assured that our Saviour was truly dead, and that all his enemies were fully satisfied. He was crucified in the sight of all the Jews, who were made public witnesses that he gave up the ghost. There were many traditions among the heathen, of persons supposed for some time to be dead, to descend into hell, and afterwards to live again; but the death of these persons was never publicly seen or certainly known. It is easy for a man that liveth, to say that he hath been dead; and if he be of great authority, it is not difficult to persuade some credulous persons to believe it. But that which would make his present life truly miraculous, must be the reality and certainty of his former death. The feigned histories of Pythagoras and Zæmolxis, of Theseus and Hercules, of Orpheus and Protesilaus, made no certain mention of their deaths, and therefore were ridiculous in the assertion of their resurrection from death.† Christ, as he appeared to certain witnesses after his resurrection, so he died before his enemies visibly on the cross, and gave up the ghost conspicuously in the sight of the world.

And now we have made this discovery of the true manner and nature of the cross on which our Saviour suffered, every one may understand what it is he professeth when he declareth his faith, and saith, I believe in Christ crucified. For thereby he is understood and obliged to speak thus much: I am really persuaded, and fully satisfied, that the only-begotten and eternal Son of God, Christ Jesus, that he might cancel the handwriting which was against us, and take off the curse which was

---

* Protrôlos d' oî sthmatêthai de ophio kai míaos tòs àlótas, ìllon ìllon skhìmati próv òseta, kai diá to sthóo: xhîres tòv exeklìptov tòv staurôwv, kai stauròwv tòv scó-


† This is excellently observed and expressed by Origen, who returneth this answer to the objection made by the Jews in Celsus, of those fabulous returns from the dead: Φησί παραστήσαι, ὅτι οὐ δύνα-

tai τὸ κατὰ τὸν Ἰησοῦν ἱστορήματος, έκ νεκρῶν ἐγκριθεῖν, τότε τοιούτως εἴρηθεν: Ἐκεῖνοι μὲν γὰρ τὸν λογοῦν ἱστορίαν κατὰ τὸν τύπον ὅσον ειρηνεύετο ἐκ ὑμνίων ἐναντίον τοῦ ἔθους, καὶ πάντως καὶ εὐπλούσιον τῆς εἰς καταδι-

λύσιν ἤτοι καὶ συναφθήνετο εἰς πάντων ἱσκετές, καὶ καθևανσάετο αὐτῶν τῷ συμμε-

τῷ εὖ ἔξα τῶν ὁμάν αὐτῶν, τῶς σώσατο πα-

evaphoosin plásadothai lýmion autóv tòv istor-

oumánov ènuv nev éthos katebêthénai, kai-

kathèthi anaplithenai; sthmati d' òv, múttōs

περὶ ἀνελογίαν, τῷ ἐπιταύρως τῷ Ἰησοῦν

καὶ τουτούρα καὶ γνώσην τών, μάλλον διὰ τὰ πε-

τρέχων ἱστορήματος τῶν έκ ἄθος καταβê-

θέκεναι διαρρακών. οἳ εὖ καὶ ἰδευόμενον εἰ

ἱστορίας ἐτελθεῖσιν ἄριστος Ἠσαύ, ὅπως ἄφθο-

θήλος ἤνεγαν ἀποτάσσειν ἥν τῷ ἔθνους τῶν

ἰσθανόν, ἡπὶ μὲ τὸν ἅλθος τὴν ἑκατάτητα εἰκ

μεγαλότητα, ἐλεύθερα ἐν ἑαυτὶ τούτῳ μὴ τοῦ ἄν

περὶ ἀλλοις αὐτῶν τοῦ συναφθήνετο τῷ Ἰησοῦ

καὶ τοῦτο δύναται συμβαλλέσθαι τῷ αὐτῷ ἐπιστήμῃ ἐπὶ τοῦτο ἀποτάσσεσθαι, ἐλαχιστῶς ἐν λόγῳ διὰ τὸ ἴθω κατείκτηθη τῇ

λέγου τῷ ἔρυθτα, καὶ μείζον ἄποθετοκισίν,

due unto us, did take upon him the form of a servant, and in that form did willingly and cheerfully submit himself unto the false accusation of the Jews, and unjust sentence of Pilate, by which he was condemned, according to the Roman custom, to the cross; and upon that did suffer servile punishment of the greatest acerbity, enduring the pain; and of the greatest ignominy, despising the shame. And thus I believe in Christ crucified.

Dead.

Though crucifixion of itself involveth not in it certain death, and he which is fastened to a cross is so leisurely to die, as that he being taken from the same may live; though when the insulting Jews in a malicious derision called to our Saviour to "save himself, and come down from the cross;" (Mark xv. 30.) he might have come down from thence, and in saving himself have never saved us; yet it is certain that he felt the extremity of that punishment, and fulfilled the utmost intention of crucifixion: so that, as we acknowledge him crucified, we believe him dead.

For the illustration of which part of the Article, it will be necessary, first, To shew that the Messias was to die; that no sufferings, howsoever shameful and painful, were sufficiently satisfactory to the determination and predictions divine, without a full dissolution and proper death: secondly, To prove that our Jesus, whom we believe to be the true Messias, did not only suffer torments intolerable and inexpressible in this life, but upon and by the same did finish this life by a true and proper death: thirdly, To declare in what the nature and condition of the death of a person so totally singular did properly and peculiarly consist. And more than this cannot be necessary to shew we believe that Christ was dead.

First, then, we must consider what St. Paul "delivered" to the Corinthians "first of all," and what "also he received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures;" (1 Cor. xv. 3.) that the Messias was "the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world," (Rev. xiii. 8.) and that his death was severally represented and foretold. For though the sacrificing Isaac hath been acknowledged an express and lively type of the promised Messias; though, after he was bound and laid upon the wood, he was preserved from the fire, and rescued from the religious cruelty of his father's knife; though Abra-ham be said to have "offered up his only-begotten son," (Heb. xi. 17.) when Isaac died not; though by all this it might seem foretold that the true and great promised Seed, the Christ, should be made a sacrifice for sin, should be fastened to the cross, and offered up to the Father, but not suffer death: yet being "without effusion of blood there is no remission," (Heb. ix. 22.) without death no sacrifice for sin; being the saving of
Isaac alive doth not deny the death of the antitype, but rather suppose and assert it as presignifying his resurrection from the dead, "from whence Abraham received him in a figure?" (Heb. xi. 19.) we may safely affirm the ancient and legal types did represent a Christ who was to die. It was an essential part of the paschal law, that the lamb should be slain: and in the sacrifices for sin, which presignified a Saviour to "sanctify the people with his own blood, the bodies of the beasts were burnt without the camp, and their blood brought into the sanctuary." (Heb. xiii. 11, 12.)

Nor did the types only require, but the prophecies also foretell, his death. For "he was brought (saith Isaiah) as a lamb to the slaughter:" "he was cut off out of the land of the living" (saith the same prophet); and "made his soul an offering for sin." (liii. 7, 8, 10.) Which are so plain and evident predictions, that the Jews shew not the least appearance of probability in their evasions.*

Being then the obstinate Jews themselves acknowledge one Messias was to die, and that a violent death; being we have already proved there is but one Messias foretold by the prophets, and shewed by those places, which they will not acknowledge, that he was to be slain: it followeth by their unwilling confessions and our plain approbations, that the promised Messias was ordained to die; which is our first assertion.

Secondly, We affirm, correspondently to these types and promises, that "Christ our passover is slain;" (1 Cor. v. 7.) that he whom we believe to be the true and only Messias did really and truly die. Which affirmation we may with confidence maintain, as being secure of any even the least denial. Jesus of Nazareth upon his crucifixion was so surely, so certainly dead, that they who wished, they who thirsted for his blood, they who obtained, who effected, who extorted his death, even they believed it, even they were satisfied with it: the chief priests, the Scribes and the Pharisees, the publicans and sinners, all were satisfied: the Sadducees most of all, who

* That this place of Isaiah must be understood of the Messias, I have already proved against the Jews out of the text, and their own traditions. Their objection particularly to these words, that the land of the living is the land of Canaan. So Solomon Jarchi, שומם ניבא עדות השם בearer of the word, &c. From the land of the living, that is, the land of Israel. And D. Kimchi endeavours to prove that exposition out of David, כנף מנה יכה ואש الفلسطينية לוכד ממאן שלמה לא יכה. 누 ביזיב אל ושתי אח ואכל הקדשית. כי אם as if the land of the living must be the land of Canaan, because David professeth he will walk before the Lord in the land of the living; whereas there is no more in that phrase than that he will serve God while he liveth. As Psal. xxvii. 13. "I had fainted unless I had believed to see the goodness of the Lord in the land of the living;" and Isa. xxxviii. 11. "I said, I shall not see the Lord, even the Lord in the land of the living;" which is sufficiently interpreted by the words which follow: I shall behold man no more with the inhabitants of the world. The land of the living then was not particularly the land of Canaan: nor can they persuade us that it could not refer to Christ, because he was never removed out of that land: but to be cut off out of the land of the living is, certainly, to be taken away from them which live upon the earth, that is, to die.
hugged their old opinion, and loved their error the better, because they thought him sure from ever rising up. But if they had denied or doubted it, the very stones would cry out and confirm it. Why did the sun put on mourning? Why were the graves opened, but for a funeral? Why did the earth quake? Why were the rocks rent? Why did the frame of nature shake, but because the God of nature died? Why did all the people, who came to see him crucified, and love to feed their eyes with such tragic spectacles, why did they beat upon their breasts and return, but that they were assured it was finished, (John xix. 30.) there was no more to be seen, all was done? It was not out of compassion that the merciless soldiers brake not his legs, but because they found him dead whom they came to dispatch; and being enraged that their cruelty should be thus prevented, with an impertinent villany they pierce his side, and with a foolish revenge endeavour to kill a dead man; thereby becoming stronger witnesses than they would, by being less the authors than they desired, of his death. For out of his sacred but wounded side, came blood and water, both as evident signs of his present death, as certain seals of our future and eternal life. These are the two blessed sacraments of the spouse of Christ, each assuring her of the death of her beloved. The sacrament of baptism, the water through which we pass into the Church of Christ, teacheth us that he died to whom we come. "For know you not (saith St. Paul) that so many of us as are baptized into Jesus Christ, are baptized into his death?" (Rom. vi. 3.) The sacrament of the Lord's supper, the bread broken, and the wine poured forth, signify that he died who instituted it; and "as often as we eat this bread, and drink this cup, we shew forth the Lord's death till he come." (1 Cor. xi. 26.)

Dead then our blessed Saviour was upon the cross; and that not by a feigned or metaphorical, but by a true and proper, death. As he was truly and properly man, in the same mortal nature which the sons of Adam have; so did he undergo a true and proper death, in the same manner as we die. Our life appeareth principally in two particulars, motion and sensation;* and while both or either of these are perceived in a body, we pronounce it lives. Not that the life itself consisteth in either or both of these, but in that which is the original principle of them both, which we call the soul; and the intimate presence or union of that soul unto the body is the life thereof. The real distinction of which soul from the body in man, our blessed Saviour taught most clearly in that admonition, "Fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to

* Τοῦ Ἰησοῦ τοῦ Ἰησοῦ θεοῦ μαθητα ἰησοῦ θεοῦ, κατα το ν ἀνθρώπων παρακλήσεως ἐν και παρά τον πρεσβυτέρων σχέδιο ἐν ταῦτα πρὸς ἒρωτι. Aris. de

Anim. 1. i. c. 2. "Ω διαφέρει τὸ ἵμαρστο (leg. ἰησοῦ) τοῦ ἰησοῦ, τοῦτο ἐστιν ἰησοῦ δια-

φέρει εἰς κυνῖς, αἰνηθείς, φανεροι, τιτα. Sallust. de Dis et Mundo, c. 8.
DEAD. 321

kill the soul; but rather fear him which is able to destroy both body and soul in hell.” (Matt. x. 28.) Now being death is nothing else but the privation or recession of life,* and we are then properly said to die when we cease to live; being life consisteth in the union of the soul unto the body, from whence, as from the fountain, flow motion, sensation, and whatsoever vital perfection: death can be nothing else but the solution of that vital union, or the actual separation of the soul, before united to the body.† As therefore when the soul of man doth leave the habitation of its body, and being the sole fountain of vitality bereaves it of all vital activity, we say that body or that man is dead: so when we read that Christ our Saviour died, we must conceive that was a true and proper death, and consequently that his body was bereft of his soul, and of all vital influence from the same.

Nor is this only our conception, or a doubtful truth; but we are as much assured of the propriety of his death, as of the death itself. For that the unspotted soul of our Jesus was really and actually separated from his body, that his flesh was bereft of natural life by the succession of that soul, appeareth by his own resignation, “Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit;” and by the evangelist’s expression, “and having said thus, he gave up the ghost.” (Luke xxiii. 46.) When he was to die, he resigned his soul; when he gave it up, he died; when it was delivered out of the body, then was the body

* As Secundus: φυσὶ καὶ ἀπόκτησις

‡ As the philosophers have anciently expressed it, especially Plato, who by the advantage of an error in the original of souls, best understood the end of life: τοῦτο νῦν ἔναντι ἀνακύκλωσης, λόγως καὶ χρησιμedes ἡ φύσις ἀπὸ τοῦ σώματος. Phadone, vol. i. p. 155. Again: “Ο θάνατος τυργάνι ἐν, ὥς ἵνα δοκῇ, ὁλλαν ἄλλα τοῖς προευγκλάσις διάλυσιν, τῆς φύσις καὶ τοῦ σώματος ἀπ’ ἀλλ’ ἀλλακτον. in Gorgias, vol. iv. p. 160. And more plainly and fully yet: ἦνομενάκα τι τῶν Σάντον ἐνε; Εἴπω γ’, ἐπὶ ἐπολαβην ὁ

So Tertullian: ‘Opus antem mortis in medio est, discretio corporis animacum.’ De Anim. c. 51. ‘Si mors non alid determinatur quam disjunctio corporis animacum, contrariaej conjunctio corporis animacum.’ Ibid. c. 27. This description of death is far more philosophical than the notion of Aristotle, who makes it to consist in the corruption of natural brass.

Συμμίζῃς, ἔρα με ἄλλο τι ἡ τὸ τῆς φύσις ἂπτ’ τοῦ σώματος ἀπαλαγῆς; καὶ ἐστὶν τῶν τινῶν ἐπιθέσιων, χρης μὲν ἄπτο τῆς φυσις ἀπαλαγῆς αὐτὸ καθ’ ἑαυτό τὸ σώμα γεγονεί, χρης δὲ τῶν φυσις τοῦ σώματος ἀπαλαγῆς αὐτίκος καθ’ αὐτὸν ἐστι; ἄρα μὲν ἄλλο τι ἡ βαθάτος ἡ τούτοι; Οἷς, ἄλλα τούτοι; ἐπὶ τοῦ ἐν Phadone, vol. i. p. 115. Thus with four several words, λόγως, διάλυσις, χρησιμων, καὶ ἀπαλαγη, both Plato express the separation of the soul from the body, and maketh death formally to consist of that separation. This solution is excellently expressed by Phocylides, Carm. admon. v. 97. 100.

Οὐ καὶ λέγεις ἀναλυμένος ἀναπτύξα, —

Ψυχή χαὶ μὴναισει ἀνήξια ἐν φυσιμετι.

Πνεῦμα χαὶ ἕστησ θεοῦ χρῆςς οὐτοιτε καὶ εἰκῶν.

Σῶμα χαὶ ἔκ γαϊς ἑμῖν ἐχαμ, καὶ πίνετε ἐς αὐτήν.

Ἀναγράφω καὶ εἰς εἰς ἀνυή ἄρ’ ἄρ’ ἂν πνεῦμα δεδεκται.

Advertiser: 'Anάγραφω τοῖς ἐνα τῶν τινων ἐπιθέσιων καὶ τοῦ Στερεωμον φυσικοῦ στήριγμα, καὶ τοῦ κα-

λεύσιμον ἕναντων εἰς τον τούτου φυσικαν, de

Juventut. &c. c. 4. Inasmuch as the soul is not that natural heat, and the corruption of that heat followeth upon the separation of the soul.

‡ This is expressed three ways, all signifying the separation of his soul from his body. St Mark and St Luke ἐξέπνεωσεν,
dead: * and so the eternal Son of God upon the cross did properly and truly die.

This reality and propriety of the death of Christ is yet further illustrated from the cause immediately producing it, which was an external violence and crucifixion, sufficient to dissolve that natural disposition of the body which is absolutely necessary to continue the vital union of the soul: the torments which he endured on the cross did bring him to that state, in which life could not longer be naturally conserved, and death, without intervention of supernatural power, must necessarily follow. 

For Christ who took upon him all our infirmities, sin only excepted, had in his nature not only a possibility and aptitude, but also a necessity of dying; and as to any extrinsical violence, able, according to the common course of nature, to destroy and extinguish in the body such an aptitude as is indispensibly required to continue a union with the soul, he had no natural preservative; nor was it in the power of his soul, to continue its vital conjunction unto his body bereft of a vital disposition.

It is true that Christ did voluntarily die, as he said of himself, "No man taketh away my life from me, but I lay it down of myself; I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again." (John x. 18.) For it was in his power to suffer or not to suffer the sentence of Pilate, and the nailing to the cross; it was in his power to have come down from the cross, when he was nailed to it: but when by an act of his

which is of the same force with ἐξίπνευ. But because ἐξίπνευ doth not always signify an absolute expiration, but sometimes a lipotomyn only; (as Hesychius, ἐκζύζω, θηνήζω.) So Hippocrates used it: Ἐξίπνευς (καυμα) ὅσοι ἐκζύζωσι δὲ τι ἔρεθεσυ. L. i. de Morbis, c. 3. and again: ἐκζύζων ὅσα τῷ αὐτῶς τῷ μετάσαν ἐξαναγ. γεμίσας.) lest therefore we should take ἐξίπνευς in such an imperfect sense, St. Matthew hath it ἀφέω τὰ πτέρυγα. Which is a full expression of the secession of the soul from the body, and consequently of death, which is, in the language of Secundus: πνευματικά ἀπότασις. Sentent. τῇ ἑτῇ θάνατο; p. 639.

* These three points or distinctions of time I have therefore noted, that I might recur to any objection which possibly might arise out of the ancient philosophical subtlety, which Aulus Gellius reports to be agitated at the table of Taurus. The question was propounded thus: 'Quæstium est, quando morientis moreretur, cum jam in morte esset, un tum etiam cum in vitam foret?' l. vi. c. 13. Where Taurus admoniseth the rest, that this was no light question: for, says he; * Gravissimi Philosophorum super haec re serio quæsivere: et ali mortuoe verbum atque momentum inaneo adhibu vita dici atque fieri putaverunt; ali nihil in illo tempore vitae reliquerunt, totumque illud quod mori dicerat morti viudi carunt.' Ibid. The ancient philosophers were divided; some saving a man died in the time of his life, others in the time of his death: but Plato observed a contradiction in both; for a man can neither be said to die while he is alive, nor when he is dead: ' et idcirco peperit ipse alium quodam novum in consilio tempus, quod verbis propriis atque integris τὸ ἐξαιρόνς φέλεν appellavit.' Ibid, which he thus describes in his Parmenides: Τὸ γὰρ ἐξαιρός ταύτων τῷ ἑκάστῳ σημαίνει, αὐτὸ ἐξαιρός μεταβάλλων εἰς ἑκάστου. vol. x. p. 138. So A. Gellius, l. vi. c. 13. Then when our Saviour commanded his soul into the hands of his Father, he was yet alive; when the soldier pierced his side, he was already dead; and the instant in which he gave up the ghost was the τὸ ἐξαιρός when he died.
will he had submitted to that death, when he had accepted and embraced those torments to the last, it was not in the power of his soul to continue any longer vitality to the body, whose vigour was totally exhausted. So not by a necessary compulsion, but voluntary election he took upon him a necessity of dying.

It is true that “Pilate marvelled he was dead so soon,” (Mark xv. 41.) and the two thieves lived longer to have their legs broken, and to die by the accession of another pain: but we read not of such long furrows on their backs as were made on his, nor had they such kind of agony as he was in the night before. What though he “cried with a loud voice, and gave up the ghost?” What though “the centurion, when he saw it, said, Truly this man was the Son of God?” (Mark xv. 37. 39.) The miracle was not in the death, but in the voice: the strangeness was not that he should die, but that at the point of death he should cry out so loud: he died not by, but with, a miracle.

Should we imagine Christ to anticipate the time of death, and to subtract his soul from future torments necessary to cause an expiration; we might rationally say the Jews and Gentiles were guilty of his death, but we could not properly say they slew him: guilty they must be, because they inflicted those torments on which in time death must necessarily follow; but slay him actually they did not, if his death proceeded from any other cause, and not from the wounds which they inflicted: whereas St. Peter expressly chargeth his enemies, “Him ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain;” (Acts ii. 23.) and again, “The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.” (Acts v. 30.)* Thus was the Lamb properly slain, and the Jews authors of his death, as well as of his crucifixion.

Wherefore being Christ took upon himself our mortality in the highest sense, as it includeth a necessity of dying; being he voluntarily submitted himself to that bloody agony in the garden, to the hands of the ploughers, who made long their furrows, and to the nails which fastened him to the cross; being those torments thus inflicted and continued did cause his death, and in this condition he gave up the ghost: it followeth that the only-begotten Son of God, the true Messias promised of old, did die a true and proper death. Which is the second conclusion in this explication.

But, thirdly, Because Christ was not only man, but also God, and there was not only a union between his soul and body while he lived, but also a conjunction of both natures, and a union in his person: it will be farther necessary, for the

* In both which places the original sheweth more expressly, that by their crucifixion they slew him: in the former thus, διὰ χειρῶν ἄνυμων προσταξόντας, ἀνείλητι. In the latter thus, εἰς ἐμις διεκθεισοσθε κριμάσατε ἐπί ξύλου.
understanding of his death, to shew what union was dissolved, what continued; that we may not make that separation either less or greater than it was.

Whereas then there were two different substantial unions in Christ, one of the parts of his human nature each to other, in which his humanity did consist, and by which he was truly man; the other of his natures, human and divine, by which it came to pass that God was man, and that man God: first, it is certain, as we have already shewn, that the union of the parts of his human nature was dissolved on the cross, and a real separation made between his soul and body. As far then as humanity consists in the essential union of the parts of human nature, so far the humanity of Christ upon his death did cease to be, and consequently he ceased to be man. But, secondly, the union of the natures remained still as to the parts, nor was the soul or body separated from the Divinity, but still subsisted as they did before, by the subsistence of the second person of the Trinity.

The truth of this assertion appeareth, first, from the language of this very Creed.* For as we proved before, that the only-begotten and eternal Son of God, God of God, very God of very God, was conceived and born, and suffered, and that the truth of these propositions relied upon the communion of properties, grounded upon the hypostatical union: so while the Creed in the same manner proceedeth speaking of the same person, that he was buried and descended into hell, it sheweth that neither his body, in respect of which he was buried, nor his soul, in respect of which he was generally conceived to descend into hell, had lost that union.

Again, as we believe that God redeemed us by his own blood, so also it hath been the constant language of the Church, that God died for us; which cannot be true, except the soul and body in the instant of separation, were united to the Deity.

Indeed, being all the gifts of God are without repentance, nor doth he ever subtract his grace from any without their abuse of it, and a sinful demerit in themselves; we cannot imagine the grace of union should be taken from Christ, who never offended, and that in the highest act of obedience, and the greatest satisfaction to the will of God.

It is true, Christ cried upon the cross with a loud voice,

saying, "My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?" (Matt. xxvii. 46.) But if that dereliction should signify a solution of the former union of his natures, the separation had been made not at his death, but in his life:* whereas indeed those words infer no more, than that he was bereft of such joys and comforts from the Deity, as should assuage and mitigate the acerbity of his present torments.

It remaineth therefore, that when our Saviour yielded up the ghost, he suffered only an external violence; and what was subject to such corporal force did yield unto those dolorous impressions. Being then such is the imbecility and frailty of our nature, that life cannot long subsist in exquisite torments; the disposition of his body failed the soul, and the soul deserted his body. But being no power hath any force against omnipotence, nor could any corporal or finite agent work upon the union made with the Word, therefore that did still remain entire both to the soul and to the body. The Word was once indeed without either soul or body; but after it was made flesh, it was never parted either from the one or from the other.†

Thus Christ did really and truly die, according to the condition of death to which the nature of man is subject: but although he was more than man, yet he died no more than man can die; a separation was made between his soul and body, but no disunion of them and his Deity. They were disjointed one from another, but not from him that took them both together; rather by virtue of that remaining conjunction they were again united after their separation.‡ And this I conceive sufficient for the third and last part of our explication.

The necessity of this part of the Article is evident, in that the death of Christ is the most intimate and essential part of the mediatorship, and that which most intrinsically concerns

---

* "Olim tuos atque tuorum; et sic tuus, ut hic in aequo et sordide similes eis in eodem fietus et aequum, ut hic in aequo et sordide similes eis in eodem fietus et aeque."

† "Epist. de Kyrioti."

‡ "Epist. de Kyrioti."
every office and function of the Mediator, as he was Prophet, Priest, and King.

First, It was necessary, as to the Prophetical office, that Christ should die, to the end that the truth of all the doctrine which he delivered might be confirmed by his death. He was "the true and faithful witness," (Rev. iii. 14.) "who before Pontius Pilate witnessed a good confession." (1 Tim. vi. 13.) "This is he that came by water and blood; and there are three that bear witness in earth, the spirit, the water, and the blood." (1 John v. 6. 8.) He preached unto us a new "and better Covenant, which was established upon better promises," (Heb. viii. 6.) and that was to be ratified with his blood; which is therefore called by Christ himself the "blood of the New Testament," (Matt. xxvi. 28. Luke xxii. 20. Heb. x. 29.) or, "everlastning Covenant:" (Heb. xiii. 20.) for that Covenant was also a Testament; and "where a testament is, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator." (Heb. ix. 16.) Beside, Christ, as a Prophet, taught us not only by word, but by example: and though every action of his life who came to fulfil the Law, be most worthy of our imitation; yet the most eminent example was in his death, in which he taught us much variety of Christian virtues. What an example was that of faith in God to "lay down his life, that he might take it again;" (John x. 17.) in the bitterness of his torments to "commend his spirit into the hands of his Father;" (Luke xxiii. 46.) and "for the joy that was set before him, to endure the cross, and despise the shame!" (Heb. xii. 2.) What a pattern of meekness, patience, and humility, for the Son of man to come, "not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and give his life a ransom for many;" (Matt. xx. 28.) to be "led like a sheep to the slaughter, and like a lamb dumb before the shearer, not to open his mouth;" (Acts viii. 32.) to "endure the contradictions of sinners against himself," (Heb. xii. 3.) and to "humble himself unto death, even the death of the cross!" (Phil. ii. 8.) What a precedent of obedience for the Son of God "to learn obedience by the things that he suffered;" (Heb. v. 8) "to be made under the Law," (Gal. iv. 4.) and though he never broke the Law, to "become obedient unto death;" (Phil. ii. 8.) to go with cheerfulness to the cross upon this resolution, "As my Father gave me commandment, even so I do!" (John xiv. 31.) What exemplar of charity, to "die for us while we were yet sinners," (Rom. v. 8.) and enemies, when "greater love hath no man than this, to lay down his life for his friends;" (John xv. 13.) to pray upon the cross for them that crucified him, and to apologize for such as barbarously slew him, "Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do!" (Luke xxiii. 34.) Thus Christ did "suffer for us, leaving us an example, that we should follow his steps," (1 Pet. ii. 21.) that as he "suffered for us, in the flesh, we should arm ourselves like
wise with the same mind. For he that hath suffered in the flesh, hath ceased from sin; that he no longer should live the rest of his time in the flesh, to the lusts of men, but to the will of God.” (1 Pet. iv. 1, 2.) And so his death was necessary for the confirmation and completion of his prophetic office.

Secondly, it was necessary that Christ should die, and by his death perform the sacerdotal office. “For every high-priest taken from among men, is ordained for men in things pertaining to God, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins.” (Heb. v. 1.) But Christ had no other sacrifice to offer for our sins than himself. “For it was not possible that the blood of bulls and goats should take away sins;” (Heb. x. 4.) and therefore when “sacrifice and offering God would not, then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God;” (Ibid. 8, 9.) then did Christ determine to offer up himself for us. And because the sacrifices of old were to be slain, and generally “without shedding of blood there is no remission;” (Heb. ix. 22.) therefore if he will offer sacrifice for sin, he must of necessity die, and so “make his soul an offering for sin.” (Isa. liii. 3.) If Christ be our passover, he must be sacrificed for us. We were sold under sin, and he who will redeem us must give his life for our redemption: for we could not be “redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, but only with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot.” (1 Pet. i. 18, 19.) We all had sinned, and so offended the justice of God, and by an act of that justice the sentence of death passed upon us; it was necessary therefore that Christ our surety should die, to satisfy the justice of God, both for that iniquity, as the propitiation for our sins, and for that penalty, as he who was to bear our griefs. God was offended with us; and he must die who was to reconcile him to us. “For when we were enemies (saith St. Paul), we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son.” (Rom. v. 10.) We “were sometimes alienated, and enemies in our mind by our wicked works; yet now hath he reconciled us in the body of his flesh through death.” (Col. i. 21.) Thus the death of Christ was necessary towards the great act of his priesthood, as the oblation, propitiation, and satisfaction, for the sins of the whole world; and not only for the act itself, but also for our assurance of the power and efficacy of it (“for if the blood of bulls and goats sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh; how much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge our consciences from dead works?” Heb. ix. 13, 14.), and of the happiness flowing from it (for “he that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?” Rom. viii. 32.) Upon this assurance, founded on his death, we have the freedom and “boldness to enter into the holiest by the
blood of Jesus, by a new and living way which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh.” (Heb. x. 19, 20.) Neither was the death of Christ necessary only in respect of us immediately for whom he died, but in reference to the Priest himself who died, both in regard of the qualification of himself, and consummation of his office. For “in all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren; that he might be a merciful and faithful High-priest, and having suffered, being tempted, might be able to succour them that are tempted.” (Heb. ii. 17, 18.) So that passing through all the previous torments, and at last through the pains of death, having suffered all which man can suffer, and much more, he became, as an experimental Priest, most sensible of our infirmities, most compassionate of our miseries, most willing and ready to support us under, and to deliver us out of, our temptations. Thus being qualified by his utmost suffering, he was also fitted to perfect his offering. For as “the high-priest once every year” for the atonement of the sins of the people “went” into the Holy of Holies, “not without blood;” so “Christ being come a High-priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, by his own blood entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.” (Heb. ix. 7, 11, 12.) And this is the grand necessity of the death of Christ in respect of his sacerdotal office.

Thirdly, There was a necessity that Christ should die in reference to his regal office. “O king, live for ever;”(Dan. ii. 4. iii. 9.) is either the loyal or the flattering vote for temporal princes; either the expression of our desires, or the suggestion of their own: whereas our Christ never shewed more sovereign power than in his death, never obtained more than by his death. It was not for nothing that Pilate suddenly wrote, and resolutely maintained what he had written, “This is the King of the Jews.” (Matt. xxvii. 37.) That title on the cross did signify no less than that his regal power was active even there: for “having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a show of them openly, triumphing over them in it;” (Col. ii. 15.) and “through his death destroyed him that had the power of death, that is, the devil.” (Heb. ii. 14.) Nor was his death only necessary for the present execution, but also for the assestion of farther power and dominion, as the means and way to obtain it. The “Spirit of Christ” in the prophets of old “testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.” (1 Pet. i. 11.) “He shall drink of the brook in the way, (saith the prophet David, Psal. cx. 7.) therefore shall he lift up his head.” “He humbled himself; and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross. Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name.” (Phil. ii. 8, 9.) “For this end Christ bsta
died and rose, and revived, that he might be the Lord of the dead and living." (Rom. xiv. 9.)

Thus it is necessary to believe and profess our faith in Christ who died: for by his blood and the virtue of his death was our redemption wrought, as by the price which was paid, as by the atonement which was made, as by the full satisfaction which was given, that God might be reconciled to us, who before was offended with us, as by the ratification of the Covenant made between us, and the acquisition of full power to make it good unto us.

After which exposition thus premised, every Christian is conceived to express thus much, when he makes profession of faith in Christ Jesus which was dead: I do really and truly assent unto this, as a most infallible and fundamental truth; That the only-begotten and eternal Son of God, for the working out of our redemption, did in our nature, which he took upon him, really and truly die, so as, by the force and violence of those torments which he felt, his soul was actually separated from his body; and although neither his soul nor body was separated from his Divinity, yet the body bereft of his soul was left without the least vitality. And thus I believe in Jesus Christ that was crucified and dead.

And Buried.

When the most precious and immaculate soul of Christ was really separated from his flesh, and that union in which his natural life consisted was dissolved, his sacred body, as being truly dead, was laid up in the chambers of the grave: so that as we believe him dead, by the separation of his soul; we also believe him buried by the sepulture of his body.

And because there is nothing mysterious or difficult in this part of the Article, it will be sufficiently explicated when we have shewn, first, That the promised Messiah was to be buried; and secondly, That our Jesus was so buried as the Messiah was to be.

That the Messias was to be buried, could not possibly be denied by those who believed he was to die among the Jews; because it was the universal custom of that nation to bury their dead.* We read most frequently of the sepulchres of

*It is observed by Tacitus of the Jews, in opposition to the Roman custom: 'Corpora condere, quam cremare, e more Egyipto.' Hist. 1. v. c. 5. As of the Egyptians by others: "Cεταντων δι' Αιγυπτων μην τερματίζειται, ἔρηπται δὲ καταπτυσσομεν. Ποιος δὲ τίς τοις Μνασι προτυπούτα. Luc. Purh. p. 238. But the Jews received this custom no more from the Egyptians than from the Persians, whom they may be rather said to follow, because they used not the Egyptian ταρπαίας: neither were they more distinguished from the Romans than from the Grecians, who also burned the bodies of the dead. Δικαίως κατά τά έννοι τας τερπελις, ἵνα ἐλεητία θησαυρίζω δὲ το πρώτο τε θάνατον δὲ το νεωτέρον καταπτυσσομεν ταρ-
παίας δὲ Αιγυπτως. Lucian, peri πίνακος, § 21. Although therefore it be not true, that the Jews received their custom of burying their dead from the Egyptians, because Abraham at first purchased a burying-place; yet it hath been observed,
and is certainly true, that their general custom was to inter. Philo, one of their writers: "And whatsoever a man before death put in his sepulchre; I say, by the grace of God he must die, and the soul be saved; for it is written in the book of the Psalms, 'I am the Lord, and there is none else.'"

Nor was his burial only represented typically but foretold prophetically, both by a suppositional intimation, and by an express prediction. The Psalmist intimated and supposed no less, when speaking in the person of the Christ, he said, "My flesh shall rest in hope, for thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption." (Psal. xvi. 9, 10.) That flesh is there supposed only such, that is, a body dead; and that body resting in the grave, the common habitation of the dead; yet resting there in hope that it should never see corruption, but rise from thence before that time in which bodies in their graves are wont to putrefy. Beside this intimation, there is yet a clear expression of the grave of the Messiah in that eminent prediction of Isaiah, "He was cut off out of the land of the living, and he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death." (liii. 8, 9.) For whatsoever the true interpretation of the prophecy be (of which we shall speak hereafter), it is certain that he who was to be cut off, was to have a grave; and being we have already shewn that he who was to be cut off was the Messiah; it followeth, that by virtue of this prediction the promised Messiah was to be buried.

Secondly, That our Jesus, whom we believe to be the true Messiah, was thus buried, we shall also prove, although it seem repugnant to the manner of his death. For those who were sentenced by the Romans to die upon the cross, had not the favour of a sepulchre, but their bodies were exposed to the fowls of the air, and the beasts of the field; or if they escaped

and is certainly true, that their general custom was to inter. Philo, one of their writers: "And whatsoever a man before death put in his sepulchre; I say, by the grace of God he must die, and the soul be saved; for it is written in the book of the Psalms, 'I am the Lord, and there is none else.'"

Nor was his burial only represented typically but foretold prophetically, both by a suppositional intimation, and by an express prediction. The Psalmist intimated and supposed no less, when speaking in the person of the Christ, he said, "My flesh shall rest in hope, for thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption." (Psal. xvi. 9, 10.) That flesh is there supposed only such, that is, a body dead; and that body resting in the grave, the common habitation of the dead; yet resting there in hope that it should never see corruption, but rise from thence before that time in which bodies in their graves are wont to putrefy. Beside this intimation, there is yet a clear expression of the grave of the Messiah in that eminent prediction of Isaiah, "He was cut off out of the land of the living, and he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death." (liii. 8, 9.) For whatsoever the true interpretation of the prophecy be (of which we shall speak hereafter), it is certain that he who was to be cut off, was to have a grave; and being we have already shewn that he who was to be cut off was the Messiah; it followeth, that by virtue of this prediction the promised Messiah was to be buried.

Secondly, That our Jesus, whom we believe to be the true Messiah, was thus buried, we shall also prove, although it seem repugnant to the manner of his death. For those who were sentenced by the Romans to die upon the cross, had not the favour of a sepulchre, but their bodies were exposed to the fowls of the air, and the beasts of the field; or if they escaped
AND BURIED.

their voracity, to the longer injury of the air and weather. * A guard was also usually set about them, lest any pitying hand should take the body from the accursed tree, and cover it with earth.†

And Juvenal:

' Vultur, jumento et canibus crucibusque reliictis, Ad fœsus properat, partemque cadaveris afferit.' 

Srt. xiv. 77.

So Prudentius:

—'Cruix illum tofact in aras, Viventescque oculos offaret alitibus.'

πηριμ. Στρ. Hymn. xi. 63. This punishment did appear in the mythology of Prometheus; who though he were by some represented simply as χειρακτις, by others particularly he is described as αἰθ.-σταυρωμένος, especially by Lucian, who delivers him προστολαμένοι, κρεμάμενοι, πεπανταλαμένοι, αδειονταλαμένοι, αδελκονταλαμένοι. And Tertullian speaking of Pontus, from whence Marcion came:

' Omnia torment, omnia rigit: nihil illic nisi fentos calet, quæ fabulas scenis dedit, de sacrificis Tarorum, et amoribus Colchorum, et crucibus Caucasorum.' 

Adv. Marc. l. i. c. 1. He touches the subject of three tragedies, Medea, Iphigenia in Tauris, and Prometheus Vinctus, or rather Crucifixus. As therefore the eagle there did feed upon his liver, so were the bodies of crucified persons left to the promiscuous rapacity of carnivorous fowls. So true it was of them what Augustus once said: ' Cuidam sepulturam petenti respondit, jam illam in vulgcrum esse potestate.' 

Suet. c. 13. Nor were they only in the power of the fowls of the air, as Prometheus was, whom they durst not hang too low, lest men should succour him: 'etii yce tapis nono kов 

wesganu ilantwēsThi χξ, says Vulcan in Lucian for that reason, c. 1. but ordinarily they hung so low upon the cross, that the ravenous beasts might reach them, as Apuleius describes: ' Patibuli cruciatum, can canes et vultures intima prostratque viscera.' 

de Aur. Asin. l. vi. ad fam. 

* So the bodies were often left upon the cross till the sun and rain had putrefied and consumed them. As when the daughter of Polycrates did see her father's face in a dream, to be washed by Jupiter, and to be anointed by the sun, when he hung upon the cross, it was performed. 

Polylocton δυς ναυμαχους πιτάλες πάνω της δύνα της δυτικῆς, ἑκνηίς μὲν γὰρ ὑπὸ τοῦ Δωμᾶ κατε, ἵππησε δὲ ὑπὸ τοῦ ὕππου, ἀλλεὶς αὐτῷ ἵππον ἡπείρα τάξαπα ὅμαζα. 

Iov. Thad., c. 125. Of which Tertullian, de Anim. c. 46. ' Ut cum Polycratii sanctio fia crucem propiciat de Solis unguine et ivacero Jovis, and which is farther thus expressed by Valerius Maximus: ' Patres ejus artus, et tabido care more manantia membra, atque illum lavam, cujus Neptuni annulis manu piscatoria restituerat, sita marcìdam, Samos lastis oculis aspexit.' 

I. vi. c. 9. Thus were the bodies of the crucified left; ' ut in sublimi patrescerent. Quid? Cyprians Theodorum Philosorum non ignohosse nune miratur? 

cui cum Lysimachus Rex crucem minaret, Istis, quasset, inquit, ista horribilia mimetare purpuratis tuis: Theodori quipdem nihil interest, humile an sublimè patrescat.' 

Cicer. l. i. Tusc. Quast. c. 43. And so they perished, as the Scythians generally did, according to the description of Silius Italicus, l. xiii. 485.

'At gente in Scythica suffixa cadaver tranicis 

Lenta dies sepelit, petri liquentia tabo.'

Thus whether by the fowls or beasts, or by the injury of time or weather, the flesh of those that were crucified was consumed; as Artemidorus observed, who concluded from thence, that it was bad for the rich to dream of being crucified: ' Toiδε δὲ πελουσίων δίκαιον γ ναὶ παρακατάτηκα, καὶ 

tais ῥάρας διαλύουσιν δι' σταυρωτίνες.' 

Quintor. l. ii. c. 58. 

† As appears by that relation in Petronius Arbiter: ' Imperator Provinciae latrones jussit crucibus affigisse—Proxima antem nocte, comm miles qui cruces ase 
vendebat, ne quis ad.sepulturam corpora detrageret.' 

And when that soldier was absent: ' Tutaque crucii unius pa

rentes, u tepiderunt laxatam custodium, 

detraxere nocte pendentem, supremaque mandaverunt officio.' 

Satur. c. 111. Where we see the soldier set for a guard, and the end of that carnal (which the Greek lexicographers do not well confine to the στρατεύμα της ἐναρμωμένης), to keep the body of him which was crucified from being buried by his friends. Thus when Cleomenes was dead, his body was fastened to a cross (another example of the ignominy of this punishment), by the command of Ptolemy; ' Οδί πτολεμαίος, ἰς ἐγὼ ταῦτα, πρέπει ὑπὸ τοῦ γεωμέτρου κεραμάτα καταβαθείσαντες.

Where ἐγραμμένα is again to be observed
Under that custom of the Roman law was now the body of our Saviour on the cross, and the guard was set: there was "the centurion and they that were with him, watching Jesus." (Matt. xxvii. 54.) The centurion returned as soon as Christ was dead, and gave testimony unto Pilate of his death; but the watch continueth still. How then can the ancient predictions be fulfilled? How can this Jonas be conveyed into the belly of the whale? Where shall "he make his grave with the wicked, or with the rich, in his death" (Isa. liii. 9.) of crucifixion? By the providence of him who did foretell it, it shall be fulfilled. They who petitioned that he might be crucified, shall intercede that he may be interred. For the custom of the Jews required, that whosoever suffered by the sentence of their law, should be buried, and that the same day he suffered.* Particularly they could not but remember the express words of Moses, "If a man have committed a sin worthy of death, and he put to death, and thou hang him on a tree; his body shall not remain all night upon the tree, but thou shalt in any wise bury him that day." (Deut. xxi. 22, 23.) Upon this general custom and particular law, especially considering the sanctity of the day approaching, "the Jews, that the bodies should not remain upon the cross on the sabbath-day, besought Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away." (John xix. 31.) And this is the first step to the burial of our Saviour.

For though by the common rule of the Roman law, those that were condemned to the cross were to lose both soul and body on the tree, as not being permitted either sepulchre or mourning;† yet it was in the power of the magistrate to indulge the Jews because of their desire, it could not possibly deny

as taken for ἀνασταυρίζει, for not long after in the same author it follows: Ὀλαγας δὲ Ὠτετον ἡμερις, οἱ τὸ σάμα τοῦ Κλε-

mάνους ἀνασταυρώματι παραφυλάττοτες εἰδο

εἰμιγένθραματα τῇ κεφαλῇ περιπτευμένιον, και ἀνακύπτοντα τὸ πρώτων, ὥς μεν

δόμον ἐφιπτταθώσι σαβεδωρών. Pintarch. in

vit. Chrm. c. 38. Where we see a guard set to keep him from burial, and the voracious fowls ready to seize on him, had they not been kept off by a serpent involving his head. Thus were soldiers, upon the crucifixion of any person set as a guard, τὸν ἀνασταυρώματι παραφυλά-

τοντος, or περίκειται, et crucem asservantes, τι

ne quis ad sepulturam corpus de-

traheret.'

� οὐκ ἦν ὁ Λεββαν Ἰησοῦς τοῦ βασιλείου ἱστορία, οὐδὲ οἱ συμμετείχοντες ἔπει,

Maimon. Tract. Sashed. c. 15. So Josephus: Τοῦτον ἤθελον πρὸς τὰς

tαφὰς τῆς ὁμολογίας συνεμεῖναι, ὅτε καὶ πᾶς ἐν καταλείψεις ἁνασταυρώματι πρὸς δίδασκον ἴλιου


c. 18.

† Non solent autem lugeri (ut Nert-

tius att) hostes, vel perduelliones dam-
nati, nec suspendi, nec qui manus sibi intulit, ne taccio vitae, sed mala con-

scientia." Digest. l. iii. tit. 2. 1. Liberorum.

‡ So Ulpius. 1. ix. de Officio Procon-

sulis: "Corpora eorum qui capite dam-

nantur cognatus ipsorum negando non

sunt: et id se observasse etiam Divus

Augustinus libro decimo de vita sua

scribit. Hodie autem eorum in quos ani-

madvertitur corpora non aliter sepeli-

untur, quam si fuerit petitum et permis-

sum; et nonnunciam non permettatur,

maxime magis tatus causa damnatorum." So Paulus, l. i. Sententiarum: "Corpora

animadversorum quibuslibet petentibus

ad sepulturam danda sunt. Obnoxios

criminum digno supplicio subjectos sepul-

tura tradi non vetamus." Cod. l. iii. tit. 43.

l. 11
him burial when they requested it; he that professed to find no fault in him while he lived, could make no pretence for an accession of cruelty after his death.

Now though the Jews had obtained their request of Pilate, though Christ had been thereby certainly buried; yet had not the prediction been fulfilled, which expressly mentioned "the rich in his death." For, as he was crucified between two thieves, so had he been buried with them, because by the Jews there was appointed a public place of burial for all such as suffered as malefactors.

Wherefore to rescue the body of our blessed Saviour from the malicious hands of those who caused his crucifixion, "there came a rich man of Arimathea, named Joseph, an honourable counsellor, a good man and a just; who also himself waited for the kingdom of God, being a disciple of Jesus, but secretly for fear of the Jews: this Joseph came and went in boldly unto Pilate, and besought him that he might take away the body of Jesus. And Pilate gave him leave, and commanded the body to be delivered: he came, therefore, and took the body of Jesus." (Matt. xxvii. Mark xv. Luke xxiii. John xix.)

BESIDE, "there came also Nicodemus, which at the first came to Jesus by night, a man of the Pharisees, a ruler of the Jews, a master of Israel:" this Nicodemus came "and brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about a hundred pound weight. Then took they the body of Jesus, and wound it in linen clothes, with the spices, as the manner of the Jews is to bury." (John iii. 1. 10. xix. 39, 40.)

And thus was the burial of the Son of God performed, according to the custom of the people of God. For the understanding of which there are three things considerable; first, What was done to the body, to prepare it for the grave; secondly, How the sepulchre was prepared to receive the body; thirdly, How the persons were fitted by the interring of our Saviour to fulfil the prophecy.

As for fulfilling the custom of the Jews as to the preparation in respect of his body, we find the spices and the linen clothes. When "there came a woman having an alabaster box of ointment of spikenard, very precious, and she brake the box, and poured it on his head;" Christ made this interpretation of that action, "She is come beforehand to anoint my body to the burying." (Mark xiv. 3. 8.) When Christ was risen, "Mary Magdalene and the other Mary brought the spices which they had prepared, that they might come and anoint him." (Mark xvi. I. Luke xxiv. 1.) Thus was there an interpreted and an intended unction of our Saviour, but really and actually he was interred with the spices which Nicodemus brought. The custom of wrapping in the clothes we see in Lazarus rising from the grave; for "he came forth bound
hand and foot, with grave-clothes, and his face was bound about with a napkin. (John xi. 44.) In the same manner when our Saviour was risen, "Simon Peter went into the sepulchre, and saw the linen clothes lie, and the napkin that was about his head, not lying with the linen clothes, but wrapped together in a place by itself." (John. xx. 6, 7.) Thus, according to the custom of the Jews, was the body of Christ bound in several linen clothes with an aromatic composition, and so prepared for the sepulchre.*

* There are four words in the Gospel expressing the linen clothes in which the dead were buried, Ζυγά, δόχης, κεφαλή, and σώματα. The Ζυγά is used by three evangelists, as what was brought by Joseph: Καὶ ἄρα ἔστασεν σωμάτα, καὶ καθιστά ἀυτὸν, ένθυμητὶ τῇ σωμάτι, Mark xv. 46. and St. Matthew xxi. 59, and St. Luke xiii. 53. ἡσύχασθεν αὐτὸ σωμάτι. Κέφαλις is used by St. John xix. 10, Τί βλέπειν ὅτι ταύτα ἵνα, καὶ ἔστασα αὐτῷ δόχης. Now both these words show that the clothes were linen. Ζυγά, τινες λίνου, Gloss. Πασχάλων, λοιπὸν τῷ, ἧδον σωμάτιν. Eutym. So Κέφαλις, λιπα ἱμάτια. Hesych. This was according to the custom of the Jews, amongst whom there was a kind of law, that they should use no other grave-clothes. As therefore the Egyptians in Herodotus, l. ii. c. 86. Ἀκατάστατο τὸ νεκρόν, καταλίθουσιν πῶς αὐτῷ τῷ σώμα σωμάτιν ἑσύχασι, so the Jews. But it is further to be observed, that St. John saith ἔστασα αὐτῷ ΄δόχης, they bound up his body with several clothes, which signifies it was done for suit. As Herodotus in another case, l. vii. c. 151. Συγκεκρινεῖ τὰ ἱματιά ἐν τοῖς, καὶ σωμάτιν ἑσύχασιν παντελῶς κατετάλισαν. Whereas then Julius Pollux observes, Ομονομ. l. vii. c. 19. Αὐθεντεύει θέσιν καὶ τελεμῶν σωμάτωσι. I conceive these δόχης in St. John were such τελεμῶν: συνελέγα, litter facie, or institor, called in the case of Lazarus κεφαλή, John xi. 44. for as he is described δεξιομένως κεφαλή, so it is said of the body of Christ, ἔστασα αὐτῷ δόχης, they bound it with linen bandages or swathes. These are the ἱστοία δεσμά, as the grammarians interpret κεφαλή.

Nec mora, convenix manibus pedibusque repeute
Procident tuniculo, volum corn linea texti,
Et totum gracios connectit fascia corpus.

Hence Basil, bishop of Seleucia, makes Lazarus come out of the grave to live like an infant in swaddling-clothes: Ε'κεῖθεν ἀναπτεῖται νεοῖς τετελεμένοις τὰ τῶν Ζαρατουστικῶν στεφάλων, καὶ τὴν έπάνω ἀπεδείχθαι τὸ τάφρον στέλλων ὡσεὶ λάβατον, ἀλλὰ ἵστατο ταῖς κεφαλίς, ἐκ τὰ στήριξι, καὶ μετὰ τάκιν φέρων τὰ σπάγγαρα. Ortat. 35. in Publican, et Pharise. The

κεφαλή then were institor, as the Vulgar Latin; facie, as Juvenal and the Sycra translation, ζωοφόροι τις, victus fascis. Of the same nature I conceive were the δόχης mentioned in our Saviour's burial; and so St. Augustin does express them in reconciling the rest of the evangelists, who mentioned only Joseph and the Sin-

ton, with St. John, who addeth Nicod—
As for the preparation of the sepulchre to receive the body of our Saviour, the custom of the Jews was also punctually observed in that. Joseph of Arimathea had prepared a place of burial for himself, and the manner of it is expressed: for "in the place where he was crucified, there was a garden, and in the garden a new sepulchre, wherein never man was laid, which Joseph had hewn out of a rock for his own tomb: there laid they Jesus, and rolled a great stone to the door of the sepulchre." (Matt. xxvii. Mark xv.) And so Christ was buried, after the manner of the Jews, in a vault made by the excavation of the rocky firm part of the earth, and that vault secured from external injury by a great massy stone rolled to the mouth or door thereof.* After which stone was once rolled

mus and the εἶδινα: * Neque hic aliquid repugnet recte intelligibilus. Neque enim illi qui de Nicodemo tacuerunt, affirmaverunt, a solo Josepho Dominum sepulturn, quamvis solus commemoratiasem fecerint; aut quaen illi una sündone a Josepho involventem dixerunt, proptera prohibuerunt intelligi et alia linet in potissime allegri a Nicodemo et superaddi: ut verum narraret Johannes quod non uno lineto, sed linteris, involutus sit; quamvis et proper sudarium quiu capitii adhibeiatur, et instituted quibus totum corpus aligatum est, quia omnia de lino erant, etiamis una sündone ibi fuit, verissime idc potuit, liguerunt enm linteris." De conclusu Evang. I. iii. c. 23. These which he calls institi quibus totum corpus aligatum est, were the παρὰ ὑπάρχου involvata mortis. Beside these we read in the history of Lazarus, ἀφίησι αὐτοῦ συνάδεισι περιπεθέα, John xii. 44. And of our Saviour, καὶ τὸ συνάδειον, ὃ ἦν ἐπὶ τῆς περιφάνειας αὐτοῦ, John xx. 7. The same is rendered by the Syriac κηρύ, and Nonnus makes it a Syriac word, καὶ λυξὺν περικείμενον καλόματι καλλίτερα κατηγορεῖν, Συνάδειον τὸ πείρ ἐπὶ λύμαν στῆμα. c. xi. 172. Whereas the word is not of a Syriac but Latin origin; and from the Latins came to the Greek and eastern people, sudor and sudare, from thence sudarium. ' Vatinius reus, agente in eum Calvo, sudario candido frontem detersit.' Quintil. Instr. Orat. I. vi. c. 3. § 60. Suetonius of Nero: ' Plerumque proedit in publicum ligato circa collum sudario.' c. 53. This was translated into their own language by the latter Greeks, to signify that which before was called ἐκσεβαίων and καλὸδειον, as is observed by Julius Pollux, I. vii. c. 16. Ἄν ἐμ ἐκσεβαίων, ἐν τε καὶ τὰ τοῦ ἀγντίκου, εἰν ἐμ ἐπὶ ἐν τῇ μὲν καλὸδειον καλὸδειον, ἐν τῇ περιφάνεια ἐνεργεῖται. ' Αἰσθητὰν γὰρ ἐν πλαύτῳ (v. 729.) τοίνυν τὸ χέρι, ἔτσι καθεύδον καμάτιον λαβὼν, Τὸ βίβλιον περιφέρεται where τὰ βίβλια περιφέρον, is the same with that in Quintilian, frontem detersit; ἑκσεβαίων then was the same with sudarium. So the scholiast upon this place: ' Ημιστόθηκαν δέν τὸν περίστατον τοῦ σεραμικοῦ. This is the proper signification of Συνάδειον, viz. a linen cloth used to wipe off sweat: but when it was translated into the Chaldean or Syriac language, it received a more general signification, of any cloth, or veil, or covering of linen, for any other use, as Ruth iii. 15. "Bring the veil that thou hast upon thee:" the Chaldean rendereth it ἀπὲρτον; and it held six measures of barley. So when Moses is said to "put a veil on his face," Exod. xxxiv. 33. the Chaldee again rendereth it νεῖας οὐκ ἐπειδὴ ἔρημος. So the Rabbinos ordinarily use, ἀπειρτον the veil or covering of his head: and in that sense it is here taken, not with any relation to the etymology, as Nonnus conceived in those words, c. xi. 171. Εγγιόν ξὺν ἐξίσωτα καλοπρίφους περιάστει ... as if Lazarus had come sweating out of his grave; but the only use, is being bound about the head, and covering the face, which the Epistle of Martyialis calls ' sudarium mortuorum.' Epist. ad Tolidan. c. 1. * Strabo observeth of Jerusalem, that the ground about it, ἦτοι ἑξίσωτα σταῦνον was in πέτρας, for nine miles rocky underneatth, I. xvi. p. 1104. ed. Amst. 1727 p. 761. ed. Pat. 1630. It is therefore no wonder that in a garden so near Jerusalem there should be found ground which was petrosa. It is said therefore of Joseph, Matt. xxvii. 60. that μαραθωνία ἐλατομεῖον ἐν πέτρας of the sepulchre, Mark xv. 46. that ἐν λατομουργίαι ἐν πέτρας, and Luke
ARTICLE IV.

thither, the whole funeral action was performed, and the sepulchre completed: so that it was not lawful by the custom of the Jews any more to open the sepulchre, or disturb the interred body.*

Thirdly, Two eminent persons did concur unto the burial of our Saviour, a ruler and a counsellor;† men of those orders

xxii. 53. λαβών, which signify no less than that it was cut out of a rock: and Nonus makes a particular paraphrase to that purpose of λαβών only, c. xx. 214.

Τόμησος λαβών ουδέσωσάς ἀπὸ πέτρας

Γινώσκε, οὐδείς τεσσερώς.

Where λαβών signifies the excavation of the rock, and γινώσκε the manner by which that excavation was performed by incision, or excision. But Stahmarius hath invented another way, making the earth to be digged, and a sepulchre built by art, of stone, within it. And this interpretation he endeavours to prove out of the text; first alleging that πέτρα signifies, in the writers of that age, a stone, not a rock, and therefore λειτυργομεν ἐκ πέτρας ἐκ λίθου, made of stone; otherwise the article would have been added ἐκ τῆς πέτρας. If he meant the rock which was there. But this is soon answered; for in St. Matthew the article is expressly added, ἐκλατώμον ἐκ τῆς πέτρας. St. Matthew therefore understood it of that rock which was in the garden; and the rest without question understood the same. Again, he objects that λατεῖας signifies not only λαβών ἐκ λατεῖας καθεδρεῖον, but also ταράτσαμεν καθ θιοκορς: and λατεῖας signifies the last only. Wherefore being it is said not only λειτυργομεν, which may be understood of building, but also λατεῖας, which can be understood of no other; therefore he concludes that it was a vault built of square stone within the ground. But there is no necessity of such a precise sense of λατεῖας, which may be extended to any sense of λατεῖας (as Orig- ingen indifferently λατεῖας ἐκ λατεῖας κυριακῶν ἐκ πέτρας, c. Cels. li. ii. § 69.), and that, when it speaks of a Jewish custom, must be taken in that sense which is most congruous to their custom, and as they used the word. Now they read the word βυθυ by λατεῖας, as 1 Kings x. 15: ἔδρα βυθος βυθοῦσα στήθος ἐκ βυθοῦσα στηθοῦ ἐκ βυθοῦσα στήθος, unde esculis.

As therefore Deut. vi. 11. λάκκους λεπτο- μερείας ἐκ εἰς ἐξοικοδομησασ. So Isa. xxii. 20. "Οτι λατεῖας σεταυτῶ ὑπο μνημείων, και ἡριαφῶς σεταυτῶ ἐκ πέτρα σκυνῶν in both places λατεῖας is nothing else but βυθυ, and there μνημείαν λεπτομερεϊας, in the language of the Jews, is to be taken in the same sense with λάκκους λεπτομερείας, that is, digged or heven out of the ground. This is well expressed by Origem: 'H ταράτσα ἡ τοιαύτη ἐτοι ης τοιαύτης ἐκ ψυχροτέρως ἐκ λειτυργομεν ἐκ τῆς ἀπετεθανώσεως κατεστάλετο τό ἐκείνα ἐκ μνημείων καὶ τα ὑφαντο εἰς ἐκ λατεῖας, και τοῖς ἐκείνοις μεταμενετο, ἀλλ’ ἐλικά καὶ ἐν γενικώμενοι πέτρας καὶ λατεῖας. '1. ii. ad. Celsum, C. 69. And this cutting the sepulchre out of the rock, rather than building it in the earth, is very material in the opinion of St. Jerome, who makes this observation, Comm. on Matt. xxvii. 64. * In monumen- to novo, quod excisum fuerat in petra, conditus est: ne si ex multis lapidibus mediante deposito, suos suis benti fundamentis, ablatus furo diecreretur * and gives this interpretation of the prophet Isaiah: Quod autem in sepulcro ponendum est. Prophetam testimonium est, dicentis, Haec habitation in excelsa splendens petre fortissima, statimque post duos secundos sequitur, Regem eum gloria videbitis. Ibid. Another use of the same sup- position is made likewise by St. Ambrose: 'Dominii corpus tanguum per Apostolo- rum doctrinam infor tur in vacuum et in novam requiem lapidem excis, scilicet a pectore duritiae gentilis quodam doctrinam opere excisum Christus infor tur, rure scilicet ac novum, et nullo antea ingressa timorium Dei pervenit.' In Matt. c. xxvii. This was the sepulchre prepared for the body: and when Joseph had laid it there, περετεράσα ἐκ δεκα μαγια τοις τον βοραν, he rolled a great stone to the door, the last part of that solemnity. Matt. xxvii. 60. For this great stone was said to be rolled, by reason of the bigness, as being not portable, (from whence arose the wo- men's doubt, Mark xvi. 3. "Who shall roll us away the stone from the sepulchre?"") and that very properly, for it had its name from that rolling, being called constantly by the Jews, ἕξθιον, ἕξθιον, ἕξθιον. Obiatis de Bartenom. * This hath been observed by the Jews themselves, ἐνδεχόμενον ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ οὐδέποτε ἐκ τῆς ἐκκλησίας. It is forbidden for any man to open the sepulchre, after it is shut with the rolled stone.

† So they are styled in the Scriptures, Joseph βολευτής, and Nicodemus Ἰωβν.
among the Jews as were of greatest authority with the people; Joseph of Arimathea, rich and honourable, and yet inferior to Nicodemus, one of the great Council of the Sanhedrim: these two, though fearful while he lived to acknowledge him, are brought by the hand of Providence to inter him; that so the prediction might be fulfilled which was delivered by Isaiah to this purpose. The counsel of his enemies, the design of the Jews, " made his grave with the wicked," (Isa. liii. 9.) that he might be buried with them which were crucified with him: but "because he hath done no violence, neither was any deceit within his mouth;" (Ibid.) because he was no ways guilty of those crimes for which they justly suffered; that there might be a difference after their death, though there appeared little distinction in it; the counsel of his Father, the design of Heaven, put him "with the rich in his death," (Ibid.) and caused a counsellor and a ruler of the Jews to bury him.

The necessity of this part of the Article appeareth, first, in that it gives a testimony and assurance of the truth both of Christ's death preceding, and of his resurrection following. Men are not put into the earth before they die: Pilate was very inquisitive whether our Saviour " had been any while dead," and was fully satisfied by the centurion, before he would " give the body to Joseph" to be interred. (Mark xv. 44, 45.) Men cannot be said to rise who never died; nor can there be a true resurrection, where there hath not been a true dissolution. That therefore we might believe Christ truly rose from the dead, we must be first assured that he died; and a greater assurance of his death than this we cannot have, that his body was delivered by his enemies from the cross, and laid by his disciples in the grave.

Secondly, A profession to believe that Christ was buried is necessary, to work within us a correspondence and similitude of his burial: For we are "buried with him in baptism," (Col. ii. 12.) even "buried with him in baptism unto death; that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father; even so we also should walk in newness of life." (Rom. vi. 4.) That nothing may be done or suffered by our Saviour in these great transactions of the Mediator, but may be acted in our souls, and represented in our spirits.*

and these two powers ruled all them at Jerusalem under the Romans. As appeared when Agrippa prevented a war by the sudden raising of a tax: El; eis tais kumais a to evkainetes kai a eivolountai meiro-


* Quicquid gestum est in cruce Christi, in sepultura, in resurrectione tertiio die, in adscensione in cælum, et in sede ad dexteram Patris: ita gestum est, ut his rebus non mystice tantum dictis, sed eaam gestis, configuraretur vita Christiana quae hic geritur. Nam propter ejus crucem dictum est, Qui autem Jesu Christi sunt, cœræna suam crucificaverunt cum poni-
onibus et concupiscentibus: propter sepultu-
ram, Conspullit sumus Christo per baptiz-
mum in mortem: propter resurrectionem, Ut quœmodmodum Christus resurrexit a mortuis per gloriam Patris, ita et nos in novitate vita ambulamus: propter ascenden-
sionem in cælum, sedemque ad dexteram Patris, Si autem resurrexisit eum Christo, qua sursum sunt quævite, ubi Christus est
ad dexteram Dei sedens.' S. Au ust. En.
Thirdly, It was most convenient that those pious solemnities should be performed on the body of our Saviour, that his disciples might for ever learn what honour was fit to be received and given at their funerals. When Ananias died, though for his sin, yet they “wound him up, and carried him out, and buried him:” (Acts v. 6.) when Stephen was stoned, “devout men carried him to his burial, and made great lamentation over him:” (Acts viii. 2.) and when Dorcas died, they “washed her, and laid her in an upper chamber:” (Acts ix. 37.) so careful were they the primitive Christians of the rites of burial. Before, and at our Saviour’s time, the Greeks did much, the Romans more, use the burning of the bodies of the dead, and reserved only their ashes in their urns; but when Christianity began to increase, the funeral flames did cease, and after a few emperors had received baptism, there was not a body burnt in all the Roman empire.* For the first Christians wholly abstained from consuming the dead bodies with fire, and followed the example of our Saviour’s funeral;+ making use of precious ointments for the dead, which they refused while they lived, and spending the spices of Arabia in their graves. The description of the persons who interred Christ, and the enumeration of their virtues, and the everlasting commendation of her who brake the box of precious ointment for his burial, have

* chirid. ad Laur. c. 53. §. 14. And this was before observed by Origen, i. ii. aed. Cels. §. 69. Tα συμβεβηκόντα άναγεγραμμένα τω Ιησος εικ. ειν αν η λεία τη Ιεραι την από τον Ιησον το τεάναν έχαν Σωτηρια τεκλοδηίσεις. “Εκατον γάρ αυτον και συμβολην ων ενίας επομεν πας των συνεκτητων εντυπακοντο τη γεραξ αποθαυνυται. “Αδεης ουν το οσταφρυσι αυτον άχε την δολαμαν άλοδειαν ει τω Χριστω σωσταφθεισι και τω σημαπομακαν εν τω ερημι δε μεν γενοσ καυπαίοι ει μεν το τεάναν του Ιησον ουδεν Χριστων δι ει δε κόμες σεσταφηται καγω της κομφι. και δος αντων αυτου αναγεγρας, δι τη ο γαρ απτα διην άμερτια απτονε ερατος και δι την οεσαν συμμορφοφυιον ει τωτω αυτω και τη. Ετ ει συναπαιδηναι και συζηναι των αυτων και τη ταφι αυτων δεδει ιντ τως συμμετεχονς τω θαπτε αυτοι και τως συνεκτηται εις ην και την Παλαια άλατης το σωσταφθείν γάρ αυτο ηλι θαπτέματος και συσταθομεναι. 

+ This appearance by Macrobius, who lived in the time of Theodosius junior, and testifieth thus much: "Licet uredi corpora defunctorum usus nostro seculo nullo sit, lectio tamen docet, eo tempore quo igni dari honor mortuis habebatur." Saturnali. i. vii. c. 7. That this was done by the Christians is certain, because the heathens anciently did object it to the Christians: "Inde videlicet et exsecranti tur rogos, et damnant ignium sepulcras." And the answer given to this was: "Nec, at creditis, illum damnum sepulcrum time mus, sed veterem et meliorem, consuetudinem humandi frequentare." Minut. Fel. in Octavia. c. 51. and 34. And the terrulian: "Et hoc etiam in opinione quorumdam est: propterne nec ignibus funerandum sit, parcentes superfici animae. Alia est autem ratio pietatis istiis, non reliquis animae adulatissim, sed crudelitates etiam corporis nomine averta trix, quod et ipsum homon non utique mereat penali exitu impendi." De Anima. c. 51. "At ego magis rideo vulgus, tunc quoque, cum ipsos defunctos atrocissime exunt, quos postmodum gulosisse nutrit, isdem ignibus et promerens et offendens. O Pietatei de crudeltate ludantem! sacrificet, an insultet, cum crematis cremat!" Idea de Rebus. Carn. c. 1.

been thought sufficient grounds and encouragements for the careful and decent sepulture of Christians. For as natural reason will teach us to give some kind of respect unto the bodies of men though dead, in reference to the souls which formerly inhabited them;‡ so, and much more, the followers of our Saviour, while they looked upon our bodies as living "temples of the Holy Ghost," (1 Cor. vi. 19.) and "bought" by Christ, (2 Pet. ii. 1.) to be made one day "like unto his glorious body," (Phil. iii. 21.) they thought them no ways to be neglected after death;‡ but carefully to be laid up in the wardrobe of the grave, with such due respect as might become the honour of the dead, and comfort of the living. And the decent custom of the primitive Christians was so acceptable unto God, that by his providence it proved most effectual in the conversion of the heathens and propagation of the Gospel. §

---

Proper patrem militiam Christi deseram, cui sepulturam Christi causa non debeo, quam etiam omnipus ejus causa debeo? S. Hieron. Epist. 5. al. 1. ad Heliodorum, de Laud. Vit. Sol. c. 3.

§ This was observed by Julian the apostate, who, writing to an idolatrous high-priest, puts him in mind of those things by which he thought the Christians gained upon the world, and recommends them to the practice of the heathen priests. Of these he reckons three; the gravity of their carriage, their kindness to strangers, and their care for the burial of the dead. "Ti oin himeis "oimade taeta arhimi, eido "apoodiatomin o'malista tiv adieterata (so he calls Christianity, because they rejectea all the heathen gods) sumpopheisen, e peri tauleisos philomagnia, kai peri tais tais tis inoikov for humorion, kai e periplasmw smeia kata tiv biaov ein akastov oimade eterwma par ouden allhcs in tis theseidh. Epist. 49. ad Ariacium. And as Julian observed the care of burial as a great encouragement to the heathens to turn
ARTICLE

Thus I believe the only-begotten and eternal Son of God, for the confirmation of the truth of his deacon already past, and the verity of his resurrection from the dead suddenly to follow, had his body, according to the custom of the Jews, prepared for a funeral, bound up with linen clothes, and laid in spices; and after that accustomed preparation, deposited in a sepulchre hewn out of the rock, in which never man was laid before, and by rolling of a stone unto the door thereof, entombed there. Thus I believe that Christ was buried.

ARTICLE V

He descended into hell: the third day he rose again from the dead.

The former part of this Article, of the descent into hell, hath not been so anciently in the Creed,* or so universally, as the Christians, so Gregory Nazianzen did observe the same to the great dishonour of the apostate, comparing his funeral with his predecessors. *O μὴ γὰρ (that is Constantinus) παράστηται πανάρκαι εὐσφαίρις τι και ποιμαντις, και τούτως δὲ τίς κρατήρις σφαιρικος, ἤδεις παινόντως και βαδοχικας, αἰς Χριστιανί τιμᾶτο: μετάπταται εὐθέως νεκρὸμενος και γίνεται πανάρκης μετὰ πάθους ἡ ἱκανομεν τῶν σάματος. Orat. ii. in Jul. ii. p. 118. But as for Julian: *Hωμίω γελάων ἄτρομον, και τοὺς ἄπτε τὰς σκιώδεις ἀείχας ἐπιμενοτα — ἢς ἡ Ταρσιον αὐτὸν ὑπολέξατε πάλιν—— Ἠδον ἢ τίμια τῶν θυμίασι καί τῶν ἔξωσαν καί ἐπιτεντωτοι, καί θεὸς σαρκοστέπαδον ὑπέλευ. Ibid. p. 119, 120.

* First, It is to be observed, that the descent into hell was not in the ancient creeds or rules of faith. Some tell us that it was not in the confession of Ignatius Epist. ad Magnes. But indeed there is no confession of faith in that Epistle; for what is read was thrust in not of Clemens’s Constitutions. In like manner, in vain is it objected that it was omitted by Polycarp, Clemens Romans, and Justin Martyr, because they have not pretended any rule of faith or Creed of their times. But that which is material in this cause, it is not to be found in the rules of faith delivered by Irenaus, I. i. c. 2, by Origen, I. πάντα ἐχεῖτι, in Proem or by Tertullian, ad Praxeam, c. 2. De Virg, refland, c. 1. De Præscript. ad. Hier. c. 13. It is not expressed in those Creeds as larger explications of the Apostles’ Creed: not in the Nicene or Constantinopolitan, not in that of Ephesus or Chalcedon; not in those confessions made at Sardica, Antioch, Seleucia, Sirmium, &c. It is not mentioned in several confessions of faith delivered by particular persons: nor in that of Eusebius Caesariensis, presented to the Council of Nice, Theodoret Hist. Eccles. l. i. c. 2, not in that of Marcellus, bishop of Ancyra, delivered to Pope Julius, S. Epiph. Har. lxxii. §. 11. not in that of Arius and Faustinus, presented to Constantine, Socrat. l. i. c. 26 not in that of Acacius, bishop of Caesarea, delivered in to the Synod of Seleucia, Socrat. l. ii. c. 40. not in that of Eustathius, Theophilus, and Silvanus, sent to Liberius, Socrat. l. iv. c. 12. There is no mention of it in the Creed of St. Basil. Tract. de Fide, in Asseclit, c. 4.; in the Creed of Epiphanius, in Ancarata, §. 120. Gelasio, in Biblioth. Patr. Lat. d. v. par. 3. p. 669. Damasus, inter. Op. S. Hieron, t. v. p. 122. Macarius, in Hom. &c. It is not in the Creed expounded by St. Cyril (though some have produced that Creed to prove it), it is not in the Creed expounded by St. Augustin, De Fide et Symbolo; nor in that De Symbolo ad Catechumenes, attributed to St. Augustin; not in that which is expounded by Maximus Taurninensis, nor in that so often interpreted by Petrus Chrysologus; [Yet in the 2d Homily of Maximus De passione et cruce et sepultura Domini, we read: 'Post illam natiratatem (scil. de uero Virg. Marie) ad inferos descenditur; post hanc (scil. de sepulchro) remeatur ad caelos.' And in the 6th Sermon, or 4th in Symbolam Apostolorum, of Pet. Chrysologus 'Sepultum dicis, ut veram caroem Christi, mortemque non perfutorium proboet con fessio sepultura, mortem suspensae et
HE DESCENDED INTO HELL.

341

rest. The first place we find it used in, was the Church of Aquileia; and the time we are sure it was used in the Creed of that church was less than 400 years after Christ. After that it came into the Roman Creed,* and others,+ and hath been acknowledged as a part of the Apostles' Creed ever since.

Indeed, the descent into hell hath always been accepted, but with a various exposition;* and the Church of England at the Reformation, as it received the three Creeds, in two of which this Article is contained, so did it also make this one of the Articles of Religion, to which all who are admitted to any benefice, or received into holy orders, are obliged to subscribe. And at the first reception it was propounded with a certain explication, and thus delivered in the fourth year of King Edward the Sixth, with reference to an express place of Scripture interpreted of this descent: 'That the body of Christ lay in the grave until his resurrection; but his spirit, which he gave up, was with the spirits which were detained in prison, or in hell, and preached to them, as the place in St. Peter (1 Ep. iii. 19) testifieth.'§ So likewise after the same manner in the Creed set forth in metre after the manner of a psalm, and still remaining at the end of the Psalms, the same exposition is delivered in this stave:

* And so he died in the flesh,
But quickened in the spirit:
His body then was buried,
As is our use and right.

His spirit did after this descend
Into the lower parts,
Of them that long in darkness were,
The true light of their hearts.'

vicissae, intrasse inferos et redisse, venisse
in jure tartari, et tartari jura solvisse, non
est fragilitas, sed potestas.' Ed. Theo.
Rouainud. Lugd. 1633. Editor.] nor in
that of the Church of Antioch, delivered
by Cassianus, De Intern. I. vi. c. 3. neither
is it to be seen in the Ms. Creeds set
forth by the learned Archbishop of Armagh.
Indeed, it is affirmed by Rufinus, that in
his time it was neither in the Roman nor
in the Oriental Creeds: 'Sciemus sone
est, quod in Ecclesie Romana Symbolo
non habetur additum, descendit ad inferna;
sed neque in Orientis Ecclesias habetur
hic sermo.' Ruff. in Exposit. Symbolici, §,
20. It is certain therefore (nor can we
disprove it by any acknowledged evidence
of antiquity) that the Article of the descent
into hell was not in the Roman or any
of the Oriental Creeds.

* That the descent into hell came after-
wards into the Roman Creed appeareth,
not only because we find it there of late,
but because we find it often in the Latin
Church many ages since: as in that pro-
duced by Etherius against Elipandus in
the year 785, in the 115th al. 241st ser-
mon, de Tempore, falsely ascribed to St. Au-
 gustin, where it is attributed to Thomas
the apostle; and in the exposition of the
Creed falsely ascribed to St. Chrysostom.

† As in the Creed attributed to St.
Athenasius, which though we cannot say
was his, yet we know was extant about
the year 600, by the epistle of Isidorus
Hispalensis ad Claudium Dacem. It was
also inserted into the Creed of the Council
of Ariminum, Socrat. Hist. Ecl. I. ii. c. 37,
and of the fourth Council of Toledo, held in
the year 653: and of the sixteenth Council
of the same Toledo, held in the year 693.

‡ 'Quis nisi infidelis negaverit suisse
apud inferos Christum?' S. August. Epist.
99. al. 164. §. 3.

§ 'Nam corpus usque ad resurrectione
nem in sepulcro jacuit; Spiritus ab illo
emissus cum spiritibus qui in carcere sita
in inferno detinebantur fuit, illisque praed-
dicavit, ut testatur Petri locus,' &c. Arti-
culi ann. 1532. Which place was also
made use of in the Exposition of the Creed
contained in the Catechism set forth by
the authority of King Edward, in the
seventh year of his rege.
But in the Synod ten years after, in the days of Queen Elizabeth, the Articles, which continue still in force, deliver the same descent, but without any the least explication or reference to any particular place of Scripture, in these words: 'As Christ died for us and was buried, so also it is to be believed that he went down into hell.' Wherefore being our Church hath not now imposed that interpretation of St. Peter's words, which before it intimated; being it hath not delivered that as the only place of Scripture to found the descent into hell upon; being it hath alleged no other place to ground it, and delivered no other explication to expound it: we may with the greater liberty pass on to find out the true meaning of this Article, and to give our particular judgment in it, so far as a matter of so much obscurity and variety will permit.

First, then, it is to be observed, that as this Article was first in the Aquileian Creed, so it was delivered there not in the express and formal term of hell, but in such a word as may be capable of a greater latitude, 'descendit in inferna,' which words as they were continued in other Creeds,† so did they find a double interpretation among the Greeks; some translating 'inferna,' hell; others, the lower parts;‡ the first with relation

* Article III. 1562.
† Descendit in inferna, or ad inferna, is the general writing in the ancient MSS. as the learned Archbishop testifieth of those in the Benedictine and Cottonian libraries; to which I may add those in the library at Westminster: we see the same likewise in that of Elibandus, Descendit ad inferna. Which words are so recited in the Creed delivered in the Catechism set forth by the authority of Edward VI. An. Dom. 1553.
‡ So the ancient MSS. in Bene't college library, Katachëôta αὶ τὰ κατάτατα: and the confession made at Sirmium, τὰ καταχθόνα καταδίωτα. Since that it is Descendit ad infernos, and katαdίωτα τὰ καταχθόνα. Descendit ad infernum, as Venantius Fortunatus, l. xi. art. 1. in Biblioth. Patr. Lat. t. vii. par. 2. p. 382. For τὰ κατάτατα is a fit interpretation, if we take inferna according to the vulgar etymology; as St. Augustin: 'Inferi, eo quod infra sint, Latine appellantur.' De Gen. ad lit. l. xii. c. 31. or as Nonius Marcellus, c. i. §. 221. 'Inferum ab imo dictum, unde inferi quibus inferni nihil.' Again, inferna may be well translated άδην, if it be taken according to the true origin, which is from the Greek ἀδην, with the άδης digamma, from which dialect most of the Latin language came, 'ārēs, inferni. Now ἀδην, according to the Greek composition, is nothing else but ἀτ entrenched. Etym. 'Αδης, αἱ καταθέν, απὸ τὸν ἐν τῇ ἑρα κηρίν ἦ τοιν. ινῦν τε καὶ and Suidd. 'Ενείς, νυκτίς, ἀπὸ τὸν ἐν τῇ ἑρά κηρίν. 'Ερα is anciently the earth, from whence ἱατί, χρυμάτι, to the earth: ἔνει then are in the earth, as they supposed the manes or spirits of the dead to be; from whence Homer, Ἰην. o. 158. 'Αδης τὴν ἀδήαν ἀπαντᾶτον, of Plato; and Ἑσηδ. Τέχσω. † 'Αδης ἱεράς καταθέντων ἀδηνο-

and in imitation of them Ἀκεσχύλος in Persis. v. 635. ed. Blount. Γεν., καὶ 'Ερας, βασιλεύς τ' ἓρας. Πλωματεῖα γεράρα τις φιλός. Thus ἓρα are those which Ἀκεσχύλος elsewhere calls τὰς γάς νῦν θείας ἔνεις ὑμῖν. And as ἓρα, the souls of the dead in the earth, so are inferi in the first acception: that is manes. Pomponius Mela, de Sit. Orb. l. i. c. 9. 'Auggī manes tantum Deos putant;' which Pliny delivers thus, Hist. Nat. l. v. c. 8. 'Auggī inferos tantum colunt,' and Solinus, Polyb. c. 51. 'Auggī vero solos colunt inferos.' Inferi were then first ἓρας, the souls of men in the earth: and as manes is not only put for the souls below, but also for the place, as in the poet:

—Mannesque profundis,
Virg. Georg. i. 243.

and—Hec manes veniat mibi fama sub imos; An. iv. 367.

so inferi is most frequently used for the place under ground where the souls departed are; and the inferna must then be
to St. Peter's words of Christ, "Thou wilt not leave my soul in hell;" (Acts ii. 27.) the second referring to that of St. Paul, "He descended into the lower parts of the earth." (Eph. iv. 9.) Secondly, I observe that in the *Aquileian Creed*, where this Article was first expressed, there was no mention of Christ's burial; but the words of their confession ran thus: *crucified under Pontius Pilate, he descended in inferna.* From whence there is no question but the observation of Ruffinus, who first expounded it, was most true, that though the *Roman* and Oriental Creeds had not their words, yet they had the sense of them in the word *buried*. It appeareth therefore, that the first intention of putting these words in the Creed was only to express the burial of our Saviour, or the descent of his body into the grave. But although they were first put in the *Aquileian Creed*, to signify the *burial of Christ*, and those which had only the *burial* in their Creed, did confess as much as those which without the *burial* did express the *descent*; yet since the *Roman Creed* hath added the *descent* unto the *burial*, and expressed that *descent* by words signifying more properly *hell*, it cannot be imagined that the *Creed*, as it now stands, should signify only the *burial of Christ* by his *descent into hell*. But rather, being the ancient Church did certainly believe that *Christ* did some other way descend beside his *burial*; being, though he interpreted those words of the *burial only*, yet in the relation of what was done at our Saviour's death, Ruffinus makes mention of his *descent into hell*, beside, and distinct from, his sepulture;†

those regions in which they take up their habitsations. And so *descendit ad inferna*, *καταθέτητα*, *καὶ τὰ ἐκκοιμηθήτα*, *καὶ τὰ ἐκμετάλληθα*, *τὸν πυλάξαν ἐκ τῆς ἰδίης ἰμπληθέν*. For he did not dispense and order things below by his body in the grave: nor could the keepers of the gates of hell be affrighted with any sight of his corpse lying in the sepulchre.

† For having produced many places of Scripture to prove the circumstances of our Saviour's death, and having cited those particularly which did belong unto his burial, he passes farther to his descent, in these words: *Sed et quod in infernum descendit, evidentior praeventur in Psalmine, ubi dicit, Et in pulvere mortis detaxisti me; et iterum, Qui utiles in sanguine meo dum descendens in corruptiorem; et iterum, Descendisti in lignum profundum, et non est substantia. Sed et Matthaeus dicit, Tu es qui venturus est, un ultim exspectamus? Unde et Petrus dixit, Quia Christus mortificatus carne, vitificatus autem spiritu. In ipso ait, et eis qui in carceri inclusus erant in diebus Nos? in quo etiam quid operis aget in inferno declatatur. Sed et ipse Dominus per Propheciam dictat tanquam de futuro, Quia non dereliquens animam meam in inferno, nec dabis sanctum tuum videre corruptionem; quod rursus prophetice nihilominus osten-
being those who in after-ages added it to the burial, did actually believe that the soul of Christ descended: it followeth that, for the exposition of the Creed, it is most necessary to declare in what that descent consisteth.

Thirdly, I observe again, that whatsoever is delivered in the Creed, we therefore believe, because it is contained in the Scriptures, and consequently must so believe it as it is contained there; whence all this exposition of the whole is nothing else but an illustration and proof of every particular part of the Creed by such Scriptures as deliver the same, according to the true interpretation of them; and the general consent of the Church of God. Now these words as they lie in the Creed, He descended into hell, are no where formally and expressly delivered in the Scriptures; nor can we find any one place in which the Holy Ghost hath said in express and plain terms, that Christ, as he died and was buried, so he descended into hell. Wherefore being these words of the Creed are not formally expressed in the Scripture, our inquiry must be in what Scriptures they are contained virtually; that is, where the Holy Ghost doth deliver the same doctrine, in what words soever, which is contained, and to be understood in this expression, He descended into hell.

Now several places of Scripture have been produced by the ancients as delivering this truth, of which some without question prove it not: but three there are which have been always thought of greatest validity to confirm this Article. First, that of St. Paul to the Ephesians seems to come very near the words themselves, and to express the same almost in terms:* "Now that he ascended, what is it but that he first descended into the lower parts of the earth?" (Eph. iv. 9.) This many of the ancient fathers understood of the descent into hell,† as placed in the lowest parts of the earth: and this exposition must be

dit impletum, cum dicit, Domine, eduxisti ab inferno animam meam, salutasti me a descendentibus in locum." Expos. Symb. § 27. Whence it appeareth, that though Ruffinus thought that the sense of descendit ad inferna was expressed in sepultus est; yet he did distinguish the doctrine of Christ's descent into hell from that of his burial.

* For the first expression which we find in Ruffinus, descendit in inferna, comes most near to this quotation; especially if we take the ancient Greek translation of it: καταθάνατη εἰς τὰ κατώτατα. For if we consider that κατώτατα may well have the signification of the superlative, especially being the LXX. hath so translated Psalm lxxiii. 9. καταθάναται εἰς τὰ κατώτατα τῆς γῆς: and Psalm cxxxi. 15. καὶ ἡ ἐπιστάσεις μου εἰς τὰς κατάθανες τῆς γῆς: what can be nearer than these two, καταθάνατη εἰς τὰ κατώτατα, and καταθάνατε εἰς τὰ κατώτατα; or these two, καταθάνατη εἰς τὰ κατώτατα, and καταθάνατε εἰς τὰ κατώτατα μέχρι τῆς γῆς;

† This appeareth by their quotation of this place to prove, or express, the descent into hell, as Ireneus does, l. v. c. 31. Origen. Hom. 35. in Matt. al. § 139. Athanasius, Epist. ad Epictetum, and Orat. i. contr. Arian. § 45. Hilarius in Psal. lxviii. § 19. St. Jerome upon the place: "Inferiorea autem terrae infernus accipitur, ad quem Dominus noster Salvatorque descendit." So also the Commentary attributed to St. Ambrose and St. Hilary: "Si itaque haec omnia Christus nos est, neque alius est Christus mortuus, alius sepulcrus, aut alius descenden ad inferna, et alius ascendeos in carlos, secundum illud Apostoli, Ascendit autem quid est, &c. De Trinit. l. x. § 63.
confessed so probable, that there can be no argument to disprove it. Those "lower parts of the earth" may signify hell, and Christ's descending thither may be, that his soul went to that place when his body was carried to the grave. But that it was actually so, or that the apostle intended so much in those words, the place itself will not manifest. For we cannot be assured that the descent of Christ, which St. Paul speaks of, was performed after his death; or if it were, we cannot be assured that the "lower parts of the earth" did signify hell, or the place where the souls of men were tormented after the separation from their bodies. For as it is written, "No man ascended up to heaven, but he that descended from heaven;" (John iii. 13.) so this may signify so much, and no more, "In that he ascended, what is it but that he descended first?" And for "the lower parts of the earth," they may possibly signify no more than the place beneath: as when our Saviour said, "Ye are from beneath, I am from above; ye are of this world, I am not of this world:" (John viii. 23.) or as God spake by the prophet, "I will shew wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath." (Joel ii. 30.) Nay, they may well refer to his incarnation, according to that of David, "My substance was not hid from thee, when I was made in secret, and curiously wrought in the lower parts of the earth:" (Psal. cxxxix. 15.) or to his burial, according to that of the prophet, "Those that seek my soul to destroy it, shall go into the lower parts of the earth:" (Psal. lxiii. 9.) and these two references have a great similitude according to that of Job, "Naked came I out of my mother's womb, and naked shall I return thither." (Job i. 21.)

The next place of Scripture brought to confirm the descent is not so near in words, but thought to signify the end of that descent, and that part of his humanity by which he descended. For Christ, saith St. Peter, was "put to death in the flesh, and quickened by the Spirit, by which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison:" (1 Ep. iii. 18, 19.) where the Spirit seems to be the soul of Christ, and the spirits in prison, the souls of them that were in hell, or in some place at least separated from the joys of heaven: whither, because we never read our Saviour went at any other time, we may conceive he went in spirit then when his soul departed from his body on the cross. This did our Church first deliver as the proof and illustration of the descent, and the ancient Fathers did apply the same in the like manner to the proof of this Article.* But yet those words of St. Peter have no such power of probation; except we were certain that the Spirit there spoken of were the


soul of Christ, and that the time intended for that preaching were after his death, and before his resurrection. Whereas if it were so interpreted, the difficulties are so many, that they staggered St. Augustin, and caused him at last to think that these words of St. Peter belonged not unto the doctrine of Christ's descending into hell. But indeed the Spirit by which he is said to preach was not the soul of Christ, but that Spirit by which he was quickened; as appeareth by the coherence of the words, "being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit, by which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison." Now that Spirit by which Christ was quickened is that by which he was raised from the dead; that is, the power of his Divinity, as St. Paul expresseth it, "Though he was crucified through weakness, yet he liveth by the power of God:" (2 Cor. xiii. 4.) in respect of which he preached to those that were disobedient in the days of Noah, as we have already shewn.

The third, but principal text, is that of David, applied by St. Peter. "For David speaketh concerning him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face; for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved. Therefore did my heart rejoice, and my tongue was glad: moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope. Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption." Thus the apostle repeated the words of the Psalmist, (xvi. 8—10.) and then applied them: he "being a prophet, and seeing this before, spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption." (Acts ii. 25, 26, 27. 30, 31.) Now from this place the Article is clearly and infallibly deduced thus: If the soul of Christ were not left in hell

* For in his answer to Euodius, Epist. 99. al. 164. he thus begins: "Quæstio, quam mibi proposui in Epistola Apostoli Petri, selet nos, ut te latere non arbitror, vehementissime commovero, quomodo illa verba accipienda sint taquam de Inferis dicta. Replico ergo tibi eosdem questionem, ut, sive ipse potueris, sive aliquem qui possit invenirem, auseras de illa atque finibus dubitationem meam," §. 1. Then setting down in order all the difficulties which occurred at that time in the exposition of the descent into hell, he concludes with an exposition of another nature: "Considera tamen, ne forte totum illud quod de conclusion in carcer spiritus, qui in diebus Noe nos crediderat, Petrus Apostolus dicit, omoino ad Inferos non pertinet, sed ad illa pati tempora, quorum formam ad hanc tempora transubit." §. 15.

† Quid est eodem quod vivificatus est spiritus, nisi quod eadem caro, qua sola fuerat mortificatus, vivificante spiritu resurrexit? Nam quod fuerit anima mortificatus Jesus, hoc est, eo spiritu qui hominis est, quia audeat dicere cum mors animae non sit nisi pecatum, a quo ille omnino immunitis fuit, cum pro nobis carne mortificaretur." §. August. Epist. 99. al. 164. §. 18, 19. And: "Certe anima Christi non solum immortals secundum ceterarum naturam, sed etiam pullo mortificata peccato vel damnatione punita est; quibus dubius causis mors animae intelligi potest; et ideo non secundum ipsam dicit potuit, Christus vivificatus spiritu. In ea re quippe vivificatus est, in qua fuerat mortificatus: ergo de carne dictum est. Ipsa enim revixit anima redente, quia ipsa erat mortua anima recedente. Mortificatus ergo carme dictus est, quia secundum solam carnem mortuos est: vivificatus autem spiritu, quia illo spiritu operante, in quo ad quos volebat venirebat et praedicavit, etiam ipsa caro vivificata surrrexit, in qua modo ad homines venit. Ibid. §. 20.

‡ Page 170, sqq.
at his resurrection, then his soul was in hell before his resurrection; but it was not there before his death; therefore upon or after his death, and before his resurrection, the soul of Christ descended into hell; and consequently the Creed doth truly deliver, that Christ being crucified, was dead, buried, and descended into hell. For as his flesh did not see corruption by virtue of that promise and prophetic expression, and yet it was in the grave, the place of corruption, where it rested in hope until his resurrection; so his soul, which was not left in hell, by virtue of the like promise or prediction, was in that hell, where it was not left, until the time that it was to be united to the body for the performing of the resurrection. We must therefore confess from hence that the soul of Christ was in hell; and no Christian can deny it, saith St. Augustin, it is so clearly delivered in this prophecy of the Psalmist and application of the apostle.*

The only question then remains, not of the truth of the proposition, but the sense and meaning of it. It is most certain that Christ descended into hell; and as infallibly true as any other Article of the Creed: but what that hell was, and how he descended thither, being once questioned, is not easily determined. Different opinions there have been of old, and of late more different still, which I shall here examine after that manner which our subject will admit. Our present design is an exposition of the Creed as now it stands, and our endeavour is to expound it according to the Scriptures in which it is contained: I must therefore look for such an explication as may consist with the other parts of the Creed, and may withal be conformable unto that Scripture upon which the truth of the Article doth rely: and consequently, whatsoever interpretation is either not true in itself, or not consistent with the body of the Creed, or not conformable to the doctrine of the apostle in this particular, the expositor of that Creed by the doctrine of the apostle must reject.

First, then, we shall consider the opinion of Durandus, who, as often, so in this, is singular. He supposed this descent to belong unto the soul,† and the name of hell to signify the place where the souls of dead men were in custody: but he maketh a metaphor in the word descended, as not signifying any local motion, nor inferring any real presence of the soul of

† Cum Articulus sit, Christum ad inferos descendisse, et non pessit intelligi ratione Divinitatis, secundum quam est ubique; nec ratione corporei, secundum quod fuit in sepulcro; restat quod intelligatur ratione animae: quo supposito, videendum est quater anima Christi descendit ad infernum. Durand in Sent. Theol. 1. iii. dist. 22. q. 3.
Christ in the place where the souls of dead men were; but only including a virtual motion, and inferring an efficacious presence, by which descent the effects of the death of Christ were wrought upon the souls in hell: and because the merits of Christ's death did principally depend upon the act of his soul, therefore the effect of his death is attributed to his soul as the principal agent; and consequently, Christ is truly said at the instant of his death to descend into hell, because his death was immediately efficacious upon the souls detained there. This is the opinion of Durandus, so far as it is distinct from others.

But although a virtual influence of the death of Christ may be well admitted in reference to the souls of the dead, yet this opinion cannot be accepted as to the exposition of this Article; being neither the Creed can be thought to speak a language of so great scholastic subtilty, nor the place of David, expounded by St. Peter, can possibly admit any such explication. For what can be the sense of those words, "Thou shalt not leave my soul in hell," if his being in hell was only virtually acting there? If the efficacy of his death were his descent, then is he descended still, because the effect of his death still remains. The opinion therefore of Durandus, making the descent into hell to be nothing but the efficacy of the death of Christ upon the souls detained there, is to be rejected, as not expository of the Creed's confession, nor consistent with the Scripture's expression.

The next opinion, later than that of Durandus, is, that the descent into hell is the suffering of the torments of hell;* that the soul of Christ did really and truly suffer all those pains which are due unto the damned; that whatsoever is threatened by the Law unto them which depart this life in their sins, and under the wrath of God, was fully undertaken and borne by Christ; that he died a+ true and natural death, the death of Gehenna, and this dying the death of Gehenna was the descending into hell; that those which are now saved by virtue of his death, should otherwise have endured the same torments in hell which now the damned do and shall endure, but that he, being their surety,† did himself suffer the same for them, even all the torments which we should have felt, and the damned shall.

This interpretation is either taken in the strict sense of the words, or in a latitude of expression; but in neither to be admitted as the exposition of this Article. Not if it be taken

---

* 'Si Christus ad inferos descendisse dictur nihil mirum est, cum eam mortem pertulerit quae sceleribus ab irato Deo infigitur,' which he expresseth presently in another phrase: 'Cum diros in anima cruciatus damnati ac perditi hominis pertulerit.' Calvin, Instit. Lib. i. c. 10. § 10.
† [Some Copies read: true supernatural death, the second death, the death of Gehenna.]
‡ 'Quid igitur? Christus persona sua secundum humanitatem ponam gehennalem nobis debitum passus est, anima principaliter, corpore secundaria, utroque causaliter ad meredium, ad nos suum insius merito liberandos.' Pacherus de Descensu, l. iii. § 48. Et statim, § 49.
'Descendisse namque Servatorem, modo supra memorato, ad haren mortis gehennalis, innumeris patet argumentis.'
in a strict, rigorous, proper, and formal sense; for in that acceptation it is not true. It must not, it cannot, be admitted that Christ did suffer all those torments which the damned suffer; and therefore it is not, it cannot, be true, that by suffering them he descended into hell. There is a worm that never dieth, which could not lodge within his breast; that is, a remorse of conscience, seated in the soul, for what that soul hath done: but such a remorse of conscience could not be in Christ, who though he took upon himself the sins of those which otherwise had been damned, yet that act of his was a most virtuous, charitable, and most glorious act, highly conformable to the will of God, and consequently could not be the object of remorse. The grief and horror in the soul of Christ, which we have expressed in the explication of his sufferings antecedent to his crucifixion, had reference to the sins and punishment of men, to the justice and wrath of God; but clearly of a nature different from the sting of conscience in the souls condemned to eternal flames. Again, an essential part of the torments of hell is a present and constant sense of the everlasting displeasure of God, and an impossibility of obtaining favour, and avoiding pain; an absolute and complete despair of any better condition, or the least relaxation: but Christ, we know, had never any such resentment, who looked upon the reward which was set before him, even upon the cross, and offered up himself a sweet-smelling sacrifice; which could never be efficacious, except offered in faith. If we should imagine any damned soul to have received an express promise of God, that after ten thousand years he would release him from those torments and make him everlastinglly happy, and to have a true faith in that promise and a firm hope of receiving eternal life: we could not say that man was in the same condition with the rest of the damned, or that he felt all that hell which they were sensible of, or all that pain which was due unto his sins: because hope and confidence, and relying upon God, would not only mitigate all other pains, but wholly take away the bitter anguish of despair. Christ then, who knew the beginning, continuance, and conclusion of his sufferings, who understood the determinate minute of his own death and resurrection, who had made a covenant with his Father for all the degrees of his passion, and was fully assured that he could suffer no more than he had freely and deliberately undertaken, and should continue no longer in his passion than he had himself determined, he who by those torments was assured to overcome all the powers of hell, cannot possibly be said to have been in the same condition with the damned, and strictly and properly to have endured the pains of hell.

Again, if we take the torments of hell in a metaphorical sense, for those terrors and horrors of the soul which our Saviour felt, which may therefore be called infernal torments
because they are of greater extremity than any other tortures of this life, and because they were accompanied with a sense of the wrath of God against the unrighteousness of men; yet this cannot be an interpretation of the descent into hell, as it is an Article of the Creed, and as that Article is grounded upon the Scriptures. For all those pains which our Saviour felt (whether as they pretend, properly infernal, or metaphorically such) were antecedent to his death; part of them in the garden, part on the cross; but all before he commended his spirit into the hands of his Father, and gave up the ghost. Whereas it is sufficiently evident that the descent into hell, as it now stands in the Creed, signifieth something commenced after his death, contradistinguished to his burial; and, as it is considered in the apostle's explication, is clearly to be understood of that which immediately preceded his resurrection; and that also grounded upon a confidence totally repugnant to infernal pains. For it is thus particularly expressed, "I foresaw the Lord always before my face; for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved. Therefore did my heart rejoice and my tongue was glad: moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope; because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell." (Psal. xvi. 9, 10.) Where the faith, hope, confidence, and assurance of Christ is shewn, and his "flesh," though laid in the grave, the place of corruption, is said to "rest in hope," for this very reason, because God would not "leave his soul in hell." I conclude, therefore, that the descent into hell is not the enduring the torments of hell: because, if strictly taken, it is not true; if metaphorically taken, though it be true, yet it is not pertinent.

The third opinion, which is also very late, at least in the manner of explication, is, that in those words "Thou shalt not leave my soul in hell," the soul of Christ is taken for his body, and hell for the grave; and consequently, in the Creed, He descended into hell, is no more than this, that Christ in his body was laid in the grave. This explication ordinarily is rejected, by denying that the soul is ever taken for the body, or hell for the grave; but in vain: for it must be acknowledged, that sometimes the Scriptures are rightly so, and cannot otherwise be understood. First, The same word in the Hebrew,* which the

---

* The Hebrew word is שֶׁנֶּד and the Greek φυσις, ἔρχεται ὑπὸ αὐτός ἐν αἰώνιοι γίνεται τῷ φυσικῷ μ.υ. τοῦ θεοῦ, Psal. xvi. 10. But both שֶׁנֶּד and φυσις, are used for the body of a dead man, Numb. vi. 6. and it is so translated; for Moses speaking there of a Nazarite, gives this law, "All the days that he separateth himself unto the Lord, he shall come at no dead body," in the original קָםֵל תָּחֵל וְעַל מַעַּל מַעַּל נְדוֹן, נַפְשִׁי לָכָּם שֲנֵם מְדִינֵהּ לְהַכָּבָּד: In the same manner the law for the high priest, Lev. xxi. 11. "Neither shall he go into any dead body," נָפַשְׁל תָּחֵל וְעַל מַעַּל מַעַּל נַפְשִׁי לָכָּם שֲנֵם מְדִינֵהּ לְהַכָּבָּד. And the general law, Lev. xxii. 4. "And whoso toucheth any thing that is unclean by the dead," נָפַשְׁל תָּחֵל וְעַל מַעַּל מַעַּל נַפְשִׁי לָכָּם שֲנֵם מְדִינֵהּ לְהַכָּבָּד. Which is farther cleared by that of Numb. xix. 11. "He that toucheth the dead body of any man," qui tigrat cadavere hominis; and ver. 13. "Whosoever toucheth the
Psalmist used, and in the Greek, which the apostle used, and we translate the soul, is elsewhere used for the body of a dead man, and translated so. And when we read in Moses of a prohibition given to the high-priest or the Nazarite, of going to or coming near a dead body, and of the pollution by the dead; the dead body in the Hebrew and the Greek is nothing else but that which elsewhere signifies the soul. And Mr. Ainsworth, who translated the Pentateuch nearer the letter than the sense, hath so delivered it in compliance with the original phrase; and may be well interpreted thus by our translation: "Ye shall not make in your flesh any cutting for a soul," that is, "for the dead." (Lev. xix. 28.) 'For a soul he shall not defile himself among the people,' that is, "there shall none be defiled for the dead among his people." (Lev. xxii. 1.) 'He that toucheth any thing that is unclean by a soul,' that is, "by the dead!" (Lev. xxii. 4.) 'Every one defiled by a soul,' that is, "by the dead!" (Numb. v. 2.) 'He shall not come at a dead soul,' that is, "he shall come at no dead body." (Numb. vi. 6.) Thus Ainsworth's translation sheweth, that in all these places the original word is that which originally signifies the soul; and our translation teacheth us, that though in other places it signifies the soul, yet in these it must be taken for the body, and that body bereft of the soul.

Secondly, The word* which the Psalmist used in Hebrew,

dead body of any man that is dead," Omnis qui tali erit humana anima morti-

evum. Therefore the and in Lev. xxiv. 4. do signify the cadaver or morticium; as also Numb. v. 2. "Who-

soever is defiled by the dead," Nec quis instar mortis acceptus est et humanam animam mortuam. And humanam animam mortuam. Hag. ii. 13. is rightly translated, one that is unclean by a dead body. Thus several times and are taken for the body of a dead man; that body which polluted a man under the Law by the touch thereof. And Maimonides hath observed, that there is no pollution from the body till the soul be departed. Therefore and did signify the body after the separation of the soul. And this was anciently observed by St. Augustine, that the soul may be taken for the body only: 'Animae nomine corpus solus possit significari, modo quodam locutionis ostendi-

tur, quod significatur per id quod conti-

netur illud quod continet; sicut ait qui-

dam, Vina coronunt, (Virg. En. vii. 147.) cum coronarentur vasa vinaria; vinum enim continetur, et vas content. Sicut ergo appellamus Ecclesiam Basilicam, qua continetur populus, qui fuerant appel-

latur Ecclesia, ut nomine Ecclesiae id est, populi qui contineretur, significemus locum qui content: ita quod anima: cor-

poribus continentur, intelligi corpora filio-

rum per nominatas animas possunt. Sic

enim melius acceptur etiam illud, quod Lex inquirunt dicit eum, qui intraverit super animam mortuam, hoc est, super de-

functi cadaver; ut nomine animae mortuam mortuum corpus intelligatur, quod ani-

nam contineret, quia et absente populo, id est Ecclesia, locus tamen ille nihil-

minus Ecclesiam noncupatur. Epist. 157. al. 190. ad Optatum, de Animarum Ori-

gine, c. 5. §. 19.

* The Hebrew word is לָשׁוֹנ, the Greek λίθος, which in one passage of the Targum is read as "Oti יִקְּרָא תַעֲקֵדֵיה יִקְּרָא הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָلַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָלַי הָلַי הָלַי Hagg. ii. 13. is rightly translated, one that is unclean by a dead body. Thus several times and are taken for the body of a dead man; that body which polluted a man under the Law by the touch thereof. And Maimonides hath observed, that there is no pollution from the body till the soul be departed. Therefore and did signify the body after the separation of the soul. And this was anciently observed by St. Augustine, that the soul may be taken for the body only: 'Animae nomine corpus solus possit significari, modo quodam locutionis ostendi-
tur, quod significatur per id quod conti-

netur illud quod continet; sicut ait qui-
dam, Vina coronunt, (Virg. En. vii. 147.) cum coronarentur vasa vinaria; vinum enim continetur, et vas content. Sicut ergo appellamus Ecclesiam Basilicam, qua continetur populus, qui fuerant appel-
latur Ecclesia, ut nomine Ecclesiae id est, populi qui contineretur, significemus locum qui content: ita quod anima: cor-

poribus continentur, intelligi corpora filio-

rum per nominatas animas possunt. Sic
and the apostle in Greek, and is translated *hell*, doth certainly in some other places signify no more than the grave, and is translated so. As where Mr. Ainsworth followeth the word, "For I will go down unto my son mourning to hell;" our translation, aiming at the sense, rendereth it, "For I will go down into the grave unto my son mourning." (Gen. xxxvii. 35.) So again he, "Ye shall bring down my gray hairs with sorrow unto hell," that is, "to the grave." (Gen. xlii. 38.) And in this sense we say, "the Lord killeth and maketh alive: he bringeth down to the grave, and bringeth up." (1 Sam. ii. 6.)

Now being the soul is sometimes taken for the body deserted by the soul, and *hell* is also sometimes taken for the grave, the receptacle of the body dead: therefore it is conceived that the prophet did intend these significations in those words, "Thou shalt not leave my soul in hell;" and consequently, the Article grounded on that Scripture must import no more than this. *Christ* in respect of his body bereft of his soul, which was recommended into, and deposited in, the hands of his Father, descended into the grave.

This exposition hath that great advantage, that he which first mentioned this descent in the *Creed*, did interpret it of the burial; and where this Article was expressed, there that of the burial was omitted. But notwithstanding those advantages, there is no certainty of this interpretation: first, Because he which did so interpret, at the same time, and in the tenor of that expression, did acknowledge a descent of the soul of *Christ* into hell;* and those other Creeds which did likewise omit the burial, and express the descent, did shew, that by that descent, they understood not that of the body, but of the soul.† Secondly, Because they which put these words into the Roman Creed, in which the burial was expressed before, must certainly understand a descent distinct from that; and translate. *Then shall ye bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to the grave:* where the Jerusalem Targum and that of Jonathan have it again *אֵין הָאוֹתֶלִים*; and the Persian again *דְּנָבָה* in *sepulcrum*; the Arabic *אֶשֶּׁר to ad pulterem*, or *ad terram*. And it is observed by the Jewish commentators that those Christians are mistaken who interpret those words spoken by Jacob, I will go down into shool, of hell; declaring that shool there is nothing else but the grave.

* Ruffinus, who first mentioned this Article, did interpret it of the grave, as we have already observed; but yet he did believe a descent distinct from that, in the Exposition of the Creed: "Sed et quod in infernum descendit, evidenter pronunciatur in Psalmis," &c. and then citing that of St. Peter: * Unde et Petrus dixit, Quot Christus mortificatus carne, vivificatus autem spiritu: in ipso, ait, et eis qui in carcere inclusi erant in diebus Nocr, in quo etiam quid operis egerit in inferno declaratur," §. 27. as we before more largely cited the same place.

† I shewed before, that in the Creed made at Sirmium there was the descent mentioned, and the burial omitted, and yet that descent was so expressed, that it could not be taken for the burial: besides now I add, that it was made by the Arians, who in few years before had given in another Creed, in which both the burial and the descent were mentioned; as that of Nice in Thracia: *αφεώχωτα, και παρίνατα, και εις τα κατα- χώνα κατελήθησα, ου αυτω δ ἡδος ετήραιαν.* Theodoret, Hist. l. ii. c. 21. and not long after gave in another at Constantinople to the same purpose: *σταυρώθησα, και απεσκότησα, και παρίνατα, και τις τα κατα- χώνα διυπολήθησα, εν τοι και αυτω δ ἡδον ἑστηκέν.* Socrat. lib. ii. c. 41.
HE DESCENDED INTO HELL. 353

correctly, though it might perhaps be thought a probable interpretation of the words of David, especially taken as belonging to David, yet it cannot pretend to be an exposition of the Creed as now it stands.

The next opinion is, that the soul may well be understood either for the noble part of man distinguished from the body; or else, for the person of man consisting of both soul and body, as it often is; or, for the living soul, as it is distinguished from the immortal spirit: but then the term hell shall signify no place, neither of the man, nor of the body, nor of the soul; but only the state or condition of men in death, during the separation of the soul from the body. So that the prophecy shall run thus, "Thou shalt not leave my soul in hell," that is, Thou shalt not suffer me to remain in the common state of the dead, to be long deprived of my natural life, to continue without exercise, or power of exercising my vital faculty: and then the Creed will have this sense, that Christ was crucified, dead, and buried, and descended into hell; that is, he went unto the dead, and remained for a time in the state of death, as other men do.

But this interpretation supposeth that which can never appear, that Hades signifieth not death itself, nor the place where souls departed are, but the state and condition of the dead, or their permansion in death; which is a notion wholly new, and consequently cannot interpret that which representeth something known and believed of old, according to the notions and conceptions of those times. And that this notion is wholly new, will appear, because not any of the ancient fathers is produced to avow it, nor any of the heathen authors which are produced do affirm it: nay, it is evident that the Greeks did always by Hades understand a place into which the souls of men were carried and conveyed, distinct and separate from that place in which we live; and that their different opinions shew, placing it, some in the earth, some under it, some in one unknown place of it, some in another. But especially Hades, in the judgment of the ancient Greeks, cannot consist with this notion of the state of death, and the permansion in that condition, because there were many which they believed to be dead, and to continue in the state of death, which yet they believed not to be in Hades, as those who died before their time, and those whose bodies were unburied.* Thus likewise the ancient fathers dif-

* The opinion of the ancient Greeks in this case is excellently expressed by Tertullian, who shews three kinds of men to be thought not to descend ad inferos when they die: the first insepulti, the second vivi, the third biathanati: 'Creditum est, insepultos non ante ad inferos redigii quam justa perciperint.' De Anim. c. 56. 'Aiunt et immatura morte praeventas eousque vagari istic, donec reliquato compleatur statu, quorum perivixissent, si non intempestive obissent.' Ibid. Proinde exterterres infernabatur, quas vi erepitas arbitrantur, precipue per atrocitates suppliciorum; crucis dico, et securis, et gladii, et ferar.' Ibid. The souls then of those whose bodies were unburied were thought to be kept out of
furred much concerning the place of the *Infernos*; but never any doubted but that it signified some place or other:* and if

hades till their funerals were performed, and the souls of them who died an untimely or violent death, were kept from the same place until the time of their natural deaths should come. This he further expresses in the terms of the magicians, whose art was conversant about souls departed: *Aut in optimum est hic retineri, secundum ahoros (i. e. *á̂ ñores*), aut presí­
mum, secundum Binothamnos (βιονθά

mócous), ut ipsis jam vocabulis utar, scribus auctrix opinionum istarum Magica saot, Hostanes, et Typhon, et Dardanus,

*θάπτε με, ὁτι τάχεστα πολέας ἄθεος σφαίρας.*

*Τέλε με εἰρήνην ἤμαχι, εἰσόλα καρμάς,*

*Οὐδε με πας μαγγεϊδα ναὶς ποταμεῖς έκσών.*

In the same manner he describes Elpenor, *Odys. A. 51.*

**Πρώται δι άμαχι Ἠλένης ἔδιν ιτάριον,**

*Οὐ γάρ νέ πέπισπνοι ἰτό χαίς εἰρήνας.*

Where it is the observation of Eustathius: *'Οτι δέκά ὁ τοι *'Ελληστι, τὰς τῶν ἀντίπαλα πονάρας μὲν ἀκαμάρωθαν ταῖς λαμ-

παῖς.* And the same Eustathius ob-

*Εὔνου τότε ζέειν, καὶ οὕτω φάες κηλιόων’*

*Η δὲν τεύθνειν, καὶ οὕτως θάμεων.*

*Τὸ δὲ, καὶ οὕτω φάες κηλιόων, θα ἀκαμάρωθαν ἀνάως κατάνας ὡς δύσατον ἐν ξυνι μεν, μὲν γίλαςαν δὲν.*

*Οὕτω τοι καὶ το, καὶ οὕτως οὖν δόματα, τριτος ἀκαμάρωρον κρητα ἀκαμάρωθαν ταῖς λαμ-

παῖς.* It is here very observable that, according to the opinion of the Greeks, to be dead is one thing, and to be in *hades* is another: and that every one which died was not in *hades,* of τὰς τεύθνας καὶ ἐν ᾿δόν γίνεται, εἰ μὲν καὶ παρά ἄκυ, καθά καὶ ο τὸ Ἐπιτοιο ἱματαίρα πελάκας ἀκότα τό, ἐ δὲν τεύθνειν, καὶ ο ᾿αλάς οὖν, ἀντί

τῶν, ἐ δὲν τεύθνειν, καὶ τεύθνειπά. It is serves an extraordinary accurateness in that question of Penelope concerning Ulysses, upon that same ground. *Odys. Δ. 631.*

Luc omnis, quam cornis, inopes humanque turba est; Portor ille Charon; hi, quos vehit unda, sepoldi. Nee ripas datur horrendas nec raucus fluenta. Transportare prius, quam sedibus ossa querunt. Centum errant annos, volitantque hive litora circum. — *Virg. En. vi. 325.*

Thus he is to be understood in the description of the funeral of Polydorus, *En. iii. 62.*

*Ergo instauramus Polydorus funsus, et ingenus Aggeritur tumulo tellus, — animamque sepulc o Condinus.*

Not that anima does there signify the body, as some have observed; but that the soul of Polydorus was then in rest, when his body received funeral rites, as Servius: *'Legimus praterea in Sexto inseptulatorum animas vagas esse, et hinc constat non legitime sepulturn fuisse. Rite ergo, red-

dita legitima sepulitura, redit ad quietem sepulcri,‘ saith Servius, *En. iii. 67.*; or rather, in the sense of Virgil, *ad quietem inferi,* according to the petition of Pali-

nurus, *En. vi. 371.*

Sedibus ut saltem placidis in morte quescan.

And that the soul of Polydorus was so wandering about the place where his body lay unburied, appeareth out of Euripides in Hecuba, where he speaketh thus: v. 30.

---*Νῦν ὅτε μεντόχος φίλες Εκάθες ἀλώνιος, σέμμα ἐρεμακοπές ἱμάς, Τριτάθιον οἶδι φωγος αὐρωπόμοιος.*
HE DESCENDED INTO HELL.

356

yhey had conceived any such notion as the state of death, and the
permansion of the dead in that state, they needed not to
have fallen into doubts or questions; the patriarchs and the
prophets being as certainly in the state of death, and remaining
so, as Corah, Dathan, and Abiram are, or any person which is
certainly condemned to everlasting flames. Though therefore
it be certainly true that Christ did truly and properly die, as
other men are wont to do, and that after expiration he was in
the state or condition of the dead, in deadlighood, as some have
learned to speak; yet the Creed had spoken as much as this
before, when it delivered that he was dead. And although it
is true that he might have died, and in the next minute of time
revived, and consequently his death not (precisely taken) sig-
nify any permansion or duration in the state of death, and there-
fore it might be added, he descended into hell, to signify farther
a permansion or duration in that condition: yet if hell do sig-
nify nothing else but the state of the dead, as this opinion doth
suppose, then to descend into hell is no more than to be dead; and
so notwithstanding any duration implied in that expression,
Christ might have ascended the next minute after he descended
thither, as well as he might be imagined to revive the next mi-
nute after he died. Being then to descend into hell, according
to this interpretation, is no more than to be dead; being no
man ever doubted but that person was dead who died; being
it was before delivered in the Creed that Christ died, or, as we
render it, was dead: we cannot imagine but they which did add
this part of the Article to the Creed, did intend something
more than this, and therefore we cannot admit this notion as a
full or proper exposition. /]

There is yet left another interpretation grounded upon the
general opinion of the Church of Christ in all ages, and upon
a probable exposition of the prophecy of the Psalmist, taking
the soul in the most proper sense for the spirit or rational part
of Christ; that part of a man which, according to our Saviour's
doctrine, the Jews could not kill; and looking upon hell, as a

their souls passed into hades, to the rest.
So was it with Polydorus, and that man
mentioned in the history of the philoso-
pher Athenodorus, whose umbra or phasma
walked after his death. *Inveniatur
ossa inserta catenis et implicita, quae cor-
pus nvo terraeque putrefactum nuda et

esses relieratervinculis: collecta publice
sepeliatur; domus postea rite conditis
manibus carnet. ' Plin. l. vii. Epist. 27.
This was the case of the inspelti. And
for that of the bieathanati, it is remark-
able that Dido threatened Aeneas, Aen.
iv. 384.

—seque atris ignibus absens,
Et, cum frigida mors anima seduxerit artus,
Omnibus umbra locis adero.—

Upon which place Servius observes: 'Di-
cunt Physici Bieathanatorum animas non
recipi in origine sumam, nisi vagantes
legitimum tempus fatur compleverint; quod
Poete ad sepulturam transferunt, ut cen-
tum errant annos (En. vi. 332.). Hoc
ergo nunc dicit Dido, Occisura me ante
diem sum; vaganti mihi dabis penuas
nam te persecur, et adero quamduo er-
ravero semper.'

"Abis die totus igitur, etiam illidie, igitur aphanis
kai ̓ agoyetai, ὃ τὰς φυγάς ἢ ἅν ἔπειξαν ἅπασας ἡποκυνησάς ἢ ἐρχαίνετο, Andreas Caesar. iv
Apocal. c. 64.

*
place distinct from this part of the world where we live, and distinguished from those heavens whither Christ ascended, into which place the souls of men were conveyed after or upon their death; and therefore thus expounding the words of the Psalmist in the person of Christ: Thou shalt not suffer that soul of mine which shall be forced from my body by the violence of pain upon the cross, but resigned into thy hands, when it shall go into that place below where the souls of men departed are detained; I say, thou shalt not suffer that soul to continue there as theirs have done; but shalt bring it shortly from thence, and reunite it to my body.

For the better understanding of this exposition, there are several things to be observed, both in respect to the matter of it, and in reference to the authority of the fathers. First, therefore, this must be laid down as a certain and necessary truth, that the soul of man, when he dieth, dieth not, but returneth unto him that gave it, to be disposed of at his will and pleasure, according to the ground of our Saviour’s counsel, “Fear not them which kill the body, but cannot kill the soul.” (Matt. x. 28.) That better part of us therefore, in and after death, doth exist and live, either by virtue of its spiritual and immortal nature, as we believe; or at least the will of God, and his power upholding and preserving it from dissolution, as many of the fathers thought. This soul, thus existing after death, and separated from the body, though of a nature spiritual, is really and truly in some place; if not by way of circumscription, as proper bodies are, yet by way of determination and indistancy; so that it is true to say, this is really and truly present here, and not elsewhere.

Again, the soul of man, which, while he lived, gave life to the body, and was the fountain of all vital actions, in that separate existence after death, must not be conceived to sleep, or be bereft and stripped of all vital operations, but still to exercise the powers of understanding and of willing, and to be subject to the affections of joy and sorrow. Upon which is grounded the different estate and condition of the souls of men during the time of separation; some of them by the mercy of God being placed in peace and rest, in joy and happiness; others by the justice of the same God left to sorrow, pains, and misery.

As there was this different state and condition before our Saviour’s death, according to the different kinds of men in this life, the wicked and the just, the elect and reprobate: so there were two societies of souls after death; one of them which were happy in the presence of God, the other of those which were left in their sins and tormented for them. Thus we conceive the righteous Abel, the first man placed in this happiness, and the souls of them that departed in the same faith to be gathered to him. Whosoever it was of the sons of
Adam, which first died in his sins, was put into a place of torment; and the souls of all those which departed after with the wrath of God upon them were gathered into his sad society.

Now as the souls at the hour of death are really separated from the bodies; so the place where they are in rest or misery after death, is certainly distinct from the place in which they lived. They continue not where they were at that instant when the body was left without life: they do not go together with the body to the grave; but as the sepulchre is appointed for our flesh, so there is another receptacle, or habitation and mansion, for our spirits. From whence it followeth, that in death the soul doth certainly pass by a real motion from that place, in which it did inform the body, and is translated to that place, and unto that society, which God of his mercy or justice hath allotted to it. And not at present to inquire into the difference and distance of those several habitations (but for method's sake to involve them all as yet under the notion of the infernal parts, or the mansions below), it will appear to have been the general judgment of the Church, that the soul of Christ contradistinguished from his body, that better and more noble part of his humanity, his rational and intellectual soul, after a true and proper separation from his flesh, was really and truly carried into those parts below, where the souls of men before departed were detained; and that by such a real translation of his soul, he was truly said to have descended into hell.

Many have been the interpretations of the opinion of the fathers made of late; and their differences are made to appear so great, as if they agreed in nothing which concerns this point: whereas there is nothing which they agree in more than this which I have already affirmed, the real descent of the soul of Christ unto the habitation of the souls departed. The persons to whom, and end for which he descended, they differ in; but as to a local descent into the infernal parts they all agree. Who were then in those parts, they could not certainly define; but whosoever were there, that Christ by the presence of his soul was with them, they all determined.

That this was the general opinion of the Church, will appear, not only by the testimonies of those ancient writers who lived successively,* and wrote in several ages, and delivered

---

* As Irenæus: 'Cum enim Dominus in medio umbra mortis abiert, ubi animæ mortuorum erant, post deinde corporali- ter resurrexerat—manifestum est, quia et discipulorum ejus, propter quos et hanc operatus est Dominus, animae habiunt in invisibilibus locum definitum eis a Deo, &c.' I. v. c. 26. Clemens Alexandrinus was so clearly of that opinion, that he thought the soul of Christ preached sal- vation to the souls of hell. Strom. i. vi. c. 6. And Tertullian proves that the in- feri are a cavity in the earth where the souls of dead men are, because the soul of Christ went thither: 'Quod si Christus Deus, quia et homo mortuus secundum Scripturas, et sepultus secundum easdem, hulic quoque legi satisfecit, forma humanæ mortis apud inferos functus, nec ante ad- secedit in sublimiora calorum quam de- secedit in inferiora terrarum, ut illis Patriarchas et Prophetas compottes sui
this exposition in such express terms as are not capable of any other interpretation; but also because it was generally used as an argument against the Apollinarian heresy: than which nothing can shew more the general opinion of the catholics and the heretics, and that not only of the present, but of the precedent ages. For it had been little less than ridiculous to have produced that for an argument to prove a point in controversy, which had not been clearer than that which was controverted, and had not been some way acknowledged as a truth by both. Now the error of Apollinarius was, That Christ had no proper intellectual or rational soul, but that the Word was to him in the place of a soul: and the argument produced by the fathers for the conviction of this error was, That Christ descended into hell,* which the Apollinarians

faceret; habes et regionem inferum subterraneam credere, et illos cubito pellere, qui satis superbe non patent animas silebham infera dignas.* De Animo. c. 3. 

For in the same sense, they have, to wit, namely, so many as in the time of S. Ioannis, Orig. contra Celsum, l. ii. § 43. *Ipsa anima, et si futinatysso, jam non est, qua scriptum est, non dierunt animam meam in infernum." S. Ambros. de Incarn. c. 5. *Si ergo secundum hominem, quem Verbum Deus suscepit, putant, dictum esse, hodie mecum eris in Paradiso, non ex his verbis in ccelo existimamus esse esse Paradisum. Neque enim ipse die in ccelo futurus erat homo Christus Jesus, sed in inferno secundum animam, in sepulcro autem secundum carmen. Et de carne quidem, quod eo die in sepulcro sit posita, manifestum est evangelium. Quod vero illa anima in infernun descenderit, apostolica doctrina pradicat. Quaodoquidem B. Petrus ad hanc rem testimonium de Psalmiss adhibet, Quoniam non dierunt animam meam in infernum, neque labes sanctum tuum videcre corruptionem. Illud de anima dictum est, quia ibi non est derelicta, unde tam eio rememrat; illud de corpore, quod in sepulcro corrupi cceler resurrectione non potuit." S. August. Epist. 57. al. 187. ad Dardanum, c. 2. § 5. 


What the Apollinarian heresy was, is certainly known: they denied that Christ had a human soul, affirming the Word was to him in the place of a soul. *Apollinaristas Apollinaris instituit, qui de anima Christi a catholicis disseverunt, dicentes, sient Ariani, Deum Christum carmen sine anima suspiceret. In qua questione testimonii evangelici victi, metem, qua rationalis est anima hominis, non fuisset in anima Christi sed pro hac ipsius Verbum in ea fuisset, dixerunt;" S. August. de Haeres. 55. Against this heresy the catholics argued from the descent into hell, as that which was acknowledged by them all, even by the Arians (with whom the Apollinarians in this agreed), as we have shown before by three several creeds of theirs in which they expressed this descent. This is the argument of Athanasius in his fourth dia
could not deny; and that this descent was not made by his Divinity, nor by his body, but by the motion and presence of his soul, and consequently, that he had a soul distinct both from his flesh and from the Word. Whereas if it could have then been answered by the heretics, as now it is by many, that his descent into hell had no relation to his soul, but to
his body only, which descended to the grave; or that it was not a real, but only virtual, descent, by which his death extended to the destruction of the powers of hell; or that his soul was not his intellectual spirit, or immortal soul, but his living soul, which descended into hell, that is, continued in the state of death: I say, if any of these senses could have been ascribed to this Article, the Apollinarians’ answer might have been sound, and the catholics’ argument of no validity. But being those heretics did all acknowledge this Article; being the catholic fathers did urge the same to prove the real distinction of the soul of Christ both from his Divinity and from his body, because his body was really in the grave when his soul was really present with the souls below; it followeth that it was the general doctrine of the Church, that Christ did descend into hell by a local motion of his soul, separated from his body, to the places below where the souls of men departed were.

Nor can it be reasonably objected, that the argument of the fathers was of equal force against these heretics, if it be understood of the animal soul, as it would be if it were understood of the rational; as if those heretics had equally deprived Christ of the rational and animal soul. For it is most certain that they did not equally deprive Christ of both; but most of the Apollinarians denied a human soul to Christ only in respect of the intellectual part, granting that the animal soul of Christ was of the same nature with the animal soul of other men.* If therefore the fathers had proved only that the animal soul of Christ had descended into hell, they had brought no argument at all to prove that Christ had a human intellectual soul. It is therefore certain that the catholic fathers in their opposition to the Apollinarian heretics did declare, that the intellectual and immortal soul of Christ descended into hell.

The only question which admitted any variety of discrepancy among the ancients was, Who were the persons to whose souls the soul of Christ descended? and that which dependeth on that question, What were the end and use of his descent? In this indeed they differed much, according to their several ap-

* At first indeed the Apollinarians did so speak, as if they denied the human soul in both acceptations; but afterwards they clearly affirmed the Φύσις, and denied the τὸς ἄνιμον. So Socrates testifies of them: 'Πρότερον μὲν άληθείας τὸν ἄνιμον ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ λόγου νομεῖ, τῇ δὲ οἰκνόμῃ τῇ πανομορφίᾳ τῆς Φύσις ἄνω εἶναι ὡς ἧς ἀκούσαι οὐκ ἐννοεῖται, τοῖς δὲ ἐναντίον τοῦ θεοῦ λόγου τῶν τοῖς οἰκνομομενοῖς Φύσις. Vid. Hist. l. ii. c. 46. *Nam et aliqui eorum fuisse in Christo animam negare non potuerunt. Videte absurditatem et insaniam non serendam. Animam irrationalem eum habere voluntur, rationalem negaverunt; dederunt ei animam pecoris, subtraxerunt animam hominis,' S. August. Tract. 47. in Ioan. §. 8. This was so properly indeed the Apollinarian heresy, that it was thereby distinguished from the Arian. *Nam Apollinaristae quidem carnis et animae naturam sine mente adsumpisse Dominum credunt. Arianì vero carnìs tantummodo: Facundus, l. ix. c. 3.
prehensions of the condition of the dead, and the nature of the place into which the souls before our Saviour's death were gathered; some looking on that name which we translate now *hell, hades, or infernum, as the common receptacle of the souls of all men,* both the just and unjust, thought the soul of

* Some of the ancient fathers did believe that the word ᾧς in the Scriptures had the same signification which it hath among the Greeks, as comprehending all the souls both of the wicked and the just; and so they took infernum in the same latitude. As therefore the ancient Greeks did assign one ᾧς for all which died, Πάντας ἄνες ΦιΛάρχος ἀνέθηκεν: and οὐκ ἄνες πάντες ἀνέθηκεν ἡγεῖον: as they made within that one ᾧς: two several receptacles, one for the good and virtuous, the other for the wicked and unjust (according to that of Diphilus, op. Clem. Alex. Strom. v. c. 14. p. 721).

καὶ γὰρ καθ’ ἄνεν ἐκ τοῦ πρώτου παρικείμενον, Μίαν ἄνες, Χάριτος ἄνες ἄνεθεν ἡγεῖον: and that of Plato, in Gorgias, p. 160. διὸ ὁ ἄνεθεν τελεστευσάμενος, διάκονον ἐν τῇ λαμβάνῃ ἐν τῇ τριήμερο, ἐξ ὁμοθέτω τού ἄνεοι, ῥ μὲν ἐκ μακαρίων κατέσχον, ὡς ἦν τὰ πάραπον, and of Virgil, Ἁρ. vi. 540.

Hioc lócus est, partes ubi se via fudit in ambas: Dextera, qua Ditis magni sub maxima tendit, Hæc iter Elysium nobis: at lavo malorum. Exercet pannas, et ad impia Tartara mittit.

as they did send the best of men to ἄνες, there to be happy, and taught rewards to be received there as well as punishments: (Ἀργεῖοι δὲ ἦν τοῦ ἄνεος τινάς παύνες ἐν τοῖς οὐφίδιοι ἐν ἄνει, Τοῖς κάροις μεν ἀλλοις: Τὸν ἐνδόειν γάρ καθαύς, Φανερωθέντας τα θείας: Εἰπτ πρὸς τινάς αὐτοῖς. Pint. de Consolat. ad Apollon. ——Σρ εἰρεσίαις Κύριοι ἄνεως, ο οὐνατα δέχεσθαι τικόν Μέχρις ἐς ἄνεον νεόεις γὰρ καθαύς ἐκάθ᾿ ἐνικτι, τοῖς θ’ ἀλλοις παντὶ ἐκάθ᾿ κακά. Sophr. op. Plutarch. de Aud. Pœt. c. 4.) so did the Jews also before and after our Saviour’s time. For Josephus says, the soul of Samuel was brought up ἐς ἄνεον, and delivers the opinion of the Pharisees after this manner, Ant. Jud. i. xvi. c. 9. Ἀδαματὸς τὸ λέγεν πίατος αὐτός, εἷς καὶ ἐντиш χάρις διακατέτηκα τα καὶ τιμᾶς οἰς ἅπασι οἳ ἄκες ἐπεποθέσεν ἐν τῷ βίῳ γένοις: and of the Sadducees after this manner: Φοιξις τινὲς διαμενόμενα, καὶ τα καὶ ἄνεον τιμᾶς καὶ τιμᾶς ἅμαρτοις. Therefore the Jews which thought the souls immortal did believe that the just were rewarded, as well as the unjust punished, ὅραν χάρις, or καθ’ ἄνεον. And so did also most of the ancient fathers of the Church. There was an ancient book written De Universi Naturæ, which some attributed to Justin Martyr, same to Irenæus, others to Origen, and to Caius a presbyter of the Roman Church in the time of Victor and Zephyrinus, a fragment of which is set forth by David Hoeschelius in his Annotations upon Phoc. delivering the state of ἄνεον at large. Ποι δὲ ἄνεον ἐν τῷ συντρικτωτι ψυχαι ἄκακων τε καὶ ἄδικων, ἀναγκαίως καἰ πιθαί. Here then were the just and unjust in hades, but not in the same place. Οἱ δὲ ἄκακοι ἐν τῷ ἄνεον ἢν συνέχεσται, ἀλλὰ οὐ τῷ συντριττῷ τοῖς καὶ ἄδικοι. Μια γὰρ εἰς τοῦτο τὸ χορων κάθοδος, &c. There was but one passage into the hades, saith he; but when that gate was passed, the just went on the right hand to a place of happiness, (Τούτῳ δὲ τῶν καθαύων κατέκλυσαν Ἀλέξαρα) and the unjust on the left to a place of misery. Οὕτως ἐν περὶ ἀνέον λάγος, ἐν εὐχαρία πάντων κατέχεται σικελικῶν ἐν ἐς οὐσίας ἄραν, p. 923. Tertullian wrote a tract, De Para- diso, now not extant, in which he expressed thus much: Ἀδερ etiam de Paradiso a nobis libellum, quo constitutum omnem animam apud Inferos sequestrari in diem Domini. De Anima, c. 53. St. Jerome on the third chapter of Ecclesiastes: Ἀντε aduentum Christi omnia ad inferos pariter ducuntur: unde et Jacob ad inferos pariter descensurum sibi dicit; et Job pios et impios in inferno quierunt retentari: et Evangelium, chaos magnus interpostum apud inferos; et Abrahum cum Lazerio, et divinem in sup- pliciis, esse testatur, ad fin. And in his 25th, ad 22nd, Epistle: Perficialis ad ista responsio est; Luxisse Jacob filium, quen putabant occultum, ad quem et ispe erat apud inferos descensuram, dicens, De- scendam ad filium meum legens in infernum: qua nescit Paradisii januam Christus effingerat, neque flamnam illam roman- pharam et vetiginae præsidentium Che- rubin sanguis ejus estincterat. Unde et Aorabau, licet in loco refrigeri, tamen apud inferos cum Lazaro fuisse scribatur, col. 57. And again: Nequeo satis Scriptura: laudare mysteria, et divinum sensum in verbis licet simplicibus admirari: quod, Moyses plaegatur: et Jesus Nave, vir sanctus, seculus furtur, et ta-
Christ descended unto those which departed in the true faith and fear of God, the souls of the patriarchs and the prophets and the people of God.

But others there were who thought hades or infernum was never taken in the Scriptures for any place of happiness; * and therefore they did not conceive the souls of the patriarchs or the prophets did pass into any such infernal place; and consequently, that the descent into hell was not his going to the prophets or the patriarchs, which were not there. For as if it had been only said that Christ had gone unto the bosom of Abraham, or to paradise, no man would ever have believed that he had descended into hell; so that, being it is only written, “Thou shalt not leave my soul in hell,” it seems incongruous to think that he went then unto the patriarchs who were not there.

Now this being the diversity of opinions anciently in respect of the persons unto whose souls the soul of Christ descended at his death, the difference of the end or efficacy of that descent is next to be observed. Of those who did believe the name of Hades to belong unto that general place which comprehended all the souls of men (as well those who died in the favour of God, as those who departed in their sins), some of them thought that Christ descended to that place of Hades, where the souls of all the faithful, from the death of the righte-
HE DESCENDED INTO HELL.

363

ous Abel to the death of Christ, were detained;* and there dissolving all the power by which they were detained below, translated them into a far more glorious place, and stated them in a condition far more happy in the heavens above.

Others of them understood no such translation of place, or alteration of condition there, conceiving that the souls of all men are detained below still,+ and shall not enter into heaven

* This is the opinion generally received in the Schools, and delivered as the sense of the Church of God in all ages: but though it was not so general as the schoolmen would persuade us, yet it is certain that many of the fathers did so understand it. *See" in sanctas in a book called the Omnis Hic. ibid. De Demon. Deo et i.

† This is the opinion generally received in the Schools, and delivered as the sense of the Church of God in all ages: but though it was not so general as the schoolmen would persuade us, yet it is certain that many of the fathers did so understand it. ⁵See" in sanctas in a book called the Omnis Hic.
until the general resurrection. They made no such distinction at the death of Christ, as if those which believed in a Saviour to come should be kept out of heaven till he came, and those which now believe in the same Saviour already come, should be admitted thither immediately upon their expiration.

But such as thought the place in which the souls of the patriarchs did reside could not in propriety of speech be called *hell*, nor was ever so named in the Scriptures, conceived, that as our Saviour went to those who were included in the proper hell, or place of torment, so the end of his descent was to deliver souls from those miseries which they felt, and to translate them to a place of happiness and a glorious condition. They did think that hell was wholly emptied, that every soul was presently released from all the pains which before it suffered, were branded with the name of heretics:* but to believe

cuentes secreti ab impiis interjecto Chao quiescunt. Custodit et introitum, dum nos in æternum illud et beatum regnum introductum. *Tract. in Psal. cxx. §. 16.*

And at the end of the second Psalm; *Judicium enim dies vel beatitudinis retributione est æterna, vel poena: tempus vero mortis habet nuncumque suis legis, dum ad judicium nonamqueque Abrahæ reservat aut poena.* §. 48. Thus Gregory Nyssen still leaves the patriarchs in Abraham's bosom, in expectation of admittance into heaven: *etiam autem patriæ sacrificiis patientibus illis, ut sic etiam intrant in æternam iustitiam, vel quae diei ut sic autem intrant in æternam poenam.*

Thus did our Saviour in his book *De Hare-sibus* reckon this as the seventy-ninth heresy: *Alia, descendente ad inferos Christo credidisse incredulos, et omnes inde existimat libertatos.* And though he gives the heresy without a name, as he found it in Philastrius, yet we find the opinion was not very singular. For Eudoxius propounded it to St. August in a question in which he desired satisfaction: *An descendens Christus omnibus evangeliavit, omnesque a tenebris et peñis per gratiam liberavit, ut a tempore resurrectionis Domini judicium expectetur eximnitus infelix?* *Ep. 98. al. 163.*

*S. August.* And in his answer to that question, he looks not upon the affirmative part as a heresy, but as a doubtful proposition. His resolution, first, is, that it did not concern the prophets and the patriarchs, because he could not see how they should be thought to be in hell, and so capable of a deliverance from thence: *Addunt quidam hoc benedicium antiquissimum etiam Sanctis fasces concedisse, Abel, Seth, Noe, et dominus ejus, Abraham, Isaac, et Jacob, aliisque patriarchis et prophetis, ut cum Domini in infernum venissent, illis doloribus solvereurient.* Sed quumam modo intelligatur Abraham, in cujus sinum pinos etiam papam ille susceps est, in illis fuisse doloribus, ego quidem non viden: explicantur forte quia possunt.* Epist. 99. al. 164. ad Eudoxiam.* §. 6, 7. Et paulo post:* *Unde illius justis, qui in sinn Abraham erant cum ille in inferna descendere, nondum quid contuisset invent, a quibus eum secundum beatificam presentiam sancti Divinitatis unquam video recessisse,* §. 8. And yet in another he will not blame them that believed the contrary, nor did he think their opinion absurd: *Si enim non absurdi credi videtur, at quos etiam Sanctos, qui veniunt Christi tempore fidel, locis quidem a tormentis impiorum remotissimis, sed apud inferos, fuisse, donec eos inde exarant Christi ad ea loca desceens crater, &c.* *De Cœtu-tate Dei,* l. xx. c. 15. His second resolution was, that Christ did by his descent relieve some out of the pains of hell, taking hell in the worst sense: *Quia evidentia testimonia et infernum commemorat et dolores, nulla causa occurrit, cur illo creditori venisse Salvator, nisi ut ab ejus doloribus salus faceret.* *Epist. 99. al. 164.* §. 8. *Quamobrem unam firmissimse quod idem habet fun*
HE DESCENDED INTO HELL.

that many were delivered, was both by them and many others counted orthodox.

The means by which they did conceive that Christ did free the souls of men from hell, was the application of his death unto them, which was propounded unto those souls by preaching of the Gospel there: * that as he revealed here on earth the datissima auctoritate firmata, quia Christus mortuus est secundum Scripturas, et quia sepultus est, et quia resurrexit tertia die secundum Scripturas; et cetera quae de illo testissimae veritate conscripta sunt. In quibus etiam hoc est, quod apud inferos fuit, solutis eorum doloribus, quibus eum erat impossible teneri: a quibus etiam recte intelligi soluisse et liberasse quos voluit. * Ibid. § 14. His third resolution was, that how many these were which were delivered out of hell was uncertain, and therefore teme-

rarious to define: * Sed utrum omnes quos in eis invent, an quosdam quos illo beneficio dignos judicavit, adluc requi-

ro. * Ibid. § 8. * Hoc scilicet quod scrip-

tum est, Solutis doloribus inferni, non in omnibus, sed in quibusdam accepit po-
test, quos ille dignos ista liberatione judicabat: ut neque frustra illie desce-
disse existimeatur, nulli eorum profuturos qui ibi tenebantur inclusi; nec tamen sit consequens, ut quod Divina quibus-

dam misericordia justitiae concessit, omnibus concessum esse putandum sit. * Ibid. § 5. * Potest et sic, ut eos dolores eam sovissi cedamus quibus teneri ipsa non poterat, sed quibus ali tenebantur quos ille noverat liberandos. Verum quin-

nam isti sunt temporeum est definire. Si enim omnes omnia diximus tunc eorum liberatos qui illuc inventi sunt, quis non prodebeat, si hoc est omnium estendere! * Ibid. § 3, 4. * Thus the opinion of St. Augustin is clear, that those which de-

parted in the faith of Christ were before in happiness and the beatifical presence of God, and so needed no translation by the death of Christ; and of those which were kept in the pains of hell, some were loosed and delivered from them, some were not; and this was the proper end or effect of Christ's descent into hell. Thus Capreolus: * Ipsae in homine est visitare interorum dignates abstrusa, et propositos mortis presentia invicta majes-


Pach. 7, t. v. par. 2 p. 91. Who speaks full as high of those words of Eulogius, or that heretic, whosoever it was, which is mentioned, though not named, by Philastrius, lib. de Hares. 7. 4. For ipsae et omnes dictae, qui team thals et personae, and kevasti tov the wosian, mohv (which he useth io another homily) is the same.

* This preaching of the Gospel to the dead, was the general opinion of the fa-

thers, as the end of his descens, or means, by which that good was wrought for the souls below, which was effected by his death. * Eaproprer Domum in eam quae sub terra descendisse, evangelizantem et illis adventum suum, remissam peccato-

rum existentem bis qui credunt in eum. Crediderunt autem in eum omnes qui sperabant in eum, id est, qui adventum ejus prænunciaverant, et dispositionibus ejus servierunt, Justi, et Prophete, et Patriarchae, quibus similiter ut nobis re-

will of God unto the sons of men, and propounded himself as the object of their faith, to the end that whosoever believed in him should never die; so after his death he shewed himself unto the souls departed, that whosoever of them would yet accept of and acknowledge him should pass from death to life.

Thus did they think the soul of Christ descended into hell to preach the Gospel to the spirits there, that they might receive him who before believed in him, or that they might believe in him who before rejected him. But this cannot be received as the end, or way to effect the end, of Christ's descent: nor can I look upon it as an illustration of this Article, for many reasons. For, first, I have already shewn that the place of St. Peter, so often mentioned for it, is not capable of that sense, nor hath it any relation to our Saviour after death; secondly, The ancients seem upon no other reason to have interpreted this place of St. Peter in that manner, but because other Apocryphal Writings led them to that interpretation, upon the authority whereof this opinion only can rely. A place of the prophet Jeremy was first produced,* that 'The Lord God of Israel remembered his dead, which slept in the land of the grave, and descended unto them, to preach unto them his salvation.' But being there is no such verse extant in that prophet or any other, it was also delivered that it was once in the translation of the Septuagint, but rased out from thence by the Jews, which as it can scarcely be conceived true, so if it were, it would be yet of doubtful authority, as being never yet found in the Hebrew text. And Hermes, in his book called the Pastor, was thought to give sufficient strength to this opinion;†

* Justin Martyr in his Dialogue with Trypho the Jew: 'Et qui autem dormirent in terra sepulchris, &c.'

† Clemens Alexandrinus first brings a strange place of Scripture to prove Christ's preaching in hell, Strom. I. vi. c. 6. Διδασκαλίαν τήν ταξιν οτι τους εστιν τοις νεκρους αιωνιοις δει εφύλλησαι και τους νεκρους, ἀλλ' οί εἰς δόξαν καταπαθήντας και εἰς ἐκκλησίαν αὐτούς ἐκκλησίαν, καθάπερ ἐκ τούς νεκροὺς τῆς θάνατος ἐκκλησίαν. Then see also Irenæus, Adv. Her. I. ii. c. 22. and elsewhere.
whereas the book itself is of no good authority, and in this particular is most extravagant; for he taught that not only the soul of Christ, but also the souls of the apostles, preached to the spirits below; that as they followed his steps here, so did they also after their death, and therefore descended to preach in hell.

Nor is this only to be suspected in reference to those pretended authorities which first induced men to believe it, and to force forced interpretations of Scripture to maintain it; but also to be rejected in itself, as false and inconsistent with the nature, scope, and end, of the Gospel (which is to be preached with such commands and ordinances as can concern those only which are in this life), and as incongruous to the state and condition of those souls to whom Christ is supposed to preach. For if we look upon the patriarchs and prophets, and all saints before departed, it is certain they were never disobedient in the days of Noah; nor could they need the publication of the Gospel after the death of Christ, who by virtue of that death were accepted in him while they lived, and by that acceptance had received a reward long before. If we look upon them who died in disobedience, and were in torments for their sins, they cannot appear to be proper objects for the Gospel preached. The rich man, whom we find in their condition, desired one might be sent from the dead to preach unto his brethren then alive, lest they also should come unto that place; but we find no hopes he had that any should come from which they were alive to preach to him. For if the living, who "heard not Moses and the prophets, would not be persuaded though one rose from the dead;" (Luke xvi. 31.) surely those who had been disobedient unto the prophets, should never be persuaded after they were dead.

Whether therefore we consider the authorities first introducing this opinion, which were apocryphal; or the testimonies of Scripture, forced and improbable; or the nature of this preaching, inconsistent with the Gospel; or the persons to whom Christ should be thought to preach (which, if dead in the faith and fear of God, wanted no such instruction; if departed in

aim at the place of St. Peter, he passes to another proof, which he had produced in his second book: Didyma. θε και τον διυπτηρα εσχατι, τοις Αποστολοις, ακολουθησα τον Κυριο, και τοις ίδιοι ευγενεσινων, which he there proved by the authority of his book called Pastor, and attributed to Hermes: "Ερμης ἐξ — φοσι τοις ιδιοτολοις και τοις διασκαλοις, τοις κηρυσσαντων το εχομεν του ιδιου του θεου, και κηρυσσαντας, τη δυναμει και τον πατει κηρυξαν των σεπικομισεσιους. Strom. l. ii. c. 9. which words are thus in the old Latin translation of Hermes, l. iii. Sim. 9. 'Quoniam hi Apostoli et doctores qui predicaverunt nomen Filii Dei, cum habentes fidem eis et potestatem defuncti essent, predicaverunt his qui ante obierint.' And then Clemens supplies that authority with a reason of his own, that as the apostles were to imitate Christ while they lived, so they did also imitate him after death: ΄Ερμης γαρ, ομα, εσπερ κατατεθη, εντωσε θε κηρυξεν των αηωνων των μαθητων μοισεις, ης ευγενεσιν τοις διασκαλοις. Stromat. l. vi. c. 6. And therefore they preached to the souls in hell as Christ did before them. This is the doctrine of Clemens Alexandrinus out of his Apocryphal Authorities.
infidelity and disobedience, were unworthy and incapable of such a dispensation), this preaching of Christ to the spirits in prison cannot be admitted either as the end, or as the means proper to effect the end, of his descent into hell.

Nor is this preaching only to be rejected as a means to produce the effect of Christ's descent; but the effect itself pretended to be wrought thereby, whether in reference to the just or unjust, is by no means to be admitted. For though some of the ancients thought, as is shewn before, that Christ did therefore descend into hell, that he might deliver the souls of some which were tormented in those flames, and translate them to a place of happiness: yet this opinion deserves no acceptance, neither in respect of the ground or foundation on which it is built, nor in respect of the action or effect itself. The authority upon which the strength of this doctrine doth rely, is that place of the Acts, (ii. 24.) whom God hath raised up, loosing the pains of hell, for so they read it; from whence the argument is thus deduced: God did loose the pains of hell when Christ was raised. But those pains did not take hold of Christ himself, who was not to suffer any thing after death; and consequently he could not be loosed from or taken out of those pains in which he never was: in the same manner the patriarchs and the prophets, and the saints of old, if they should be granted to have been in a place sometimes called hell, yet were they there in happiness, and therefore the delivering them from thence could not be the loosing of the pains of hell: it followeth then, that those alone who died in their sins were involved in those pains, and when those pains were loosed, then were they released: and being they were loosed when Christ was raised, the consequence will be, that he, descending into hell, delivered some of the damned souls from their torments there.

But, first, though the Latin translation render it so, the pains of hell;* though some copies, and other translations, and divers of the fathers, read it in the same manner; yet the original and authentic Greek acknowledged no such word as hell, but pro-

* The Vulgar Latin renders it thus, Quem Deus suscepsit, solutis doloribus infernai: so also the Syriac, נוחל חנות
לִעַשׁ. So some of the ancient fathers read it: as Irenaeus, l. iii. c. 12. or rather his interpreter: 'Quem Deus excusat, solutis doloribus infernai.' Capronius bishop of Carthage: 'Resolvete, sicut scriptum est, infernaium parturientes.' Epist. ad Phil. et Cyprianum. p. 48. and before these Polycarpus: 'Os separat ad Christum, et ad Christum; διακατ' ἀπὰντα ἐπὶ συνεζητεῖν Deum, διακατάδειν ἀπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ εἰς τοὺς ἐνώνσιν καταβαίνει.' Epist. ad Phil. §. 1. whom I suppose Grotius understood, when he cited Barnabas: and thus St. Augustine read it, and laid the stress of his interpretation upon this reading: Quia evidentia testimonia et infernaium commorantium et dolores, &c.' Epist. 99. al. 164 §. 8. But in the original Greek it is generally written οὐκ ἔσται ἢττευ, and in all these many copies of it, only that of Petrus Fraxardus, and two of the sixteen copies which Robertus Stephanus made use of, read it ἢττευ. And this mistake was very easy, for, in the eighteenth Psalm, verse the fifth, there is τὸν ἤττευ ἢττευ ἢττευ, and verse the sixth, ἢττευ ἢττευ νῦν ἡμῖν ἀπεδείκτηκεν ἢττευ. And we find twice in the Proverbs, xiv. 12. and xvi. 25 ὢν ἢττευ translated ἢττευ, and 2 Sam. xxii. 6. ἢττευ μετὰ θεοῦ ἢττευ ἢττευ.
pounds it plainly thus, **whom God hath raised up, loosing the pains of death.** Howsoever, if the words were so expressed in the original text, yet it would not follow that God delivered Christ out of those pains in which he was detained any time, much less that the soul of Christ delivered the souls of any other; but only that he was preserved from enduring them.*

*Quod si movet, quemadmodum accipienda sit inferni ab illo solutos do- lores (neque enim corporat io eis esse tenuerunt in vinculis, et siceos solvit tau- quam si catenam solvisset quibus fuerat alligatus): facile est intelligere, sic eos solutos esse quemadmodum solvi possunt laquei venantium, ne teneant; non quia teneantur.** S. August. Epist. 99. al. 164. § 3.

Again, as the authority is most uncertain, so is the doctrine most incongruous. The souls of men were never cast into infernal torments, to be delivered from them. The days which follow after death were never made for opportunities to a better life. The angels had one instant either to stand or fall eternally; and what that instant was to them, that this life is unto us. We may as well believe the devils were saved, as those souls which were once tormented with them. For it is an "everlasting fire," (Matt. xxv. 41.) an "everlasting punish- ment," (Ibid. 46.) a "worm that dieth not." (Mark ix. 44.) Nor does this only belong to us who live after the death of Christ, as if the damnation of all sinners now were ineluctable and eternal, but before that death it were not so; as if faith and repentance were now indispensably necessary to salvation, but then were not. For thus the condition of mankind before the fulness of time, in which our Saviour came into the world, should have been far more happy and advantageous than it hath been since.† But neither they nor we shall ever escape eternal flames, except we obtain the favour of God before we be swallowed by the jaws of death. "We must all appear before the judgment-seat of Christ, that every one may receive the things done in his body:" (2 Cor. v. 10.) but if they be in a state of salvation now by the virtue of Christ's descent into hell, which were numbered among the damned before his death, at the day of the general judgment they must be returned into hell again; or if they be received then into eternal happiness, it will follow either that they were not justly condemned to those flames at first, according to the general dispensations of God, or else they did not receive the things done in their body at the last; which all shall as certainly receive as all appear. This life is given unto men to work out their salvation with fear and trembling, but after death cometh judgment, reflecting on the life that is past, not expecting amendment or conversion then. He that liveth and believeth in Christ shall never die;
he that believeth though he die, yet shall he live; but he that dieth in unbelief, shall neither believe nor live. And this is as true of those which went before, as of those which came after our Saviour, because he was the Lamb slain before the foundation of the world. I therefore conclude, that the end for which the soul of Christ descended into hell, was not to deliver any damned souls, or to translate them from the torments of hell unto the joys of heaven.

The next consideration is, whether by virtue of his descent the souls of those which before believed in him, the patriarchs, prophets, and all the people of God, were delivered from that place and state in which they were before; and whether Christ descended into hell to that end, that he might translate them into a place and state far more glorious and happy. This hath been in the later ages of the Church the vulgar opinion of most men, and that as if it followed necessarily from the denial of the former: He delivered not the souls of the damned,* therefore he delivered the souls of them which believed, and of them alone: till at last the Schools have followed it so fully, that they deliver it as a point of faith and infallible certainty,† that the soul of Christ descending into hell, did deliver from thence all the souls of the saints which were in the bosom of Abraham, and did confer upon them actual and essential beatitude, which before they enjoyed not. And this they lay upon two grounds: first, That the souls of saints departed saw not God; and secondly, That Christ by his death opened the gate of the kingdom of heaven.

But even this opinion, as general as it hath been, hath neither that consent of antiquity, nor such certainty, as it pretends, but is rather built upon the improbabilities of a worse. The most ancient of all the fathers,‡ whose writings are extant,

* So Gregory the Great, after he had proved that none of the damned were released by Christ's descent, thus infers and concludes: 'Hac itaque omnium præ retractates nihil alio teneatis nisi quod vera fides per catholicam ecclesiam docet; quia descendens ad inferos Dominus illos solummodo ab inferni clausulis eripuit, quos viventes in carne per suam gratiam in fide et bona operatione servavit.' I. vi. c. 179. Epist. 13. So Modestus Hispalensis by way of opposition: 'Ideo Dominus in inferna descendit, ut his, qui ab eo non pannaliter detinebantur, vim aperiret re-vertendi ad coelos.' Sentent. l. i. c. 16. So Venerable Bede upon the place of St. Peter, I Ep. iii. 19. 'Catholicæ fides habet, quia descendens ad inferna Dominus non incredulos inde, sed fideles tantummodo suos educens, ad coelestia secum regna perduxerit; neque exitus corporis animabus et inferiorum carcere incisis, sed in hac vita vel per seipsum, vel per

soorum exempla sive verba fidelium, quotidie viam vitae demonstrat.'

† These are the words of Suarez: 'Primo ergo, certum est Christum descendendo ad inferos animabus sanctis, que in sinu Abraham erant, essentiam beatus et divine eorum animarum, ut et carissima dona quae illam consequuntur contulisse.' Hoc de fide certum existimo; quia de fide est, illas animas non vidisse Deum ante Christi mortem. Deinde est de fide certum, Christum per mortem aperisse hominibus juxta regni illeque de fide etiam certum est, quod animas sanctorum omnium post Christi mortem decedentium (si nihil paragandum habeant) statim videre Deum. Ergo idem est praedictis animabus.' In Thes. I. 15. Disputat. 43. sect. 3.

‡ We have shewn this before to have been the opinion of the most ancient, producing the express testimonies of Justin Martyr, Irenæus, Tertullian, Hilary, Gregory Nissen. So also Novatian: 'Que
Indeed, clear hell: but for is gatory. VVe leave Augustinus very: Nazianzenus poneret question potest still. Which and much Christus eduxerit, dubitari quoquo modo potest—Et juxta hanc possent intelligi Nazianzenus et Augustinus. In tertium partem D. Thome, disp. 43. sect. 3. But this will by no means solve their authorites; for neither of them did doubt or question whether some of the damned were released, but whether all were released or some only: which Suarez did very well perceive, and therefore was ready in the same sentence with another answer: 'Quanquam Nazianzenus non videatur illa scripsisse verba, quoniam de hac veritate dubitaret, sed solum ut proponeret quid de hoc mysterio inquirere ac scire oporteat.' Ibid. Which is as much as to say, that he was satisfied of the truth, but desired to satisfy no man else: whereas it is clear that it was a doubt in his age, as we have before shewn, and that he would leave it still a doubt and undetermined. And as for the other: 'Augustinus recte potest intelligi de animabus Purgatorii.' Ibid. it is certainly false, unless they will enlarge that purgatory as wide as hell; for the question was of emptying that.

infra terram jacent, neque ipsa sunt digestis et ordinatis potestatis vacua. Locus enim est quo piorum animae impiorumque ducantur, futuri judicii praedicta sentientes.' Lib. de Trinitate, c. 1. 

We have already shewn that many did believe all the damned souls were saved then; and St. Augustin had his adhae require, when he wrote unto Eudius concerning that opinion. Beside, the doubt of that great divine Gregory Nazianzen is very observable, who in his 2nd Oration de Paechute hath these words: An eis ἔδω κατη, συγκατέθεα γενού καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖτω τῶν Χριστιων μυστηρίων τις ἐκειμένη τῆς δικαιίας καταγάεις; τις ἀληθές; ἀπλαξίς σώζει πάντας ἑπιφανείας; ἡ κατει τούς πιστευοντας; Orat. xlii. p. 693. Where his question is clearly this, Whether Christ appearing in hell did save all without exception, or did save there as he does here, only such as believed? To this it is answered by Suarez two ways, that it is the ordinary and universal law that none of the damned should be saved: 'An vero ex speciali privilegio suav volvuntate et arbitrio alium et damnamum ex Gehenna
were kept in any place below, which was, or may be called the
hell: the bosom of Abraham might well be in the heavens
above, far from any region where the devil and his angels were;
the Scriptures no where tell us that the spirits of just men
went unto or did remain in hell; the place in which the rich
man was in torments after death is called hell, but that into
which the angels carried the poor man's soul is not termed so.
There was a vast distance between them two; nor is it likely
that the angels which see the face of God should be sent down
from heaven to convey the souls of the just into that place,
where the face of God cannot be seen. When God translated
Enoch, and Elias was carried up in a chariot to heaven, they
seem not to be conveyed to a place where there was no vision
of God; and yet it is most probable, that Moses was with Elias
as well before as upon the mount; nor is there any reason to
conceive that Abraham should be in any worse place or condi-
tion than Enoch was, having as great a "testimony that he
pleased God" as Enoch had. (Heb. xi. 5.)

Secondly, It cannot be certain that the soul of Christ deli-
vered the souls of the saints of old from hell, and imparted to
them the beatific vision, except it were certain that their souls
are in another place and a better condition now than they were
before. But there is no certainty that the patriarchs and the
prophets are now in another place and a better condition than
they were before our blessed Saviour died; there is no intima-
tion of any such alteration of their state delivered in the Scrip-
tures; there is no such place with any probability pretended
to prove any actual accession of happiness and glory already
past. "Many shall come from the east and west, and shall sit
down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of
heaven:" (Matt. viii. 11.) there then did the Gentiles which
came in to Christ find the patriarchs, even in the kingdom of
heaven; and we cannot perceive that they found them any
where else than Lazarus did. For the description is the same,
"There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth, when ye shall
see Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and all the prophets, in
the kingdom of God, and you yourselves thrust out." (Luke
xiii. 28.) For as the rich man "in hell lift up his eyes being
in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off,"(Luke xvi. 23.) before
the death of Christ; so those that were in "weeping and
gnashing of teeth, saw Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and
the prophets," when the Gentiles were brought in.

Thirdly, Though it were certain that the souls of the saints
had been in a place called hell, as they were not; though it
were also certain that they were now in a better condition than
they were before Christ's death, as it is not: yet it would not
follow that Christ descended into hell to make this alteration;
for it might not be performed before his resurrection, it might
not be effected till his ascension, it might be attributed to the
merit of his passion, it might have no dependence on his des-
scension. I conclude therefore that there is no certainty of
truth in that proposition which the Schoolmen take for a mat-
ter of faith, that Christ delivered the souls of the saints from
that place of hell which they call *limbus of the fathers,* into
heaven; and for that purpose after his death descended into
hell.

Wherefore being it is most infallibly certain that the death
of Christ was as powerful and effectual for the redemption of
the saints before him, as for those which follow him; being
"they did all eat the same spiritual meat, and did all drink the
same spiritual drink;" (1 Cor. x. 3, 4.) being "Abraham is the
father of us all," and we now after Christ's ascension are called
but to "walk in the steps of the faith of that father;" (Rom.
iv. 16. 12.) being the *bosom of Abraham* is clearly propounded
in the Scriptures, (Luke xvi. 22.) as the place into which the
blessed angels before the death of Christ conveyed the souls of
those which departed in the favour of God, and is also pro-
mised to them which should believe in Christ after his death;*
being we can find no difference or translation of the *bosom of
Abraham,* and yet it is a comfort still to us that we shall go to
him,† and while we hope so never fear that we shall go to hell:
I cannot admit this as the end of Christ's descent into hell, to
convey the souls of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and those
which were with them, from thence; nor can I think there was
any reference to such an action in those words, "Thou shalt
not leave my soul in hell."

* Although the *bosom of Abraham* in express and formal terms he spoken only
of Lazarus, whom Christ being yet alive in the flesh supposed dead; yet the same
bosom is virtually and in terms equivalent promised to those which should after
wards believe. For the joys of the life to come are likened to a feast, in which,
according to the custom then in use, they lay down with the head of one toward
the breast of the other, who is therefore said to lie in his bosom, as we read of St.
John, καὶ ἀκεχίμασεν ἐν τῷ κόλπῳ ἦσσον; John xiii. 23. thus in that heavenly feast in
the kingdom of God, Lazarus is ἀκεχίμασεν ἐν τῷ κόλπῳ ἀνεβαίνει Luke xvi. 23.
and Matt. viii. 11. Christ saith, that "many shall come from the east and from
the west," καὶ ἀκαθάρτως ἐκ μετα Ἀνεμα, discumbent cum Abrahamo, "sit down
with Abraham," as we translate it after our custom, at the same feast, that is,
ἀκεχίμασεν ἐν τούς κόλποι τοῦ Ἀνεμα, &c. as Euthymius: *Qua Deus Abraham,
cæli conditor, Pater Christi est; idicrco in regno celorum est Abraham, cum
quo accubuitur sunt nationes que credi-
derunt in Christum illum creatoris.* ad loc.

† St. Augustine often shews the comfort which he had in going to the bosom of
Abraham; as in the case of his friend Ne-
bridius: *Non ille vivit in sinu Abra-
ham. Quia quod illud est quod illo signi-
ficatur sine, ibi Nebridius munis vivit,
dulcis amicus mens, tuus autem, Domine,
adoptivus ex liberto filius, ibi vivit. Nam
quis aliquis talis animae locus?* Conf. I.
xix. c. 3. And be seats that place (as un-
certain as before) where it was before:
"Post vitam istam parvam nondon eris
ubi erunt Sancti, quibus dicetur, Venite
benedicti Patris, percipite regnum quod re-
bis paratum est ab initio mundi. Nondon
ibi eris, quis nescit? Sed jam poteris ibi
esse, ubi illum quondam vicerosum pun-
perem dives ille superbus et sterilis in
medias suis tormentis vidit a longe requi-
escentem." Concio 1. §. 10. in Psal. xxvii.
And this he necessarily takes for a suffi-
cient comfort to a dying Christian, who
seats that place in conspectu Domini,'
de Civit. Dei, I. i. c. 12. and looked upon
them which were in it, as upon those, "a
quibus Christus secundum beatificam
præséntiam nunquam recessit." Epist. 99.
al. 164. §. 8.
ARTICLE V.

Another opinion hath obtained, especially in our Church, that the end for which our Saviour descended into hell, was to triumph over Satan and all the powers below within their own dominions. And this hath been received as grounded on the Scriptures and consent of fathers. The Scriptures produced for the confirmation of it are these two, "having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a show of them openly, triumphing over them:" (Col. ii. 11.) and, "when he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men. Now that he ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into the lower parts of the earth?" (Eph. iv. 8, 9.) By the conjunction of these two they conceive the triumph of Christ's descent clearly described in this manner: 'Ye were buried with Christ in baptism, with whom ye were also raised; and when ye were dead in sins, he quickened you together with him, forgiving your sins, and cancelling the hand-writing of ordinances that was against us, and spoiling powers and principalities, he made an open show of them, triumphing over them in himself.'* (Col. ii. 12—15.) That is, say they, ye died and were buried with Christ, who fastened the hand-writing of ordinances to the cross, that he might abolish it from having any right to tie or yoke his members. Ye likewise were quickened, and raised together with Christ, who spoiled powers and principalities, and triumphed over them in his own person. So that these words, "spoiling principalities and powers," are not referred to the cross but to Christ's resurrection. This triumph over Satan and all his kingdom, the same apostle to the Ephesians setteth down as a consequent to Christ's death, and pertinent to his resurrection, "Ascending on high, he led captivity captive:" and this, "he ascended: what meaneth it, but that he descended first into the lower parts of the earth?" (Eph. iv. 8, 9.) So that ascending from the lower parts of the earth, he "led captivity captive," which is all one with "he triumphed over powers and principalities." With this coherence and conjunction of the apostle's words, together with the interpretation of the ancient fathers, they conceive it sufficiently demonstrated, that Christ after his death, and before his resurrection, in the lowermost parts of the earth, even in hell, did lead captivity captive, and triumphed over Satan.

But notwithstanding, I cannot yet perceive either how this triumph in hell should be delivered as a certain truth in itself; or how it can have any consistency with the denial of those other ends, which they who of late have embraced this opinion do ordinarily reject. First, I cannot see how the Scriptures mentioned are sufficient to found any such conclusion of themselves. Secondly, I cannot understand how they can embrace this as the interpretation of the fathers, who believe not that any of the souls of the damned were taken out of the torments

* B. Bisson, v. 294.
of hell, or that the souls of the saints of old were removed from thence by Christ’s descent; which were the reasons why the fathers spoke of such a triumphing in hell, and leading captivity captive there.

That the triumphing in the Epistle to the Colossians is not referred to the cross, but to the resurrection, cannot be proved: the coherence cannot enforce so much: no logic can infer such a division, that the blotting out of the hand-writing belongeth precisely to our burial with him; and the triumphing over principalities and powers, particularly to our being quickened together with him; or that the blotting out was performed at one time, and the triumphing at another. Our present translation attributeth it expressly to the cross, rendering the last words, “triumphing over them in it,” that is, in the cross, mentioned in the former verse; and thoughanciently it have been read triumphing over them in himself, yet still there are these two great advantages on our side;* first, That if we read, in it, it proves the triumph spoken of in this place performed upon the cross; and if we read in himself, it proveth not that the triumph was performed in any other place, because he was himself upon the cross. Secondly, The ancient fathers of the Greek Church read it as we do, in it;† and interpret the triumph of his death; and those others of the Latin Church, which did read it otherwise, did also acknowledge with the Greeks the cross not only to be the place in which the victory over Satan was obtained, but also to be the trophy of that victory, and the triumphal chariot.§

* So the Vulgar Latin, Palam triumphans illos in semetipsa; an also the Syriac προσέχει. So Novatian de Trin. c. 16. ‘Triumphans illis in semetipsa.’ St. Hilary: ‘Triumphantes eas in semetipsam.’

† Tertullian, ad Marcion, l. ii. 167. ‘Serpentis spolium, devicto principi mundi,'...
This place then of St. Paul to the Colossians cannot prove that Christ descended into hell, to triumph over the devil there; and if it be not proper for that purpose of itself, it will not be more effectual by the addition of that other to the Ephesians. For, first, we have already shewn, that the descending into the lower parts of the earth, doth not necessarily signify his descent into hell, and consequently, cannot prove that either those things which are spoken in the same place, or in any other, are to be attributed to that descent. Again, if it were granted, that those words did signify hell, and this Article of our Creed were contained in them, yet would it not follow from that Scripture, that Christ triumphed over Satan while his soul was in hell; for the consequence would be only this, that the same Christ, who led captivity captive, descended first into hell. In that he ascended (and ascending led captivity captive,) what is it but that he descended first? The descent, then, if it were to hell, did precede the triumphant ascent of the same person; and that is all which the apostle's words will evince. Nay, farther yet, the ascent mentioned by St. Paul cannot be that, which immediately followed the descent into hell, for it evidently signifieth the ascension, which followed forty days after his resurrection. It is not an ascent from the parts below to the surface of the earth, but to the heavens above, an ascending up on high, even far above all heavens. Now the leading captivity captive belongeth clearly to this ascent, and not to any descent which did precede it. It is not said, that he descended first to lead captivity captive; and yet it must be so, if Christ descended into hell to triumph there: it is not said, when he had led captivity captive, he ascended up on high; for then it might be supposed, that the captives had been led before: but it is expressly said, ascending up on high he led captivity captive. * and consequently, that triumphant act was the

Affixit ligno refugarum immane trophæum.'
Prudentius Cathem. Hymn, ix. 83.

*Die trophæum passionis, die triumphalem crucem.'

St. Hilary most expressly: 'Mannus ejus edocta ad bellum sunt cum victis seculum. Ego enim, ait, viri muniment, cum extensus in crucem invictissimns armis ipsis passionis instruxit. Et posuit, inquit, ut arcanum aræm brachis meæ, cum de omni bus virtutibus ac potestatibus in ipso trophaeo gloriosae crucis triumphavit, et principatus et potestates traduxit cum tindæa triumphans in sermopæa.' Tract. in Paul, cxii. § 4. Where it is observable that the father does read it in sermopæa, and interprets it in eurce. 'Nos quoniam trophaæum jam videmus, et quod currum sumum triumphator ascendit, consideramus quod non arborum, non quadrigius olaustri manuæias de mortali hoste qua-
sitas, sed patibulo triumphali captiva de seculo suspendit,' S. Ambros, l. x. in c. 23. S. Luca, § 109, and amongst the rest of the captives he reckons afterwards: 'captivam principem mœndi, et spiritualia nequitia quæ sunt in cælestibus.' Ibid. To this alludes Fulgentius, l. iii. ad Thrassium. c. 29. *Sic opportunit pec- catorum nostrorum chronographiam deleri, ut dum venus homo noster simul cruci affigitur, tanquam in trophaeo, triumphatoris victoria panderetur.' Whether therefore we read it in autē with the Greeks, that is, in σταιραρ, or, in autē with the Latins in seipso, it is the same: for he tri- umphed over the devil by himself upon the cross, as in the same case it is writ- ten, Eph, ii. 16. Kαι ἀποκαταλάβη τῶν ἁματιστῶν ἐν θεῷ συμπατικῶς τῷ θεῷ διὰ τοῦ σταιροῦ, αὐτοκτόνως τὴν ἤδων ἐν αὐτῇ. * The original words do manifestly shew, that this triumphant act did not
immediate effect of his ascension. So that by these two Scriptures no more can be proved than this, that Christ triumphed over principalities and powers at his death upon the cross, and led captivity captive at his ascension into heaven. Which is so far from proving that Christ descended into hell to triumph there, that it is more proper to persuade the contrary. For why should he go to hell to triumph over them, over whom he had triumphed on the cross? Why should he go to captivate that captivity then, which he was to captivate when he ascended into heaven?

As for the testimonies of the fathers, they will appear of small validity to confirm this triumphant descent as it is distinguished from the two former effects, the removal of the saints to heaven, and the delivering the damned from the terrors of hell. In vain shall we pretend, that Christ descended into hell to lead captivity captive, if we withal maintain, that when he descended thither, he brought none away which were captive there. This was the very notion which those fathers had, that the souls of men were conquered by Satan, and after death actually brought into captivity; and that the soul of Christ descending to the place where they were, did actually release them from that bondage, and bring them out of the possession of the devil by force.*

Thus did he conquer Satan, precede this ascent: for had it been, αἰχμαλωτύτως αἰχμαλωτικόν ἂν ἔση οἷς, we might well have expounded it thus; Christ did lead sin and death and Satan captive; and when he had done so, ascended up on high: but being it is written ἄντεξα τις ὑπ' ὃς, that is, having ascended up on high, ἐκατάλαβεν αἰχμαλωτικόν, he captivated a captivity, the ascent must here precede the captivation, though not in time (as it did the giving of gifts) yet in nature: so that it is not proper to say, by captivating he ascended; but it is proper to express it thus, by ascending he led captive a captivity.

* So St. Jerome on that place of the Ephesians: 'Inferiora autem terre infernas accipitur, ad quem Dominus noster Salvatorque descendit, ut Sanctorum animas, quas ibi tenebantur incluse, secum ad caelum Victor abducaret.' And on Matt. xii. 29. 'Alligatus est fortis, et religatus in Tartarum, et Domini contritus pede; et direptus sedibus Tyranni, captiva ducta est captivitas.' So Arnolds Car- nutesnis is to be understood, De Functione Chrisnmatis: 'Passus est rex illi, et vita occidi; descendensque ad inferos captivam ab antiquo captivatam reductum: applying it to the custom of the Church: Omnino convenit, ut eo tempore quo Christus captivit eduxit ab inferis, reconciliati peccatores ad Ecclesiam reducantur.' Ibid. Thus Athanasius, when he speaks of Christ's triumphing over Satan in hell, he mentions τὸ ἕνων συνεδριά, hell spoiled, to wit, of those souls which before it kept in hold. Otherwise in the same oration, in Passionem et Crucem, he acknowledgeth the triumph upon the cross: 'Exi gας τον εἰκόνα την ἐφραμι- δέωτα (not ἐφραμιδώτα) κατα τον ἀβαλου, μὲ ἀλλα συγχειν ἐλλ ἀπατó ἑατανής το τρόπον.' 20. Thus Leo the emperor: Χριστός ἀπεστά τὴν ἀνδρ αἰχ- μαλωτίστης, και τοῖς αἰχμαλώτοις ἐνδιδύσιν κυρίας. Hom. de Resurr. And thus Macarius supposed Christ victoriously speaking unto hell and death: κελευσμένος δὲν καὶ στότις, και θάνατι, ἐκβάλε τοὺς ἐγκλημα- σμάς φυγάς. Homil. xi. p. 62. Author libelli de Voschute, under the name of St. Ambrose: 'Experts peccati Christus cum ad Tartari ima descendere, seras infernales quamque confringens, vincentes peccato animos, mortis dominatione destructa et diaboli facibus revocavit ad vitam. Atque ita divinum triumphum externi characteris est conscriptum, dum dicit, Ubis est, mors, aculeus tuus? Ubis est, mors, victoria tua?' cap. 4. And the commentaries under the same name: 'Gratia Dei abun- davit in descensu Salvatoris, omnibus dans indulgientiam, cum triumpho sublatis eius in celum.' Ad Rom. v. 15. 'Secunda animam descendit ad inferna et spoliavit principes tenebrarum ab animalibus electorum.' Eghert. Serm. 9. contra Ca
spoil hell, and lead captivity captive, according to their apprehension. But if he had taken no souls from thence, he had not spoiled hell, he had not led captivity captive, he had not so triumphed in the fathers' sense. Wherefore, being the Scriptures teach us not that Christ triumphed in hell; being the triumph which the fathers mention, was either in relation to the damned souls which Christ took out of those tormenting flames as some imagined, or in reference to the spirits of the just which he took out of those infernal habitations, as others did conceive; being we have already thought fit not to admit either of these two as the effect of Christ's descent: it followeth that we cannot acknowledge this as the proper end of the Article.

Nor can we see how the prophet David could intend so much, as if, when he spake those words in the person of our Saviour, "Thou shalt not leave my soul in hell," he should have intended this, Thou shalt not leave my soul separated from my body, and conveyed into the regions of the damned spirits, amongst all the principalities and powers of hell; I say, thou shalt not leave me there, battering all the infernal strength, redeeming the prisoners, leading captivity captive, and victoriously triumphing over death, and hell, and Satan. In sum, those words of the prophet cannot admit any interpretation, involving a glorious, triumphant, and victorious condition, which is not a subject capable of dereliction. For as the hope which he had of his body, that it should not see corruption, supposed that it was to be put in the grave, which could not of itself free the body from corruption; so the hope that his soul should not be left in hell, supposeth it not to be in such a state, as was of itself contradictory to dereliction.

And this leads me to that end, which I conceive most conformable to the words of the prophet, and least liable to question or objection. We have already shewn the substance of the Article to consist in this, that the soul of Christ, really separated from his body by death, did truly pass unto the places below, where the souls of men departed were. And I conceive the end for which he did so, was, that he might undergo the condition of a dead man as well as of a living. He appeared here in the similitude of sinful flesh, and went into the other world in the similitude of a sinner. His body was laid in a grave, as ordinarily the bodies of dead men are; his soul was conveyed into such receptacles as the souls of other persons use to be. All, which was necessary for our redemption by way of satisfaction and merit, was already performed on the cross; and all, which was necessary for the actual collation

*thanas. Thus still the fathers which speak of spoiling hell, of leading captivity captive, of triumphing over Satan in his own martens are to be understood in respect to those souls which they thought were taken out of the custody, possession, or dominion of Satan, whether just or unjust.*
and exhibition of what was merited there, to be effected upon and after his resurrection: in the interim, therefore, there is nothing left, at least known to us, but to satisfy the law of the debt. This he undertook to do, and did: and though the ancient fathers by the several additions of other ends have something obscured this, yet it may be sufficiently observed in their writings, and is certainly most conformable to that prophetic expression, upon which we have hitherto grounded our explication, “Thou shalt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thy Holy One to see corruption.” (Psalm. xvi. 10.)

Secondly, By the descent of Christ into hell, all those which believe in him, are secured from descending thither; he went into those regions of darkness, that our souls might never come into those torments which are there. By his descent he freed us from our fears, as by his ascension he secured us of our hopes. He passed to those habitations where Satan hath taken up possession and exerciseth his dominion; that having no power over him, we might be assured that he should never exercise any over our souls departed, as belonging unto him. “Through death he destroyed him that had the power of death,

that is, the devil;” (Heb. ii. 14.) and by his actual descent into the dominions of him so destroyed, secured all which have an interest in him of the same freedom which he had. Which truth is also still preserved (though among many other strange conceptions) in the writings of the fathers.*

Having thus examined the several interpretations of this part of the Article, we may now give a brief and safe account thereof, and teach every one how they may express their faith without any danger of mistake, saying: I give a full and undoubling asseverunto this as to a certain truth, that when all the sufferings of Christ were “finished” on the cross, (John xix. 30.) and his soul was separated from his body, though his body were dead, yet his soul died not; and though it died not, yet it underwent the condition of the souls of such as die; and being he died in the similitude of a sinner, his soul went to the place where the souls of men are kept who die for their sins, and so did wholly undergo the law of death: but because there was no sin in him, and he had fully satisfied for the sins of others which he took upon him; therefore as God suffered not his Holy One to see corruption, so he left not his soul in hell, and thereby gave sufficient security to all those who belong to Christ, of never coming under the power of Satan, or suffering in the flames prepared for the devil and his angels. And thus, and for these purposes, may every Christian say, I believe that Christ descended into hell.

He rose again.

Whatever variations have appeared in any of the other Articles, this part, of Christ’s resurrection, hath been constantly delivered without the least alteration, either by way of addition or diminution.+ The whole matter of it is so necessary and essential to the Christian faith, that nothing of it could be omitted; and in these few expressions the whole doctrine is so clearly delivered, that nothing needed to be added. At the first view we are presented with three particulars: First, The action itself, or the resurrection of Christ, he rose again. Secondly, The verity, reality, and propriety of that resurrection.

* As we read of the opinion in Tertullian’s time, though not of him: ‘Sed in hoc, iniquitatis, Christus inferos aditus, ne nos adiremus. Ceterum, quod discrimen Ethniciporum et Christianorum, si carcer mortuis idem?’ De Anima, c. 55. ‘Ergo aut ipsius vox est hic. Et eruit animam mean ab inferno inferiori, aut nostra vox per ipsum Christum Dominum nostrum; quia ideo ille pervenit usque ad infernum, ne nos remaneremus in inferno.’ S. August. in Psal. lxxvi. 17. Táxuxo γὰρ αὐτός ἡμᾶς ἀνέκλειε, καὶ ἑπεκατεὶ ἡμᾶς ἀνέκλειε, καὶ τὸν ἄθινον καταβαίνω, ἡμᾶς ἀνέκλειε. S. Athanas. in Omn. Habil. &c. §. 2.

† For though Eusebius Gallicanus and Venantius Fortunatus leave out the last words, a mortuis, and some copies in Rufinus have it not; yet it is generally expressed in all the rest, which are more ancient than Eusebius or Fortunatus: and therefore that omission is to be imputed rather to negligence either of the author or the scribe, than to the usage of the Church in their age. ‘Quod die tertio resurrectionis mortuis Dominus Christus, nullus ambiguus Christianus.’ S. Aug. in Vigil. Pasch. ii. Serm. 79. al. 221. §. 1
HE ROSE AGAIN.

381
tion, he rose from the dead. Thirdly, The circumstance of time or distance of his resurrection from his death, he rose from the dead the third day.

For the illustration of the first particular, and the justification of our belief in Christ's resurrection, it will be necessary, First, To shew the promised Messias was to rise from the dead; and, Secondly, That Jesus, whom we believe to be the true and only Messias, did so rise as it was promised and foretold. As the Messias was to be the Son of David, so was he particularly typified by him and promised unto him. Great were the oppositions which David suffered both by his own people and by the nations round about him; which he expressed of himself, and foretold of the Messias, in those words, "the kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the Lord and against his anointed," (Psal. ii. 2.) that is, his Christ. From whence it came to pass, "that against the holy child Jesus, whom God had anointed, both Herod and Pontius Pilate, with the Gentiles and the people of Israel, were gathered together, to do whatsoever the hand and the counsel of God determined before to be done," (Acts iv. 27, 28.) which was to crucify and slay the Lord of life. But notwithstanding all this opposition and persecution, it was spoken of David, and foretold of the Son of David, "Yet have I set mine anointed upon my holy hill of Sion. I will declare the decree, the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee." (Psal. ii. 6, 7.) As therefore the persecution in respect of David amounted only to a depression of him, and therefore his exaltation was a settling in the kingdom; so being the conspiration against the Messias amounted to a real crucifixion and death, therefore the exaltation must include a resurrection. And being he which arises from the dead, begins as it were to live another life, and the grave to him is in the manner of a womb to bring him forth; therefore when God said of his Anointed, "Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee," he did foretell and promise that he would raise the Messias from death to life.

But because this prediction was something obscured in the figurative expression, therefore the Spirit of God hath cleared it farther by the same prophet, speaking by the mouth of David, but such words as are agreeable not to the person, but the Son of David, "My flesh shall rest in hope; for thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption." (Psal. xvi. 10.) As for "the patriarch David, he is both dead and buried," and his flesh consumed in his sepulchre; but "being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins according to the flesh he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne; he seeing this before, spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did
see corruption." (Acts ii. 29—31.) They were both to be separated by his death, and each to be disposed in that place which was respectively appointed for them: but neither long to continue there, the body not to be detained in the grave, the soul not to be left in hell, but both to meet, and being reunited, to rise again.

Again, lest any might imagine that the Messiah dying once might rise from death, and living after death, yet die again, there was a farther prophecy to assure us of the excellency of that resurrection, and the perpetuity of that life, to which the Messiah was to be raised. "For God giving this promise to his people, "I will make an everlasting covenant with you," (of which the Messiah was to be the mediator, and to ratify it by his death) and adding this expression, "even the sure mercies of David." (Isa. iv. 3.) could signify no less than that the Christ, who was given first unto us in a frail and mortal condition, in which he was to die, should afterwards be given in an immutable state, and consequently, that he being dead should rise unto eternal life. And thus by virtue of these three predictions we are assured that the Messiah was to rise again, as also by those types which did represent and presignify the same. Joseph, who was ordained to save his brethren from death who would have slain him, did represent the Son of God, who was slain by us, and yet dying saved us; and his being in the dungeon typified Christ's death;* his being taken out from thence represented his resurrection; as his ejection to the power of Egypt next to Pharaoh, signified the session of Christ at the right hand of his Father. Isaac was sacrificed, and yet lived, to shew that Christ should truly die, and truly live again. And Abraham offered him up, "accounting that God was able to raise him up even from the dead, from whence also he received him in a figure." (Heb. xi. 19.) In Abraham's intention Isaac died, in his expectation he was to rise from the dead, in his acceptance being spared he was received from the dead, and all this acted to presignify,† that the only Son of God was really and truly to be sacrificed and die, and after death really to be raised to life. What was the intention of our father Abraham not performed, that was the resolution of our heavenly Father and fulfilled. And thus the resurrection of the Messiahs was represented by types, and foretold by prophecies; and therefore the Christ was to rise from the dead.


That Jesus, whom we believe to be the true and only Messiah, did rise from the dead according to the Scriptures, is a certain and infallible truth, delivered unto us, and confirmed by testimonies human, angelical, and divine. Those pious women which thought with sweet spices to anoint him dead, found him alive, "held him by the feet, and worshipped him," (Matt. xxviii. 9.) and as the first preachers of his resurrection, with fear and great joy ran to bring his disciples word. The blessed apostles follow them, to whom also "he shewed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs:" (Acts i. 3.) who "with great power gave witness of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus;" (Acts iv. 33.) the principal part of whose office consisted in this testimony, as appeareth upon the election of Matthias into the place of Judas, grounded upon this necessity. "Wherefore of these men which have companied with us all the time that the Lord Jesus went in and out among us, must one be ordained to be a witness with us of his resurrection." (Acts i. 21, 22.) The rest of his disciples testified the same, to whom he also appeared, even to "five hundred brethren at once." (1 Cor. xv. 6.) These were the witnesses of his own family, of such as worshipped him, such as believed in him. And because the testimony of an adversary is in such cases thought of greatest validity, we have not only his disciples, but even his enemies, to confirm it. Those soldiers that watched at the sepulchre, and pretended to keep his body from the hands of his apostles; they which felt the earth trembling under them, and saw the "countenance of an angel like lightning, and his raiment white as snow;" they who upon that sight "did shake and became as dead men," while he whom they kept, became alive: even some of these "came into the city, and shewed unto the chief priests all the things that were done." (Matt. xxviii. 3, 4, 11.) Thus was the resurrection of Christ confirmed by the highest human testimonies, both of his friends and enemies, of his followers and revilers.

But so great, so necessary, so important a mystery, had need of a more firm and higher testimony than that of man: and therefore an angel from heaven, who was ministerial in it, gave a present and infallible witness to it. He descended down, "and came and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat upon it." (Matt. xxviii. 2.) Nay, "two angels in white, sitting the one at the head, the other at the feet where the body of Jesus had lain, said unto the women, Why seek ye the living among the dead? he is not here, but is risen." (John xx. 12.) These were the witnesses sent from heaven, this the angelic testimony of the resurrection.

And "if we receive the witness of men," or angels, "the witness of God is greater," (1 John v. 9.) who did sufficiently attest this resurrection: not only because there was no other
power but that of God, which could effect it, but as our Saviour himself said, "The Spirit of truth which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me;" adding these words to his apostles, "and ye shall bear witness, because ye have been with me from the beginning." (John xv. 26, 27.) The Spirit of God sent down upon the apostles did thereby testify that Christ was risen, because he sent that Spirit from the Father; and the apostles witnessed together with that Spirit, because they were enlightened, comforted, confirmed, and strengthened in their testimony by the same Spirit. Thus God raised up Jesus, "and shewed him openly, not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before of God, even to those who did eat and drink with him, after he rose from the dead." (Acts x. 40, 41.) And thus, as it was foretold of the Messias, did our Jesus rise; which was the first part of our inquiry.

For the second, concerning the reality and propriety of Christ's resurrection, expressed in that term from the dead, it will be necessary first to consider what are the essential characters and proprieties of a true resurrection; and, secondly, to shew how those proprieties do belong and are applicable to the raising of Christ. The proper notion of the resurrection consists in this, that it is a substantial change by which that which was before, and was corrupted, is reproduced the same thing again. It is said to be a change, that it may be distinguished from a second or new creation. For if God should annihilate a man or angel, and make the same man or angel out of nothing, though it were a restitution of the same thing, yet were it not properly a resurrection, because it is not a change or proper mutation, but a pure and total production. This change is called a substantial change, to distinguish it from all accidental alterations: he which awaketh from his sleep ariseth from his bed, and there is a greater change from sickness to health; but neither of these is a resurrection. It is called a change of that which was and hath been corrupted, because things immaterial and incorruptible cannot be said to rise again; resurrection implying a reproduction, and that which after it was, never was not, cannot be reproduced. Again, of those things which are material and corruptible, of some the forms continue and subsist after the corruption of the whole, of others not. The forms of inanimate bodies, and all irrational souls, when they are corrupted, cease to be; and therefore if they should be produced out of the same matter, yet were not this a proper resurrection, because thereby there would not be the same individual which was before, but only a restitution of the species by another individual. But when a rational soul is separated from its body, which is the corruption of a man, that soul so separated doth exist, and consequently, is capable of conjunction and reunion with the body; and if the two be again united by an essential and vital union
FROM THE DEAD. 385

from which life doth necessarily flow, then doth the same man live which lived before; and consequently, this reunion is a perfect and proper resurrection from death to life, because the same individual person, consisting of the same soul and body, which was dead, is now alive again.

Having thus delivered the true nature of a proper resurrection, we shall easily demonstrate that Christ did truly and properly rise from the dead. For, first, by a true, though miraculous, generation, he was made flesh; and lived in his human nature a true and proper life, producing vital actions as we do. Secondly, he suffered a true and proper dissolution at his death; his soul being really separated, and his body left without the least vitality, as our dead bodies are. Thirdly, the same soul was reunited to the same body, and so he lived again the same man. For the truth of which, two things are necessary to be shewn upon his appearing after death; the one concerning the verity, the other concerning the identity of his body. All the apostles doubted of the first; for when Christ stood in the midst of them, "they were affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit." But he sufficiently assured them of the verity of his corporeity, saying, "Handle me and see: for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have."* He convinced them all of the identity of his body, saying, "Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself;" (Luke xxiv. 37. 39.) especially unbelieving Thomas, "Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side, and be not faithless, but believing." (John xx. 27.) The body then in which he rose, must be the same in which he lived before, because it was the same with which he died.

And that we might be assurance of the soul as well as of the body: First, he gave an argument of the vegetative and nutritive faculty, saying unto them, "Have ye here any meat? and they gave him a piece of a broiled fish, and of a honey-comb, and he took it and did eat before them." (Luke xxiv. 41—43.) Secondly, of the sensitive part, conversing with them, shewing himself, seeing and hearing them. Thirdly, he gave evidence of his rational and intellectual soul, by speaking to them, and discourse out of the Scriptures, concerning those things which he "spake unto them, while he was yet with them." (Ibid. 44.) Thus did he shew, that the body which they saw,

---

was truly and vitally informed with a human soul. And that they might be yet farther assured that it was the same soul, by which that body lived before,* he gave a full testimony of his Divinity by the miracle which he wrought in the multitude of fishes caught, by breathing on the apostles the Holy Ghost, and by ascending into heaven in the sight of his disciples. For being "no man ascended into heaven but he which came from heaven, the Son of man which was in heaven," (John iii. 13.) being the Divinity was never so united to any human soul but only in that person, it appeared to be the same soul with which he lived and wrought all the miracles before. To conclude, being Christ appeared after his death with the same body in which he died, and with the same soul united to it, it followeth that he rose from the dead by a true and proper resurrection.

Moreover, that the verity and propriety of Christ's resurrection may farther appear, it will be necessary to consider the cause thereof, by what power and by whom it was effected. And if we look upon the meritorious cause, we shall find it to be Christ himself. For he by his voluntary sufferings in his life, and exact obedience at his death, did truly deserve to be raised unto life again.† Because he drank of the brook in the way, because he humbled himself unto death, even to the death of the cross, therefore was it necessary that he should be exalted, and the first degree of his exaltation was his resurrection. Now being Christ humbled himself to the sufferings both of soul and body; being whatsoever suffered, the same by the virtue and merit of his passion was to be exalted; being all other degrees of exaltation supposed that of the resurrection: it followeth from the meritorious cause, that Christ did truly rise from the dead with the same soul and the same body, with which he lived united, and died separated.

The efficient cause of the resurrection of Christ is to be considered either as principal or instrumental. The principal cause was God himself; for no other power but that which is omnipotent, can raise the dead. It is an act beyond the activity of any creature, and unproportionate to the power of any finite agent. "This Jesus hath God raised up (saith the apostle), whereof we all are witnesses." (Acts ii. 32.) And generally in the Scriptures as our, so Christ's, resurrection is attributed unto God; and as we cannot hope after death to rise to

* "Ideo clausis ad discipulos ostiis introibat, et iatu suo dabit Spiritum Sanctum, et dato intelligientia lumine, sanctarum Scripturarum occulta pandebat; et rursus idem, vulnus lateris, fixarum clavorum, et omnia recentissimae passionis signa monstrabat, ut agnoscetur in eo proprietas divinae humanæque naturæ individua permanere," Leo, Serm. 1 de Resurrectione, c. 3.
† "Ut mediator Dei et hominum homo Christus Jesus resurrectione clarificaretur, prius humillius est passione: non enim a mortuis resurrectionem, si mortuis non fosset. Humilitas claritatis est meritum, charitas humilitatibus est premium," S. August. Tract. 104. in Ioan. c. 3.
life again without the activity of an infinite and irresistible power, no more did Christ himself, who was no otherwise raised than by an eminent act of God's omnipotence; which is excellently set forth by the apostle, in so high an exaggeration of expressions, as I think is scarcely to be paralleled in any author, "that we may know what is the exceeding greatness of his power to usward who believe, according to the working of the might of his power which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him up from the dead."* (Eph. i. 19.) Being then omnipotence is a divine attribute, and infinite power belongs to God alone; being no less power than infinite could raise our Saviour from the dead: it followeth, that whatsoever instrumental action might occur, God must be acknowledged the principal agent.

And therefore in the Scriptures the raising of Christ is attributed to God the Father (according to those words of the apostle. "Paul an apostle, not of men, neither by men, but by Jesus Christ, and God the Father who raised him from the dead," Gal. i. i.); but it is not attributed to the Father alone. For to whomsoever that infinite power doth belong, by which Christ was raised, that person must be acknowledged to have raised him. And because we have already proved that the eternal Son of God is of the same essence, and consequently of the same power with the Father, and shall hereafter shew the same true also of the Holy Ghost; therefore we must likewise acknowledge that the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost raised Christ from the dead.† Nor is this only true by virtue of this ratiocination, but is also delivered expressly of the Son, and that by himself. It is a weak fallacy used by the Socinians, who maintain, that God the Father only raised Christ, and then say, they teach as much as the apostles did, who attribute it always either generally unto God, or particularly to the Father. For if the apostles taught it only so, yet if he which taught the apostles, taught us something more, we must make

* Kai tē tō ὑπερβαλλον μέγεθος τῆς δυνάμεως αὐτῶν ἐς ἡμᾶς τοὺς πιστεύοντας, κατά τὸν ἐνέργειαν τῶν κράτων τῆς ἰσχύος αὐτῶν, ἐν ἐνέργειαν τῷ Χριστῷ. Which words our translation comes far short of, and I doubt our language can scarce reach it. For first, here are ὑπερβαλλον, and ἰσχύος, two words to express the power of God, and the validity and force of it, but not sufficient; wherefore there is an addition to each of them, μέγεθος τῆς δυνάμεως, and κράτος τῆς ἰσχύος, two words more to express the eminent greatness of this power and force, but not sufficient yet; and therefore there is another addition to each addition, τῷ ἐνέργειαν μέγεθος, and τῇ ἐνέργειαν τῶν κράτων, to set forth the eminence and activity of that greatness; and all yet as it were but flat and dull till it be quickened with an active verb, ἐνέργειαν. All which he set on work, all which he actuated in Christ, when he raised him from the dead.

† 'Quis nisi solus Filius resurrexit? Quia solus mori potuit, qui carnem habuit: et tamen ab hoc opere, quo solus Filius resurrexit, non erat Pater alienus, de quo scriptum est, Quis suscitavit a mortuis Jesum. An forte se ipse non suscitavit? Et ubi est quod ait, Solvit templum hoc, et triduo suscitabo illud? et quod potestatem habere se dicit poneundi et iterum sumendi animam suam? Quis autem ita desipiatur, ut Spiritum Sanctum resurrectionem hominis Christi dicat non cooperatum, cum ipsum hominem Christum fuerit operatus.' S. August. contra Serm. Arian. c. 15.
that also part of our belief. They believe the Father raised Christ, because St. Paul hath taught them so, and we believe the same: they will not believe that Christ did raise himself; but we must also believe that, because he hath said so. These were his words unto the Jews, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up;" and this is the explication of the apostle, "but he spake of the temple of his body," (John ii. 19. 21.) which he might very properly call a temple, because "the fulness of the Godhead dwelt in him bodily." (Col. ii. 9.) And "when he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them, and they believed the Scripture and the word that Jesus had said." (John ii. 22.) Now if, upon the resurrection of Christ, the apostles believed those words of Christ, "Destroy this temple, and I will raise it up," then did they believe that Christ raised himself; for in those words there is a person mentioned which raised Christ, and no other person mentioned but himself.

A strange opposition they make to the evidence of this argument, saying, that God the Father raised Christ to life,* and Christ being raised to life, did lift and raise his body out of the grave, as the man sick of the palsy raised himself from the bed, or as we shall raise ourselves out of the graves when the trump shall sound: and this was all which Christ did or could do. But if this were true, and nothing else were to be understood in those words of our Saviour, he might as well have said, 'Destroy this temple, and in three days any one of you may raise it up.' For when life was restored unto it by God, any one of them might have lifted it up, and raised it out of the grave, and have shewn it alive.

This answer therefore is a mere shift: for to raise a body which is dead, is, in the language of the Scriptures, to give life unto it, or to quicken a mortal body. "For as the Father raiseth the dead and quickeneth them, even so the Son quickeneth whom he will."† (John v. 21.) He then which


† "Εγέρεις τοὺς νεκροὺς καὶ ξαναζωότας εστίν τὸ αὐτὸ τὸ πάντως ἅμα τὸ ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον, ὅτι εἰς τὸν θάνατον συνέρχεται. Καὶ ἕτερις ἡμῶν διατάξει ἀπὸ τῶν ἁγίων πατέρων. Σ. Χρυσοστ. Hom. 38. in Ioan. Where it is very observable that though ἐγείρων τοὺς νεκροὺς and ξαναζωότας be the same in the language of the Scriptures, yet ἐγείρων and ξαναζωότας are not the same. By which observation the late learned Bishop of Ely, hath most evidently detected that Socinian cavil. 'Si quis ostinate vocem ascitum [Hesper.] urgere vult, is animadvertet quid D. Jesus alibi dicat, Eum qui perdidicer animum, vivificatorem eam. Ubi si quis insistere velit ipsi verbi, eum colligere oportet, Credentes eiam ipsos sese vivificaturos, et a mortuis excitatos,'
quickeneth the dead bodies of others when he raiseth them, he also quickened his own body, when he raised that. The temple is supposed here to be dissolved, and being so, to be raised again; therefore the suscitation must answer to the dissolution. But the temple of Christ's body was dissolved when his soul was separated, nor was it any other way dissolved than by that separation. God suffered not his " Holy One to see corruption," and therefore the parts of his body, in respect of each to other, suffered no dissolution. Thus as the apostle desired to be " dissolved and to be with Christ," so the temple of Christ's body was dissolved here, by the separation of his soul: for the temple standing was the body living; and therefore the raising of the dissolved temple was the quickening of the body. If the body of Christ had been laid down in the sepulchre alive, the temple had not been dissolved; therefore to lift it up out of the sepulchre when it was before quickened, was not to raise a dissolved temple, which our Saviour promised he would do, and the apostles believed he did.

Again, it is most certainly false that our Saviour had power only to lift up his body when it was revived, but had no power of himself to reunite his soul unto his body, and thereby to revive it. For Christ speaketh expressly of himself, "I lay down my life (or soul) that I might take it again. No man taketh it from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again." (John x. 17, 18.)

The laying down of Christ's life was to die, and the taking of it again was to revive; and by his taking of his life again, he shewed himself to be the "resurrection and the life." (John xi.

Cat. Ronan. Sect. iv. p. 554. For ἐνεσθή hath manifest relation to the dead, but ἐνέσθη unto the living. And therefore our translation hath very well rendered those words, Luc. xvi. 23, "καὶ ἐνέσθη αὐτῷ, ἐφορεύσας αὐτὸν, ὑπερελεύσας αὐτόν," Whosoever shall lose his life, shall preserve it!" so that ἐνέσθη is to preserve life, which interpretation is most evident out of the antithesis of the same place: "Οὐ γὰρ ἔξις τὸν φῶς αὐτοῦ ἑαυτῷ, ἐφορεύσας αὐτόν." For ἅμας and ἐφορεύσας in the former part are the same with ἐνέσθης and ἐφορεύεται in the latter. And besides, this is the language of St. Luke, who, Acts vii. 19, says, that the Egyptians ill-intreated the Israelites, του σώματος τὸ ῥήμα αὐτῶν, ἢ τι μὴ ἐγκατέστησαν, "So that they cast out their young children, to the end they might not live," that is, remain alive, Syr. ἐνεσθή, ne servarentur, ne viverent, as the Arabic. In which words there is a manifest reference to that place in Exodus, where thrice this word is used in that sense by the LXX. as 1, 17. μεθρήση τοῦ ναὸς καὶ ἐφορεύεται τὰ ἀρχαία, Vulg. Trans. sed conservabant mares, Chald. καὶ ἔνεσθε so verse 18. ἐνέσθης τοῦ ἀρχαία, and 22. καὶ πάσα δύνα ἐνέσθης αὐτῷ. And indeed ὁ εἰς in Piel is often used for keeping or preserving alive, and is so several times translated, ἐνεσθή as well as ἐνεσθή, as Jud. viii. 19. ὅταν τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἐφορεύεται, εἴ δὲ ἐπεκίνησαν λαῶν, Vulg. Trans. Si servisset eos, non vos occiderem, "If ye had saved them alive, I would not slay you." 1 Sam. xxvi. 9. ὅταν γὰρ καὶ εἰκ ἐγκατέστη ἑαυτῇ, ἑ γυναικῖ, Vulg. Trans. Nec relinquabat viventem virum aut mulierem, "And left neither man nor woman alive." And which is yet nearer to our purpose, 1 Kings xx. 31. ἐνεσθής ἐν ΛΧΧ. ἔνεσθε τοῦ ἐφορεύεται μασευ, Vulg. Trans. Forsitan salutat animas nostras, "Peradventure he will save thy life." So that ἐνεσθής in the language of the LXX. is to save alive, and ἐνέσθης τοῦ ἐφορεύεται, is to preserve one's life. So that St. Luke, in the text cited by the S彬ianists, could intend no more than that he which was ready to lose his life for Christ, should thereby preserve it, and consequently he speaks nothing of the raising of the dead.
25.) For he which was "made of the seed of David according to the flesh, was declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the Spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead." (Rom. i. 4.) But if Christ had done no more in the resurrection, than lifted up his body when it was revived, he had done that which any other person might have done, and so had not declared himself to be the Son of God with power. It remaineth therefore, that Christ by that power which he had within himself, did take his life again which he had laid down, did reunite his soul unto his body, from which he separated it when he gave up the ghost, and so did quicken and revive himself: and so it is a certain truth, not only that God the Father raised the Son, but also that God the Son raised himself.*

From this consideration of the efficient cause of Christ's resurrection, we are yet farther assured, that Christ did truly and properly rise from the dead in the same soul and the same body. For if we look upon the Father, it is beyond all controversy that he raised his own Son: and as while he was here alive, God spake from heaven, saying, "This is my well-beloved Son;" so after his death it was the same person, of whom he spake by the prophet, "Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee." (Psal. ii. 7. Acts xiii. 33.) If we look upon Christ himself, and consider him with power to raise himself, there can be no greater assurance that he did totally and truly arise in soul and body by that Divinity, which was never separated either from the body or from the soul. And thus we have sufficiently proved our second particular, the verity, reality, and propriety, of Christ's resurrection, contained in those words, He rose from the dead.

The third particular concerns the time of Christ's resurrection, which is expressed by the third day: and those words afford a double consideration; one in respect of the distance of time, as it was after three days; the other in respect of the day, which was the third day from his passion, and the precise day upon which he rose. For the first of these, we shall shew that the Messias, who was foretold both to die and to rise again, was not to rise before, and was to rise upon the third day after his death; and that in correspondence to these predictions, our Jesus, whom we believe to be the true Messias, did not rise from the dead until, and did rise from the dead upon, the third day.

The typical predictions of this truth were two, answering to

our two considerations, one in reference to the distance, the other in respect of the day itself. The first is that of the prophet Jonas, who "was in the belly of the fish three days and three nights," and then by the special command of God he was rendered safe "upon the dry land," and sent a preacher of repentance to the great city of Nineveh. (Jonah i. 17. ii. 10. iii. 2.) This was an express type of the Messias then to come, who was to preach repentance and remission of sins to all nations; that "as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly, so should the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth:" (Matt. xii. 40.) and as he was restored alive unto the dry land again, so should the Messias after three days, be taken out of the jaws of death, and restored unto the land of the living.

The type in respect of the day was the waved sheaf in the feast of the first-fruit, concerning which this was the law of God by Moses, "When ye be come into the land which I give unto you, and shall reap the harvest thereof, then shall ye bring a sheaf of the first-fruits of your harvest unto the priest: and he shall wave the sheaf before the Lord to be accepted for you: on the morrow after the sabbath the priest shall wave it. And ye shall offer that day when ye wave the sheaf, an he-lamb without blemish of the first year for a burnt-offering unto the Lord." (Lev. xxiii. 10—12.) For under the Levitical Law, all the fruits of the earth in the land of Canaan were profane; none might eat of them till they were consecrated, and that they were in the feast of the first-fruits. One sheaf was taken out of the field and brought to the priest, who lifted it up as it were in the name of all the rest, waving it before the Lord, and it was accepted for them, so that all the sheaves in the field were holy by the acceptance of that: "For if the first-fruits be holy, the lump also is holy." (Rom. xi. 16.) And this was always done the day after the sabbath, that is, the paschal solemnity, after which the fulness of the harvest followed: by which thus much was foretold and represented, that as the sheaf was lifted up and waved, and the lamb was offered on that day by the priest to God, so the promised Messias, that immaculate Lamb which was to die, that priest which dying was to offer up himself to God, was upon this day to be lifted up and raised from the dead, or rather to shake and lift up and present himself to God, and so to be accepted for us all, that so our dust might be sanctified, our corruption hallowed, our mortality consecrated to eternity. Thus was the resurrection of the Messias after death typically represented both in the distance and the day.

And now in reference to both resemblances, we shall clearly shew, that our Jesus, whom we believe, and have already proved to be the true Messias, was so long and no longer dead, as to rise the third day; and did so order the time of his death, that
the third day on which he rose, might be that very day, on which the sheaf was waved, the day after that sabbath mentioned in the Law.

As for the distance between the resurrection and the death of Christ, it is to be considered. First, generally in itself, as it is some space of time: Secondly, as it is that certain and determinate space of three days. Christ did not, would not, suddenly arise, lest any should doubt that he ever died. It was as necessary for us that he should die, as that he should live; and we, which are to believe both these, were to be assured as well of the one as of the other. That therefore we may be ascertained of his death, he did some time continue it. He might have descended from the cross before he died; but he would not, because he had undertaken to die for us.* He might have revived himself upon the cross after he had given up the ghost,† and before Joseph came to take him down; but he would not, lest as Pilate questioned whether he was already dead, so we might doubt whether he ever died. The reward of his resurrection was immediately due upon his passion, but he deferred the receiving of it, lest either of them being questioned, they both might lose their efficacy and intended operation. It was therefore necessary that some space should intervene between them.

Again, because Christ's exaltation was due unto his humiliation, and the first step of that was his resurrection; because the apostles after his death were to preach repentance and remission of sins through his blood, who were no way qualified to preach any such doctrine till he rose again; because the Spirit could not be sent till he ascended, and he could not ascend into heaven till he rose from the grave; therefore the space between his resurrection and passion could not be long; nor can there be any reason assigned why it should any longer be deferred, when the verity of his death was once sufficiently proved. Lest therefore his disciples should be long held in suspense, or any person after many days should doubt whether he rose with the same body with which he died, or no; that he might shew himself alive while the soldiers were watching at the grave, and while his crucifixion was yet in the mouths of the people, he would not stay many days before he rose.‡

* 'De cruce descendere poterat, sed differabat ut de sepulcro resurgeret.' S. Augustin. in lourn. Tract. 12. §. 6.
† 'Hic esto m. n. kai par aita tou Sivato to s'ma diexigei kai pala'i theitai xo an allla kai toto kalos prion ton Saktis ou pepainke. Eis pe yap an tis mou? Olais auto teukinias, h meti telexis autou ton Sivato i&genei, eis par aita ton diastatou ton epistasiai. Tisca o kai en toy ton diastatou stepi tis to Sivato kai tis anastasei atopo ianw to per tis a&phairias kiai.' Odhun h Iorchi an, to s'ma, kai maia upimeous meta to De'tos, kai tu tvan toto pa&stidei sma &phairias.
†† 'Eisika m. e. tov di&xhriov tis Sivatoi, hia tov s'mati tironi an tovou touthi. Ima de mou e. tov oikos diexigei kai &phairis tekon Ewete- rois anastaseis apostoli, hia oik e. autu all. Iteko swma o. (Emily yap autou kai b autou xronon apostote tis fainomenos kai tis tRNAasteini tis theomvnhs). Dia tovo oui pliew tov tvan di&xhira, othi e. tov oikos.
Some distance then of time there was, but not great, between his crucifixion and his resurrection.

The particular length of this space is determined in the third day: but that expression being capable of some diversity of interpretation, it is not so easily concluded, how long our Saviour was dead or buried before he revived or rose again. It is written expressly in St. Matthew, that as "Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly, so should the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth." (xvii. 40.) From whence it seemeth to follow, that Christ's body was for the space of three whole days and three whole nights in the grave, and after that space of time arose from thence. And hence some have conceived, that being our Saviour rose on the morning of the first day of the week, therefore it must necessarily follow, that he died and was buried on the fifth day of the week before, that is, on Thursday; otherwise it cannot be true, that he was in the grave three nights.

But this place, as express as it seems to be, must be considered with the rest, in which the same truth is delivered: as when our Saviour said, "After three days I will rise again;" (Matt. xxvii. 63. Mark viii. 31.) and again, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will build it up;" (John ii. 19.) or, "within three days I will build another made without hands." (Mark xiv. 58.) But that which is most used, both in our Saviour's prediction before his death, and in the apostles' language after the resurrection, is, that he "rose from the dead the third day."* (Matt. xvi. 21. xvii. 23. xx. 19. Mark ix. 31. x. 34. Luke ix. 22. xvi. 33. xxiv. 7. 46. Acts x. 40. 1 Cor. xv. 4.)

Now, according to the language of the Scriptures, if Christ were slain and rose the third day, the day in which he died is one, and the day on which he rose is another, and consequently there could be but one day and two nights between the day of his death and of his resurrection. As in the case of circumcision, the male child eight days old was to be circumcised, in which the day on which the child was born was one, and the day on which he was circumcised was another, and so there were but six complete days between the day of his birth and the day of his circumcision. The day of Pentecost was the fiftieth day from the day of the wave-offering; but in the number of the fifty days was both the day of the wave-offering and of Pentecost included; as now among the Christians still it is.

* These several phrases are used; first, that Christ was in the heart of the earth της χειρας, και της ικετας secon-dly, that he was to rise μετά της ικετας: thirdly, that he would rebuild this temple ἐν της ικετας, and ἐν της ικετας sometimes, and lastly, that he rose τη της ικετα, which is the most general and constant form of speech.
Whitsunday is now the day of Pentecost, and Easter-day the day of the resurrection, answering to that of the wave-offerings; but both these must be reckoned to make the number of fifty days. Christ then, who rose upon the first day of the week (as is confe-sed by all), died upon the sixth day of the week before: for if he had died upon the fifth, he had risen not upon the third, but the fourth day, as Lazarus did.* Being then it is most certain that our Saviour rose on the third day;† being, according to the constant language of the Greeks and Hebrews, he cannot be said to rise to life on the third day, who died upon any other day, between which and the day of his resurrection there intervened any more than one day: therefore those other forms of speech which are far less frequent, must be so interpreted as to be reduced to this expression of the third day so often reiterated.

When therefore we read that after three days he would raise the temple of his body, we must not imagine that he would raise it in that problematical question: Did the souls of men rise in the same manner? For the question was one which was constantly observable, that the days of perfect intermission are fewer by two, than the number in the name of the fever: for if the fever be a tertian, the day of intermission is but one; if tertarian two, if quartarian three, if quintarian five. Thus if our Saviour were one whole day in the grave, and died the day before, and rose the day after, he did rise tertian: if he were two whole days in the grave, he rose tertian. So Aristotle: Did the gods after the ceremonies of the gods?—a night was spent by the gods of the gods and the gods of the men. Schol. Euth. Heu¢a, ver. 22. Tertian: then, in respect of his coming to or from any place, is that person which is now the third day in or from that place; which cannot be better interpreted, as to the Greek language, than in the expression of a Tertian fever, called so because the second accession is upon the third day from the first, and the third from the second, &c. In which case there is but one day between, in which the patient is wholly free from his disease: from whence παρ' ρα? and τριτάτος is the same in the language of the physicians. This is excellently expressed by Alexander Aphros.
continue the space of three whole days dead, and then revive himself; but upon the third day he would rise again: as Joseph and his mother, "after three days found him in the temple," (Luke ii. 46.) that is, the third day after he tarried behind in Jerusalem. And when we read, that he was three days and three nights in the heart of the earth, we must not look upon these nights as distinct from the days,* but as Moses spake, "the evening and the morning," that is, the night and the day, "were the first day," (Gen. i. 5.) and as the saint spake unto Daniel, "unto two thousand and three hundred evenings and mornings," (Dan. viii. 14.) intending thereby so many days: nor must we imagine that those three days were completed after our Saviour's death, and before he rose; but that upon the first of those three days he died, and upon the last of those three days he rose. As we find that "eight days were accomplished for the circumcising of the child," (Luke ii. 21.) and yet Christ was born upon the first, and circumcised upon the last of those eight days:† nor were there any more than six whole days

* A night and a day in the Hebrew language, not used to compositions, is the same with the Greek υπόθετον, or ἑκατοντον, which gives us both the natural and artificial day. And the evening and the morning are sometimes put instead of the day: as Dan. viii. 14. 

† As we read of the circumcision of our Saviour, ἡ τεταρτή ημέρα εἰσήκουσα ἐκτὸς δὲ τῶν ἡμισίων τεταρτῶν. Luke ii. 21, so of Zachary, ἡ τεταρτή ἡμέρα τῆς λατρείας αὐτοῦ; Luke i. 23, and though the number ἕκτων were not expressed, yet
between the day of his birth and the day of his circumcision; 

the one upon the 25th of December, the other upon the 1st of January. And as the Jews were wont to speak, the priests in 
their courses by the appointment of David were to minister 
before the Lord eight days, whereas every week a new course 
succeeded, and there were but seven days' service for each 
course (the sabbath on which they began, and the sabbath on 
which they went off, being both reckoned in the eight days) 
so the day on which the Son of God was crucified, dead, and 
buried, and the day on which he revived and rose again, were 
included in the number of three days. And thus did our 
Saviour rise from the dead upon the third day properly, and 
was three days and three nights in the heart of the earth 
synecdochically.*  

This is sufficient for the clearing the precise distance of 
Christ's resurrection from his crucifixion, expressed in the 
determine number of three days: the next consideration is, 
what day of the week that third day was, on which Christ did 
actually arise, and what belongeth to that day in relation to his 
resurrection. Two characters there are which will evidently 
prove the particularity of this third day; the first is the de-
scription of that day in respect of which this is called the 
third, after the manner already delivered and confirmed; the 
second is the evangelist's expression of the time on which 
Christ rose.

it is to be understood according to the 
language of the Scripture in other cases, 
and of Josephus particularly in this: 

"Et loca mysterium in Evangelio Dominis existat; et superfluum est, vel id ipsum, vel alium dicere quam expouit ipse qui passus est. Hoc solum qu'erimus, quomodo tres dies et tres noctes fuerit in corde terrae. Quidam p&ara;smo, quando sole fugiante ab hora sexta usque ad horam nonam, nox successit diei, in duos dies et noctes dividunt, et apponentes Sabbatum, tres dies et tres noctes esti-
mant supputandas; non vero subtractas: totum intelligamus a parte; at ex eo quod erat crucifixus mortuus est, nam diei sup-
putemus et noctem, et Sabbati alteram; tertiam vero noctem, quae diei Dominicae 
mancipatur, referamus ad exordium diei alterius: nam et in Genesi non pro-
cedentius diei est, sed sequentis, id est, principium futuri, non finis pr&eritii."

To the same purpose St. Augustine: "Ipsiun 
atum triduum non totum et pleon fuisse 
Scriitura testis est: sed primus dies a 
parte extrema totus annumeratus est; 
dies vero tertius a parte prima et ipse 
totus; medius autem inter eos, i. e. se-
condus dies absolute totus viginti quatuor 
horis suis, duodecim nocturnis, et duo-
decim diuris. Crucifixus est enim primo 
Judaeorum vocibus hora tertia; cum esset 
dies sexta Sabbati. Deinde, in ipsa cruce 
suspensus est hora sexta, et spiritum red-
didit hora nona. Sepultus est autem cum 
jam sero factum esset: sic sepe habent 
verba evangeliij, quod intelligitur in fine 
diei. Unde ibid ergo incipias, ctemis 
a bah ratio reddi potest, quomodo non sit 
contra evangelium Johannis, ut hora tertia 
ligno suspensus intelligatur: totum diei 
primum non comprehendis. Ergo a parte 
extrema totus computabitor, sicut tertius 
a parte prima. Nox enim usque ad diu-
culum, quo Domini resurrectione declarata 
est, ad tertium diem pertinet."

* De Trinit. 
I. iv. c. 6. And after him Leo the Great: 
"Ne turbatos Discipolume amnos longa 
macritudine cruciaret, denunciatae tridui 
moram tam mira celeritate breviavit, et 
dum ad integrum secundum diem pars 
primi novissima et pars tertii prima con-
corrit, et aliquantum temporis spatio de-
cideret, et ulihi diei numero deperiret."

De Resur. Domini, Serm. l. c. 2, vid. Isidor. 
Pelus. l. i. Eevist 111.
THE THIRD DAY.

The character of the day in which our Saviour died is undeniable, for it is often expressly called the preparation;* as we read, they therefore laid Jesus in the garden, "because of the Jews preparation-day, for the sepulchre was nigh at hand." (John xix. 42.) And "the next day that followed the preparation," the chief priests and pharisees asked a guard. (Matt. xxvii. 62.) Now this day of preparation was the day immediately before the sabbath, or some other great feast of the Jews called by them the eve of the sabbath or the feast; and therefore called the preparation, because on that day they did prepare whatsoever was necessary for the celebration of the following festival, according to that command in the case of manna, "It shall come to pass that on the sixth day they shall prepare that which they bring in, and it shall be twice as

* Paracese, *Parasceue interpretatur preparation, saith St. Augustin; de consen. Evang. l. iii. §. 30, and in the Greek language it signifies generally any preparation of what nature soever; but in this case it signifies rather the time in which preparation was made, as Luke xvi. 51. Haec etiam parasceue, and that preparation among the Jews for the sabbath, as St. Mark v. 42. "Episc Zopareu, et ista preeparatio, and in the edit of Augustus Caesar: "Egregiae, et munificentiae in sancta es in pulchra sepulchrum atque armis, in manu Joseph. Ind. Ant. l. xvi. c. 10. which is well expressed by Susemus, ep. 4. 'Mos eun quin, ut infra arsen et instarum parasceuen, quin ex necta, ad ammonium, est in sehac etiam in sehac in sehac in sehac in sehac. Eodem loco, suum etiam in sehac in sehac in sehac in sehac in sehac. This parasceua of the Hebrews was answerable to the eann pura of the Gentiles, as the old glossary, Coena pura, parasceu: and in Gloss. Latino-Italiano, "Parasceue cum pira, id est, preeparatio quae fit pro sabbato." From whence some of the fathers so interpret the eves of the Jewish sabbaths, as Tertullian: "Dies observatis et menses et tempora et annos et sabbatus, ut unipurum, et cum purum et jumoum et dies magnos." Adv. Marciun. l. v. c. 4. Acceleratam vult intelligi sequituram, ne adverserascet: quando jam propter parasceue, quam cum purum Judaei Latine usitatis apud nos vocant, facere tale quid non licebat." S. August. Tract. 1. 10, in Ioum. §. 5. And the ancient translators of the Greek fathers did use the Latin eann pura for the Greek parasceue. As the interpreter of St. Chrysostom, Serm. in Nativen Ioum. Bapt. "Qua enim die conceptus est Dominus, eadem die et passus est: eadem ipsa die cum pura fuit, in qua et luna quarta decima occultur." So likewise the old interpreter of Ireneus: "Parasceue, quae dicitur eann pura, id est, sexta feria, quam et Dominus ostendit passum in eam." Iren. adv. Hares. l. v. c. 23. "Mosen in sexta die dieisse, quae est eann pura." l. i. c. 14. §. 6. As therefore the eann pura among the Gentiles was that time in which they prepared and sanctified themselves for their sacred solemnities, so the Jews did make use of that word to signify their sanctification, and of the Greek parasceue to testify the preparation of all things used on their holy days, upon the eve thereof, or day before. "Parasceue Latine preparation est; sed isto verbo Graeco libertinus utuntur Judaei in hujusmodi observationibus, etiam qui magis Latine quam Graece loquentur," saith St. Augustin, Tract. 117. in Ioum. §. 2. So that the same Father testifieth that the Jews, speaking Latin in his time, did sometimes use parasceue, sometimes eann pura, for their eve of preparation. Otherwise in their own language they called it Huru or parore, by which generally they understood the sixth day of the week, the day before the sabbath. For so they reckoned the days of the week in Beth-sheath Rabbah, parore to the first of the week, parore to the second, parore to the third, parore to the fourth, parore to the fifth, parore to the eve, parore to the sabbath. Thus in Hebrew parore, in Greek parasceue, in Latin eann pura, were used by the Jews for the same day, the Friday or sixth of the week; but not for that alone, but for the eve of any great festival which answered to a sabbath; so that they had their parore parore, and parore parore. Nam parasceue, et parasceue, et parasceue. And when a great festival fell upon the Sabbath, then as the festivities were both one day, so the eve to both was the same Friday. And such was the day of preparation on which our Saviour was crucified.
much as they gather daily.” (Exod. xvi. 5.) This preparation being used both before the sabbath and other festivals, at this time it had both relations: for, first, it was the preparation to a sabbath, as appeareth by those words of St. Mark, “Now when the even was come, because it was the preparation, that is, the day before the sabbath;” (xv. 42) and those of St. Luke, “That day was the preparation, and the sabbath drew on.” (xxiii. 54.) Secondly, It was also the eve of a festival, even of the great day of the paschal solemnity, as appeareth by St. John, who saith, when Pilate sat down in the judgment-seat, “it was the preparation of the Passover.” (xix. 14.) And that the great paschal festivity did then fall upon the sabbath, so that the same day was then the preparation or eve of both, appeareth yet farther by the same evangelist, saying, “The Jews therefore, because it was the preparation, that the bodies should not remain upon the cross on the sabbath-day, for that sabbath was a high day;” (Ibid. 31.) that is, not only an ordinary or weekly sabbath, but also a great festival, even a paschal sabbath. Now being the sabbath of the Jews was constant and fixed to the seventh day of the week, it followeth that the preparation or eve thereof must necessarily be the sixth day of the week; which, from the day and the infinite benefit accruing to us by the passion upon that day, we call Good Friday. And from that day being the sixth of one, the third must consequently be the eighth, or the first of the next week.*

The next character of this third day is the expression of the time of the resurrection in the evangelists. “When the sabbath was past,” saith St. Mark, which was the day after the preparation on which he was buried, “Very early in the morning the first day of the week;” (xvi. 1, 2.) “In the end of the sabbath, as it began to dawn towards the first day of the week,” saith St. Matthew. (xxviii. 1) “Upon the first day of the


Thaophilus Alex. Edict
week early in the morning," saith St. Luke. (xxiv. 1.) "The first day of the week early, when it was yet dark," saith St. John. (xx. 1.) By all which indications it appeareth that the body of Christ being laid in the sepulchre on the day of the preparation, which was the eve of the sabbath, and continuing there the whole sabbath following, which was the conclusion of that week, and farther resting there still and remaining dead the night which followed that sabbath, but belonged to the first day of the next week, about the end of that night early in the morning, was revived by the accession and union of his soul, and rose again out of the sepulchre.

Whereby it came to pass, that the obligation of the day, which was then the sabbath, died and was buried with him, but in a manner by a diurnal transmutation revived again at his resurrection. Well might that day, which carried with it a remembrance of that great deliverance from the Egyptian servitude, resign all the sanctity or solemnity due unto it, when that morning once appeared, upon which a far greater redemption was confirmed. One day of seven was set apart by God in imitation of his rest upon the creation of the world, and that seventh day, which was sanctified to the Jews, was reckoned in relation to their deliverance from Egypt. At the second delivery of the Law we find this particular cause assigned, "Remember that thou wast a servant in the land of Egypt, and that the Lord thy God brought thee out thence, through a mighty hand and by a stretched-out arm, therefore the Lord thy God commandeth thee to keep the sabbath-day." (Deut. v. 15.) Now this could not be any special reason why the Jews should observe a seventh day; first, Because in reference to their redemption, the number of seven had no more relation than any other number; secondly, Because the reason of a seventh day was before rendered in the body of the commandment itself. There was therefore a double reason rendered by God why the Jews should keep that sabbath which they did; one special, as to a seventh day, to shew they worshipped that God, who was the Creator of the World; the other individual, as to that seventh day, to signify their deliverance from the Egyptian bondage, from which that seventh day was dated.

Being then upon the resurrection of our Saviour a greater deliverance and far more plenteous redemption was wrought than that of Egypt, and therefore a greater observance was due unto it than to that, the individual determination of the day did pass upon a stronger reason to another day, always to be repeated by a seventh return upon the reference to the creation. As there was a change in the year at the coming out of Egypt, by the command of God; "This month," the month of Abib, "shall be unto you the beginning of months, it shall be the first month of the year to you;" (Exod. xii. 2.) so at this time of a more eminent deliverance a change was wrought in the heb-
dominal or weekly account, and the first day is made the seventh, or the seventh after that first is sanctified. The first day, because on that Christ rose from the dead; and the seventh day from that first for ever, because he who rose upon that day, was the same God who created the world and rested on the seventh day: "for by him all things were created that are in heaven and that are in the earth, all things were created by him and for him." (Col. i. 16.)

This day did the apostles from the beginning most religiously observe, by their meeting together for holy purposes, and to perform religious duties. The first observation was performed providentially, rather by the design of God than any such inclination or intention of their own: for "the same day," saith the evangelist, that is the day on which Christ rose from the dead, "at evening, being the first day of the week, the disciples were assembled for fear of the Jews." (John xx. 19.) The second observation was performed voluntarily, "for after eight days again his disciples were within, and Thomas with them." (John xx. 26.) The first day of the week when Christ rose by the providence of God, the disciples were together, but Thomas was absent; upon the first day of the next week they were all met together again in expectation of our Saviour, and Thomas with them. Again, "when the day of Pentecost was fully come," which was also the first day of the week, "they were all with one accord in one place;" (Acts ii. 1.) and having received the promise of the Holy Ghost they spake with tongues, preached the Gospel, and "the same day were added unto them about three thousand souls." (Acts ii. 41.) The same practice of convening, we find continued in the following years: For "upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them;" (Acts xx. 7.) and the same apostle gave express command concerning the collection for the saints both of the churches of Galatia and of Corinth; "Upon the first day of the week, let every one of you lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him." (1 Cor. xvi. 2.)

From this resurrection of our Saviour, and the constant practice of the apostles, this first day of the week came to have the name of the Lord's-day, and is so called by St. John, who says of himself in the Revelation, "I was in the spirit on the Lord's-day." (Rev. i. 10.) And thus the observation of that day, which the Jews did sanctify, ceased, and was buried with our Saviour; and in the stead of it, the religious observation of that day on which the Son of God rose from the dead,* by

This day thus consecrated by the resurrection of Christ was left as the perpetual badge and cognizance of his Church. As God spake by Moses to the Israelites, "Verily my sabbath shall ye keep, for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations, that ye may know that I am the Lord that do sanctify you;" (Exod. xxxi. 13.) thereby leaving a mark of distinction upon the Jews, who were by this means known to worship that God whose name was Jehovah, who made the
World, and delivered them from the hands of Pharaoh: so we must conceive that he hath given us this day as a sign between him and us for ever, whereby we may be known to worship the same God Jehovah, who did not only create heaven and earth in the beginning, but also raised his eternal Son from the dead for our redemption. As therefore the Jews do still retain the celebration of the seventh day of the week, because they will not believe any greater deliverance wrought than that of Egypt; as the Mahometans religiously observe the sixth day of the week in memory of Mahomet’s flight from Mecca, whom they esteem a greater prophet than our Saviour; as these are known and distinguished in the world by these several celebrations of distinct days in the worship of God: so all which profess the Christian religion are known publicly to belong unto the Church of Christ by observing the first day of the week upon which Christ did rise from the dead, and by this mark of distinction are openly separated from all other professions.*

That Christ did thus rise from the dead, is a most necessary Article of the Christian faith, which all are obliged to believe and profess, to the meditation whereof the apostle hath given a particular injunction. “Remember that Jesus Christ of the seed of David was raised from the dead.” (2 Tim. ii. 8.) First, Because without it our faith is vain, and by virtue of it strong. By this we are assured that he which died was the Lord of life; and though he were “crucified through weakness, yet he liveth by the power of God.” (2 Cor. xiii. 4.) By this resurrection from the dead, he “was declared to be the Son of God;” (Rom. i. 4.) and upon the morning of the third day did those words of the Father manifest a most important truth, “Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.” (Acts xiii. 33.) In his death he assured us of his Divinity, by his resurrection he demonstrated his Divinity.

Secondly, By his resurrection we are assured of the justification of our persons; and “if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead,” it will be “imputed to us for righteousness;” for he “was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.” (Rom. iv. 24. 22. 25.) + By his death we know that he suffered for sin, by his re-

* Quid hac die felicior, in qua Dominus Judaeis mortuus est, nobis resurrectionem in qua Synagoga culsum occubuit, et aortus Ecclesia; in qua nos homines fecit secum surgere et vivere etedere in celestibus, et impetuum est illud quod ipse dixit in Evangelio, Cum autem exulatus fuerit a terra, omnibus tribam ad me. Hec est dies quam fecit Dominus, exultemus et laetemur in ea. Omnes dies quidem fecit Dominus, sed certe dies possunt esse Judæorum, possunt esse Heæricorum, possunt esse Gentilium; dies Dominica, dies resurrectionis, dies Christianorum, dies nostra est. Explic. in Psalm. 117, sub nomine Hierom.

† St. Chrysostom excellently upon that place: “Osce τα των αιτίων εἰς την θανάτον, των αιτίων και κατοικίων της αναστάσεως ποιησό- των. Δια τα χρόνα εἰσαγωγή, ουν; ει δε' οὑναν αμερτων και δυναμικον της αναστάσεως: ει γαρ εν ημαρμαρτωλι, τος αὐτον; ει δε' αὐτον, ειδοταν των ημαρμαρτωλον ου ουν ει δε' αμερτωλον ου ουν, σπειρ εισαγωγή; ει δε' εμφάσις ει δε' εμφάσις, πάντως αὐτον.” Rom. 9. in Epist. ad Rom.
surrection we are assured, that the sins for which he suffered, were not his own. Had no man been a sinner, he had not died; had he been a sinner, he had not risen again: but dying for those sins which we committed, he rose from the dead to shew that he had made full satisfaction for them, that we believing in him might obtain remission of our sins, and justification of our persons. "God, sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh for sin, condemned sin in the flesh." (Rom. vii. 3.) and raising up our surety from the prison of the grave, did actually absolve, and apparently acquit, him from the whole obligation to which he had bound himself, and in discharging him acknowledged full satisfaction made for us. "Who then shall lay any thing to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifieth, who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather that is risen again." (Rom. viii. 33, 34.)

Thirdly, It was necessary to pronounce the resurrection of Christ, as an Article of our faith, and thereby we might ground, confirm, strengthen, and declare our hope. For "the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, according to his abundant mercy, hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, unto an inheritance incorruptible and undefiled." (1 Pet. i. 3, 4.) By the resurrection of Christ his Father hath been said to have begotten him; and therefore by the same he hath begotten us, who are called brethren and coheirs with Christ. "For if when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more being reconciled we shall be saved by his life." (Rom. v. 10.) He laid down his life, but it was for us; and being to take up his own, he took up ours. We are the members of that body, of which Christ is the Head; if the Head be risen, the members cannot be far behind. He is the "first-born from the dead," (Col. i. 18.) and we "the sons of the resurrection." The Spirit of Christ abiding in us maketh us members of Christ, and by the same Spirit we have a full right and title to rise with our Head. "For if the Spirit of him, that raised up Jesus from the dead, dwell in us, he that raised up Christ from the dead, shall also quicken our mortal bodies by his Spirit, that dwelleth in us." (Rom. viii. 11.) Thus the resurrection of Christ is the cause of our resurrection by a double causality, as an efficient, and as an exemplary cause. As an efficient cause, in regard our Saviour by and upon his resurrection hath obtained power and right to raise all the dead; "For as in Adam all die, so in Christ shall all be made alive." (1 Cor. xv. 22.) As an exemplary cause, in regard that all the saints of God shall rise after the similitude and in conformity to the resurrection of Christ; "For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection." (Rom. vi. 5.)
He "shall change our vile bodies, that they may be fashioned like unto his glorious body:" (Phil. iii. 21.) that "as we have borne the image of the earthy, we may also bear the image of the heavenly." (1 Cor. xv. 49.) This is the great hope of a Christian, that Christ rising from the dead hath obtained the power, and is become the pattern, of his resurrection. "The breaker is come up before them; they have broken up and have passed through the gate, and are gone out by it, and their king shall pass before them, and the Lord on the head of them." (Micah ii. 13.)

Fourthly, It is necessary to profess our faith in Christ risen from the dead, that his resurrection may effectually work its proper operation in our lives. For as it is efficient and exemplary to our bodies, so it is also to our souls. "When we were dead in sins, God quickened us together with Christ." (Eph. ii. 5.) And, "as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we should walk in newness of life." (Rom. vi. 4.) To continue among the graves of sin, while Christ is risen, is to incur that reprehension of the angel, "Why seek ye the living among the dead?" (Luke xxiv. 5.) To walk in any habitual sin, is either to deny that sin is death, or Christ is risen from the dead. "Let them bury their dead," (Matt. viii. 22.) but let not any Christian bury him, who rose from death, that he might live. "Awake, thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and Christ shall give thee light." (Eph. v. 14.) There must be a spiritual resurrection of the soul, before there can be a comfortable resurrection of the body. "Blessed and holy is he that hath part in this first resurrection; on such the second death hath no power." (Rev. xx. 6.)

Having thus explained the manner of Christ's resurrection, and the necessity of our faith in him risen from the dead, we may easily give such a brief account, as any Christian may understand, what it is he should intend, when he makes profession of this part of the Creed; for he is conceived to acknowledge thus much: I freely and fully assent unto this as a truth of infinite certainty and absolute necessity, that, the eternal Son of God, who was crucified and died for our sins did not long continue in the state of death, but by his infinite power did revive and raise himself, by uniting the same soul which was separated to the same body which was buried, and so rose the same man: and this he did the third day from his death; so that dying on Friday the sixth day of the week, the day of the preparation of the sabbath, and resting in the grave the sabbath-day, on the morning of the first day of the week he returned unto life again, and thereby consecrated the weekly revolution of that first day to a religious observation until his coming again. And thus I believe the third day he rose again from the dead.
ARTICLE VI.

He ascended into heaven, and sitteth on the right hand of God the Father Almighty.

This Article hath received no variation, but only in the addition of the name of God, and the attribute Almighty; the ancients using it briefly thus,* He ascended into heaven, sitteth at the right hand of the Father. It containeth two distinct parts; one transient, the other permanent; one as the way, the other as the end: the first is Christ's ascension, the second is his session.

In the ascension of Christ these words of the Creed pro- pound to us three considerations and no more: the first of the person, He; the second of the action, ascended; the third of the termination, into heaven. Now the person being perfectly the same, which we have considered in the precedent Articles, he will afford no different speculation but only in conjunction with this particular action. Wherefore I conceive these three things necessary and sufficient for the illustration of Christ's ascension: First, To shew that the promised Messias was to ascend into heaven; Secondly, To prove that our Jesus, whom we believe to be the true Messias, did really and truly ascend thither; Thirdly, To declare what that heaven is, unto which he did ascend.

That the promised Messias should ascend into heaven, hath been represented typically, and declared prophetically. The high-priest under the Law was an express type of the Messias and his priestly office; the atonement which he made, was the representation of the propitiation in Christ for the sin of the world: for the making this atonement, the high-priest was appointed once every year to enter into the Holy of Holies, and no oftener. For "the Lord said unto Moses, Speak unto Aaron thy brother, that he come not at all times into the holy place within the veil before the mercy-seat, which is upon the ark, that he die not." (Lev. xvi. 2.) None entered into that holy place but the high-priest alone; and he himself could enter thither but once in the year; and thereby shewed that the "high-priest of the good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle not made with hands, was to enter

into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.” (Heb. ix. 11, 12.) The Jews did all believe that the Tabernacle did signify this world, and the Holy of Holies the highest heavens; wherefore as the high-priest did slay the sacrifice, and with the blood thereof did pass through the rest of the Tabernacle, and with that blood did enter into the Holy of Holies; so was the Messias here to offer up himself, and, being slain, to pass through all the courts of this world below, and with his blood to enter into the highest heavens, the most glorious seat of the majesty of God. Thus Christ’s ascension was represented typically.

The same ascension was also declared prophetically, as we read in the prophet David, “Thou hast ascended up on high, thou hast led captivity captive, thou hast received gifts for men:” (Psal. lxviii. 18.) which phrase on high, in the language of David, signifying heaven, could be applied properly to no other conqueror but the Messias: not to Moses, not to David, not to Joshua, nor to any but the Christ; who was to conquer sin, and death, and hell, and, triumphing over them, to ascend unto the highest heavens, and thence to send the precious and glorious gifts of the Spirit unto the sons of men. The prophecy of Micah did foretell as much, even in the opinion and confession of the Jews themselves, by those words, ascending. For that in the language of the prophet, is attributed to God, as Psal. vii. 8. return on high, that is, in the language of the Chaldee paraphrase, from heaven, and Psal. xciii. 4. the Lord on high is mighty, Chaldee, that is, in the upper heavens, Psal. lxxi. 19. Thy righteousness, O Lord, is more than heaven.

In the same manner, in this place, if thou hast ascended on high, the Chaldee paraphrase translated it to the firmament thereof; but the Chaldee, and the same Hebrew, translate it to the firmament. and it addeth immediately again, that is, O thou prophet Moses: yet there is a plain contradiction in that interpretation; for if it were meant of Moses, it cannot be the firmament; if it were the firmament, it cannot be understood of Moses, for he never ascended thither.

† This Breaker-up is by the confession of the Jews the title of the Messias. So the author of Sepher Abachth Ruchal, in his description of the coming of the Messias, maketh use of this place. And the same appeared farther by that saying of Moses Haddershan in Bereshith Rabba, Moses, this shall be before the going forth of the people: The plantation from below is Abraham, the plantation from above is Messias, as it is written, The breaker is come up before them, &c. So he
“The breaker is come up before them: they have broken up and have passed through the gate, and are gone out by it; and their king shall pass before them, and the Lord at the head of them.” (ii. 13.) And thus Christ’s ascension was declared prophetically as well as typically; which was our first consideration.

Secondly, Whatsoever was thus represented and foretold of the promised Messiah, was truly and really performed by our Jesus. That only-begotten and eternal Son of God, who by his Divinity was present in the heavens while he was on earth, did, by a local translation of his human nature, really and truly ascend from this earth below on which he lived, into the heavens above, or rather above all the heavens, in the same body and the soul with which he lived and died and rose again.

The ascent of Christ into heaven was not metaphorical or figurative, as if there were no more to be understood by it, but only that he obtained a more heavenly and glorious state or condition after his resurrection. For whatsoever alteration was made in the body of Christ when he rose, whatsoever glorious qualities it was invested with thereby, that was not his ascension, as appeareth by those words which he spake to Mary, “Touch me not, for I am not yet ascended to my Father.” (John xx. 17.) Although he had said before to Nicodemus, “No man ascended up to heaven, but he that came down from heaven, even the Son of man which is in heaven;” (John iii. 13.) which words imply that he had then ascended; yet even those concern not this ascension. For that was therefore only true, because the Son of man, not yet conceived in the Virgin’s womb, was not in heaven, and after his conception by virtue of the hypostatical union was in heaven; from whence, speaking after the manner of men, he might well say, that he had ascended into heaven; because whatsoever was first on earth and then in heaven, we say ascended into heaven. Wherefore, beside that grounded upon the hypostatical union, beside that glorious condition upon his resurrection, there was yet another, and that more proper ascension: for after he had both those ways ascended, it was still true that he had not yet ascended to his Father.

Now this kind of ascension, by which Christ had not yet ascended when he spake to Mary after his resurrection, was after to be performed; for at the same time he said unto Mary, “Go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father and your Father.” (John xx. 17.) And when this ascension was performed, it appeared manifestly to be a true

on Gen. xl. 9. Again the same Bereshith Rabba, Gen. xliv. 18. חמש עשר קסמים ובריאת ובחרת עיני יהוה. When shall we rejoice? when the feet of the Shechinah shall stand upon the Mount of Olives; and again, אמרתי בפיי נחלהpluck up the image of God from his face.  ויהיה נביא. When? when the captives shall ascend from hell, and Shechinah in the head, as it is written (Mic. ii. 13.), Their King shall pass before them, and the Lord in the head of them.
local translation of the Son of man, as man, from these parts
of the world below into the heavens above, by which that
body, which was before locally present here on earth, and
was not so then present in heaven, became substantially pre-
sent in heaven, and no longer locally present in earth. For
when he had spoken unto the disciples, “and blessed them,”
laking his hands upon them, and so was corporally present
with them, even “while he blessed them, he parted from them,
and while they beheld, he was taken up, and a cloud received
him out of their sight,” (Luke xxiv. 50, 51.) and so he was
“carried up into heaven, while they looked steadfastly to-
wards heaven, as he went up.” (Acts i. 9, 10.) This was a
visible departure, as it is described, a real removing of that
body of Christ, which was before present with the apostles;
and that body living after the resurrection, by virtue of that
soul which was united to it: and therefore the Son of God
according to his humanity was really and truly translated from
these parts below unto the heavens above, which is a proper
local ascension.

Thus was Christ’s ascension visibly performed in the pre-
sence and sight of the apostles, for the confirmation of the
reality and the certainty thereof. They did not see him when
he rose,* but they saw him when he ascended; because an eye-
witness was not necessary unto the act of his resurrection, but
it was necessary unto the act of his ascension. It was suffi-
cient that Christ “shewed himself” to the apostles “alive
after his passion;” (Acts i. 3.) for being they knew him be-
fore to be dead, and now saw him alive, they were thereby
assured that he rose again: for whatsoever was a proof of his
life after death, was a demonstration of his resurrection.
But being the apostles were not to see our Saviour in heaven, being
the session was not to be visible to them on earth, therefore it
was necessary they should be eye-witnesses of the act, who
were not with the same eyes to behold the effect.

Beside the eye-witness of the apostles, there was added the
testimony of the angels; those blessed spirits which minis-
tered before, and saw the face of God in heaven, and came
down from thence, did know that Christ ascended up from
hence unto that place, from whence they came: and because
the eyes of the apostles could not follow him so far, the inha-
bitants of that place did come to testify of his reception;†
for “behold two men stood by them in white apparel, which

* Βλεπόντων μὲν οἱ εὐαγγελισταὶ, Βλεπόντων

† Ἐνεπιθεὶς οἱ αποστόλοι οἱ ἀρσενόχροι θείας

in Act. Apost.
also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? This same Jesus which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner, as ye have seen him go into heaven." (Acts i. 10, 11.) We must therefore acknowledge and confess against the wild heresies of old,* that the eternal Son of God, who died and rose again, did, with the same body and soul with which he died and rose, ascend up to heaven; which was the second particular considerable in the Article.

Thirdly, Being the name of heaven admitteth divers acceptions in the sacred Scriptures, it will be necessary to inquire, what is the true notion of it in this Article, and what was the proper termination of Christ's ascension. In some sense it might be truly said, Christ was in heaven before the cloud took him out of the apostles' sight; for the clouds themselves are called "the clouds of heaven;" (Dan. vii. 13.) but that heaven is the first; and our Saviour certainly ascended at least as far as St. Paul was caught up, that is, into the third heaven; for "we have a great high-priest, that is passed through the heavens." (Heb. iv. 14.)† And needs must he pass through the heavens, because he was "made higher than the heavens;" (Heb. vii. 26.) for "he that descended is the same also that ascended up far above all heavens." (Eph. iv. 10.) When therefore Christ is said to have ascended into heaven, we must take that word as signifying as much as the heaven of heavens; and so Christ is ascended through and above the heavens; and for he is "entered into that within the veil," (Heb. vi. 19.) there is his passage through the heavens; "into the holy place, even into heaven itself, to appear in the presence of God," (Heb. ix. 12, 24.) this is the heaven of heavens. For "thus said the Lord, The heaven is

* The various heresies in the primitive time concerning the humanity of Christ ascended into heaven, are briefly touched by Tertullian: * Ut et illi erubescant, qui affirmant carnem in cellis vacuum sensu, ut vagum, exemplo Christo sedete; aut qui carnem et animam tantundem, aut tantummodo animam, carnem vero non jam.* Decuriae Christi, c. 24. Of which Gregory Nazianzen: * Ei tis apostathodiav en tain sarka logei, kai ymnion einai tain theoteta sym- matos, alla mo mewta tais psephismatocos kai auain kai avon, ma idi tina dhima tais parousias.* Epist. 1. ad Cedellanum. p. 739. The Apellite taught, that Christ left his body dissolved in the air, and so ascended into heaven without it: *Hunc Apellem dicunt quidam etiam de Christo tam falsa sensisse, ut dicereiem non quidem carnem duixisse de coelo, sed ex elementis mundi accepisse, quo mundo reddidit, cum sine carne resurgens in coele ascendit.* S. August. Heres. 93. This opinion of Apel-
my throne, and the earth is my footstool;” (Isa. lx:vi. 1.) and as Christ descended unto the footstool of his Father in his humiliation, so he ascended unto the throne of his Father in his exaltation. This was the place, of which our Saviour spake to his disciples, “What and if ye shall see the Son of man ascend up where he was before?” (John vi. 62.) Had he been there before in body, it had been no such wonder that he should have ascended thither again: but that his body should ascend unto that place where the majesty of God was most resplendent; that the flesh of our flesh, and bone of our bone, should be seated far above all angels and archangels, all principalities and powers, even at the right hand of God: this was that which Christ propounded as worthy of their greatest admiration. Whatsoever heaven then is higher than all the rest which are called heavens; whatsoever sanctuary is holier than all which are called holies; whatsoever place is of greatest dignity in all those courts above, into that place did he ascend, where in the splendour of his Deity he was, before he took upon him our humanity.

As therefore when we say Christ ascended, we understand a literal and local ascent, not of his Divinity (which possesseth all places, and therefore being every where is not subject to the imperfection of removing any whither), but of his humanity, which was so in one place that it was not in another: so when we say the place into which he ascended was heaven, and from the expositions of the apostles must understand thereby the heaven of heavens, or the highest heavens, it followeth that we believe the body with the soul of Christ to have passed far above all those celestial bodies which we see, and to look upon that opinion as a low conceit which left his body in the sun.*

It was necessary to profess this Article of Christ’s ascension. First, For the confirmation and augmentation of our faith. Our faith is thereby confirmed, in that we believe in him who

* The Seleuciani and Hermanni taught that the body of Christ ascended no farther than the sun, in which it was deposited, of whom Philastrius, and out of him St. Augustin, thus: ‘Negant Salvatori in carne sedere ad dexteram Patris, sed cae se exusisse perhabet, cumque in sole posuisse, accipientes occasi- nemon de Psalm, In sole posuit Tabernaculum suum.’ Hieres. 39. The same opinion Gregory Nazianzen attributeth to the Manicheans: Ποτε γὰρ τὸ σῶμα τὸ γενομένῳ, τιρετήθη κατὰ τὸν Μανιχαῖον λόγον τὸ ἄνω ἐπιστομένον. Ioh. 1. vid. Cited in, p. 739. And St. Augustin says they taught the sun to be Christ: ‘Manichaei solem istum oculos car- neis visibalem, expositum, et publicum, non tantum hominibus, sed etiam pecoribus ad videndum, Christum Dominum esse putant.’ Tract. 51. in Ioan. c. 2. This opinion is more clearly set down, but without a name, in the Catena Pa- trum on the 18th Psalm: οὐ γὰρ προε- κτῖν τούτος αὐτῶν διὰ τοῦ Αιγυπτίων φελάνθες, οἱ φασὶν ὅτι μετὰ τὴν ἀνάπτωσιν τοῦ Σωτῆρος τῆς κληρονομίας τοῦ θεοῦ ἀναπτύξει. This was the old heresy of Hermogenes, as is related by Theodoret: Οὐτες (ὁ Ἐρμο- γενῆς) τοῦ χώρου τοῦ σώματος τοῦ θεοῦ τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ τοῖς θεοφιλαῖς τοῖς θεοὺς ἀναφέροντα. Hieret. 1. 1. c. 19.
HE ASCENDED INTO HEAVEN.

is received unto the Father, and therefore certainly came from the Father: his Father sent him, and we have received the message from him, and are assured that it is the same message which he was sent to deliver, because he is so highly rewarded by him that sent him for delivering it. Our faith is thereby exalted and augmented, as being the "evidence of things not seen." (Heb. xi. 1.) The farther the object is removed from us, the more of faith hath that act which embraceth it.* Christ said unto Thomas, "Because thou hast seen me thou hast believed; blessed are they that have not seen, and yet have believed:" (John xx. 29.) and that blessedness by this ascension he hath left to the whole Church. That Christ ascended is the ground and glory of our faith; and by virtue of his being in heaven, our belief is both encouraged and commended; for his ascent is the cause, and his absence the crown, of our faith: because he ascended, we the more believe; and because we believe in him who hath ascended, our faith is the more accepted.

Secondly, It is necessary to believe the ascension of Christ for the corroboration of our hope. We could never expect our dust and ashes should ascend the heavens; but being our nature hath gone before in him, we can now hope to follow after him. He is our Head,† (Eph. i. 22.) and where that is, the members may expect admission: for in so great and intimate a union there is no fear of separation or exclusion: there "are many mansions in his Father's house." (John xiv. 2.) And when he spake of ascending thither, he said expressly to his disciples, "I go to prepare a place for you, and will come again and receive you unto myself, that where I am, there ye may be also." (Ibid. 3.) The first-fruits of our nature are ascended,‡ and the rest is sanctified. "This is the new and living way, which he consecrated for us through the veil, that is to say, his flesh." (Heb. x. 20.) And hence we "have our hope as an anchor of the soul both sure and stedfast, which entereth into that which is within the veil, whither the forerunner is for us entered." (Heb. vi. 19, 20.) For if Christ in his ascension

* Magnarum hic vigor est mentium, et valde fidelium huum est animarum, incunctanter credere que corporeo non videatur intuitu, et ibi figere desiderium, quia nequeas inferre conceptum. Hae autem pietas unde in nostris cordibus nasceretur, aut quomodo quisquam justificaretur per fidem, si in isi tautum salus nostra consisteret, quae obtutibus subjacerent? Leo in Ascen. Serm. 2. c. 1. † Fides eorum qui Deum visiunt, quamdui peregrinantur, corda mundauntur, quod non videt credit; nam si vides, non est fides: credenti colligitur meritum, videnti redditur praemium. Ex ergo Dominus et parent locus; eat ne videatur, lateat ut credatur: tunc enim locus paratur, si ex fide viratur: creditus desideretur ut desideratus habatur, desiderium dilectionis preparatio est mansionis. S. August. Tract. 68. in Ioan. s. 3. ‡ Christi ascensio nostra prorectio est, et quo praeceitis gloria capitis, eo spes vocatur et corporis. Leo de Ascen. Serm. 1. c. 4.

**Diá τὸῦ ἑστώτου ὑφόδου, ἐπείδαι ὁμοῦ τοῦ ἀπαρχῆν τοῦ ἑμιτέμενον φυλάκας, τοιοῦτον τον σάκκο, ἐν ὑμοῖς ἡμῖνάσαρῆς. S. Chrysost. Orat. 1. de Ascens. Διά λοιπόν χριστιάν ἕξομεν τὰς ἱππίας, φθοράς τοῦ ἡμιτέμεν ἐπαρχῆς ἀρχηγίως. Id. Orat. 2. de Ascens.
be the forerunner, then are there some to follow after: and not only so, but they which follow, are to go on in the same way, and to attain unto the same place: and if this forerunner be entered for us, then we are they which are to follow and overtake him there; as being of the same nature, members of the same body, branches of the same vine, and therefore he went thither before us as the first-fruits before those that follow, and we hope to follow him as coming late to the same perfection.

As therefore God "hath quickened us together with Christ, and hath raised us up together," (Eph. ii. 5, 6.) by virtue of his resurrection; so hath he also "made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus," (Ibid. 6.) by virtue of his ascension. We are already seated there in him, and hereafter shall be seated by him; in him already as in our Head, which is the ground of our hope; by him hereafter, as by the cause conferring, when hope shall be swallowed up in fruition.

Thirdly, The profession of faith in Christ ascended, is necessary for the exaltation of our affections. "For where our treasure is, there will our hearts be also." (Matt. vi. 21.) "If I be lifted up from the earth, I will draw all men unto me," (John xii. 32.) saith our Saviour; and if those words were true of his crucifixion, how powerful ought they to be in reference to his ascension! "When the Lord would take up Elijah into heaven, Elisha said unto him, As the Lord liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee:" (2 Kings ii. 2.) when Christ is ascended up on high, we must follow him with the wings of our meditations, and with the chariots of our affections. "If we be risen with Christ, we must seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. If we be dead, and our life hid with Christ in God, we must set our affection on the things which are above, not on the things which are on the earth." (Col. iii. 2.)

* There is a double notion of σημώνεις, to this purpose: one of a man sent before to make preparations for others which follow; in which it is well observed by St. Chrysostom: 'Ο δὲ προέρχομαι τοιαύτα προερχόμεθα, ἵνα τοῖς ἰδίοις τοῦ Χριστοῦ καὶ οἷς ἐστιν ὀπλαὶ εἰσέλθωσιν, ἀλλ' ὅπως προέρχομαι ὑπὲρ κράτους πολὺς ἑλθόντες ὑπὲρ κράτων ἐπελεύσαντες, διὸ καὶ ἑμοὶ ὑφέλπολοι καταλείπομεν. Οὐ πολὺ γὰρ τοῦ προέρχομαι καὶ τῶν ἐκπαιδευόμαι ὑπολαβεῖ καὶ τὸ μέτοχόν ἐστι οὐδὲν ἐν αὐτῷ προέρχεται τὸ γὰρ προέρχομαι καὶ τοὺς ἐπερχομένους ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ χρὶ ἔλα ὡδὶ καὶ τῶν μὲν ὑπολαβέων, τοῖς δὲ ἐπικαταλείπωμεν ἤμιλιν. 11. in Epist. ad Hebraeos. Another notion there is among the Greeks of the fruit, which is ripe and come to perfection before the rest, as Isaiah xxxiii. 4. Kaio ἐστιν τὸ ἄριστος τὸ τυπικὸν τῆς ἐποίησιν τῆς ἐνεποίησιν ἐν τῷ ἄριστῳ τῶν ὑπερεχόμενων τοῖς ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ χρὶ ἔλα ὡδὶ καὶ τῶν μὲν ὑπολαβέων, τοῖς δὲ ἐπικαταλείπωμεν ἤμιλιν. For so Theophrastus, speaking particularly τοις σημώνεις, hath these words: Ὑποκατοικίζεις γὰρ τοιαύτα τοῖς προερχόμενοι ἐκ τῶν ἱεροτότον, ὅτι δὲ ἐπηρεῖται μαϊσ- λακες καὶ ἐργάς καὶ σεμελής. ἢξεκαλυπτάντα τοις βρασθέντοις ἐτοί τοῦτο σωματίνας φυσικῶ, ὅτι ἐκ τούτοι τοῖς μέροις ὁ καμπὸς ἀνάλλει, ὡδὶ καὶ σημώνεις. De Cursus Plant. i. v. c. 1. and pass. post: Πάνε ὅ τοις προφέρομεν αἱ μὲν φύρωσι, οἷον, ἢ τε λακωνική καὶ λει- καμάλαις καὶ ἐπουράνιος αἱ δ' ὡδὶ φύρωσιν. The first-fruits of the early figs were called προέρχομαι, and the tree which bare them προτερική. Now as this early fruit doth forerun the latter fruit of the same tree, and comes to ripeness and perfection in its kind before the rest; so our Saviour goes before those men of the same nature with him, and they follow in their time to the maturity of the same perfection.
things above, not on things on the earth.” (Col. iii. 1, 3, 2.) Christ is ascended into heaven to teach us, that we are strangers and pilgrims here, as all our fathers were, and that another country belongs unto us: from whence we “as strangers and pilgrims should learn to abstain from fleshly lusts;” (1 Pet. ii. 11.) and not “mind earthly things;” as knowing that we are citizens of heaven, “from whence we look for our Saviour, the Lord Jesus,” (Phil. iii. 19, 20.) yea “fellow-citizens with the saints, and of the household of God.” (Eph. ii. 19.) We should trample upon our sins, and subdue the lusts of the flesh, that our conversation may be correspondent to our Saviour’s condition; that where the eyes of the apostles were forced to leave him, thither our thoughts may follow him.

Fourthly, The ascension of Christ is a necessary Article of the Creed in respect of those great effects which immediately were to follow it, and did absolutely depend upon it. The blessed apostles had never preached the Gospel, had they not been endued with power from above; but none of that power had they received, if the Holy Ghost in a miraculous manner had not descended: and the Holy Ghost had not come down, except our Saviour had ascended first. For he himself, when he was to depart from his disciples, grounded the necessity of his departure upon the certainty of this truth, saying, “If I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you: but if I depart, I will send him unto you.” (John xvi. 7.) Now if all the infallibility of those truths, which we as Christians believe, depend upon the certain information which the apostles had, and those apostles appear to be no way infallible till the cloven tongues had sat upon them, it was first absolutely necessary that the Holy Ghost should so descend. Again, being it was impossible that the Spirit of God in that manner should come down until the Son of God had ascended into heaven; being it was not fit that the second advocate should officiate on earth, till the first advocate had entered upon his office in heaven; therefore in respect of this great work the Son of God must necessarily ascend, and in reference to that necessity we may well be obliged to confess that ascension.

Upon these considerations we may easily conclude what every Christian is obliged to confess in those words of our Creed, he ascended into heaven; for thereby he is understood to express thus much: I am fully persuaded, that the only-begotten and eternal Son of God, after he rose from the dead, did with the same soul and body with which he rose, by a true and local translation convey himself from the earth on which he lived, through all the regions of the air, through all the celestial orbs, until he came unto the heaven of heavens, the most glorious presence of the majesty of God. And thus I believe in Jesus Christ, who ascended into heaven.
And sitteth on the right hand of God the Father Almighty.

The second part of the Article containeth two particulars; the session of the Son, and the description of the Father: the first sheweth, that Christ upon his ascension is set down at the right hand of God; the second assureth us that the God, at whose right hand Christ is set down, is the Father Almighty.

For the explication of Christ's session, three things will be necessary: First, To prove that the promised Messias was to sit at the right hand of God; Secondly, To shew that our Jesus, whom we believe to be the true Messias, is set down at the right hand of God; Thirdly, To find what is the importance of that phrase, and in what propriety of expression it belongs to Christ.

That the promised Messias was to sit at the right hand of God, was both pretypified and foretold. Joseph, who was betrayed and sold by his brethren, was an express type of Christ; and though in many things he represented the Messias, yet in none more than in this, that being taken out of the prison he was exalted to the supreme power of Egypt. For thus Pharaoh spake to Joseph, "Thou shalt be over my house, and according to thy word shall all my people be ruled: only in the throne will I be greater than thou." And Pharaoh took off the ring from his hand, and put it upon Joseph's hand, and arrayed him in vesture of fine linen, and put a gold chain about his neck: and he made him to ride in the second chariot which he had, and they cried before him, Bow the knee; and he made him ruler over all the land of Egypt." (Gen. xli. 40. 42, 43.) Thus Joseph had the execution of all the regal power committed unto him, all edicts and commands were given out by him, the managing of all affairs was through his hands, only the authority by which he moved remained in Pharaoh still. This was a clear representation of the Son of man, who, by sitting on the right hand of God, obtained power to rule and govern all things both in heaven and earth (especially as the ruler of his house, that is, the Church), with express command that all things both in heaven and earth, and under the earth, should bow down before him: but all this is in the name of the Father; to whom the throne is still reserved, in whom the original authority still remains. And thus the session of the Messias was pretypified.

The same was also expressly foretold, not only in the sense, but in the phrase. "The Lord said unto my Lord (saith the prophet David), Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool." (Psal. cx. 1.) The Jews have endeavoured to avoid this prophecy, but with no success: some make the person to whom God speaks to be
Ezechias, * some Abraham, † some Zorobabel, others David:‡ others the people of Israel:§ and because the prophecy cannot belong to him who made the Psalms, therefore they which attribute the prediction to Abraham, tell us the Psalms was penned by his steward Elijezer;|| they which expound it of David, say that one of his musicians was the author of it.

But first, it is most certain that David was the penman of this Psalm; the title speaks as much, which is, 'A Psalm of David:¶' from whence it followeth that the prediction did not belong to him, because it was spoken to his Lord. No: could it indeed belong to any of the rest, which the Jews imagine, because neither Abraham, nor Ezechias, nor Zorobabel,** could be the Lord of David, much less the people of Israel (to whom some of the Jews referred it), who were not the lords but the subjects of that David. Besides, he which is said to 'sit at the right hand of God,' is also said to be a 'priest for ever after the order of Melchisedech:' (Psal. cx. 4. Heb. v. 6.) but neither Abraham, nor Ezechias, nor any which the Jews have mentioned, was ever any priest of God.††


† So St. Chrysostom, speaking of the Jews: Tίμαι οὖν ἐκείνος τὴν ἡγεμόνα φασὶ τὸν Ὀσιόν τὸν ἐκ ἁγίων τοῖς ἀβασφητοῖς τῷ Ἀβασφή οἴτε τῷ τῷ Ἑρωδίδε, καὶ ἄλλα ἐπερωτήσεις. In Psal. cix. p. 520. So Caten. Graec.: ὄν ἐν τοῖς γαλακτοφηροῖς, καὶ τὸν Ἀβασφή ἠρμηνεύει λέγουσιν καθίσται ἐν ἕδει τοῦ Θεοῦ. And this exposition is now followed by Simon Jarchi and Lipmannas; Jarchi acknowledging it to be ancient, τρώγχετα "Τοίνυν τούτῳ οὐκ ἔχουσα ὁ χριστιανὸς ἡ μὴ αὐτὸς ἡ ἀναστροφὴ τῆς ἁγιασμοῦ τῆς σαλαρακότις μαθήματος τὸ τῆς ἡμῶν πάντως ἀναστροφή τῆς σαλαρακότις." Chrys. in Psal. cx. p. 320.

‡ This is the exposition of the later Rabbins, as of Aben Ezra and David Kimchi, who attribute the subject of the Psalm to David. And not only they, but the ancient Rabbins since our Saviour's time, as appeareth by those words of St. Chrysostom: Καὶ τα ἑπτάντα δι' ἀληθῶν, ὅτι εἰς τοῖς τῶν ἐρμιάδων ἐπικαθήσαται, ὡς περὶ τοῦ Δαβὶδ τῶν αὐτῶν ἐρυθρωτερ περιτίμαται. In Psal. cix. p. 189.

§ Αὐτὸν καὶ ἑτέρα τοῖς ἀρχιερεῖς τοῦτον καθίστασι, περὶ τοῦ λαῷ ἁγιασμοὺ τῶν ἁγιασμῶν. Ibid. et pauco post Ποῦ· οὗ τῷ Δα-
Again, our Saviour urged this Scripture against the Pharisees, "saying, What think ye of Christ? whose son is he? They say unto him, The son of David. He saith unto them, How then doth David in spirit call him Lord, saying, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand till I make thine enemies thy footstool? If David then call him Lord, how is he his son? and no man was able to answer him a word." (Matt xxii. 42—46.) From whence it is evident that the Jews of old, even the Pharisees, the most accurate and skilful amongst them, did interpret this Psalm of the Messias; for if they had conceived the prophecy belonged either to Abraham, or David, or any of the rest since mentioned by the Jews, they might very well, and questionless would have answered our Saviour, that this belonged not to the son of David. It was therefore the general opinion of the Church of the Jews before our Saviour, and of divers Rabbins since his death,* that this prediction did concern the kingdom of Christ. And thus the session of the Messias at the right hand of God was not only represented typically, but foretold prophetically: which is our first consideration.

Secondly, We affirm that our Jesus, whom we worship as the true Messias, according unto that particular prediction, when he ascended up on high, did sit down at the right hand of God. His ascension was the way to his session, and his session the end of his ascension; as the evangelist expresseth it, "He was received up into heaven, and sat on the right hand of God;" (Mark xvi. 19.) or as the apostle, God "raised Christ from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places." (Eph. i. 20.) There could be no such session without an ascension; and "David is not ascended into the heavens; but he saith himself, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, until I make thy foes thy footstool. Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly," (Acts ii. 34—36.) let all the blind and wilful Jews be convinced of this truth, that God hath not set at his own right hand, either Abraham or David, either Ezechias or Zorobabel, but "hath made that same Jesus whom they have crucified both Lord and Christ." (Acts ii. 36.)

This was an honour never given, never promised, to any man but the Messias: the glorious spirits stand about the throne of God, but never any of them sat down at the right hand of God. "For to which of his angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy

* As in the Midrash Tillim, Psal. xviii. 36. "אילוח" כ"א ל"ע מ"ש: מ"ש מ"ş
footstool?" (Heb. i. 13.) But Christ was so assured of this honour, that before the council of the chief priests and the elders of the people, when he foresaw his death contrived, and his cross prepared, even then he expressed the confidence of his expectation, saying, "Hereafter shall the Son of man sit on the right hand of the power of God." (Luke xxii. 69.) And thus our Jesus, whom we worship as the true and promised Messiah, "is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God." (I Pet. iii. 22.) Which was our second consideration.

Our next inquiry is, what may be the utmost importance of that phrase, and how it is applicable unto Christ. The phrase consists of two parts, and both to be taken metaphorically: First therefore, we must consider what is the right hand of God, in the language of the Scriptures; Secondly, what it is to sit down at that right hand. God being a spirit can have no material or corporeal parts; and consequently as he hath no body, so in a proper sense can have no hands at all;* but because God is pleased to descend to our capacity, and not only to speak by the mouths of men, but also after the manner of men, he expresseth that which is in him, by some analogy with that which belongs to us. The hands of man are those organical parts which are most active,† and executive of our power; by those the strength of our body is expressed, and most of our natural and artificial actions are performed by them. From whence the power of God, and the exertion and execution of that power, is signified by the hand of God. Moreover being, by a general custom of the world, the right hand is more used than the left, and by that general use acquireth a greater firmitude and strength, therefore the right hand of God signifieth the exceeding great and infinite power of God.

Again, because the most honourable place amongst men is the right hand, (as when Bathsheba went unto King Solomon, he "sat down on his throne, and caused a seat to be set for the king's mother, and she sat on his right hand," (1 Kings ii. 19.) therefore the right hand of God signifies the glorious majesty of God.

Thirdly, Because the gifts of men are given and received by the hands of men, and every perfect gift comes from the Father

* Credimus etiam quod sedet ad dexteram Dei Patris. Nec ideo tamen quasi humana forma circumscriptam esse Deum Patrem arbitrandum est, ut de illo cogitantium dextram aut sinistram latus animo occurrat. S. August. de Fide et Symb. c. 14.
† Succeedunt brachia et validi lacteriorem ton, validae ad operandum manus, et proceribus digitos habiles ad tenendum. Hinc aptior usus operandi, hinc scribendi elegantia, et ille calamus scribendorum velociter scribens, quo divinae vocis exprimuator oracula. Manus est quae cibum ori ministrat: manus est quae praecipis eis facit factis, quae concilia divinae gratiae sacrarum inferi arius, per quam offerimus et sumimus sacramenta celestia: manus est quae operatur pariter atque dispensat divina mysteria, cujus vocabulo non dignatus est se Dei Filium declarari, dicente David, Dextra Domini extat in me: manus est quae fectit omnia, sic dixit Deus omnipotens, Nonne manus mea fecit hae? S. Ambros. Hexaem. l. vi. c. 9.
of lights, therefore the right hand of God is the place of celestial happiness and perfect felicity; according to that of the Psalmist, "In thy presence is fulness of joy, at thy right hand pleasures for evermore." (Psal. xvi. 11.)

Now as to the first acception of the right hand of God, Christ is said to sit down at the right hand of the Father in regard of that absolute power and dominion, which he hath obtained in heaven; from whence it is expressly said, "Hereafter we shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power." (Matt. xxvi. 64. Mark xiv. 62. Luke xxii. 69.)

As to the second acception, Christ is said to sit on the right hand of God in regard of that honour, glory, and majesty, which he hath obtained there;* wherefore it is said, "When he had by himself purged our sins, he sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:" (Heb. i. 3.) and again, "We have an High-priest, who is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens." (Heb. viii. 1.)

In reference to the third acception, Christ is said to sit on the right hand of God, because now after the labours and sorrows of this world, after his stripes and buffetings, after a painful and shameful death, he resteth above in unspeakable joy and everlasting felicity.†

As for the other part of the phrase, that is, his session, we must not look upon it as determining any posture of his body in the heavens, correspondent to the inclination and curvation of our limbs: for we read in the Scriptures a more general term, which signifies only his being in heaven, without any expression of the particular manner of his presence. So St. Paul, "who is even at the right hand of God?" (Rom. viii. 34.) and St. Peter, "who is gone into heaven, and is at the right hand of God." (1 Pet. iii. 22.) Beside, we find him expressed in another position than that of session: for Stephen looking "steadfastly into heaven, saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing on the right hand of God;" and said, Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God." (Acts vii. 56.) He appeared standing unto Stephen, whom we express sitting in our CREED; but this is rather a

* "Secundum consuetudinem nostram illi consessus offeritur, qui aliquo opere perfecto honoris gratia promeretur ut sedeat. Ita ergo et homo Jesus Christus passione sua diabolum superans, resurrectione sua inferna reserans, tanquam perfecto opere ad caelos victor adventiens, audita Deo Patre, Sede ad dextram meam," Maxim. Taurin. Hom. 1. de Pentecost.

AND SITTETH ON THE RIGHT HAND.

difference of the occasion, or a diversity of position. He appeared standing to Stephen," as ready to assist him, as ready to plead for him, as ready to receive him; and he is often expressed sitting, not for any positional variation, but for the variety of his effect and operation.

This phrase then to sit, prescinding from the corporal posture of session, may signify no more than habitation, possession, permansion, and continuance; as the same word in the Hebrew and Greek languages often signifies.† And thus our Saviour is set down at the right hand of God in heaven; because he which dwelt with us before on earth, is now ascended up into heaven, and hath taken his mansion or habitation there; and

† ὥσπερ which properly signifies to sit, is familiarly used for permanit, and habitat; as Judges v. 17. "And the young man ransometh with a ransom LXX. "Αὐτὸς ἱκλάτει τὰ ἄδαθάντα παναγιώτητα, Asher continued on the sea-shore; Leviticus viii. 35. " καὶ Ἰσαάκ ἐν τῷ θαύματι τῆς προφήτου τῶν ἑτέρων Ἠλλάντου ἐπώνυμος οσίς ἡ ἡμερὴ, 
καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν θρόνον τῆς ἰδιαίτερας ἀνθρωποστάσεως ἦν, ὁ προφήτης, 
καὶ ὁ δεός οὐκ ἐποίησεν πάντας, ἐποίησεν τῷ σπουδαίῳ πανομοσχείῳ. Therefore shall ye abide at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, day and night, seven days. Upon which place St. Augustine: "Quid est, quod dicit Moyses ad Aaron et filios ejus, cum sanctificaret ad inuenendum sacerdotium, Ad ostium tabernaculi testimoniis sedebitis septem dies, die et nocte, ne morimini? Nam quidam nam credibile est, situ corporis uno loco sedere præceperos per dies septem die et nocte, unde se omnino non commoverent? Nec tamen hic tantam allegoricem aliquid significatam, quod non fieret, cogendi sumus accipere, sed potius agnoscerem locutionem Scripturam, ubi Sessionem pro habitazione et commoratione posuit. Non enim quia dictum est de Semei, quod sederet in Hierusalem annos tres, Ideo putandum est, per totum illud tempus in sella sedisse et non surrenisse. Hinc et sedes dicuntur, ubi babeat commorationem quorum sedes sunt; habitatio quippe hoc nomen accipit. "Quae, super Lev. 24. And this is as familiar with the Latins as the Hebrews. "Si venti essent, nos hic Coreyra non sedemur," Cæsar, Epist. ad Pam. I. xvi. ep. 7. "Id horreum fuit præsidium Pænis sedentius ad Trebiun." Lit. L xxi. c. 48.
so hath he seated himself, and dwelleth in the highest heavens.*

Again, the notion of sitting implieth rest, quietness, and indisturbance; according to that promise in the prophet, “They shall sit every man under his fig-tree, and none shall make them afraid.” (Mic. iv. 4.) So Christ is ascended into heaven, where, resting from all pains and sorrows, he is seated free from all disturbance and opposition; God having placed him at his right hand, until he hath made his enemies his footstool.

Thirdly, This sitting implieth yet more than quietness or continuance, even dominion,† sovereignty, and majesty; as when Solomon sat in the throne of his father, he reigned over Israel after the death of his father. And thus Christ “is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.” (Heb. xii. 2.) And St. Paul did well interpret those words of the prophet, “Sit thou on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool,” (Psal. cx. 1.) saying, “He must reign till he hath put all enemies under his feet.” (1 Cor. xv. 25.)

Fourthly, This sitting doth yet more properly and particularly imply the right of judicature, and so especially expresseth “a king, that sitteth in the throne of judgment;” (Prov. xx. 8.) as it is written, “In mercy shall the throne be established, and he shall sit upon it in truth, in the tabernacle of David, judging and seeking judgment, and hasting righteousness.” (Isa. xvi. 5.) And so Christ sitting at the right hand of God is manifested and declared to be the great judge of the quick and the dead.‡ Thus to sit doth not signify any peculiar inclination or election, any determinate location or position of the body, but to be in heaven with permanence of habituation, happiness of condition, regular and judiciary power; as in other authors such significations are usual.§

---


† † Ipsam verbum sedere regni significat potestatem.’ S. Hier. Com. ad Eph. i. 20. col. 355.


§ Most anciently sedere did signify no more than esse, to be in any place; as Servius noteth on that place of Virgil, *Aeneid.* ix. 3.

* * * * * * * * * * * * * * Luce tum forte parentis Pilamni Turnus sacratae valle sedehat. Sedehath, ut Asper dicit, erat. Quae claustra antiqua est, et de usu remota: and then he goes on to shew, that sedere is taken for that, which men were wont to do sitting: ‘Secundum Plautum autem sedere est consilium capere, qui inducit in Mostelaia servum dicentem, *Sine jutta aran sedeam et dabo mellora comilia.* Sed se-
AND SITTETH ON THE RIGHT HAND. 421

The importance of the language being thus far improved, at last we find the substance of the doctrine, which is, that sitting at the right hand of God was our Mediator’s solemn entry upon his regal office, as to the execution of that full dominion which was due unto him. For “worthy is the Lamb that was slain, to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.” (Rev. v. 12.) Wherefore Christ after his death and resurrection saith, “All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.” (Matt. xxviii. 18.) For because “he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross, therefore God hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name: that at the name of Jesus, every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth.” (Phil. ii. 8—10.) And this obedience and submission was and is due unto him, because God “raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places, far above all principalities and powers, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come, and hath put all things under his feet; and gave him to be the head over all things to the church.” (Eph. i. 20—22.)

There was an express promise made by God to David, “Thine house and thy kingdom shall be established for ever before thee, thy throne shall be established for ever.” (2 Sam. vii. 16.) This promise strictly and literally taken was but conditional; and the condition of the promise is elsewhere expressed, “Of the fruit of thy body will I set upon thy throne. If thy children will keep my covenant and my testimony that I shall teach them, thy children also shall sit upon thy throne evermore.” (Psal. cxxxii. 12.) Notwithstanding this promise, the kingdom of David was intercepted, nor was his family continued in the throne: part of the kingdom was first rent from his posterity, next the regality itself; and when it was restored, translated to another family: and yet we cannot say the promise was not made good, but only ceased in the obligation of a promise, because the condition was not performed. The posterity of David did not keep the covenant and testimony of their God, and therefore the throne of David was not by an uninterrupted linageal succession established to perpetuity.

But yet in a larger and better sense, after these intercisions, the throne of David was continued. When they had sinned, and lost their right unto the crown, the kingdom was to be

cundum Augures sedere est augurium cap- tare: Namque post designatas coeli par- tes a sedentibus captabantur auguria. Quod et supra ipse ostendit latenter, inducens Picum solum sedentem, ut, Nn. vii. 187 ——Parvaque sedebat
Succinctus trabea——
Quod est auguram, cum allos stantes in- ducterit. Ergo sedebat, aut erat, aut con- silia capiebat, aut augurabatur
given unto him who never sinned, and consequently could never lose it; and he being of the seed of David, in him the throne of David was without interception or succession continued. Of him did the angel Gabriel speak at his conception, "The Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David, and he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever, and of his kingdom there shall be no end." (Luke i. 32, 33.) Thus the throne of Christ is called the throne of David, because it was promised unto David, and because the kingdom of David was a type, resemblance, and representation of it; insomuch that Christ himself, in respect of this kingdom, is often called David, as particularly in that promise, "I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd. And I the Lord will be their God, and my servant David a prince among them." (Jer. xxx. 9. Ezek. xxxvii. 24, 25. Hos. iii. 5. Ezek. xxxiv. 23, 24.)

Now as David was not only first designed, but also anointed king over Israel, (1 Sam. xvi. 13.) and yet had no possession of the crown; seven years he continued anointed by Samuel, and had no share in the dominion; seven years after he continued anointed in Hebron only king over the tribe of Judah; (2 Sam. ii. 4.) at last he was received by all the tribes, and so obtained full and absolute regal power over all Israel, and seated himself in the royal city of Jerusalem. So Christ was born king of the Jews, and the conjunction of his human nature with his divine in the union of his person was a sufficient unction to his regal office, yet as the Son of man he exercised no such dominion, professing that his "kingdom was not of this world;" (John xviii. 36.) but after he rose from the dead, then, as it were in Hebron with his own tribe, he tells the apostles, "all power is given unto him;" (Matt. xxviii. 18.) and by virtue thereof, gives them injunctions; and at his ascension he enters into the Jerusalem above, and there sits down at the right hand of the throne of God, and so makes a solemn entry upon the full and entire dominion over all things; then could St. Peter say, "Let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ." (Acts ii. 36.)

The immediate effect of this regal power, the proper execution of this office, is the subduing of all his enemies; for he is "set down on the right hand of God, from henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool." (Heb. x. 12, 13.) This was the ancient custom of the oriental conquerors, to tread upon the necks of their subdued enemies; as when Joshua had the five kings as his prisoners, he "said unto the men of war which went with him, Come near, put your feet upon the necks of them." (Josh. x. 24.) Thus to signify the absolute and total conquest of Christ, and the dreadful majesty
of his throne, all his enemies are supposed to lie down before him, and he to set his feet upon them.

The enemies of Christ are of two kinds, either temporal or spiritual; the temporal enemies I call such as visibly and actually oppose him and his apostles, and all those which profess to believe in his name. Such especially and principally were the Jews, who rejected, persecuted, and crucified him; who, after his resurrection, scourged, stoned, and despicably used his disciples; who tried all ways and means imaginable to hinder the propagation, and dishonour the profession, of Christianity. A part of his regal office was to subdue these enemies, and he sat down on the right hand of God, that they might be made his footstool: which they suddenly were according to his prediction, "There be some standing here, which shall not taste of death, till they see the Son of man coming in his kingdom." (Matt. xvi. 28.) For within few years the temple, the city, and the whole polity of the Jews, were destroyed for ever in a revenging manner by the hands of the Romans, which they made use of to crucify the Lord of life. The Romans themselves were the next enemies, who first complied with the Jews in Christ's crucifixion, and after, in defence of their heathen deities, endeavoured the extirpation of Christianity by successive persecutions. These were next to be made the footstool of the King of kings; and so they were, when Rome the regnant city, the head of that vast empire, was taken and sacked; when the Christians were preserved, and the heathens perished; when the worship of all their idols ceased, and the whole Roman empire marched under the banner of Christianity. In the same manner all those persons and nations whatsoever, which openly oppose and persecute the name of Christ, are enemies unto this King, to be in due time subdued under him, and when he calleth, to be slain.

The spiritual enemies of this King are of another nature; such as by an invisible way made opposition to Christ's dominion, as sin, Satan, death. Every one of these hath a kingdom of his own, set up and opposed to the kingdom of Christ. The apostle hath taught us, that "sin hath reigned unto death;" (Rom. v. 12.) and hath commanded us not to "let it reign in our mortal bodies, that we should obey it in the lusts thereof;" (Rom. vi. 12.) There is therefore a dominion and kingdom of sin set up against the throne of the immaculate Lamb. Satan would have been like the Most High, and, being cast down from heaven, hath erected his throne below; he is "the prince of this world:" (John xii. 31.) "the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience, is the prince of the power of the air;" (Eph. ii. 2.) and thus "the rulers of the darkness of this world" (Eph. vi. 12.) oppose themselves to "the true light of the world." (John i. 9.) Death also hath its dominion, and, as the apostle speaks, "reigned from Adam to Moses; even by
one offence death reigned by one, (Rom. v. 14. 17.) and so set up a ruling and a regal power against the "Prince of life." (Acts iii. 15.)

For the destruction of these powers was Christ exalted to the right hand of God, and by his regal office doth he subdue and destroy them all. And yet this destruction is not so universal, but that sin, Satan, and death, shall still continue. It is true he shall "put down all rule, and authority, and power," (1 Cor. xv. 24.) but this amounts not so much to a total destruction, as to an absolute subjection: for as he is "able," so will he "subdue all things unto himself." (Phil. iii. 21.) The principal end of the regal office of the Mediator, is the effectual redemption and actual salvation of all those whom God hath given him; and whosoever or whatsoever opposeth the salvation of these, is by that opposition constituted and become an enemy of Christ. And because this enmity is grounded upon that opposition, therefore so far as any thing opposeth the salvation of the sons of God, so far it is an enemy, and no farther: and consequently Christ, by sitting at the right hand of God, hath obtained full and absolute power utterly to destroy those three spiritual enemies, so far as they make this opposition; and farther than they do oppose, they are not destroyed by him, but subdued to him: whatsoever hindereth and obstructeth the bringing of his own into his kingdom, for the demonstration of God's mercy, is abolished; but whatsoever may be yet subservient to the demonstration of his justice is continued.

Christ then as King destroyeth the power of sin in all those which belong unto his kingdom, annihilating the guilt thereof by the virtue of his death, destroying the dominion thereof by his actual grace, and taking away the spot thereof by grace habitual. But in the reprobate and damned souls, the spot of sin remaineth in its perfect dye, the dominion of sin continueth in its absolute power, the guilt of sin abideth in a perpetual obligation to eternal pains: but all this in subjection to his throne, the glory of which consisteth as well in punishing rebellion as rewarding loyalty.

Again, Christ sitting on the right hand of God, destroyeth all the strength of Satan and the powers of hell: by virtue of his death perpetually represented to his Father, "he destroyeth him that had the power of death, that is, the devil." (Heb. ii. 14.) But the actual destruction of these powers of darkness hath reference only to the elect of God. In them he preventeth "the wiles," those he taketh "out of the snare;" in them he destroyeth "the works," those he preserveth from "the condemnation of the devil." (Eph. vi. 11. 2 Tim. ii. 26. 1 John iii. 8. 1 Tim. iii. 6.) He freeth them here from the prevailing power of Satan by his grace; he freeth them hereafter from all possibility of any infernal opposition by his glory.
AND SITTETH ON THE RIGHT HAND. 425

But still the reprobate and damned souls are continued slaves unto the powers of hell; and he which sitteth upon the throne, delivereth them to the devil and his angels, to be tormented with and by them for ever: and this power of Satan still is left as subservient to the demonstration of the divine justice.

Thirdly, Christ sitting on the throne of God, at last destroyeth death itself: for “the last enemy which shall be destroyed, is death.” (1 Cor. xv. 26.) But this destruction reacheth no farther than removing of all power to hinder the bringing of all such persons as are redeemed actually by Christ into the full possession of his heavenly kingdom. “He will ransom them from the power of the grave, he will redeem them from death. O death, he will be thy plague; O grave, he will be thy destruction.” (Hos. xiii. 14.) The trump shall sound, the graves shall open, the dead shall live, the bodies shall be framed again out of the dust, and the souls which left them shall be reunited to them, and all the sons of men shall return to life, and death shall be “swallowed up in victory.” (1 Cor. xv. 54.) The sons of God shall then be made completely happy both in soul and body, never again to be separated, but to inherit eternal life. Thus he who sitteth at the right hand of God, “hath abolished death, and brought life and immortality to light,” (2 Tim. i. 10.) But to the reprobate and damned persons, death is not destroyed but improved. They rise again indeed to life, and so the first death is evacuated; but that life to which they rise is a second, and a far worse death. And thus Christ is set down at the right hand of God, that he might subdue all things to himself.

The regal power of Christ, as a branch of the mediatorship, is to continue, till all those enemies be subdued. “For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet.” (1 Cor. xv. 25.) “But now we see not yet all things put under him.” (Heb. ii. 8.) Therefore he must still continue there: and this necessity is grounded upon the promise of the Father, and the expectation of the Son. “Sit thou on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool,” (Psal. cx. 1.) saith the Father; upon which words we may ground as well the continuation as the session. Upon this promise of the Father, the Son “sat down at the right hand of God, from henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool.” (Heb. x. 12, 13.) Being then the promise of God cannot be evacuated, being the expectation of Christ cannot be frustrated; it followeth, that our Mediator shall exercise the regal power at the right hand of God, till all opposition shall be subdued.

When all the enemies of Christ shall be subdued, when all the chosen of God shall be actually brought into his kingdom, when those which refused him to rule over them, shall be slain, that is, when the whole office of the Mediator shall be completed and fulfilled, then every branch of the execution shall cease. As therefore there shall no longer continue any act of
the prophetical part to instruct us, nor any act of the priestly part to intercede for us, so there shall be no farther act of this regal power of the Mediator necessary to defend and preserve us. The beatific vision shall succeed our information and instruction, a present fruition will prevent oblation and intercession, and perfect security will need no actual defence and protection. As therefore the general notion of a Mediator ceaseth when all are made one, because "a Mediator is not a Mediator of one;" (Gal. iii. 20.) so every part or branch of that mediatorship, as such, must also cease, because that unity is in all parts complete. "Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father, when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power. For when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him, that hath put all things under him, that God may be all in all." (1 Cor. xv. 24. 28.)

Now though the mediatorship of Christ be then resigned, because the end thereof will then be performed; though the regal office as part of that mediatorship be also resigned with the whole; yet we must not think, that Christ shall cease to be a king, or lose any of the power and honour, which before he had. The dominion which he hath, was given him as a reward for what he suffered: and certainly the reward shall not cease, when the work is done. He hath promised to make us kings and priests, which honour we expect in heaven, believing we shall "reign with him" for ever, (2 Tim. ii. 12.) and therefore for ever must believe him King. "The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of the Lord, and of his Christ, and he shall reign for ever and ever;" (Rev. xi. 15.) not only to the modified eternity of his mediatorship, so long as there shall be need of regal power to subdue the enemies of God's elect; but also to the complete eternity of the duration of his humanity, which for the future is coeternal to his Divinity.

Lest we should imagine that Christ should ever cease to be King, or so interpret this Article, as if he were after the day of judgment to be removed from the right hand of God, the ancient fathers added those words to the Nicene Creed, whose kingdom shall have no end.† against the heresy which then arose, denying the eternity of the kingdom of Christ.

* Videamus an traditio regni defectio sit intelligenda regnandi; ut quod tradidit Filius Patri, tradendo non teneat.' S. Hilari. de Trin. l. xi. §. 29.
† οὐ τίς βασιλείας οὐκ ἐστιν τίλες. We find not these words in the Nicene Creed, as it was in itself before the additions at Constantinople. But not long after, St. Cyril expounds them in his Catechism, and Epiphanius in Ancorato, repeating two several Creeds, a shorter and a longer, §. 120 and 121. hath these words in both. After this, they were added expressly in the Constantinopolitan Creed. And the reason of their insertion, without question, was that which St. Cyril insinuated in his Explication, that is, the heresy which was then newly begun: Κἂν ποτὲ τοις ἀκοὕσας λέγοντος, οὕτως ἐκεῖ οἱ ἱερεῖς τοῦ βασιλείας, μείζων τινί αἰρεσιν, τοῦ δρακόντως ἱερα, ἀλλὰ κρατῆσαι προσφάτως πει ἑν τῷ γαβατίαν ἀναρέεσθαι ἐτῶν μελέτης λαῖραι, οὗ
The profession of faith in Christ, as sitting on the right hand of God, is necessary; First, to mind us of our duty, which must needs consist in subjection and obedience. The majesty of a king claimeth the loyalty of a subject; and if we acknowledge his authority, we must submit unto his power. Nor can there be a greater incitement to obedience, than the consideration of the nature of his government. Subject we must be, whether we will or no: but if willingly, then is our service perfect freedom; if unwillingly, then is our avereness everlasting misery. Enemies we all have been,* under his feet we shall be, either adopted or subdued. A double kingdom there is of Christ;* one of power, in which all are under him; another of propriety, in those which belong unto him: none of us can be

ατα τό τίλες των κύριων ο Χριστός ο Βασιλεὺς καί οι άνθρωποι άπειροι καί ευσέβειοι· οτί ο Άγιος Ιησούς Ευσίβιος καί Μαρκός ἦν ἐν πράσινων ὑπαίτεις τοι· ἀκούσας τοῦ Χριστοῦ καί του αὐτοῦ γεύσασθαι λόγου· οτι αυτὸς ἀπό τινα τοῦ Χριστοῦ αυτοῦ· 

* Inimus eras; eris sub peillius ejus aut adoptatus, aut victus." S. August. in Paul. cix. § 9.

† Βασιλείας τοῦ Θεοῦ δύο οίδαμεν ο γεροφίριον τοῦ Χριστοῦ καί τοῦ Θεοῦ, ἐν τούτῳ δειμωνία Βασιλείας μεν γὰρ ἐπιτάγαν τὸν Θεόν καί Ἑλλάνδας καί Ἰουδαίους καί ἄλλους καί τῶν ἀντιταγμάτων· κατὰ τὸν τινὰ τοῦ δειμωνία Λόγον· Βασιλείας ὅτι τοῦ πιστῶν καὶ ἀκότον καί ὑποταγμάτων κατὰ τὸν τοῦ εἰκοσίων. S. Chrysost. Hom. 39. in 1. ad Corinthus.
excepted from the first; and happy are we, if by our obedience we shew ourselves to have an interest in the second, for then that kingdom is not only Christ's but ours.

Secondly, It is necessary to believe in Christ sitting on the right hand of God, that we might be assured of an auspicious protection under his gracious dominion. For God by his exaltation hath given our Saviour "to be the head over all things to the church;" (Eph. i. 22.) and therefore from him we may expect direction and preservation. There can be no illegality, where Christ is the lawgiver; there can be no danger from hostility, where the Son of God is the defender. The very name of head hath the signification not only of dominion but of union;* and therefore while we look upon him at the right hand of God, we see ourselves in heaven. This is the special promise which he hath made us, since he sat down there; "To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame and am set down with my Father in his throne." (Rev. iii. 21.) How should we rejoice, yea rather how should we fear and tremble, at so great an honour!†

Thirdly, The belief of Christ's glorious session is most necessary in respect of the immediate consequence, which is his most gracious intercession. Our Saviour is ascended as the true Melchisedech, not only as the "king of Salem, the king of peace," but also as the "priest of the most high God." (Heb. vii. 1, 2.) and whereas "every priest," according to the Law of Moses, "stood daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which could never take away sins; this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins, for ever set down on the right hand of God." (Heb. x. 11, 12.) And now Christ being set down in that power and majesty, though the sacrifice be but once offered, yet the virtue of it is perpetually advanced by his session, which was founded on his passion: for he is "entered into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us." (Heb. ix. 24.) Thus, "If any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous." (1 John ii. 1.) And "he is able also to save them to the uttermost, that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them." (Heb. vii. 25.) What then remaineth to all true believers but that triumphant exclamation, of the apostle, "Who shall lay any thing to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifieth; who is he that con-

---

* This is the exclamation of St. Chrysostom upon those words of St. Paul: "Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord!" (Ps. xxi. 9.)

† Lit. "Εστι ο Σεινος του βασιλικον, ενως χε της τιμης τυμπεξοντο αντε και γενιος, εις ευθυλασθη, μαλλον ιμες φθονεται δυσοπεται. Ει γας μη γενεση ιν, τε τημπεξοντο τυμπεξοντο μιαν έναξις ευθυλασθη και καιςυ, τινα ειν θα ονθε γενεση; τωσ τηε αλασθη, τα νας ονθε, των τημποται εργος η καιφαλη ανα καιςυ, τωσ εν εις αποκρης γενεται ιδεμ, ιθιδαιν. Hom. 3. in Epist. ad Ephes.
OF GOD THE FATHER ALMIGHTY.

429 is as power iayrS; TravTouv ivipQvQua-av qui Tim.

It for he was which was accepted in his oblation, and therefore sat down on God’s right hand, to improve this acceptance continues his intercession; and having obtained all power by virtue of his humiliation, representeth them both in a most sweet communion; by an humble onomipotency, or omnipotent humility, appearing in the presence, and presenting his postulations at the throne of God.*

Having thus explicated the session of our Saviour, we are next to consider the description of him at whose right hand he’s set down; which seems to be delivered in the same terms with which the Creed did first begin, I believe in God the Father Almighty: and indeed, as to the expression of his essence, it is the same name of God; as to the setting forth his relation, it is the same name of Father: but as to the adjoining attribute, though it be the same word, it is not the same notion of Almighty. What therefore we have spoken of the nature of God, and the person of the Father, is not here to be repeated, but supposed; for Christ is set down at the right hand of that God and of that Father, which we understand when we say, I believe in God the Father. But because there is a difference in the language of the Greeks between the word which is rendered Almighty† in the first Article, and that which is so

* St. Augustin, discoursing upon that place of St. Paul, I Tim. ii. 1. “I exhort that first of all, supplications, prayers, and intercessions, be made for all men,” observeth what is the nature of intercession: “Pro interpellationibus autem quod nostri habeat, secundum codices credo vestros postulationes posuisti. Hac interrim duae, id est, quod alii postulationes, alii interpellationes interpretabi sunt, unum verbum transferre voluerunt, quod Graecus habet interpretis. Et profecto adverto: sed nosti alii esse interpellare, alii postulare. Non enim solemus dicere, postulant interpellaturi, sed interpellant postulaturi. Veruntamen ex vicinitate verbum usurpatum, cui propinquis ipsa imputarit intellectum, non est velut consenta notatione culpandum. Nam et de ipso Domino Jesu Christo dictum est, quod interpellat pro nobis. Nuncquid interpellat, et non etiam postulat? Imo vero qua postulat, pro eo positum est, interpellat. Evidenter quippe alibi de eo dicitur, St quis peccaverit, Adwentum habemus apud Putrem, Jesum Christum justum, ipsum est exoratio pro peccatis nostris. Quanquam fortasse codices apud vos etiam in eo loco de Domino Jesu Christo non habent interpellat pro nobis, sed postulat pro nobis. In Graeco enim, quo verbo lic posse sunt interpellationes, quas ipse posuisti postulationes, ipsum et illic ver-

† In the first Article it is Παντοκράτορ, in the sixth Παντοδύναμος. Page 60, 70. And this distinction is very material, and much observed by the Greeks: as Dionysius Areopagita (whosoever that is) in his book De Deo Nominibus, in the 8th chapter, explicates the θεομομένων, or παντοδύναμος, and in the 10th chapter παντοκράτες, as two distinct names with different notions of God. Of the Παντοκράτες, which we have already considered, he gives this account: “Tt μην γὰρ λέγεται, διά τὸ πάντα αὐτοί εἶναι παντοκρατορικὸν ἴδιον, εὑρίσκων καὶ ἑὑρίσκουσι τὰ ὅλα, καὶ ἐνδύσωσι καὶ ἐμπληρώσουσι καὶ εἰρηνεύσουσι, καὶ ἀφαίρεσθαι εἰ ἑαυτῷ τὰ ἁπατοῦσι, καὶ εἰ ἑαυτῷ τὰ ὅλα καθήκει εἰ ῶς παντοκρατορικὸς πράγματος, καὶ εἰ ἑαυτῷ τὰ πάντα καθήκει εἰ ποιεῖ πάντα παντοκρατορικῶς ἑπιτρέποντος, καὶ ἑὑρίσκων αὐτῶ, αὐτὰ, ὡς πάντα ἔχασαν παρατεθήκε, τὰ συντρίμμια πάντα κατὰ μίαν ἑὑρίσκοντο πάντα συνεχὴ ἀναφερόμενον, καὶ εἰ ἐνακολούθησι αὐτῶ δικαστικά ἑαυτῷ, ὡς ἐν παντελεήμονι ἱστίας κακομείῳ, παραπολείσθείς, c. x. § 1. But of the θεομομένων he gives another account, as we shall see hereafter.
rendered in the sixth, because that peculiarly signified authority of dominion, this more properly power in operation; therefore we have reserved this notion of omnipotency now to be explained.

In which, two things are observable; the propriety, and the universality; the propriety in the potency, the universality in the omnipotency; first, That he is a God of power; secondly, That he is a God of infinite power. The potency consisteth in a proper, innate, and natural force or activity, by which we are assured that God is able to act, work, and produce true and real effects, which do require a true and real power to their production: and in respect of this he is often described unto us under the notion of a mighty God. The omnipotency or infinity of this power consisteth in an ability to act, perform, and produce, whatsoever can be acted or produced, without any possibility of impediment or resistance: and in this respect he is represented to us as an Almighty God. And therefore such an omnipotency we ascribe unto him: which is sufficiently delivered in the Scriptures, first by the testimony of an angel, “for with God nothing shall be impossible;” (Luke i. 37.) secondly, by the testimony of Christ himself, who said, “With men it is impossible, but not with God; for with God all things are possible.” (Mark x. 27.) Now he to whom all things are possible and to whom nothing is impossible, is truly and properly omnipotent. Thus whatsoever doth not in itself imply a repugnancy of being or subsisting, hath in reference to the power of God a possibility of production; and whatsoever in respect of the power of God hath an impossibility of production, must involve in itself a repugnancy or contradiction.

This truth, though confessed by the heathens, hath yet been denied by some of them; but with poor and insufficient arguments* that we shall need no more than an explication of the doctrine to refute their objections.

First, then, we must say God is omnipotent, because all

* The arguments which the heathen used, are briefly touched by Plutarch, but were more largely delivered by Pliny. Author's notes on this page are not included in the natural text representation.
OF GOD THE FATHER ALMIGHTY.

power, whatsoever is in any creature, is derived from him; and well may he be termed Almighty, who is the fountain of all might. There is no activity in any agent, no influence of any cause, but what dependeth and proceedeth from the principal agent or the first of causes. There is nothing in the whole circumference of the Universe but hath some kind of activity, and consequently some power to act* (for nothing can be done without a power to do it): and as all their entities flow from the first of beings, so all their several and various powers flow from the first of powers: and as all their beings cannot be conceived to depend on any but an infinite essence, so all those powers cannot proceed from any but an infinite power.

Secondly, God may be called omnipotent, because there can be no resistance made to his power, no opposition to his will, no rescue from his hands.+ “The Lord of hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul it? his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?” (Isa. xiv. 27.) “He doth according to his will, in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What dost thou?” (Dan. iv. 35.) According to the degrees of power in the agent and the resistent, is an action performed or hindered: if there be more degrees of power in the resistent than in the agent, the action is prevented; if fewer, it may be retarded or debilitated, not wholly hindered or suppressed. But if there be no degree of power in the resistent in reference to the agent, then is the action totally vigorous; and if in all the powers, beside that of God, there be not the least degree of any resistance, we must acknowledge that power of his being above all opposition, to be infinite. As Jehosaphat said, “In thine hand, O God, is there not power and might, so that none is able to withstand thee?” (2 Chron. xx. 6.) From hence there is no difficulty with God to perform any thing: no greater endeavour or activity to produce the greatest than the least of creatures; but an equal facility in reference unto all things: which cannot be imagined but by an infinite excess of power, above and beyond all resistance.‡

Thirdly, God is yet more properly called omnipotent, be cause his own active power extendeth itself to all things;§ neither is there any thing imaginably possible, which he cannot do. Thus when God several ways had declared his power unto Job, “Job answered the Lord, and said, I know that thou

---


† Neque enim veraciter ob alioi vocatur omnipotens, nisi quis quicquid vult potest; nec voluntate cujuspiam creaturas voluntatis omnipotentis impeditur effectus. S. August. Euchir. ad Laur. c. 96.

‡ Nisi omnipotens esset, non una eademque facilitate summa atque imma fecisset. Fulgent. de Fide et Petroth. c. 3.

§ Quis est omnipotens nisi qui omnia potest? S. August. de Trin. 1. iv. c 20. § 27.
canst do every thing." (Job xli. 1, 2.) Now that must needs be infinite activity, which answereth to all kinds of possibility. Thus the power of God is infinite extensively, in respect of its object, which is all things; for whatsoever effects there be of his power yet still there can be more produced: intensively, in respect of the action, or perfection of the effect produced; for whatsoever addition of perfection is possible, is within the sphere of God's omnipotency. The object then of the power of God is whatsoever is simply and absolutely possible, whatsoever is in itself such as that it may be; and so possible every thing is, which doth not imply a contradiction. Again, whatsoever implieth a contradiction is impossible, and therefore is not within the object of the power of God, because impossibility is the contradiction of all power. For that is said to imply a contradiction, which if it were, it would necessarily follow, that the same thing would be and not be. But it is impossible for the same thing both to be and not to be, at the same time and in the same respect: and therefore whatsoever implieth a contradiction, is impossible. From whence it followeth, that it may be truly said, God cannot effect that which involveth a contradiction, but with no derogation from his power: and it may be as truly said, God can effect whatsoever involveth not a contradiction, which is the expression of an infinite power.

Now an action may imply a contradiction two ways, either in respect of the object, or in respect of the agent. In respect of the object it may imply a contradiction immediately or consequentially. That doth imply a contradiction immediately, which plainly and in terms doth signify a repugnancy, and so destroys itself, as for the same thing to be and not to be, to have been and not to have been. And therefore it must be acknowledged, that it is not in the power of God to make that not to have been, which hath already been:* but that is no derogation to God's power, because not within the object of any power. And he may certainly have all power, who hath not that which belongeth to no power. Again, that doth imply a contradiction consequentially, which in appearance seemeth not to be impossible, but by necessary consequence, if admitted, leadeth infallibly to a contradiction. As that one

* Tò γενός δέ εἰδιχταὶ μὴ γενότας εἶ ἀρά, ἀρά,  
Mēv γάρ αὐτῶν καὶ Θεὸς στήσαται, 
'Αγίαστα ποιεῖ ὑπ' αὐτῷ τετραγμᾶν.  
Aristot. Ethic. End. l. v. c. 2.  
Quisquis dicit, Si omnipotens est Deus,  
faciat ut quae facta sunt, facta non fuerint;  
non videt hoc se dicere. Si omnipotenses est,  
faciat ut ea quae vera sunt, eo ipso  
quae vera sunt falsa sint,' S. August. contra Faustum, l. xxvi. c. 5. It is granted therefore to be true, which Pliny objects, Nat. Hist. l. ii. c. 7. 'Deum non facere ut qui vivit non vivere, qui honores gessit non gesserit;' as this proves nothing against omnipotency, because it is no act of possibility. Had the act objected been feasible, and God had not the power to effect it, then had he wanted some power, and consequently had not been omnipotent. But being it is not want of power in the agent, but of possibility in the object, it proveth no deficiency in God.
body should be at the same time in two distinct places, speaks no repugnancy in terms; but yet by consequence it leads to that which is repugnant in itself; which is, that the same body is but one body, and not but one. Being then a covert and consequential contradiction is as much and as truly a contradiction as that which is open and immediate, it followeth that it is as impossible to be effected, and therefore comes not under the power of God.

That doth imply a contradiction in respect of the agent, which is repugnant to his essential perfection; for being every action floweth from the essence of the agent, whatsoever is totally repugnant to that essence, must involve a contradictory as to the agent. Thus we may say, God cannot sleep, God cannot want, God cannot die;* he cannot sleep, whose being is spiritual; he cannot want, whose nature is all-sufficient; he cannot die, who is essentially and necessarily existent. Nor can that be a diminution of his omnipotency, the contrary whereof would be a proof of his impotency, a demonstration of his infirmity. Thus it is “impossible for God to lie,”† (Heb. vi. 18.) to whom we say nothing is impossible; and, he cannot do all things, “cannot deny himself.”‡ (2 Tim.

* ‘Neque enim et vitam Dei et praescientiam Dei sub necessitate ponimus, si dicamus, Necesse est Deum semper vivere et cuncta praescire; sicut nec potestas ejus minuitur, cum dicitur mori fallique non posse. Sic enim hoc non potest, ut potius, si posset, minoris esset utique potestatis. Recte quippe omnipotens dicitur qui tamen mori et falli non potest. Dicitur enim Omnipotentis faciendo quod vult, non potiendo quod non vult: quod si ei accidet, nequaquam esset Omnipotens. Unde proptera quodam non potest, quia Omnipotens est.’ S. August. de Civ. Dei, l. v. c. 10. * Nam ego dico quanta non posset. Non potest mori, non potest peccare, non potest mentiri, non potest falli. Tan-ta non potest; quae si posset, non esset Omnipotens.’ Idem, de Tempore Serm. 119. al. 213. § 1.

† ‘Nunquidam mentitur Deus? Sed non mentitur; quia impossibile est mentiri Deum. Impossibile autem istud omnium infirmatis est? Non utique. Nam quomodo omnra potest, si aliquid efficere non potest? Quid ergo ei impossibile? Illud utique quod naturae ejus contrarium est, non quod virtuti arduum. Impossible, inquit, est ei mentiri, et impossibile istud non infirmatis est, sed virtutis et majestatis; quia veritas non recipit mendacium, nec Dei virtus levitatis erroneam.’ S. Ambros. Aug. i. 1. * Si volunt inventire quod Omnipotens non potest, habent prorsus; ego dicam, mentiri non potest. Credamus ergo quod potest, non creden-
1. 13.) Because a lie is repugnant to the perfection of veracity, which is essential unto God, as necessarily following from his infinite knowledge, and infinite sanctity. We who are ignorant may be deceived; we who are sinful may deceive: but it is repugnant to that nature to be deceived, which is no way subject unto ignorance; it is contradictory to that essence to deceive, which is no way capable of sin. For as it is a plain contradiction to know all things and to be ignorant of any thing; so is it to know all things and to be deceived: as it is an evident contradiction to be infinitely holy and to be sinful; so is it to be infinitely holy and deceive. But it is impossible for any one to lie, who can neither deceive nor be deceived. Therefore it is a manifest contradiction to say that God can lie, and consequently it is no derogation from his omnipotency, that he cannot. Whatevsoever then God cannot do, whatevsoever is impossible to him, doth not any way prove that he is not Almighty, but only shew that the rest of his attributes and perfections are as essential to him as his power; and as his power suffereth no resistance, so the rest of his perfections admit no repugnance. Well therefore may we conclude him absolutely omnipotent, who, by being able to effect all things consistent with his perfections, sheweth infinite ability: and by not being able to do any thing repugnant to the same perfections, demonstrateth himself subject to no infirmity or imbecility. And in this manner we maintain God's omnipotency, with the best and eldest, against the worst and latest, of the heathen authors.†

† Theodore having proved that there were many things, which fell not under the power of God, at last thus concludes: Πολλα των ευθαρσεως αδικαια ουτα το πατεξειων Θεος. 'Αλλα το των μια δυναμεις το των, απολυτου δυναμεως, ουκ αδυνατεις τελειωμον τη ζε δια συναφειας, αδυναμεις δυναις, ου δυναμεις, ου των αδικων ημων το ουκ επιτρεπει και αναλαλων. Dialog. iii. p. 123. And Origen cont. Cel. gives this for the Christian's general rule: Δειναι και ζημας παντα ος Θεος, ηπερ δυναμεως, του Θεου ειναι, και του σωφρου ειναι ουκ επιτρεπεται. 1. iii. § 70. And the words of Celsus, though ill intended, are yet very true: Αυτο τε γαρ (δ Θεος) έστιν ο χατας των δυνατων λογος, οδιν εν εν εις τε παρα λογον ειδε παρ' εαυτω ειραζεσαι. Apud Orig. l. v. § 14. And so Origen in his confessions: ἀλλα και καλ λαίας ενδεικνυε γνωστα το θεον εν ευρεται δειναι το θεον ειραζεσαι· ἐντεύξει. Ibid. § 24.

† It was the constant opinion of the most ancient heathens, as appeareth by Homer, who expresseth it plainly, Odyssey. k. 303.

Χαλεπου χιο τ' ορασχιν
Αλήφατος γε ὑπάτως, θει δι τι πάντα δύνανται:

And the same sense is attributed to Linus in a distich cited for his by Stobæus, tit. 110. 1.; but may rather be thought to have been made by some of the Pythagoreans. For this was the plain doctrine of Pythagoras, who taught his scholars to believe miracles, and to doubt of nothing said to be done by the gods, because all things were possible to them. Οδ γαρ εν εν των ελευθερων του θεου τι δι' αυτω ημων, ηπερ δυνατα των θεου χιανειν τι χαλαπται.
Thus God is omnipotent, and God only. For if the power of all things beside God be the power of God, as derived from him, and subordinate unto him, and his own power from whence that is derived can be subordinate to none, then none can be omnipotent but God.

Again, we say, that God the Father is Almighty; but then we cannot say, that the Father only is Almighty: for the reason why we say the Father is Almighty, is because he is God; and therefore we cannot say that he only is Almighty, because it is not true that he only is God.* Whosoever then is God, hath the same reason and foundation of omnipotency which the Father hath, and consequently it is to be acknowledged properly and truly omnipotent as the Father is. But we have already shewed that the Son of God is truly God; and shall hereafter shew that the Holy Ghost is also God, and that by the same nature, by which the Father is God. The Father therefore is Almighty, because the Son is Almighty, because the Son is God; and the Holy Ghost Almighty, because the Holy Ghost is God. The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are God, by the same Divinity: therefore, the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are omnipotent by the same omnipotency. The Father then is not called Almighty by way of exclusion, but is here mentioned with that attribute peculiarly, because the power of God answereth particularly to the right hand of God, as being the right hand of power;† The Father therefore is here described by the notion of Almighty, to shew, that Christ having ascended into heaven, and being set down at the right hand of God, is invested with a greater power than he exercised.

* Epicharmus a disciple of Pythagoras: "ADEDIET IOD D. AP. Grot. Excerpt. ex Trag. et Comed. Gr. p. 481. So Pater Omnipotens, and Jupiter Omnipotens, familiar in Virgil and the poets before and after him. These do far outweigh the authority in Plutarch, and that of Pliny, with the addition of Galen, who opposeth the opinion of the philosophers to that of Moses expressly, and to our Saviour obliquely: 'Ος γὰρ δὲ τὸ εὐαγγέλιον τιμῶντα γενεσίας μόνον τὸν αὐτοκόρος εἶλα γὰρ εὶ τὸν πεπεμψαν ἡθοσύνην ἀνθρώπων ποιείσαν, δυνατόν αὐτῷ. Which seems to be opposed to those words of our Saviour, "God is able to raise children unto Abraham out of these stones." Καὶ τὰτ' ἐστιν, καθ' ἡ τῆς Μακρίνου δίκης ὑπ' ἐμετέραξε καὶ Πάτανος καὶ ἡ τῶν ἀλλαχ παρ' Ἑλληνων ἡθικὰς μεταγενεσιασάται τῶν παρὰ φούτερος λόγως διδώτωσε. Τὸν μὲν γὰρ ἀρχιν, τὸ βουλήσαι τὸν θεὸν κοιναίς τῶν ἐκτοίς, οὐδὲν κεκαταμεν: πᾶντα γὰρ εἶναι τῷ θεῷ δυνατά νομίζει, καὶ εἰ τὸν τέρμαν ἐπι- τιν θεὸν ἐθεὶσαν ποιεῖν ἢκέρεις; οὐκ ἐστὶν μισσάκεισαν, διὰ ἐστι γὰρ τῶν λόγων ἐξαιτῶν φόβοι, καὶ τοῦτοι μὲν ἐκπεμῆς ἢκώς τὸ θεῖον, ἀλλ' ἐν τούς δυνάμες γενομένων τὸ ἔθες αὐτὸν πιστεύεται. De Um. Part. I. xi. c. 14.

† Nor is it unusual in other authors to make use of the word omnipotens, rather in relation to the present occasion, than in reference to the person who is said to be omnipotent; as is observed by Servius upon that verse of Virgil, Æneid. ix. 625.

* Jupiter omnipotens, audacibus annue cupidis. Hoc epithetum interdum ad gloriam numinis pontiur, interdum ad causam dissentit. Namque hoc loco dicendo omnipotens ostendit cum etiam his, qui per se minus valeant, præstare posse virtutem.
before; and that power which was then actually conferred upon him, acknowledgeth no bounds or limits; but "all power" in the ultimate extent of its infinity is "given unto him," (Matt. xxviii. 18.) who is set down on the right hand of him who is God the Father; and, being so, is therefore truly and properly Almighty.

It is necessary to profess belief in God Almighty; First, because the acknowledgment of his omnipotency beggetteth that fear and reverence, submission and obedience, which are due unto his infinite Majesty. Our God is a "great God, a mighty, and a terrible;" (Deut. x. 7.) therefore terrible because mighty. "I will forewarn you (saith our Saviour), whom ye shall fear: Fear him, which after he hath killed, hath power to cast into hell; I say unto you, fear him." (Luke xii. 5.)

Three times we are commanded to fear, and one only reason rendered, but sufficient for a thousand fears, the power of him, who is able eternally to punish us. God gave a general command to Abraham, and with it a powerful persuasion to obedience, when he said unto him, "I am the Almighty God; walk before me, and be thou perfect." (Gen. xvii. 1.) It was a rational advice which the apostle gives us, "Humble yourselves under the mighty hand of God, that he may exalt you in due time." (1 Pet. v. 6.) And it is a proper incentive to the observation of the Law of God, to consider that he is the "one lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy." (James iv. 12.)

Secondly, The belief of God's omnipotency is absolutely necessary, as the foundation of our faith. All the miracles, which have been seen, were therefore wrought, that we might believe; and never miracle had been seen, if God were not omnipotent. The objects of our faith are beyond all natural and finite power; and did they not require an infinite activity, an assent unto them would not deserve the name of faith. If God were not Almighty, we should believe nothing; but being he is so, why should we disbelieve any thing? * What can God propound unto us, which we cannot assent unto, if we can believe that he is omnipotent?

Thirdly, It is not only necessary in matters of bare faith, and notions of belief, but in respect of the active and operative reliance upon the promises of God. This was the particular confidence of Abraham the father of the faithful, "who staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief, but was

* This was the argument which the Pythagoreans used, who believed many miraculous actions, which others looked upon as fabulous; because they disbelieved nothing, which was referred to the Divine power; and the reason of that was, because they thought all things possible to God, as we shewed before. Τὰς τοιούτους δὲ (saith Lamblichus having related several strange actions, either fabulous or miraculous) τὰς ἐκκενείας μετὰ ἀπεισοδήμους, ὥς μὲν ἀπιστούσης ὡς ὥς τὰ δεύτερα ἀποκάθωσεν, ὧς ότις μὲν ἀπιστούσης ὧς τὰ ἐκκενείας. Lamb. de Vit. Pythag. c. 23.
strong in faith, giving glory to God, and being persuaded that what he had promised, he was able also to perform.” (Rom. iv. 20, 21.) The promises of God are therefore firm and sure, because he is both willing and able to perform them.* We doubt or distrust the promises of men, either because we may fear they intend not to do what they have promised, or cannot do what they intend: in the first, we may suspect them because they are subject to iniquity; in the second, because they are liable to infirmity. But being God is of infinite sanctity, he cannot intend by breaking his promises to deceive us: therefore if he be also of infinite power, he must be able to perform what he intended, and consequently we can have no reason to distrust his promises. From whence every good Christian may say with the apostle, “I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that, which I have committed unto him, against that day.” (2 Tim. i. 12.) I am assured that if I be a sheep, and hear my Saviour’s voice, the powers of darkness and the gates of hell can never prevail against me; for it was the voice of the Son of God, “My Father, which gave them me is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father’s hand.” (John x. 29.)

Lastly, The belief of God’s omnipotency is necessary to give life to our devotions. We ask those things from heaven which none but God can give, and many of them such, as if God himself were not Almighty, he could not effect. And therefore in that form of prayer, which Christ hath taught us, we conclude all our petitions unto the Father with that acknowledgment, “For thine is the kingdom, the power, and the glory.” (Matt. vi. 13.) Nor can there be a greater encouragement in the midst of all our temptations, than that we are invited to call upon him in the day of trouble, “who is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us.” (Eph. iii. 20.)

After this explication of our Saviour’s session, we may conclude what every Christian ought, and may be supposed, to intend, when he maketh profession to believe, that Christ is set on the right hand of God the Father Almighty. For thereby he is conceived to declare thus much: I assent unto this as a most infallible and necessary truth, that Jesus Christ, ascending into the highest heavens, after all the troubles and sufferings endured here for our redemption, did rest in everlasting happiness; he which upon earth had not a place to lay his head, did take up a perpetual habitation there, and sit down upon the throne of God, as a Judge, and as a King, according to his office of Mediator, unto the end of the world; according to that which he merited by his mediatorship, to all eternity: which hand of God the Father Almighty signifieth an omnipotent

* * Nulla est in promissis Dei falsitas, quia nulla est in faciendis difficultas aut impossibilitas.’ Fulgent. ad Monim. l. i. c. 12
power, able to do all things without any limitation, so that involve not a contradiction, either in themselves or in relation to his perfections. And thus I believe in Jesus Christ, who sitteth at the right hand of God the Father Almighty.

ARTICLE VII.

From thence he shall come to judge the quick and the dead.*

This Article containeth in it four particular considerations and no more; First, That Christ, who is gone from us, shall come again. Secondly, That the place from whence he shall then come, is the highest heaven, to which he first ascended, for from thence he shall come. Thirdly, That the end for which he shall come, and the action which he shall perform when he cometh, is to judge; for from thence he shall come to judge. Fourthly, That the object of that action, or the persons whom he shall judge, are all men, whether dead before, or then alive; for from thence he shall come to judge the quick and the dead.

For the illustration of the first particular, two things will be necessary, and no more; first, To shew that the promised Messias was to come again, after he once was come: secondly, To declare how our Jesus (whom we have already proved once to have come as the true Messias) did promise and assure us of a second coming.

That the Messias was to come again, was not only certainly, but copiously foretold: the Scriptures did often assure us of a second advent. As often as we read of his griefs and humility, so often we are admonished of his coming to suffer; as often as we hear of his power and glory, so often we are as assured of his coming to judge. We must not fancy with the Jews, a double Messias, one the son of Joseph, the other of David; one of the tribe of Ephraim, the other of Judah: but we must take that for a certain truth, which they have made an occasion of their error; that the Messias is twice to come, once in all humility, to suffer and die, as they conceived of their son of Joseph; and again in glory, to govern and judge, as they expect the son of David. Particularly, “Enoch the

* Or from whence; the Latins sometimes inde, sometimes unde. And the Greek is έξω, unde, both in the ancient MS. in Sir Robert Cotton's library, and in the Creed of Marcellus. But επικεκλημαι, in the latter MS. in Bene't College Library. Others neither εξω, nor επικεκλημαι, but παλαι, as Justin Martyr: Εν ου επικεκλημαι Χριστός Τῆς οδοῦ σταυρώσεως καὶ ἀναστάσεως εἰς τοὺς εὐφανεῖς, καὶ πάλιν παραγενασίμαινον κρινόντι πάντων ἀνθρώπων μεταξύ αὐτοῦ Αδάμ. Dial. cum Tryphone, p. 342. Others without inde or unde, only venturus, as the Nicene Creed, Sacrat. 1. i. 8. ἱεράμουν κρίνων, others πάλιν ἱεράμων, Constantin. Symb. Concil. Gen. t. 1. p. 331. or ἱεράμων πάλιν, and Fortunatus, leaving out inde venturus, hath only judicaturus non et mortuos.
seventh from Adam prophesied of this advent, saying, Behold the Lord cometh with ten thousand of his angels.” (Jude, ver. 14.) And more particularly Daniel saw the representation of his judiciary power and glory; “I saw in the night visions, and behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him before him. And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.” (Dan. vii. 13, 14.) This Son of man the Jews themselves confess to be the promised Messias,* and they take the words to signify his coming, and so far give testimony to the truth; but then they evacuate the prediction by a false interpretation, saying, that if the Jews went on in their sins, then the Messias should come in humility, according to the description in Zachary, “lowly and riding upon an ass;” (Zech. ix. 9.)† but if they pleased God, then he should come in glory, according to the description in the prophet Daniel, “with the clouds of heaven:” whereas these two descriptions are two several predictions, and therefore must be both fulfilled. From whence it followeth, that, being Christ is already come, “lowly and sitting upon an ass,” therefore he shall come gloriously “with the clouds of heaven.” For if both those descriptions cannot belong to one and the same advent, as the Jews acknowledge, and both of them must be true, because equally prophetic; then must there be a double advent of the same Messias, and so his second coming was foretold.

That our Jesus, whom we have already proved to have come

* R. Saadia Gaon ad locum. In Beraishith Rabbah, speaking of the genealogy concluding (1 Chron. iii. 24.) with Anani, the youngest of the seven sons of Elenai, the author asks this question, and answers it thus: "Who is this Anani? and why is he not written in the Talmud?" * This is the Messias, as it is written, Dan. vii. 13. I saw in the night visions, and behold one like the Son of man came with Anani, that is, the clouds of heaven; Solomon Jarchi ad locum, as also Aben Ezra, ibidem, & Maimonides, and Aben Ezra, ibidem, & Maimonides, & Aben Ezra, ibidem, & Maimonides, & Aben Ezra, ibidem, & Maimonides. The author of Tavor Hamnor; Aben Ezra, & Maimonides, & Aben Ezra, & Maimonides. The mystery of man is the mystery of the Messias, according to that of Daniel, he came as the Son of man. This place is mentioned for one of the descriptions which speak of the Messias, in the Midrash Tillim, Psal. ii. And the Midrash upon the 21st Psal. ver. 7. In libro Sanhedrin.
once into the world as the true Messias, shall come the second time, we are most assured. We have the testimony of the angels, "This same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner, as ye have seen him go into heaven." (Acts i. 11.) We have the promise of Christ himself to his apostles: "If I go to prepare a place for you, I will come again and receive you unto myself: ye have heard how I said unto you, I go away and come again unto you." (John xiv. 3. 28.) He it is which from the beginning was to come; that express prophecy so represented him, "The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, until Shiloh come:" (Gen. xlix. 10.) the name of Shiloh was obscure; but the notion of the comer, added to it, was most vulgar. According to this notion, once Christ came; and being gone, he keeps that notion still; he is to come again: "For a little while, and he that shall come, will come." (Heb. x. 37.)* Our Jesus then shall come; and not only so, but shall so come, as the Messias was foretold, after the same manner, in the same glory of the Father, as the "Son of man coming in his kingdom." (Matt. xvi. 28.) This was expressed in the prophetical vision by coming with clouds; and in the same manner shall our Jesus come: "Behold, he cometh with clouds, and every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him." (Rev. i. 7.) Those clouds were anciently expounded by the Jews of the glorious attendance of the angels, waiting upon the Son of man:† and in the same manner, with the same attendance, do we expect the coming of our Jesus, even as he himself hath taught us to expect him, saying, "For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels." (Matt. xvi. 27.) And thus our Jesus as the true Messias shall come again; which was our first consideration.

The place from whence he shall come, is next to be considered, and is sufficiently expressed in the Creed by reflection upon the place whither he went, when he departed from us; for he ascended into heaven, and sitteth on the right hand of God, and from thence he shall come; that is, from and out of the highest

* O ἵκημεν ἔχεις, that is, he who is known by that vulgar appellation ἵκημεν, which did once come into the world to make that notion good, is still to be known by the same appellation, and therefore will come again. This was it which made the apostles ask that question, Matt. xxiv. 3. "When shall these things be, and what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world?"  
† As R. Saadias Gaon upon that place of Dan. vii. 13. "The clouds of heaven are the angels of the host of heaven; this is the great magnificence and power which God shall give unto the Messias. From hence is that exposition in Midrash Tilim, Psalm xvi. 7. And the angel which cometh from heaven was an angel of the clouds, and brought light and heat upon the earth, and led up his people out of the highest place of the earth. Rabbi Bartenau saith in the name of Rabbi Samuel, one scripture saith, (Dan. vii. 13.) "And behold one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him." And another scripture saith, (Jer. xxx. 21.) "And I will cause him to draw near, and he shall approach unto me." Behold in what manner! The angels shall bring him into the midst of them."
HE SHALL COME TO JUDGE.

441

heaven (where he now sitteth at the right hand of God) shall Christ hereafter come to judge both the quick and the dead. For him "must the heavens receive, till the time of the restitution of all things;" (Acts iii. 21.) and when the time is fulfilled, from that heaven shall he come. "For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God." (1 Thess. iv. 16.) "Our conversation ought to be in heaven, because from thence we look for our Saviour the Lord Jesus." (Phil. iii. 20.) Our High-priest is gone up into the Holy of Holies not made with hands, there to make an atonement for us; therefore as the people of Israel stood without the tabernacle, expecting the return of Aaron, so must we look unto the heavens, and expect Christ from thence, "when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels." (2 Thess. i. 7.) We do believe that Christ is set down on the right hand of God; but we must also look upon him, as coming from thence, as well as sitting there; and to that purpose Christ himself hath joined them together, saying, "Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven." (Matt. xxvi. 64) Thus shall the Saviour of the world come from the right hand of power, in fulness of majesty, from the highest heavens, as a demonstration of his sanctity, that by an undoubted authority, and unquestionable integrity, he might appear most fit to judge both the quick and the dead; which is the end of his second coming, and leads me to the third consideration, the act of his judging: From whence he shall come to judge.

For the explication of this action, as it stands in this Article, three considerations will be necessary. First, How we may be assured, that there is a judgment to come, that any one shall come to judge. Secondly, In case we be assured that there shall be a judgment, how it appeareth that he which is ascended into heaven, that is, that Christ shall be the judge. Thirdly, In case we can be assured that we shall be judged, and that Christ shall judge us, it will be worthy our inquiry, in what this judgment shall consist, how this action shall be performed; and more than this cannot be necessary to make us understand, that he shall come to judge.

That there is a judgment to come after this life, will appear demonstrable, whether we consider ourselves who are to undergo it, or God who is to execute it. If we do but reflect upon the frame and temper of our own spirits, we cannot but collect and conclude from thence, that we are to give an account of our actions, and that a judgment hereafter is to pass upon us. There is in the soul of every man a conscience; and whosoever it is, it giveth testimony to this truth. The antecedent or directive conscience tells us what we are to do, and the subsequent or reflexive conscience warns us what we are to receive. Looking back upon the actions we have done, it either
ARTICLE VII

approves or condemns them; and if it did no more, it would only prove that there is a judgment in this life, and every man his own judge. But being it doth not only allow and approve our good actions, but also doth create a complacency, apology, and confidence, in us; being it doth not only disprove and condemn our evil actions, but doth also constantly accuse us, and breed a fearful expectation and terror in us; and all this prescinding from all relation to any thing either to be enjoyed or suffered in this life: it followeth that this conscience is not so much a judge as a witness, bound over to give testimony for or against us, at some judgment after this life to pass upon us. For all men are “a law unto themselves, and have the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or excusing one another, in the day when God shall judge the secrets of men.” (Rom. ii. 14—16.)

Again, if we consider the God who made us, and hath full dominion over us, whether we look upon him in himself, or in his Word, we cannot but expect a judgment from him. First, if we contemplate God in himself, we must acknowledge him to be the judge of all mankind; “so that a man shall say, Verily he is a God that judgeth in the earth.” (Psalm. lvi. 11.) Now the same God who is our judge, is, by an attribute necessary and inseparable, just; and this justice is so essential to his Godhead, that we may as well deny him to be a God, as to be just. It was a rational expostulation which Abraham made, “Shall not the Judge of all the earth do right?” (Genesis xviii. 25.) We may therefore infallibly conclude that God is a most just judge; and if he be so, we may as infallibly conclude, that after this life he will judge the world in righteousness. For as the affairs of this present world are ordered, though they lie under the disposition of Providence, they shew no sign of a universal justice. The wicked and disobedient persons are often so happy, as if they were rewarded for their impieties; the innocent and religious often so miserable, as if they were punished for their innocency. Nothing more certain, than that in this life rewards are not correspondent to the virtues, punishments not proportionable to the sins, of men. Which consideration will enforce one of these conclusions; either that there is no judge of the actions of mankind; or if there be a judge, he is not just, he renders no proportionate rewards or punishments; or lastly, if there be a judge, and that judge be just, then there is a judgment in another world, and the effects thereof concern another life. Being then we must acknowledge that there is a judge, which judgeth the earth; being we cannot deny but God is that judge, and all must confess that God is most just; being the rewards and punishments of this life are no way answerable to so exact a justice as that which is divine must be: it followeth that there is a judgment yet to come, in
HE SHALL COME TO JUDGE.

443

which God will shew a perfect demonstration of his justice, and to which every man shall, in his own bosom, carry an undeniable witness of all his actions.

From hence the heathen, having always had a serious apprehension both of the power of the conscience of man, and of the exactness of the justice of God, have from thence concluded, that there is a judgment to come. Insomuch that when St. Paul "reasoned of righteousness and temperance and judgment to come, Felix trembled." (Acts xxiv. 25.) The discourse of righteousness and temperance touched him, who was so highly and notoriously guilty of the breach of both; and a preconception which he had of judgment after death, now heightened by the apostle's particular description, created a horror in his soul and trembling in his limbs. The same apostle discourseing to the Athenians, the great lights of the Gentile world, and teaching them this Article of our CREED, that "God hath appointed a day, in which he will judge the world in righteousness, by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead; found some which mocked, when they heard of the resurrection of the dead;" (Acts xviii. 31.) but against the day of judgment none replied. That was a principle of their own, that was confessed by all who either believed themselves, or a God; a conscience, or a Deity.*

But yet, beside the consideration of the internal power of conscience in ourselves, besides the intuition of that essential attribute, the justice of God (which are sufficient arguments to move all men), we have yet a more near and enforcing per-

* This principle of a judgment to come, Justin Martyr propounds to the Gentiles, as generally acknowledged by all their writers, and as the great encouragement of his apoloagy for the Christian religion: 'Επει τώνοις ἡμᾶς δὲ περὶ τῆς Ἁληθοῦς Θεοτοκίας πρέπειται λόγος, ὡς ἀδηλ. ομιλεῖ, συροτιμεῖτον τῶν ἀκαίρων: διὸν προφητεύομαι εἰς νεώτερα, διὰ τὴν μείλουσαν μετὰ τὸν τετυπον τόλμη τοῦ θεοῦ ἀνθρώπων ὡς συν. ἐν τούτοις κατὰ Εὐαίρετους σφάγας, σφαγεῖται τε καὶ ἵππα δίκαιοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ παρ᾽ ἤμας νομισμένοι; εἰ δεῖ στοι, ὡς ποιναὶ μένοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ φιλόστοροι πρὸ τῶν ἀδήλης καὶ οὐδαὶ ἑπαγγελ- λόμενοι παρ᾽ ἦμας εἴθεις γινεῖν. ad Graecos Cohort. p. 1. Tertullian shews the same not only from the writings but the constant conversation and language even of the Gentiles: 'Anima, licet corporis car- cere pressa, licet institutionum pravis circumscripta, licet locubulum et concupiscientias evigorata, licet falsa Deus ex- plicat, cum tanem resecat, ut ex cra- pula, ut ex somnio, ut ex aliqua valetu- dine, et sanitatem suam patimur. Deum nominat, loco solo quia proprius verus hic unus Deus, bonus et magus. Et quod Deus dederit, omnium vox est. Judicem quoque contestatur illum, Deus videt, et Deus commendo, et Deus nihil reddet. O testimonium animae naturaleri Christiani- anus! ' Apol. adv. Gentes, c. 17. Indeed the ancient Gentiles have expressed the judgment to come very exactly: as Plie- lemon cited by Justin Martyr de Monarch. Dei, p. 106.

†Εστὶν δικαιος εἰπαλληλος, το τὰ παθη'' εις. Ει τοιούτους καὶ ἀδικητίς, Εις τον τοιούτους αιτε- ται, τοιούτως καταλήγει, κατατρεις, κατατρεις. Μετα πλανους: Εις τοιούτους θυσιν. Επει παρετελεηθης το πλην τον θεοτυ- ντος. Ου τοιούτος φαβερος, ου δικαιολογεί 'εγώ.

And Plato especially hath delivered it according to their notion most particularly, whose places to that purpose are chiefly collected by Eusebius and Theodorut, and may be read in them; Euse- bius de Preparat. Long. I. xi. c. 38, and I. xii. c. 6. Theodoret Serm. 1. 14 de Fine et Judicio. Where after the citation of several places he concludes: Οὕτως δικαίως; ἐπίστευτος εἰς πλὴν οὐκ ἔσται τά ἐξ ἀκούμενων κρι- τηρια. p. 649.
ARTICLE VII.

suasion, grounded upon the express determination of the will of God. "For the determinate counsel of the Almighty actually to judge the world in righteousness, is clearly revealed in his word: "it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment." (Heb ix. 27.) There is a death appointed to follow this life, and a judgment to follow that death; the one as certain as the other. For in all ages God hath revealed his resolution to judge the world.

Upon the first remarkable action after the fall, there is a sufficient intimation given to angry Cain: "If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted? and if thou doest not well, sin lieth at the door;" (Gen. iv. 7.) which by the most ancient interpretation signifieth a reservation of his sin unto the judgment of the world to come.* Before the flood, Enoch prophesied of a judgment to come, "saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousand of his saints, to execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds, which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches, which ungodly sinners have spoken against him." (Jude, ver. 14, 15.) His words might have an aim at the waters, which were to overflow the world; but the ultimate intention looked through that fire, which shall consume the world preserved from water.

The testimonies which follow in the Law and the Prophets, the predictions of Christ and the apostles, are so many and so known, that both the number and the plainness will excuse the prosecution. The throne hath been already seen, the Judge hath appeared sitting on it, the books have been already opened, the dead small and great have been seen standing before him: there is nothing more certain in the word of God, no doctrine more clear and fundamental, than that of "eternal judgment." (Heb. vi. 2.) I shall therefore briefly conclude the first consideration from the internal testimony of the conscience of man, from the essential attribute the justice of God, from the clear and full revelation of the will and determination of God, that after death, with a reflection on this, and in relation to another life, there is a judgment to come, there shall some person come to judge.

Our second consideration followeth (seeing we are so well assured that there shall be a judgment); who that person is which shall come to judge, who shall sit upon that throne, be-

* So the Targum of Jonathan renders it. If thou makest thy works good, shalt not thy sin be forgiven thee? And if thou makest not thy works good in this world, thy sin is kept unto the day of the great judgment. And the Jerusalem Targum yet more expressly, אתא אא תרשיב שברד מיקלמאית אל ולא תרשיב שברד נמכי. If thou makest thy works good, shalt not thy sin be forgiven thee? And if thou makest not thy works good in this world, thy sin shall be reserved unto the day of the great judgment. In the same manner the Chaldee paraphrase of Oakelos, דידייןיא רשה אל הקדש.
HE SHALL COME TO JUDGE.

And if he of which the tribunal we shall all appear, from whose mouth we may expect our sentence. Now the judiciary power is the power of God, and none hath any right to judge the subjects and servants of God, but that God whose servants they are. The Law by which we are to be judged was given by him; the actions which are to be discussed were due to him; the persons which are to be tried are subject to his dominion: God therefore is the "judge of all." (Heb. xii. 23.) He "shall bring every work into judgment with every secret thing, whether it be good or whether it be evil;" (Eccles. xii. 14.) and so the last day, that "day of wrath, is the revelation of the righteous judgment of God." (Rom. ii 5.) Now if God, as God, be the judge of all, then whosoever is God is judge of all men;* and therefore being we have proved the Father and the Son, and shall hereafter also prove the Holy Ghost, to be God, it followeth that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost, shall judge the world; because the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, in respect of the same Divinity, have the same autocratical power, dominion, and authority.

But notwithstanding that particular day of the general judgment to come, the execution of this judiciary power shall be particularly committed to the Son, and so the Father and the Holy Ghost shall actually judge the world no otherwise but by him. For "God hath appointed a day in which he will judge the world in righteousness, by that man whom he hath ordained." (Acts xvii. 31.) It is God who judgeth; it is Christ by whom he judgeth. "For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment to the Son." (John v. 22.) There is therefore an original, supreme, autocratical, judiciary power: there is a judiciary power delegated, derived, given by commission. Christ as God hath the first together with the Father and the Holy Ghost: Christ as man hath the second from the Father expressly, from the Holy Ghost concomitantly. For "the Father hath given him authority to execute judgment, because he is the Son of man;" (John v. 27.) not simply because he is a man, therefore he shall be Judge (for then by the same reason every man should judge, and consequently none, because no man could be judged if every man should only judge), but because of the three persons which are God, he only is also the Son of man; † and therefore for his affinity


† This explication I thought necessary to insert, because it seems to me the only way to end that controversy, which is raised upon the interpretation of those words of St. John, which we ordinarily read thus, v. 27. Kai ἠκούσαν Ἰησοῦν ἀπό τοῦ κρίνει πάντα, ἓτε ὑπὸ τῆς ἀκύρωτος ἑστιν.

28. Μὴ δαμαζέτε τοῦτο. By which distinction, those words, because he is the Son of man, have reference to the precedent sentence. But anciently they have been otherwise distinguished: Kai ἠκούσαν ἁπάντα καὶ κρίνει πάντα, ὡς ὑπὸ τῆς ἀκύρωτος ἑστιν. Μὴ δαμαζέτε τοῦτο. So the old Syriac translation, ver. 27. Τὰ δὲ οὓς ἑδραίων ἄνθρωπον τοῦτο ἱστορεῖν ὑπὸ τῆς ἀκύρωτος ἑστιν: οὕτως ἐν τούτῳ ἀριθμῷ. And St. Chrysostom is so earnest for this reading, that he charg-
with their nature, for his sense of their infirmities, for his appearance to their eyes, most fit to represent the greatest mildness and sweetness of equity, in the severity of that just and irresepective judgment.

Nor was this a reason only in respect of us who are to be judged, but in regard of him also who is to judge; for we must not look only upon his being the Son of man, but also upon what he did and suffered as the Son of man. He humbled himself so far as to take upon him our nature: in that nature so taken, he humbled himself to all the infirmities which that was capable of, to all the miseries which this life could bring, to all the pains and sorrows which the sins of all the world could cause: and therefore in regard of his humiliation did God exalt him, and part of the exaltation due unto him was this power of judging. "The Father" therefore, who is only God, and never took upon him either the nature of men or angels, "judgeth no man (and the same reason reacheth also to the Holy Ghost); but hath committed all judgment to the Son," and the reason why he hath committed it to him, is, "because he is," not only "the Son of God," and so truly God; but also "the Son of man," and so truly man; "because he is that Son of man," who suffered so much for the sons of men. (John v. 22. 25. 27.)

From whence at last it clearly appeareth, not only that it is a certain truth that Christ shall judge the world, but also the reasons are declared and manifested unto us why he hath that power committed unto him, why he shall come to judge the quick and the dead. For certainly it is a great demonstration of the justice of God, so highly to reward that Son of man, as to make him Judge of all the world, who came into the world and was judged here; to give him absolute power of absolution and con-
demnation, who was by us condemned to die, and died that he
might absolve us; to cause all the sons of men to bow before
his throne, who did not disdain for their sakes to stand before
the tribunal, and receive that sentence, "Let him be crucified,"
(Matt. xxvii. 23.)* which event as infallible, and reason as ir-
refragable, Christ himself did shew at the same time when he
stood before the judgment-seat, saying, "Nevertheless I say
unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the
right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven."
(Matt. xxvi. 64.)

Again, if we look upon ourselves which are to be judged,
whom can we desire to appear before, rather than him who is
of the same nature with us? If the children of Israel could
not bear the presence of God as a Lawgiver, but desired to re-
ceive the Law by the hand of Moses; how should we appear
before the presence of that God judging us for the breach of
that Law, were it not for a better Mediator, of the same nature
that Moses was and we are, who is our Judge? In this ap-
peareth the wisdom and goodness of God, that making a gen-
eral judgment, he will make a visible Judge, which all may see
who shall be judged. "Without holiness no man shall ever
see God;" (Heb. xii. 14.) and therefore if God, as only God,
should pronounce sentence upon all men, the ungodly should
never see their Judge.† But that both the righteous and un-
righteous might see and know who it is that judgeth them,
Christ, who is both God and man, is appointed Judge; so as
he is man, all shall see him, and as he is God, they only shall
see him who by that vision shall enjoy him.

* ‘Veniet Christus ut judicet, qui
stetit sub judice: veniet in ea forma, in qua
judicatus est, ut videant in quem pu-
puggerunt. ‘Cognoscant Judaei quem ne-
gaverunt: convincent eos homo ille sus-
ceptus et ab eis crucifixus.' Author de
Symbo. ad Catech. l. ii. c. 8. ‘Veniet ergo,
fratres mei, veniet: ille qui prisc venit
occultus, veniet in potestate manifestus:
ille qui judicatus est, veniet judicaturus:
ille qui stetit ante hominem, judicaturus
esse hominem.' Iadem, l. iii. c. 8.

† ‘Judex hic erit filius hominis; forma illa
hic judicabit qua judicata est. Audite et
intelligite, jam hoc Prophecta dixerat, Vi-
debunt in quem pugnerunt. Ipsam for-
mam videbunt quam lancea percussentur.
Sedebit Judex qui stetit sub judice. Dam-
nabit veros reos qui factus est falsus reus.
Ipse veniet, forma illa veniet,' S. August.
de Verbis Domin., Serm. 64. al. 127. § 10.

† ‘Cum boni et mali visari sunt judi-
cem vivorum et mortuorum, proculubio
eum videre non poterunt mali, nisi se-
cundum formam qua filius hominis est;
ed tamen in charitate in qua judicabat,
non in humilitate in qua judicatus est.
Ceterum illam Dei formam, in qua aqua-
lis est Patri, proculubio inpini non vide-
bunt. Non enim sunt munda per iudicium,
Besti enim mundicare, quoniam ipsi videbant
Deum.' S. August. de Trin. lib. i. c. 13.

‘Hoc rectum erat, ut judicandi viderent
judicem. Judicandi enim erant et boni
et mali. Beati autem mundo corde, quo-
niam ipsi Deum videbant. Restabat ut in
judicio forma servi et bonis et mali os-
terchrist, forma Dei solis bonis serva-
retur.' Iadem, de verbis Dom. Serm. 64. al.
127. § 10. ‘Et postestatem detest et iudicium
facer, quia filius hominis est. Puto nihil
esse manifestus. Nam quia Filius Dei
est aquael Patri, non accipit hanc postes-
tatem judicii faciendo, sed habet illum
cum Patre in occulto. Accepit autem
illam, ut boni et mali eum videant judi-
cantem, quia filius hominis est. Visio
quique fili hominis exhibebatur et mali.
Nam visio formae Dei non nisi mundus
corde, quia ipsi Deum videbant, id est,
solis, idem exhibebatur, quorum dictum
hoc ipsum promittit, quia scissum ostendent
illos.' Iadem, de Trin. l. i. c. 13.
Christ Jesus then, the Son of God, and the Son of man, he which was born of the Virgin Mary, he which suffered under Pontius Pilate, he which was crucified, dead, and buried, and descended into hell, he which rose again from the dead, ascended into heaven, and is set down on the right hand of God: he, the same person, in the same nature, shall come to judge the quick and the dead. "For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father, with his angels, and then he shall reward every man according to his works." (Matt. xvi. 27.) He then who is to come, is the Son of man; and when he cometh, it is to judge. "The same Jesus which was taken up from the apostles into heaven, shall so come in like manner as they saw him go into heaven." (Acts i. 11.) That Son of man then, which is to judge, is our Jesus, even the same Jesus, and shall come in the same manner, by a true and local translation of the same nature out of heaven. For God will "judge the world in righteousness, by that man whom he hath ordained, whereof he hath given an assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead." (Acts xvii. 31.) He then which ascended into heaven, was the same which was raised from the dead; and by that resurrection God assured us, that the same man should judge us. "For to this end Christ both died, and rose, and revived, that he might be the Lord both of the dead and living." (Rom. xiv. 9.) It appeareth therefore, by God's determination, by Christ's resurrection and ascension, that the man Christ Jesus is appointed Judge.

This office and dignity of the Son of man was often declared by several figurative and parabolical descriptions. John the Baptist representeth him "that cometh after" him, by this delineation of a husbandman: "whose fan is in his hand, and he will thoroughly purge his floor, and gather his wheat into the garner, but will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire." (Matt. iii. 12.)* The Son of man describes himself as a householder, saying to the reapers in the time of harvest, "Gather ye together first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them; but gather the wheat into my barn:" and this "harvest is the end of the world." (Matt. xiii. 30, 39.)† He representeth himself under the notion of a fisherman, "casting a net into the sea, and gathering of every kind; which, when it was full, he drew to the shore, and sat down, and gathered the good into vessels, but cast the bad away." (Matt. xiii. 47, 48.) He is the bridegroom who took the wise virgins "with him to the marriage," and shut the door upon the foolish. (Matt. xxv. 10.) He is the man, who, travelling into a far country, delivered the talents to his servants; and "after a long time cometh

* Αρνηθέν μιν τὴν κλησίν ὑπὸν ἐνταῦθα δὲ καὶ τὴν κρίτιν δίκαιος, καὶ τὴν τιμήν ἄβατον ὑπάρχειν. S. Chrysost. Hom. 11. ad loc.  
† Πάλιν ἀνακρίνεται αὐτὸς τὸν ἰαν. νοῦν ἡμᾶτον τὴν κρίτιν αὐτὸν ἐνεργείως. S. Chrysost. Hom. 46. in Matt. iii. 30.
again, and reckoneth with them," exalting the "good and faith-
ful," and casting "the unprofitable servant into outer dark-
ness." (Ibid. 19. 21. 30.) Lastly, he is the shepherd, and is so
expressly described in relation to his judgment. For "when
the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels
with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory. And
before him shall be gathered all nations; and he shall separate
them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from
the goats. And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, and
the goats on his left." (Ibid. 31—33.) Being then the Son of
man is thus constantly represented as making the great decer-
tory separation, and the last judicatory distinction between
man and man; as a husbandman separating the wheat, some
time from the chaff, some time from the tares; as a fisherman
gathering the good fish, casting the bad away; as a bridegroom
receiving the wise, excluding the foolish virgins; as a master
distinguishing the servants of his family, rewarding the faith-
ful, punishing the unprofitable; as a shepherd dividing his
sheep from the goats, placing one on the right hand, the other
on the left: it plentifully proveth that the Son of man is ap-
pointed the Judge of all the sons of men. And thus it appear-
eth that Christ is he who shall be the Judge; which is the
second consideration subservient to the present explication.

Thirdly, It being thus resolved that the Son of man shall be
the Judge, our next consideration is, what may the nature of
this judgment be; in what that judicial action doth consist;
what he shall then do, when he shall come to judge. The
reality of this act doth certainly consist in the final determi-
nation, and actual disposing of all persons in soul and body to
their eternal condition; and in what manner this shall partic-
ularly be performed, is not so certain unto us;* but that
which is sufficient for us, it is represented under a formal ju-
diciary process. In which first there is described a throne, a
tribunal, a judgment-seat: for "in the regeneration the Son of
man shall sit in the throne of his glory:" (Matt. xix. 28.) and
that this throne is a seat not only of majesty but also of judi-
cature, appeareth by the following words spoken to the apo-
stles, "Ye also shall sit upon twelve thrones judging the twelve
tribes of Israel." (Ibid.) *As in that vision in the Revelation,
"I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was
given unto them. And I saw a great white throne, and him
that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled
away." (Rev. xx. 4. 11.) This throne of Christ is expressly
called his judgment-seat, when the apostle tells us, "we shall
all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ," (Rom. xiv. 10.)

* St. Augustine speaking of the particulars foretold to be exhibited at the day of
judgment, concludes them in this manner: "Quae omnia quidem ventura esse credendum
est: sed quibus modis et quo ordine veniant, magis tunc docebit rerum experientia,
quam nunc valet consequi ad perfectum hominum intelligentia De Civit. Dei, l. xx.
- 30 6. 5
and "we must all appear before the judgment-seat of Christ." (2 Cor. v. 10.) In respect then of the Son of man, he shall appear in the proper form and condition of a Judge, sitting upon a throne of judicature. Secondly, there is to be a personal appearance of all men before that seat of judicature upon which Christ shall sit; for we must all appear, and we shall all stand before that judgment-seat. "I saw the dead (saith the apostle) stand before the throne of God." (Rev. xx. 12.) Thus "all nations shall be gathered before him." (Matt. xxv. 32.) "He shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other." (Matt. xxiv. 31.) For the "coming of our Lord Jesus Christ is our gathering together unto him." (2 Thess. ii. 1.) Thirdly, when those which are to be judged, are brought before the judgment-seat of Christ, all their actions shall appear: "he will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts:" (1 Cor. iv. 5.) he will "bring every work into judgment, with every secret thing, whether it be good or whether it be evil." (Eccles. xii. 14.) To this end, in the vision of Daniel, when "the judgment was set, and the books were opened;" (vii. 10.) and in that of St. John, "the books were opened; and the dead were judged out of those things that were written in the books, according to their works." (Rev. xx. 12.) Fourthly, after the manifestation of all their actions, there followeth a definitive sentence passed upon all their persons according to those actions,* which is the fundamental and essential consideration of this judgment: the sentence of absolution, in these words expressed, "Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world;" (Matt. xxv. 34.) the sentence of condemnation in this manner, "Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels." (Ibid. 41.) Lastly, after the promulgation of the sentence, followeth the execution; as it is written, "And these shall go away into everlasting punishment, but the righteous into life eternal." (Ibid. 46.) Thus appeareth Christ's majesty by sitting on the throne; his authority, by convening all before him; his knowledge and wisdom, by opening all secrets, revealing all actions, discerning all inclinations; his justice, in condemning sinners; his mercy, in absolving believers; his power, in his execution of the sentence. And thus the Son of man shall come to judge, which is the last particular subter to the third consideration of this Article.

The fourth and last consideration is, what is the object of this action; who are the persons which shall appear before

* 'Dominus non accepta persona judicat mundum; unusquisque secundum quem fecit accipiet. Si fuerit bonus, bonitas eum antecedit; si nequam, merces nequitiae eum sequitur.' Ep. Barnab. c. 4.
that Judge, and receive their sentence from him; what is the latitude of that expression, the quick and the dead. The phrase itself is delivered several times in the Scriptures, and that upon the same occasion: for Christ was "ordained of God to be the judge of quick and dead," (Acts x. 42.) and so his commission extendeth to both; he "is ready to judge the quick and the dead," (1 Pet. iv. 5.) his resolution reacheth to each; and as he is ordained and ready, so "shall he judge the quick and the dead," (2 Tim. iv. 1.) the execution excluded neither. But although it be the Scripture language, and therefore certainly true; yet there is some ambiguity in the phrase, and therefore the intended sense not evident.

The Holy Ghost speaketh of death in several notions, which makes the quick and the dead capable of several interpretations. Because after death the soul doth live, and the body only remaineth dead; therefore some have understood the souls of men by the quick, and their bodies by the dead:* and then the meaning will be this, that Christ shall come to judge immediately upon the resurrection, when the souls which were preserved alive, shall be joined to the bodies which were once dead; and so men shall be judged entirely, both in body and soul, for all those actions which the soul committed in the body. Now though this be a truth, that men shall be judged when their souls and bodies are united; though they shall be judged according to those works, which their souls have acted in their bodies; yet this is not to be acknowledged as the interpretation of this Article, for two reasons: first, Because it is not certain that all men shall die, at least a proper death, so that their bodies shall be left at any time without their souls: secondly, Because this is not a distinction of the parts of man, but of the persons of men.

Again, Because the Scripture often mentioneth a death in trespasses and sins, and a living unto righteousness, others have conceived by the quick to be understood the just,† and by the dead the unjust: so that Christ shall judge the quick, that is, the just, by a sentence of absolution; and the dead, that is, the unjust, by a sentence of condemnation. But though the dead be sometimes taken for sinners, and the living for the righteous, though it be true that Christ shall judge them both; yet it is not probable that in this particular they should be taken in a figurative or metaphorical sense, because

* So Theophylact testifieth: Τοις δέ και δοξάς και σώματα ζώσαν. Comment. in 2 Tim. iv. 1. Indeed Isidorus Pelusiota giveth this as the first interpretation: Τό κρίνοντο κρίνοντας καὶ νεκρότ, τότε ζωνταν, τό καὶ θανάτων καὶ σώματα καὶ ζωνταν. Τός χειροτονέας άλλ’ ωσπερ καί τόν άνωτάτην συνέχειαν ἐποίησαν, οὕτω καὶ τίν ἐκδόθη διὰν οὐκομένως οφθήσεται. Epist. 222. 1. 1.

† This is the second exposition delivered by Isidorus Pelusiota to such as are not satisfied with the first: Εἰ δέ καὶ ἄλλως ζωτίς, εὖτε διάκρινε χωντας, τός άειων βιῶν καὶ στεφάλα μεταλεύνεται, καὶ ἀποδύναι αὐτοὺς ἀπελευθήσεται άμαζότας καὶ κρίνει τὸν νεκροῦτας τός άμαστίχας, καὶ τό διότι αὐτοὺς ταλαντόν ἐν τῷ τό οὐσία μαθαξάσαντας μαθαία οὐ νομίζει. Epist. 222. 1. 1.
there is no adjutant giving any such intimation, and because
the literal sense affordeth a fair explication: farther yet, be-cause
the Scripture, in the same particular, naming the quick
and the dead, sufficiently teacheth us, that it is to be un-der-
stood of a corporeal death, "Whether we live or die (saith the
apostle), we are the Lord's: for to this end Christ both died,
and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead
and living." (Rom. xiv. 9.)

Thirdly, Therefore by the dead are understood all those who
ever died before the time of Christ's coming to judgment,* and
by the quick such as shall be then alive: so that the quick and
the dead, literally taken, are considered in relation to the time
of Christ's coming; at which time there shall be a generation
living upon the face of the earth, and before which time all the
generations passed since the creation of the World shall be
numbered among the dead. And this undoubtedly is the pro-
per and literal sense of the Article;† That Christ shall come to
judge, not only those which shall be alive upon the earth at
his appearing, but also all such as have lived and died before.
None shall be then judged while they are dead; whosoever
stand before the judgment-seat, shall appear alive; but those

* This is the third exposition of Isidorus
Pelusiani: Ei dei et alii, utrum, quid
vel estis tuis quos cubilefactitatis et
vel sumtus mortui. Christus, Eccl.
iv. 1. Others of the fathers give the second and
third explication, leaving it indifferent,
and preferring neither; as St. Chrysos-
mostat: Hoc interpretatio legit et sic
et sic, hoc et sic, et sic. Invo
et sic apud hunc et sic et sic, et sic
in ordine, et sic. Com. in 2 Tim.
v. 1. * Dubos autem modis accipi potest,
quod vivos et mortuos judicabit; sive ut
vivitos intelligamus, quos hic nonnam
mortuos, sed adhibe in ista carne inventuros
est ejus adventus; mortuos autem, quos corpore,
prisquam veniant, exierunt vel extirpata sunt:
vivos justos, mortuos autem injustos, quoniam justi quoque judicabuntur.
S. August. in Eucherid, c. 54. * Cre-
dimus etiam inde ventrum convenien-
tissimo tempore, et judicaturum vivos et
mortuos, sive ists nominibus justi et pec-
tuoros significabantur; sive quos tunc ante
mortem in terris inventuros est appellati sunt vivi, mortui vero qui in ejus adventu
resurrecturi sunt. * Iadem, de Fide et Symb.,
c. 8. * Idei ventrum judicavis vivos et mor-
tuos. Vivos qui super-auctum, mortuos
qui praecesserunt. Potest et sic intelligi,
vivos, justos: mortuos, injustos: utros-
que enim judicat, suae cuque retroversum. Justis dicturus in judicio, Penite Bene-
dicti, &c. Sinistris quid? Ita in lignem,
&c. Sic judicabuntur a Christo vivi et
mortui. * Author l. i. de Symb. ad Catechum.
§ 11 * Dubos modis ince sententia ac-
cipitur. Vivi et mortui in anima, item
vivi et mortui in corpore. Secundum
priorem, judicabit vivos in anima, cre-
dentes: et mortuos in anima, sedem non
esse habeates: secundum posteriori
m, judicabit vivos in carne, quos presentes
invenit ejus adventus: judicabit et mortuos
in carne, quos resuscitatus est Deus excelsus." * Author l. iv. de Symb.
Catechum. § 6. But although these two
expositions were thus indifferently
promulgated, yet the former ought by no
means so to be received as any way to
evacuate or prejudice the latter. * Quod
usu in decreto in Symbola, in adventu
Domini vivos ac mortuos judicandos, non
solum justos et pecorares significari, si-
cut Dubororum putat; sed et vivos eos, qui
in carne inventiemuntur erudimus, qui
adhibe morituri credimus: vel inmutandii
sunt, ut aliis volent, ut suscitatem continuo
vel reformato, cum ante mortuis judicen-
† This is the clear interpretation of
Theodoret, without the least mention of
any other: * Nжеp и и іпаааі вртіу т
tois νοξοις κατά και τοις κοικήσσις ακί-
στοις, και ἢ τον κρίσιναν αναβίωσιν, και τοις κατά
τον τὸν σωματίσμαν κατὰ κρίσιναν εὐσκόσιον
νὰ Ἰδάνωσον, αὐτάσιν ταῖς ἀνάνθοις. Παντες
γὰρ, φησίν, οὐ κοιπώστησαν παντες τοις ἐλ-
κοιμητηθενες. Com. in 2 Tim. iv. 1. * Vivi
agnoceonatur, qui in corpore erunt in ad-
ventu Domini; mortui, quæ ex iis loco
migraverunt." * Author Exp. Symb. sub no-
mine 3. Chris
which never died, shall be judged as they were alive; those that were dead before, that they may be judged, shall rise to life. He shall judge therefore the quick, that is, those which shall be then alive when he cometh;* and he shall judge the dead, that is, those which at the same time shall be raised from the dead.

The only doubt remaining in this interpretation is, Whether, those that shall be found alive when our Saviour cometh, shall still so continue till they come to judgment; or upon his first appearance they shall die, and after death revive, and so together with all those which rise out of their graves, appear before the judgment-seat. The consideration of our mortality, and the cause thereof, (that "it is appointed unto all men once to die, in that death hath passed upon all," Heb. ix. 27. Rom. v. 12.) might persuade us that the last generation of mankind should taste of death, as well as all the rest that went before it; and therefore it hath been thought,** especially of late, that those whom Christ at his coming finds alive, shall immediately die; and after a sudden and universal expiration, shall be restored to life again, and joined with the rest whom the graves shall render, that all may be partakers of the resurrection.

But the apostle's description of the last day mentioneth no such kind of death, yea rather excluseth it, "For we which are alive and remain unto the coming of the Lord, shall not prevent them which are asleep. For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the angel and the trump of God, and the dead in Christ shall rise first; then we which are alive and remain, shall be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and so shall we be ever with the Lord." (1 Thess. iv. 15—17.) In which words, they which "remain unto the coming of the Lord," are not said to die or to rise from the dead, but are distinguished from those "which are asleep" and "rise first;" yea, being alive, are caught up together with them,† having not tasted death.

* This is cleared by the author of the Questions and Answers under the name of Justin Martyr: Ei to της ἀναστάσεως ἄνων πάντες τοῖς σαλαβόντι σε θεία δοθέαν ὑπερ-genitalo, πάντες ἐκ των τάφων ἀναστασίας: τῷ κριτὶ παρίστασθαι μίλησεν, τις πληρώθησεν ται τί, κρίνεις κρίνεις καὶ ἀναστάσις τῶν Κρίτων; οὐκ δὲ ἔχεις κρίνεις ἀκύρως, ἐν ταῖς μέτωπις των ζωμάτων κηρυχομαίνουσα ἡμῖν; Resp. Οὐ πάντες, φησί, καινικόνιαμια κρίνεις ἀναστάσις μεῖν, τοῖς τίτης ζωμάτων, κηρύχοις δὲ, τοῖς ἀναστα-μένουσι των νεκρῶν. Quaest. et Resp. ad Orthod. q. 109.


‡ This is the observation of Epiphanius, who from these words proves as much; for having repeated the text, he thus in- fers: 'Ανά τοις συνεξωρυμέναις ἱκάστες λέξε-ίς ἵστατι τα ἑπτάχρη. Διαμόρφω γὰρ ο ἄλογος ἀπόκοσμος τῶν δύο πρῶτον τὸ ἔδοξον ἐς μέλαι ἐπέλθει συνάγεται, ἀπό τοῦ Ἰησοῦ ἁγίας ἁγιασμένα ἐν κρίνει των σαλαβόντων αὐτῶ-ιων διὰ διά φον καὶ ὅτε θάνατον συναντήσατον τὸ σῶμα, καὶ ὅτε ἔπεσον παρὰ τοῦ, ὁ γὰρ ἄνθρωπος οὗτος τέθηκε. Hares. lxiv. §. 70.
The same is farther confirmed by the apostle, saying, "Be hold, I shew you a mystery; we shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed." (1 Cor. xv. 51.) Which, being added to the former, putth this doctrine out of question: for the living which remain at the coming of Christ, are opposed to them which are asleep, and the opposition consists in this, that they "shall not sleep;" which sleep is not opposed to a long death, but to death itself, as it followeth, "the dead shall be raised incorruptible," and we (which shall not sleep) "shall be changed;" so that their mutation shall be unto them as a resurrection.* And the collation of these two Scriptures maketh up this conclusion so manifestly, that I conceive no man had ever doubted or questioned the truth of it, had they not first differed in the reading of the text.†

* 'Nam et in hoc ingeniosius, domicilium nostrum, quod de vita est, superindui desideraret, siquidem induti et non nudi inveniatur: id est, ante volubus superindueretur virtutem coelestem aeternitatis, quam carne examinar. Hujus enim gratiae privilegei illos manet, qui ad adventu Domini depenchantur in carne, et propter duritias temporum Antichristi merebuntur, compendio mortis per demumitationem expunctae, conturbati cum resurgentibus, sicut Thessalonicensibus scribit. 'Tertull. de Resur. Carn. c. 41. 'Sancti, qui die consummationis atque judicis in corpore rep primi sunt, cum aliis sanctis qui ex mortuis resurrecti sunt, rapentur in nubibus obviam Christo in aer, et non gusta mortem, eruntque semper cum Domino, gravissima mortis necessitate calcata; unde ait Apostolus, 'Omnis quidem non dormientes, omnes autem immutabuntur.' Thed. Heraclod. Com. ad loc. apud S. Hieron. ep. 152. al. 9. 'Apollinaris, licet alius verbis, eadem quae Thelonius asservit; quodam non esse mortuos, sed de praesenti vita raedam in futurum, ut mutatis glorificantisque corporibus sint cum Christo,' S. Hieron. ih. 'O di ligei, tuuti esti o o rante; mi a Apeolomma, tantes de allagynomai, kai oan Apanoiakntes Henan yap kal miai. Mf tovos, inpeda Apanoiakntes, dia touto diex, phov, ois oan anthropionatos. Eisi gav tais oai kai touto diaraiatiai, kai dokei aia akri touto autouz; Ei to autoqo ekouv, allai de kai ekina to savorata tala mi Apanoiakntas allagynomai kai ois Apanoiakntes.' S. Chrysost. Hom. 42. ad loc. So St. Jerome speaking of that place, 1 Thess. iv. 'Hoc ex ipsis loci continetia scribi potest, quod Sancti, qui in adventu Salvatoris fuerint deprenesis in corpore, in isidem corporibus occurring ei, ut tamen, ut inglorium et corruptum et mortale gloria et incorruptione et immortaltate mutetur: ut, quinam corpora mortuorum surrectura sunt, in talem substantiam etiam vivorum corpora transformentur.' S. Hieron. ep. 119. al. 6. ad Marcell. And St. Augustine, in relation to the same place: 'Revera, quasuis ad verba healti Apostoli pertinenti, videtur asserere quosdam in fine secundi, adventente Domino, cum futura est resurrectio mortuorum, non esse mortuos, sed vivos repertos, in illiam immortalitatem, quae Sanctis etiam ceteris datur, repeute mutatos, et simul cum ills rapiendos, sic cut dict, in nibibus. Nec aliquid aliud hani visum est, quoties de his verbis volui cogitare.' Ad tertiam Quast. Dulcetii, § 2. These and others of the ancients have clearly delivered this truth, so that Con- narius, notwithstanding his maxima Patriam turba for the contrary, did well confess: 'Verum quia sunt et uti acque catholici et eruditi viri, qui credunt, anima in corpore maeuente, immutandos ad incorruptionem et immortalitatem eos qui in adventu Domini vivi iniendii sunt; et hoc eis reputari pro resurrectione ex mortuis, quod mortalitate presentis vitae mutatione deponentur, non morte. Quolibet quis acquisescat modo, non est harreticus, nisi ex contentione hereticus fiat.' De Eccl. Dogm. c. 7.

† There have been observed three several readings of that place, 1 Cor. xv. 51. one of the Latin, two of the Greek. 'Ilud autem breviter in fine comendone; hoc, quod in Latinis codicibus legitur, Omnes quidem resurgens, non omnes autem immutabuntur, in Graecis voluminibus nobis habebis, sed vel, Omnes dormientes, non autem omnes immutabuntur; vel, Non omnes dormientes, omnes autem immutabuntur.' S. Hieron, ep. 152. al. 9. But there was not one of these three only in the Latin coeies, that is the first; but one which
THE QUICK AND THE DEAD.

455

Wherefore being the place to the Thessalonicans sufficiently
proves it of itself, being that to the Corinthians, as we read it,
invincibly confirmeth the truth, I conclude that the liv-
ing, when Christ shall come, are properly distinguished from
all those which die before his coming; because death itself
hath passed upon the one, and only a change different from
death shall pass upon the other; and so conceive that Christ is
called the Lord and Judge of the quick and the dead, in refer-
ence at least to this expression of the Creed. For although it

was in the Greek, was also in the Latin, that is the second. For both these St.
Augustin takes notice of: 'Nam et illud quod in plerisque codicibus legitur, Omnes
resurgens, unde fieri poterat, nisi omnes morimur! Resurrection quippe, nisi moris
praeecesserit, nulla est. Et quod nonnulli codices habent, Omnes dormiemus, multo
facilius et apertius id cogit intelligi.' Ad tertium Quaest. Dilect. §. 3. 'Sed alii
rursus occurrit, quod idem dicit Aposto-
lus, cum de resurrectione corporum ad
Corinthios loqueatur. Omnes resurgens
vel sicut alii codices habent, Omnes dor-
miemus.' Idem, de Civit. Dei, l. wx. c. 20.

Two readings thereof were anciently in
the Greek, two in the Greek; one of the
Greek in the Latin, and no more. First
then that reading, Omnes quidem resur-
gens, &c. which is at this day in the Vul-
gar Latin, was by the testimony of St.
Jerome and St. Augustin the ordinary
reading in their times, and is also used
by Tertullian: 'Horum demutacionem
ad Corinthios dedit dicens, Omnes quidem
resurgens, non autem omnes dormiemur,'
De Resur. Carn. c. 42. And although St.
Jerome testifieth that it was not to be
found in the Greek copies, yet to the
same purpose it is amongst the Variae
Lectiones March. Velis. Pantes σαβατισμης,
άνω τοι πάντες ἀπαλαγησείας. And in
Codice Claromontano, the Greek is erased
in this place, but the Latin left is, Omnes
quidem resurgens. As for the second
reading, Omnes dormiemus, &c. this was
anciently in the Latin copies, according to
St. Augustin; and also in the Greek,
according to St. Jerome. Didymus did so
read it, and contended for that reading:
'Scita quidem in nonnullis codicibus scriptum
sit, Non quidem omnes dormiemus, omnes
notum immutabimus. Sed considerandum
est, an ei quod praemissum est, omnes in-
mutabimus, possit convenire quod sequi-
tur, Martyri surgent incorrupti, et nos im-
mutabimus. Si enim omnes immutabunt-
atur, et hoc commune cum catenis est, su-
perfinitum fact dicere, et nos immutabimus.
Quamobrem ita legendum est, Omnes
quidem dormiemus, non autem omnes immu-
tabimus.' Apud S. Hieron. ep. 152. al. 9.

Indeed Acacius bishop of Casarea doth
not only acknowledge οὕς reading, but
saith it was in most copies; 'Dicamus
primam de eo, quod magis in plurimus co-
diciavis inuentur, Ecece mysterium dico no-
bis, Omnes quidem dormiemus, non omnes
autem immutabimus.' Ibid. The Alexa-
drian MS. may confirm this lection,
which reads it thus: Οἱ πάντες μὲν ὁ και-
νομισματικα, οἱ πάντες δὲ ἀκανομισμα, for
the first οὐ is not written in the line, but
above it. And the Ethiopic version to
the same purpose, Omnes nos morimur,
sed non omnes nos immutabimus. The third
reading, Non omnes dormiemus, &c. though
it was not anciently in the Latin, yet it
was frequently found in the Greek copies.
Acacius testifieth thus much: 'Transea-
mus ad secundam lectiorem, quae ita fer-
tur in plerisque codicibus, Non quidem om-
nes dormiemus, omnes autem immutabimus.'
Apud Hier. ibid. It was so anciently
read in the time of Origen, as appeareth
by the Fragment taken by St. Jerome out
of his Εξεγετικα upon the First Epistle to
the Thessalonicans (which he mentioneth
himself in his second book against Celsus),
and by his words in the fifth against Cel-
sus: Οὐκ ὑποθελὴν μετὰ τῶν ἀπόφως ἐκλέ-
θαι παρὰ τῷ Ἀπόστολῳ τοῦ Ιησοῦ τοῦ, οὖς πάν-
tes καμομισομα, πάντες δὲ ἀκαμομισομα.
§. 17. The same is acknowledged by
Theodorus Heracleotes, Apollinaris, Di-
dymus, [vid. Hieron. ep. 152. al. 9.] St.
Chrysostom, Theodoret, Theophylact, and
Eccumenius. ad loc. The same is confirm-
ed by the ancient Syriac translation, ἦ
τὸ πάντων, καὶ οὐκ ἐπὶ τοῖς ξένοις οὐκ ὡς
also by the Arabic. Being then of the three
readings, but two were anciently found in
the Greek copies, ('Quarris quod sensu
dictum sit, et quo modo in prima ad
Corinthios Epistola Pauli sit legendum,
Omnes quidem dormiemus, non autem omnes
immutabimus; an justa quaedam exempla,
Non omnes dormiemus, omnes autem
immutabimus; utrumque enim in Græcis
al. 9.) and of those two but one is now
to be found, and the Greek fathers suc-
cessively have acknowledged no other,
being that which is left agrees with the
most ancient translations, we have no
reason to doubt or question it.
true of the living of any age, so say; that Christ is Lord and Judge of them and of the dead, yet in the next age they are not the living, but the dead, which Christ shall come to judge, and consequently no one generation, but the last, can be the quick which he shall judge. As therefore to the interpretations of this Article, I take that distinction to be necessary, that in the end of the world all the generations dead shall be revived, and the present generation living so continued, and Christ shall gather them all to his tribunal-seat, and so shall truly come to judge both the quick and the dead.

To believe a universal judgment to come is necessary; first, To prevent the dangerous doubts arising against the ruling of the world by the providence of God; that old rock of offence, upon which so many souls have suffered shipwreck. That which made the prophet David confess, his "feet were almost gone, his steps had well nigh slipped," (Psal. lxxxiii. 2.) had hurried multitudes of men to eternal perdition. The conspicuous prosperity of the wicked, and apparent miseries of the righteous; the frequent persecution of virtue, and eminent rewards of vice; the sweet and quiet departures often attending upon the most dissolute, and horrid tortures putting a period to the most religious lives, have raised a strong temptation of doubt and mistrust, whether there be a God that judgeth the earth. Nor is there any thing in this life considered alone, which can give the least rational satisfaction in this temptation. Except there be a life to come after such a death as we daily see, except in that life there be rewards and punishments otherwise dispensed than here they are, how can we ground any acknowledgment of an overruling justice? That therefore we may be assured that God who sitteth in heaven ruleth over all the earth, that a divine

* This was well observed by St. Augustin: 'Si autem in his verbis Apostoli nullus alius sensus poterit reperiri, et hoc eum intelligi velhisse charum erit, quod videntur ipsa verba clarame; id est, quod futuri sint in fine seculi, et secundo adventu Domini, qui non expolientur corpora, sed supernundatur immortaliitate, ut absorbatur mortale a vita: huice sententiae procubuii convicte quod in Regula Fidei confitemur, reverentiam Dominum, judicantur vivos et mortuos; ut non hic intelligamus, vivos justos, mortuos autem injustos, quamvis judicandi sint et justi et injusti; sed vivos quos mundum existise, mortuos autem quos jam existisse de corporibus adventus ejus inveniatis.' Ad tertiam Quaest. Dalcitii, § 4. And Origen long before did make the same exsposition of these words, "that he might be Lord both of the dead and living," Rom. xiv. 9. "Omnis agit in tempore, qui ambiguitatem instituit, ut recte dicatur, id est, qui multos vivos habet, et alios, id est, qui multos mortuos habet." Dalc. § 4. And St. Tho. Aquin. ('Quid autem dictur judicium vivos et mortuos, nisi quod ali vivi, ali mortui, ad judicium veniant? sed animam solum judicabantur et corpora, in quibus vivos animas, corpora nominavit.') Expos. in Symb. § 32.
and most holy providence disposeth and dispenseth all things here below; it is absolutely necessary to believe and profess, that a just and exact retribution is deferred, that a due and proportionable dispensation of rewards and punishments is reserved to another world; and consequently that there is a universal judgment to come.

Secondly, It is necessary to believe a judgment to come thereby effectually to provoke ourselves to the breaking off our sins by repentance, to the regulating our future actions by the word of God, and to the keeping a conscience void of offence towards God and towards man. Such is the sweetness of our sins, such the connaturalness of our corruptions, so great our confidence of impunity here, that except we looked for an account hereafter, it were unreasonable to expect that any man should forsake his delights, renounce his complacences, and by a severe repentance create a bitterness to his own soul. But being once persuaded of a judgment, and withal possessed with a sense of our sins, who will not tremble with Felix? who will not "flee from the wrath to come?" What must the hardness be of that impenitent heart, which "treasureth up unto itself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God?" (Rom. ii. 5.) We are naturally inclined to follow the bent of our own wills, and the inclinations of our own hearts: all external rules and prescriptions are burdensome to us; and did we not look to give an account, we had no reason to satisfy any other desires than our own: especially the dictates of the Word of God are so pressing and exact, that were there nothing but a commanding power, there could be no expectation of obedience. It is necessary then that we should believe that an account must be given of all our actions; and not only so, but that this account will be exacted according to the rule of God's revealed will, that "God shall judge the secrets of men by Jesus Christ, according to the Gospel." (Rom. ii. 16) There is in every man not only a power to reflect, but a necessary reflection upon his actions; not only a voluntary remembrance, but also an irresistible judgment of his own conversation. Now if there were no other judge beside our own souls, we should be regardless of our own sentence, and wholly unconcerned in our own condemnations. But if we were persuaded that these reflections of conscience, are to be so many witnesses before the tribunal of Heaven, and that we are to carry in our own hearts a testimony either to absolve or condemn us, we must infallibly watch over that unquiet inmate, and endeavour above all things for a good conscience. For "seeing that all things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought we to be in all holy conversation and godliness, looking for and hastening unto the coming of the day of God." (2 Pet. iii. II.) Reason itself will tell us thus much; but if that do not, or if we will not hearken to our own voice; "the
grace of God that bringeth salvation teacheth us, that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world, looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.” (Tit. ii. 11—13.)

Thirdly, It is necessary to profess faith in Christ as Judge of the quick and the dead, for the strengthening our hope, for the augmenting our comfort, for the establishing our assurance of eternal life. If we look upon the judgment to come, only as revealing our secrets, as discerning our actions, as sentencing our persons according to our works done in the flesh, there is not one of us can expect life from that tribunal, or happiness at the last day. We must confess that we have all sinned, and that there is not any sin which we have committed, but deserves the sentence of death; we must acknowledge that the best of our actions bear no proportion to eternity; and can challenge no degree of that weight of glory; and therefore in a judgment, as such, there can be nothing but a fearful expectation of eternal misery, and an absolute despair of everlasting happiness. It is necessary therefore that we should believe, that Christ shall sit upon the throne, that our Redeemer shall be our judge, that we shall receive our sentence not according to the rigour of the Law, but the mildness and mercies of the Gospel; and then we may look upon not only the precepts but also the promises of God; whatsoever sentence in the sacred Scripture speaketh any thing of hope, whatsoever text administereth any comfort, whatsoever argument drawn from thence can breed in us any assurance, we may confidently make use of them all in reference to the judgment to come: because by that Gospel which contains them all, we shall be judged. If we consider whose Gospel it is, and who shall judge us by it, “we are members of his body. of his flesh, and of his bones;” (Eph. v. 30.) “for which cause he is not ashamed to call us brethren.” (Heb. ii. 11.) As one of our brethren he hath redeemed us, (Lev. xxi. 48.) he hath laid down his life as a ransom for us. He is our High-priest who made an atonement for our sins, “a merciful and faithful High-priest, in all things being made like unto his brethren.” (Heb. ii. 17.) He which is Judge, is also our Advocate; and who shall condemn us, if he shall pass the sentence upon us, who maketh intercession for us? Well therefore may “we have boldness and access with confidence by the faith of him” (Eph. iii. 12.) unto the throne of that Judge, who is our Redeemer, who is our High-priest, who is our Advocate, who will not by his word at the last day condemn us, because he hath already in the same word absolved us, saying, “Verily, verily, I say unto you, he that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation, but is passed from death unto life.” (John v. 24.)
Having thus explained the nature of the judgment to come, and the necessity of believing the same, we have given sufficient light to every Christian to understand what he ought to intend, and what it is he professeth, when he saith, I believe in him who shall come to judge the quick and the dead. For thereby he is conceived to declare thus much: I am fully persuaded of this, as an infallible and necessary truth, that the eternal Son of God, in that human nature, in which he died, and rose again, and ascended into heaven, shall certainly come from the same heaven into which he ascended, and at his coming shall gather together all those which shall be then alive, and all which ever lived and shall be before that day dead: when causing them all to stand before his judgment-seat, he shall judge them all according to their works done in the flesh; and passing the sentence of condemnation upon all the reprobates, shall deliver them to be tormented with the devil and his angels; and pronouncing the sentence of absolution upon all the elect, shall translate them into his glorious kingdom, of which there shall be no end. And thus I believe in Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead.

ARTICLE VIII.

I believe in the Holy Ghost.

In this Article we repeat again the first word of the Creed, I believe; whereas a conjunction might have been sufficient, but that so many particulars concerning the Son have intervened. For as we are baptized in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost; so do we make confession of our faith, saying, I believe in the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost;* and the ancients, whose Creed was something shorter, made no repetition of the act of faith, but only an addition of the object, And in the Holy Ghost.† And as we repeat this act of faith in

* Sed enim ordo ratiovis et fidei auctoritas, digestis vocibus et literis Domini, admonet nos post hae credere etiam in Spiritum Sanctum, solum Ecclesiæ propius nissum, sed statutis temporum opportunitates reddidit. Novation. de Trin. c. 29. Schlichtingius the Socranian, in his Preface to the Polonian Confession of Faith, endeavoureth to persuade us, that this Article of the Holy Ghost is not so ancient as the rest; which being diametrically opposite to that original of the Creed, which I have delivered, the baptismal words, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, it will be necessary to examine his reason, which is drawn only from the authority of Tertullian: who in his book

† So the ancient Greek MS. και η τ ετελεσθαι Σπυρσεως; and Marcellus, και η τ ετελεσθαι
this Article, so some did also in the second, I believe in Jesus Christ.* Wherefore being this word, I believe, is* taken here only by way of resumption or repetition, and consequently must be of the same sense or importance, of which it was in the beginning of the Creed, it may well receive the same explanation here which it received there; to that therefore the reader is referred.

For although the ancient fathers did frequently make use of this language to prove the Divinity of the Spirit,† and did thence argue that he is really and truly God, because we believe in the Holy Ghost; yet being that language is not expressly read in the Scriptures in relation to the Spirit, as it is in reference to the Son, being to believe in the Holy Ghost, is only the expression of the Church contained in the Creed; being in the same Creed many of the ancients, without any reprehension, have used the same phrase in the following Articles expressly, and where the preposition is not expressed, it may very well be thought it was understood: therefore I think fit to acquiesce in my former exposition, and lay no great force on the preposition.

It will therefore be sufficient for the explication of this Article, if we can declare what is the full and proper object of our faith contained in it, what we are obliged to believe concerning the Holy Ghost. And as to this we shall discharge our undertaking, and satisfy whatsoever is required in this Exposition, if we can set forth these two particulars, the nature and

* Credo. Credo received the Holy Ghost from God, credere i. Wherefore 14. repeated the Creed, and the Creed is to be believed, credere; being to believe in the Holy Ghost,

† As the ancient Saxon Creed set forth by Freherus.

‡ Gregory Nazianzen, disputing for the divinity of the Holy Ghost, proved that he is no creature thus: 'Allo eis oun pistis, o Xristos eis autin pistoymai; h de autin telenobita; o oun ypar thon oun pistoymai eis ti, kai eis autin pistoymai ti micn ypar oun pisti Sivntes, to de ean Pistis ekravastos. Orat. xxxvii. p. 596. Epiphanius seems to speak thus much, shewing, that though the fathers of the Nicene Council had determined nothing particularly of the Holy Ghost, yet they sufficiently show that he is God, by those words: καὶ εἰς τιμίαν ἄγιον. Εὐθὺς γὰρ η ἱεράς ὁμολογεῖ καὶ οὐκ ἀρέσται. Πιστεύεις γὰρ εἰς ἐνα Θεόν Πιστεύεις παντοκράτειρα. Τὸ δὲ πιστεύεις οὐχ ἄλλος εἰπται, ἀλλὰ ὁ πάντως εἰς ταύς θεον. Καὶ εἰς ἑνὸς Κηρύκην Χριστον, οὐχ ἄλλος εἰπται, ἀλλὰ ὁ Θεὸν ἡ πάντως ἤσονται. Καὶ εἰς τὸ 'Αργὸν Πείραμα, οὐχ ἄλλος εἰπται, ἀλλὰ εἰς εἰς μιᾶς δεξιοτιαν. καὶ εἰς μιᾶς ἡμῶν Χειρίτως, καὶ μιᾶς ἡμῶν Χειρίτως, εἰς τις τελεία, μιᾶς δε Χειρίτως, μιᾶς εἰς τίς, μιᾶς δεξιοτιαν, μιᾶς κυρίτως, ἀντὶ τοῦ πιστεύομεν καὶ πιστεύεις καὶ πιστεύεις. Hares. Ixxiv. § 14. 'Agno-

* As also Aries and Euzoius, and the Council of Nice. Credo. Credo received the Holy Ghost from God, credere i. Wherefore 14. repeated the Creed, and the Creed is to be believed, credere; being to believe in the Holy Ghost, and the Creed is to be believed, credere; being to believe in the Holy Ghost,
the office of that blessed Spirit. For the name of Ghost or God in the ancient Saxon language signifieth a Spirit, and in that appellation of the Spirit of God, his nature principally is expressed. The addition of holiness, though it denote the intrinsic sanctity essentially belonging to that Spirit, yet notwithstanding it containeth also a derivative notion, as signifying an emanation of that holiness, and communication of the effects thereof; and in this communication his office doth consist. Whatsoever therefore doth concern the Spirit of God, as such, and the intrinsic sanctity, which belongeth to that Spirit, may be expressed in the explication of his nature; whatsoever belongeth to the derivation of that sanctity, may be described in his office; and consequently more cannot be necessary, than to declare what is the nature, what the office, of the Spirit of God.

For the better indagation of the nature of the Holy Ghost, I shall proceed by certain steps and degrees; which as they will render the discourse more clear, so will they also make the reasons more strong, and the arguments more evident. And first, as to the existence of the Spirit of God, it will be unnecessary to endeavour the proof of it; for although the Sadducees seemed to deny it, who said "that there is no resurrection, neither angel, nor spirit;" (Acts xxiii. 8.) though it hath been ordinarily concluded from thence that they rejected the Holy Ghost,* yet it cannot be proved from those words that they denied the existence of the Spirit of God, any more than that they denied the existence of God who is a spirit: nor did the notion which the Jews had of the Spirit of God any way incline the Sadducees, who denied the existence of the angels and the souls of men, to reject it. The resurrection, angel, and spirit, which the Sadducees refused to acknowledge, were but two particulars; for it is expressly added, that the "Pharisees confessed both;" of which two the resurrection was one, angels and spirits were the other;† wherefore that which the Sadducees disbelieved was the existence of such created spiritual natures, as the angels and the souls of men are conceived to have. And as for those disciples at Ephesus, who had "not so much as heard whether there be a Holy Ghost;" (Acts xix. 2.) if they were Gentiles, it is no wonder, because they never had that notion in their religion; if they were Jews, as they seem to be, because they were baptized with the baptism of John, it signifieth not that they never heard of the Spirit of God, but only that they had not heard of the giving of it, which the apostle mentioned: as we read elsewhere, that the "Holy

† Φαρισαίοι δὲ, φησίν, ἀμωμηχάω τὰ αμαθήτες, καὶ μετὰ τίμη τινί παίδι εἶναί λέγει αμαθήτες; ἤ ὁ πνεῦμα καὶ ἐρροείς ἐν ἑστὶ; S. Chrysost. Hom. 49, in Act. Apost. xxiii. 8.
GHOST was not yet;" (John vii. 39.) not denying the existence, but the plentiful effusion of it. For, whatsoever the nature of the Spirit of God may be thought to be, no man can conceive the apostle should deny his existence before Christ's glorification, whose operation was so manifest at his conception. Howsoever, the apostle asked those ignorant disciples, "Unto what then were ye baptized?" (Acts xix. 3.) intimating, that if they were baptized according to the rule of Christ, they could not be ignorant that there is a Holy Ghost; because the apostles were commanded to baptize "in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." (Matt. xxviii. 19.) It is therefore presumed that every one who professeth the name of Christ, from the first baptismal institution, acknowledgeth that there is a Holy Ghost; and the only question consists in this, what that Holy Ghost is, in whose name we are baptized, and in whom, according to our baptism, we profess in the Creed to believe.

In order to the determination of which question, our first assertion is, That the Holy Ghost, described to us in the Word of God, and joined with the Father and the Son in the form of baptism, is a person. We are all baptized in the name of the three, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost; and the public confession of our faith hath relation to those three. We all confess that two of these, the Father and the Son, are persons: that which we now assert, is only this, That the Holy Ghost, who is of the three the third, is also a person as the other two. That blessed Spirit is not only an energy or operation,* not a quality or power, but a spiritual and intellectual subsistence. If we conceive it as an operation only,† then must it only be actuated and not act; and when it is not actuated, it must not be at all. If we say, that it is a quality, and not a substance; we say that it is, that which we cannot prove to have any being. It seemeth to me strangely unreasonable, that men should be so earnest in endeavouring to prove that the Holy

* To conclude the nature of the Holy Ghost, which is not so immediately expressed in the Scriptures, it will be needful so to place our assertions, as that they may occur to all other misconceptions. Now the old notions (and more they cannot now have) were thus delivered by Gregory Nazianzen, that great divine, so much concerned in this subject: Τὰς ἤκατ' ἡμῖν σχέσις αἱ μεῖν ἕνεργα τῶν (τὸ πνεῦμα ἄνθρωπος, αἱ ἅγια κακία, αἱ πάντες, αἱ οὐκ ἦν ἑκατέροις. οὔτε τῷ γραμματίκῳ οὔτε τῷ μάρτυρι, οὔτε τῷ ἀγαθῷ, οὔτε τῷ ψευδε. Unt. xxxvii. p. 595. These were the three particular and opposite opinions, either the Spirit is an operation, or a created substance, or God; the fourth is but a doubt or hesitation which of the three is true. The first of these is thus pro-

† This is the argument of the same father: Εἰ μὲν οὖν ἐμπνεύσεως ἐνεργεία πνεύμα τῷ ἐν εὐθείᾳ τῷ γὰρ ἔτερῳ, τῷ πάσης ἔκτων καὶ ἐκείνης σύνεται, καὶ εἰ ἐνερ-

γεία, ἐνεργεῖται ἕνεργα, εἰκὸν ἐνεργείας, ὃς εἰς ἐνεργείας πάντως παλαιότερος τοῦ ἐνεργείας γὰρ ἐνεργείας. Πάς οὖν ἐνεργεία, καὶ τὰς ἀφροδίτιας, καὶ ζωτικὰς, καὶ παρασκε-

νεται, καὶ ἡ ἐνεργείας σαφῆς ἄτομον, οὐ καθό-

νυστα, Ibid.
I BELIEVE IN THE HOLY GHOST. 463

Ghost, which sanctifieth them, is no substance, when they cannot be assured, that there is any thing operative in the world beside substantial beings; and consequently if they be not sanctified by that, they can be susceptible of no holiness. By what reason in nature can they be assured, by what revelation in Scripture can they be confident, that there is a reality deserving the name of quality distinguished from all substance, and yet working real and admirable effects? If there were no other argument but this, that we are assured by the Christian faith, that there is a Holy Ghost existing; and we cannot be assured, either by reason or faith, that there is a quality really and essentially distinguished from all substance; it would be sufficient to deter us from that boldness, to assert the Holy Ghost, in whose name we are baptized, to be nothing else but a quality.

But we are not left to guess at the nature of the Spirit of God; the word of God which came from that Spirit, hath sufficiently delivered him as a person. It is indeed to be observed, that in the Scriptures there are some things spoken of the Holy Ghost, which are proper and peculiar to a person, as the adversaries confess; others, which are not properly and primarily to be attributed to a person, as we cannot deny: and it might seem to be equally doubtful, in relation to the Scripture-expressions, whether the Holy Ghost were a person or no; and that they which deny his personality, may pretend as much Scripture as they which assert it. But in this seeming indifference, we must also observe a large diversity; inasmuch as the Holy Ghost or Spirit of God, is not always taken in the same propriety of signification; nor do we say that the Holy Ghost, which signifieth a person, always signifieth so much. It is therefore easily conceived how some things may be attributed to the Spirit in the Scriptures which are not proper to a person, and yet the Spirit be a person, because sometimes the Spirit is taken for that which is not a person, as we acknowledge: whereas, if ever any thing be attributed to the Holy Ghost as to a person, which cannot be otherwise understood of the Spirit of God than as of a person, then may we infallibly conclude that the Holy Ghost is a person. This therefore we shall endeavour fully and clearly to demonstrate; first, That the Scriptures declare unto us the Holy Ghost as a person, by such attributes and expressions as cannot be understood to be spoken of the Spirit of God any other way than as of a person: secondly, That whatsoever attributes or expressions are used in the Scriptures of the Holy Ghost, and are objected as repugnant to the nature of a person, either are not so repugnant as is objected; or if they be, they belong unto the Spirit, as it signifieth not a person.

First, then, The Holy Ghost, or good Spirit of God, is clearly and formally opposed to those evil spirits, which are and must be acknowledged persons of a spiritual and intellectual sub-
ARTICLE VIII.

sistence: as, “The Spirit of the Lord departed from Saul, and an evil spirit from the Lord troubled him.” (1 Sam. xvi. 14.) Now, what those evil spirits from the Lord were, is apparent from the sad example of Ahab, concerning whom we read, “there came out a spirit and stood before the Lord and said, I will entice him; and the Lord said unto him, Wherewith? and he said, I will go out and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets; and the Lord said, Thou shalt entice him, and thou shalt also prevail; go out, and do even so.” (2 Chron. xviii. 20, 21.) From whence it is evident, that the evil spirits from God were certain persons, even bad angels, to which the one good Spirit as a person is opposed, departing from him to whom the other cometh.

Again, The New Testament doth describe the Holy Ghost by such personal dispositions, and with such operations, as are as evident marks and signs of a person as any which are attributed to the Father or the Son, which are unquestionable persons; and whatsoever terms are spoken of the Spirit by way of quality, are spoken as well of those which are acknowledged persons. We are exhorted by the apostle “not to grieve the Spirit of God;” (Eph. iv. 30.) but grief is certainly a personal affection, of which a quality is not capable. We are assured that the same “Spirit maketh intercession for us with groanings that cannot be uttered;” (Rom. viii. 26.) and we can understand what are interceding persons, but have no apprehension of interceding or groaning qualities. The operations of the Spirit are manifest, and as manifestly personal; for he “searcheth all things, yea, even the deep things of God;” (1 Cor. ii. 10.) and so he “knoweth all things, even the things of God,” (1 Cor. xii. 11.) which can be no description of the power of God: he “worketh all the spiritual gifts, dividing to every man severally as he will,” (1 Cor. xii. 11.) in which the operation, discretion, distribution, and all these voluntary, are sufficient demonstrations of a person. He revealeth the will of God, and speaketh to the sons of men, in the nature and after the manner of a person; “for the Spirit said unto Peter, Behold three men seek thee: arise therefore and get thee down, and go with them, doubting nothing, for I have sent them.” (Acts x. 19.) And “the Holy Ghost said” unto the prophets and teachers at Antioch, “Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them.” (Acts xiii. 2.) We cannot better understand the nature of the Holy Ghost than by the description given by Christ which sent him: and he said thus to his disciples, “The Comforter (or the Advocate), which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things;” “he shall testify of me: and ye also shall bear witness.” “If I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you. And when he is come, he will reprove the world,” and “he
will guide you into all truth; for he shall not speak of himself, but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak, and he shall shew you things to come; he shall glorify me, for he shall receive of mine, and shall shew it unto you." (John xiv. 26. xv. 26, 27. xvi. 7, 8, 13, 14.) All which words are nothing else but so many descriptions of a person, a person hearing, a person receiving, a person testifying, a person speaking, a person reproving, a person instructing.

The adversaries to this truth,* acknowledging all these personal expressions, answer that it is ordinary in the Scriptures to find the like expressions, which are proper unto persons, given unto those things which are no persons: as when the apostle saith, "Charity suffereth long and is kind, charity envieth not, charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up, doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh none evil, rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things?" (1 Cor. xiii. 4—7.) all which personal actions are attributed to charity, which is no person, as in other cases it is usual;† but belonging to that person which is charitable; because that person which is so qualified doth perform those actions according to, and by virtue of, that charity which is in him. In the same manner, say they;‡ personal actions are attributed to the Holy Ghost, which is no person, but only the virtue, power, and efficacy of God, the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, because that God the Father is a person, and doth perform those personal actions,

* The present adversaries to this truth are the Socinians, and their opinion was thus delivered by Socinus: 'Quod in testimonios sacris que adversarii citant, Spiritus S. actiones tribuantur, et ea quae personarum sunt propria, ex hoc nihil concludi putest, cum aliiis rebus, quas personas non esse constat, similitur in Scripturis sacris actiones tribuantur, et ea quae sunt propria personarum. Cujus rei plenissimum dilem facere potest vel locus ille Pauli, (1 Cor. xii. 4 ad 8.) ubi perpetuo de charitate, tanquam de persona aliqua loquitur, illi permulta tribuens, quae revera non nisi in persona cadunt.' Faustus Socinus contra Wiekum, c. 10.

† So the Racovian Catechism doth enlarge this answer, stating the question thus: 'Qui vero ille Scriptura loci accipienda sunt, in quibus Spiritus S. actiones personarum propria, et ad Deum ipsam spectantes, attribuuntur?' And returning this solution: 'Ad eum modum, quo in Scripturis rebus id attribuatur, sapientem, quod personarum est; neque tamen res illae propter eam personam consentent, ut eccato, quod deeperit, et occiderit.' (Rom. vii. 11.) et legi quod loquatur, (Rom. iii. 19.) et Scriptura qua proprie et pertinent, (Gal. iii. 18.) et Charitati quod sit longanimis, &c. (1 Cor. xiii. 4—7.) denique Spiritui, i. e. vento, quod spirit ubi velit.' c. 6. Vide Socini Epistolam S. ad Petrum Statorium.

‡ 'Quod si quis diversit, satis constare, Paulum eo in loco figuratur loqui, et charitatis nomine eum intelligere qui charitate est praditus, quatenus ea est praditus: respondebo, cum Spiritus S. sit Spiritus Dei, certumque sit aliquo spiritu aliquo personae non posse esse personam ab ea, cujus est spiritus, distinctam, non minus constare, cum Spiritui S. ea tribuantur, quam personae et simul ipsius Dei sunt propria, nihil alio intellegendum nomine Spiritus S. esse, quam ipsum Deum spiritu suo, id est, virtute atque efficacia sua, agentem atque operantem.' F. Socinus, cont. Wiek. c. 10.

'Quomiam vero Spiritus S. virtus Dei est, hinc fit ut ex ea Dei sunt, Spiritui S. attribuuntur, et non nomine Spiritus S. sepe Deus ipsa intelligatur, quatenus suam virtutem Dei per spiritum suam exercit.' Catech. Racov. c. 6.
attributed to the *Holy Ghost*, by that virtue, power, and efficacy in himself, which is the *Holy Ghost*. As when we read “the Spirit said unto Peter, Behold three men seek thee: arise therefore, and get thee down and go with them, doubting nothing; for I have sent them:” (Acts x. 19, 20.) we must understand that God the Father was the person which spake those words, and which sent those men; but because he did so by that virtue which is the *Holy Ghost*, therefore the *Holy Ghost* is said to speak those words, and send those men. In the same manner when we read, “the Holy Ghost said” unto those at Antioch, “Separate me Barnabas and Saul, for the work whereunto I have called them:” (Acts xiii. 2) we must conceive it was God the Father who spake those words, who had called Barnabas and Saul, and to whom they were to be separated; but because God did all this by that power within him, which is his Spirit, therefore those words and actions are attributed to the *Holy Ghost*. This is the sum of their answer; and more than this I conceive cannot be said in answer to that argument which we urge from those personal expressions attributed to the Spirit of God, and, as we believe, as to a person.

But this answer is most apparently insufficient, giving no satisfaction to the argument. For if all the personal actions, attributed in the Scriptures to the Spirit, might proceed from the person of God the Father, according to the power which is in him, then might this answer seem satisfactory: but if these actions be personal, as they are acknowledged, and cannot be denied; if the same cannot be attributed to the person of God the Father, whose Spirit it is; if he cannot be said to do that by the power within him, which is said to be done by the *Holy Ghost*; then is that defence not to be defended; then must the *Holy Ghost* be acknowledged a person. But I shall clearly prove, that there are several personal attributes given in the sacred Scriptures expressly to the *Holy Ghost*, which cannot be ascribed to God the Father; which God the Father, by that power which is in him, cannot be said to do; and consequently cannot be any ground why those attributes should be given to the Spirit if it be not a person.

To make intercession is a personal action, and this action is attributed to the Spirit of God, “because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God.” (Rom. viii. 27.) But to make intercession, is not an act which can be attributed to God the Father, neither can he be said to intercede for us according to that power which is in him; and therefore this can be no Prosopopeia; the *Holy Ghost* cannot be said to exercise the personal action of intercession, for that reason, because it is the Spirit of that person which intercedeth for us. To come unto men, as being sent unto them, is a personal action; and so the Comforter, or Advocate, who is the *Holy Ghost*, did come, being sent; “when the Comforter is
I BELIEVE IN THE HOLY GHOST.

Spiritus S. Dei actio tributatur: sit autem hac virtus et efficacia Dei consideratur, et accipitur, ut res in quibus agit, ab ipsa afficiuntur, utrique esti figura similitudinis efficitur; quandoque, quandoque est locus: et Metonymiae aut Prosopopoeciae accomodatissimus est locus: et Metonymiae quidem, si Spiritus S. nominem ipse Deus, cusus est spiritus, qui per eum agit, significet; Prosopopoeciae vero, ut quando Deus per Spiritum S. agit, ipsi Spiritui S. Dei actio tributatur: sin autem hac virtus et efficacia Dei consideratur, et accipitur, ut res in quibus agit, ab ipsa afficiuntur, utrique esti figura similitudinis efficitur; quandoque, quandoque est locus: et Metonymiae aut Prosopopoeciae accomodatissimus est locus: et Metonymiae quidem, si Spiritus S. nominem ipse Deus, cusus est spiritus, qui per eum agit, significet; Prosopopoeciae vero, ut quando Deus per Spiritum S. agit, ipsi

2 H 2
to supply the room where he foresaw the former would not serve. Which double figure he groundeth upon this distinction: The Spirit, that is, the power of God, saith he, may be considered either as a propriety and power in God, or as the things on which it worketh are affected with it. If it be considered in the first notion, then if any personal attribute be given to the Spirit, the Spirit is there taken for God, and by the Spirit God is signified: if it be considered in the second notion, then if any personal attribute be given to the Spirit, the Spirit is taken for that man in which it worketh; and that man, affected with it, is called the Spirit of God.

So that now we must not only shew that such things which are attributed to the Holy Ghost cannot be spoken of the Father; but we must also prove that they cannot be attributed unto man, in whom the Spirit worketh from the Father: and this also will be very easily and evidently proved. The Holy Ghost is said to come unto the apostles as sent by the Father and the Son, and to come so sent is a personal action, which we have already shewn cannot be the action of the Father, who sent the Spirit; and it is as certain that it cannot be the action of an apostle who was affected with the Spirit which was sent, except we can say that the Father and the Son did send St. Peter an Advocate to St. Peter; and St. Peter, being sent by the Father and the Son, did come unto St. Peter. Again, our Saviour speaking of the Holy Ghost saith, "He shall receivé of mine:" therefore the Holy Ghost in that place is not taken for the Father; "and shew it unto you," therefore he is not taken for an apostle: in that he receiveth, the first Socinian Prosopopeia is improper; in that he sheweth to the apostle, the second is absurd. The Holy Ghost then is described as a person distinct from the person of the Father, whose power he is, and distinct from the person of the apostle in whom he worketh, and consequently neither of the Socinian figures can evacuate or enervate the doctrine of his proper and peculiar personality.

Secondly, For those attributes or expressions used of the Holy Ghost in the sacred Scriptures, and pretended to be repugnant to the nature of a person, either they are not so repugnant, or, if they be, they belong unto the Spirit, as it signifieth not the person, but the gifts or effects of the Spirit. They tell us that the Spirit is given, and that sometimes in measure, sometimes without measure;* that the Spirit is poured out,

Spiritus Dei praedilium, quatenus, riz ab isto Spiritu afficiatur. Jam per Prosopopeiam ipsi Spiritui S. actionem tribui, quae ipsius Spiritus sive ab homine fiat, ad eas et pro inicite ut nihil magis. F. Socin. in Resp. ad Weik. c. 10.

* Spiritum S. non esse Deutatis Personam hinc discere potes; primum quod ea quae Spiritui S. in Scripturis attribuantur, nulla prorsus ratione Personae conveniant, ut sunt, quod detur, quod ex eo detur, idque aut secundum mensuram aut absque omni mensura, quod effundatur ipse et ex ipso effundatur, et quod eo potentur homines, quod augatur, quod in duplo detur, in partes distribuatur, tot-
I BELIEVE IN THE HOLY GHOST.

and that men do drink of it, and are filled with it; that it is
doubled and distributed, and something is taken from it; and
that sometimes it is distinguished: and from thence they ga-
ther, that the Holy Ghost is not a person, because these expres-
sions are inconsistent with personality. But a satisfactory
answer is easily returned to this objection. It is true, that
God is said to have "given the Holy Ghost to them that obey
him;" (Acts v. 32.) but it is as true that a person may be given:
so we read in the prophet Isaiah, "unto us a son is given;"
(Isa. ix. 6.) and we are assured that "God so loved the world,
that he gave his only-begotten Son," (John iii. 16.) and cer-
tainly the Son of God is a person. And if all the rest of the
expressions be such as they pretend, that is, not proper to a
person; yet do they no way prejudice the truth of our asser-
tion, because we acknowledge the effects and operations of the
Spirit to have in the Scriptures the name of the Spirit, who is
the cause of these operations. And being to that Spirit, as
the cause, we have already shewn those attributes to be given
which can agree to nothing but a person; we therefore con-
clude against the Socinians and the Jews, that the Holy Ghost
is not a quality, but a person;* which is our first assertion.

Our second assertion is, That the Holy Ghost, in whose name
we are baptized, and in whom we profess to believe, is not a
created, but a divine and uncreated person. And for the proof
of this assertion, we shall first make use of that argument which
our adversaries have put into our hands. The Spirit of God
which is in God is not a created person; but the Holy Ghost
is the Spirit of God which is in God, and therefore not a
created person. This argument is raised from those words of
the apostle, "For what man knoweth the things of a man save
the spirit of a man which is in him; even so the things of God
knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God." (1 Cor. ii. 11.) That
this Spirit of God is the Holy Ghost, I find denied by none: that
the same Spirit is in God, appeareth by the apostle's discourse,
and is granted by the Socinians:† that it is so the Spirit of God,
latur ipse et ex ipso tollatur; et similia in
Quast. 12.

* The opinion of the Jews was, that
the Holy Ghost was nothing else but the
afflatus, or energy of God; and therefore
they which denied the substantiality of
the Spirit were looked upon as symboliz-
ing with the Jews in this particular.
'Laetantius in libr. suis, et maxime in
Epistolis ad Demetrianum, Spiritus S.
omine negat substantiam; et errone
Judaeico dicit eum vel ad Patrem referri, vel
ad Filium, et sanctificationem utrisque
Personarum sub euis nomine demonstrari.'
S. Hieron. ep. 63. al. 41. Moses Maimo-
nides sufficiently declareth the opinion
of the Jews, who delivering the several
significations of "mn, makest the fifth and
sixth to be these: 'Quinto significat in-
fluentiam illam intellectualem divinam
Deo Prophetis insit ullam, cujus virtute
prophetant. Sexto significat Propositionum,
et Voluntatem.' And then concludes:
'Vox habe 'mn quando Deo attribuatur,
ubique sumitur partim in quinta, partim
in sexta significacione, quatenus voluntatem

† The Socinians, endeavouring to prove
from this place that the Holy Ghost is
not a person, lay the foundation of their
argument in this, That he is the Spirit of
God, and by nature in God, so that those
things which are proter to the Divine na-
and so by nature in God that it cannot be a creature, is granted by the same. It followeth therefore undeniably that the Holy Ghost is no created person, inasmuch as that cannot be a created person, which hath not a created nature; and that can neither nor be a created nature, which by nature is in God. Wherefore although it be replied by others, that it is not said in the text that the Spirit is in God, yet our adversaries' reason overweighs their negative observation; and it availeth little to say that it is not expressed, which must be acknowledged to be understood. The Holy Ghost then is a person (as I have proved), and is not of a nature distinguished from that which is in God (as is confessed, and only denied to be in God, because it is not said so when it is implied); therefore he is no created person.

Secondly, The Holy Ghost is such a one as against whom a sin may be committed, and when it is so, cannot be remitted. But if he were no person, we could not commit that sin against him; and if he were a created person, the sin committed against him could not be irremissible: therefore he is a person and that uncreated. The argument is grounded upon the words of our Saviour, "All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men, but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men. And whosoever speaketh a word against the Son of man, it shall be forgiven him: but whosoever speaketh a word against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven him, neither in this world, neither in the world to come." (Matt. xii. 31, 32.) By which words it appeareth
there is a sin or blasphemy against the Holy Ghost distinct from all other sins and blasphemies committed against God the Father, or the Son of God; that this sin hath an aggravation added unto it, beyond other sins and blasphemies: but if the Holy Spirit were no person, the sin could not be distinct from those sins which are committed against him whose Spirit he is; and if he were a person created, the sin could receive no such aggravation beyond other sins and blasphemies.

To this they answer, that the sin against the Holy Ghost is not therefore unpardonable, because he is God, which is not to our purpose; but they do not, shew that it can be unpardonable, if he were not God. It is not therefore simply, and for no other reason unpardonable, because that person is God against whom it is committed: for if so, then any sin committed against that person which is God, would be unpardonable; which is false. But that sin, which is particularly called blasphemy against the Holy Spirit is a sin against God, and in every manner aggravated, as makes it irremissible; of which aggravation it were incapable, if the Spirit were not God.

Thirdly, Every created person was made by the Son of God as man, and is now put under the feet of the Son of God as man. But the Spirit of God was not made by the Son of God, nor is he now put under the feet of man. Therefore the Spirit of God can be no created person. “All things were made by the Word, and without him was not any thing made that was made;” (John i.3.) therefore every created person was made by the Word. God “hath put all things under the feet of Christ; and when he saith all things are put under him, it is manifest that he is excepted which did put all things under him:” (1 Cor. xv.27.) and being none is excepted beside God, every created person must be under the feet of the Son of man. But the Spirit of God in the beginning, was not made, yea rather in the beginning made the World, as Job speaks of God, “By his Spirit he hath garnished the heavens:” (Job xxvi. 13.) nor is he under the feet of Christ, now set down at the

* Those which anciently did believe the Spirit of God to be a created person, did also teach that he was made by the Son, as Epiphanius testifieth of the Arians: Παντὶ τοῦτο δεδὼ ἢτοι, οὔτε ἡμελογεῖται τοῦ ἡγέρονιου ἢτο τοῦ Θεοῦ γεγονέναι, καὶ χαὶ καὶ περὶ τοῦ Πνεύματος ἀδαπηθηκαί καὶ τομῆς λεγέν δεξείται ὑπὸ τοῦ Θεοῦ. Νεκ. Ιησ. s. 52. ‘ Arianis ab Arioe, in eo sunt no-tissimi errore, quo Patrem et Filium et Spiritum S. nolunt esse unius ejusdemque naturae, sed esse Filium creaturam, Spiritum vero S. creatorum creaturae, hoc est, ab ipso Filio creaturam volunt.’ S. August. Νεκ. 49. As Eusebius: Τό δὲ παράκλητον Ἀνων Πνεύμα ὁ τέτε Ἐδές, ὁτέ Θεός, ἐπεί μὲ εἰ τοῦ Πατρὸς ἢμαῖς τῷ Θεῷ καὶ αὐτῷ τῷ γίνεσθαι εἴλορι, ἐν δὲ τοῖς διὰ τοῦ Θεοῦ γεγομένων τιθηκαί, δι᾽ ἐνα ἄνωτα δι᾽ αὐτοῦ ἔγενοτα, καὶ χρήσ αὐτῷ ἔγενοτα ὠδι Ἰν. De Eccl. Theol. i. iii. c. 6. 'Ο δὲ Ἰσις μόνος πατρικὴ διακεκρίτθη τετελειμένος, πιστικὸς αὐτὸν Ταν καὶ ἀριστεραὶ τῆς τῶν γεννητῶν ἀπάντων ἑαυτῶν ἐκατερομένων, καὶ δὲ καὶ αὐτές της τῶν παρακλήτων Πνεύματος ὑπαίτητον πάντα γαῖα δι᾽ αὐτοῦ ἔγενοτα, καὶ χρήσ αὐτῷ ἔγενοτα ὠδι Ἰν. Iud. Where it is worth our observation, that Eusebius citing the place of St. John, to prove that the Holy Ghost was made by the Son, leaves out those words twice together, by which the Catholics used to refute that heresy of
right hand of God, who with supreme authority, together with the Father, sent the prophets; as Isaiah testifieth, saying, "Now the Lord God and his Spirit hath sent me;" (xlviii. 16.) and with the same authority, since the exaltation of our Saviour, sent forth such as were separated to himself, as appeareth in the case of Barnabas and Saul, and with the same authority giveth all spiritual gifts,* "dividing to every man severally as he will;" (1 Cor. xii. 11.) so that in the kingdom of Christ all things are done by the power of the Spirit of God." (Rom. xv. 19.)

Fourthly, He, by whose operation Christ was conceived in the womb of the Virgin, was no created person; for by virtue of that conception he was called the Son of God; whereas if a creature had been the cause of his conception, he had been in that respect the son of a creature; nay, according to the adversaries' principles, he had taken upon him the nature of angels. But the Holy Ghost it was by whose operation Christ was conceived in the womb of a virgin. For it was an angel that said to Mary (not that an angel, but that)  the Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee; therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee, shall be called the Son of God." (Luke i. 35.) Therefore the Spirit of God is no created person; which is our second assertion against the ancient, but newly-revived heresy of the Arians and Macedonians.†

the Arians, viz. ἡ γένσαν. All things which were made, were made by the Son, but the Holy Ghost was not among them, ἡ γένσαν, which were made, and therefore was not made by the Son. Τὸ Ἀρχόν γὰρ Πνεῦμα κτισμὰ πάλα κτισματάς φασιν εἶναι, διὰ τὸ, διὰ τοῦ Τούτῳ τὰ πάντα γεννησάντα, ἢ ἐστὶν ἡ γεννάς, αὐτώς τᵀς διαφέραστοι; οὐ καθός εἶρηται τὸ φέροντας, ἀλλὰ καθὸς ὑπονοεῖται, καὶ ἀνὰ μὲν τὸ καλὸς εἰρήμενον κατὰ τὸν καθός αὐτῶν ὑπόνοιαν μεταμεμειχθεῖσθαι: οὐ γὰρ τὰ δεῖον Εὐσιγχρό-

† This express notion of the Spirit of God, that he was a person, as a ministering Spirit, and created, was acknowledged the doctrine of the Arians, as may appear out of the former testimonies, and is evident by those which followed his opinions. Which being of two kinds, the Anomoeans, or pure Arians (such as were Aetius, Eunomius, and Eudoxius), and the Homoeans or Semi-Arians (such as Eusebius and Macedonius), they both alike denied the Divinity, and asserted the creation of the Holy Ghost. The opinion of the Anomoeans is clear out of the words of Eunomius, who very subtilly delivered it, as if it had been the opinion of the ancients: Τὸ τοῦ ἄγνως οὖ παλάταντοι δικαιολογεῖν, παίνειν ἃν τὸν αὐτὸ ἐξαναλοῦσι, καὶ τἀξιν, τἀξιν ἐν ὑπό τοῦ ἕνου πανοτοκοῦν. S. Basil, contra Eunom. I. iii. § 1. The confessors of the ancients was, that the Holy Ghost was the third person in the Trinity in order and dignity; and Eunomius pretending to follow them, added, that he was also third in nature; which the an-
I BELIEVE IN THE HOLY GHOST.

Our third assertion is that which necessarily followeth from the former two, that the Spirit of God, in whose name we are baptized, and in whom we profess to believe, is properly and truly God. For if he be a person, as we have proved in the declaration of our first assertion; if he be a person not created, as we have demonstrated in the corroboration of the second assertion: then must he of necessity be acknowledged to be God, because there is no uncreated essence beside the essence of the one eternal God. And there is this great felicity in the laying of this third assertion, that it is not proposed only by the two preceding assertions, but also by the adversaries of them both. He which denies the first, that is, the Socinian, affirms that the Spirit of God is in God, and is the eternal and omnipotent power of God; which he denies the second, that is, the Macedonian, asserts that he is a person of an intellectual nature subsisting; but whatsoever is a person subsisting of

cients never taught. And what this third in nature was, he thus declared: Τὸν τάχα καὶ φωτίς, πιστεύασαν καὶ μετονήσατε, ἐνεργεία δὲ τῶν γινόμενον τίτρη χάρις τιμωρίως, ἐς τοῦ Θεοῦ γνώσισθαι τίτρη χάρις τιμωρίως, ὡς πρῶτον καὶ οἷον ἀπόστασῖς, καὶ μετονήσατε τοῦ μορφωτικοῦ πνεῖμα, Σείστος καὶ ὁμοίωμας υἱομένης ἀπολογίσθαι. Ἡθ. § 5. And again: ἐὰν μὴ κύριος ἐστιν, οὐκοκλικεῖν ἡ ἐφίγνωσις εἰς δέ σώζει τοὺς Ὀσίας καὶ ἐρωτηθεὶς οὗτοι μὲν γνώσις· λεπτοίσα τούτου καὶ πάρομα αὐτοῦ λογομαζόντα. Ἡθ. § 6. So Gregory Nyssen repeats the words of the same Eunomius: Πεσάζομεν τινὰ τὸν Παράκλητον γνώσισθαι ἐπὶ τοῦ μέσου Θεοῦ λα τοῦ μορφωτικοῦ, and declares that their ordinary language was ἀντί τοῦ Ἰνακτησαμένος τιτρίην κυριακήν καὶ ἐφορί ἱερον λογομαζόν. Ort. 1. cont. Ennom. p. 483—7. Besides these, the Semi-Arians, and some of those which were orthodox as to the Divinity of the Son, were of the same heresy as to the nature of the Holy Ghost, and therefore were called Πισταμαχοῖ (as Epiphanius derives them in the description of that heresy, ἄντω Ἰμαμίας καὶ ἀπὸ ὁμολογίας, ἡθ. lxxiv. § 1.), and afterward Macedonians. Macedonians are a Macedonian Constantinopolitan Church. Eccl. Ecclesipso, quos et Πισταμαχόι Graeci dicunt, eo quod de Spiritu S. Igitur. Nam de Patre et Filio recte sentivit, quod unus sint ejusdemque substantiae vel essentiae, sed de Spiritu S. hoc noluit credere, creaturam eam esse dicentes. T. August. Hares. 26. This heresy was first condemned by the Council of Alexandria: "Εντὸς τοῦ ἀρχαίν Πνεύμα Στηλογράφος; τῇ ορασίων τριάδι συνε- λαμβάνοντο. S. Ort. I. iii. c. 7. Afterward, by the Council held in Illyricum: Ἡμᾶς δὲ φοβερῶς ἐς καὶ αἱ Σέρβα τοῦ νῦν τὸ κατὰ Ἰάκων καὶ ἡ κατὰ Γαλλίαν, μεῖα ἔσοι καὶ τὸν αὐτὸν οὐσίως τοῦ Πατρός, καὶ τοῦ Θεοῦ, καὶ τοῦ ἄγνω Πνεύματος ἐν τρεις προστασίαν, τούτοισιν ἐν τρεις τελεσιαίς ὑποτασσόμενοι. Ann. Theodoret. Hist. Excl. L. iv. c. 8. The Synod held at Rome with the Gallican bishops under Damasus: Ἔστε τίνι Πατρί καὶ τῷ Θεῷ μεῖας οὐσίς, μεῖας ἁγίοις, μεῖας ἁγίοις, μεῖας ἁγίοις, καὶ ἕκας χαρακτήρως παντελῶς χρηστοῖς καὶ τῆς αὐτῆς ὑποτάσεως καὶ οὕτως καὶ τῷ Πνεύματι τῷ Θεῷ. Ann. Theodoret. L. ii. c. 27. Another Synod held under the same Damasus at Rome: Εἰ τίς εἶναι τῷ Πνεύμα οὕτως οὕτως, ἀλλὰ τῷ Θεῷ γεγένετο, διέτεμα ἔστιν. Ann. Theodoret. L. iv. c. 11. After and upon these particular Synods this heresy was fully condemned in the second general Council held at Constantinople, in which these words were added to the Nicene Creed: Καὶ εἰς τῷ Πνεύμα τῷ ἄγνω, τῷ κοσμῷ, τῷ ἑαυτοῦ, τῷ τοῦ Πατρός ἐκπορευόμενοι, καὶ τῷ Πατρός καὶ Θεῷ συμπαικτοῦμεν, τα λαλητὰ τὰ τῆς προφητείας. And in the first Canon mentioning the here-y condemned expressly by the Council, they name: ἡς τῆς τοῦ Ἑνοεομενίας, ὁταν Ἀμεσίως, καὶ τον τον Ἀμεσίως, εἰς τον Ἐκκλησίας; καὶ τον τῆς Ἑνοεομενίας, ὁρον Πισταπολεοχ. And thus the heresy of Macedonians, who made the Holy Ghost a created person, was condemned by the second general Council; οὐκός δὲ ὅν ἐν ποιήσεις ἡράγε Μακεδινῶν τοι, τῶν Ἰουνιτοπίδους οὖν ἐργασία πάντας συνεσκευάζουσιν, ότι τὸ παράγω καὶ ἐναρχικῶς ὑδύθησαι Πνεύμα, εἰσόδημα εὐδοκίας δεῖνας ἀς καὶ Αρμας κατὰ τῷ Θεόν, οὕτως καὶ αὐτὸς κατὰ παράγω παραπτάττομεν Πνεύμας, εἰς ἄλλους καὶ ὑπερτάτος τὰ δεσμοντω καὶ ὑπερτερείνων αὐτοῦ εὐστατον κυριατη. Philius, Epist. 1. § 10.
eternal and omnipotent power, must be acknowledged to be God. Whether therefore we look upon the truth of our assertions, or whether we consider the happiness of their negations, the conclusion is, that the Holy Ghost is God.

But were there nothing, which is already said, demonstrated, there is enough written in the Word of God to assure us of the Deity of the Holy Ghost, to make us undoubtedly believe that the Spirit of God is God. It is written by Moses, that “when he went in before the Lord to speak with him, he took the veil off, until he came out.” (Exod. xxxiv. 34.) And that Lord, with whom Moses spake, was the one Jehovah, the God of heaven and earth. But we are assured that the Spirit was and is that Lord to which Moses spake; for the apostle hath taught us so much by his own interpretation, saying, “Even unto this day, when Moses is read, the veil is upon their heart. Nevertheless, when it shall turn to the Lord, the veil shall be taken away. Now the Lord is that Spirit.” (2 Cor. iii. 15—17.) The Spirit is here so plainly said to be the Lord, that is, Jehovah, the one eternal God, that the adversaries of this truth must either deny that the Lord is here to be taken for God, or, that the Spirit is to be taken for the Spirit of God: either of which denials must seem very strange to any person, who considereth the force and plainness of the apostle’s discourse.

But indeed they are so ready to deny anything, that they will by no means acknowledge either the one or the other: but the Lord must be something which is not God, and the Spirit must be something which is not the Spirit of God: and then they conclude the argument is of no force, and may as well conclude the apostle’s interpretation hath no sense. The Lord, they say, is Christ, and not God; for Christ, they say, is not God: the Spirit, they say, is the mystery of the Law, or the hidden sense of it, and that every one knows is not the Spirit of God. But we are assured that the apostle did mean by the Spirit, the Spirit of God, not the sense of the Law; for he addeth immediately, “Where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty;” and the sense of the Law is never called the Spirit of the Lord. Nay, were it not that the coherence of the discourse did satisfy us; yet the objection ought not at all to move us: for the name of Spirit, in those places mentioned by them to signify the sense of the Law, hath no affinity with this, according to their own way of argumentation: for it is never so taken with the emphasis of an article,* and put in the place

---

* The places alleged by them are these: *Πεπτωμα και τα εις Πνευματι, εκ γενεσεως, Rom. ii. 29. Ἡ αποκλεισθησθαι ἐν καινοται πνευματικς, και εκ παλαιοται γενεσεως, Rom. vii. 6. Ἄπτεται πνευματικης ἐλευθεριας και ἀμφοτηριας, Rev. xi. 3. One of these places speaks only adversatively, the other two have πνευμα in obliquo; and one of those two have it cum adjuncto, both of them cum opposito, none of them cum articulo, none of them are in two subject, or predicati; and therefore how any of these can shew, that τι πνευμα in this place by us urged, invested with an article, standing in the place either of a complete subject, or a complete predi-
either of an entire subject or a predicate in a proposition, except by way of opposition; and one of those it must of necessity be, in the words of the apostle, "now the Lord is the Spirit," and that without the least intimation of any opposition.

Again, we are assured that by the Lord the apostle did understand the eternal God; for he speaketh of the same Lord which he mentioned in the verse before, and that is the Lord God spoken of in the Book of Exodus; of which except the apostle speaks, his argument hath neither inference nor coherence. In vain therefore is this pretended for an answer, that the apostle by the Lord doth always, unless he cite some place out of the old Covenant, understand Christ; for in this particular he citeth a certain place out of the Book of Exodus,* and useth the name of the Lord in the same notion in which there it is used, framing an argument and urging it from thence; and if he did not, that rule is not so universal and infallible, but that the Lord in the language of the same apostle may not signify the second, but the first or third person of the Trinity. If then the Lord be the eternal God, as the apostle without any question understood him in Moses; if the Spirit be the
cate, with nothing adjoined, nothing opposed unto it, must be taken in the same sense with them, I cannot imagine. In the sixth verse of this chapter (2 Cor. iii) indeed it is the subject of a proposition, and invested with an article; but that is an article of opposition: Τὸ γὰρ γέμαμα ἑποκτίναι, τι δὲ πνεῦμα ξυστικη: and this nut. Howsoever, in that sense objected, it neither agrees with the words before it, nor with those which follow it.

* The words in Exodus were these, xxxvi. 34. Ἡδη δὲ ἀν εἰςεπετείνα λαβείς ἑαυτῷ, περιμετρίο τι κα- λμερα: which are thus made use of by the apostle: κεί αδὲ ἐν ἑποκτίναι πρός Κήρυς, περιμετρίο τι καλμερα. Kéryς then is here used by St. Paul citing some place out of the old covenant, and the words which follow, ὁ δὲ Κήρυς, signify the same Κήρυς, as appeareth by the conjunction δὲ: and if so, then according to the doctrine of our adversaries, it cannot signify Christ. For that the Lord of whom Moses spake, was then when Moses wrote: but that Christ of which they interpret it, was not then, as they teach; therefore that Lord cannot be Christ, in their interpretation, without a contradic- tion.

† For though Christ be most frequently called our Lord, yet being God the Father of Christ is our Lord, being Ο Κήρυς is often used by St. Paul without any restriction or intimation of appropriating that act unto the Son, which is attributed to the Lord by him, the rule cannot be certain and universal. For I desire to know by what means they can be assured that the apostle doth by the title Ο Κήρυς intend Christ, and not the most high God, the Father. In these following places: 1 Cor. iii. 5. iv. 19. vii. 10. 12. xvi. 7. 1 Thess. iv. 6. v. 27. 2 Thess. iii. 1. 5. 16. II. l. 16. 18. ii. 7. And beside, I ask how the pretence of this general rule can be properly objected by those who know that, to whom they do object this rule, have contended that this title is elsewhere attributed to the Holy Ghost. As St. Basil upon that place, 2 Thess. iii. 5. Ὁ δὲ κηρύς κατευδόθη ἢαδὲ τὰς καρδίας: εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Θεόν, καὶ εἰς τὸν ὑπεράνων τὸν Χριστόν, thus disputes: Τὸ δὲ κηρύσσειν Κήρυς εἰς τὸν Θεόν ἄγαν, καὶ εἰς τὸν ὑπεράνων τὸν Χριστόν ὑπεράνων; απεκραθάσθαι ἢμιν εἰς τὸ Πνεῦμα καταδυστεθέν. Εἰτε γὰρ πεί τοῦ Πατρός ὁ Κήρυς, πανταῖς ἐν ἑποκτίναι, ὁ δὲ Κήρυς ἢμιν κατευδόθη εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Θεόν, καὶ εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Υπεράνων. Εἰτε γὰρ πεί τοῦ Πατρός ὁ Κήρυς, πανταῖς ἐν ἑποκτίναι, ὁ δὲ Κήρυς ἢμιν κατευδόθη εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Θεόν, καὶ εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Υπεράνων. Εἰτε γὰρ πεί τοῦ Πατρός ὁ Κήρυς, πανταῖς ἐν ἑποκτίναι, ὁ δὲ Κήρυς ἢμιν κατευδόθη εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Θεόν, καὶ εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Υπεράνων. Εἰτε γὰρ πεί τοῦ Πατρός ὁ Κήρυς, πανταῖς ἐν ἑποκτίναι, ὁ δὲ Κήρυς ἢμιν κατευδόθη εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Θεόν, καὶ εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Υπεράνων. Εἰτε γὰρ πεί τοῦ Πατρός ὁ Κήρυς, πανταῖς ἐν ἑποκτίναι, ὁ δὲ Κήρυς ἢμιν κατευδόθη εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Θεόν, καὶ εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Υπεράνων. Εἰτε γὰρ πεί τοῦ Πατρός ὁ Κήρυς, πανταῖς ἐν ἑποκτίναι, ὁ δὲ Κήρυς ἢμιν κατευδόθη εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Θεόν, καὶ εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Υπεράνων. Εἰτε γὰρ πεί τοῦ Πατρός ὁ Κήρυς, πανταῖς ἐν ἑποκτίναι, ὁ δὲ Κήρυς ἢμιν κατευδόθη εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Θεόν, καὶ εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Υπεράνων. Εἰτε γὰρ πεί τοῦ Πατρός ὁ Κήρυς, πανταῖς ἐν ἑποκτίναι, ὁ δὲ Κήρυς ἢμιν κατευδόθη εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Θεόν, καὶ εἰς τὸν ἄγαν τὸν Υπεράνων.
Spirit of the Lord, as the apostle expounds himself in the words immediately following; then the Spirit of the Lord is the eternal God, and so termed in the Scriptures.

Again, the same Scriptures do clearly manifest the same Spirit to be God, and term him plainly and expressly so. For when Peter said, "Ananias, why hast Satan filled thine heart to lie to the Holy Ghost?" (Acts v. 3.) he repeateth the same question in reference to the same offence, "Why hast thou conceived this thing in thine heart? thou hast not lied unto men, but unto God?" (Ibid. 4.) To lie unto the Holy Ghost, is to lie unto God: to lie unto the Holy Ghost, is not to lie unto men, because the Holy Ghost is not man: and consequently not to lie unto any angel, because the Holy Ghost is not an angel; not to lie unto any creature, because the Holy Ghost is no creature; but to lie unto God, because the Holy Ghost is God.

To this plain and evident argument there are so many answers, that the very multitude discovers the weakness of them all; for if any one of them were sufficient to bear down the force of our reason, the rest would be superfluous. First, They answer that it cannot be collected from hence that the Spirit is God, because the Holy Ghost in the original is put in one case;* and God in another: and the apostle speaking in one manner of the Spirit, and in another of God, cannot shew that the Spirit is God. To which is easily answered, that the case or manner of the apostle's speech can make no difference, if the sense and substance be the same, as here it is; for to deceive the Holy Ghost, is nothing else but to lie unto him, or by a lie to endeavour to deceive him. The act objected to Ananias was but one, which act of his the apostles looked upon as injurious, not to themselves, but to the Holy Ghost; and therefore St. Peter shewed the sin to be not against men, but against God: as certainly then as the apostles were men, so certainly was the Holy Ghost, in the esteem of St. Peter, God.

As for that sense which they put upon the words, different from that of lying to God, as if Ananias were accused for 'counterfeiting the Holy Ghost,' it is most certain that the words can in this place bear no such sense; for the sin of Ananias is again expressed in the case of his wife Sapphira, to whom St. Peter said, "How is it that ye have agreed together to tempt the Spirit of the Lord?" (Ibid. 9.) But to tempt the Spirit, and to counterfeit the Spirit, are two several things; and it is evident that in this place the tempting of the Spirit was nothing else but lying to him; for St. Peter said to Sap-

* 'Ex his facile apparat baud quaquam ex eo loco concludi posse Spiritum S. esse Deum, cum alio modo de Spiritu S. Ioquitor Petrus, alio de Deo. Ilic dicit mentiri seu fallere, ac ludificari Spiritum S., hic mentiri Deo.' Crellius, De uno Deo Patre, l. i. § 3. Argw. 1.
phira, "Tell me whether ye sold the land for so much? and she said, Yea, for so much." (Ibid. 8.) In which answer she lied. "Then Peter said unto her, How is it that ye have agreed together to tempt the Spirit of the Lord?" viz. in saying that ye sold the land for so much. Here is no colour then for that new pretence, that Ananias did bear the apostles in hand that what was done, he did by the motion of the Holy Spirit, and so did pretend, counterfeit, and belie the Holy Ghost. This is not to expound St. Peter, but to belie Ananias, and make him guilty of that sin, which he was never yet accused of. It is most certain that he lied; it is also certain that he to whom he lied was the Holy Ghost; and therefore it might be well translated, that he lied to the Holy Ghost.*

Next, Because they may very well be conscious that this verbal or phraseological answer may not seem sufficient, they tell us, though both the phrases were synonymous, yet they did no way prove that the Spirit is God: and the reason which they render to justify this negation, is, because there are several places of the Scripture, in which the messengers of God, who are acknowledged not to be God, are mentioned in the same relation unto God as here the Spirit is. To which the answer is most plain and clear, that there is no creature ever mentioned in the same manner as the Holy Ghost is here. As when they allege those words of the apostle, "He therefore that despiseth, despiseth not man but God, who hath also given us his Holy Spirit;" (1 Thess. iv. 8.) I cannot see what similitude can be made unto the Scripture now in question; for if the Spirit be not understood in the first words, "he therefore that despiseth," it hath no relation to the present question; and if it be, it were so far from being a confirmation, that it would be another confirmation. As for the other, "He that heareth you, heareth me; he that despiseth you, despiseth me; and he that despiseth me, despiseth him that sent me:" (Matt. x. 40. Luke x. 16.) it is so far from justifying their interpretation, that it hath nothing in it like that which founds

* Our translation is here accused without reason. For though the original be, δισενοται εις την πνευμα τη αρω, yet some copies have it εις τη πνευμα, and the Syriac did so read and interpret it. Therefore, we refer the Vulgar Latin to the same purpose, mentiri te Spiritut S. And the author of the Tractate De Temp. Barbarico, under the name of St. Anastyn, mentiri te spiritum S. c. 3. Now ἐμπεωται εις την πνευμα is the same with την πνευμα, as μεν διέσπεις εις αλλονος, he not one to another. Col. iii. 9. If we read it τη πνευμα, then it is rightly translated. Again, if we read it τη πνευμα, it has in this case the sense of την πνευματι. As Psalm Ixiv. 2. כני קי נשי ל.XX.
our reason, that is, no opposition. For there are three particulars in that Scripture, which we produce for our assertion; first, That they lied to the Holy Ghost; secondly, That in doing so, they lied not unto men; and thirdly, That by the same act they lied unto God. In which the opposition is our foundation. For, if the Spirit of God were not God, as we are sure it is not man, it might as well have been said, You lied not unto the Holy Ghost, but unto God. And indeed if the apostle would have aggravated the sin of Ananias with the full propriety and iniquity, in their sense, he must have said, Thou hast not lied unto men, nor unto the Spirit of God, but unto God. But being he first told him plainly his sin, lying to the Holy Ghost; and then let him know the sinfulness of it, "thou hast not lied unto men, but unto God;" it is evident that the Holy Ghost to whom he lied, is God.

Thirdly, That person whose inhabitation maketh a temple, is God, for if the notion of a temple be nothing else but to be the house of God, if to be the house of any creature is not to be a temple, as it is not; then no inhabitation of any created person can make a temple. But the inhabitation of the Holy Ghost maketh a temple, as we are informed by the apostle: "What, know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you?" (1 Cor. vi. 19.) Therefore the Holy Ghost is God.

To this is replied differently according to the diversity of our adversaries; as it is not probable that the deniers of so great a truth should agree. The first tells us, that if we would enforce by this reason, that the Holy Ghost is God, we must prove that he is a person,* and that he doth possess our bodies by a divine right. But we have already proved that he is a person, and certainly there can be no other right but that which belongs to God, by which the Holy Ghost inhabiteth and possesseth us. Nor have they any pretence to evince the contrary, but that which more confirmeth our assertion; for they urge only those words of the apostle, "Know ye not, that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?" (1 Cor. iii. 16.) We do certainly know that we are the temple of God; and we also know that the Spirit of God therefore dwelleth in us; and we therefore know that we are the temple of God, because we know that the Spirit of God dwelleth in us; and we know no other reason why we are the temple of God, when the Spirit of God dwelleth in us, but only because we know the Spirit of God is God; for if the Spirit were any other person not divine, or any thing

---

* Si quis ex eo. quod corpus nostrum Spiritus S. templum sit, concludes velit, eum esse Deum; illi demonstrandum est, ha corpus nostrum Spiritus S. templum dicit ut intelligatur eum esse personam, cujus honoris corpus nostrum sit dedica- tum, a qua corpus nostrum eo jure quod divini nominis proprium est possidetur, et principaliter incolatur.' Crell, De uno Deo Patre, l. 1. § 3. arg. 1.
but a person though divine, we could not by any means be assured, that he did properly inhabit in us; or if he did, that by his inhabitation he could make a temple of us. The second hath very little to say, but only this, that being the Holy Ghost who possesseth us a person, we must shew that our bodies are his by the highest interest, and primarily dedicated to his honour; which he therefore conceives we cannot shew, because he thinks our body is not at all his by interest, or dedicated to his honour. But it were very strange, if we should be baptized in the name of the Holy Ghost, and that the Holy Ghost should have no interest in us, but that he should be ours by interest, and not we his; that the Spirit of God should call for men to be separated to himself, and that they which are so separated should be no way dedicated to his honour. If the Holy Ghost had no interest in us, because he is given unto us, then Christ can have no interest in us, for he is also given unto us. Indeed if the apostle had said, as our adversary doth, that 'we ought with our body to glorify, not the Spirit, but God;' I should have concluded that the Spirit is not God: but being that the blessed Spirit which dwelleth in us, and spake by the apostles, never taught us not to glorify him, I shall rather take leave to suspect that of blasphemy, than the assertion of his Deity to be false divinity. And whereas it is said, that, 'the apostle hath hinted in what respect our body is the temple of the Holy Spirit, to wit, by inhabitation;' that is so far from breeding in me the least thought of diminution, that by this only notion I am fully confirmed in the belief of my assertion. For I know no other way by which God peculiarly inhabiteth in us, but by the inhabitation of the Spirit: and I understand no other way, by which we can be the temple of God, but by the inhabitation of God; as it is written, "Ye are the temple of the living God, as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them, and I will be their God, and they shall be my people:" (1 Cor. vi. 16.) and therefore I conclude that the Holy Ghost, who by his inhabitation maketh our bodies temples, is that God which dwelleth in us.

Fourthly, He, to whom the divine attributes do belong as certainly as they belong unto God the Father, is truly and properly God; because those are divine attributes, which are properties of the divine nature, and consequently none can be endued with them, to whom the nature of God belongeth not. But the divine attributes, such as are omniscience, omnipotence, omnipresence, and the like, do belong as certainly unto the Holy Ghost as they do unto God the Father: therefore we are as much assured that the Holy Ghost is God. The Scriptures to prove these attributes are so well known, that I shall not need to mention them; and they are so many, that to manage them against the exceptions of the adversaries, would take up too much room in this discourse; especially consider-
ing they question some of them in the Father as well as in the Spirit, and so I should be forced to a double proof.

Fifthly, He, to whom are attributed those works which are proper unto God, by and for which God doth require of us to acknowledge and worship him as God, is properly and truly God: because the operations of all things flow from that essence by which they are; and therefore if the operations be truly divine, that is, such as can be produced by no other but God, then must the essence of that person which produceth them be truly such. But such works as are proper unto God, by and for which God hath required us to acknowledge him and worship him as God, are attributed often in the Scriptures to the Spirit of God, as the acts of creation and conservation of all things, the miracles wrought upon and by our blessed Saviour, the works of grace and power wrought in the hearts of true believers, and the like. Therefore, without any farther disputation, which cannot be both long and proper for an exposition, I conclude my third assertion, that the Holy Ghost, or Spirit of God, is a person truly and properly divine, the true and living God.

Now being we do firmly believe, that the true and living God can be but one, that the infinity of the divine essence is incapable of multiplicity; being we have already shown that the Father is originally that one God, which is denied by none; and have also proved, that the only Son is the same God, receiving by an eternal generation the same divine nature from the Father: it will also be necessary, for the understanding of the nature of the Spirit of God, to shew how that blessed Spirit is God: to which purpose, that I may proceed methodically, my fourth assertion is, That the Spirit of God, which is the true and living God, is neither God the Father, nor the Son of God.

First, Though the Father be undoubtedly God, though the Holy Ghost be also God, and (because there cannot be two Gods) the same God; yet the Holy Ghost is not the Father: for the Scriptures do as certainly distinguish them in their persons, as they do unite them in their nature. He which proceedeth from the Father is not the Father, because it is impossible any person should proceed from himself: but the Holy Ghost "proceedeth from the Father:" (John xvi. 26.) therefore he is not the Father. He which is sent by the Father, and from the Father, is not the Father, by whom and from whom he is sent; for no person can be sent by himself, and by another from himself: but the Holy Ghost is sent by God the Father, and by the Son "from the Father;" (Ibid.) therefore he is not the Father.

Secondly, Though we have formerly proved, that the Son of God is properly and truly God; though we now have proved, that the Spirit of God is God, and in reference to both we un-
derstand the same God; yet the *Holy Ghost* is not the Son: for he which receiveth of that which is the Son's, and by receiving of it glorifieth the Son, cannot be the Son, because no person can be said to receive from himself that which is his own, and to glorify himself by so receiving; "but the Comforter, which is the *Holy Ghost," (John xiv. 26.) receiveth of that which is the Son's, and by receiving of it glorifieth the Son; for so our Saviour expressly said, "He shall glorify me, for he shall receive of mine:" (John xvi. 14.) therefore the *Holy Ghost* is not the Son. Again, he whose coming depended upon the Son's departing, and his sending after his departure, cannot be the Son, who therefore departed that he might send him. But the coming of the *Holy Ghost* depended upon the Son's departing, and his sending after his departure: as he told the apostles before he departed, "I tell you the truth, it is expedient for you that I go away; for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you:" (Ibid. 7.) therefore the *Holy Ghost* is not the Son.

Thirdly, Though the Father be God, and the Son be God, and the *Holy Ghost* be also the same God, yet we are assured that the *Holy Ghost* is neither the Father nor the Son; because the Scriptures frequently represent him as distinguished both from the Father and the Son. As, when "the Spirit of God descended like a dove, and lo, a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased," (Matt. iii. 16.) he was manifestly distinguished from the person of the Son, upon whom he lighted, and from the person of the Father, who spake from heaven of his Son. The apostle teaches us, that "through the Son we have an access by one Spirit unto the Father." (Eph. ii. 18.) and consequently assureth us, that the Spirit by whom, is not the Father to whom, nor the Son through whom, we have that access. So "God sent forth his Son, that we might receive the adoption of sons:" and "because we are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying, Abba, Father." (Gal. iv. 4—6.) Where the Son is distinguished from the Father as first sent by him, and the Spirit of the Son is distinguished both from the Father and the Son, as sent by the Father after he had sent the Son. And this our Saviour hath taught us several times in his word, as, "The Comforter whom the Father will send in my name;" "The Comforter whom I will send unto you from the Father;" (John xiv. 26. xv. 26.) and when that Comforter is come, "Go, teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the *Holy Ghost."" (Matt. xxviii. 19.) I conclude therefore against the old Sabellian heresy,* that the

* This heresy was very ancient, even before Sabellius, though those which held it were afterwards all so denominated from Sabellius. For we find it was the opinion of Praxeas, against whom Tertullian wrote; who being urged with that place, where the three persons were distinguished, "The *Holy Ghost* shall come
Holy Ghost, although he be truly and properly God, is neither God the Father, nor God the Son, which is my fourth assertion.

Our fifth assertion is, That the Holy Ghost is the third person in the blessed Trinity. For being he is a person, by our first assertion; a person not created, by the second; but a divine person, properly and truly God, by the third; being though he is thus truly God, he is neither the Father nor the Son, by the fourth assertion it followeth that he is one of the three; and of the three is the third. For as there is a number in the Trinity, by which the persons are neither more nor less than three; so there is also an order, by which, of these persons, the Father is the first, the Son the second, and the Holy Ghost the third. Nor is this order arbitrary or external, but internal and necessary, by virtue of a subordination of the second unto the first, and of the third unto the first and second. The Godhead was communicated from the Father to the Son, not from the Son unto the Father; though therefore this were done from all eternity, and so there can be no priority of time, yet there must be acknowledged a priority of order, by which the Father, not the Son, is first, and the Son, not the Father, second. Again, the same Godhead was communicated by the Father and the Son unto the Holy Ghost, not by the Holy Ghost to the Father or the Son; though therefore this was also done from all eternity, and therefore can admit of no priority in reference to time; yet that of order must be here observed; so that the Spirit receiving the Godhead from the Father who is the first person, cannot be the first; receiving the same from the Son, who is the second, cannot be the second; but being from the first and second must be of the three the third. And thus both the number and the order of the persons are signified together by the apostle, saying, "There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost, and these three are one." (1 John v. 7.) And though they are not expressly said to be three, yet the same number is sufficiently declared, and the same order is expressly mentioned in the baptismal institution made "in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." As therefore we have
formerly proved the Son to be truly the second person, and at the same time the Father to be first, so doth this which we have (but briefly) spoken, prove that the Holy Ghost is the third;* which is our fifth assertion.

Our sixth and last assertion (sufficient to manifest the nature of the Holy Ghost, as he is the Spirit of God) teacheth that Spirit to be a person proceeding from the Father and the Son. From whence at last we have a clear description of the blessed Spirit, that he is the most high and eternal God, of the same nature, attributes, and operations, with the Father and the Son, as receiving the same essence from the Father and the Son, by proceeding from them both. Now this procession of the Spirit, in reference to the Father, is delivered expressly, in relation to the Son, and is contained virtually in the Scriptures. First, it is expressly said, That the Holy Ghost proceedeth from the Father, as our Saviour testifieth, "When the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me." (John xv. 26.) And this is also evident from what hath been already asserted: for being the Father and the Spirit are the same God, and being so the same in the unity of the nature of God, are yet distinct in their personality, one of them must have the same nature from the other; and because the Father hath been already shewn to have it from none, it followeth that the Spirit hath it from him.

Secondly, Though it be not expressly spoken in the Scripture, that the Holy Ghost proceedeth from the Son, yet the substance of the same truth is virtually contained there: because those very expressions, which are spoken of the Holy Spirit in relation to the Father, for that reason because he proceedeth from the Father, are also spoken of the same Spirit in relation to the Son; and therefore there must be the same reason presupposed in reference to the Son, which is expressed in reference to the Father. Because the Spirit proceedeth from the Father, therefore it is called the Spirit of God and the Spirit of the Father. "It is not ye that speak, but the Spirit of your Father which speaketh in you." (Matt. x. 20.) For by the language of the apostle, the Spirit of God is the Spirit which is of God, saying, "The things of God knoweth no man but the Spirit of God. And we have received not the Spirit of the world, but the Spirit which is of God." (1 Cor. ii. 11, 12.) Now the same Spirit is also called the Spirit of the Son, for "because we are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into our hearts:" (Gal. iv. 6.) the Spirit of Christ, "Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his;" (Rom. viii. 9.) even "the Spirit of Christ which was in the prophets:" (1 Pet. i. 11.) the Spirit of Jesus Christ, as the

apostle speaks, "I know that this shall turn to my salvation through your prayer, and the supply of the Spirit of Jesus Christ." (Phil. i. 19.) If then the Holy Ghost be called the Spirit of God the Father because he proceedeth from the Father, it followeth that, being called also the Spirit of the Son, he proceedeth also from the Son.

Again, Because the Holy Ghost proceedeth from the Father he is therefore sent by the Father, as from him who hath by the original communication a right of mission; as, "the Comforter which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send." (John xiv. 26.) But the same Spirit which is sent by the Father, is also sent by the Son, as he saith, "when the Comforter is come whom I will send unto you." (John xv. 26.) Therefore the Son hath the same right of mission with the Father, and consequently must be acknowledged to have communicated the same essence. The Father is never sent by the Son, because he received not the Godhead from him; but the Father sendeth the Son, because he communicated the Godhead to him: in the same manner neither the Father nor the Son is ever sent by the Holy Spirit, because neither of them received the divine nature from the Spirit; but both the Father and the Son sendeth the Holy Ghost, because the divine nature, common to both the Father and the Son, was communicated by them both to the Holy Ghost. As therefore the Scriptures declare expressly, that the Spirit proceedeth from the Father; so do they also virtually teach, that he proceedeth from the Son.

From whence it came to pass in the primitive times, that the Latin fathers taught expressly the procession of the Spirit from the Father and the Son, because by good consequence they did collect so much from those passages of the Scripture

* This is not the late but ancient opinion of the Latin Church, as will appear by these testimonies. 'Loqui de eo (Sp. S.) non necesser est, quia de Patre et Filio auctoribus confidunt est.' S. Hil. de Trin. L. ii. §. 29. 'Spiritus quoque Sanctus cum procedit a Patre et Filio, non separatur a Patre, non separatur a Filio.' S. Ambros. de Sp. S. i. i. c. 11. 'Spiritus autem Sanctus vere Spiritus est, procedens quidem a Patre et Filio: sed non est ipse Filius, quia non generator, neque Pater, quia procedit ab utroque.' Id. de Symb. c. 3.

'Et in servery celestia dona profudit, Spiritum ab Unigeno Sanctum et Patre procedentem.'

Paulinus in Nat. S. S. Felicis, ver. 92.

'Non possimus dicere quod Spiritus S. et Filius non procedat; neque enim frustra Spiritus et Patris et Filii Spiritus dictatur.' S. August. de Trin. L. i. c. 20.

'Firmissime tene et nullatenus dubitatis, eundem Spiritum S. qui Patris et Filius unus es: Spiritus, de Patre et Fili proce-
which we have used to prove that truth. And the Greek fathers, though they stuck more closely to the phrase and language of the Scripture, saying, that the Spirit proceedeth from the Father. and not saying, that he proceedeth from the Son; yet they acknowledged under another Scripture-expression the same thing which the Latins understand by procession, viz. That the Spirit is of or from the Son, as he is of and from the Father; and therefore usually when they said, he proceeded from the Father, they also added, he received of the Son.† The interpretation of which words, according to the Latins, inferred a procession;‡ and that which the Greeks did understand thereby, was the same which the Latins meant by the procession from the Son, that is, the receiving of his essence from him. That as the Son is God of God by being of the Father, so the Holy Ghost is God of God by being of the Father and the Son,§ as receiving that infinite and eternal essence from them both.

* The ancient Greek fathers, speaking of this procession, mention the Father only, and never, I think, express the Son, as sticking constantly in this to the language of the Scriptures. Thus Gregory Nazianzen distinguished the three persons: Πάντα των θεσμῶν ἐνα πάντας; τὸ ἀγαθὸν ἐπάγως; καὶ τὸ γνώνιστον, καὶ τὸ εἰς τὸν Πατέρα ἐκπρομόλογον. όμω, εἰς διο, p. 363. And the three properties attributed to the three persons are these, ἀγαθία to the Father, γνώνισμα to the Son, and ἐπιμόλογος to the Holy Ghost. But this word ἐπιμόλογος or the term ἐκπρομόλογος was not used by the Greeks in reference to the Son, but only as the Scriptures speak, in reference to the Father.

† A Epiphanius: Καὶ γὰς καὶ πρί τῷ Πνεύματι ἐπιμόλογος, καὶ τιμίαιτε λίγον κινητήτης εἰς τὸν Πατέρα, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἐν τῷ ἄνω τοῦ, ἐκ τοῦ ἐν τῷ Πατέρα ἐκπρομόλογου, ἐκ Πατέρα ἐκπρομόλογου, καὶ τοῦ Πνεύματος, Patr. ix. c. 52. Τὸ ἐν Πνεύματι, Πνεύμα ἐνοῦ, Πνεύμα Θεοῦ, ἐκ τοῦ Πνεύματος καὶ Τίτι, εἰκὸν ἀλλήλων ἐνοῦ, ἀληθές τοῦ ἐνοῦ, ἀληθές Πατέρα, ἐκπρομόλογου, καὶ τοῦ Πνεύματος. Id. Anot. c. 6. 'Аπ' ἐνοῦ τῷ Πνεύματι μιᾷ Πατρί καὶ Τίτι, οὐ συνάδελφον Πατρί, οὐ γενετό, οὐ κτιστών, οὐ σύνεδρον Τίτι, οὐ κτιστῶν; ἐκ τοῦ Πατρί, εἰκὸν τοῦ Πατρί, οὐκ ἑκτελεσθέντων, καὶ τοῦ Πνεύματος. Id. Her. ixi. c. 4.

‡ A Filio accipit, qui et ab eo mittitur, et a Patre procedit: et interrogo, utrum id ipsum sit a Filio accipere, quod a Patre procedere. Quod si differe credere inter accipere a Filio, et a Patre procedere, certe id ipsum atque unum esse existimabitur, a Filio accipere, quod sit accipere a Patre. Ipse eum Dominus uit, Quoniam de me accipiet, et anuniciabit vobis. S. Hil. l. viii. de Trin. c. 20. So St. Cyril: 'Επιφανία (τὸ Πνεύμα) δραμώστε τὸ ἐν τῷ Τίτι, καὶ ἐπιφανεία θεοπρέπετε; ις πάσιν, πάσιν αὐτὸ τὸν Ἱστοὶ ταξιδεύστε ἵνα ἱτεμεν τι καὶ δόθαι, διὰ τοῦτο σχέσιν, εἰ τῷ ἡμῶν ἡγησαίται. Com. in Is. xi. c. 1. 'De Filio ergo accipit, et omnia quae habet Pater Filii sunt, quae Spiritus S. accept; quia non de solo Filio, sed simul de utroque procedit. Fulg. l. vii. contra Fab. fragm. apud Theodulph. de Sp. S.

§ That thus was the sense of the Greek fathers anciently, who used those two Scriptures of the Holy Ghost, appeared by Epiphanius, who frequently declares so much; as in Anotaro: Πνεῦμα γὰς Θεοῦ καὶ Πνεῦμα Πατρί, καὶ Πνεῦμα Τίτι, ἐκ τοῦ Πατρί καὶ τοῦ Τίτι, τρίτον τῷ γεγονέναι, § 8. And speaking of Apanis who lied unto the Spirit: 'Αν θει εἰς Πατρι καὶ Τίτι, τὸ Πνεῦμα, ὡς ἐκπρομόλογος ἀπὸ τοῦ τιμαμάτος τηρηθέντων. s. 9. Οἴκει ἐκπρομόλογος Πατρὶ καὶ Τίτι, ἀλά ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς οἰκίας, ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς βίωσις, ἐκ Πατρὶ καὶ Τίτι, εἰς Πατρὶ καὶ Τίτι ἐνυπότατος καὶ Πνεῦμα ἐνοῦ. Id. Hares. ixi. c. 4. In these words is plainly contained the truth, That the Spirit is God of God the Father, and of God the Son. And that they did conclude this truth from those two scriptures, he proceedeth from the Father, and receiveth of the Son, as is also evident by these and the like passages: Εἰ τῷ Χριστῷ ἐν τῷ Πατρὶ ἐκπρομόλογαι εἰς τῷ Θεῷ, καὶ τῷ Πνεύματι ἐν τῷ Χριστῷ, τῷ ἀναστάτῳ, ἐκ τοῦ Χριστοῦ, τῷ παρα τοῦ Πατρὸς ἐκπρομόλογαι, καὶ εἰς τῷ ἐνυπότατος τῷ Πνεύματι, ἐνοῦ τῷ Χριστῷ, οὗ τῶν τῶν τριῶν μιᾶς, τῆς Μary, οὗ Πατρὸς. Εἰς ἐνοῦ τῷ Πατρὸς ἐκπρομόλογος, καὶ ἐν τῷ ἐνυπότατος τῷ τριῶν μιᾶς, καὶ τῷ Θεῷ, τῇ παρα τοῦ Πατρὸς ἐκπρομόλογα, καὶ τῇ τριῶν μιᾶς. Eph. Anot. c. 67. Εἰ τῶν παρα τοῦ Πατρὸς ἐκπρομόλογα, καὶ τῇ τριῶν μιᾶς, καὶ τῇ ἐνυπότατος τῇ παρα τοῦ Πατρὸς ἐκπρομόλογα, καὶ τῇ τριῶν μιᾶς. Eph. Anot. c. 67. Εἰ τῶν παρα τοῦ Πατρὸς ἐκπρομόλογα, καὶ τῇ τριῶν μιᾶς, καὶ τῇ ἐνυπότατος τῇ παρα τοῦ Πατρὸς ἐκπρομόλογα, καὶ τῇ τριῶν μιᾶς.
This being thus the general doctrine of the eastern and the western Church, differing only in the manner of expression, and that without any opposition; Theodoret gave the first occasion of a difference, making use of the Greeks' expression against the doctrine both of Greeks and Latins;* denying that the Holy Ghost received his essence from the Son, because the Scripture saith, he proceedeth from the Father, and is the Spirit which is of God. But St. Cyril, against whom he wrote, took small notice of this objection; and the writings of Theodoret, in which this was contained, being condemned; there was no sensible difference in the Church, for many years, concerning this particular. Afterwards divers of the Greeks expressly denied the procession from the Son, and several disputations did arise in the western Church, till at last the Latins put it into the Constantinopolitan Creed;† and being admo-

Ibid. § 73. * Non loquetur a semetipsa, hoc est, non sine me et Patris arbitrio, qui inseparabillas a mea et Patris et voluntate; quia non ex se, sed ex Patre et me est; hoc enim ipsum quod subsistit et loquatur, a Patre et me illi est.* Dialogus de Sp. S. l. ii. §. 13. Et paucis post: * Hic me conscribere, id est Paracleton, quia de meo oapiet. Rursus hoc accipere ut divina naturae conveniat intelligendum—Spiri- tum S. a Filio accipere id quod sum naturae futurum, cognoscentium est. Neque enim quid aliud est Filium, exceptis his quaet et dantur a Patre, neque alia substantia est Spiritus S. prater id quod datur ei a Filio. * St. Cyril having set forth anathemati- tism against the heresy of Nestorius, in the ninth anathematism condemned all who did not speak of the Holy Ghost as *Sioi tò Ἱστού tò Πνεύματος. To which Theodoret returned this answer: *Ἰδον δὲ τὸ Πνεῦμα τοῦ Θεοῦ, εἰ μὲν, ὡς ἑκάστους καὶ εἰ Πατρὶς ἐκπορευόμενον, ἐστὶ, συνεικονίσωσε- μεν, καί ἐπλοῦσα διέδρασε τὸν φωνέν εἰ δ' ἢ ἐκ τοῦ τί δὲ τὴν ἑκάστην ἅχον, τὰ βάθαιραν τοῦτο καὶ ταῖς ὑστερίας, ἀπομιν- μεν. Πιστῶσεν γὰρ τοῦ Κυρίου λόγον. Τὸ Πνεῦμα εἰ εἰκὸν τοῦ Πατρὸς ἐκπορευότας· καὶ τῶν ἑκάστων δὲ παλαι διακόσια φασιν: Εἰ δὲ τὸ σπείρα τοῦ Κυρίου ἐλαχίστως, ἀλλὰ τὸ Πνεῦμα τὸ εἰκὸν τῆς Θεότητος. Reprehens. Anath. Cyril. t. v. p. 717. St. Cyril in his reply takes no great notice of this high charge of impiety and blasphemy, and only an- swers the argument so far as it concerned his expression, τῆς. That the Spirit is Ἱδον τοῦ Πνεύμα, but in this answer makes use of that Scripture by which he and other used to prove that the Spirit had his essence from the Son: ἐκπορευέται μὲν γὰρ ἀς εἰ τὸν Θεόν καὶ Πατέρα τοῦ Πνεύμα τοῦ Θεοῦ, κατὰ τόν τοῦ Σωτῆρος φασιν, ἀλλὰ οὐκ ἐκλατίνων ἤστιν τοῦ Θεοῦ πάντα γὰρ ἐκεῖν ἄντα τοῦ Πατέρας καὶ τὸυτο αὐτὸς ἔμφασιν εἰς παῖ τοῦ Ἱσιῶν Πνεύματος. Πάντα ὑπὸ τὸν Θεοῦ Πνεύματος. Πάντα ὑπὸ τὸν Θεοῦ Πνεύματος, ἕνεκα οὐκ θει τοῦ τοῦ εἴστων ἦμι, ὅτι Εἰ τὸ Ἱσιῶν Πνεύματος, καὶ ἀδιάφανε ἠμιν. vol. vi. p. 729. Although therefore St. Cyril does not go to maintain that which Theodoret denied, and St. Cyril else- where teacheth, viz. that the Holy Ghost is from the Son, yet he justifieth his own position by that Scripture which by him- self and the rest of the fathers is thought to teach as much.

* The second general Council held at Constantinople, finding it necessary to make an addition to the Nicene Creed in the Article concerning the Holy Ghost, of which that Council had said no more than this, I believe in the Holy Ghost, framed this accession against Macedo- nians: Ex t. Πνεύμα τοῦ Ἱσιῶν, τὸ κύριον, τὸ ὑπηκοόν, τὸ εἰκὸν τῆς Πατρίς ἐκπορευόμενον. Council. gen. t. i. par. 1. p. 536, in which they spoke most warily, using the words of the Scripture, and the language of the Church which was so known and public, that it is recorded even by Lucian in his dialogue called Philopatris. § 12.

Κρ. Καὶ τίνα ἑπορόστησα γας; 
Τῇ ἑμαυίδωσα Θεόν, μεγάς, ἐξομνησά, ἐξορίσαι, 
Τὸν Πατέρα, Πνεύμα ἐκΠατρίς ἐκπο- 

erουόμενον. 
"ἐν εἰ ἑγέρ, καὶ εἰ ἑγέρ τρεία;" 
Τῇ βας νερίζῃ Ζῶον, τοῦ ἑγέρ Θεόν. 

This Creed being received by the whole Church of God, and it being added also by the next general Council at Ephesus, that it should not be lawful to make any addition to it: notwithstanding the question being agitated in the West: * 'Erum Spiritus S. sicut procedit a Patre, itu et procedat a Filio;' and it being con- cluded in the affirmative, they did not only declare the doctrine to be true, but also added the same to the Constantin-
BELIEVE IN THE HOLY GHOST.

nished by the Greeks of that, as of an unlawful addition, and
refusing to raise it out of the Creed again, it became an oc-

going, in their Liturgy: 'Credimus et in Spiritum S.,
Dominum et vivificantem, ex Patre Filioque procedentes.' This being first
done in the Spanish and French churches, and the matter being referred to Leo the
third bishop of Rome, he absolutely con-
cluded that no such addition ought to be
tolerated: for in the acts of the Synod
held at Aquigranum, we find it so
determined by the pope, upon the con-
ference with the legates: 'Ergo, ut video,
illud a vestra Paternitate decidatur, ut
primo illud de quo reseruerit agitur, de
saepe fato Symbolo tollatur, et tunc de-
num a quibus licet ac libere, sive can-
tando sive tradendo, discatur et docet-
tur: so one of the legates. To which
Leo answered thus: 'Ita proculubio
una nostra parte decernitur: ita quoque ut a
vestra assentiarum, a nobis omnibus mo-
dis suradetur.' Beside, lest the Roman
church might be accused of joining with
the Spanish and French churches in this
addition, the same pope caused it to be set forth in the Church,
graven in silver plates, one in Latin and
another in Greek, in the same words in
which the Council of Constantinople had
first penned it. 'Hoc, pro amore et cautela
Orthodoxa Fidei, fecit B. Petri Basilica
scuta argentea duo scripta utraque Sym-
bole, unum quidem litteris Graecis, et alium
Latinis, sedentia dextra laevaque super in-
gressum corporis.'

Anastasis in vita Leonis
III. De Vit. Pontif. Rom. xxviii. 'Leó tēkτtis (Symboli) transcriptum in tabula argen-
tea, post altare B. Pauli posita, posteris
reliquit, pro amore, ut ipse ait, et cautela
Fide orthodoxa. In quo quidem Sym-
bolare in processione Spiritus S. solus com-
memoratur Pater his verbis. Et in Spiritu-
s S., Dominicum vivificantem, ex Patre
procedenteum, cmt Patre et Filio co-adoran-
dum, et glorificandum.' P. Lombardus, l. i.
distinct, 11. § 2. These were taken out of
the archiva at Rome, saith Photius,
and so placed by Leo, that they might be
acknowledged and perpetuated as the true
copies of that Creed not to be al-
ter ed. 'O ος πεπηλευχα Λεών και τας ος της σι-
ναφυλακειας του κεραυνου Πέτρου και Πάω-
ου εκ παλαισταταν χρησαν αποστευκηρι-
σματας των ιερων κεραυλατων ους αποθεω
υμεναι και βασιλιαν θηλων αλεγθαι των
ιερων της δαιμονιας θεωθηκε, ταυτακατα-
νοι εκ θανατου των Ρωμηνων πλη-
διων και εις θως απιστιαν θηλην θεωθηκε
και θαλανται των θεωσιαματων τουκαια
και οπλικηνα εκ της θως παραβαλλεται. Pho-
Now although the addition of the words to the formal Creed without the consent, and against the protestation of the Oriental Church, be not justifiable; yet that which was added, is nevertheless a certain truth, and may be so used in that Creed by them who believe the same to be a truth; so long as they pretend it not to be a definition of that Council, but an addition or explication inserted, and condemn not those who, out of a greater respect to such synodical determinations, will admit of no such insertions, nor speak any other language than the Scriptures and their fathers spake.

Howsoever, we have sufficiently in our assertions declared the nature of the Holy Ghost, distinguishing him from all qualities, energies, or operations, in that he is truly and properly a person; differencing him from all creatures and finite things, as he is not a created person; shewing him to be of an infinite and eternal essence, as he is truly and properly God; distinguishing him from the Father and the Son, as being not the Father, though the same God with the Father, not the Son, though the same God with him; demonstrating his order in the blessed Trinity, as being not the first or second, but the third person, and therefore the third, because as the Son received his essence communicated to him by the Father, and is therefore second to the Father, so the Holy Ghost received the same essence communicated to him by the Father and the Son, and so proceedeth from them both, and is truly and properly the Spirit of the Father, and as truly and properly the Spirit of the Son.

Thus far have we declared the nature of the Holy Ghost, what he is in himself, as the Spirit of God; it remaineth that we declare what is the office of the same, what he is unto us as the Holy Spirit: for although the Spirit of God be of infinite, essential, and original holiness, as God, and so may
to ΩΣΟΗΙΔΑΝΟΣ ΟΕΘ] ΕΠΕΣΑΩΡΟΣ ΕΩΝΟΣ ΕΝΟΛΟΤ-
τάν, ι σν η τάς πνευμάτων Σουάλόων καταγω-
μα, εν αυτόντα ονεκφυγόντων τó Πνεύμα
ξη τού Πατρός και ξη τού Τόυ Εκπαρεθαναι,
Theophyl. ad Ioan. c. 3. Καὶ τοῖς Δωτικοῖς
τούτοις εἶ τι μισί πρί τó δόγμα διεμαρτύροντι
τόν άναμέναν πάντως σαλών, εἷς δὲ τό εν τού
Σουάλόω διπλά τού άγίου Πνεύματος προεκβο-
λόμενοι, ἵνα δὲ κλήσεις μεγίστας, τούτο μὲ
διδαχθέντες Ερευνάσας δὲ θηραίων οἰκονομι-
τος. Ibid. Thus did the Oriental Church
accuse the Occidental for adding Filioque
to the Creed, contrary to a general Coun-
cil, which had prohibited all additions,
and that without the least pretence of
the authority of another Council; and so the
schism between the Latin and the Greek
Church began and was continued, never
to be ended until those words και εν τού
toίς, or Filioque, are taken out of the
Creed. The one relying upon the truth
of the doctrine contained in those words,
and the authority of the pope to alter
any thing; the other either denying or
suspecting the truth of the doctrine, and
being very zealous for the authority of
the ancient Councils. This therefore is much
to be lamented, that the Greeks should
not acknowledge the truth which was
acknowledged by their ancestors, in the
substance of it; and that the Latins
should force the Greeks to make an addi-
tion to the Creed, without as great an
authority as hath prohibited it, and to
use that language for the expression of
this doctrine which never was used by
any of the Greek fathers.
be called *Holy* in himself; though other spirits, which were created, be either actually now unholy, or of defectible sanctity at first, and so having the name of Spirit common unto them, he may be termed *Holy*, that he may be distinguished from them; yet I conceive he is rather called the *Holy Spirit*, or "the Spirit of holiness," (Rom. i. 4.) because, of the three persons in the blessed Trinity, it is his particular office to sanctify or make us holy.

Now when I speak of the office of the *Holy Ghost*, I do not understand any ministerial office or function, such as that of the created angels is, who are "all ministering spirits sent forth to minister for them, who shall be heirs of salvation;" (Heb. i. 4.) for I have already proved this Spirit to be a person properly divine, and consequently above all ministration. But I intend thereby whatsoever is attributed unto him peculiarly in the salvation of man, as the work wrought by him, for which he is sent by the Father and the Son. For all the persons in the Godhead are represented unto us as concurring unto our salvation: "God so loved the world, that he gave his onlybegotten Son," (John iii. 16.) and "through that Son we have an access by one Spirit unto the Father." (Eph. ii. 18.) As therefore what our Saviour did and suffered for us belonged to that office of a Redeemer, which he took upon him; so whatsoever the *Holy Ghost* worketh in order to the same salvation, we look upon as belonging to his office. And because without holiness it is impossible to please God, because we are all impure and unholy, and the purity and holiness which is required in us to appear in the presence of God, whose eyes are pure, must be wrought in us by the Spirit of God, who is called *Holy* because he is the cause of this holiness in us, therefore we acknowledge the office of the Spirit of God to consist in the sanctifying of the servants of God, and the declaration of this office, added to the description of his nature, to be a sufficient explication of the object of faith contained in this Article, *I believe in the Holy Ghost.*

Now this sanctification being opposed to our impurity and corruption, and answering fully to the latitude of it, whatsoever is wanting in our nature of that holiness and perfection, must be supplied by the Spirit of God. Wherefore being by nature we are totally void of all saving truth, and under an impossibility of knowing the will of God; being as "no man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him; even so none knoweth the things of God, but the Spirit of God:" this "Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God," (1 Cor. ii. 10, 11.) and revealeth them unto the sons of men; so that thereby the darkness of their understanding is expelled, and they are enlightened with the knowledge of their God. This work of the Spirit is double, either external and general, or internal and particular. "The external and general work of
the Spirit, as to the whole Church of God, is the revelation of the will of God, by which so much in all ages hath been propounded as was sufficient to instruct men unto eternal life. For there have been "holy prophets ever since the world began," (Luke i. 70.) and prophecy "came not at any time by the will of man, but holy men of God spake, as they were moved by the Holy Ghost." (2 Pet. i. 21.) When it pleased God "in the last days to speak unto us by his Son," (Heb. i. 2.) even that Son sent his Spirit into the apostles, "the Spirit of truth, that he might guide them into all truth," teaching them all things, and bringing all things to their remembrance, whatsoever Christ had said unto them." (John xvi. 13. xiv. 26.) By this means it came to pass, that "all Scripture was given by inspiration of God," (2 Tim. iii. 16.) that is, by the motion and operation of the Spirit of God; and so whatsoever is necessary for us to know and believe, was delivered by revelation. Again, the same Spirit which revealeth the object of faith generally to the universal Church of God, which object is propounded externally by the Church to every particular believer, doth also illuminate the understanding of such as believe, that they may receive the truth: for faith is the gift of God, not only in the object, but also in the act; Christ is not only given unto us, in whom we believe, but it is also "given us in the behalf of Christ to believe in him;" (Phil. i. 29.) and this gift is a gift of the Holy Ghost, working within us an assent unto that which by the word is propounded to us: by this "the Lord opened the heart of Lydia, that she attended unto the things which were spoken of Paul;" (Acts xvi. 14.) by this the word preached profiteth, being "mixed with faith in them that hear it." (Heb. iv. 2.) Thus "by grace we are saved through faith, and that not of ourselves, it is the gift of God." (Eph. ii. 8.) As the increase and perfection, so the original, or initiation of faith is from the Spirit of God,* not only by an external proposal in the word, but by an internal illumination in the soul; by which we are inclined to the obedience of faith, in assenting to those truths, which unto a natural and carnal man are foolishness. And thus we affirm not only the revelation of the will of God, but also the illumination of the soul of man, to be part of the office of the Spirit of God, against the old and new Pelagians.†

* This is the ancient determination of the second Arusanic Council: "Si quis sicut augumentum, sua etiam initium fidei, ipsunque creditatis affectum, quo in eam credimus, qui justificat ipsum, et ad regenerationem baptismatis pervenimus, non posterius pertinent, id est, per inspirationem Spiritus S. corrigentis voluntatem nostram ad infidelitate ad idem, ab impietate ad pietatem, et naturaliter nobis inesse dicit, Apostolici dogmatis adversarius approbatur, beato Paulo di-

dente, Confidimus, quia qui capit in tibiis dominum opus, perficiat usque in eum Domin nostri Jesu Christi; et illud, Tobi datum est pro Christo, non solam ut in eum credamus, sed etiam ut pro illo putetis. Et, Gratia salut. facti estis per Iadem, non ex tibiis, Dei evin dominum est! Cum. a. Council Arus. and Gelas. 4. Eccl. Dogm. c. 42.

† It was the known opinion of the Pelagians, That it is in the power of man to believe the Gospel without any internal operation of the grace of God; and St.
The second part of the office of the Holy Ghost is the sanctification of man, in the regeneration and renovation of him. For our natural corruption consisting in an aversion of our wills, and a depravation of our affections, an inclination of them to the will of God is wrought within us by the Spirit of God. For "according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost." (Tit. iii. 5.) So that "except a man be born again of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God." (John iii. 5.) We are all at first defiled by the corruption of our nature, and the pollution of our sins, "but we are washed, but we are sanctified, but we are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God." (1 Cor. vi. 11.) The second part then of the office of the Holy Ghost is the renewing of man in all the parts and faculties of his soul.

The third part of this office is to lead, direct, and govern us in our actions and conversations, that we may actually do and perform those things which are acceptable and well-pleasing in the sight of God. "If we live in the Spirit," quickened by his renovation, we must "also walk in the Spirit," (Gal. v. 25.) following his direction, led by his manuduction. And if we "walk in the Spirit, we shall not fulfil the lusts of the flesh;" (Gal. v. 16.) for we are not only directed but animated and acted in those operations by the Spirit of God, "who giveth both to will and to do; and as many as are thus led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God." (Rom. viii. 14.) Moreover that this direction may prove more effectual, we are also guided in our prayers, and acted in our devotions by the same Spirit, according to the promise, "I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and supplication." (Zech. xii. 10.) Whereas then "this is the confidence that we have in him, that if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us;" (1 John v. 14.) and whereas "we know not what we should pray for as we ought, the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered, and he that searcheth the hearts, knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God." (Rom. viii. 26, 27.) From which intercession especially I conceive he

Augustin was once of that opinion: 'Neque enim fidem putabam,' says he, 'Dei gratia preveniri, ut per illam nobis daretur quod posceremus utiliter, nisi quia credere non possemus, si non prece deret praecomin venitatis. Ut autem prae dicato nobis Evangelio consentiremus nostrum esse proprium, et nobis ex nobis esse arbitrare. Quanquam erorem nonnulla opuscula meae satis indicant ante Episcopatum meum scripta,' De Prædicatione. Sacri: l. i. c. 3. But whatsoever he had so written before he was made a bishop, he recalled and reversed in his Retractationes, l. i. c. 23. and disputed earnestly against it as a part of the Pelagian heresy. This, as the rest of Pelagianism, is renewed by the Socinians, who in the Raccovan Catechism deliverit in this manner: 'Non erat credendum Evangelio Spiritus Sancti interioire donec opus est? Nullo modo: neque enim in Scripturis legitimus eunquam id conferri dominum, nisi credentis Evangelio.'
hath the name of the Paraclete given him by Christ, who said, "I will pray unto the Father, and he shall give you another Paraclete." (John xiv. 16.)

For "if any man sin, we have a Paraclete with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous," (1 John ii. I.) saith St. John; "who also maketh intercession for us," (Rom. viii. 34.) saith St. Paul: and we have another Paraclete, saith our Saviour; which also "maketh intercession for us," saith St. Paul. A Paraclete then, in the notion of the Scriptures, is an intercessor.*

* Παρακλητὸς is five times used in the Scriptures, and that by St. John alone: four times in his Gospel, attributed to the Holy Ghost, once in his First Epistle, spoken of Christ [xiv. 16. xx. 26. xvi. 7. I Ep. ii. 1.] When it relates to the Holy Ghost, we translate it always Comforter; when to Christ, we render it Advocate: of which diversity there can be no reason, because Christ, who is a Paraclete, said, that he would send another Paraclete; and therefore the notion must be the same in both: Αὐτῷ παρακλήτος δώσω, τοῦτοῦτον, ἡλικὼν ἡμᾶς. S. Chrysost. ad loc. iv. 16. If therefore in the language of St. John παρακλήτος be a comforter, then Christ is a comforter: if παρακλήτος be an advocate, the Holy Ghost is the advocate. The Latin Vulgate keeps the Greek word in the Gospels Paracletus, but in the Epistle renders it Advocatus. The Syr. , keeps the original altogether ἀνέφερεν as being of ordinary use in the writers of that and the Chaldean language; and therefore was not well translated Paracletus in the Gospels, and Advocatus in the Epistle, by Trench. That the Latins did use generally the word Paracletus for the Holy Ghost, as it is now in the Vulgar Latin, appears from the description of the heresy of Montanus, which Tertullian calls: nomen prophetiam de Paracletico inimicantem. De Resur. Carn. c. 63. and ' spiritualium rationem, Paracletum auctore.' cont. Marc. l. i. c. 29. And yet the most ancient Latin translators rendered it Advocatus even in the Gospels, in reference to the Spirit; as we read it in Tertullian: BENE quod et Dominus usus huc verbo in personas Paracleti, non divisionem significavit, sed dispositionem, Rogabo enim, inquit, Patrem, et alium advocatum mittet vos Spiritum veritatis. Adv. Prax. c. 9. So Novatian: Ego rogabo, Patrem, et alium Advocatum dabo vobis. Necnon etiam subdit illud quod est, advocatus autem Spiritus sancti missorum est Pater, ille vos docet. De Trin. c. 28. 'Cum venerit Advocatus ille, quem ego mittam,' Apud S. Hil. de Trin. i. viii. § 19. Notwithstanding Consulatior also is of good antiquity: as we read in the same St. Hilary: Summus nunc quod deo consiliatur, quis Dominus aut. Mutat vos Pater et alium Consolatorem.' Emer. in Paul. cxxxv. § 7. And it is possible that some which used Advocatus, might understand so much: for in the ancient Christian Latin, Advocare signifieth to comfort, and Advocatio, consultation; as being the bare interpretation of παρακλήτως and παρακλητός. As Tertullian translates παρακλητοίς παρακλητοῖς: Ism. ixi. 2. 'Advocare linguorum.' Adv. Marc. l. iv. c. 14. So when we read: Vos vobis dividitios, quis habetis consolationem vestram? Tertullian reads it: Vos vobis dividitius, quoniam recipistis quotidiam consolacionem vestram.' Adv. Marc. l. iv. c. 15. And speaking in his own language: 'Bositi, inquit, fluentes alque lugentes. Quis talia sine patientia tolerat? Itaque talibus et advocatio et pars promittatur.' de Patient. c. 11. And as St. Hilary read it, so did St. Augustin expound it: ' Consolatorum Spiritus S. qui maxime properea Paracletus nominatur, id est, Consolator.' De Stru. Dom. in Monte, l. i. c. 2. ' Cum Christus promiserit suis miserrimi se Paracletum, id est, Consolatorum vel Advocatum.' Contra Faust. l. xiii. c. 17. 'Consolator ergo ille, vel Advocatus, utrumque enim interpretatur quod est Graece Paracletus.' Expos. in Ioan. Tract 94. § 2. And as they read or expounded it, so did the Arabic translator render it by two several words, one in the Gospel, another in the Epistle, both signifying Consolator. Now what they meant by Advocatus is evident, that is, one which should plead the case of Christians against their adversaries which accused and persecuted them; that as there is an accuser which is a spirit, even Satan; so there should be an advocate to plead against that accuser, even the Holy Spirit. 'Necessarius nobis est Deus, ut non confamuram, neque infrauctuo dicituram; et uli ussacuatorum habeamus, ille habebus mas et Paracletum.' Iren. l. iii. c. 19. 'Hic ipse (Spiritus) et in Prophetis populum accusavit, et in Apostolis advocacionem gentibus prorsit. Nam illi ut accusarentur merebantur, quin contemp
Fourthly, The office of the same Spirit is to join us unto Christ, and make us members of that one body of which our Saviour is the Head. "For by one Spirit we are all baptized into one body. And as the body is one and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body, so also is Christ." (1 Cor. xii. 13, 12.)* "Hereby we know that God abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us." (1 John iii. 24.) As we become spiritual men by the Spirit which is in us, as that union with the body and the head is a spiritual conjunction, so it proceedeth from the Spirit; and "he that is joined unto the Lord is one Spirit." (1 Cor. vi. 17.)

Fifthly, It is the office of the Holy Ghost to assure us of the adoption of sons, to create in us a sense of the paternal love of God towards us, to give us an earnest of our everlasting inheritance. "The love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us." (Rom. v. 5.) "For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the

*Sermon on Romans, ch. iv. v. 18. Thackeray."
sons of God.” (Rom. viii. 14.) And “because we are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying, Abba, Father.” (Gal. iv. 6.) “For we have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but we have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. The Spirit itself bearing witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God.” (Rom. viii. 15, 16.) As therefore we are born again by the Spirit, and receive from him our regeneration, so we are also assured by the same Spirit of our adoption; and, because being sons we are also “heirs, heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ,” (Rom. viii. 17.) by the same Spirit we have the pledge, or rather the earnest of our inheritance. For “he which establisheth us in Christ, and hath anointed us, is God, who hath also sealed us, and hath given the earnest of his Spirit in our hearts;” (2 Cor. i. 21, 22.) so that we are “sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise, which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession.” (Eph. i. 13, 14.) The Spirit of God as given unto us in this life, though it have not the proper nature of a pledge; as in the gifts received here being no way equivalent to the promised reward, nor given in the stead of any thing already due; yet is to be looked upon as an earnest,* being part of that reward

* The word ἄρραβον, which the apostle only useth in this particular, is of a Hebrew extraction; הַרָּבָּא from הָרָב a word of promise and engagement in commerce, bargains, and agreements; and being but in one particular affair used in the Old Testament is taken for a pledge, Gen. xxxviii. 17, 18, 20. And translated ἄρραβον by the LXX. as well as ραβδόν by the Chaldee; yet the Greek word otherwise, consonantly enough to the originall, signifieth rather an earnest than a pledge, as the Greeks and Latins generally agree, Hesych. Άρραβον, πρόβαλα. Etym. Άρραβος, ἐν τοῖς ταῖς υπάρχον τῶν υἱῶν τῆς θεοῦν πετασμοῖς ἵππες ἀργύριων. Which words are also extant in Suidas, but corruptly. To this purpose is cited that of Menander:

Μίαν ἄρραβων ἠδύνα μ’ ἐπιτει καταμαυλέων. So Aristotle speaking of Thales: εὐπραγίαν χρημάτων ἢγνων ἄρραβος ἤδύνατον τῶν ἀλλοιογίαν Polit. i. 1. c. 11. So the Latins. Arrhabo sic dicta, ut reliquum reddatur. Hoc verbum a Graeco ἄρραβον. Reliquum ex eo quod debuit debito rebuit.” Varro de L. L. i. iv. p. 41. ‘In terrenis negotiis arrebus quantitates, contractus illius pro quo intercesserit quedam portio est; pignoris vero ratio, meritum rei pro qua poni videtur excidit.’ Posch. Diaec. i. i. de Sp. S. c. 11. ‘Pignus Latinus interpres pro arrhabone posuit. Non idipsum autem arrhabo quod pignus sonat. Arrhabo enim futura emotioni quasi quoddam testimonium et obligamentum datur. Pignus vero, hoc est, διάχειρον, pro nutu pecunia opportunit, ut cum illa redditura, reddenti debitum pignus a creditorre reddatur.’ S. Hier ad Ephes. i. 14. There is such another observation in A. Gellius, upon these words of Q. Claudius: 'Cum tantus arrhabo pennes Summatis Populi Romani esset: Arrhahonem dixit sexcentos obisides, et id maluit quam pigns dicere, quoniam vis hujus vocabuli in ea sententia gravior acquiror est.’ Nöct. Att. i. xvii. c. 2. The sense and use of this word are evident in Plautus:

'Eas quanti destinat? Tr. Taliens magnis totidem quot ego et tusumus.' Sed arrhaboni has dedit quadrupinta minus.' Mostell. a. iii. sc. c. 113. The sum was 120l. of which he gave 40l. in part of payment, and this was the arrhabo. So the Greek fathers interpret St. Paul. άνὰ μίνο να καθαίροι τὸν δικασμόν τὸ μέρος ὁ ρύσι ἄρραβος μηκον τὸ μέρος ήτοι τοῦ παντός. Thuderei. ad 2 Cor. i. 22. άνὰ τοῦτο γὰρ καθαίροι τὸ τῶν δοθέν τιματίατα, ὡς πιστολογμαί εἰκε δοσιμάτων τῆς χάριτος. Id. ad 1 Cor. xiv. 43. Οὐκ Πιστία εἰς τῶν ἐκλησίων καθαίροι, ἀλλ᾽ ἄρραβον δοσιμάτων, ἣν ἀπὸ τοῦτον καὶ πειρὰ τοῦ παντός δίδασκε. S. Chrysost. Hom. ad 2 Cor. i. 22. In this manner speaks Eusebius: ἦν σφετέρως τῶν ἰσάρθρων ἵνα
which is promised, and, upon the condition of performance of the covenant which God hath made with us, certainly to be received.

Sixthly, For the effecting of all these and the like particulars, it is the office of the same Spirit to sanctify and set apart persons for the duty of the ministry, ordaining them to intercede between God and his people, to send up prayers to God for them, to bless them in the name of God, to teach the doctrine of the Gospel, to administer the sacraments instituted by Christ, to perform all things necessary “for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ.” (Eph. iv. 12.) The same Spirit which illuminated the apostles, and endowed them with power from above to perform personally their apostolical functions, fitted them also for the ordination of others, and the committing of a standing power to a successive ministry unto the end of the world; who are thereby obliged to “take heed unto themselves, and to all the flock over which the Holy Ghost hath made them overseers, to feed the Church of God.” (Acts xx. 28.)

By these and the like means doth the Spirit of God sanctify the sons of men, and by virtue of this sanctification, proceeding immediately from his office, he is properly called the Holy Spirit. And thus I have sufficiently described the object of our faith contained in this Article, What is the Holy Ghost in whom we believe, both in relation to his nature,* as he is the Spirit of God, and in reference to his office, as he is the Holy Spirit.

The necessity of the belief of this Article appeareth, first, from the nature and condition of the Creed, whereof it is an essential part, as without which it could not be looked upon as a Creed. For being the Creed is a profession of that faith into which we are baptized; being the first rule of faith was

* In respect of the nature of the Holy Ghost, I have endeavoured the same which Faustus Rheginis did, of whom Genandus relates thus much: * Faustus ex Abbate Lirinensis Monasterii apud regnum Galliae Episcopus factus, vir in divinis Scripturis satis intentus, ex traditione Symboli occasione accepta, compositum librum de Spiritu S., in quo ostendit eum justa sedem patrum et consubstantialem et coeternalen esse Patri et Filio, ac plenitudinem Trinitatis obinentem.*

IIllus. Vir. Cat. 87.
derived from the sacred form of baptism; being we are baptized “in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost,” we are obliged to profess faith in them three; that as they are distinguished in the institution, so they may be distinguished in our profession. And therefore the briefest comprehensions of faith have always included the Holy Ghost, and some concluded with it.*

* I have formerly shewn at large how the Cēsēa did first arise from the baptismal institution, p. 47, 48. And therefore as the name of the Holy Ghost is an essential part of that form, so must the belief in him be as essential in the Cēsēa, which was at first nothing else but an explication of that form. The first enumeration and explication we find in Justin Martyr thus expressed: ‘Et] domine τον Πατέρα των οὐκων και δειπνόντος Θεον, καὶ [et] domine του Σώματος και της Χριστοῦ του συμφωνίαν ἐπὶ Παντός Πάλιν, και [et] domine Πνεύματος, διὰ των προφητῶν προφητισμὸν τα κατὰ τιν Παντοκράτηρα, ἐφοντις έκρυβε τον θανάτον και τον ζων Ζωίας φθαρται τον Θεον.’ Apol. I, p. 94. And the rule of faith delivered soon after by Ireneus, is very consonant to this: Ex Tον Πατέρα παντοκράτορα, τον πακοτότα του θανάτου και του γιου και τον γενεαλογον και τανος τα εν αιοτις και εις την Χριστον Ιε- σους των θεου του θανατου, των συμφωνίαν απο τριης θεσπώρων, και εις Πνευμα αγιον δια των προφητων προφητισμων τως έκρυβεν και των ζων και των ενηθης. Adv. Ha. I. i. c. 2. As that delivered soon after him by Tertullian: ‘Unum quidem Deum credimus, sub hac tamen dispensatione (quam Fiacunct) ut quicq Dei sit et Filium Sermo ipsius, qui ex ipso processerit, per quem omnia facta sunt, et sine quo factum est nihilo. Hunc missum a Patre in virginitem, et ex eam natus hominem et Deum, filium hominis et Filium Dei, et coignamunum Jesum Christum, Hunc passum, hunc mortuum, et sepulsum secundum Scripturas, resuscitatum a Patre, et in caelo recessum, sedere ad dextram Patris, venturum judicare vivos et mortuos. Quem exinde miserit, secundum promissi- 

..
Secondly, It is necessary to believe in the Holy Ghost, not only for the acknowledgment of the eminency of his person, but also for a desire of the excellency of his graces, and the abundance of his gifts. What the apostle wished to the Corinthians, ought to be the earnest petition of every Christian, that "the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost be with us all." (2 Cor. xiii. 14.) For "if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his;" (Rom. viii. 9.) if he have not that which maketh the union, he cannot be united to him; if he acknowledgeth him not to be his Lord, he cannot be his servant; and "no man can say that Jesus is the Lord, but by the Holy Ghost." (1 Cor. xii. 3.) “That which is born of the Spirit is spirit;” such is their felicity who have it: "That which is born of the flesh is flesh;" such is their infelicity which want it. (John iii. 6.) What then is to be desired in comparison of "the supply of the Spirit of Jesus Christ?" (Phil. i. 19.) especially considering the encouragement we receive from Christ, who said, "If ye being evil know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your heavenly Father give his Holy Spirit to them that ask him?" (Luke xi. 13.)

Thirdly, It is necessary to profess faith in the Holy Ghost, that "the will of God" may be effectual in us, "even our sanctification." (1 Thess. iv. 3.) For if "God hath from the beginning chosen us to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit;" (2 Thess. ii. 13.) if we be "elected according to the foreknowledge of the Father through sanctification of the Spirit unto obedience;" (1 Pet. i. 2.) if the office of the Spirit doth consist in this, and he be therefore called holy, because he is to sanctify us, how should we "follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord?" (Heb. xii. 14.) How should we endeavour to "cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God?" (2 Cor. vii. 1.) "The temple of God is holy, which temple we are, if the Spirit of God dwelleth in us;" (1 Cor. iii. 16, 17.) for the habitation of God is a consecration, and that place must be a temple, where his honour dwelleth. Now if we "know that our body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in us, which we have of God;" if we know that we "are not our own," for that we are "bought with a price;" we must also know that we ought "therefore to glorify God in our body, and in our spirit, which are God's:" (1 Cor. vi. 19, 20.) thus it is necessary to believe in the Spirit of sanctification, that "our hearts may be established unblameable in holiness before God, even our Father, at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ with all his saints." (1 Thess. iii. 13.)

Fourthly, It is necessary to believe in the Holy Ghost, that in all our weaknesses we may be strengthened, in all our infirmities we may be supported, in all our discouragements we
may be comforted, in the midst of miseries we may be filled
with peace and inward joy. "For the kingdom of God is not
meat and drink, but righteousness and peace, and joy in the
Holy Ghost." (Rom. xiv. 17.) We read of the disciples at first,
that they "were filled with joy and with the Holy Ghost;" (Acts
xiii. 52.) and those which afterwards "became followers
of them and of the Lord, received the word in much affliction,
but with joy of the Holy Ghost." (1 Thess. i. 6.) These are
the "rivers of living water flowing out of his belly that be-
lieveth:" (John vii. 38.) this is the "oil of gladness," where-
with the Son of God was "anointed above his fellows;" (Psal.
xlv. 7. Heb. i. 9.) but yet with the same oil his fellows are
anointed also: for we "have an union from the Holy One,
and the anointing which we receive of him, abideth in us." (1 John ii. 20. 27.)

Lastly, The belief of the Holy Ghost is necessary for the
continuation of a submissive ministry, and a Christian submis-
sion to the acts of their function, unto the end of the world.
For as God the Father sent the Son, and "the Spirit of the
Lord was upon him, because he had anointed him to preach
the gospel;" (Luke iv. 18.) so the Son sent the apostles, say-
ing, "As my Father hath sent me, even so send I you; and
when he had said this, he breathed on them, and said unto them,
Receive the Holy Ghost:" (John xx. 21, 22.) and as the Son
sent the apostles, so did they send others by virtue of the same
Spirit, as St. Paul sent Timothy and Titus, and gave them power
to send others, saying to Timothy, "Lay hands suddenly on
no man;" (1 Tim. v. 22.) and to Titus, "For this cause left I
thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that
are wanting, and ordain elders in every city, as I had appointed
thee." (Tit. i. 5.) Thus, by virtue of an apostolical ordination,
there is for ever to be continued a ministerial succession.
Those which are thus separated by ordination to the work of
the Lord, are to "feed the flock of God which is among them,
taking the oversight thereof;" (1 Pet. v. 2.) and those which
are committed to their care, are to "remember and obey them
that have the rule over them, and submit themselves, for that
they watch for their souls, as they that must give account." (Heb. xiii. 7. 17.)

Having thus at large asserted the verity contained in this
Article, and declared the necessity of believing it, we may easily
give a brief exposition, by which every Christian may know
what he ought to profess, and how he is to be understood,
when he saith, I believe in the Holy Ghost. For thereby he is
conceived to declare thus much: I freely and resolutely assent
unto this as unto a certain and infallible truth, that beside all
other whatsoever, to whom the name of Spirit is or may be
given, there is one particular and peculiar Spirit, who is truly
and properly a person, of a true, real, and personal subsistence,
The Holy Catholick Church, the Communion of Saints.

In this ninth Article we meet with some variety of position, and with much addition; for whereas it is here the ninth, in some Creeds we find it the last;* and whereas it consisteth

* Although generally the Article of the holy Church did immediately follow the Article of the Holy Ghost, as Tertullian well observeth: 'Cum sub tribus et testatino fidei et sponsio salutis pignorentur, necessario adjiciet ecclesiae mentio, quaniam ubi tres, id est, Pater et Filius et Spiritus Sanctus, ibi ecclesia qua trium corpus est.' De Bapt. c. 6. And St. Augustine: 'Spiritus S. si creatura non Creator esset, profecto creatura rationalis esset. Ipse enim esset summam creatura; et ideo in Regula fidei non poneterunt ante ecclesiam, quia et Ipse ad ecclesiam pertinere.' Enchir c. 56. And the author of the first book De Symb. ad Catech. 'Sequitur post S. Trinitatia commendationem, sanctam ecclesiam,' §. 13. And St. Jerome cited in the next note. Yet notwithstanding this order was not always observed, but sometimes this Article was reserved to the end of the Creed. As first appeareth in that remarkable place of St. Cyprian: 'Quod si aliquid illud opponit, ut dicat eandem Novationum legem tenere quam catholica ecclesia tenet, eodem symbolo quo et nos baptizare, eundem nosse Deum Patrem, eundem Filium Christum, eundem Spiritum S., ac propter hoc usurpare eum potestatem baptizandi posse, quod videatur in interrogatione baptismi a nobis non discrepare; scit quisquis et hoc opponendum putat, primum non esse uos nobis et schismaticis symboli legem, neque eandem interrogationem, Nam cum dicunt, Credis remissionem peccatorum, et vitam aeternam per sanctam ecclesiam? mentiuntur in interrogatione, cum non habent ecclesiam. Tunc inde roce sua ipsi confiteatur remissionem peccatorum non dari, nisi per sanctam ecclesiam.' Ep. ad Magn. 1. i. ep. 6. §. 6. al. ep. 76. Thus Arius and Euzoius, in the words hereafter cited, place the Church in the conclusion of their creed. And the author of the second book de Symb. ad Catech. placeth the remission of sins after the Holy Ghost: 'Noli injustiam facere ei qui te fecit, ut consequaris ab illo, quod in isto sancto symbolo sequitur, Remissionem omnium peccatorum: §. 21. And after he bath spoken of
of two distinct parts, the latter is wholly added, and the former partly augmented; the most ancient professing no more than to believe the holy Church; and the Greeks having added, by way of explanation or determination, the word catholick, it was at last received into the Latin Creed.

To begin then with the first part of the Article, I shall endeavour so to expound it, as to shew what is the meaning of the Church, which Christ hath propounded to us; how that Church is holy, as the apostle hath assured us; how that holy Church is catholick, as the fathers have taught us. For when I say, I

the resurrection and life everlasting, proceeded thus to speak of the Church: *Sancta ecclesia, in qua omnis sacramenti terminatur auctoritas,* &c. § 24. And the author of the third: *Ideo sacramenti hujus conclusio, per ecclesiam terminatur, qua ipsa est mater fœcundæ.* § 13. And the author of the fourth: *Per sanctam ecclesiam.* Propertea hujus conclusio sacramenti per sanctum ecclesiam terminatur, quoniam si quis ab eo inventus fuerit, alium erit a numero filiorum; nec habebit Deum Patrem qui ecclesiam noluerit habere matrem.* § 13. Thus therefore they disposed the last part of the Creed: *Credo in Spiritum Sanctum, peccatorum remissionem, carnis resurrectionem, et vitam æternam per sanctum ecclesiam.* And the design of this transaction, was to signify, that remission of sins and resurrection to eternal life, are to be obtained in and by the Church: as the Creed in the first homily under the name of St. Chrysostom: *Credo in Spiritum S. Iste Spiritus perniet ad sanctam ecclesiam; ipsa est que dimittit pec- cata, promittit carnis resurrectionem, promittit vitam aeternam.*

* Tertullian: *Quae est mater nostra, in quam repromissionis sanctam ecclesiam.* Adv. Marcion. I. v. c. 4. So Rufinus: *sanctam ecclesiam.* § 35. For catholick is added by the Pamelians. So St. Jerome: *Properea cum solenne sit in lavacrum post Trinitatis confessionem interrogare, Credis sanctam ecclesiam? Credis remissionem peccatorum? Quam ecclesiam credulisse eum dices? Amnumor? sed non habent: nostram? sed extra banc baptizatus non potuit eam credere quam nesciret.* cont. Lucif. col. 297. And St. Augustine: *Credimus et sanctam ecclesiam,* with this declaration, *utique catholicum.* De Fid. et Symb. c. 10. So Maximus Taurin. Chrysologus, and Venantius Fortunatus. The author of the first book De Symb. ad Catech. *SEQUITUR post Sancta Trinitatis commendationem, sanctam ecclesiam.* The author of the other three who placeth this Article last of all: *sancta ecclesia in qua omnis hujus sacramenti terminatur auctoritas.* I. ii. and iv. expressly *per sanctum ecclesiam,* as the words of the Creed, with the explication beforementioned. As also the interrogation of the Novatians ending with *per sanctam ecclesiam,* cited before out of St. Cyprian. So likewise of those two homilies on the Creed, which are falsely attributed to St. Chrysostom, the first hath *sanctam ecclesiam* after the belief in the Holy Ghost; the second concludes the Creed with *per sanctam ecclesiam.* 'In carnis resurrectionem fides, in vitæ æternæ specie, in sancta ecclesia caritas.' Thus the ancient Saxon Creed set forth by Freherus, *'THA heligan xalXALXO,* i. e. the holy Church; the Greek Creed in Saxon letters in Sir Robert Cotton's library, and the old Latin Creed in the Oxford library. *Deus qui in caelis habitat, et condidit ex nihilò ea quæ sunt, et multiplicavit proper sanctam ecclesiam suam, inæscitur tibi.* Herm. i. i. Visione 1. *Virtute sua potenti condidit sanctam ecclesiam suam.* Ibid. *Roabham Dominum, ut revelationes ejus, quas muli ostendit per sanctam ecclesiam suam, confirmaret.* Iden. Th. 4. But though it were not in the Roman or Occidental Creeds, yet it was anciently in the Oriental, particularly in that of Jerusalem, and that of Alexandria. In the Creed at Jerusalem it was certainly very ancient; for it is expounded by St. Cyril, archbishop of that place: *ας μιας ἀγας καθολικῆς ἱερατείας.* Catech. xviii. And in the Alexandrian it was as ancient; for Alexander, archbishop of that place, inserts it in his confession, in his Epistle ad Alexandriaum: *μιᾶς καὶ μόνης καθολικῆς τῶν ἁπατολικῶν ἱερατείας.* Theodore. Hist. i. i. c. 3. And Arius and Eunogius, in their confession of faith given in to Constantine, thus concludes: καὶ εἰς καθολικὴν ἱερατείαν τῶν Θεόν, τεν ἀνω παρά τω Θεῷ σοράτων καὶ σκέπαστων. Nect. Hist. Eccl. i. c. 26. The same is also expressed in both, the Creeds, the lection and the greater, delivered by Epaphras in Auct. vulg. § 150. 171.; the words are repeated in the next observation.
believe in the holy catholic Church, I mean that there is a Church which is holy,* and which is catholic; and I understand that Church alone, which is both catholic and holy: and being this holiness and catholicism are but affections of this Church which I believe, I must first declare what is the nature and notion of the Church; how I am assured of the existence of that Church; and then how it is the subject of these two affections.

For the understanding of the true notion of the Church, first we must observe, that the nominal definition or derivation of the word is not sufficient to describe the nature of it. If we look upon the old English word now in use, Church or Kirk; it is derived from the Greek, and first signified, the house of the Lord, that is, of Christ, and from thence was taken to signify the people of God, meeting in the house of God. The Greek word used by the apostles to express the Church, signifies a calling forth,† if we look upon the origination; a con-

* 'Credo sanctam Ecclesiam,' I believe there is a holy Church; or, 'Credo in sanctam Ecclesiam,' is the same: nor does the particle in added or subtracted make any difference. For although some of the Latin and Greek fathers press the force of that preposition, as is before observed, though Rufinus urge it far in this particular: "Ut autem una eademque in Trinitate divinitatis docetur, sicut trium est in Deo Patre credi adjuncta propositione, ita et in Christo Filio, ita et in Spiritu S. memoratur. Sed ut manifestus fiat quod dicimus, ex consequentiibus approbatur. Sequitur manque post hunc sermonem, sanctam ecclesiam, remissionem peccatorum, hujus carnis resurrectionem. Non divit, in sanctam ecclesiam, nec in remissionem peccatorum, nec in carnis resurrectionem; si eum addisset in propositionem, una eademque vis fuisse cum superioribus. Ne autem (s. Nunc autem) in illis quidem cœtabulis, ubi de divinitate fides ordinatur, in Deo Patre dicitur, et Jesu Christo Filio ejus, et in Spiritu S.; in cæteris vero, ubi non de divinitate, sed de creaturis ac mysteriis sermo est, in propositione non additur, ut dicitur in sanctam ecclesiam, sed sanctam ecclesiam credendam esse; non ut in Deum, sed ut ecclesiam Deo congregatam; et remissionem peccatorum credendam esse, non in remissionem peccatorum; et resurrectionem carnis, non in resurrectionem carnis. Hac itaque propositionis syllaba creator a creatoris sequitur, et divina separatim ab humana.‘ Ruff. Super, c. 54, 35. Though I says this expression be thus pressed, yet we are sure that the fathers did use sic and in for the rest of the Creed as well as for the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

† 'Credos, the Lord, and that properly Christ; from whence Κυριος, belonging to the Lord Christ; Κυριος, from thence Κυριορ, Κυρις, and Church.

‡ The word used by the apostle is Εκκλησια, from Εκκλησει, From Εκκλησεις Εκκλησιας, from Εκκλησιας Εκκλησιας, of the same notation with the Hebrew שְׁמֵרֶם: ‘Ecclesia quippe ex vocacione appellata est.’ S. August. Exp. ad Rom. § 2. And though they ordinarily take it primarily to signify convocation, as St. Augustine: ‘Inter congregationem, unde συναγωγα, et conversationem, unde ecclesia nomen habet, distat aliquid?’ Enarr. in Psal. 81 § 1, yet the origination speaks only of evocation without any intention of congregation or meeting together, as there is in εκκλησιας. From whence arose that definition of Methodius, ὅτι Εκκλησια ποιεται τῇ Εκκλησει τῇ Ἰωάννη τῆς Αγίου Φωτούς. Photius Biblioth. Cod. cccxxv. col. 937. Whereas Εκκλησια is no more here than καλεῖ, Εκκλησία no more
gregation of men, or a company assembled, if we consider the use of it. But neither of these doth fully express the nature of the Church, what it is in itself, and as it is propounded to our belief.

Our second observation is, That the Church hath been taken for the whole complex of men and angels worshipping the same God; and again, the angels being not considered, it hath been taken as comprehending all the sons of men believing in God ever since the foundation of the World.* But being Christ took not upon him the nature of angels, and consequently did not properly purchase them with his blood, or call them by his word; being they are not in the Scriptures mentioned as parts or members of the Church, nor can be imagined to be built upon the prophets or apostles; being we are at this time to speak of the proper notion of the Church: therefore I shall not look upon it as comprehending any more than the sons of men. Again, being though Christ was the Lamb slain before the foundation of the World, and whosoever from the beginning pleased God were saved by his blood: yet because there was a vast difference between the several dispensations of the Law and Gospel; because our Saviour spake expressly of building himself a Church, when the Jewish synagogue was about to fail; because catholicism, which is here attributed unto the Church, must be understood in opposition to the legal singularity of the Jewish nation; because the ancient fathers were generally wont to distinguish between the Synagogue and the Church;† therefore I think it necessary to restrain this notion to Christianity.

Where, though the scholiast hath rendered ἔκκλησίαν, τις ἐκκλησίαν συνάγων, whereby the lexicographers have been deceived; yet the word is even there taken as a neuter, in the passive sense, as generally the Attics use it. However, from the notation of the word we cannot conclude that it signifies a number of men called together into one assembly out of the mass or generality of mankind: first, because the proposition in hath no such force in the use of the word; secondly, because the collection or coming together is not specified in the originiation.

* "Translatus in Paradisum, jam tunc de mundo in ecclesiam." Terult. i. ii. adv. Marcell. c. 4.
† Thus St. Ignatius speaking of Christ: Ἀλλ' ἐστιν δούλευσαι τοῦ Πατρὸς, δι' ἐκ τῆς ἐκκλησίας τοίς ἄνθρωποις Αδραμᾶ, καὶ Ἰσσαγι, καὶ Ἰσκάζω, καὶ ἀποφναί, καὶ ἀπάντων, καὶ ἡ ἐκκλησία. Ep. adv. Philad. § 9. Where ἡ ἐκκλησία is plainly taken for the multitude of Christians, who were converted to the faith by the apostles, and those who were after
Thirdly, Therefore I observe that the only way to attain unto the knowledge of the true notion of the Church, is to search into the New Testament, and from the places there which mention it, to conclude what is the nature of it. To which purpose it will be necessary to take notice, that our Saviour first speaking of it, mentions it as that which then was not, but afterwards was to be;* as when he spake unto the great apostle, "Thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church;" (Matt. xvi. 18.) but when he ascended into heaven, and the Holy Ghost came down, when Peter had converted "three thousand souls," (Acts ii. 41.) which were added to the "hundred and twenty" disciples, (Acts i. 15.) then was there a Church (and that built upon Peter,† according to our Saviour's promise); for after that we read, "the Lord added to the Church daily such as should be saved." (Acts ii. 47.) A Church then our Saviour promised should be built, and by a promise made before his death: after his ascension, and upon the preaching of St. Peter, we find a Church built or constituted, and that of a nature capable of daily increase. We cannot then take a better occasion to search into the true notion of the Church of Christ, than by looking into the origination and increase thereof; without which it is impossible to have a right conception of it.‡

Now what we are infullly assurred of the first actual existence of a Church of Christ, is only this: there were twelve apostles with the disciples before the descent of the Holy Ghost, and the "number of the names together were a hundred and twenty." (Acts i. 15.) When the Holy Ghost came

wards joined to them in the profession of the same faith. 'Sacrificia in populo, sacrificia et in ecclesia.' Iren. adv. Haer. i. iv. c. 34. 'Dissimulaverunt sermonem de Christo Patriarche et Prophetae; demessa est autem ecclesia, hoc est, fructum perceptum.' Id. l. iv. c. 25. 'Quid ? Judaicus populus curia beneficia divina perfidus et ingratus, nonne quod a Deo primum recessit, impatientiae crimen fuit? Impatienita etiam in ecclesia harreticos facit.' S. Cyprian. de Bono Patient. §. 11. 'Quis non agnoscat Christum reliquisse matrem Synagogam Judaeorum, Veteri Testamento carnaliiter adherentem, et adhaerisse uxori sue, sanctae ecclesiae? ' S. August. contra Faust. l.xii. c. 8. 'Mater Spousi Domini nostri Jesu Christi Synagogae est; pronuba nuptus ejus ecclesiae.' Idem, Enarr. in Psal. 44. §. 12. * 'In quem ingrequerunt—in ecclesiastic? quam nuncum Apostoli struxerant.' Tertull. de Bapt. c. 11. † 'Quid quod evertens atque communem manifestum Domini intentionem personaliter hoc Petro conferentem. Su-
after a powerful and miraculous manner upon the blessed apostles, and St. Peter preached unto the Jews that they should "repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins; they that gladly received his word were baptized, and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls." (Acts ii. 31. 41.) These being thus added to the rest, "continued steadfastly in the apostles’ doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers;" (Ibid. 42.) and all these persons so continuing are called the Church.* What this Church was is easily determined, for it was a certain number of men, of which some were apostles, some the former disciples, others were persons which repented, and believed, and were baptized in the name of Jesus Christ, and continued hearing the word preached, receiving the sacraments administered, joining in the public prayers presented unto God. This was then the Church, which was daily increased by the addition of other persons received into it upon the same conditions, making up "the multitude of them that believed, who were of one heart and one soul," (Acts iv. 32.) "believers added to the Lord, multitudes both of men and women." (Acts v. 14.)

But though the Church was thus begun, and represented unto us as one in the beginning, though that Church which we profess to believe in the Creed, be also propounded unto us as one; and so the notion of the Church in the Acts of the Apostles might seem sufficient to express the nature of that Church which we believe; yet because that Church which was one by way of origination,† was afterwards divided into many, the actual members of that one becoming the members of several Churches; and that Church which we believe, is otherwise one by way of complexion, receiving the members of all Churches into it; it will be necessary to consider, how at the first those several Churches were constituted, that we may understand how in this one Church they were all united. To which purpose it will be farther fit to examine the several acceptations of this word, as it is diversely used by the Holy Ghost in the New Testament; that, if it be possible, nothing may escape our search, but that all things may be weighted, before we collect and conclude the full notion of the Church from thence.

First, then, that word which signifies the Church in the original Greek, is sometimes used in the vulgar sense according as the native Greeks did use the same, to express their conventions, without any relation to the worship of God or Christ, and therefore is translated by the word assembly, (Acts xix. 32. 41.) of as great a latitude. Secondly, It is sometimes used

* Cum remississet summii Sacerdotes Petrum et Ioannem, et reversi essent ad reliquos co apostolos et discipulos Domini, il est, in ecclesiam.' Iren. adv. Haer. Liii. c. 12.
† 'Hae voces ecclesiae, ex qua habuit omnis ecclesia initium.' Iren. ibid.
in the same notion in which the Greek translators of the Old Testament made use of it, for the assembly of the people of God under the Law, (Ibid. 39.) and therefore might be most fitly translated the congregation, as it is in the Old Testament. Thirdly, It hath been conceived that even in the Scriptures it is sometimes taken for the place, (Acts viii. 38. Heb. ii. 12.) in which the members of the Church did meet to perform their solemn and public services unto God; and some passages there are which seem to speak no less, but yet are not so certainly to be understood of the place, but that they may as well be spoken of the people congregated in a certain place. Beside these few different acceptations, the Church in the language of the New Testament doth always signify a company of persons professing the Christian faith, but not always in the same latitude. Sometimes it admitted of distinction and plurality; sometimes, it reduceth all into conjunction and unity. Sometimes the Churches of God are diversified as many; sometimes, as many as they are, they are all comprehended in one.

For, first, in general there are often mentioned “the Churches,” (Acts xvi. 5. 1 Cor. xiv. 34. 2 Cor. viii. 19. 23. 24. xi. 8. 28. xii. 13. Rev. xxii. 16.) by way of plurality, “the Churches of God,” (2 Thess. i. 4. 1 Cor. xi. 16.) “the Churches of the Gentiles,” (Rom. xvi. 4.) “the Churches of the Saints.” (1 Cor. xiv. 33.)† In particular we find a few believers gathered together in the house of one single person.

* Acts xi. 20. 1 Cor. xi. 18. 22. From these places St. Augustine did collect that εκκλησία was taken in the Scriptures for the place of meeting, or the house of God, and came so to be frequently used in the language of the Christians in his time: 

1 Sicut ecclesiam dicitur locus, quo ecclesia congregatur. Nam ecclesiam homines sunt de quibus dicitur, Ut exhiberat sibi gloriosam ecclesiam. Hanc tamen vocari etiam ipsam domum orationum, idem Apostolus testis est, ubi ait, Namquid domos non habetis ad mundicandum et bibendum, au ecclesiam Dei continentis? Et hoc quotidians loquendi usus obtinuit, ut, in ecclesiis prodirie, aut ad ecclesiam confugere, non dicitur, nisi quod ad locum ipsum parietes proderit, vel coosferit, quibus ecclesiae congregatio continentur 1 Quast. super Levit. i. iii. c. 57. By these words it is certain, that in St. Augustine’s time, they used the word ecclesia, as we do now the Church, for a place set apart for the worship of God; and it is also certain that those of the Greek Church did use εκκλησία in the same sense, as Eusebius speaking of the flourishing times of the Church, before the persecution under Dioclesian, says, the Christians medias; òti tòv òtòv òkklhsias kai òkklhsias εκκλησίας, Hes. i. viii. c. 1. And

St. Chrysostom: El γάρ εκκλησίαν κατασκάφαι χαλεπὸς καὶ ἄνισος, πολλαὶ μᾶλλον τῶν πνευματικῶν καὶ γὰρ ἀνθρώπων εἰκονία; εἰσαγωγή. Hom. 26. ad Eph. in Rom. But it is not so certain that the apostle used εκκλησία in that sense; nor is it certain that there were any houses set apart for the worship of God in the apostles’ times, which then could be called by that name. For Isidorus Pelusiacus expressly denies it, and distinguishes between εκκλησία and εἰκκλησία, after this manner: “αλλά εἰς τὴν εἰκκλησίαν καὶ ἄλλα εἰκκλησίαστειρόν ἡ μία γὰρ ἐκ τῶν ἁμάρτων χαλκοῦ λυσιτεκτον, τὸ δ’ ἀν διόρρη καὶ ἔριξε σκοτωμεν. And thus he proveth this distinction: “παντες γὰρ ἄλλο ἀλλο εἰκκλησίαστειρόν καὶ ἄλλο διόρρη, καὶ ἀλλο εἰκκλησίαστειρόν καὶ ἄλλο διόρρη, καὶ ἄλλο συραμένα, καὶ ἄλλο βελτιωμένα καὶ ἄλλο πλακότο καὶ μία γὰρ τῶν τότεν ἐν τῷ συνελεύσαντι μνημείῳ, ἢ δὲ τοὺς θυμουργοὺς ἄνδρας, οίς καὶ καθο&lt;u&gt;δε &lt;/u&gt;καὶ τὰ εἰκκλησία ἀνέκακτο καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ εἰκκλησίστειρῳ καὶ τῷ εἰκκλησίας. Then he concludes, that in the apostles’ times there were no εἰκκλησίαστειρα, “ὅτι οἱ εἰκκλησίαι εἰκόνα μιᾶς γαρ εἰκονισμοῦ τοιοῦτος, ἢ τὰ ἔργα τῆς λαμπρῆς, εἰκονίσεως εἰκονίσεως εἰκονίσεως εἰκονίσεως εἰκονίσεως εἰκονίσεως εἰκονίσεως τοῦ ἐν Eph. 216. l ii.

† Thus Origen for the most part speaks of the Church in the plural number, si εἰκκλησίαι.
called a Church, (Rom. xvi. 5.) as the Church in the house of Priscilla and Aquila, (1 Cor. xvi. 19.)* the Church in the house of Nymphas, (Col. iv. 15.) the Church in the house of Philemon; (Phil. 2.) which Churches were nothing else but the believing and baptized persons of each family, with such as they admitted and received into their house to join in the worship of the same God.

Again, When the Scripture speaketh of any country where the Gospel had been preached, it nameth always by way of plurality the Churches of that country, as the Churches of Judea, of Samaria and Galilee, the Churches of Syria and of Cilicia, the Churches of Galatia, the Churches of Asia, the Churches of Macedonia.+ But notwithstanding there were several such Churches or congregations of believers in great and populous cities, yet the Scriptures always speak of such congregations in the notion of one Church: as when St. Paul wrote to the Corinthians, “Let your women keep silence in the Churches,” (1 Cor. xiv. 34.) yet the dedication of the Epistle is, “Unto the Church of God which is at Corinth.” (1 Cor. i. 2.) So we read not of the Churches, but the Church at Jerusalem, the Church at Antioch, the Church at Caesarea, the Church at Ephesus, the Church of the Thessalonians, the Church of Laodicea, the Church of Smyrna, the Church of Pergamus, the Church of Thyatira, the Church of Sardis, the Church of Philadelphia.† From whence it appeareth that a collection of several congregations, every one of which is in some sense a Church, and may be called so, is properly one Church by virtue of the subordination of them all in one government under one ruler. For thus in those great and populous cities where Christians were very numerous, not only those of several Churches within the cities, but all those also in the adjacent parts, were united under the care and inspection of one bishop, and therefore was accounted one Church; the number of the Churches following the number of the angels, that is, the rulers of them, as is evident in the Revelation.

Now as several Churches are reduced to the denomination of one Church, in relation to the single governor of those many Churches; so all the Churches of all cities and all nations in the world may be reduced to the same single denomination, in relation to one supreme governor of them all, and that one

---

* St. Chrysostom observeth of Priscilla and Aquila: Ωτομ γὰρ ἦσαν ἀπόστολοι, ἀς καὶ τὸν οἶκον ἐπικλήσαται, διὰ τὸ τοῦ πάντας ποιήσαν πιστοὺς, καὶ διὰ τοῦ πάντος ξένου αὐτῶν ἀναίρεσιν πᾶσαν. Homil. 30. in Epist. ad Rominos.

† Gal. i. 22. Acts ix. 31. 1 Cor. xvi. 19. Rev. i. 11. 1 Thess. ii. 14. 2 Cor. viii. 1. Gal. i. 2.

‡ Acts viii. 1. xi. 22. xiii. 1. xv. 3. xviii. 22. xx. 17. 2 Thess. i. 1. Col. iv. 16. Rev. ii. 8. 12. 13. iii. 1. 7. 14. And thus after they grew yet far more numerous in the time of Clemens bishop of Rome: Ἡ ἐκκλησία τοῦ Θεοῦ ἐπαρχοῦσα Ἐφεσος, τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ τοῦ Θεοῦ παρουσίαν κό-

ρασθείσα, Prov. Ep. 1. So after him Iggna-

tius: Τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ τῇ ἐξουσιακατέσχεται τῇ ἐπι τῆς ἐφέσων τῆς Ἀσίας. Prov. Epist. ad Ephes and : ἐκκλησία ἐγίνετο τῇ ἐπι τῆς ἐπι-

κρίσεως. Prov. Epist. ad Thess. And so the rest.
governor is Christ, the Bishop of our souls. Wherefore the
apostle, speaking of that in which all Churches do agree, com-
prehendeth them all under the same appellation of one Church;
and therefore often by the name of Church* are understood
all Christians whatsoever belonging to any of the Churches
dispersèd through the distant and divided parts of the world.
For the single persons professing faith in Christ are members
of the particular Churches in which they live, and all those
particular Churches are members of the general and universal
Church, which is one by unity of aggregation; and this is the
Church in the Creed which we believe, and which is in other
Creeds, expressly termed one,† I believe in one holy catholic
Church.

It will therefore be farther necessary for the understanding
of the nature of the Church which is thus one, to consider in
what that unity doth consist. And being it is an aggregation
not only of many persons, but also of many congregations, the
unity thereof must consist in some agreement of them all, and
adhesion to something which is one. If then we reflect upon
the first Church again, which we found constituted in the Acts,
and to which all other since have been in a manner added and
conjoined, we may collect from their union and agreement,
how all other Churches are united and agree. Now they were
described to be believing and baptized persons, converted to
the faith by St. Peter, continuing steadfastly in the apostles’
doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and prayers.
These then were all built upon the same rock, all professed
the same faith, all received the same sacraments, all performed
the same devotions, and thereby were all reputed members
of the same Church. To this Church were added daily such as
should be saved, who became members of the same Church by
being built upon the same foundation, by adhering to the same
doctrine, by receiving the same sacraments, by performing the
same devotions. (Acts ii. 41, 42, 44, 47.)

From whence it appeareth that the first unity of the Church
considered in itself, beside that of the Head, which is one
Christ, and the life communicated from that Head, which is one
Spirit, relieth upon the originated of it, which is one; even as a
house built upon one foundation, though consisting of many
rooms, and every room of many stones, is not yet many, but
one house. Now there is but one foundation upon which the
Church is built, and that is Christ. "For other foundation

* Matt. xvi. 18. 1 Cor. xii. 23. xv. 9.
Gal. i. 13. Ephes. i. 22. iii. 10. 21. v.
23. 25. 27. 29. 32. Phil. iii. 6. Col. i.
18. 24. Heb. xii. 23. Of this, as of one
Church, Celsus calls the Christians: των
αποστολοις ἱκανοις. Apud Orig. l. v. § 59.
† So the Creeds of Epiphanius, in An-
curato: Πιστεύομεν εἰς μίαν ἀγίαν καθολικὴν
καὶ ἀποστολικὴν ἱκανιν. s. 120, 121. So the
Jerusalem Creed in St. Cyril. Thus
the Nicene, with the additions of the
Council of Constantinople: μίαν ἀγίαν κα-
θολικὴν καὶ ἀποστολικὴν ἱκανιν. Thus
also the Alexandrian, as appeareth by
those already quoted of Alexander, Arius,
and Euzoius.
can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ." (1 Cor. iii. 11.) And though the apostles and the prophets be also termed the foundation, yet even then the unity is preserved, because as they are stones in the foundation, so are they united by one corner-stone; whereby it comes to pass that such persons as are of the Church, being "fellow-citizens with the saints, and of the household of God, are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner-stone, in whom all the building fitly framed together, growth unto a holy temple in the Lord." (Eph. ii. 19—21.) This stone was "laid in Zion for a foundation, a tried stone, a precious corner-stone, a sure foundation:" (Isa. xxviii. 16.) there was the first Church built; and whosoever have been, or ever shall be, converted to the true Christian faith, are and shall be added to that Church, and laid upon the same foundation, w.h.th is the unity of origination.* Our Saviour gave the same power to all the apostles, which was to found the Church; but he gave that power to Peter, to shew the unity of the same Church.

Secondly, The Church is therefore one, though the members be many, because they all agree in one faith. There is "one Lord and one faith." (Eph. iv. 5.) and that "faith once delivered to the saints," (Jude 3.) which whosoever shall receive, embrace, and profess, must necessarily be accounted one in reference to that profession. For if a company of believers

* Tertullian speaking of the apostles: 'Ecclesias apud unanquamque civitatem considerant, a quibus traducem fidei et semina doctrinae cetera exinde ecclesiae mutuata sunt, et quotis dies mutauuntur, ut ecclesiae hiui: ac per hoc et ipsa Apostolicae deputatur, ut soboles Apostolicae carum ecclesiarum. Omne genus ad originem suam necesse est. In quoque et tanta ecleasis, una est illa ab Apostolis prua, e quâ omnes. Sic omnes prime, et Apostolicae, duum omnes pramant unitatem: dum est illa communnicatio pacis, et appallatio fraternitatis, et contesseratio hospitalitatis: qui jura non alia ratio regit quam ejusdem sacramento una traditio." De Præscript. Hæret. c. 20. This is the Unitas Originis which St. Cyprian so much insists upon: 'Ecclesia una est, quæ in multitudinem latius incremento fœcunditatis extensitur; quomodo solis multa radii, sed lumen unum; et rami arboris multi, sed rohr unum tenaci radice fundatum. Et cum de fonte uno rivi plurimi deluviant, numerosis licet diffusa videantur exuadantis copiae largitate, unitas tamen servatur in origine,' S. Cyprianus, de Unitate Ecc., § 4. "Loquitur Dominus ad Petrum: Ego tibi dico, inquit, quia tu es Petrus, et super istam Petrum aedificabo ecclesiam meam, &c." It idem post resurrectionem suam dicit, Posse oves meas. Et quanvis Apostolis omnibus post resurrectionem suam parem postea tem tribuat, et dicat, Sicut misit me Petrus, et ego mitto vos, &c. tamen ut unitatem manifestaret, unitatis ejusdem originem ab uno incipietem sua auctoritate disposuit. Hoc erat utique et cæteri Apostoli, quia fuit Petrus, pari consortio præditis, et honoris et postestatis, sed eorundum ab unitate profici- scitur, ut ecclesiam una moosstraret." Ibid. c. 5. "Eúc éstis toti Ecclesiae, &c. turn totam Ecclesiam, ut eum utrumque se posset, &c. &c. de opere toti Ecclesiae, et de unitate toti Ecclesiae, &c. &c." Clem. Alex. Stromat. I. vii. c. 17. This is very much to be observed, because that place of St. Cyprian is produced by the Romanists to prove the necessity of one head of the Church upon earth, and to shew that the bishop of Rome is that one head by virtue of his succession to St. Peter; whereas St. Cyprian speaketh nothing of any such one head, nor of any such succession, but only of the origination of the Church, which was so disposed by Christ, that the unity might be expressed. For whereas all the rest of the apostles had equal power and honour with St. Peter; yet Christ did particularly give that power to St. Peter, to shew the unity of the Church which he intended to build upon the foundation of the apostles.
become a Church by believing, they must also become one Church by believing one truth. If they be one in respect of the foundation, which is ultimately one; if we look upon Christ, which is mediately one; if we look upon the apostles, united in one corner-stone; if those which believe be therefore said to be built upon the foundation of the apostles, because they believe the doctrine which the apostles preached, and the apostles be therefore said to be of the same foundation, and united to the corner-stone, because they all taught the same doctrine which they received from Christ; then they which believe the same doctrine delivered by Christ to all the apostles, delivered by all the apostles to believers, being all professors of the same faith, must be members of the same Church. And this is the unity of faith.*

Tu. dly, Many persons and Churches, howsoever distinguished by time or place, are considered as one Church, because they acknowledge and receive the same sacraments, the signs and badges of the people of God. When the apostles were sent to found and build the Church, they received this commission, “Go and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.” (Matt. xxviii. 19.) Now as there is but “one Lord,” and “one faith,” so also there is but “one baptism;” (Eph. iv. 5.) and consequently they which are admitted to it, in receiving it are one. Again, at the institution of the Lord’s supper Christ commanded, saying, “Eat ye all of this, drink ye all of this;” and all by communicating of one, become as to that communication one. “For we being many are one bread, and one body; for we are all partakers of that one bread.” (1 Cor. x. 17.) As therefore the Israelites “were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea, and did all eat the same spiritual meat, and did all drink the same spiritual drink,” (1 Cor. x. 2—4.) and thereby appeared to be the one people of God; so all believing persons, and all Churches congregated in the name of Christ, washed in the same laver of regeneration, eating of the

* Of this doth Irenæus speak, delivering the sum or brief abstract of the material object of faith: Tōu tō kírēma parakle-ō, kai pátwv tīn pístwv, h ekklēsia, kai tēr θ' tō kósmō dieipetai, Ípoteleosth fū-álōc, òc έν οίκοις οίκοις, atí ορισκόν πιστέειν πάντως, atí míaν ψεύδην kai τῆν αὐτήν ἐργαζόμενον πάραθεν, kai συμφράζων πάντα ψεύδη, kai διάδεεν, kai παραλαῦσαι ὡς ἐν στάμα κατη- μαίνει. *Advers. Her. i. i. c. 10. § 2. Κατά τήν ὑποτάσσον, κατά τήν ἐπίδρασιν, κατά τήν ἀρχήν, κατά τήν ἐκκλησίαν, μιαν εἴης ἀρχής τῆς ἐκκλησίας καὶ καθολικὸς ἐκκλησίας εἰς ἑνότητα πίστεως μιᾶς τῆς κατὰ τάς ἑαυτῆς διακονίας, μᾶλλον δὲ κατά τήν διακονίαν τῆς μιᾶς ἀδιάσφαλτης τῆς ἁμαρτίας, ἔνας τῶν Θεοῦ τῶν Βοιωτῶν, δι' ἑαυτῆς κατασταγάδους, ὡς προφήτην ἦ Θεός, δικαίως οὗτος τίγμιος τῷ καταβολῆς κόσμου ἐργαζόμενος. Clem. Alex. Stromat. i. vii. c. 17. This unity of faith followeth the unity of origination, because the true faith is the true foundation. 'Si qua est ecclesia, quae fidem res- spat, nec Apostolicae praedications fundamenta possidet, deserenda est. Petra tua Christus est.' S. Ambros. in Luc. lib. ii. cap. 9. Η μεν συνεργοσ τήν ἐκκλησίαν, ἐς φοσιν ὡς Παπστὶ ἀπετί τήν πίστις ἑπτα. Clem. Alex. Stromat. lib. ii. c. 12. St Jerome on those words of the Psalm xiv. 11. Hec est generatio quem tu Dominum, hath this observation: *Superius singul- lariter dixit, Hic accipiet benedictiorem modo pluraliter; quia ecclesia ex pluribus personis congregatur, et tamen una dicitur proper unitatem fidei.'
same bread, and drinking of the same cup, are united in the same cognizance, and so known to be the same Church. And this is the unity of the sacraments.

Fourthly, Whosoever belongeth to any Church is some way called; and all which are so, "are called in one hope of their calling:" (Eph. iv. 4.) the same reward of eternal life is promised unto every person, and we all "through the Spirit wait for the hope of righteousness by faith." (Gal. v. 5.) They therefore which depend upon the same God, and worship him all for the same end, the "hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began," (Tit. i. 2.) having all the same expectation, may well be reputed the same Church. And this is the unity of hope.

Fifthly, They which are all of one mind, whatsoever the number of their persons be, they are in reference to that mind but one; as all the members, howsoever different, yet being animated by one soul, become one body. Charity is of a fastening and uniting nature; nor can we call those many, who "endeavour to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace." (Eph. iv. 3.) "By this," said our Saviour, "shall all men know that ye are my disciples, if ye have love one to another." (John xiii. 35.) And this is the unity of charity.*

Lastly, All the Churches of God are united into one by the unity of discipline and government, by virtue whereof the same Christ ruleth in them all. For they have all the same pastoral guides appointed, authorized, sanctified, and set apart, by the appointment of God, by the direction of the Spirit, to direct and lead the people of God in the same way of eternal salvation: as therefore there is no Church where there is no order, no ministry;† so where the same order and ministry are, there is the same Church. And this is the unity of regiment and discipline.‡

By these means, and for these reasons,§ millions of persons

---

* Unus Deus enim et Christus unus, ecclesia ejus una, ides una, et plebis in solidum corporis unitatem concordiae glutine cupulata. S. Cyprian, de Unitate Eccles. § 21.

† Ecclesia non est, quae non habet Sacerdotes. S. Hier. adv. Lucif. col. 302. Pantes iuncturus esset, tuis iisdem, ut iterum Christum, et tum episcopos esse Patrem, tuos d e peregrinum esse fundamentum etiam et cum eundem illam fundamentum harum eorum in divinitate est, et per quos ita edificio cathedra, et non est ecclesias esse unam.

‡ Episcopatus unus est, cujus a singulis in solidum pars tenetur: ecclesia quaque una est, qua in multitudinem latus incremento facunditatis extenditur. S. Cyprian, de Unitate Eccles. § 4. So he joins these two together: 'Cum sit a Christo una ecclesia per totum mundum in multa mensa divisa, item episcopatus unus episcoporum multorum concordi numerositate diffusus.' Ep. ad Antonianum, 1. iv. ep. 2. § 16. al. ep. 52.

§ These are all expressed by Tertullian: 'Una nobis et illis fides, unus Deus, idem Christus, eadem spe, eadem lavecra sacramenta, semel dixerim, una ecclesia sumus.' De Virg. veluti. c. 2. 'Corpus sumus de conscientia religiosa et disciplina unitate et spei federe.' Apolog. c. 39.
and multitudes of congregations are united into one body, and become one Church. And thus under the name of Church, expressed in this Article, is understood a body, or collection, of human persons professing faith in Christ, gathered together in several places of the world for the worship of the same God, and united into the same corporation by the means aforesaid. And this I conceive sufficient to declare the true notion of the Church as such, which is here the object of our faith. It remaineth therefore that we next consider the existence of the Church, which is acknowledged in the act of faith applied to this object: for when I profess and say, I believe a Church, it is not only an acknowledgment of a Church which hath been, or of a Church which shall be, but also of that which is. When I say, I believe in Christ dead, I acknowledge that death which once was, and now is not: for Christ once died, but now is not dead: when I say, I believe the resurrection of the body, I acknowledge that which never yet was, and is not now, but shall hereafter be. Thus the act of faith is applied to the object according to the nature of it; to what is already past, as past; to what is to come, as still to come; to that which is present, as it is still present. Now that which was then past, when the Creed was made, must necessarily be always past, and so believed for ever; that which shall never come to pass until the end of the World, when this public profession of faith shall cease, that must for ever be believed as still to come. But that which was when the Creed began, and was to continue till that Creed shall end, is proposed to our belief in every age as being; and thus ever since the first Church was constituted, the Church itself, as being, was the object of the faith of the Church believing.

The existence therefore of the Church of Christ (as that Church before is understood by us), is the continuation of it in an actual being, from the first collection in the apostles' times unto the consummation of all things. And therefore, to make good this explication of the Article, it will be necessary to prove, that the Church which our Saviour founded and the apostles gathered, was to receive a constant and perpetual accession, and by a successive augmentation be uninterruptedly continued in an actual existence of believing persons and congregations in all ages unto the end of the World.

Now this indeed is a proper object of faith, because it is grounded only upon the promise of God; there can be no other assurance of the perpetuity of this Church, but what we have from him that built it. The Church is not of such a nature as would necessarily, once begun, preserve itself for ever. Many thousand persons have fallen totally and finally from the faith professed, and so apostatized from the Church. Many particular Churches have been wholly lost, many candlesticks have been removed; neither is there any particular Church
ARTICLE IX.

which hath any power to continue itself more or longer than others; and consequently, if all particulars be defectible, the universal Church must also be subject of itself unto the same defectibility.

But though the providence of God doth suffer many particular Churches to cease, yet the promise of the same God will never permit, that all of them at once shall perish. When Christ spake first particularly to St. Peter, he sealed his speech with a powerful promise of perpetuity, saying, "Thou art Peter, and upon this rock will I build my Church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it." (Matt. xvi. 18.) When he spake generally to all the rest of the apostles to the same purpose, "Go teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost;" (Matt. xxviii. 19.) he added a promise to the same effect, "and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the world." (Ibid. 20.) The first of these promises assureth us of the continuance of the Church, because it is built upon a rock; for our Saviour had expressed this before, "Whosoever heareth these sayings of mine, and doth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, which built his house upon a rock; and the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock." (Matt. vii. 24, 25.) The Church of Christ is the House of Christ; for he hath "built the house," and is as a "son over his own house, whose house are we;" (Heb. iii. 3. 6.) and as a wise man, he hath built his house upon a rock, and what is so built shall not fall. The latter of these promises giveth not only an assurance of the continuance of the Church,* but also the cause of that continuance, which is the presence of Christ. "Where two or three are gathered together in the name of Christ, there he is in the midst of them," (Matt. xviii. 20.) and thereby they become a Church; for they are as a built house, and the son within that house. Wherefore being Christ doth promise his presence unto the Church, even unto the end of the World, he doth thereby assure us of the existence of the Church, until that time, of which his presence is the cause. Indeed, this is "the city of the Lord of Hosts, the city of our

* 'Non deserit ecclesiam suam divina protecto, dicente Domino, Ecce ego vos bisum omnibus diebus, &c.' Lev Epist. 31. St. Augustin upon those words of Psal. ci. Exiguitatem dieron meorum annuncia mihi, maesthe the Church to speak these words: 'Quid est, quod nescio qui recedentes me murmuran contra me? Quid est, quod perditi me perisse contendant? Certe eum hoc dicit, Quia fuist et non sum. Annuncia mihi exiguitatem dieron meorum. Non a te quarto illos dies saecuos; illi sese finem sunt, ubi cre; non ipsos quarto; temporales quarto, temporales dies mihi annuncia. Eignutatem dieron meorum, non externitatem dieron meorum annuncia mihi. Quamdiu ero in isto saeculo, annuncia mihi, propter illos qui dicit, Fuit et jam non est: propter illos qui dicunt, Impletse sunt Scripturae, crediderunt omnes gentes, sed apostatae; et perit ecclesia de omnibus gentibus. Quid est hoc, Exiguitatem dieron meorum annuncia mihi? Et annunciae, nec vacua futur vox ista. Quis annuntiavi mihi, nisi ipsa ves? Quoniam annunciation. Ecce ego vos bisum suam supe ad omnium seculli.' Serm. ii. §. 8.
God, God will establish it for ever,"* (Psal. xlviii. 8.) as the great prophet of the Church hath said.

Upon the certainty of this truth, the existence of the Church hath been propounded as an object of our faith in every age of Christianity; and so it shall be still unto the end of the World. For those which are believers are the Church; and therefore, if they do believe, they must believe there is a Church. And thus having shewn in what the nature of a Church consisteth, and proved that a Church of that nature is of perpetual and indefectible existence by virtue of the promises of Christ, I have done all which can be necessary for the explication of this part of the Article, I believe the Church.

After the consideration of that which is the subject in this Article, followeth the explication of the affections thereof; which are two, sanctity and universality; the one attributed unto it by the apostles, the other by the fathers of the Church; by the first the Church is denominated holy, by the second catholick. Now the Church which we have described may be called holy in several respects, and for several reasons: first, In reference to the vocation by which all the members thereof are called and separated from the rest of the world to God; which separation in the language of the Scriptures is a sanctification: and so the calling being holy, (for "God hath called us with a holy calling," 2 Tim. i. 9.) the body which is separated and congregated thereby, may well be termed holy. Secondly, In relation to the offices appointed and the powers exercised in the Church, which by their institution and operation are holy; that Church, for which they were appointed and in which they are exercised, may be called holy. Thirdly, Because whosoever is called to profess faith in Christ, is thereby engaged to holiness of life, according to the words of the apostle, "Let every one that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity:" (2 Tim. ii. 19.) for those namers of the name, or named by the name, of Christ, are such as called on his name; and that was the description of the Church: as when Saul did persecute the Church, it is said he had "authority from the chief priests to bind all that called upon the name of Christ;" (Acts ix. 14.) and when "he preached Christ in the synagogues, all that heard him said, Is not this he who destroyed them which called on this name in Jerusalem?" (Ibid. 20, 21.)† Being then all within the Church are by their profession obliged to such holiness of life, in respect of this obligation, the whole Church may be termed holy. Fourthly, In


† See 1 Cor. i. 2. ὅτι γὰρ τῇ ἄθεσιν τῆς ἀγάπης τοῖς ἔχων τὸ ἡ τῆς πίστεως καὶ πολιτείας ἀμυντοὺς συμπέφυκεν ἐκκλησία ἐστιν, ἵνα ἐστὶ τῆς σφαίρας γιοισμάτων. Ibid. Epist. 246. i. ii.
regard the end of constituting a Church in God was for the purchasing a holy and a precious people; and the great design thereof was for the begetting and increasing holiness, that as God is originally holy in himself, so he might communicate his sanctity to the sons of men, whom he intended to bring unto the fruition of himself, unto which, without a previous sanctification, they can never approach, because without holiness no man shall ever see God. (Heb. xii. 14.)

For these four reasons, the whole Church of God, as it containeth in it all the persons which were called to the profession of the faith of Christ, or were baptized in his name, may well be termed and believed holy. But the apostle hath delivered another kind of holiness, which cannot belong unto the Church taken in so great a latitude. “For (saith he) Christ loved the Church, and gave himself for it, that he might sanctify and cleanse it by the washing of water by the Word, that he might present it to himself a glorious Church, not having spot or wrinkle, or any such thing, but that it should be holy and without blemish.” (Eph. v. 25—27.) Now though it may be conceived that Christ did love the whole Church, as it did any way contain all such as ever called upon his name, and did give himself for all of them: yet we cannot imagine that the whole body of all men could ever be so holy, as to be without spot, wrinkle, blemish, or any such thing. It will be therefore necessary, within the great complex body of the universal Church, to find that Church to which this absolute holiness doth belong: and to this purpose it will be fit to consider both the difference of the persons contained in the Church, as it hath been hitherto described, while they continue in this life, and their different conditions after death; whereby we shall at last discover in what persons this holiness is inherent really, in what condition it is inherent perfectly, and consequently in what other sense it may be truly and properly affirmed that the Church is holy.

Where first we must observe that the Church, as it embraceth all the professors of the true faith of Christ, containeth in it not only such as do truly believe and are obedient to the Word, but those also which are hypocrites, and profane. Many profess the faith, which have no true belief: many have some kind of faith, which live with no correspondence to the Gospel preached. Within therefore the notion of the Church are comprehended good and bad, being both externally called, and both professing the same faith. For the kingdom of heaven is like unto a field in which wheat and tares grow together unto the harvest; like unto a net that was cast into the sea, and gathered of every kind; like unto a floor in which is laid up wheat and chaff; like unto a marriage-feast, in which some have on the wedding-garment, and some not. (Matt. xiii. 24. 30. 47. iii. 12. xxii. 10.) This is that ark of Noah in which were
preserved beasts clean and unclean. This is that great house in which there are not only vessels of gold and of silver, but also of wood, and of earth, and some to honour, and some to dishonour. (2 Tim. ii. 20.)* There are "many called" of all which the Church consisteth, but there are "few chosen" (Matt. xx. 16.) of those which are called, and thereby within the Church. I conclude therefore, as the ancient Catholicks did against the Donatists,† That within the Church, in the public profession and external communion thereof, are contained persons truly good and sanctified, and hereafter to be saved, and together with them other persons void of all saving grace, and hereafter to be damned; and that Church containing these of both kinds may well be called holy; as St. Matthew (iv. 5.) called Jerusalem the holy city, even at that time when our Saviour did but begin to preach, when we know there was in that city a general corruption in manners and worship.

Of these promiscuously contained in the Church, such as are void of all saving grace while they live, and communicate with the rest of the Church, and when they pass out of this life, die in their sins, and remain under the eternal wrath of God; as they were not in their persons holy while they lived, so are they no way of the Church after their death, neither as members of it, nor as contained in it. Through their own demerit they fall short of the glory unto which they were called; and being by death separated from the external communion of the Church, and having no true internal communion with the members and the head thereof, are totally and finally cut off from the Church of Christ. On the contrary, such as are efficaciously called, justified, and sanctified, while they live are truly holy, and when they die are perfectly holy; nor are they

* "Firmissime tene et nullatenus duhites, aream Dei esse ecclesiam catholicam, et iacta eam usque in finem seculi frumento mixtas paleas contineri, hoc est, bonus malos sacramentorum communione misceri." Fulgent. ad Petrum, c. 43. St. Jerome joins these two together: 'Arca Nova ecclesiae typus: ut in illa omnium animalium genera, ita et in hac universarum et gentium et morum hominum sunt; ut ubi pardus et haedi, lupus et agn, ita et hic justi et peccatores, id est, vasa aurea et argentea cum lagenis et fælibus commorantur.' Dial. contra Luciferianos, col. 502.

† The opinion of the Donatists confuted by the Catholicks is to be seen in St. Augustin's book, intituled, Brevisiculum Collationum. Upon which reflection in his book, Post Collationem, he observes how they were forced by the testimony of those Scriptures which we have produced, to acknowledge that there were mingled with the good such as were occultly had: 'Ecce etiam ipsi veritate evangelica non aliud coacti sunt conteri quam malos occultos nunc e piemixtus esse,' as the good and bad fish are taken in the same net, because it could not discern the bad from the good. And from thence he enforced from their acknowledgment, that those which are apparently evil, are contained in the same Church: 'Si enim propterea retibus bonos et malos congreantibus ecclesiam comparavit; quia malos in ecclesia non manifestos sed latentes intelligi voluit, quos ita nesciunt sacerdotes, quemadmodum sub fluctibus quid accepit retia nesciunt piscatores. Propterea ergo et area comparata est, ut etiam manifeste malo cum bonus in ea praebueritur futuri. Neque enim palea qua in area est permixta frumentis, etiam ipsa sub fluctibus latet, quas sic omnium oculis est conspicue, ut potius occulta sit in ea frumenta, cum sit ipsa manifesta.' Lib. Post Collat. c. 9, 10.
by their death separated from the Church, but remain united
still by virtue of that internal union, by which they were before
conjoined both to the members and the Head. As therefore
the Church is truly holy, not only by a holiness of institution,
but also by a personal sanctity in reference to these saints
while they live, so is it also perfectly holy, in relation to the
same saints glorified in heaven. And at the end of the world,
when all the wicked shall be turned into hell, and consequently
all cut off from the communion of the Church; when the
members of the Church remaining being perfectly sanctified,
shall be eternally glorified, then shall the whole Church be
truly and perfectly holy.

Then shall that be completely fulfilled, that Christ shall
"present unto himself a glorious Church, which shall be holy
and without blemish." (Eph. v. 27.) Not that there are two
Churches of Christ: one, in which good and bad are mingled
together; another, in which they are good alone: one, in which
the saints are imperfectly holy; another, in which they are
perfectly such: but one and the same Church, in relation to
different times,* admitteth or not admitteth the permission
of the wicked, or the imperfection of the godly. To conclude,
the Church of God is universally holy in respect of all, by in-
stitutions and administrations of sanctity; the same Church is
really holy in this world, in relation to all godly persons con-
tained in it, by a real infused sanctity; the same is farther yet
at the same time perfectly holy, in reference to the saints de-
parted and admitted to the presence of God; and the same
Church shall hereafter be most completely holy in the world
to come, when all the members actually belonging to it, shall
be at once perfected in holiness and completed in happiness.
And thus I conceive the affection of the sanctity sufficiently
explained.

The next affection of the Church is that of universality, I
believe the holy catholic Church. Now the word catholic,
as it is not read in the Scriptures, so was it not anciently in
the creed (as we have already shewn), but being inserted by
the Church, must necessarily be interpreted by the sense which
the most ancient fathers had of it, and that sense must be con-
"firmed, so far as it is consentient with the Scriptures. To grant
then that the word was not used by the apostles;† we must

* This was it which the Catholicks an-
swered to the Donatists, objecting that
they made two distinct Churches: "De
dubibus etiam ecclesias calumniam eorum
catholicæ refutant, identidem expressius
ostendentes quid dixerint, id est, non eam
ecclesiam, quam nunc habet permixtos
malos, alienam se divisse a regnum Dei,
ubi non erant mali commixtii; sed eandem
ipsam unam et sanctam ecclesiam nunc
esse alter, tunc autem alter futuram;
nunc habere malos mixtos, tunc non ha-
biruram; sicut nunc mortalem, quod ex
mortalibus constaret hominibus, tunc au-
tem immortalem, quod in ea nullus esset
vel corporis mortitus: sicut non ideo duo
Christi, quia prior mortuos ostetas non
tertii diei, c. 10.

† It was the ordinary objection of the
schismatical Novatians, that the very
name of Catholics was never used by the
also acknowledge that it was most anciently in use among the primitive fathers, and that as to several intents. For, first, they called the Epistles of St. James, St. Peter, St. John, St. Jude, the catholick Epistles,* because when the Epistles written by St. Paul were directed to particular Churches congregated in particular cities, these were either sent to the Churches dispersed through a great part of the world, or directed to the whole church of God upon the face of the whole earth. Again, we observe the fathers to use the word catholick for nothing else but general or universal, in the originary or vulgar sense: as the catholick resurrection, is, the resurrection of all men; the catholick opinion, the opinion of all men.† Sometimes it was used as a word of state, signifying an officer which collected the emperor's revenue in several provinces, united into one diocese; who, because there were particular officers belonging to the particular provinces, and all under him, was therefore called the Catholicus,+ as general Procurator of them apostles, and the answer to it by the Catholics was by way of concession. * Sed sub Apostolis, inquietis, surno Catholicos vocabatur; Estos, sic fuerit, vel illud indulge, &c. "Pacian. ad Symmephionum, Epist. 1. * So St. Jerome of St. James: "Unam tumum scriptum est, quae de septem catholico est:" of St. Peter: "Scriptum duas epistolae, quae catholicae nominatur:" of St. Jude: "Judas frater Jacobi parvam quidem, quae de septem catholico est, epistolam reliquit." This therefore was the common title of these epistles in St. Jerome's time among the Latins, and before among the Greeks, as appeareth by Eusebius: "Tantata etiam catholico epistolame, quae de septem catholico est:" of Peter: "Scripturam duae epistolas, quae catholicae nominatur:" of St. Jude: "Judas frater Jacobi parvam quidem, quae de septem catholico est, epistolam reliquit." This therefore was the common title of these epistles in St. Jerome's time among the Latins, and before among the Greeks, as appeareth by Eusebius: 'Tantata etiam catholico epistolame, quae de septem catholico est:" of Peter: "Scripturam duae epistolas, quae catholicae nominatur:" of St. Jude: "Judas frater Jacobi parvam quidem, quae de septem catholico est, epistolam reliquit." The same was in use before the time of Eusebius, as appeareth by Dionysius bishop of Alexandria: 'O de eis eyleymata eis tis katholikis epistolais onphierax aitov to "tovov. Euseb. Hist. l. vii. c. 25. and before him, as appeareth by Origen: 'Deytorev de kata Mepko, de Pterze epirepanto aitov tisepeta, dei kai kai in in katholikai ispetolai iva tovov avolov yofes. Euseb. Hist. l. vii. c. 25. Thus anciently epistula catholica was used for a general epistle: Kaphileikai de ielkolovn, eisaiain ou: fere: en inos, eilekognon, de ai tov Paulou, ala katholik per panta. Longinus de Ccestis, Act. 2. and so continued, not only in relation to the Scriptures, but to the epistles of others, as Eusebius of Dionysius bishop of Corinth: 'Phermeramaton evpanov kata katholikte de, en ait petpetevon katholikai: tis tis katholikai epistolai. Hist. Eccl. l. iv. c. 23.


‡ We read in the old Glossary, katholike rationalis, that is, the receiver of the imperial revenue; not that it signifies so much of itself, but because he was the general receiver, and so not for receiving or accounting, but for the generality of his accounts in respect of others who were inferior, and whose receipts and accounts were more particular; therefore he was called Catholicus, who by the Latins was
ARTICLE IX.

all, from whence that title was by some transferred upon the Christian patriarchs.

When this title is attributed to the Church, it hath not always the same notion or signification: for when by the Church, is understood the house of God, or place in which the worship of God is performed, then by the catholick Church is meant no more than the common Church, into which all such persons as belonged to that parish in which it was built were wont to congregate. For where monasteries were in use, as there were separate habitations for men, and distinct for women, so were there also Churches for each distinct; and in the parishes, where there was no distinction of sexes, as to the habitations, there was a common Church which received them both, and therefore called catholick. *

Again, When the Church is taken for the persons making profession of the Christian faith, the catholick is often added in opposition to heretics and schismatics, expressing a particular Church continuing in the true faith with the rest of the Church of God,† as the catholick Church in Smyrna, the catholick Church in Alexandria.

properly styled Precursor summa rei, or Rationem summare. Thus Constantine signified to Cæcilianus bishop of Carthage, that he had written to his Procurator-general to deliver him monies: ' Ecce grantia tuae: et dico ei: Dominus tuus semper in pace: ut ego semper in pace semperque invictus: ut ego semper invictus, ut ego semper in pace semperque invictus.'

But as a German word, itself quite unknown before the Middle Ages, `katholikos' has the following etymology: 'katholikos' means 'general.' Similarly, the word `catholic' is derived from the Greek words `katholikos' and `katholikon,' meaning 'general.'

* Thus `catholic' or `catholick' is often used in opposition to the term `heretical' or `schismatical,' referring to churches or individuals that are not considered to be part of the mainstream Christian community.

† As the Smyrneans spoke in Eusebius of Polycarpus: 'πάντες ἔσκηκασαν τῇ ἐν Σμύρνῃ καθολικῇ ἱερασίᾳ, 1. iv. c. 18.' This indicates that the Smyrneans referred to their church as the `catholic church' in Smyrna.
Now being these particular Churches could not be named *catholic* as they were particular, in reference to this or that city in which they were congregated, it followed that they were called *catholic* by their coherence and conjunction with that Church, which was properly and originally called so; *catholic* which is in the Church taken in that acceptance, which we have already delivered. That Church which was built upon the apostles as upon the foundation, congregated by their preaching and by their baptizing, received continued accession, and disseminated in several parts of the earth, containing within it numerous congregations, all which were truly called Churches, as members of the same Church; that Church, I say, was after some time called the *catholic* Church, that is to say, the *catholic* was used by the Greeks to signify the whole. For being every particular congregation professing the name of Christ, was from the beginning called a Church; being likewise all such congregations considered together were originally comprehended under the name of the Church; being these two notions of the word were different, it came to pass that for distinction's sake at first they called the Church, taken in the large and comprehensive sense, by as large and comprehensive a name, the *catholic* Church.+

---

+ *Ut fides clarescet omnibus ecclesiis catholicis, et haereti noscerentur.* Frug. VIII. From whence it came to pass, that in the same city heretics and catholics having their several congregations, each of which was called the Church, the congregation of the catholics was by way of distinction called the *catholic* Church. Of which this was the old advice of St. Cyril of Jerusalem: *'Ad portas introitus in petras, unam esse.&apos; Quod si illius tempus et locum non habuerit, tu decem passiones� etiam tuum concupisces meae, sed a contrario; mundum sanctum et apostolicum naturam cum anima omnibus salutem innocuit.* Catech. xxv. § 12. 'Ego forte ingressus populos, urbs, bodie, cum Marcinotis, cum Apollinaricos, Catharynas, Novemtians, et caeteros ejusmodi comperissem, qui se Christianos vocarent, quot communem congregacionem meae plebis agnoscerem, nisi catholica diceretur?' Pacian. ad Symp. Ep. 1. 'Tenet postremo ipsam catholicam nomen, quod non sine causa ista ecclesia sola obtinuit, ut cum omnibus haeresi se catholicos dici velit, quam tamen peregrino aliqui, ed in ad catholicae conveniatur, nullus haeresetorum vel Basilicam nam vel domum audias ostendere.' S. August. cont. Epit. Fundamenti. c. 4.

*Nonne appellacione propria decuit caput principale signari?* Pacianus, ad Symp. Ep. 1. *I conceive at first there was no other meaning in the word *katholik* than what the Greek language did signify thereby.*
Although this seem the first intention of those which gave the name catholick to the Church, to signify thereby nothing else but the whole or universal Church; yet those which followed, did signify by the same that affection of the Church, which floweth from the nature of it, and may be expressed by that word. At first they called the whole Church catholick, meaning no more than the universal Church; but having used that term some space of time, they considered how the nature of the Church was to be universal, and in what that universality did consist.

As far then as the ancient fathers have expressed themselves, and as far as their expressions are agreeable with the descriptions of the Church delivered in the Scriptures, so far, I conceive, we may safely conclude that the Church of Christ is truly catholick, and that the truly catholick Church is the true Church of Christ, which must necessarily be sufficient for the explication of this affection, which we acknowledge when we say, we believe the catholick Church.

The most obvious and most general notion of this catholicism consisteth in the diffusiveness of the Church, grounded upon the commission given to the builders of it, "Go teach all nations," whereby they and their successors were authorized and empowered to gather congregations of believers, and so to extend the borders of the Church unto the utmost parts of the earth. The synagogue of the Jews especially consisted of one nation, and the public worship of God was confined to one country, "In Judah was God known, and his name was great in Israel; in Salem was his tabernacle, and his dwelling-place in Sion." (Psal. Ixxvi. 1, 2.) "He shewed his word unto Jacob, his statutes and his judgments unto Israel; he hath not dealt so with any nation." (Psal. cxlvii. 19.) The temple was the only place in which the sacrifices could be offered, in which the priests could perform their offices of ministration; and so under the Law there was an enclosure divided from all the world besides. But God said unto his Son, "I will give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the utmost parts of the earth

that is, tota or universa; as St. Augustin: 'Cum dixisset desuper contenta, addidit per totum. Quod si referamus ad id quod significant, membra ejus est expers qui pertinere inventur ad totum: a quo toto, sicut Graeca indicat lingua, catholica vocatur ecclesia.'

Tract. in Ioum. 113. §. 4. The most ancient author that I find it in (except Ignatius: "Ωςών ἐν ἡμί- ἐπίσκοπος, εἰς τὸ σφαῖρα ἐστώ, ἀντίπασσων ἐστω ἡ Ἑκκλησία τος ἒμων ἐκκλησία τος ἐκλεισθείσης πάντων ἐν θεολογίᾳ, καὶ πάποις ταῖς κατὰ πάντα τῶν ἐκκλησιῶν καθολικῶν"; i.e. omnibus totius ecclesiae partibus. Euseb. Hist. Eccl. l. iv. c. 15.) It was otherwise called in the same notion καθόλου. As Apollinaris bishop of Hierapolis: Τὸν δὲ καθόλον καὶ πᾶνα τὸν ἐν τῷ σφαίρα ἐκκλησίαν ἐλαθημένων διδάσκασι τῷ ἀποκαθεδρισμοῖς πνεύματος. Apud Euseb. Hist. Eccl. l. iv. c. 16. And Eusebius: Προσφερὸν δὲ εἰς αὐξήναι καὶ μείγνως, ἀδίκως τὰ αὐτὰ καὶ οὐκοτινὸς ἔγνωσε νὴ τῆς καθόλου καὶ μείναι ἀληθίνη ἐκκλησία λαμπρότητι. Hist. l. iv. c. 7. Καθόλον then and καθόλου is the same, the whole, general, or universal.
for thy possession.” (Psal. ii. 8.) And Christ commanded the apostles, saying, “Go ye into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature:” (Mark xvi. 15.) “that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.” (Luke xxiv. 47.) Thus the Church of Christ, in its primary institution, was made to be of a diffusive nature, to spread and extend itself from the city of Jerusalem, where it first began, to all the parts and corners of the earth. From whence we find them in the Revelation thinking to the Lamb, “Thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood, out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation.” (Rev. v. 9.) This reason did the ancient fathers render why the Church was called catholic; and the nature of the Church is so described in the Scriptures. Secondly, They call the Church of Christ the catholic Church, because it teacheth all things which are necessary for a Christian to know, whether they be things in heaven or things in earth, whether they concern the condition of man in this life or in the life to come. As the Holy Ghost did lead the apostles “into all truth,” (John xvi. 13.) so did the apostles leave all truth unto the Church, teaching all the same, may be well called catholic, from the universality of necessary and saving truths retained in it.†

Thirdly, The Church hath been thought fit to be called catholic in reference to the universal obedience which it prescribeth; both in respect of the persons, obliging men of all conditions;‡ and in relation to the precepts, requiring the performance of all the evangelical commands.§

* We have before observed of Arians and Euzoiius, that naming the catholic Church in their Creed, they gave withal the interpretation of it: Et quia evangelium catholicum est, quod in eundem omni terrae et universali propter obedientiam (firstly) and respect to the persons, obliging men of all conditions; and (secondly) and in relation to the precepts, requiring the performance of all the evangelical commands.

† This is the second interpretation delivered by St. Cyril: Quaest. iv. 4. C. 4: The Church, Catholicum, universal, quam in omnem mundum sit diffusa.”

‡ This is the third interpretation of St. Cyril: Quaest. iv. 4. Q. 1: The Church, Catholicum, universal, quam in omnem mundum sit diffusa.

§ This is the third interpretation of St. Cyril: Quaest. iv. 4. Q. 1: The Church, Catholicum, universal, quam in omnem mundum sit diffusa.
Fourthly, The Church hath been yet farther called or reputed catholick;* by reason all graces are given in it, whereby all diseases of the soul are healed, and spiritual virtues are disseminated, all the works and words and thoughts of men are regulated, till we become perfect men in Christ Jesus.

In all these four acceptations did some of the ancient fathers understand the Church of Christ to be catholick, and every one of them doth certainly belong unto it. Wherefore I conclude that this catholicism, or second affection, of the Church, consisteth generally in universality, as embracing all sorts of persons, as to be disseminated through all nations, as comprehending all ages, as containing all necessary and saving truths, as obliging all conditions of men to all kinds of obedience, as curing all diseases, and planting all graces in the souls of men.

The necessity of believing the holy catholick Church, appeareth first in this, that Christ hath appointed it as the only way unto eternal life. We read at the first, that “the Lord added daily to the Church such as should be saved;” (Acts ii. 47.) and what was then done daily, hath been done since continually. Christ never appointed two ways to heaven; nor did he build a Church to save some, and make another institution for other men’s salvation. “There is none other name under heaven given among men whereby we must be saved, but the name of Jesus;” (Acts iv. 12.)+ and that name is no otherwise given under heaven than in the Church. As none were saved

nuncupatur, mandatorum scilicet Dei. Unde Apostolus, Si in omnibus obedientes estis; et iterum, Sicut enim per inocentiam unius peccatorum constiuit sancti, sic per dicta-audientiam unius justi constiuitur multi. Ergo qui catholici, ideam justi obedienti.* Paeanae Epist. 1. ad Symm. "Acutum aliiquid videre dixere, cum catholica nominem non ex totius orbis communione interpretasse, sed ex observatione preceptorum omnium divinorum atque omnium sacramentorum: quasi nos etiam, si forte hinc sit appellata catholica, quod totum veraciter teneant, cupis veritatis nonnulla particularis etiam in diversis inventur barresios, bius nominis testi-

monio utamur ad demonstrandum ecclesi-ism in omnibus gentibus, et non pro-
misiss Dei et tam multis tamque mani-
estis oraculis ipsius veritatis. Sed rempe hoc boc est totum, quod nobis persuadere conar is, solos remanesse Rogatistas, qui catholici recte appellandis sunt ex observa-
tione preceptorum omnium divinorum atque omnium sacramentorum." S. August. Epist. 48. al. 93. § 23. Indeed this notion of the Catholic Church was urged by the Donatists as the only notion of it in opposition to the universality of place and communion. For when the Catholics answered for themselves: "Quia ecclesiæ toto orbe diffusa, cui testi-

nium perhibet Scriptura divina, ipsi, non Donatistæ, communicante, unde Catholici merito et sunt et vocantur: Donatistæ autem respondierunt, Non Catholicum nomen ex universitate gentium, sed ex plenitudine sacramentorum institutum." Iedem, Breviæc. collat. tertii delil., c. 3.

* This is the fourth and last explication given by St. Cyril: "Vidit is to the Catholic la-
tication, in his and every Church together, to the ecclesiæ every thing is distributed, as it is, for the sake of obedience, in the name of the Lord, to seek, to seek the truth, as is appointed, and to be satisfied. This is the only notion of it in the Catholic Church, as the only notion of it in opposition to the universality of place and communion. For when the Catholics answered for themselves: "Quia ecclesiæ toto orbe diffusa, cui testi-
nium perhibet Scriptura divina, ipsi, non Donatistæ, communicante, unde Catholici merito et sunt et vocantur: Donatistæ autem respondierunt, Non Catholicum nomen ex universitate gentium, sed ex plenitudine sacramentorum institutum." Iedem, Breviæc. collat. tertii delil., c. 3.

† Katharæ in theætæ utriusque ætate, uti etiam ütique, in distinct, i.e., each, and others, and all in one, as it is appointed, and to be satisfied. This is the only notion of it in the Catholic Church, as the only notion of it in opposition to the universality of place and communion. For when the Catholics answered for themselves: "Quia ecclesiæ toto orbe diffusa, cui testi-
nium perhibet Scriptura divina, ipsi, non Donatistæ, communicante, unde Catholici merito et sunt et vocantur: Donatistæ autem respondierunt, Non Catholicum nomen ex universitate gentium, sed ex plenitudine sacramentorum institutum." Iedem, Breviæc. collat. tertii delil., c. 3.
from the deluge but such as were within the ark of Noah, framed for their reception by the command of God; as none of the first-born of Egypt lived, but such as were within those habitation, whose door-posts were sprinkled with blood by the appointment of God for their preservation; as none of the inhabitants of Jericho could escape the fire or sword, but such as were within the house of Rahab, for whose protection a covenant was made: so none shall ever escape the eternal wrath of God, which belong not to the Church of God. This is the congregation of those persons here on earth, which shall hereafter meet in heaven. These are the vessels of the tabernacle carried up and down, at last to be translated into, and fixed in, the temple.

Secondly, It is necessary to believe the Church of Christ, which is but one, that being in it we may take care never to cast ourselves, or be ejected, out of it. There is a power within the Church to cast those out which do belong to it; for if any “neglect to hear the Church (saith our Saviour), let him be unto thee as a heathen man and a publican.” (Matt. xviii. 17.) By great and scandalous offences, by incorrigible misdemeanours, we may incur the censure of the Church of God; and while we are shut out by them, we stand excluded out of heaven. For our Saviour said to his apostles, upon whom he built his Church, “Whosoever sins ye remit they are remitted unto them, and whosoever sins ye retain they are retained.” (John xx. 23.) Again, a man may not only passively and involuntarily be rejected, but also may by an act of his own cast out or reject himself, not only by plain and complete apostacy, but by a defection from the unity of truth, falling into some damnable heresy; or by an active separation, deserting all which are in communion with the catholick Church, and falling into an irrecoverable schism.

Thirdly, It is necessary to believe the Church of Christ to be holy, lest we should presume to obtain any happiness by being of it, without that holiness which is required in it. It is not enough that the end, institution, and administration of the Church are holy: but, that there may be some real and permanent advantage received by it, it is necessary that the persons, abiding in the communion of it, should be really and effectually sanctified. Without which holiness the privileges of the Church prove the greatest disadvantages: and the means of salvation neglected, tend to a punishment with aggravation. It is not only vain, but pernicious to attend at the marriage-feast without a wedding-garment; and it is our Saviour’s description of folly to cry, “Lord, Lord, open to us,” (Matt. xxv. 11.) while we are without oil in our lamps. We must acknowledge a necessity of holiness, when we confess that Church alone which is holy can make us happy.

Fourthly, There is a necessity of believing the catholick
Church, because except a man be of that, he can be of none. For being the Church which is truly catholic, containeth within it all which are truly Churches, whosoever is not of the catholic Church, cannot be of the true Church. * That Church alone which first began at Jerusalem on earth, will bring us to the Jerusalem in heaven; and that alone began there, which always embraceth "the faith once delivered unto the saints." (Jude 3.) Whatsoever Church pretendeth to a new beginning, pretendeth at the same time to a new Churchdom, and whatsoever is so new is none. So necessary it is to believe in the holy catholic Church.

Having thus far explicated the first part of this Article, I conceive every person sufficiently furnished with means of instruction what they ought to intend, when they profess to believe the holy catholic Church. For thereby every one is understood to declare thus much: I am fully persuaded, and make a free confession of this, as of a necessary and infallible truth, that Christ, by the preaching of the apostles, did gather unto himself a Church, consisting of thousands of believing persons and numerous congregations, to which he daily added such as should be saved, and will successively and daily add to the same unto the end of the World: so that by the virtue of his all-sufficient promise, I am assured that there was, hath been hitherto, and now is, and hereafter shall be, so long as the sun and moon endure, a Church of Christ one and the same. This Church I believe in general holy in respect of the author, end, institution, and administration of it; particularly in the members, here I acknowledge it really, and in the same hereafter perfectly holy. I look upon this Church not like that of the Jews, limited to one people, confined to one nation, but by the appointment and command of Christ, and by the efficacy of his assisting power, to be disseminated through all nations, to be extended to all places, to be propagated to all ages, to contain in it all truths necessary to be known, to exact absolute obedience from all men to the commands of Christ, and to furnish us with all graces necessary to make our persons acceptable, and our actions well pleasing in the sight of God. And thus I believe the holy catholic Church.

The Communion of Saints.

This part of the Article beareth something a later date than any of the rest, † but yet is no way inferior to the other in re-

* 'Sola catholica ecclesia est, quae verum cultum retinet. Hi est fons veritatis, hoc est domicilium fidei, hoc templum Dei: quo si quis non intraverit, vel a quo si quis exerit, a spe vitae ac salutis aeternae alienus est.' Lactant. de ver. Sup., l. iv. c. 30.

† These words, communione sanctorum, were not in the Aquileian Creed expounded by Rufinus: they were not mentioned by him, as being either in the Oriental or the Roman Creed. They were not in the African Creed expounded by St. Augustin De Fide et Symbolo; not
lation to the certainty of the truth thereof. And the late admission of it into the Creed will be thus far advantageous, that thereby we may be the better assured of the true intent of it, as it is placed in the Creed. For it will be no way fit to give any other explication of these words as the sense of the Creed, than what was then understood by the Church of God, when they were first inserted.

If we look upon the first institution of the Church, and the original condition of those persons which received the Gospel, how they "were all together, and had all things common;' how "they sold their possessions and goods, and parted them to all men as every man had need;" (Acts ii. 44, 45.) how St. Paul urged "an equality, that the abundance of some might supply the want of others, as it is written, He that had gathered much had nothing over, and he that had gathered !:te had no lack." (2 Cor. vii. 14, 15.) we might well conceive that the communion (which word might be taken for communication) of the Saints, may signify the great charity,* bounty, and community among the people of God.

But being that community, precisely taken, was not of eternal obligation, nor actually long continued in the Church; being I conceive this Article doth not wholly look upon that which is already past; and especially, being I think neither that custom, nor that notion was then generally received in the Church, when this communion of Saints was first inserted: I shall therefore endeavour to shew that communion which is attributed to the Saints both according to the fathers who have delivered it, and according to the Scriptures from whence they derived it.

Now all communion being between such as are some way different and distinct, the communion of the Saints may either be conceived between them and others, or between themselves; between them and others, as differing from them either in their nature or their sanctity; between themselves, as distinct in person only, or condition also. Wherefore if we can first un-

* Grotius, upon that place of the Corinthians, observes: 'Spectat et hic ea quam in Symbolo profitemur Sanctorum communionem.'
 ARTICLE IX.
derstand who, or what kind of persons these are which are called Saints, with whom beside themselves, and how among themselves, in this relation as they are the Saints, they have communion; and lastly, in what the nature of that communion in each respect consisteth; I know not what can be thought wanting to the perfect explication of the communion of Saints.

That we may understand what communion the Saints have with others, it would be necessary first to consider what it is to be a Saint, in what the true nature of Saintship doth consist, by what the Saints are distinguished from others. Again, that we may understand what communion the Saints have with or among themselves, it will be farther necessary to consider who are those persons to which that title doth belong, what are the various conditions of them, that we may be able to comprehend all such as are true Saints, and thence conclude the communion between them all.

I take it first for granted, that though the Greek word, which we translate Saints, be in itself as applicable to things* as persons, yet in this Article it signifieth not holy things, but holy ones, that is persons holy. Secondly, I take it also for granted, that the singular Holy One, the Holy One of Israel, the fountain of all sanctity, the sanctifier of all Saints, is not comprehended in the Article, though the communion of the holy ones with that singular, eminent, and transcendent Holy One,† be contained in it. Thirdly, I take it farther for granted, that the word in this Article, which we translate Saints, is not taken in the original of the Creed, as it is often taken in the translation of the Old Testament, for the sanctuary,‡ as if the communion were nothing else but a right of communicating or participating of the holy things of God. Lastly, I take it also for granted, that although the blessed and holy angels are sometimes called in the Scriptures by the name of Saints,§

* Kosmias ἄγιος may be as well understood in the neuter as the masculine, as Exod. xxviii. 39. "Ἄγιον τῇ ἁμαρτιασματι τῶν ἁγίων," that Aaron may bear the iniquity of the holy things." So Lev. v. 15. Καὶ ἁμάρτη ἄγιος ἀπὸ τῶν ἁγίων Koron. xxii. 2. Καὶ προέβλεψαν ἀπὸ τῶν ἁγίων τὸν γάιον Ἰησοῦν. 1 Chron. xxiv. 5. Ἀρχιερεῖς τῶν ἁγίων, "the governors of the sanctuary," of which notion afterwards.

† This is one of the common names of God in the Old Testament, יִשָּׁרֶץ שִׁכְרָל, ἅγιος Ἰσραήλ, which is also sometimes translated plurally by the LXX. as Isaiah xli. 16. ἁγιός ἱδρύπῃ ἐν τοῖς ἁγίοις Ἰσραήλ. Jer. II. 3. ἁγιός ἱδρύπῃ ἐν τοῖς ἁγίοις Ἰσραήλ; and if it were so taken, then κοινωνία τῶν ἁγίων would be the communion of God, as τῶν ἁγίων Πνευμάτων.

‡ This is frequently used in the Scriptures for the sanctuary: and then κοινωνία τῶν ἁγίων might be taken for the communion in all those things which belonged to the worship of God, as ἀκομπάνησας was a man excluded from all such communion.

§ The angels are not only called holy in the Scriptures by way of addition or epithet, as ἄγιοι ἄγιοι, Matt. xxv. 31. μετὰ τῶν ἁγίων τῶν ἁγίων, Mark viii. 38. Luke ix. 26. ἄγιοι ἐν τοῖς ἄγιοις ἁγίοις, Acts x. 38. ἄγιοι τῶν ἁγίων ἃ ἄγιοι, Rev. xiv. 10.; but also the ἄγιοι, holy ones, or Saints, taken substantively or singly, signify sometimes the angels, as Dent xxiii. 2. שָׁרֶץ תַּכְבָּר נַעַר "he came with ten thousands of Saints," the Jerusalem Targum renders שָׁרֶץ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה שֵׁרֵץ שֵׁרֵץ מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה וְלָמָּה לוֹ נַעַר מִלְשְׁנָה W and with him myriads of myriads of holy angels. And although the LXX. keep the Hebrew שָׁרֶץ.
yet they were not those who are here said to have the communion, though the Saints have communion with them.

For this part of the Article hath a manifest relation to the former, in which we profess to believe the holy Church; which Church is therefore holy, because those persons are such, or ought to be, which are within it, the Church itself being nothing but a collection of such persons. To that confession is added this communion; but because though the Church be holy, yet every person contained in it is not truly so, therefore is added this part of the Article which concerneth those who are truly such. There is therefore no doubt but the Saints mentioned here are members of the Church of Christ, as we have described it, built upon the apostles, laid upon the foundation of their doctrine, who do not only profess the Gospel, but are sanctified thereby.

The only question then remaining is, in what their sanctity or Saintship doth consist, and (because though they, which are believers since our Saviour’s death, be truly and more highly sanctified, yet such as lived before and under the Law, the patriarchs, the prophets, and the servants of God, were so called, and were truly named the Saints of God) who are the persons which are capable of that denomination?

Now being God himself hath given a rule unto his people, which is both in the nature of a precept and of a pattern: (“Be ye holy as I the Lord your God am holy:” (Lev. xi. 44. xix. 2. xx. 7.) Be ye holy, there’s the command; as the Lord your God is holy, there’s the rule:) being it is impossible that we should have the same sanctity which is in God, it will be necessary to declare what is this holiness, which maketh men to be accounted holy ones, and to be called Saints.

The true notion of Saints is expressed by Moses, both as to the subject, and the affection and qualification of it; for they are called by him men of holiness; (Exod. xxii. 31.)* such are the persons understood in this Article, which is the communion of men of holiness. Now holiness in the first acceptance of it signifieth separation, and that with the relation of a double term, of one from which the separation is made, and of the other to which that which is separated is applied. Those things which were counted holy under the Law were separated from common use, and applied to the service of God; and their

yet they understood the angels in that place σὺν μορφῇ Καθᾶς, [Hesych. καθᾶς, ἄγγελομε]; ἐκ διξίων αὐτῶν ἄγγελοι μετ’ αὐτῶν, So Job v. 1. “To which of the Saints wilt thou turn?” σὺν ἄγγελων ἄγιον ὅμοιον, LXX. Thus in the vision of Daniel, he “heard one Saint speaking, and another Saint said unto that certain Saint which spake,” Dan. viii. 13. So Zech. xiv. 5. “And the Lord my God shall come, and all the Saints with thee.” And thus it may very well be understood in the New Testament, 1 Thess. iii. 13. ἐν τῇ παροιμίᾳ τοῦ Κυρίου μετὰ πάντων τῶν ἁγίων αὐτῶν, in correspondence to that, 2 Thess. i. 7. ἐν τῇ ἀποκαλύψει τοῦ Κυρίου ἱκετῶ ἄγιον ἄγιον μετ’ ἄγγελων δυνάμεων αὐτῶν. These are the ἀγίοις ἁγίοι in St. Jude, ver. 14. ὁμολογίας ἐγνώμων ἐρήμων ἁγίων and thus παρασκεύασμα ἁγίων should be the communion of the angels.

* ἰδρύω
sanctity was nothing else but that separation from and to those terms; from a use and exercise profane and common, to a use and exercise peculiar and divine. Thus all such persons as are called from the vulgar and common condition of the world unto any peculiar service or relation unto God, are thereby denominated holy, and in some sense receive the name of Saints. The penmen of the Old Testament do often speak of the people of Israel as of a holy nation, and God doth speak unto them as to a people holy unto himself; because he had chosen them out of all the nations of the world, and appropriated them to himself. Although therefore most of that nation were rebellious to him which called them, and void of all true inherent and actual sanctity; yet because they were all in that manner separated, they were all, as to the separation, called holy. In the like manner those of the New Testament writing to such as were called, and had received and were baptized in the faith, give unto them all the name of Saints, as being in some manner such, by being called and baptized. For being baptism is a washing away of sin, and the purification from sin is a proper sanctification; being every one who is so called and baptized is thereby separated from the rest of the world which are not so, and all such separation is some kind of sanctification; being, though the work of grace be not perfectly wrought, yet when the means are used, without something appearing to the contrary, we ought to presume of the good effect: therefore all such as have been received into the Church, may be in some sense called holy.

But because there is more than an outward vocation, and a charitable presumption, necessary to make a man holy; therefore we must find some other qualification which must make him really and truly such, not only by an extrinsical denomination, but by a real and internal affection. What this sanctity is, and who are capable of this title properly, we must learn out of the Gospel of Christ; by which alone, ever since the Church of Christ was founded, any man can become a Saint. Now by the tenor of the Gospel we shall find that there are truly and properly Saints which are “sanctified in Christ Jesus;” (1 Cor. i. 2.) first, In respect of their holy faith, by which they are regenerated; for “whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ, is born of God;” (1 John v. 1.) by which they are purged, God himself “purifying their hearts by faith,” (Acts xv. 9.) whereby they “are washed, sanctified, and justified, in the name of the Lord Jesus,” (1 Cor. vi. 11.) “in whom also after that they believe, they are sealed with the Holy Spirit of promise.” (Eph. i. 13.) Secondly, In respect of their conversation: for “as he which hath called them is holy,” so are they “holy in all manner of conversation;” (1 Pet. i. 15.) “adding to their faith virtue, and to virtue knowledge, and to knowledge temperance, and to temperance patience, and to
THE COMMUNION OF SAINTS.

529

patience brotherly kindness, and to brotherly-kindness charity, that they may be neither barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.” (2 Pet. 1. 5—8.) Such persons then as are called by a holy calling, and not disobedient unto it; such as are endued with a holy faith, and purified thereby; such as are sanctified by the Holy Spirit of God, and by virtue thereof do lead a holy life, “perfecting holiness in the fear of God;” (2 Cor. vii. 1.) such persons, I say, are really and truly Saints; and being of the Church of Christ (as all such now must of necessity be) are the proper subject of this part of the Article the communion of Saints, as it is added to the former, the holy catholick Church.

Now as these are the Saints of the Church of Christ, from whence they were called the “Churches of the Saints;” (1 Cor. xiv. 33.) so there was never any Church of God but there were such persons in it as were Saints: we read in the Psalms of “the congregation of the Saints” (Psal. lxxxix. 5. exlix. 1.) and “the assembly of the Saints;” (Psal. lxxxix. 7.)* and Moses assured the people of Israel, that “all the Saints of God were in his hand:” (Deut. xxxiii. 3.) we read in the prophets of “the Saints of the Most High;” (Dan. vii. 18. 22. 25.) and at our Saviour’s death “the bodies of such Saints which slept arose.” (Matt. xxvii. 52.) Where again we may observe that they were Saints while their bodies were in the grave; as Aaron in the time of David kept the name of “the Saint of the Lord.” (Psal. cxi. 16.) Such as are holy in their lives do not lose their sanctity, but improve it at their deaths; nor can they lose the honour of that appellation, while that which gives it doth acquire perfection.

Hence grows that necessary distinction of the Saints on earth, and the Saints in heaven; the first belonging to the militant, the second to the triumphant Church. Of the first the prophet David speaketh expressly, “Thou art my Lord; my goodness extendeth not to thee, but to the Saints that are in the earth.” (Psal. xvi. 2, 3.) of these do we read in the Acts of the Apostles; to these did St. Paul direct his Epistles. Of the second doth the apostle make that question, “Do ye not know that the Saints shall judge the world?” (1 Cor. vi. 2.) And all those which were spoken of as Saints then in the earth, if truly such, and departed so, are now, and shall ever continue, Saints in heaven.

Having thus declared what is the sanctity required to make a Saint, that is, a man of holiness; having also distinguished the Saints before and under the Gospel (which difference is only observable as to this exposition of the Creed), and again

distinguishing the same Saints while they live here with men on earth, and when after death they live with God in heaven; having also shewn, that of all these those Saints are here particularly understood who in all ages lived in the Church of Christ: we may now properly descend to the next consideration, which is, who are those persons with whom those Saints have this communion, and in what the communion which they have consists?

First then, The Saints of God living in the Church of Christ, have communion with God the Father; for the apostles did therefore write that they to whom they wrote might have communion with them, "that which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us," (saith St. John in his First Epistle, i. 3.) and did at the same time declare that their communion was "with the Father."

Wherefore being all the Saints of God under the Gospel receiving the doctrine of the apostles have communion with them; being the communion of the apostles was the communion with the Father: it followeth that all the Saints of God under the Gospel have a communion with God the Father. As we are the branches of the vine, so the Father is the husbandman; and thus the Saints partake of his care and inspection. As "Abraham believed God, and it was imputed to him for righteousness, and he was called the friend of God;" (Jam. ii. 23.) so all which are heirs of the faith of Abraham are made partakers of the same relation. Nor are we only friends, but also sons; "for behold what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God." (1 John iii. 1.) Thus must we acknowledge that the Saints of God have communion with the Father, because by the great and precious promises given unto them, they become "partakers of the divine nature." (2 Pet. i. 4.)

Secondly, The Saints of God living in the Church of God have communion with the Son of God: for, as the apostle said, "our communion is with the Father and the Son;" (1 John i. 3.) and this connexion is infallible, because "he that abideth in the doctrine of Christ, he hath both the Father and the Son;" (2 John 9.) and our Saviour prayed for all such as should "believe on him through the word of the apostles, that they might be one, as the Father is one in him, and he in the Father, that they also may be one in both: I in them (saith Christ) and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one." (John xvii. 20—23.) This communion of the Saints with the Son of God, is, as most evident, so most remarkable. He hath taken unto him our nature and infirmities; he hath taken upon him our sins, and the curse due unto them; while we all "have received of his fulness grace for grace;" (John i. 16.) and are called to "the fellowship of his sufferings," that we may "be
conformable unto his death.” (Phil. iii. 10.) What is the fellowship of brethren and co-heirs of the bridegroom and the spouse; what is the communion of members with the head, of branches with the vine; that is the communion of Saints with Christ. For God “hath called us into the fellowship of his Son Jesus Christ our Lord.” (1 Cor. i. 9.)*

Thirdly, The Saints of God in the Church of Christ have communion with the Holy Ghost: and the apostle hath two ways assured us of the truth thereof, one rhetorically, by a seeming doubt, “if there be any fellowship with the Spirit;” (Phil. ii. 1.)† the other devoutly, praying for it, “The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Ghost, be with you all.” (2 Cor. xiii. 14.) The Saints are therefore such, because they partake of the Holy Ghost; for they are therefore holy because they are sanctified, and it is the Spirit alone which sanctifieth. Beside, the communion with the Father and the Son is wrought by the communication of the Spirit; for hereby do we become the sons of God, in that we have received the “Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father;” (Rom. viii. 15.) and thereby do we become co-heirs with Christ, in that “because we are sons God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying, Abba, Father;” so that “we are no more servants, but sons; and if sons, then heirs of God through Christ.” (Gal. iv. 6, 7.) This is the communion which the Saints enjoy with the three persons of the blessed Trinity; this is the heavenly fellowship represented unto entertaining Abraham, when “the Lord appeared unto him, and three men stood by him:” (Gen. xviii.1, 2.) for our Saviour hath made us this most precious promise, “If any man love me he will keep my words, and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him and make our abode with him.” (John xiv. 23.) Here is the soul of man made the habitation of God the Father, and of God the Son; and the presence of the Spirit cannot be wanting where those two are inhabiting; for “if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.” (Rom. viii. 9.) The Spirit therefore with the Father and the Son inhabiteth in the Saints; “for know ye not (saith the apostle) that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?” (1 Cor. iii. 16.)

Fourthly, The Saints of God in the Church of Christ have communion with the holy angels. They who did foretell the birth of John the forerunner of Christ, they who did announce unto the blessed Virgin the conception of the Saviour of the world, they who sung a glorious hymn at the nativity of the Son of God, they who carried the soul of Lazarus into Abraham’s bosom, they who appeared unto Christ from heaven in his agony to strengthen him, they who opened the prison doors and brought the apostles forth, they who at the end of

* Κοινωνία τοῦ Τιγω.  
† Κοινωνία Πνεύματος.
the world shall sever the wicked from among the just, and gather together the elect of God, certainly they have a constant and perpetual relation to the children of God. Nay, "are they not all ministering spirits sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?" (Heb. i. 14.) They have a particular sense of our condition, for Christ hath assured us that "there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth." (Luke xv. 10.) And upon this relation the angels, who are all the angels, that is, the messengers of God, are yet called the angels of men, according to the admonition of Christ, "Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, that in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven." (Matt. xviii. 10.)

Thus far have we considered the communion of Saints with such as are distinguished from them by nature as they are men; the fellowship which they have in heaven with God, and his holy angels, while they are on earth. Our next consideration will be, what is the communion which they have with those who are of the same nature, but not partakers of the same holiness with them.

Fifthly, therefore, The Saints of God, while they are of the Church of Christ on earth, have some kind of communion with those men which are not truly Saints. There were not hypocrites among the Jews alone, but in the Church of Christ many cry, "Lord, Lord," whom he knoweth not. The tares have the privilege of the field, as well as the wheat; and the bad fish of the net, as well as the good. The Saints have communion with hypocrites in all things with which the distinction of a Saint and hypocrite can consist. They communicate in the same water, both externally baptized alike; they communicate in the same Creed, both make the same open profession of faith, both agree in the acknowledgment of the same principles of religion; they communicate in the same word, both hear the same doctrine preached; they communicate at the same table, both eat the same bread, and drink the wine, which Christ hath appointed to be received: but the hypocrite doth not communicate with the Saint in the same saving grace, in the same true faith working by love, and in the same renovation of mind and spirit; for then he were not a hypocrite but a Saint: a Saint doth not communicate with the hypocrite in the same sins, in the same lurking infidelity, in the same unfruitfulness under the means of grace, in the same false pretence and empty form of godliness; for then he were not a Saint but a hypocrite. Thus the Saints may communicate with the wicked, so they communicate not with their wickedness; and may have fellowship with sinners, so they have no fellowship with that which makes them such, that is, their sins. The apostle's command runneth thus, "Have no fellowship with the un-
fruitful works of darkness;” (Eph. v. 11.)* and again, “Be not partakers of other men’s sins:” (1 Tim. v. 22.)† and a voice from heaven spake concerning Babylon, “Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins.” (Rev. xviii. 4.)‡ To communicate with sin is sin, but to communicate with a sinner in that which is not sin, can be no sin; because the one defileth, and the other cannot, and that which defileth not is no sin.

Having thus considered those who differ from the Saints of God; first, in respect of their humanity, as they are men; secondly, In reference to their sanctity, as they are men of holiness: we are now to consider such as differ either only in person, as the Saints alive; or in present condition also, as the Saints departed.

Sixthly, therefore, The Saints of God living in the Church of Christ, have communion with all the Saints living in the same Church. “If we walk in the light, we have fellowship one with another;” (1 John i. 7.)§ we all have benefit of the same ordinances, all partake of the same promises, we are all endowed with the graces of the same mutual love and affection, keeping “the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace,” (Eph. iv. 3.) all engrafted into the same stock, and so receiving life from the same root, all “holding the same head, from which all the body by joints and bands having nourishment ministered, and knit together, increaseth with the increase of God.” (Col. ii. 19.) For in the philosophy of the apostle, the nerves are not only the instruments of motion and sensation, but of nutrition also; so that every member receiveth nourishment by their intervention from the head; and being the head of the body is Christ, and all the Saints are members of that body, they all partake of the same nourishment, and so have all communion among themselves.

Lastly, The Saints of God living in the Church of Christ, are in communion with all the Saints departed out of this life and admitted to the presence of God.¶ Jerusalem is sometimes taken for the Church on earth, sometimes for that part of the Church which is in heaven, to shew that as both are represented by one, so both are but one city of God. Wherefore thus doth the apostle speak to such as are called to the

* Μη συγκοινωνεῖτε ταῖς ἐρωίς.
† Μή κοινωνεῖτε ταῖς ἀμαρτίαις.
‡ Να μή συγκοινωνήσατε ταῖς ἀμαρτίαις.
§ Ποῦ δύο μοις non te maculat malus, si ei non consentias, et si redarguas. Communes enim, quando facto ejs consortium voluntatis vel approbationis adjungitur, Hoc ergo admonere Apostolus ait, Nolite communicare operibus infractione tenenturum, magis in tenebrum, magis aitem et redarguite.’
¶ Κοινωνία μετ’ ἄλλοις.

¶ This is that part of the communion of saints which those of the ancients especially insisted upon, who first took notice of it in the Creed: ‘Sanctorum communionem, i.e. cum illis sanctis, qui in hac quam suscepimus fide defuncti sunt, societate et spei communione teneamur.’ Serm. 181. de Tempore, c. 13. ‘Et qui nunc cognoscitis per auditum, communione habetis cum sanctis martyribus, et per illos cum Domino Jesu Christo.’ Pref. Past. S. Perpetue.
Christian faith: "Ye are come unto Mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and an innumerable company of angels, to the general assembly and Church of the first-born, which are written in heaven, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect, and to Jesus the Mediator of the new covenant." (Heb. xii. 22, 23.) Indeed the communion of Saints in the Church of Christ with those which are departed is demonstrated by their communion with the Saints alive. For if I have communion with a Saint of God, as such, while he liveth here, I must still have communion with him when he is departed hence; because the foundation of that communion cannot be removed by death. The mystical union between Christ and his Church, the spiritual conjunction of the members to the Head, is the true foundation of that communion which one member had with another, all the members living and increasing by the same influence which they receive from him. But death, which is nothing else but the separation of the soul from the body, maketh no separation in the mystical union, no breach of the spiritual conjunction; and consequently there must continue the same communion, because there remaineth the same foundation. Indeed, the Saint departed before his death had some communion with the hypocrite, as hearing the word, professing the faith, receiving the sacraments together; which being in things only external, as they were common to them both, and all such external actions ceasing in the person dead, the hypocrite remaining loseth all communion with the Saint departing, and the Saints surviving cease to have their farther fellowship with the hypocrite dying. But being the true and unfeigned holiness of man, wrought by the powerful influence of the Spirit of God, not only remaineth, but also is improved, after death; being the correspondence of the internal holiness was the communion between their persons in their life, they cannot be said to be divided by death, which had no power over that sanctity by which they were first conjoined.

This communion of the Saints in heaven and earth, upon the mystical union of Christ their Head, being fundamental and internal, what acts or external operations it produceth, is not so certain. That we communicate with them in hope of that happiness which they actually enjoy, is evident; that we have the Spirit of God given us as an earnest, and so a part of their felicity, is certain. But what they do in heaven in relation to us on earth particularly considered, or what we ought to perform in reference to them in heaven, beside a reverential respect and study of imitation, is not revealed unto us in the Scriptures, nor can be concluded by necessary deduction from any principles of Christianity. They which first found this part of the Article in the Creed, and delivered their exposition unto us, have made no greater enlargement of this communion,
as to the Saints of heaven, than the society of hope, esteem, and imitation on our side, of desires and supplications on their side: and what is now taught by the Church of Rome, is, as unwarrantable, so a novitious interpretation.*

The necessity of the belief of this communion of Saints appeareth, first, In that it is proper to incite and encourage us to holiness of life. "If we walk in the light, as God is in the light, we have fellowship one with another. But if we say that we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth." (1 John i. 6, 7.) "For what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness? and what concord hath Christ with Belial?" (2 Cor. vi. 14, 15.) When Christ sent St. Paul to the Gentiles, it was "to open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they might receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in Christ." (Acts xxvi. 18.) Except we be turned from darkness, except we be taken out of the power of Satan, which is the dominion of sin, we cannot receive the inheritance among them who are sanctified, we cannot be thought "meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the Saints in light." (Col. i. 12.) Indeed there can be no communion where there is no similitude, no fellowship with God without some sanctity; because his nature is infinitely holy, and his actions are not subject to the least iniquity.

Secondly, The belief of the communion of Saints is necessary to stir us up to a proportionate gratitude unto God, and an humble and cheerful acknowledgment of so great a benefit. We cannot but acknowledge that they are "exceeding great and precious promises," by which we become "partakers of

* We have already produced the words of the 18th Sermon De Tempore concerning hope. In the same we find also that of imitation: "Si igitur cum sanctis in aeterna vita communionem habere volu- mus, de imitatione eorum cogitemus. Debeat enim in nobis aliquid recognoscere de suis virtutibus, ut pro nobis dignetur Domino supplicare." Ibid. c. 13. "Hac sunt vestigia, que nobis sancti quoque revertentes in patriam nobis reliquerant, ut illorum semitis inherarent sequeremur ad gaudia." Ibid. Beside this imitation, he addeth their desires and care for us below: "Cur non properamus et currimus, ut patriam nostram videre possimur? Magnus ille carorum numerus expectat, parentum, fratrum, filiorum, frequentos et copiosis turba desiderat, jam de sua incolmatitate secura, adhuc de nostra salute solicita." Ibid. Of the venerable esteem we ought to have for them, speaks Eusebius Gallicanus: "Credamus et sanctorum communionem, sed sanctos non tam pro Dei parte, quam pro Deo honore veneremur." De Symb. Hom. ii. p. 555. And again: "Digne nobis venerandi suos, dum Dei cultum et futura vita desiderium contemptu mortis insipient. ibid. Thus far anciently they which expounded this Article: but the late exposition of the Church of Rome runneth thus: "Non sol- lum ecclesia, que est in terris, communicat bona sua cum omnibus membris sibi conjunctis, sed etiam communicat sufra- gia ecclesia, que est in purgatorio, et ecclesia, que est in caelis, communica orato- riones, et merita sua cum ecclesia, que est in terris." Bellarm. in Symb. Where the communication of the suffrages of the Saints alive to the Church in purgatory, and the communication of the merits of the Saints in heaven to the Saints on earth, are novel expositions of this Article, not so much as acknowledged by Thomas Aquinas in his exposition of the Creed, much less to be found in any of the anci- center expositors of it.
the divine nature.” (2 Pet. i. 4.) “Who am I? (said David) and what is my life, that I should be son-in-law to the king?” (1 Sam. xviii. 18.) Who are the sons of men, what are they which are called to be Saints, that they should have fellowship with God the Father? St. Philip the apostle said unto our Saviour, “Lord, shew us the Father and it sufficeth;” (John xiv. 8.) whereas he hath not only shewn us, but come unto us with the Father, and dwelt within us by his Holy Spirit; he hath called us to the fellowship of the angels and archangels, of the cherubins and seraphins, to the glorious company of the apostles, to the goodly fellowship of the prophets, to the noble army of martyrs, to the holy Church militant on earth, and triumphant in heaven.

Thirdly, The belief of the communion of Saints is necessary to inflame our hearts with an ardent affection towards those which live, and a reverent respect towards those which are departed, and are now with God. Nearness of relation requireth affection; and that man is unnatural who loveth not those persons which nature hath more immediately conjoined to him. Now no conjunction natural can be compared with that which is spiritual; no temporal relation with that which is eternal. If similitude of shape and feature will create a kindness, if congruity of manners and disposition will conjoin the affections; what should be the mutual love of those who have the image of the same God renewed within them, of those who are endued with the gracious influences of the same Spirit? And if all the Saints of God living in the communion of the Church deserve the best of our affections here on earth, certainly when they are dissolved and with Christ, when they have been blessed with a sight of God, and rewarded with a crown of glory, they may challenge respect from us, who are here to wait upon the will of God, expecting when some such happy change shall come.

Fourthly, This tendeth to the directing and enlarging our acts of charity. We are obliged to be charitable unto all men, because the love of our brother is the foundation of our duty towards men, and in the language of the Scriptures whosoever is another is our brother; but we are particularly directed to them that are of the household of faith. And as there is a general reason calling for our mercy and kindness unto all men; so there is a more special reason urging those who are truly sanctified by the Spirit of God to do good unto such as appear to be led by the same Spirit; for if they communicate with them in the everlasting mercies of God, it is fit they should partake of the bowels of man’s compassion; if they communicate with them in things spiritual and eternal, can it be much that they should partake with them of such things as are temporal and carnal?

* Καννίστες εν σάρκι τοῦ πολιοίτων ευ τό ἑαυτῶν εἰς τις ἐν τοῖς ἁγίοις καινονάλ
εἰς, πίστες μᾶλλον εἰς τοῖς φωνοῖς; Βασίλειον Ἐριστ. ε. 19.
To conclude, Every one may learn from hence what he is to understand by this part of the Article, in which he professeth to believe the communion of Saints; for thereby he is conceived to express thus much: I am fully persuaded of this as of a necessary and infallible truth, that such persons as are truly sanctified in the Church of Christ, while they live among the crooked generations of men, and struggle with all the miseries of this world, have fellowship with God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost, as dwelling with them, and taking up their habitations in them: that they partake of the care and kindness of the blessed angels, who take delight in the ministration for their benefit: that beside the external fellowship which they have in the word and sacraments with all the members of the Church, they have an intimate union and conjunction with all the Saints on earth as the living members of Christ: nor is this union separated by the death of any, but as Christ in whom they live is the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world, so have they fellowship with all the Saints which from the death of Abel have ever departed in the true faith and fear of God, and now enjoy the presence of the Father, and follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth. And thus I believe the communion of Saints.

ARTICLE X.

The Forgiveness of Sins.

This Article hath always been expressly contained and acknowledged in the Creed, as being a most necessary part of our Christian profession; and for some ages it immediately followed the belief of the holy Church; and was therefore

* Therefore Carolus Magnus in his Capitular, l. iii. c. 6. inveighs against Basilus the bishop of Antioch, because in his Confession of Faith which he delivered in the second Council of Nice, (Act. i.) he omitted the remission of sins, which the apostles in so short a compendium as the Creed would not omit: Hanc Apostoli in collatione fidei, quam ab invicem discussi quasi quadam credulitatis et praedicacionis normam statuerunt, post confessionem Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti posuisse peribentur; et in tanti verbi brevitate, de quo per prophetam dixerat, Verum abhorrerat faciet Dominus super terram, hanc ponere minime distulserunt, quia sine hac fidei sinceritate integram esse minime perspexerunt. Nec cohibuit eos ab ejus professione illius Symboli brevitas, quam exposebat sacra fidei integritas, tantique doni veneranda sublimitas.'

† 'Concordant autem angelii nobiscum etiam tunc, cum remittuntur nostra pecata. Ideo post commemoracionem sanctorum ecclesiae in ordine confessionis ponitur remissio peccatorum: per hanc eum stat ecclesia quae in terris est, per hanc non perit, quod perierat et inventum est.' S. August. Enchir. c. 64. And for this purpose it is in his book De Agone Christiano, passing from one article to another with this general transition: after that of the Church, he proceedeth with these words: 'Nec eos audiremus, qui negant ecclesiam Dei omnimpeccata posse dimittere.' c. 31. So it followeth also in Venantius Fortunatus, and in such other Creeds as want that part of the former Article of the Communion of Saints.
added immediately after it, to shew that the remission of sins was to be obtained in the Church of Christ. * For being the Creed was at first made to be used as a confession of such as were to be baptized, declaring their faith in the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, in whose name baptism was administered; they propounded unto them the Holy Church, into which by baptism they were to be admitted, and the forgiveness of sins, which by the same baptism was to be obtained; and therefore in some Creeds it was particularly expressed, I believe one baptism for the forgiveness of sins.†

Looking thus upon this Article, with this relation, we find the sense of it must be this, that we believe forgiveness of sins is to be obtained in the Church of Christ. For the explication whereof it will be necessary, first, to declare what is the nature of remission of sins, in what that action doth consist; secondly, to shew how so great a privilege is propounded in the Church, and how it may be procured by the members of the Church. That we may understand the notion of forgiveness of sins, three considerations are required; first, What is the nature of sin, which is to be forgiven; secondly, What is the guilt or obligation of sin, which wanteth forgiveness; thirdly, What is the remission itself, or the loosing of that obligation.

As the power of sin is revealed only in the Scriptures, so the nature of it is best understood from thence. And though the writings of the apostles give us few definitions, yet we may find even in them a proper definition of sin. "Whosoever comitteth sin, transgresseth also the law," saith St. John, and then rendereth this reason of that universal assertion, "for sin is the transgression of the law." (1 John iii. 4.) Which is an argument drawn from the definition of sin; for he saith not, "every sin is the transgression of the law," which had been necessary, if he had spoken by way of proposition only, to have proved the universality of his assertion, but produceth it indefinitely, "sin is the transgression of the law," which is suffi-

* Orig. Hom. ii. in Genesin. 'Sanctam ecclesiam teneat—io qua et remissio peccatorum et carnis resurrectio practicabatur.' Buxin, in Symb. § 38. 'Sed neque de ipsis criminibus qua timidet magnis remittendis in sancta ecclesia desperranda est misericordia.' S. August. Enchir. c. 65. 'In remissionem peccatorum. Hae in ecclesia si non esset, nulla spes esset. Remissio peccatorum si in ecclesia non esset, nulla futura vitae et liberationis aeterna spes esset. Gratias agimus Deo, qui ecclesiam sue deedit hoc donum.' Actor Homil. 119, de Tempore, § 8. 'Quia singuli quique cocus haereticorum se potissimum Christianos, et suam esse catholicam ecclesiam putant; scendendum est, illam esse veram, in qua est religio, confessio, et ponsentitia omnes pec-

cata et vulnera, quibus est subjecta imbecillitas carnis, salubriter curat.' Laecut. de ver. Sap. l. iv. c. 30.

† These are the words of the Constantinopolitan Creed: 'Omulogia in bathysma eis aperit amartia.' Before which Epi-

phanias in his lesser Creed: 'Omulogia in bathysma eis aperit amartia.' § 120. in the larger: Pistenimois eis malan katholikon kai apostolikon ekklisis, kai eis bathysma meletias, in Aenonato, § 121. St. Cyril puts both these together: Ei in bathysma meletias eis aperit amartia. Catech. xviii.

' Credo unum baptismum in remissionem omnium peccatorum.' Pellegrinis Laurent. Episc. 'Credimus unum baptismum in re-

missionem omnium peccatorum in secula seculorum.' Symbolum Aethiopicum.
cient, speaking it by way of definition.* And it is elsewhere most evident that every sin is something prohibited by some law, and deviating from the same. For the apostle affirming, that "the law worketh wrath," that is, a punishment from God, giveth this as a reason or proof of his affirmation; "for where no law is, there is no transgression." (Rom. iv. 15.) The Law of God is the rule of the actions of men, and any aberration from that rule is sin."† the Law of God is pure, and whatsoever is contrary to that Law is impure. WHATSOEVER therefore is done by man, or is in man, having any contrariety or opposition to the Law of God, is sin. Every action, every word, every thought, against the Law, is a sin of commission, as it is terminated to an object dissonant from, and contrary to, the prohibition of the Law, as a negative precept. Every omission of a duty required of us is a sin, as being contrary to the commanding part of the Law, or an affirmative precept. Every evil habit contracted in the soul of man by the actions committed against the Law of God, is a sin constituting a man truly a sinner, even then when he actually sinneth not. Any corruption and inclination in the soul, to do that which God forbiddeth, and to omit that which God commandeth, howsoever such corruption and evil inclination came into the soul, whether by an act of his own will, or by an act of the will of another, is a sin, as being something dissonant and repugnant to the Law of God. And this I conceive sufficient to declare the nature of sin.

The second particular to be considered is the obligation of sin, which must be presupposed to the solution or remission of it. Now every sin doth cause a guilt, and every sinner, by being so, becomes a guilty person; which guilt consisteth in a debt or obligation to suffer a punishment proportionable to the iniquity of the sin. It is the nature of laws in general to be attended with these two, punishments and rewards; the one propounded for the observation of them, the other threatened upon the deviation from them. And although there were no threats or penal denunciations accompanying the laws of God, yet the transgression of them would nevertheless make the person transgressing worthy of, and liable unto, whatsoever

* The manner of the apostle's speech is also to be observed, having an article prefixed both to the subject and the predicate; as if thereby he would make the proposition convertible, as all definitions ought to be. "H autem legem." S. August. contra Faustum, l. xxiii. c. 27. "Quid verum est, nisi et Dominum dare precepta, et animas liberas esse voluntatis, et malum naturam non esse, sed esse aversionem a Dei preceptis?" Idem, de Fide contra Manich. c. 10. "Neque negandum est hoc Deum jubere, uta nos in facienda justitia esse debere perfectos, ut nullum habeamus omnino peccatum; nam neque peccatum erit, si quid erit, si uos divinitus jubebatur ut non sita." Idem, de Pec. Meritis, et Rem. lib. ii. c. 16.

† 'Quid est peccatum nisi pravari- catio legis divinae, et coelestium inobedi- entia praecipuorum?' S. Ambros. de Parado- diso c. 8. 'Pecatum est factum vel dictum vel concupitum aliquid contra
punishment can in justice be inflicted for that sin committed. Sins of commission pass away in the acting or performing of them; so that he which acteth against a negative precept, after the act is passed, cannot properly be said to sin. Sins of omission, when the time is passed in which the affirmative precept did oblige unto performance, pass away, so that he which did then omit his duty when it was required, and in omitting sinned, after that time cannot be truly said to sin. But though the sin itself do pass away together with the time in which it was committed, yet the guilt thereof doth never pass which by committing was contracted. He which but once committed adultery, at that one time sinneth, and at no time after can be said to commit that sin; but the guilt of that sin remaineth on him still, and he may be for ever said to be guilty of adultery, because he is for ever subject to the wrath of God, and obliged to suffer the punishment due unto adultery.*

This debt or obligation to punishment is not only necessarily resulting from the nature of sin, as it is a breach of the Law, nor only generally delivered in the Scriptures revealing the wrath of God unto all unrighteousness, but it is yet more particularly represented in the word, which teacheth us, if we do ill, how "sin lieth at the door." (Gen. iv. 7.) Our blessed Saviour thus taught his disciples, "Whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be liable (obnoxious or bound over) to the judgment; and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be liable (obnoxious, or bound over) to the council; but whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be liable (obnoxious, or bound over) to hell-fire." (Matt. v. 22.)† So saith our

* This obligation unto punishment, remaining after the act of sin, is that peccati reatus of which the schools, and before them the fathers spoke. The nature of this reatus is excellently declared by St. Augustine, delivering the distinction between actual and original sin: "In eis qui regenerantur in Christo, cum remissionem accipiant prorsus omnium peccatorum, utique necesse est, ut reatus etiam hujus licet adhuc manentis concupiscentiæ remittatur, ut in peccatum non impetetur. Nam sicut peccatorum, quae manere non possint, quantum cum sunt præterunt, reatus cæcum manet et nisi remittatur, in æternum manebit; sic illius concupiscientiae, quando remittitur, reatus auferitur. Hoc est enim non habere peccatum, reum non esse peccati. Nam si quisquam, verbi gratia, fecerit adulterinam, etiam si non peccaverit, reus est adulteri, donec reatus ipsius indulgentia remittatur. Habet ergo peccatum, quamvis illud quod admissit jam non sit, quia cum tempore quo factum est præterit. Nam si a peccando desistere, hoc esset non habere peccatum, sufficeret ut hoc nos moneret Scriptura; Fili, peccasti? non adijicit eterum: Non autem sufficit, sed addidit, et de prætiosis depetratur, ut tibi remittatur. Manent ergo, nisi remittatur. Sed quomodo maneat, si præterita sunt, nisi quia praeterierunt acta, manent reatu? S. August. de Nupt. et Conc. l. i. c. 26. "Ego de concupiscentia dixi, que est in membris repugnans legi meatus, quamvis reatus ejus in omnium peccatorum remissione transieter; sic et contrario sacrificium idolis factum, si deinceps non fiat, præterit actus, sed manet reatus, nisi per indulgentiam remittatur. Quoddam enim tale est sacrificare idolis, ut opus ipsum cum fit prætereat, codemque præterito reatus ejus maneat venia resolvendus." Iden. cont. Julian. l. vi. c. 19. § 60.

† Exceps iterum is the word used here, which is translated, shall be to man, but is of a fuller and more pressing sense, as one which is a debtor, subject, and obliged to endure it. Heuch. "Exceps iterum est a sede, ex parte, in parte, in partes. Sic de voce iterum. Where, by the way, is to be observed a great mistake in the
Saviour again, “All sins shall be forgiven unto the sons of men, and blasphemies wherewith soever they shall blaspheme. But he that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost, hath never forgiveness, but is in danger of (liable, obnoxious, or bound over to) eternal damnation.” (Mark iii. 28, 29.) Whence appeared clearly the guilt of sin and obligation to eternal punishment, if there be no remission or forgiveness of it; and the taking off that liableness, obnoxiousness, or obligation unto death, if there be any such remission or forgiveness: all which is evident by the opposition, much to be observed in our Saviour’s expression, “he hath never forgiveness, but is liable to eternal death.”

God, who hath the sovereign power and absolute dominion over all men, hath made a Law to be a perpetual and universal rule of human actions; which Law whosoever doth violate, or transgress, and thereby sin (for by sin we understand nothing else but the transgression of the Law), is thereby obliged in all equity to suffer the punishment due to that obliquity. And after the act of sin is committed and passed over, this guilt resulting from that act remaineth; that is, the person who committed it continued still a debtor to the vindictive justice of God, and is obliged to endure the punishment due unto it: which was the second particular to be considered.

The third consideration now followeth, What is the forgiveness of sin, or in what remission doth consist; which at first appeared to be an act of God towards a sinner, because the sin was committed against the Law of God; and therefore the punishment must be due from him, because the injury was done

Lexicon of Phavorinus, whose words are these; ἔγορος, ἡλπιστός, χάριστος; ἴναις, ἡσανίας, Τίμωας. The first taken out of Hesychius, the last out of Suidas, corruptly and absurdly; corruptly ἴναις for ἴνας; absurdly Τίμωας is added either as an interpretation of ἴναις, or as an author which used it; whereas Τίμωας in Suidas is only the first word of the sentence, provided by Suidas for the use of ἴναις in the signification of ἡσανίας. Assemble unto Hesychius is that in the Lexicon of St. Cyril, ἔγορος, ὁμοίως, ῥεν, ὀλίγους. And so in the place of St. Matthew, the old translation, ὀμοίως ἀρεταία. As in Virgil, Ec. v. 237. 'Constituam uide atque atque rem.' Servius: τοι illi rem, debitor. Unde uota solvents dicamus absolutas. Unde est, (Ec. v. 89.) Damanus in quaero tes, quasi rem facies. 'So the Syriac, κατὰ τὴν ἀνδριαν ἀποθεότητα. From that word ἐγορος among the Greeks, as to this matter, hath a double signification; one in respect of the sin, another in respect of the punishment due unto sin. In respect of a sin as that in Antiphon, π. τῶν ἱματ. Νομ. p. 139, 36, ed. Steph. μετ' ἰμάτα φοίλα, μετὶ ἤγορος τῷ ἱματ.; and that in Arist. Ἐκομ. ii. de Domo. Synec. ἰμάτ. ἰματος αἰνετός ἐστιν, and that in Suidas taken out of Polybius: ὁμοίως κατὰ τοῦ ἔγορος πιπτόναι κατάδρομοι, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐν ὑπὸ θάνατον ἁμαρτήματον ἤγορος τῷ μέν, ὁτι πιθανός καταργεῖ τὸν πένας ἵνα τούτοις, διὸ αὐτὸς ἵνα ἐστιν. In respect of the punishment of a sin, he is ἰματος αὐτὸς, who is obnoxious to the curse, and ἰματος ἐπιτρικτικός, obnoxious to the punishment. ἔχως ὁμοίως ἐκτιστος, τιττης, ἰματος παντι, εἰς τις εἰς ἡμερὰς τῆς τριγυρί, sith Suidas. Thus ἰματος δανάτα ἢς, Matt. xxvi. 60: τά μυστήρια κατά τὸν ἀνδριαν ἀποθεότητα is not in the intention of the Jews, he is in danger of death, but he deserveth death, and he ought to die; he is κατάδρομος, by their sentence, as far as in them lay, condemned to die. St. Chrysostomus: Τί ἐν Ἱερουσαλημ, ἵνα ἐστὶν δανάτων; οὐκ ἐν κατάδρομοι λαβόντες, αὐτῷ τὰ πιλάτου λαοῖς ἀποφάσαι τιμὸν καταδρομών τῷ δὲ κατάδρομοι εὐλογητός γίνομαι. ἵνα δανάτων ἢς, αὐτῷ καταδρο- μωτες, αὐτῷ δικαίωτες, αὐτῷ φαβέριως, πάντα αὐτῷ γογμοὶ τότε. Hom. 84.
unto him. But what is the true notion or nature of this act, or how God doth forgive a sinner, is not easy to determine; nor can it be concluded out of the words themselves which do express it, the niceties of whose origination will never be able to yield a just interpretation.†

For although the word signifying remission, have one sense among many other which may seem proper for this particular concernment; yet because the same word has been often used to signify the same action of God in forgiving sins, where it could have no such particular notion, but several times hath another signification tending to the same effect,‡ and as pro-

* The word used in the Creed is ἀφέναι ἀμαρτίαν, and that generally likewise in use in the New Testament. But from thence we cannot be assured of the nature of this act of God, because ἀφέναι and ἀφέσις are capable of several interpretations. For sometimes ἀφέναι is emittere, and ἀφέσις emission. As Gen. xxxv. 18. ἐρενετο δι’ ἐν τῷ ἀφέναι αὐτὸν τὸν ψυχόν, not con relinquere eam anima, as it is translated, but con emittere eam animam, i.e. effertet; αὐτής τοῦ πνεύματος, emisit spiritum, Matt. xxvii. 50. So Gen. xvi. 2. Καὶ ἀφέναι φωνῆς μετὰ ἱλασμοῦ, not dimittit, but emisit vocem cum fletu; as, αὐτής φωνῆς μεγάλων, emissa voce magna. Mark xv. 37. In the like manner ἀφέσις and ἀμαρτία are emisimines maris, 2 Sam. xiii. 16. as, ἀφέσις ἐληφθήν, Joel i. 20. to which sense may be referred that of Hesychius: ἀφέναι ἐπιστρέφει. And this interpretation of ἀφέσις can have no relation to the remission of sins. Secondly, ἀφέναι is often taken for permittere, as Gen. xx. 6. οὐκ ἀφέναι Σαμ. Καὶ ἀφέσις αὐτῆς. Matt. iiii. 13. ἀφές ἐρτί and τότε ἀφέναι αὐτόν, which the Vulgar translated well, sine modo, and then ill, tum dimittit eam. Matt. v. 4. ἀφείβασιν, sine ejiciat. So Hesychius: ἀφέναι, πυγμή ἄφεσις. And this hath as little relation to the present subject. Thirdly, ἀφέναι is sometimes relinquere and deserere, as Gen. xiii. 33. ἀδηλον ἐν ἀφέσι οὐδὲ μετ’ ἱλαρ. Matt. v. 24. ἄφες ἐκι τοῦ ἄφεν σου. viii. 13. καὶ ἀφέναι αὐτὴν ἐπερετό, xix. 27. ἀφείβασιν, ἵππων. Matt. xxv. 26. τότε ἂς ἔχειν ἀμαρτίαν. Matt. xxvi. 56. τότε ἂς ἔχειν ἀμαρτίαν. xlix. 22. ἀφέναι, ἀφέσις ἀμαρτίαν. And in this interpretation it cannot explicate unto us what is the true notion of ἀφέσις ἀμαρτίας. Fourthly, It is taken for emittere, as Matt. xxii. 28. καὶ ἀφέσις τῶν εἰρημένων. Luke xi. 42. πατητί πάθαι, καθένα μὴ ἀφεσίων, and yet we have nothing to our present purpose. But, fifthly, it is often taken for remittere, and that particularly in relation to a debt, as Matt. xviii. 27. τὸ δάνειον ἄφεσις αὐτῶν. and ver. 32. πατητί πάθαι τῶν ἀμαρτ. ἀφέσις τε. Which acceptance is most remarkable in the year of release, Deut. xv. 1. 2. Χιστὰ ἐν τῷ πατητί ἀμαρτίας. Καὶ οὖν τὸ πατητί τῶν ἀμαρτ. ἀφέσις πᾶς πίπτῃ Ἰωάννη, ὁ ἀφετέροι σε ἐπιτύχεσθαι, καὶ τὸν ἀκολούθον σου ἀμαρτίας παρακλῄται γὰρ ἀφέσις Καὶ τῷ θεῷ σου. Now this remission or release of debts hath a great affinity with remission of sins; for Christ himself hath conjoined these two together; and called our sins by the name of debts, and promised remission of sins to us by God, upon our remission of debts to man. And therefore he hath taught us thus to pray. Ἀρεσ ἵππω τοῦ προδιώκωτος ἵππων, ὡς καὶ ἡμῖν ἀμαρτίας τῆς ἀμαρτίας ἵππων. Matt. vi. 12. Besides, he hath not only made use of the notion of debt, but any injury done unto a man, he calls a sin against man, and exhorteth to forgive those sins committed against us, that God may forgive the sins committed by us, which are injuries done to him, Luke xvi. 3. Τοιοὶ δὲ ἀμαρτάνοντες τοιοί δὲ ἀμαρτάνοντες ἐπεκτείνοντες αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἐν μετατροπῇ ἁμενιν νῆ αὐτῶν.‡

† We must not only look upon the propriety of the words used in the New Testament, but we must also reflect upon their use in the Old, especially in such subjects as did belong unto the Old Testament as well as the New. Now ἀφέσις ἀμαρτίας is there used for the verb ἱττα, as Isr. xxii. 14. παρεσύροντι μεν τοις ἰσορροπις αἱ ἀμαρτίας τοῖς ἂν ἀποκτήσασθαι sometimes for the verb νῦν, as Gen. i. 17. ἀμαρτίας ἄν οὐκ ἀμαρτήσῃ ἡ ἀμαρτία τοῦ ἰδίου καὶ τῆς ἀμαρτίας αὐτῶν Psal. xxv. 14. ἰδίου καὶ αὐτῶν καὶ ἀμαρτίας τῆς ἀμαρτίας τοῦ μου. And in that remarkable place which St. Paul made use of to declare the nature of remission of sins, Psal. xxxvii. 1. ἀμαρτίας ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ἀμαρτίας σου ἀδικίας καὶ ἀμαρτίας σου. Sometimes it is taken for τὸ ἱττα as Numb. xiv. 19. τὸ ἱττα ἀμαρτίας τοῦ ἰδίου τοῦ ἰδίου τοῦ *τοῦ ἰδίου τοῦ. Lev. iv. 20. per ἀμαρτίαν καὶ ἀμαρτίαν καὶ ἀμαρτίαν καὶ ἀμαρτίαν. Now being ἀφέναι in relation to sins, is used for ἱττα signifying expiation and reconciliation; for ἱττα signifying elevation, portation, or ablation; for ἱττα signifying
per to the remission of sins; therefore I conceive the nature of *forgiveness of sins* is rather to be understood by the consideration of all such ways and means which were used by God in the working and performing of it, than in this, or any other which is made use of in expressing it.

Now that we may understand what was done toward the remission of sins, that from thence we may conclude what was done in it; it is first to be observed, that "almost all things by the Law were purged with blood, and without shedding of blood there is no remission." (Heb. ix. 22.)* And what was then legally done, was but a type of that which was to be performed by Christ, and therefore the blood of Christ must necessarily be involved in the remission of sins; for he "once in the end of the world hath appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself." (Heb. ix. 26.)† It must then be acknowledged, and can be denied by none, that Christ did suffer a painful and shameful death, as we have formerly described it; that the death which he endured, he did then suffer for sin; for "this man (saith the apostle) offered one sacrifice for sins;" (Heb. x. 12.) that the sins for which he suffered were not his own, for "Christ hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust;" (1 Pet. iii. 18.) he was "holy, harmless, undefiled, and separate from sinners," (Heb. vii. 26.) and therefore had no sins to suffer for; that the sins which he suffered for, were ours, for "he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities;" (Isa. liii. 5.) he "was delivered for our offences," (Rom. iv. 25.) he "gave himself for our sins," (Gal. i. 4.) he "died for our sins according to the Scriptures;" (1 Cor. xv. 3.) that the dying for our sins was suffering death as a punishment taken upon himself, to free us from the punishment due unto our sins; for God "laid on him the iniquity of us all," (Isa. liii. 6.) and "made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin;" (2 Cor. v. 21.) "he hath borne our griefs and carried our sorrows, the chastisement of our peace was upon him, and with his stripes are we healed;" (Isa. liii. 4, 5.) that by the suffering of this punishment to free us from the punishment due unto our sins, it cometh to pass that our sins are forgiven, for, "This is my blood (saith our Saviour) of the New

*pardon and indulgence; we cannot argue from the word alone, that God in forgiving sins doth only and barely release the debt. There is therefore no force to be laid upon the words ἀφεσις ἀμαρτίας, remissio peccatorum, or, as the ancient fathers, remissa peccatorum. So Tertullian: Diximus de remissa peccatorum. ad e. Marc. l. iv. c. 18. St. Cyprian: Qui blasphemaverit in Spiritum Sanctum non habet remissam, sed reus est aeterna peccati. I. iii. ep. 14. § 1. al. ep. 10. Dominus baptizatur a seruo, et remissam peccatorum daturus, ipsa non designatur la-

vacro regenerationis corpus abluere.'

*Idem, de bon. Patient. § 3. 'Of an infant: 'Qui ad remissam peccatorum recipiendam hoc ipso facilius accedit, quod illi remittuntur non propria sed aliena peccata.' Iadem, l. iii. ep. 8. § 4. al. ep. 59. Add the interpreter of Irenæus concerning Christ: 'Remissam peccatorum existen
tem his qui credunt in eum.' Adv. Harst. l. iv. c. 27. § 2.

*χαρίς ἀματικευσίας εἰς γίνεται ἄφεσις.

† It is not only ἄφεσις, but ἀδίκως ἀμαρτίαι.
Testament (or Covenant), which is shed for many for the remission of sins." (Matt. xxvi. 28.) "In Christ we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins according to the riches of his grace." (Eph. i. 7.)

In which deduction or series of truths, we may easily perceive that the forgiveness of sins which is promised unto us, which we upon that promise do believe, containeth in it a reconciliation of an offended God, and a satisfaction unto a just God: it containeth a reconciliation, as without which God cannot be conceived to remit; it comprehendeth a satisfaction, as without which God was resolved not to be reconciled.

For the first of these, we may be assured of forgiveness of sins, because Christ by his death hath reconciled God unto us, who was offended by our sins; and that he hath done so, we are assured, because he which before was angry with us, upon the consideration of Christ's death, becomes propitious unto us, and did ordain Christ's death to be a propitiation for us. For we are "justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Jesus Christ; whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation, through faith in his blood." (Rom. iii. 24, 25.) "We have an advocate with the Father, and he is the propitiation for our sins." (1 John ii. 1.) For God "loved us, and sent his Son to be a propitiation for our sins." (Ibid. iv. 10.) It is evident therefore that Christ did render God propitious unto us by his blood (that is, his sufferings unto death), who before was offended with us for our sins. And this propitiation amounted to a reconciliation, that is, a kindness after wrath. We must conceive that God was angry with mankind before he determined to give our Saviour; we cannot imagine that God who is essentially just, should not abominate iniquity. The first affection we can conceive in him upon the lapse of man, is wrath and indignation. God therefore was most certainly offended before he gave a Redeemer; and though it be most true, that he "so loved the world that he gave his only-begotten Son:" (John iii. 16.) yet there is no incongruity in this, that a father should be offended with that son which he loveth, and at that time offended with him when he loveth him. Notwithstanding therefore that God loved men whom he created, yet he was offended with them when they sinned, and gave his Son to suffer for them, that through that Son's obedience he might be reconciled to them.

This reconciliation is clearly delivered in the Scriptures as wrought by Christ; for "all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ;" (2 Cor. v. 18.) and that by virtue of his death, for "when we were enemies, we were reconciled unto God by the death of his Son," (Rom. v. 10.) "making peace through the blood of his cross, and by him reconciling all things unto himself." (Col. i. 20.) In vain it is objected that the Scripture saith our Saviour reconciled men
to God, but no where teacheth that he reconciled God to man; for in the language of Scripture, to reconcile a man to God, is in our vulgar language to reconcile God to man, that is, to cause him who was before angry and offended with him to be gracious and propitious to him. As the princes of the Philistines spake of David, "Whereewith should he reconcile himself unto his master? should it not be with the heads of these men?" (1 Sam. xxix. 4.)* Wherewith shall he reconcile Saul who is so highly offended with him, wherewith shall he render him gracious and favourable, but by betraying these men unto him? As our Saviour adviseth, "If thou bring thy gift before the altar, and there rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee, leave there thy gift before the altar, and go thy way, first be reconciled to thy brother," (Matt. v. 23, 24.)† that is, reconcile thy brother to thyself, whom thou hast injured, render him by thy submission favourable unto thee, who hath something against thee, and is offended at thee. As the apostle adviseth the wife that "departeth from her husband, to remain unmarried, or to be reconciled to her husband," (1 Cor. vii. 11.) that is, to appease and get the favour of her husband. In the like manner we are said to be reconciled unto God, when God is reconciled, appeased, and become gracious and favourable unto us; and Christ is said to reconcile us unto God, when he hath moved, and obtained of God to be reconciled unto us, when he hath appeased him and restored us unto his favour. Thus "when we were enemies we were reconciled to God," that is, notwithstanding he was offended with us for our sins, we were restored unto his favour "by the death of his Son." (Rom. v. 10.)

Whence appeareth the weakness of the Socinian exception, that in the Scriptures we are said to be reconciled unto God; yet God is never said to be reconciled unto us. For by that very expression, it is to be understood, that he which is reconciled in the language of the Scriptures, is restored unto the favour of him who was formerly offended with that person which is now said to be reconciled. As when David was to be reconciled unto Saul, it was not that David should lay down his enmity against Saul, but that Saul should become propitious and favourable unto David: and therefore where the

---

* En τῷ θησαυρῷ τῶν κυρίων αὐτῶν: εἷς τοῖς κομφάλοις τῶν αἰχμών ἐκτὸς; πνεύμα acceptum se reddet, ita se geret, ut Saul cum in gratiam recipere velit.

† Προτέρων διαλάγων τῶν ἀδελφῶν του.

‡ Ad hæc vero quod nos Deo reconciliatur, quid affert Primum. nasquam Scripturam asserere, Deum nobis a Christo reconciliatum, verum id tantum quod nos per Christum aut mortem eum simus reconciliati, vel Deo reconciliati; ut ex omnibus locis, quae de reconcilia-
language is, that David should be reconciled unto Saul, the sense is, that Saul, who was exasperated and angry, should be appeased and so reconciled unto David.

Nor is it any wonder God should be thus reconciled to sinners by the death of Christ, who “while we were yet sinners died for us,” (Rom. v. 8.) because the punishment which Christ, who was our surety, endured, was a full satisfaction to the will and justice of God. “The Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.” (Matt. xx. 28.) Now a ransom is a price given to redeem such as are in any way in captivity; any thing laid down by way of compensation to take off a bond or obligation, whereby he which before was bound becometh free. All sinners were obligated to undergo such punishments as are proportionate to their sins, and were by that obligation captivated and in bonds, and Christ did give his life a ransom for them, and that a proper ransom, if that his life were of any price, and given as such. For a ransom is properly nothing else but something of price given by way of redemption,† to buy or purchase that which is detained, or given for the releasing of that which is enthralled. But it is most evident that the life of Christ was laid down as a price; neither is it more certain that he died, than that he bought us: “Ye are bought with a price,” saith the apostle, (1 Cor. vi. 20. vii. 23.) and it is the “Lord who bought us,” (2 Pet. ii. 1.) and the price which he paid was his blood; for “we are not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, but with the precious blood of Christ.” (1 Pet. i. 18, 19.)‡ Now as it was the blood of

* Δώσας τιν θεῷ αὐτῷ λύτρον ἀντί σοιλαν. What is the true notion of λύτρον will easily appear, because both the origin and use of the word are sufficiently known. The origin is from ῥαοῖν solvere, to loose, λύτρον quasi lusitum. Etymol. σύντετα τὰ σύντετα, λύτρον τα σύντετα. Lusitum. Λύγιον δὲ θυσίας (ita leg.) τὰ τρεφέα ἐκ τῶν θυσίων κατὰ συνέκτων ἐκ λυτέρων λύτρα, συνεκτὰ σύντετα. Iuid. Δ. 478. Λύτρον igitur quoniam datum est quae solutur. Epi ιακαλατταν ἐξαντικες ομοιο τὸ λύλαμα ἐν και λύτρα τα ἡμια λύγιον τα εἰς τοῦτο θυσίας Eustathius upon that of Homer, Il. a. 13. Λυσάμεις τε θυσίας. It is properly spoken of such things as are given to redeem a captive, or recover a man into a free condition. Ηςχιος. Πάντα τὰ δίδασκα τε ἀνακτόν τον λύτρα (so I read it, not διὰκτόν). So that whatsoever is given for such a purpose, is λύτρον, and whatsoever is not given for such an end, deserveth not the name in Greek. As the city Antandrus was so called, because it was given in exchange for a man who was a captive. Οτι Ασκόνας αἰχαλαττας ἔγινεν ἐν τοι περαγω αὐτῷ τῶν σοιλαν δίδασκα λύτρα, και ἀπελθόν. Etym. So that there can be nothing more proper in the Greek language than the words of our Saviour, Δώσας τιν θεῷ αὐτῷ λύτρον ἀντί παλατίας Δώσας λύτρον, for λύτρον is τὸ δίδασκα, and ἀντί παλατίας, for it is given ἀντί δυσαγαθίας, as that city was called, “Antandrus” Δίδασκα ἀντί δυσαγαθίας. And therefore, 1 Tim. ii. 6. It is said, Ο δεις ἑαυτων ἀντλετόν ἐπὶ πάντων.

† Hesychius: Λύτρον, τιμία. This is sufficiently expressed by two words, each of them fully significant of a price: the first simple, which is ἀγαθία, the second in composition, ἡδεραφία. That the word ἡδεραφία in the New Testament signifies properly to buy, appears generally in the evangelists, and particularly in that place of the Revelations xiii. 17. ἔτο μὴ τις δύναι ἄγαθαι ἐκ παλατίων. In the same signification it is attributed undoubtedly unto Christ in respect of us, whom he is often said to have bought, as 2 Pet. ii. 1. τὸν ἀγαθάνατα αὐτῶν δοσιπτόν ἀγαθίαν and this buying is expressed to be by a price, 1 Cor. vi
THE FORGIVENESS OF SINS.

547

Christ, so it was a price given by way of compensation: and as that blood was precious, so was it a full and perfect satisfaction. For as the gravity of the offence and impiety of the sin is augmented, and increaseth, according to the dignity of the person offended and injured by it; so the value, price, and dignity of that which is given by way of compensation, is raised according to the dignity of the person making the satisfaction. God is of infinite majesty, against whom we have sinned; and Christ is of the same Divinity, who gave his life a ransom for sinners: for God "hath purchased his Church with his own blood." (Acts xx. 28.) Although therefore God be said to remit our sins by which we were captivated, yet he is never said to remit the price without which we had never been redeemed:* neither can he be said to have remitted it, because he did require it and receive it.

If then we consider together, on our side the nature and obligation of sin, in Christ the satisfaction made and reconciliation wrought, we shall easily perceive how God forgiveth sins, and in what remission of them consisteth. Man being in all conditions under some law of God, who hath sovereign power and dominion over him, and therefore owing absolute obedience to that law, whenever so he transgresseth that law, or deviateth from that rule, he becomes thereby a sinner, and contracteth a guilt which is an obligation to endure a punishment proportional to his offence; and God who is the Lawgiver and Sovereign, becoming now the party wronged and offended, hath a most just right to punish man as an offender. But Christ taking upon him the nature of man, and offering himself a sacrifice for sin, giveth that unto God for and instead of the eternal death of man, which is more valuable and acceptable to God than that death could be, and so maketh a sufficient compensation and full satisfaction for the sins of man: which God accepting, becometh reconciled unto us, and, for the punishment which Christ endured, taketh off our obligation to eternal punishment.

19, 20. ὥστι εἰςτὶ ἓστιν, ἱγραμαντὶ γὰρ τι- μῶς, Vulg. non estis vestri, empti enim estis pretio magno: and 1 Cor. vii. 23. τιμῶς ἱγραμαντὶ, μὴ γίνεσθαι δούλοι ἀδικίων. What this price was it is also evident, for the sum was the sum which the precious blood of Christ, or the blood given by way of price, Rev. v. 9. οἱ καθαρὰς, καὶ ἱγραμαντὰς τῷ θεῷ ἱμάς ἐν τῷ ἀιματί σου. Which will appear more fully by the compound word ἱγραμαντία, Gal. iii. 13. καθαρὰς ἱμάς ἱγραμαντίας ἐν τῇ κατάξει τῶν νόμων, γεφυράμας ὠπίς ἱμῶν κατάξας and Gal. iv. 4. 3. γεφυρά- μας ἐν τῷ νόμῳ, ἵνα τοὺς ὑπὸ τίμων ἱγραμαντίας. Now this ἱγραμαντία is proper redemp- tion, or διακοσθέν, upon a proper price, though not silver or gold, yet proper as silver and gold, and far beyond them.

* As λόγος is a certain price given or promised for liberty, so φίλος λόγος is to remit the price set upon the head of a man, or promised for him; as we read in the Testament of Lycon the philosopher: Ἰμηρέων μὲν ἰδιωτῶν πελάς ὁποῖα τὰ ἄριστα. Demetrius had been his servant, and he had set him free upon a certain price which he had engaged himself to pay for that liberty; the sum which Demetrius was thus bound to pay, Lycon at his death remits, as also to Criton: Κεί- των δὲ Καρχείδοις, καὶ τῶτε τὰ λόγτα ἄφι- καί. Dio. Laert. in Vit. ad fin.
ARTICLE X.

Thus man who violated, by sinning, the law of God, and by that violation offended God, and was thereby obliged to undergo the punishment due unto the sin, and to be inflicted by the wrath of God, is, by the price of the most precious blood of Christ, given and accepted in full compensation and satisfaction for the punishment which was due, restored unto the favour of God, who being thus satisfied, and upon such satisfaction reconciled, is faithful and just to take off all obligation unto punishment from the sinner; and in this act of God consisteth the forgiveness of sins, which is sufficient for the first part of the explication of this Article, as being designed for nothing else but to declare what is the true notion of remission of sins, in what that action doth consist.

The second part of the explication, taking notice not only of the substance, but also of the order of the Article, observing the immediate connexion of it with the holy Church, and the relation which in the opinion of the ancients it hath unto it, will endeavour to instruct us how this great privilege of forgiveness of sins is propounded in the Church, how it may be procured and obtained by the members of the Church.

At the same time when our Saviour sent the apostles to gather a Church unto him, he foretold that “repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem;” (Luke xxiv. 47.) and when the Church was first constituted, they thus exhorted those whom they desired to come into it, “Repent and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out;” (Acts iii. 19.) and, “Be it known unto you that through this man is preached unto you forgiveness of sins.” (Acts xiii. 38.) From whence it appeareth, that the Jews and Gentiles were invited to the Church of Christ, that they might therein receive remission of sins; that the doctrine of remission of all sins propounded and preached to all men, was proper and peculiar to the Gospel, which teacheth us that by Christ “all that believe are justified from all things, from which they could not be justified by the law of Moses.” (Ibid. 39.) Therefore John the Baptist, who went “before the face of the Lord to prepare his ways, gave knowledge of salvation unto his people by the remission of their sins.” (Luke i. 76, 77.)

This, as it was preached by the apostles at the first gathering of the Church of Christ, I call proper and peculiar to the Gospel, because the same doctrine was not so propounded by the Law. For if we consider the Law itself strictly and under the bare notion of a law, it promised life only upon perfect, absolute, and uninterrupted obedience; the voice thereof was only this, ‘Do this and live.’ Some of the greater sins nominated and specified in the Law, had annexed unto them the sentence of death, and that sentence irreversible; nor was there any other way or means left in the Law of Moses, by which
that punishment might be taken off. As for other less and more ordinary sins, there were sacrifices appointed for them; and when those sacrifices were offered and accepted, God was appeased, and the offences were released. Whatsoever else we read of sins forgiven under the Law, was of some special divine indulgence, more than was promised by Moses, though not more than was promulgated unto the people, in the name and of the nature of God, so far as something of the Gospel was mingled with the Law.

Now as to the atonement made by the sacrifices, it clearly had relation to the death of the Messias; and whatsoever virtue was in them did operate through his death alone. As he was the "Lamb slain from the foundation of the world," (Rev. xiii. 8.) so all atonements which were ever made, were only effectual by his blood. But though no sin was ever forgiven, but by virtue of that satisfaction; though God was never reconciled unto any sinner but by intuition of that propitiation; yet the general doctrine of remission of sins was never clearly revealed,* and publicly preached to all nations, till the coming of the Saviour of the world, whose name was therefore called Jesus, because he was to "save his people from their sins." (Matt. i. 21.)

Being therefore we are assured that the preaching remission of sins belongeth not only certainly, but in some sense peculiarly, to the Church of Christ, it will be next considerable how this remission is conferred upon any person in the Church.

For a full satisfaction in this particular, two things are very observable; one relating to the initiation, the other concerning the continuation, of a Christian. For the first of these, it is the most general and irrefragable assertion of all, to whom we have reason to give credit, that all sins whatsoever any person is guilty of, are remitted in the baptism of the same person. For the second, it is as certain that all sins committed by any person after baptism are remissible; and the person committing those sins shall receive forgiveness upon true repentance, at any time, according to the Gospel.

First, It is certain, that forgiveness of sins was promised to all who were baptized in the name of Christ; and it cannot be doubted but all persons who did perform all things necessary to the receiving the ordinance of baptism, did also receive the benefit of that ordinance, which is remission of sins. "John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins." (Mark i. 4.) And St. Peter made this the exhortation of his first sermon, "Repeat and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins." (Acts ii. 38.) In vain doth doubting and

* 'Lex peccatorum nescit remissionem; lex mysterium non habet quo occulta purgatur: et idae quod in lege minus est, consummatur in Evangelio.' S. Ambros. In Lucam, l. vi. c. 7.
fluctuating Socinus endeavour to evacuate the evidence of this Scripture: * attributing the remission either to repentance without consideration of baptism, or else to the public profession of faith made in baptism; or if any thing must be attributed to baptism itself, it must be nothing but a declaration of such remission. For how will these shifts agree with that which Ananias said unto Saul, without any mention either of repentance or confession, “Arise and be baptized, and wash away thy sins?” (Acts xxii. 16.) and that which St. Paul, who was so baptized, hath taught us concerning the Church, that Christ doth “sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water?” (Eph. v. 26.) It is therefore sufficiently certain that baptism as it was instituted by Christ after the preadministration of St. John, whereassoever it was received with all qualifications necessary in the person accepting, and conferred with all things necessary to be performed by the person administering, was most infallibly efficacious, as to this particular, that is, to the remission of all sins committed before the administration of this sacrament.

As those which are received into the Church by the sacrament of baptism, receive the remission of their sins of which they were guilty before they were baptized; so after they are thus made members of the Church, they receive remission of their future sins by their repentance. † Christ who hath left us a pattern of prayer, hath thereby taught us for ever to improve and beg the forgiveness of our sins; that as we through the frailty of our nature are always subject unto sin, so we should always exercise the acts of repentance, and for ever

* * * Vel Baptismo illi, hoc est, solemniter peracta ablationi, peccatorum Remissione necquam tribuit Petrus, sed totam peniteniis; vel si Baptismo quoque rationem es in re habuit, aut quatenus publicam nominis Jesu Christi professionem continent, eam tantum consideravit; aut si ipsius etiam externa ablutionis ornino rationem habet velant, quod ad ipsam atinent, remissionis peccatorum nomine, non ipsam remissionem mere, sed remissionis declarationem, et obis- 

† St. Chrysostom speaking of the power of the priests: Οὐ γὰρ ἄρα ἡμῖν ἀπειρώτως μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα συνχρῆσθαι ἵππο- σιν ἴδου αὐτὸν ἀμαρτηματα. De Sacr. I. iii. t. vi. p. 17. “Excepto baptismatis inverre, quod contra originae peccatum donatum est, ut quod generatione attractum est, regenerationem detrabatur; et tamen activa quoque peccata, quaeque corde, re, opere commissa invenire, tollit;) hac ergo excepta magnæ indulgentiæ (unde incipit hominis renovatio) in qua solvitur omnis reatus et ingeneratus et additis; ipsa etiam vita cetera jam ratione utentis ætatis, quantumlibet propefollute secunditate justitiae, sine remissione peccatorum non agitur: quomodo filii Dei, quandam mortali vitæ, cum morte cælantur: et quamvis de illis sit veracter actum, Quo- quel Spiritus Dei agnoscit, haec sunt Dei; sic tamen Spiritus Dei existimatur et tan- quàm filii Dei profundit ad Deum, ut etiam Spiritu suo (maxime autemque corruptibili corpore) tanquam filii hominum quibusdam moribus humanis defici- 

‡ August Inher. c. 61. Ota καὶ μετὰ τὸ βαπτισμα ἵδου αὐτὸν ἀμαρτηματα μετὰ πῶς πολλῶς καὶ καμάτως. Πάντα τούτων ἐπιλεῖς ἐστὶν ἐναντίον ἐντεῦθεν, καὶ αἰσχοῦς καὶ τὸν κόσμον ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι τὸν ἐν τούτῳ γὰρ μηνα ἀναμετρησίας ἐνθεογονία, δυνάμεισά ἀποκτενίαν ἀπώ- 

§ Hieron. adv. Pelag. i. ii. col. 515.
THE FORGIVENESS OF SINS.

551

seek the favour of God. This then is the comfort of the Gospel, that as it discovereth sin within us, so it propoundeth a remedy unto us. While we are in this life encompassed with flesh, while the allurements of the world, while the stratagems of Satan, while the infinities and corruptions of our nature, betray us to the transgression of the Law of God, we are always subject to offend (from whence whosoever saith that he hath no sin is a liar, contradicting himself, and contracting iniquity by pretending innocency); and so long as we can offend, so long we may apply ourselves unto God by repentance, and be renewed by his grace, and pardoned by his mercy.

And therefore the Church of God, in which remission of sin is preached, doth not only promise it at first by the laver of regeneration, but afterwards also upon the virtue of repentance; and to deny the Church this power of absolution is the heresy of Novatian.*

The necessity of the belief in this Article appeareth, first, Because there can be no Christian consolation without this persuasion. For we have all sinned and come short of the glory of God, nay, God himself hath concluded all under sin; we must also acknowledge that every sinner is a guilty person, and that guilt consisteth in an obligation to endure eternal punishment from the wrath of God provoked by our sins; from whence nothing else can arise but a fearful expectation of everlasting misery. So long as guilt remaineth on the soul of man, so long is he in the condition of the devils, “delivered into chains and reserved unto judgment.” (2 Pet. ii. 4.) For we all fell as well as they, but with this difference; remission of sins is promised unto us, but to them it is not.

Secondly, It is necessary to believe the forgiveness of sins, that thereby we may sufficiently esteem God’s goodness and our happiness. When man was fallen into sin, there was no possibility left him to work out his recovery; that soul which had sinned must of necessity die, the wrath of God abiding upon him for ever. There can be nothing imaginable in that man which should move God not to shew a demonstration of his justice upon him; there can be nothing without him which could pretend to rescue him from the sentence of an offended

* I call this the heresy of Novatian rather than of Novanus, because though they both joined in it, yet it rather sprang from Novatianus the Romano presbyter, than from Novatus the African bishop. And he is thus expressed by Epiphanius, Hær. lix. § 1. Ἰόναν μὴ ἔλεις σαντιγί, ἀλλὰ μειν μετανοήσας μετά δὲ τὸ λουτρό, με- κινήσω διοίκησαι γείσαις παρεπιπεδοῦς; that is, he acknowledged but one repentance which was available in baptism; after which if any man sinned, there was no mercy remaining for him. To which Epiphanius gives this reply: Ἡ μὴν τελικά μετανοία ἐν τῷ λουτρῷ τυγχάνει: εἰ δὲ τις πα- επέστη σικ ἀπόκλεις τοῦτον ἡ ἁγία τοῦ Θεοῦ ἱλασέως; δίδωσι γὰρ καὶ ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μετανοίαν τὴν παμπαλίαν; Ibid. and again: ἔγραψα ὅσο δέ τοῦ λουτροῦ, καὶ με- κινήσω διοίκησαι γείσαις παρεπιπεδοῦς; ἔτι ὡς τὰς ἁγίας πάστον, τὴν μετανοίαν ἔγραψα. Ibid. § 2. and yet more generally: Τὰ πάντα ταῖς τετελέσθαι μετὰ τῶν οἰκτικαίδευμαν, ἐτι δὲ ὡς τὰς ἁγίας πάστον, καὶ μετὰ παρατητὰ ἐτι ἀνάστασιν, ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἑαυτοῖς, ἐν τοῖς ἑαυ- τοίς, ἐν τοῖς ἑαυτοῖς καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἑαυτοῖς, ἐκ- ὡς τὰς ἁγίας πάστον ἀπήγραψας ἡ κατηγορία. Ibid. § 10.
and almighty God. Glorious therefore must the goodness of our God appear, who dispenseth with his Law, who taketh off the guilt, who loosteth the obligation, who imputeth not the sin. This is God's goodness, this is man's happiness. "For blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered; blessed is the man unto whom the Lord imputeth no iniquity." (Psal. xxxii. 1, 2.) The year of release, the year of jubilee, was a time of public joy; and there is no voice like that, "thy sins are forgiven thee." By this a man is rescued from infernal pains, secured from everlasting flames; by this he is made capable of heaven, by this he is assured of eternal happiness.

Thirdly, It is necessary to believe the forgiveness of sins, that by the sense thereof we may be inflamed with the love of God; for, that love doth naturally follow from such a sense, appeareth by the parable in the Gospel, "There was a certain creditor which had two debtors, the one owed him five hundred pence, the other fifty. And when they had nothing to pay, he frankly forgave them both." (Luke vii. 41, 42.) Upon which case our Saviour made this question, "Which of them will love him most?" He supposeth both the debtors will love him, because the creditor forgave them both; and he collecteth the degrees of love will answer proportionably to the quantity of the debt forgiven. We are the debtors, and our debts are sins, and the creditor is God: the remission of our sins is the frank forgiving of our debts, and for that we are obliged to return our love.

Fourthly, The true notion of forgiveness of sins is necessary to teach us what we owe to Christ, to whom, and how far we are indebted for this forgiveness. "Through this man is preached unto us the forgiveness of sins," (Acts xiii. 38.) and without a surety we had no release. He rendered God propitious unto our persons, because he gave himself as a satisfaction for our sins. While thus he took off our obligation to punishment, he laid upon us a new obligation of obedience. We are not our own who are "bought with a price:" we must "glorify God in our bodies, and in our spirits, which are God's." (1 Cor. vi. 19, 20.) We must be no longer "the servants of men; we are the servants of Christ, who are bought with a price." (1 Cor. vii. 22, 23.)

Fifthly, It is necessary to believe remission of sins as wrought by the blood of Christ, by which the covenant was ratified and confirmed, which mindeth us of a condition required. It is the nature of a covenant to expect performances on both parts; and therefore if we look for forgiveness promised, we must perform repentance commanded. These two were always preached together, and those which God hath joined ought no man to put asunder. Christ did truly appear "a Prince and a Saviour," and it was "to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins;" (Acts v. 31.) he joined these two in the apostles' commission, saying, that "repentance and remission of sins
THE RESURRECTION OF THE BODY. 553

should be preached in his name throughout all nations.” (Luke xxiv. 47.)

From hence every one may learn what he is explicitly to believe and confess in this Article of forgiveness of sins; for thereby he is conceived to intend thus much: I do freely and fully acknowledge, and with unspeakable comfort embrace this as a most necessary and infallible truth, that whereas every sin is a transgression of the Law of God, upon every transgression there remaineth a guilt upon the person of the transgressor, and that guilt is an obligation to endure eternal punishment; so that all men, being concluded under sin, they were all obliged to suffer the miseries of eternal death; it pleased God to give his Son, and his Son to give himself to be a surety for this debt, and to release us from these bonds, and because without shedding of blood there is no remission, he gave his life a sacrifice for sin, he laid it down as a ransom, even his precious blood as a price by way of compensation and satisfaction to the will and justice of God; by which propitiation, God, who was by our sins offended, became reconciled, and being so, took off our obligation to eternal punishment, which is the guilt of our sins, and appointed in the Church of Christ the sacrament of baptism for the first remission, and repentance for the constant forgiveness of all following trespasses. And thus I believe the forgiveness of sins.

ARTICLE XI.

The Resurrection of the Body.

This Article was anciently delivered and acknowledged by all Churches,* only with this difference, that whereas in other places it was expressed in general terms, the resurrection of the flesh, they of the Church of Aquileia, by the addition of a pronoun propounded it to every single believer in a more particular way of expression, the resurrection of this flesh. And though we have translated it in our English Creed, the resurrection of the body; yet neither the Greek nor Latin ever delivered this Article in those terms, but in these, the resurrection of the flesh:†

* Com omnes ecclesiae sua sacramento Symboli tradant, ut postquam dixerunt pecorum remissionem, addant carnis resurrectionem; sancta Aquileiensis ecclesia, ubi tradidit carnis resurrectionem, addit annus pronominis syllabam; et pro eo quod ceteri dicunt, carne resurrectionem, nos dicimus hujus carnis resurrectionem.† Ruffin, Apol. i. adv. Hier. inter Op. Hieron. t. iv. par. 2. col. 334. * Satis cauta et pravida adjectiune idem Symboli ecclesia nostra docet, que in eo quod a ceteris traditur, carnis resurrectionem, unum addito pronomine tradit, hujus carnis resurrectionem. Id. in Symb. §. 42. † Sive ergo corpus resurrecturum dicimus, secundum Apostolum dicimus (hoc enim nomine unus est ille) sive carnem dicimus, secundum traditionem Symboli confiterur. Idem, Prot. in Apolog. Pamphili.

† The Greeks always use σαρκις ἐκατον, the Latins carnis resurrectionem. And this was to be observed, because, being we read of spiritual bodies some would acknowledge the resurrection of the body, who would deny the resurrection of the flesh. Of this St. Jerome gives,
because there may be ambiguity in the one, in relation to the celestial and spiritual bodies, but there can be no collusion in the other. Only it will be necessary, for shewing our agreement with the ancient Creeds, to declare that as by flesh they understood the body of man, and not any other flesh; so we, when we translate it body, understand no other body but such a body of flesh, of the same nature which it had before it was by death separated from the soul. And this we may very well and properly do, because our Church hath already taken care therein, and given us a fit occasion so to declare ourselves. For though in the Creed itself, used at Morning and Evening Prayer, the Article be thus delivered, the resurrection of the body, yet in the form of public baptism, where it is propounded by way of question to the godfathers in the name of the child to be baptized, it runneth thus, 'Dost thou believe—the resurrection of the flesh?' We see by daily experience that all men are mortal; that the body, left by the soul, the salt and life thereof, putrefieth and consumeth, and according to the sentence of old, returneth unto dust: but these bodies, as frail and mortal as they are, consisting of this corruptible flesh, are the subject of this Article, in which we profess to believe the resurrection of the body.

When we treated concerning the resurrection of Christ,* we delivered the proper notion and nature of the resurrection in general, that from thence we might conclude that our Saviour did truly rise from the dead. Being now to explain the resurrection to come, we shall not need to repeat what we then delivered, or make an addition as to that particular, but referring the reader to that which is there explained, it will be necessary for us only to consider what is the resurrection to come, who are they which shall be raised, how we are assured they shall rise, and in what manner all shall be performed. And this resurrection hath some peculiar difficulties different from those which might seem to obstruct the belief of Christ's resurrection. For the body of the Son of God did never see corruption; all the parts thereof continued in the same condition in which they were after his most precious soul had left them, they were only deposited in the sepulchre, otherwise the grave had no power over them. But other mortal bodies, after the soul hath deserted them, are left to all the sad effects of their mortality: we may say "to corruption, Thou art my father; to the worm, Thou art my mother and my sister;" our
corpses "go down to the bars of the pit, and rest together in the dust." (Job xvii. 14, 16.) Our death is not a simple dissolution, nor a bare separation of soul and body, as Christ's was, but our whole tabernacle is fully dissolved, and every part thereof crumbled into dust and ashes, scattered, mingled, and confounded with the dust of the earth. There is a description of a kind of resurrection in the prophet Ezekiel, in which there is supposed a "valley full of bones, and there was a noise, and behold a shaking, and the bones came together, bone to his bone, the sinews and the flesh came upon them, and the skin covered them above, and their breath came into them, and they lived and stood upon their feet." (Ezek. xxxvii. 1, 7, 8, 10.) But in the resurrection to come we cannot suppose the bones in the valley, for they are dissolved into dust as well as the other parts.

We must therefore undertake to shew that the bodies of men, howsoever corrupted, wheresoever in their parts dispersed, how long soever dead, shall hereafter be recollected in themselves, and united to their own souls. And for the more facile and familiar proceeding in this so highly concerning truth, I shall make use of this method: First, To prove that such a resurrection is not in itself impossible: Secondly, To shew that it is upon general considerations highly probable: Thirdly, To demonstrate that it is upon Christian principles in fin alliby certain. It is not in itself impossible, therefore no man can absolutely deny it; it is upon natural and moral grounds highly probable, therefore all men may rationally expect it; it is upon evangelical principles infallibly certain, therefore all Christians must firmly believe it.

First, I confess philosophers of old did look upon the resurrection of the body as impossible,* and though some of them thought the souls of the dead did live again, yet they never conceived that they were united to the same bodies, and that their flesh should rise out of the dust that it might be conjoined to the spirit of a man. We read of "certain philosophers of the Epicureans and of the Stoics, who encountered St. Paul; and when they heard of the resurrection they mocked him, some saying, that he seemed to be a setter-forth of strange gods, because he preached unto them Jesus and the resurrection." (Acts xvii. 18.) But as the ancient philosophers thought a creation impossible, because they looked only upon the constant works of nature, among which they never find any thing produced out of nothing, and yet we have already proved a

* Pliny, reckoning up those things which he thought not to be in the power of God, mentions these two: 'Mortales aeternitate denare, aut revocare defunctos.' I. ii. cap. 7. And Eschylus, though a Pythagorean, yet absolutely denies it to be in the power of God, for so he makes Apollo speak to the Eumenides:

Πεδίας μέν ἂν λύσειν, ἵνα τοῦτο ἄρε, 
Καὶ κάστα πάλλῃ μεμψαν λυτόσεις.
creation not only possible, but performed; so did they think a resurrection of corrupted, dissolved, and dissipated bodies to be as impossible, because they could never observe any action or operation in nature, which did or could produce any such effect; and yet we being not tied to the consideration of nature only, but estimating things possible and impossible by the power of God, will easily demonstrate that there is no impossibility that the dead should rise.

For, if the resurrection of the dead be impossible, it must be so in one of these respects; either in reference to the agent, or in relation to the patient; either because it is a work of so much difficulty, that there neither is nor can be any agent of wisdom, power, and activity, sufficient to effect it; or else because the soul of man is so far separated by death from the body, and the parts of the body so much dissolved from themselves, and altered from their nature, that they are absolutely incapable by any power to be united as they were. Either both or one of these two must be the reason of the impossibility, if the resurrection be impossible; for if the body be capable of being raised, and there be any agent of sufficient ability to raise it, the resurrection of it must be possible.

Now, if the resurrection were impossible in respect of the agent which should effect it, the impossibility must arise either from an insufficiency of knowledge or of power;* for if either the agent know not what is to be done, or if he know it but hath no power to do it, either he will not attempt it, or if he do, must fail in the attempt; but that, of which he hath perfect knowledge, and full power to effect, cannot be impossible in relation to the agent endued with such knowledge, and with such power.

Now, when we say the resurrection is possible, we say not it is so to men or angels, or any creature of a limited knowledge or finite power, but we attribute it to God, with whom nothing is impossible; (Luke i. 37.) his understanding is infinite, he knoweth all the men which ever lived since the foundation, or shall live unto the dissolution of the world, he knoweth whereof all things were made, from what dust we came, into what dust we shall return. “Our substance was not hid from thee, O Lord, when we were made in secret, and curiously wrought in the lowest parts of the earth; thine eyes did see our substance, yet being imperfect, and in thy book were all our members written, which in continuance were fashioned when as yet there was none of them.” (Psal. cxxxix. 15, 16.) Thus every particle in our bodies, every dust and atom which belongeth

---

* Τὸ ἀδίδαστον τὸν γηγυμναστήκατα κατ’ ἀδιάδαστον τοιούτων, ἢ ἐκ τοῦ μὴ γηγυμναστήκατο τὸ γενετός, ἢ ἐκ τοῦ δύναμιν αὐτοῦ καὶ ὑπὸ ὕπον πρὸς τὸ παῦσαι καὶ τὸ ἀναστῆσαι. Ο ἄλλος ἄρχον τε τὸν γενετός δεῖκτον οἷς ἐν αὐτῷ ὑγιείας ἀπεριβαλόμενοι, οὕτω ποιεῖ τὸ παρεστάλθη ἀπέριβαλόμενον ἀπὸ τοῦ γηγυμναστῆκαν καλῶς τὸ πανθε-
THE RESURRECTION OF THE BODY.

557

to us, is known to him that made us. The generation of our flesh is clearly seen by "the Father of spirits," (Heb. xiii. 9.) the augmentation of the same is known to him "in whom we live, move, and have our being;" (Acts xvii. 28.) the dissolution of our tabernacles is perceived by that God by whom the "very hairs of our head are all numbered, and without whom one sparrow shall not fall to the ground." (Matt. x. 29, 30.) He which numbereth the sands of the sea, knoweth all the scattered bones, seeth into all the graves and tombs, searcheth all the repositories and dormitories in the earth, knoweth what dust belongeth to each body, what body to each soul. Again, as his all-seeing eye observeth every particle of dissolved and corrupted man, so doth he also see and know all ways and means by which these scattered parts should be united, by which this ruined fabric should be recompacted; he knoweth how every bone should be brought to its old neighbour-bone, how every sinew may be re-embroidered on it; he understandeth what are the proper parts to be conjoined, what is the proper gluten by which they may become united. The resurrection therefore cannot be impossible in relation to the Agent upon any deficiency of knowledge how to effect it.

And as the wisdom is infinite, so the power of this Agent is illimited; for God is as much omnipotent as omniscient. There can be no opposition made against him, because all power is his; nor can he receive a check against whom there is no resistance: all creatures must not only suffer, but do what he will have them; they are not only passively, but actively obedient. There is no atom of the dust or ashes but must be where it pleaseth God, and be applied and made up what and how it seemeth good to him. The resurrection therefore cannot be impossible in relation unto God upon any disability to effect it, and consequently there is no impossibility in reference to the agent, or him who is to raise us.

Secondly, The resurrection is not impossible in relation to the patient, because where we look upon the power of God, nothing can be impossible but that which involveth a contradiction, as we before have proved; and there can be no contradiction in this, that he which was, and now is not, should hereafter be what before he was. It was so far from a repugnancy, that it rather containeth a rational and apparent possibility, that man who was once dust, becoming dust, should become man again. Whatsoever we lose in death, is not lost to God; as no creature could be made out of nothing but by him, so can it not be reduced into nothing but by the same: though therefore the parts of the body of man be dissolved, yet they perish not; they lose not their own entity when they part with their relation to humanity;* they are laid up in the

* Non sola anima seponitur: habet et caro suas sinus internum, in aquas, in altibus, in ignibus, in bestiis; cum in hac dissolvi videtur, velut in vasa transfunditur." Tertuli. de Resur. carnis, c. 63. Tu perire et Deo credis, si quid occurr
secret places, and lodged in the chambers of nature, and it is no more a contradiction that they should become the parts of the same body of man to which they did belong, than that after his death they should become the parts of any other body, as we see they do. Howsoever they are scattered, or wheresoever lodged, they are within the knowledge and power of God, and can have no repugnancy by their separation to be reunited when and how he pleaseth. The first dust of which man was made, was as far from being flesh as any ashes now or dust can be; it was only an omnipotent power which could mould that into a human body, and breathe into the nostrils of it the breath of life. The same power therefore, which must always be, can still make of the dust returning from the bodies of men unto the earth, human bones and flesh, as well as of the dust which first came from the earth: for if it be not easier, it is most certainly as easy to make that to be again which once hath been, as to make that to be which before was not. When there was no man, God made him of the earth: and therefore when he returns to earth, the same God can make him again. The resurrection therefore cannot be impossible, which is our first conclusion.

Secondly, The resurrection is not only in itself possible, so that no man with any reason can absolutely deny it; but it is also upon many general considerations highly probable, so that all men may very rationally expect it. If we consider the principles of humanity, the parts of which we all consist, we cannot conceive this present life to be proportionable to our composition. The souls of men, as they are immaterial, so they


Iam, de Resur. carn. c. 11. "Difficultius est quod quodam sit incipere, quam id quod fuerit iterare." Minutius Felix in Octavio, c. 31. "Utique plus est facere quod nunquam fuit, quam reparare quod fuerit. Quomodo ergo impossum esse dui, ut Deus, qui hominem format in nihilum, reformet? Quomodo nos suscipiatur in potent conversus in pulverem, qui eras nihil, et resuscitarit in nihilum rediremus, facere poterat ut essemus, sicut et fecit nos esse, cum autem non fuimus?" S. August. de verbis Apost. Serm. 31. al. 109. append. §. 3. To the same purpose the Jews, רדפ לא

 Moose'ור ,"י ה"ל ו HKM


*Abst autem ut ad resuscitanda corpora vitæque reddenda non possit omnipotens Creatoris omnia revocare quo vel bestia vel ignis absumpsit, vel in pulverem cineremque collapsum, vel in humorem solutum, vel in auras est exhalatum. Abstut sinus ullus, secretumque naturea ita recipiat aliquid subtractus sensibus nostris, ut omnium Creatoris aut laevas cognitionem, aut effugiat potestatem." S. August. de Civitate Dei, 1. xxii. c. 20.


Iam, de Resur. carn. c. 11. "Difficultius est quod quodam sit incipere, quam id quod fuerit iterare." Minutius Felix in Octavio, c. 31. "Utique plus est facere quod nunquam fuit, quam reparare quod fuerit. Quomodo ergo impossum esse dui, ut Deus, qui hominem format in nihilum, reformet? Quomodo nos suscipiatur in potent conversus in pulverem, qui eras nihil, et resuscitarit in nihilum rediremus, facere poterat ut essemus, sicut et fecit nos esse, cum autem non fuimus?" S. August. de verbis Apost. Serm. 31. al. 109. append. §. 3. To the same purpose the Jews, רדפ לא
The Resurrection of the Body.

are immortal; and being once created by the Father of spirits, they receive a subsistence for eternity; the body is framed by the same God to be a companion for his spirit, and a man born into the world consisteth of these two. Now the life of the most aged person is but short, and many far ignoble creatures of a longer duration. Some of the fowls of the air, several of the fishes of the sea, many of the beasts of the field, divers of the plants of the earth, are of a more durable constitution, and outlive the sons of men. And can we think that such material and mortal, that such misunderstanding souls should by God and nature be furnished with bodies of so long permansion, and that our spirits should be joined unto flesh so subject to corruption, so suddenly dissolvable, were it not that they lived but once, and so enjoyed that life for a longer season, and then went soul and body to the same destruction, never to be restored to the same subsistence? but when the soul of man, which is immortal, is forced from its body in a shorter time, nor can by any means continue with it half the years which many other creatures live, it is because this is not the only life belonging to the sons of men, and so the soul may at a shorter warning leave the body which it shall resume again.

Again, If we look upon ourselves as men, we are free agents, and therefore capable of doing good or evil, and consequently ordinal unto reward or punishment. The angels who are above us, and did sin, received their punishment without a death, because being only spirits they were subject to no other dissolution than annihilation, which cannot consist with longer suffering punishment; those who continued in their station were rewarded and confirmed for all eternity: and thus all the angels are incapable of a resurrection. The creatures which are below us, and for want of freedom cannot sin, or act any thing morally either good or evil, they cannot deserve after this life either to be punished or rewarded, and therefore when they die they continue in the state of death for ever. Thus those who are above us shall not rise from the dead, because they are punished or rewarded without dying; and where no death is, there can be no resurrection from the dead. Those which are below us, are neither capable of reward nor punishment for any thing acted in this life, and therefore though they die yet shall they never rise, because there is no reason for their resurrection. But man by the nobleness of his better part being free to do what is good or evil while he liveth, and by the frailty of his body being subject to death, and yet after that, being capable in another world to receive a reward for what he hath done well, and a punishment for what he hath done ill in the flesh, it is necessary that he should rise from the dead to enjoy the one, or suffer the other. For there is not only no just retribution rendered in this life to man, but considering the ordinary condition of things, it cannot be. For it
is possible, and often cometh to pass, that one man may commit such sins as all the punishments in this world can no way equalize them.* It is just, that he who sheddeth man’s blood, by man his blood should be shed; but what death can sufficiently retaliate the many murders committed by one notorious pirate, who may cast many thousands over board; or the rapines or assassinations of one rebel or tyrant, who may destroy whole nations? It is fit that he who blasphemeth God should die; but what equivalent punishment can he receive in this life, who shall constantly blaspheme the name of God, destroy his priests and temples, abolish his worship, and extirpate his servants? What is then more proper, considering the providence of a most just God, than to believe that man shall suffer in another life such torments as will be proportionable to his demerits? Nor can we with reason think, that the soul alone shall undergo those sufferings, because the laws which were given to us are not made in respect of that alone, but have most frequent reflection on the body, without which in this life the soul can neither do nor suffer any thing. † It is therefore highly probable, from the general consideration of human actions and divine retributions, that there shall be a “resurrection of the flesh, that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.” (2 Cor. v. 10.)

Furthermore, Beside the principles of which we consist, and the actions which flow from us, the consideration of the things without us, and the natural course of variations in the creature, will render the resurrection yet more highly probable. Every space of twenty-four hours teacheth thus much, in which there is always a revolution amounting to a resurrection. The day dies into night, and is buried in silence and in darkness; ‡

---

* Παρήκε γὰρ ήραν ὦτι σωματικὸς τῆς φύσεως, ἐν ὅ τινι ἔργον, εἰδώλες ὑπερήφανοι ἔργον εἰς τὸ ὅτι τὸν συμμετόχον δικαίον πλέον ὁ ἐκατέρως φιλόσωφος πληροειδήτης. Atheneus, de Resurrectione mortuorum, c. 14.


‡ Cum omnis vita nostra usus in corporis animaque consortio sit, resurrectio autem aut boni actus premium habeat aut peccavit impoli, necesse est corpus resurgere cujus actus expendat. Quamodo enim in judicium vocabatur sine corpore, cum de suo et corporis contubernio ratio praestanda sit?” S. Ambros. de fide Resurr. 1


2 Lux quotidie interfector respleendet, et tenebrae pari vice decedendo succedunt; sidera defuncta rivescent; tempora ubi fluitantur oculi sunt; fructus consummatur.
in the next morning it appeareth again and reviveth, opening the grave of darkness, rising from the dead of night: this is a diurnal resurrection. As the day dies into the night, so doth the summer into winter; the sap is said to descend into the root, and there it lies buried in the ground; the earth is covered with snow, or crusted with frost, and becomes a general sepulchre: when the spring appeareth, all begin to rise; the plants and flowers peep out of their graves, revive, and grow, and flourish: this is the annual resurrection.* The corn by which we live, and for want of which we perish with famine, is notwithstanding cast upon the earth, and buried in the ground, with a design that it may corrupt, and being corrupted may revive and multiply; our bodies are fed with this constant experiment, and we continue this present life by succession of resurrections. Thus all things are repaired by corrupting, are preserved by perishing, and revive by dying; and can we think that man, the lord of all these things which thus die and reviveth for him, should be detained in death as never to live again?

Is it imaginable that God should thus restore all things to man, and not restore man to himself? If there were no other consideration, but of the principles of human nature, of the liberty and remunerableness of human actions, and of the natural revolutions and resurrections of other creatures, it were abundantly sufficient to render the resurrection of our bodies highly probable.

We must not rest in this school of nature, nor settle our persuasions upon likelihoods; but as we passed from an apparent possibility, unto a high presumption and probability, so must we pass from thence unto a full assurance of an infallible certainty. And of this indeed we cannot be assured but by the revelation of the will of God; upon his power we must conclude that we may, from his will that we shall, rise from

\* Omnia persecutio etiam, omnia de interiori reformanter. Tu homo, tantum hominem, si intelligas te, vel de titulo Pythian discipus, dominus omnium morientium et resurrectorum, ad hoc moriere ut pereras? Tertull. Apol. c. 18. * Revoluntur hymeneae et attaeae, et vetera aut autmnna, cum suis viribus, moribus, fructibus. Quippe etiam terre de coelo disciplina est arbores vestire post spolia, flores denso colorare, herbas rursus imponere, exhibere eadem quae assumpta sunt semina; nec prius exhibere quam assumpta Mira ration, de fraudatrice servatrix, ut reedita intercipit, ut custodiat perdit, ut integret vitiatis, ut etiam ampli prius decoquit. Sic quidem uberrima et cultora restituit, quam exterminavit:...
the dead. Now the power of God is known unto all men, and therefore all men may infer from thence a possibility; but the will of God is not revealed unto all men, and therefore all have not an infallible certainty of the resurrection. For the grounding of which assurance, I shall shew that God hath revealed the determination of his will to raise the dead, and that he hath not only delivered that intention in his word, but hath also several ways confirmed the same.

Many of the places produced out of the Old Testament to this purpose will scarce amount to a revelation of this truth. The Jews insist upon such weak inferences out of the Law, as shew that the resurrection was not clearly delivered by Moses,* and in the Book of Job, where it is most evidently expressed, they acknowledge it not, because they will not understand the true notion of a Redeemer properly belonging to Christ. The words of Job are very express, "I know that my Redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth, and though after my skin worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh shall I see God." (Job xix. 25, 26.) Against the evidence of this truth there are two interpretations: one very new of some late opinionists, who understand this of a sudden restitution to his former temporal condition; the other more ancient of the Jews, who make him speak of the happiness of another life, without any reference to a resurrection. But that Job spake not concerning any sudden restitution, or any alteration of his temporal condition, is apparent out of the remarkable preface ushering in this expression, "O that my words were now written! O that they were printed in a book! That they were graven with an iron pen and lead, in the rock for ever!" (Ibid. 23, 24.) He desires that his words may continue as his expectation, that they may remain in the rock, together with his hope so long as the rock shall endure, even to the day of his resurrection. The same appeareth from the objection of his friends, who urged against him that he was a sinner, and concluded from thence that he should never rise again; for his sins he pleaded a Redeemer, and for his resurrection he sheweth expectation and assurance through the same Redeemer.†

* They produce several places out of Moses, which when the resurrection is believed, may in some kind serve to illustrate it, but can in no degree be thought to reveal so great a mystery. As because in the formation of man Moses useth the word נרא with two jobs, and in the formation of beasts נרא with but one; therefore the beasts are made but once, but man twice; once in his generation, and again in his resurrection. They strangely apprehend a promise of the resurrection, even in the malediction, "Dust thou art, and unto dust thou shalt return?" Gen. iii. 19. בדד אָדָם כָּל אָדָם בדָד אָדָם אל בָּדָד אָדָם. As if he had said, thou art now dust while thou livest, and after death thou shalt return unto this dust, that is, thou shalt live again as thou dost live. So from those words, Exod. xv. 1. נָרָזִיתוּנָרָז נָרָז יי they conclude the resurrection upon this ground, נָרָז יי is not said, he sang, but he shall sing, viz. after the resurrection in the life to come. With these and the like arguments did the Rabbins satisfy themselves; which was the reason that they gave so small satisfaction to the Sadducees, while they omitted that pregnant place in Job.

† This place is urged by St. Clement Romanus, the immediate successor of the apostles, in his epistle to the Corinthians, where instead of these words of the
It is farther confirmed by the expressions themselves, which
are no way proper for his temporal restitution: the first words,
I also know, denote a certainty and community, whereas the
blessings of this life are under no such certainty, nor did Job pretend to it, and the particular condition of Job admitted no
community, there being none partaker with him of the same
calamity; I know certainly and infallibly, whatsoever shall
become of my body at this time, which I know not, but this I
know, that I shall rise; this is the hope of all which believe in
God, and therefore this I also know. The title which he gives
to him on whom he depends, the Redeemer, sheweth that he
understands it of Christ; the time expressed denotes the futu-
nation at the latter day; the description of that Redeemer,
standing on the earth, representeth the Judge of the quick and
the dead; and seeing God with his eyes, declares his belief in
the incarnation. The Jewish exposition of future happiness to
be conferred by God, fails only in this, that they will not see in
this place the promised Messias; from whence this future
happy condition which they allow, would clearly involve a re-
surrection. Howsoever, they acknowledge the words of Daniel
to declare as much, "and many of them that sleep in the dust
of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to
shame and everlasting contempt." (Dan. xii. 2.)

If these and other places of the Old Testament shew that
God had then revealed his will to raise the dead, we are sure
of those of the New fully declare the same. Christ who called
himself "the resurrection and the life," (John xi. 25.) refuted
the Sadducess, and confirmed the doctrine of the Pharisees
as to that opinion. He produced a place out of the Law of
Moses, and made it an argument to prove as much, "As touch-
ing the resurrection of the dead, have ye not read that which
was spoken unto you by God, saying, I am the God of Abra-
ham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob? God is not
in sepulcris misierarum reconditi, ad ins-
peratum victoriam de terrae pulvere re-
surrexerunt, et de humo elevaverunt ca-
put, custodes legis resurrectes vitam aeternam, et prevaricatores in opprobrium sempiternum: ad hoc, where it is to be
observed, that he gives a probable gloss of the former part of the verse, but none at all of the latter, because it is not
consistent with his exposition of the for-
mer: for the which did rise from the
burden of the pressures under Antiochus,
did neither rise from thence to an eternal
life, nor to an everlasting contempt. Thus, I say, only the Gentiles did inter-
pret it, but now the Sociaius are joined
to them. So Volkelius urges: Quod in
precedentibus de Antiochi tempore aga-
tur, et resurrectio illa ad temporas qua-
I. xii. c. 11.

202
the God of the dead but of the living.’” (Matt. xxii. 31, 32.) With the force of which argument the multitude was astonished, and the Sadducees silenced. For under the name of God was understood a great benefactor, a God of promise, and to be their God, was to bless them and to reward them; as in them to be his servants and his people, was to believe in him, and to obey him. Now Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob had not received the promise which they expected, and therefore God after their death desiring still to be called their God, he thereby acknowledged that he had a blessing and a reward for them still, and consequently that he will raise them to another life, in which they may receive it. So that the argument of our Saviour is the same which the Jews have drawn from another place of Moses, “I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by the name of God Almighty, but by my name Jehovah was I not known unto them. Nevertheless I have established my covenant with them, to give them the land of Canaan, the land of their pilgrimage wherein they were strangers.” (Exod. vi. 3, 4)* It is not said, to give their sons, but to give them the land of Canaan; and therefore, because while they lived here, they enjoyed it not, they must live again, that they may receive the promise.

And as our blessed Saviour did refute the Sadducees out of the Law of Moses, so did St. Paul join himself unto the Pharisees in this particular, for being called before the council, and “perceiving that the one part were Sadducees and the other Pharisees,” one denying, the other asserting the resurrection, “he cried unto the council, Men and brethren, I am a Pharisee, the son of a Pharisee, of the hope and resurrection of the dead I am called in question;” (Acts xxiii. 6.) and answering before Felix, that they had “found no evil-doing in him, while he stood before the council,” he mentioned this particularly, “except it be for this one voice, that I cried standing among them, touching the resurrection of the dead I am called in question by you this day.” (Acts xxiv. 20, 21.)

It is evident therefore that the resurrection of the dead was revealed under the Law, that the Pharisees who sat in Moses’s chair did collect it thence, and believe it before our Saviour came into the world; that the Sadducees who denied it erred, “not knowing the Scriptures, nor the power of God;” (Matt. xxii. 29.) that our blessed Saviour clearly delivered the same truth, proved it out of the Law of Moses, refuted the Sadducees, confirmed the Pharisees, taught it the apostles, who followed him, confirming it to the Jews, preaching it to the Gentiles. Thus the will of God concerning the raising of the dead was made known unto the sons of men; and because God can

---

* Exod. vi. 4. It is not said to give you, but to give them. Whereby the resurrection of the dead appeared out of the law. R. Simai, in Perek. Helek. And therefore the Jews hold the resurrection for one of the foundations of the law of Moses. Exil. 22, 29. Tract. Sanhedrin. Moses Maim. Expl. c.
do whatsoever he will, and will certainly effect whatsoever he hath foretold, therefore we are assured of a resurrection by virtue of a clear revelation.

Beside, God hath not only foretold, or barely promised, but hath also given such testimonies as are most proper to confirm our faith in this particular prediction and promise. For God heard the voice of Elijah for the dead child of the widow of Sarepta, "and the soul of the child came into him again, and he revived." (1 Kings xvii. 22.) Him did Elisha succeed, not only in the same spirit, but also in the like power, for he raised the child of the Shunammite from death: (2 Kings iv.) nor did that power die together with him; for when they were burying a dead man, "they cast the man into the sepulchre of Elisha, and when the man was let down and touched the bones of Elisha, he revived and stood up on his feet." (2 Kings xiii. 21.) These three examples were so many confirmations, under the Law, of a resurrection to life after death; and we have three to equal them under the Gospel. When the daughter of Jairus was dead, Christ "said unto her, Talitha cumi, Damsel arise," and her spirit came again, and straightway the damsel arose." (Mark v. 41, 42. Luke viii. 55.) When he came "nigh to the gate of the city called Nain, there was a dead man carried out, and he came nigh and touched the bier, and said, Young man, I say unto thee, arise; and he that was dead sat up and began to speak." (Luke vii. 12. 14, 15.) Thus Christ raised the dead in the chamber and in the street, from the bed and from the bier, and not content with these smaller demonstrations, proceedeth also to the grave. When Lazarus had been "dead four days," and so buried that his sister said of him, "by this time he stinketh;" Jesus "cried with a loud voice, Lazarus, come forth, and he that was dead came forth." (John xi. 39. 43, 44.) These three evangelical resuscitations are so many preambulary proofs of the last and general resurrection; but the three former and these also come far short of the resurrection of him who raised these.

Christ did of himself actually rise, others who had slept in their graves did come from thence, and thus he gave an actual testimony of the resurrection. For "if Christ be preached that he rose from the dead (saith St. Paul to the Corinthians), how say some among you that there is no resurrection from the dead?" (1 Cor. xv. 12.) If it be most infallibly certain that one man did rise from the dead, as we have before proved that Christ did, then it must be as certainly false to assert that there is no resurrection. And therefore when the Gentiles did themselves confess that some particular persons did return to life after death,* they could notrationally deny the resurrec-

* There were not only certain persons under the Law and among the Jews, who were raised to life; but there were also histories amongst the Gentiles of several who rose to life after death. We mentioned before, one out of Plutarch, p. 394, who rose the third day, and Plato mentions another who revived the twelfth day after death: "Ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν τοῦ σώλου τεθνηκὼς ἐγείρθη, ἀλλ' ἔστιν ἡ δύναμις ἐκ τοῦ θανάτου ἄνευ ἀκινήτου ἀκινήτου.
tion wholly. Now the resurrection of Christ doth not only prove by way of example, as the rest who rose, but hath a force in it to command belief of a future general resurrection. For God hath "appointed a day in which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained, whereof he hath given an assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead" (Acts xvii. 31.) All men then are assured that they shall rise, because "Christ is risen." And "since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead. For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive." (1 Cor. xv. 20—22.)

This consequence of a future resurrection of the dead from that of Christ already past, either hath a general or particular consideration. In a general reference it concerneth all; in a more peculiar way it belongeth to the elect alone. First, It belongeth generally unto all men in respect of that dominion of which Christ at his resurrection did obtain the full possession and execution. "For to this end Christ both died and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living." (Rom. xiv. 9.) Now as "God is not the God of the dead, but of the living;" (Matt. xxii. 32.) so Christ is not the Lord of the dead, as dead, but as by his power he can revive them and rule them, when and in what they live. By virtue of this dominion entered upon at his resurrection "he must reign till he hath put all his enemies under his feet, and the last enemy that shall be destroyed is death," (1 Cor. xv. 25, 26.) and there is no destruction of death but by a general resurrection. By virtue of this did he declare himself after this manner to St. John, "I am he that liveth and was dead, and behold I am alive for ever more, Amen, and have the keys of hell and of death." (Rev. i. 18.) Thus we are assured of a general resurrection, in that Christ is risen to become the Lord of the dead, and to destroy death.

Secondly, Christ rising from the dead assures us of a general resurrection in respect of the judgment which is to follow. For as "it is appointed for all men once to die, so after death cometh judgment," (Heb. ix. 27.) and as Christ was raised that he might be Judge, so shall the dead be raised that they may be judged. As therefore God gave "an assurance unto all men," that he would judge the world "by that man, in that he raised him from the dead;" so by the same act did he also give an assurance of the resurrection of the world to judgment.

Now as the general resurrection is evidenced by the rising of Christ, so in a more special and peculiar manner the resurrection of the chosen Saints and servants of God is demon-
THE RESURRECTION OF THE BODY

strated thereby. For he is risen not only as their Lord and Judge, but as their Head, to which they are united as members of his body (for "he is the head of the body, the Church, who is the beginning, the first-born from the dead," Col. i. 18.); as the first-fruits, by which all the lump is sanctified and accepted, for "now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the first-fruits of them that slept." (1 Cor. xv. 20.) The Saints of God are endued with the Spirit of Christ, and thereby their bodies become the temples of the Holy Ghost; now as the promise of the Spirit was upon the resurrection of Christ, so the gift and possession of the Spirit is an assurance of the resurrection of a Christian. For "if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in us, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken our mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in us." (Rom. viii. 11.)

Thus God hath determined, and revealed that determination to raise the dead, and confirmed that revelation by the actual raiseing of several persons as examples, and of Christ as the highest assurance which could be given unto man, that the doctrine of the resurrection might be established beyond all possibility of contradiction. Wherefore I conclude that the resurrection of the body is, in itself considered, possible, upon general considerations highly probable, upon Christian principles infallibly certain.

But as it is necessary to a resurrection that the flesh should rise, neither will the life of the soul alone continuing amount to the reviviscence of the whole man, so it is also necessary that the same flesh should be raised again; for if either the same body should be joined to another soul, or the same soul united to another body, it would not be the resurrection of the same man. Now the soul is so eminent a part of man, and by our Saviour's testimony not subject to mortality, that it never entered into the thoughts of any man to conceive that men should rise again with other souls. If the spirits of men departed live, as certainly they do, and when the resurrection should be performed, the bodies should be informed with other souls; neither they who lived before then should revive, and those who live after the resurrection should have never been before. Wherefore being at the latter day we expect not a new creation but a restitution, not a propagation, but a renovation, not a production of new souls, but a reunion of such as before were separated, there is no question but the same souls should live the second life which have lived the first. Nor is this only true of our souls, but must be also made good of our bodies, those houses of clay, those habitations of flesh: as our bodies while we live are really distinguished from all other creatures, as the body of every particular man is different from the bodies of all other men, as no other substance whatsoever is vitally united to the soul of that man whose body it is while he liveth; so no substance of any other creature no bodv
any other man, shall be vitally reunited unto the soul at the resurrection.

That the same body, not any other, shall be raised to life, which died; that the same flesh which was separated from the soul at the day of death, shall be united to the soul at the last day; that the same tabernacle which was dissolved shall be reared up again; that the same temple which was destroyed shall be rebuilt, is most apparent out of the same word, most evident upon the same grounds upon which we believe there shall be any resurrection. “Though after my skin worms destroy my body (saith Job, xix. 26) yet in my flesh (in my flesh, shewing the reality, in my flesh, shewing the propriety and identity) shall I see God, whom I shall see for myself, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another,” or a stranger, eye.* "He that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken our mortal bodies;” (Rom. viii. 11.) after the resurrection our glorified bodies shall become spiritual and incorruptible, but in the resurrection of our mortal bodies, those bodies, by reason of whose mortality we died, shall be revived. “For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.” (1 Cor. xv. 53.)† But this corruptible and this mortal is the same body which dieth, because mortal; and is corrupted, because corruptible; the soul then, at the resurrection of that man which is made immortal, must put on that body which puttheth on incorruption and immortality.

The identity of the body raised from death is so necessary, that the very name of the resurrection doth include or suppose it; so that when I say there shall be a resurrection of the dead, I must intend thus much, that the bodies of men which live and are dead shall revive and rise again. For at the death of man nothing falleth but his body,‡ "the spirit goeth upward;"
THE RESURRECTION OF THE BODY. 569

(Eccles. iii. 21.) and no other body falleth but his own; and therefore the body, and no other but that body, must rise again, to make a resurrection. If we look upon it under the notion of reviviscency, which is more ordinary in the Hebrew language,* it proves as much; for nothing properly dieth but the body: the soul cannot be killed; and nothing can revive but that which dieth. Or to speak more punctually, the man falleth not in respect of his spirit, but of his flesh, and therefore he cannot be said to rise again but in respect of his flesh which fell: man dieth not in reference to his soul, which is immortal, but his body; and therefore he cannot be said to revive, but in reference to his body before deprived of life: and because no other flesh fell at his death, no other body died but his own; therefore he cannot rise again but in his own flesh, he cannot revive again but in his own body.

Again, the description of the place from whence the resurrection shall begin, is a sufficient assurance that the same bodies which were dead shall revive and rise again. They which ‘sleep in the dust of the earth,’ (Dan. xii. 2.) they which ‘are in the graves.’ (John v. 28.) shall hear the voice and rise: ‘the sea shall give up the dead which are in it, and death and the grave deliver up the dead which are in them.’† (Rev. xx.

---


---

* The Rabbins use sometimes רַעְשָׂךְ which is properly resurrectio, ανάστασις, according to that of our Saviour, T Tolkien euni; but more often they make use of רַעְשָׂךְ, which is reviviscencia, ανάστασις. And though they make a distinction sometimes between them, attributing the first to the wicked, the second to the just: yet it must not be so understood as if there could be a reviviscency without a resurrection, a רַעְשָׂךְ without a רַעְשָׂךְ, but that there is to the wicked a רַעְשָׂךְ which cannot so properly be called רַעְשָׂךְ, because they rise not to the happiness of eternal life.† This argument is so cogent, that the Socinians are forced to deny that Christ spake of the resurrection, affirming that the graves of ignorance and impiety are only there intended, and rising is nothing else but coming to the knowledge of the Gospel. Whereas Christ expressly speaks of bringing men to judgment, John v. 27. and divides those which are to come out of their graves into two ranks, neither of
13.) But if the same bodies did not rise, they which are in the dust should not revive: if God should give us any other bodies than our own, neither the sea nor the grave should give up their dead. That shall rise again which the grave gives up; the grave hath nothing else to give up but that body which was laid into it; therefore the same body which was buried, at the last day shall be revived.

The immediate consequent of the resurrection proveth the identity of the dying and rising body, “We must all appear before the judgment-seat of Christ, that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.” (2 Cor. v. 10.) That which shall be then received is either a reward or punishment, a reward for the good, a punishment for the evil, done in the body: that which shall receive the reward, and be liable to the punishment, is not only the soul but the body; it stands not therefore with the nature of a just retribution, that he which sinned in one body should be punished in another, he which pleased God in his own flesh should see God with other eyes. As for the wicked, God shall “destroy both their soul and body in hell;” (Matt. x. 28.) but they which “glorify God in their body and their spirit which are God’s,” (1 Cor. vi. 20.) shall be glorified by God in their body and their spirit; for they are both “bought with the same price,” (Ibid.) even the blood of Christ. The bodies of the Saints “are the members of Christ,” (1 Cor. vii. 15.) and no members of his shall remain in death: they are the “temples of the Holy Ghost,” (Ibid. 19.) and therefore if they be destroyed, they shall be raised again. For “if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in us,” as he doth, and by so dwelling maketh our bodies temples, “he which raised up Christ from the dead, shall also quicken our mortal bodies, by his Spirit that dwelleth in us.” (Rom. viii. 11.)

Furthermore, The identity of the dying and rising body will appear by those bodies which shall never rise, because they shall never die. This may be considered not only in the trans-

which can so be understood. The first are those which have done good, before they come out of the graves: these therefore could not be the graves of ignorance or impiety, from which no good can come. The second are such who have done evil, and so remain as evil-doers, and therefore cannot be said to have come forth out of the graves of ignorance or impiety, or to rise by the preaching of the Gospel to newness of life, because they are expressly said to come forth unto the resurrection of damnation.

* * * Quam absurdum, quam vero et iniquum; utrumque autem quem Deo indiguum, aliam substantiam operari, aliam mercede dispungi: ut haec quidem caro per martyriam laminetur, alia vero coronetur: item e contrario haec quidem caro in spur-
lations of Enoch and Elias,* but also in those whom Christ shall find alive at his coming, whom he shall not kill but change; "the dead in Christ shall rise first, then they which are alive, and remain, shall be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and so shall ever be with the Lord." (1 Thess. iv. 16, 17.) If those which are alive shall be caught up as they are alive with the same bodies, only changed into glorified and spiritual bodies, that is, with the same bodies spiritualized and glorified; certainly those which are dead shall rise out of their graves to life in the same bodies in which they lived, that they may both appear alike before the Judge of the quick and the dead. Otherwise the Saints which shall be with God and with the Lamb for evermore would be chequered with a strange disparity, one part of them appearing and continuing with the same bodies in which they lived, another part with others.

Lastly, Those examples which God hath been pleased to give us to confirm our faith in the resurrection, do at the same time persuade us that the same body which died shall rise again. For whether we look upon the three examples of the Old Testament, or those of the New,† they all rose in the same body before it was dissolved: if we look upon those which rose upon our Saviour's death, it is written that "the graves were opened, and many bodies of Saints which slept arose, and came out of their graves," (Matt. xxvii. 52, 53.) certainly the same bodies which were laid in. If then they were to us examples of the resurrection to come,‡ as certainly they were, then must they resemble in their substance after they lived again the substance in which all the rest shall rise. And being Christ himself did raise his own body, according to his prediction, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up," (John ii. 19.) and declared it to be his own body, saying, "Behold my hands and my feet that it is I myself," (Luke xxiv. 39.) being "he shall change our vile bodies that they may be fashioned like unto his glorious body;" (Phil. iii. 21.)§

* 'Enoch translatus est in carne, Elias carneus raptus est in celum; neculum mortui et paradisi jam coelum, habent quoque nubem quibus rapti sunt, quia translati.' S. Hier. Epist. 61. al. 33. ad Pammach. col. 324.
† Irene adv. Herc. l. v. c. 13.
‡ 'Post dicta Domini, facta etiam ejus quid sapere credamus, de capulis, de sepulcris, mortuos resuscitant? cui rei istud? Si ad simplicem ostentationem posse testatis, aut ad presentem gratiam redemptionis, non adeo magnum illi duem mortuorum susticare. Enimvero, si ad idem potius sequestrandum futuros resurrectiones, ergo et ilia corpora corporalibus praebere, de documenti sui forma.' Tertull. de Resur. Carm. c. 38. † At ego Deum malo decipere non posse, de fallacia somnii, infirmum et aliter documenta promisisse, quam tem dispositionis video situr: imo, ne si exemplum resurrectionis sine carne non vallat induciere, multo magis plenitudinem exempli in eadem substantia exhibere non possit. Nullum vero exemplum majus est eo, cujus exemplum est. Majus est autem, si animae cum corpore resuscitabuntur in documentum sine corpore resurrecti; ut tota hominis salus dimidix patrocinaretur: quando exemplorum conditionis istud potius expeteret, quod manu haberetur; animae dico solius resurrectionem, velut gustum carnis etiam resurrectura suo in tempore.' Ibid.
§ 'Espectantes in hujus morte et sanguine emundatos remissiisse peccatum concuruorum: resuscitatus nos ab eo in his corporibus, et in eadem carnis
it followeth that we shall rise in the same bodies as our Saviour did, that every particular person at the resurrection may speak the words which Christ then spake, "Behold, it is I myself." (Luke xxiv. 39.)

We can therefore no otherwise expound this Article, teaching the resurrection of the body, than by asserting that the bodies which have lived and died shall live again after death, and that the same flesh which is corrupted shall be restored; whatsoever alteration shall be made,* shall not be of their nature, but of their condition; not of their substance, but of their qualities. Which explication is most agreeable to the language of the Scriptures, to the principles of religion, to the constant profession of the Church, against the Origenists of old, and the Socinians of late.

Having hitherto proved the certainty of this Article, That there shall be a resurrection, and declared the verity and propriety of it, that it shall be a resurrection of the same body which was dead; we may now proceed farther to inquire into the latitude of the same, to whom the resurrection doth belong. And here we find a greater difference between the revelation of this truth under the Law and under the Gospel; Christ proved out of the Law that there should be a resurrection, but by such an argument as reacheth no farther than unto the people of God, because it is grounded upon those words, "I am the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob." (Matt. xxii. 32.) Job speaketh most expressly of the resurrection, but mentioneth no other than his Redeemer and himself. The place of Daniel, which was always accounted the most evident and uncontradicted testimony, though it deliver two different sorts of persons rising, yet it seems to be with some limitation, "Many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake." (xii. 2.) From whence the Jews most generally believed that some men should live again, and some should not; because it is written, many shall awake, but it is not written, all shall awake. Nay, some of them have gone so far by way of restriction, that they have maintained a resurrection of the just alone, according to that ancient saying accepted amongst them, that the sending of the rain is of the just and the unjust, but the resurrection of the dead is of the just alone.† Against which two restric-

qua sumus, sicut et ipse in eadem, qua natus et passus et mortuus est, resurrexit.* So we read in the Creed which by some is attributed to Adanausius, by others to Gregory Nazianzen: *Si ad exemplum Christi resurgamus qui resurrexit in carne, jam non ex exemplum Christi resurgamus, si non in carne et ipsi resurgamus.*

* *Ille est vera resurrectionis confessio, quae sic gloriam carni tribuit, ut non aulterat veritatem." S. Hieron. ep. 61. al. 98. ad Paul. col. 323. *Sum ergo its evidens, et (ut ita dicam) palpabile, et manu attrectandum nobis Christus dederit suae resurrectionis exemplum; ita aliquid insunt, ut alter se resurrecturum putet, quam resurrectit ille qui primus resurrectionis aditum patecit?" Ruff. Insept. in s. Hieron. l. 1. col. 524. *Nostri autem illud quoque recogitent, corpora eadem recepturas in resurrectione animas, in quibus deesserunt." Tertull. de Anima, c. 56.

† This is recorded in the Bereshit Rabba. Vide Maimonidis Exil. c. 10. Tract. Sanhed.
tions, by the light delivered in the Gospel, we shall deliver the latitude of this Article in these two propositions. First, The resurrection of the dead belongeth not to the just alone, but to the unjust also. Secondly, The resurrection of the dead belongeth not only to some of the just, but to all the just; not to some of the unjust only, but to all the unjust, even unto all the dead.

For the first, It is most evident not only out of the New, but also out of the Old Testament: the words of Daniel prove it sufficiently; for of those "many which shall awake, some shall rise to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt." But it is most certain that the just shall never rise to "shame and everlasting contempt:" therefore it is most evident that some shall awake and rise beside the just. The Jews themselves did understand and believe thus much, as appeareth by St. Paul’s apology to Felix: "But this I confess unto thee, that I have hope towards God, which they themselves also allow, that there shall be a resurrection of the dead both of the just and unjust." (Acts xxiv. 15.) The just shall rise to receive their reward, the unjust to receive their punishment; the first unto a resurrection called, in reference unto them, "the resurrection of life;" the second unto a resurrection named, in relation unto them, the "resurrection of damnation." (John v. 29.) For as there is a resurrection of the just, so there must also be a resurrection of the unjust: that as Christ said unto the charitable person, "Thou shalt be blessed, for thou shalt be recompensed at the resurrection of the just;" (Luke xiv. 14.) so it may be said to the wicked and uncharitable, 'Thou shalt be accursed, for thou shalt be recompensed at the resurrection of the unjust.' For there shall be a resurrection that there may be a judgment, and at the judgment there shall appear sheep on the right hand of the Son of man, and goats on the left: therefore they both shall rise; those, that they may receive that blessing, "Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world;" (Matt. xxv. 34.) these, that they may receive that sentence, "Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels." (Ibid. 41.) At that resurrection then, which we believe, there shall rise both just and unjust.

Secondly, As no kind of men, so no person, shall be excluded: whosoever dieth is numbered with the just or unjust. Adam the first of men shall rise, and all which come from him. "For as in Adam all died, so in Christ shall all be made alive." (1 Cor. xv. 22.) Christ is the Lord of the dead, and so hath a right by that dominion to raise them all to life; it is called the resurrection of the dead indefinitely, and comprehended them universally. "By man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead," (Ibid. 21.) and so the resurrection ade

* Ανάστασις ζωῆς and Ανάστασις θανάτου. The first is called Ανάστασις δικαίως, and therefore the second may as well be called Ανάστασις ἀδίκως.
ARTICLE XI.

quately answereth unto death. Christ shall destroy death, but if any one should be left still dead, death were not destroyed. The words of our Saviour are express and full, "The hour is coming, in which all that are in their graves shall hear his voice and shall come forth, they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life, and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation." (John v. 28, 29.) In the description of the judgment which followeth upon the resurrection, "when the Son of man shall sit upon the throne of his glory, before him shall be gathered all nations." (Matt. xxv. 32.) "We shall all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ," (Rom. xiv. 10.) and if so, the dead must all arise, for they are all fallen. "We must all appear before the judgment-seat of Christ, that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad;", (2 Cor. v. 10.) and before we all appear, the dead must rise that they may appear. This is the latitude of the resurrection; the resurrection of the dead is the resurrection of all the dead, or of all mankind.

Now this resurrection, as an object of our faith, is yet to come; and we are obliged to believe the futurition of it. There were heretics in the apostles' days who acknowledged a resurrection, but yet destroyed this Article, by denying the relation of it to the time, as "Hymeneus and Philetus, who erred concerning the truth, saying that the resurrection is past already, and so overthrow the faith of some." (2 Tim. ii. 17, 18.) To believe it already past, is to deny it; because it cannot be believed past, but by such an interpretation as must destroy it. As they which interpret this resurrection of the likeness of Christ's resurrection: that as he died and rose again, so we should die unto sin and live again unto righteousness, attributing all to the renovation of the mind, must deny the resurrection of the body.

Now, as we know the doctrine of the resurrection was first

† Nonnulli enim attendentes verba quae nunc dicit apostolus, Quos et unum sumus cum Christo, et resurrectionem cum eo; nec intelligentes quatenus dicantur, arbitrati sunt jam factam esse resurrectionem, nec ulium ulterius in fine temporis esse sperandam. Ex quibus est, inquit, Hymeneus et Philetus, qui circa veritatem aberraverunt, dixerunt resurrectionem jam factam esse. Idem apostolus eos arguens detestatur, qui tamen dicit nos resurrectione cum Christo. * S. August. Epist. 119. al. 53. ad Iunianarium, § 4. This was the heresy of the Seleuciani or Hermiani, as the same St. Augustin testifies: * Resurrectionem non putant futuram, sed quotidie fieri in generatione filiorum. Harv. 59. Thus Tertullian relates of some heretics in his time, who made the resurrection wholly allegorical, and yet pretended to believe a resurrection in the flesh, but understood it in this life at the baptismal renovation, and so past when they professed to believe it: "Exinde ergo, resurrectionem fide consequutos cum Domino esse, cum eum in baptismate induerint. Hoc demine ingenio etiam in colloquis sepe nostros deciper eum persuaserunt; quasi et ipsi resurrectionem carnem admittant. Vae, inquit, qui non in hac carne resurrectionerit; ne statim illae percutiant, si resurrectionem statim abuserint. Tacit autem secundum conscientiam suam hoc sentiunt, Vae, qui non, dum in carne esset, cognoverit arcana heretica; hoc enim est apud illorum resurrectionem. * Tertull. de Resur. c. 19.
THE RESURRECTION OF THE BODY

delivered to be believed as to come; so we are assured that it is not yet come since the doctrine of it was first delivered, and is to be believed as to come to the end of the world; because, as "Martha called it," it is the "resurrection at the last day." (John xi. 24.) Job who knew that his Redeemer lived, did not expect that he should stand upon the earth till "the latter day;" Christ hath no otherwise declared "his Father's will," than that "of all which he hath given him, he should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day." (John vi. 39.) The corn is sown and laid in the ground, and "the harvest is the end of the world." (Matt. xiii. 39.) We must not expect to rise from the dead till "the last trump." (1 Cor. xv. 52.) "The Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of an archangel, and with the trump of God," (1 Thess. iv. 16.) before "all that are in the graves shall hear his voice." (John v. 28.) God shall "judge the world," (Acts xvii. 31.) and therefore shall raise the world; but he will not raise them to that judgment till the end of the world.

Thus having demonstrated that the will of God hath been revealed that there should be a resurrection; that the resurrection which was revealed is the resurrection of the body; that the bodies which are to be raised are the same which are already dead or shall hereafter die; that this resurrection is not past, but that we which live shall hereafter attain unto it: I conceive I have declared all that is necessary by way of explication and confirmation of the truth of this Article.

The value of this truth, the necessity of this doctrine, will appear; first, in the illustration of the glory of God, by the most lively demonstration of his wisdom, power, justice, and mercy. God first created all things for Himself, and the resurrection is as it were a new creation. The wisdom and power of God are manifested in this acknowledgment, inasmuch as without infinite knowledge he could not have an exact and distinct comprehension of all the particles and individual dusts of all the bodies of all men; and without an infinite power he could not conjoin, cement, conglutinate, and incorporate them again into the same flesh. The mercy and justice of God are declared by the same profession; the mercy, in promising life after that death which we had so justly deserved; the justice, in performing that promise unto all true believers, and in punishing the disobedient with everlasting flames. "When ye see this (saith the prophet), your hearts shall rejoice, and your bones shall flourish like an herb; and the hand of the Lord shall be known towards his servants, and his indignation towards his enemies." (Isa. lxvi. 14.)

Secondly, It is necessary to profess the belief of the resurrection of the body, that we may thereby acknowledge the great and powerful work of our redemption, confessing that death could not be conquered but by death and that we could never
have obtained another life, had not the Saviour of the world “abolished death, and brought life and immortality to light through the Gospel.” (2 Tim. i. 10.) If Christ were not the life, the dead could never live; if he were not the resurrection, they could never rise. Were it not for him that “liveth, and was dead, and is alive for evermore,” had not he “the keys of hell and of death,” (Rev. i. 18.) we could never break through the bars of death, or pass the gates of hell. But he hath undertaken to vanquish our enemies, and our “last enemy to be destroyed is death?” (1 Cor. xv. 26.) that the prophecy (Hos. xiii. 14.) may be fulfilled, “Death is swallowed up in victory,” and we may cry out with the apostle, “Thanks be to God, who giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.” (1 Cor xv. 54. 57.)

Thirdly, The belief of this Article is necessary to strengthen us against the fear of our own death, and immoderate sorrow for the death of others. The sentence of death, passed upon us for our sins, cannot but affright and amaze us, except we look upon the suspension, relaxation, or revocation of it in the resurrection; but when we are assured of a life after death, and such a life as no death shall follow it, we may lay down our fears arising from corrupted nature, upon the comforts proceeding from our faith. The departure of our friends might overwhelm us with grief, if they were lost for ever; but the apostle will “not have us ignorant concerning those which are asleep, that we sorrow not even as others which have no hope.” (1 Thess. iv. 13.)

Fourthly, The belief of the resurrection hath a necessary reflection upon this life by way of preparation for the next, as deterring from sin, as encouraging to holiness, as comforting in afflictions. How can any man commit a deliberate sin while he thinks that he must rise and stand before the judgment-seat, and give an account, and suffer for ever the punishment due unto it? What pleasure can entice him, what inclination can betray him, for a momentary satisfaction, to incur an eternal rejection? How can we defile that body which shall never be raised to glory hereafter, except it here become the temple of the Holy Ghost? St. Paul, who hath delivered the doctrine, hath taught us by his own example what work is expected to be wrought upon our souls by it. “I have hope (saith he) towards God, that there shall be a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and unjust. And herein do I exercise myself to have always a conscience void of offence toward God and toward men” (Acts xxiv. 15, 16.) This is the proper work of a true belief, and a full persuasion of a resurrection; and he which is really possessed with this hope, cannot choose but purify himself; “always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as he knoweth that his labour is not in vain in the Lord.” (1 Cor. xv. 58.) This encourageth all drooping spirits; this sustaineth all fainting hearts; this sweeteneth all
present miseries; this lighteneth all heavy burdens; this encourageth in all dangers: this supporteth in all calamities.

Having thus discovered the truth of this Article, we may easily perceive what every man is obliged to believe, and understood to profess, when he confesseth a belief of the resurrection of the body; for thereby he is conceived to declare thus much; I am fully persuaded of this as of most necessary and infallible truth, that as it is appointed for all men once to die, so it is also determined that all men shall rise from death, that the souls separated from our bodies are in the hand of God and live, that the bodies dissolved into dust, or scattered into ashes, shall be recollected in themselves, and reunited to their souls, that the same flesh which lived before shall be revived, that the same, numerical bodies which did fall shall rise, that this resuscitation shall be universal, no man excepted, no flesh left in the grave, that all the just shall be raised to a resurrection of life, and all the unjust to a resurrection of damnation; that this shall be performed at the last day when the trump shall sound: and thus I believe the resurrection of the body.

ARTICLE XII.

And the Life Everlasting.

This last Article, though not to be found in all,* yet was expressed in many ancient Creeds:† in some by way of addition,

* Not in all; for divers ended with that of the resurrection, as appeared by Rufinus, who not only expounded the Aquilene Creed, but collated it with the Greek and Roman, and yet makes no mention of this Article, but concludes with that of the resurrection. 'Sed et ultimus iste semel qui resurrectionem carnis promuniet, summan totius perfectionis succineta brevitate conclusit.' Expos. in Symb. s. 40. And whereas he shews the custom of the Aquilene Church to make a cross upon their forehead at the naming of hujus carnis, he tells us elsewhere in his Apology against St. Jerome, that it was to conclude the Creed: 'Quo scribit frontem, ut mos est, in fine Symboh signaculo contingentes, et orae carnis hujus, videlicet quam omnium resurrectiof fatentes, omnem, seneatatem adversum nos hanc calumniadidit aditum praestrenus.' l. i. col. 354. In the same manner St. Jerome his contemporary: 'In Symbolo fidei et spiri nostre, quod ab apostolis traditum non scribatur in charta et atratnum, sed in tabulis cordis carnalis, post confessionem Trinitatis et unitatem Ecclesiae, omne Christiani dogmatibus sacramentum carnis resurrectione concluditur.' Epist. 61. al. 38. ad Pammach.

† Col. 323. So St. Chrysostom: Mitata, the apagryphian, topexmases jepamafon,£ojonwv kai fadirep, kai tov£ xereios, kai vevos tov, ev tov ojnenv kathpXiratos doymaton, kai tov, tov ev tov thel ppoepidvmev, ev'ta kai ayediva aBpTt£w, kelevrourg, thegyn 6i pi'teivon 6i' nekrwv anatstasv kai pinn tov, megax tpoep aBpTt£'w: meta' 6a a€ to diiyologwv, tov, metat tov, axHov, npte kanjyevon a€ tov, pexyn tov, ikpamafon 6ikxhov. Hom. 40. in 1 Cor. Su Maximus Taurinensis, after those words carnis resurrectionem, adds: 'hic religiosis nostrae finis, hac summam crendiri est.' Expos. Symb. And Venantius Fortunatus after the same words: summa perfectionis concluditur. l. xi. art. 1. And in the MS. set forth by the Bishop of Armagh, acpox anatstasv, and carnis resurrectionem are the last words.

‡ As Petrus Chrysologus expressly: 'Creedion ctam aternum; quia post resurrectionem nec bonorum finis est nec malorum. Signate vos.' Ser. 60. And again: 'Bene addidit, ctam aternum, ut se resurrecturum credaret, qui resurgent per ipsum, qui cum Deo Patre et Spiritu Sancto vivit et regnat.' Ser. 62. So Euthemon Uxamensis, and Eusebius Gallicanus. So we find Ser. de Temp. 131. et De Symb. ad Cathech. l. i. §. 16. 'Quomodo
and the life everlasting; in others by way of conjunction with the former, the resurrection of the body unto everlasting life. Upon this connexion with the former will follow the true interpretation of this concluding Article; for thereby we are persuaded to look upon it as containing the state of man after the resurrection in the world to come.

As therefore St. Paul hath taught us to express our belief of a "resurrection both of the just and unjust," (Acts xxiv. 15.) so after the resurrection we are to consider the condition of them both; of the one as risen to everlasting life, of the other as risen to everlasting punishment and contempit; and so those who first acknowledged this Article did interpret it.* Although therefore life everlasting, as it is used in the Scriptures, belongeth to the just alone, and is never mentioned otherwise than as a reward promised and given to them who fear and serve the Lord; yet the same words may be used to express the duration of any persons which live never to die again, whatsoever their state and condition in itself shall be. For as the resurrection of the dead is taken in the Scriptures for the happy and eternal condition which followeth after it, as when the apostle saith, "If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead;" (Phil. iii. 11.)† which he must needs be most certain


* As appeareth by those words of Chrysologus: 'Credimus vitam aeternam, quia post resurrectionem mortuorum finis est nee mortua.' Deum. 60.

† Though in this place it is not barely 

* As appeareth by those words of Chrysologus: 'Credimus vitam aeternam, quia post resurrectionem mortuorum finis est nee mortua.' Deum. 60.

† Though in this place it is not barely 

* As appeareth by those words of Chrysologus: 'Credimus vitam aeternam, quia post resurrectionem mortuorum finis est nee mortua.' Deum. 60.
to attain unto, who believed the resurrection of the just and unjust, and therefore if he had spoken of the resurrection in general, as it belongeth unto all, he needed not that expression, "If by any means," nor that which went before, "the fellowship of Christ's sufferings," for without them he should certainly rise from the dead; but he meant that resurrection which followeth upon the being "made conformable unto his death," which is a resurrection in conformity to the resurrection of Christ. As, I say, the resurrection of the dead is taken in the Scripture for everlasting happiness, and yet the same language is and may be used for the general resurrection of all men, even of such as shall be everlastingly unhappy; so the life everlasting, though used for a reward given only unto the elect, may yet be taken as comprehending the condition of the reprobate also, and understood barely for the duration of persons living.

All those then who shall rise from the dead shall rise to life, and after the resurrection live by a true vital union of their souls unto their bodies: and because that union shall never cease, because the parts united shall never be dissolved, because "it is appointed unto men once to die," (Heb. ix. 27,) and after their reviviscency never to die again, it followeth, that the life which they shall live must be an everlasting life.

To begin then with the resurrection to condemnation; the truth included in this Article, in reference unto that, is to this effect, that those who die in their sins, and shall be raised to life, that they may appear before the judgment-seat of Christ, and shall there receive the sentence of condemnation, shall be continued in that life for ever to undergo the punishment due unto their sins; in which two particulars are contained, the duration of their persons, and of their pains. For two ways this eternity may be denied: one, by a destruction or annihilation of their persons, with which their torments must likewise cease; the other, by a suspension or relaxation of the punishment, and a preservation of the persons, never to suffer the same pains again. Both of which are repugnant to the clear revelation of the justice of God against the disobedience of man.

Our first assertion therefore is, that the wicked after the day of judgment shall not be consumed or annihilated, but shall remain alive in soul and body to endure the torments to be inflicted upon them by the justice of God, for all the sins committed by them while they were in the body. They who of late oppose the eternal subsistence and misery of the wicked, strangely maintain their opinion, not as a position to be proved by reason, as some of the heathens did,† but as a truth deli-

vered in the Scriptures; as if the word it-self taught nothing but an annihilation of the enemies of God, and no lasting torment; as if all the threats and menaces of the justice and wrath of God were nothing else but what the scoffing atheist expects, that is, after death never to be again; or if they be, as it were in a moment to lose that being for ever. Because the Scripture speaks of them as of such as shall be destroyed, and perish, and die; therefore they will give that comfort to them here, that though their life in which they sin be short, yet the time in which they are to be tormented for their sins shall be shorter far. They tell us where the Scripture mentioneth destruction in hell, it speaks of perdition, but no torment there. In this sense will they understand those words of Christ (so full of terror in the true, so full of comfort to the wicked in their exposition), “Fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul; but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.” (Matt. x. 28.)* If this place speak, as those men would have it, of perdition only, not of cruciation, then will it follow that God is not able to cruciate and torment a man in hell; for there can be no other reason why it must be spoken of perdition only, excluding cruciation, but because he is able to annihilate, not to cruciate. No, certainly a man may be said to be destroyed, and perish, to be lost and dead, who is rejected, separated, and disjoined from God, the better and the nobler life of man; and that person so denominated may still consist, and be what in his own nature he was before, and live the life which doth consist in the vital union of his soul and body, and so subsisting undergo the wrath of God for ever. Nor shall any language, phrases, or expressions, give any comfort to the wicked, or strength to this opinion, if the same Scriptures, which say the wicked shall be destroyed, and perish, and die, say also that they shall be tormented with never-dying pains, as they plainly and frequently do.

“Depart from me, ye cursed,” shall the Judge eternal say to all the reprobates, “into everlasting fire;” and lest any should imagine that the fire shall be eternal, but the torments not, it followeth, “and these shall go away into everlasting punishment, but the righteous into life eternal.” (Matt. xxv. 41. 46.)† Now, if the fire be everlasting by which God punisheth the reprobates, if the punishment inflicted be also everlasting; then must the reprobates everlastingly subsist to endure that punishment, otherwise there would be a punishment inflicted and none endured, which is a contradiction. Now the life eternal may as

---

* Locus Matthaei x. 28. perditionem tantum animae in gehenna, non cruciatum denunciavit. Simulacra contra Meinserum. Igni aeterno illi Christi hostes, qui quidem sunt diabolus et angeli ejus (vel saltem quorum nomine isti quoque continentur) cum impius cruciabuntur, et ita delebantur. Credl. Com. in 1 Cor. c. xv.

† Quibuscunque enim dixerit Dominus, Discute a me, maledicti, in ignem perpetuum, isti erunt semper damnati: et quibuscunque dixerit, Venite, benedicti Patris mei, hi semper perciipient regnum, et in eo proficiunt semper. Iren. adv. Haeres. l. iv. c. 47.
well be affirmed to have an end, as the everlasting punishment, because they are both delivered in the same expression

Indeed the eternity of that fire prepared for the devil and his angels is a sufficient demonstration of the eternity of such as suffer in it; and the question only can be what that eternity doth signify. For, because some things are called in the Scriptures eternal which have but a limited or determined duration; therefore some may imagine the fire of hell to be in that sense eternal, as lasting to the time appointed by God for the duration of it. But as the fire is termed eternal, so that eternity is described as absolute, excluding all limits, prescinding from all determinations. The end of the burning of fire is by extinguishing, and that which cannot be extinguished can never end: but such is the fire which shall torment the reprobate; for he, "whose fan is in his hand, shall burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire;" (Matt. iii. 12. Luke iii. 17.) and hath taught us before, that "it is better to enter into life halt or maimed, rather than having two hands or two feet to be cast into everlasting fire, to go into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched;" (Matt. xviii. 8. Mark ix. 43. 45.) and hath farther yet explained himself by that unquestionable addition, and undeniable description of the place of torments, "where the worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched." (Mark ix. 44. 46.)† And that we may yet be farther assured that this fire shall be never extinguished, we read that "the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever," (Rev. xiv. 11.)‡ and that those which are "cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, shall be tormented, day and night for ever and ever;" (Rev. xx. 10.) which expression of day and night is the same with that which declareth the eternal

---

* Kai ἡπίσκευσαι αὐτῷ ἕνεκεν αἰώνιος, εἰ δὲ δίκαιος ἐν ξενοίς ἔχων Ἰνν. Matt. xxv. 46. 'Antiquus ille persuasor in membriis suis, id est, in mentibus iniquorum, futuras penas quasi certo fine determinat, ut eorum corruptiones extendat, et eo magis hic peccata non finiuntur, qui istuc affirmant peccatorum supplicia finienda. Sunt enim bunc etiam, qui plerumque peccatis suis potius finem neglectunt, quam habere quandoque finem futura super se judicant suscipiantur. Qui breviter respondemus, si quandoque finienda sunt supplicia reproborum, quandoque finienda sunt et gaudia beatorum: per quem etiam eni veritas dicat, Inunt hi in supplicium aeternum, justi autem in vitam aeternam. Si igitur hoc verum non est quod minatus est, neque est illud verum quod promissit.' S. Gregor. Moral. l. xxxiv. c. 12. † "Affirmamus te (animam) manere post vitæ dispassionem, et expectare diem judicii, praecipe meritis, aut cruciatibus destinari, aut refrigerio, utraque semper terna." Tertull. de Testim. Animae, c. 4. 'Deus itaque judicabit plebium, quius extremus, per sententiam aeternam tam supplicii quam frigiditatis.' Tertull. de Anima, c. 35. 'Quo produci a quo judicaturus sit sui suos cultus non clausit, ut sibi eum vitam laudem, atque etiam futurum tempus, et quod nobis judicium perpetuum probat, cum dissilient, cum devorentur, nunc quam tamen finiantur.' Tertull. de Pat. c. 12.

‡ Εἰς αἰώνια ὧν ἄρκετον ἀποθέλει τόπος, ἵνα μαθηματικὴν ἐπιστήμην ἐπὶ τὴν αἰώνιαν τὸν οὐκαπαρθῆναι, διὰτερα καὶ τὴν τοῦ ἁμαρτωλοῦ τερατία ἁμαρτίαν. Andreae Casari, ad locum.
happiness in the heavens, where "they rest not day and night saying, Holy, holy, holy: where they are before the throne of God, and serve him day and night in his temple." (Rev. iv. 8. vii. 15.) If then the fire, in which the reprobates are to be tormented, be everlasting; if so absolutely everlasting, that it shall never be quenched; if so certainly never to be quenched, that the smoke thereof shall ascend for ever and ever; if those which are cast into it shall be tormented for ever and ever (all which the Scriptures expressly teach); then shall the wicked never be so consumed as to be annihilated, but shall subsist for ever, and be coeternal to the tormenting flames. And so this language of the Scriptures proves not only an effect eternal, as annihilation may be conceived, but an eternal efficient never ceasing to produce the same effect, which cannot be annihilation, but cruciation only. And therefore the fire, which consumed Sodom and Gomorrah, bears no proportion with the flames of hell; because all men know that fire is extinguished, nor doth the smoke thereof ascend for ever and ever.

Neither doth this only prove the eternity of infernal pains, but clearly refute the only material argument brought against it, which is laid upon this ground, that the wicked after the resurrection shall be punished with death, and that a second death; and so they shall be no more, nor can in any sense be said to live or subsist. For, the enduring of this fire is that very death, and they are therefore said to die the second death, because they endure eternal torments. "He that overcometh shall not be hurt by the second death." (Rev. ii. 11.) it seems, that they which shall die that death shall be hurt by it; whereas if it were annihilation, and so a conclusion of their torments, it would be no way hurtful or injurious, but highly beneficial to them. But the living torments are the second death. For "death and hell were cast into the lake of fire, that is the second death. Whosoever was not found written in the book of life, was cast into the lake of fire." (Rev. xx. 14, 15.) this is the second death. The Jews before our Saviour's time believed there was a second death; and though it were not expressed in the oracles themselves which were committed to them, yet in the received exposition of them it was often mentioned,*

* The Chaldee paraphrase maketh often mention of it, as Deut. xxxiii. 6. "Let Reuben live and not die;" he expounded thus, "Let Reuben live in the life of the world, and not die the second death." So the Targum of Onkelos. The Jerusalem Targum more expressly, "Let Reuben live in this world, and let him not die the second death, which the wicked die in the world to come." So Isa. xiii. 14. "Surely this iniquity shall not be purged from you till ye die."
and that as the punishment of the wicked in the life to come; and what this punishment shall be, was in these words revealed to St. John: "But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone, which is the second death." (Rev. xxi. 8.) Now, if the part in the lake be the second death, if that part be a perpetual perdition in torment, as before it is proved, then to say that the wicked shall die the second death is not a confusion of their eternal being in misery, but an assertion of it, because it is the same thing with everlasting torments, but delivered in other terms.

And, if the pretence of death will not prove an annihilation, or infer a conclusion of torment, much less will the bare phrases of perdition and destruction; for we may as well conclude that whosoever says he is undone,* intends thereby that he shall be no more. Besides, the eternity of destruction in the language of the Scripture signifies a perpetual perdition, and duration in misery. For when Christ shall come to take "vengeance on them that know not God, and obey not the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ, they shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power." (2 Thess. i. 8, 9.) Wherefore I conclude, that the wicked shall rise to everlasting punishment, continuing both in soul and body under the wrath of God and the torments proceeding from it, never to be quitted of them by annihilation; which is our first assertion, against the covert doctrine of the Socinians.†

The second assertion teacheth us, that as the reprobates shall never fail to endure the torments due unto their sins; so the justice of God will never fail to inflict those torments for their sins. They shall never live to pay the uttermost farthing, everlasting burnings: quae 

*Γενεθέταυ δι οὐσί-

† I call it covert, because it was at first closely delivered by Socinus, and some of his brethren did profess themselves to be-scandalized at it, though he thought he had so delivered it that it should sooner he believed by his writings than perceived by them, as appeareth out of his sixth Epistle to Volkelius, who was offended at this doctrine, and seems never to have as-engaged to it: "Quod ais ea, in disputa-

tione mea cum Puccio, tum de Christiano-

orum resurrectione, tum de morte impri-

orum passim contineri, quae a multis sine

magno offendisse, tum nostris tum alienis,

legi non possi: scio equidem ista ibi contineri, sed, meo judicio, nec passim nec ita aperte (cavi enim istud quantum potu) ut quisquam vir pius facile offendi possit; adeo ut, quod nominatum attinet ad impiorum mortem, in quo dogmate majus est multo offensionis pericum, ea potius ex iis colligi possit, quae ibi disputantur, quam expresse literis consignata exset; adeo ut Lector, qui alioqui sentiantiam meam adversus Puccium de mortalitate primum hominum, qua toto libro agitatur, quaque ob non paucos quos habet fautores, parum aut nihil offensionis parere potest, probandum censeat, prius censeat doctrinam istam sibi jam persuasa-

sam esse quam suaderi animadverterat.' Against this, Germanus, patriarch of Constantinople, in his defence of Gregory Nyssen, shewed from the words of Christ, the apostles, prophets, and the fathers, άποτέλεσμα τον των δικαιων δικαιωσαν
tiota, uto και τω τω άμαρτουλών δικαι-

they shall never come to the days of refreshment who are cast into perpetual burnings. One part of their misery is the horror of despair; and it were not perfect hell if any hope could lodge in it. The favour of God is not to be obtained where there is no means left to obtain it; but in the world to come there is no place for faith, nor virtue in repentance. If there be now such a vast distance between the tormenting flames and Abraham's bosom, that none could pass from one to the other, what impossibility must there be when the final sentence is passed upon all! As certainly as no person once received into the heavenly mansions shall ever be cast into outer darkness; so certainly no one which is once cast into the fire prepared for the devil and his angels shall ever enter into their Master's joy. As the tree falleth, so it lieth: there is no change to be wrought in man within those flames, no purgation of his sins, no sanctification of his nature, no justification of his person, and therefore no salvation of him. Without the mediation of Christ no man shall ever enter into heaven, and when he hath "delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father," (1 Cor. xv. 24.) then shall the office of the Mediator cease.

So groundless was the opinion of Origen, who conceived that after some number of years the damned should be released from their torments, and made partakers of the joys of heaven, or at least try their fortunes in such regions of the World as he conceived should be reserved for their habitation. For he may as well imagine that Christ shall be born and die again (who being risen, dieth not, Rom. vi. 9.) as that any person being condemned to the flames for contemning of his death, should ever come to live again, and by believing in the death of Christ to be after saved. For certainly their condition is unalterable, their condemnation is irreversible, their torments inevitable, their miseries eternal. As they shall not be taken from their punishment by annihilation of themselves, which is our first; so the punishment shall not be taken off them by any compassion upon them, which is our second assertion.

To conclude this branch of the Article, I conceive these certain and infallible doctrines in Christianity: That the wicked after this life shall be punished for their sins, so that in their punishment there shall be a demonstration of the justice of God revealed against all unrighteousness of men. That to this end they shall be raised again to life, and shall be judged and condemned by Christ, and delivered up under the curse, to be tormented with the devil and his angels. That the punishment which shall be inflicted on them shall be proportionate to their sins, as a recompense of their demerits, so that no man shall suffer more than he hath deserved. That they shall be tormented with a pain of loss, the loss from God, from whose presence they are cast out, the pain from themselves, in a despair of enjoying him, and regret for losing him. That they farther shall be tormented with the pain of sense inflicted
on them by the wrath of God which abideth upon them, represented unto us by a lake of fire. That their persons shall continue for ever in this remediless condition, under an everlasting pain of loss, because there is no hope of heaven, under an eternal pain of sense, because there is no means to appease the wrath of God which abideth on them. Thus the Athanasian Creed, ‘They that have done good shall go into life everlasting, and they that have done evil into everlasting fire.’

The next relation of this Article to the former, is in reference to the resurrection of the just; and then the life everlasting is not to be taken in a vulgar and ordinary sense,* but raised to the constant language of the Scriptures, in which it signifieth all which God hath promised, which Christ hath purchased, and with which man shall be rewarded in the world to come.

Now this life eternal may be looked upon under three considerations; as initial, as partial, and as perfectional. I call that eternal life initial, which is obtained in this life, and as it were an earnest of that which is to follow: of which our Saviour spake, "be that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.” (John v. 24.) I call that partial, which belongeth, though to the nobler, yet but a part of man, that is, the soul of the just separated from the body. I dispute not whether the joys be partial as to the soul, I am sure they are but partial as to the man. For that life consisteth in the happiness which is conferred on the soul departed in the fear, and admitted to the presence of God. St. Paul had a “desire to depart and to be with Christ;” (Phil. i. 23.) he was “willing rather to travel and be absent from the body, and to be present and at home with the Lord.” (2 Cor. v. 8.) And certainly where St. Paul desired to be when he departed, there he then was, and there now is, and that not alone, but with all them which ever departed in the same faith with him, and that is with Christ who sitteth at the right hand of God. This happiness which the Saints enjoy between the hour of their death and the last day, is the partial life eternal. Thirdly, I call that perfectional, which shall be conferred upon the elect immediately after the blessing pronounced by Christ, "Come, ye blessed children of my Father, receive the kingdom

* Eam quippe vitam aeternam dicimus, ubi est sine fine felicitas. Nam si anima in peenis vivit aeternis, quibus et ipsi spiritus cruciabantur immundi, mors illa potius aeterna dicenda est, quam vita. Nulla quippe major et peior est mors, quam ubi non moritur mors.” S. August. de Civit. Del., l. vi. c. 12. Quia vita aeterna ab his, qui familiaritatatem non babent cum Scripturis sanctis, potest accipi etiam pro malorum vita; vel secundum quosdam etiam philosophos, propter animae immortalitatem; vel etiam secundum fidem nostram, propter peinas internumabilis impiorum, qui utique in aeternum cruciari non poterunt, nisi etiam viscerint in aeternum; perfecto finis Civitatis hujus, in quo summum habebit bonum, vel pax in vita aeterna, vel vita aeterna in pace dicendus est, ut facilius ab omnibus possit intelligi.” Ideœ, l. xix. c. 11.
prepared for you from the foundation of the world." (Matt. xxv. 34.)

This eternal life is to be considered in the possession, and in the duration: in the first, as it is life; in the second, as it is eternal. Now this life is not only natural, that is, the union of the soul to the body, which is the life of the reprobate; but spiritual, which consisteth in the union of the soul to God, as our Saviour speaks, "He that hath the Son hath life, and he that hath not the Son hath not life." (1 John v. 12.) And it is called after an especial manner life, because of the happiness which attendeth it: and therefore to understand that life is to know, so far as it is revealed, in what that happiness doth consist.

To begin with that which is most intelligible; the bodies of the Saints, after the resurrection, shall be transformed into spiritual and incorruptible bodies. The flesh "is sown in corruption, raised in incorruption; sown in dishonour, raised in glory; sown in weakness, raised in power; sown a natural body, raised a spiritual body." (1 Cor. xv. 42—44.) This perfecter alteration shall be made by the Son of God, "who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself." (Phil. iii. 21.) Thus, when we come into that other world, the world of spirits, even our bodies shall be spiritual.

As for the better part of man, the soul, it shall be highly

* * * Dass vita sunt, una corporis, altera animae; etsi vita corporis anima, ita vita animae Deus. Quo modo si anima deserat, moritur corpus; sic anima moritur, si deserat Deus." S. August. in Psalm. 70. Sermon. ii. §. 3

† For life is taken for happiness, and to live for being happy. Among the Greeks and Latins, vi in and vivere were taken for living a cheerful and merry life, as "Vivamus, mea Lesbia," in Catullus, Carmin. v. 1. and in Martial. i. i. epigr. 10. ver. 12.

"Sera nimis vita est crastina, vive hodie." And as it is an old inscription, annc dium vivimus vivamus, and in the con- vivial wish, Zephyr, mentioned by Dio in the life of Commodus, i. xxxii. so in the language of the Scriptures, and a reli- gious notion, they signify a happy and a blessed life: as 1 Sam. x. 21. JPH 71. Let the king live, is translated by the Chaldee paraphrast, לולק גוד Let the king prosper. And when David sent unto Nabat, he said, "Thus shall ye say to him: that liveth in prosperity," which is in the original: (1 Sam. xxv. 6.) nothing but "?J. So the Psalmist is to be understood, Psalm. lix. 32. "The humble shall see this and be glad, and your heart shall live that seek God." And St. Paul, 1 Thess. iii. 8. "Or. vi. RV, inRV ευαγγελία στρατεύει τον Κύριον. Thus life of itself is often taken in the Scriptures for a happy and glorious life, even that which is eternal, as St. Augustin observeth upon these words of the Psalmists: "Vivast mihi miserations tuae et vivam: Tuca eum vere vivam, quando nihil potem timere me mortuar. Ipsa eum et sine ullo additamentino dicitur vita, nec intellegitur nisi externa et beata, taquam sola dicenda sit vita, in cujus comparatione ista quan ducimus, mors potius sit appellandc quam vita; quade illeus est in evangello, Si vis venire ad vitam, serva mandata. Namquid addi- dit, aternam vel beatam? Item de resur- rectione carnis cum loqueretur. Qui bene fecerunt, inquit, in resurrectionem vitæ; neque hic aut, aeterna vel beata. Sic et hic, Veniaste, inquit, misera tiuples tuae, et vivam: Neque hic aut, in aternam vi- vam, vel beatam vitam; quasi alii non sit vivere quam sine ullo fine, et sine sola miseria viventer." In Psalm. 118. sermon. 19. §. 4. Thus St. Augustin. And again. "Non est vera vita, nisi qui feliciter vi- vitur: nec vera incorruptio, nisi qui salut nulllo dolore corrumputur." Euchir. de Fid. ad Laurent. c. 92.
exalted to the utmost perfection in all the parts or faculties thereof. The understanding shall be raised to the utmost capacity, and that capacity completely filled. "Now we see through a glass darkly, but then face to face; now we know but in part, but then shall we know even as also we are known." (1 Cor. xii. 12.) And this even now "we know, that when God shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is." (1 John iii. 2.) Our first temptation was, that we should be like unto God in knowledge, and by that we fell; but being raised by Christ, we come to be truly like him, by knowing him as we are known, and by seeing him as he is. Our wills shall be perfected with absolute and indefective holiness, with exact conformity to the will of God, and perfect liberty from all servitude of sin: they shall be troubled with no doubtful choice, but with their radical and fundamental freedom shall fully embrace the greatest good.* Our affections shall be all set right by an unalterable regulation, and in that regularity shall receive absolute satisfaction; and all this shall be effected, that we may be thereby made capable, and then happy by a full fruition.

To this internal perfection is added a proportionately happy condition, consisting in an absolute freedom from all pain, misery, labour, and want; an impossibility of sinning and offending God; an hereditary possession of all good, with an unsplicable complacency and joy flowing from it, and all this redounding from the vision and fruition of God: this is the life.

And now the duration of this life is as necessary as the life itself, because to make all already mentioned amount unto a true felicity, there must be added an absolute security of the enjoyment, void of all fear of losing it, or being deprived of it. And this is added to complete our happiness, by the adunction of eternity. Now that this life shall be eternal, we are assured who have not yet obtained it, and they much more who do enjoy it. He which hath purchased it for us, and promised it unto us, often calleth it eternal life: it is described as a "continuing city;" (Heb. xiii. 14.) as "everlasting habitations," (Luke xvi. 9.) as a "house eternal in the heavens;" (2 Cor. v. 1.) it is expressed by "eternal glory." (1 Pet. v. 10.) "eternal salvation," (Heb. v. 9.) by an "eternal inheritance," (Ibid. ix. 15.) "incor-

---

* "Sicut prima immortalitas fuit, quam peccando Adam perdidit, posse non mori, novissima erit non posse mori; ita primum liberum arbitrium posse non peccare, novissimum non posse peccare. Sic enim erit inamissibilis voluntas pietatis et aequitatis, quomodo est felicitatis. Nam utique peccando nec pietatem nec felicitatem tenuimus, voluntatem vero felicitatis nec perdita felicitate perdiderimus. Certe Deus usque nunquam quoniam peccare non potest, ideo liberum arbitri-
riptible, undefiled, and that faleth not away;" (1 Pet. i. 4.) by "the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ." (2 Pet. i. 11.) And lest we should be discouraged by any short or lame interpretation of eternity, it is farther explained in such terms as are liable to no mistake. For our Saviour hath said, "if any man keep my saying, he shall never see death." (John viii. 51.) And "whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall not die." (Ibid. xi. 26.) When "God shall wipe away all tears from our eyes, there shall be no more death;" (Rev. xxi. 4.) and where there is life and no death, there must be everlasting life: which is expressed by St. Paul by way of opposition, calling it "life and immortality," and that together with the abolition of death, saying that "our Saviour Jesus Christ hath abolished death, and hath brought life and immortality to light through the Gospel." (2 Tim. i. 10.)

The belief of this Article is necessary (as to the eternity of torment) to deter us from committing sin, and to quicken us to holiness of life, and a speedy repentance for sin committed. "For the wages of sin is death;" (Rom. vi. 23.) nothing can bring us to those everlasting flames but sin, no sin but that which is unrepented of; nothing can save that man from the never-dying worm, who dieth in his sins; and no other reason can bring him thither, but because he sinned and repented not. They which imagine the pains inflicted for sin to be either small or short,* have but a slender motive to innocence or repentance; but such as firmly believe them sharp and endless, have by virtue of that faith within themselves a proper and natural spur and incitement to avoid them: for who can "dwell with everlasting burnings?" (Isa. xxxiii. 14.)

Secondly, The belief of eternal pains after death is necessary to breed in us a fear and awe of the great God, a jealous God, a consuming fire, a God that will not be mocked; and to teach us to tremble at his word, to consider the infinity of his justice, and the fierceness of his wrath, to meditate on the power of his menaces, the validity of his threats, to follow that direction, to embrace that reduplicated advice of our Saviour, "I will forewarn you whom ye shall fear; fear him, which after he hath killed, hath power to cast into hell; yea, I say unto you, fear him." (Luke xii. 5.) And that exclusively of such fear as concerns the greatest pains of this life, which the martyrs undervalued out of a belief of eternal torments.†

* Tertullian recounting the advantages of the Christians towards innocence and holiness of life, which the heathens had not: "Reccogitate etiam pro brevitate simplici iujustiti, non tamen ultra mors remansit. Sic et Epicurus omnem cruciacionem dolore magnum spectavit, modo cum quem contemplabam prostraverat, magnum vero, non distumum. Enim vero nos qui sub Deo omnium speculatore dispungimus, quique eternam ab eo paenam providemus, merito soli innocentia occurrerit, et pro scientia plenitudine, et pro latebrarum difficultate, et pro magnitudine cruciatus, non disturni, verum sempiterni, eum timentes, quem tineere debebit et ipse qui timentes judicat, Deum, non Proconsulem, timentes." Apolog. c. 43.

† So Polycarpus the Martyr answered
Thirdly, This belief is necessary to teach us to make a fit estimate of the price of Christ's blood, to value sufficiently the work of our redemption, to acknowledge and admire the love of God to us in Christ. For he which believeth not the eternity of torments to come, can never sufficiently value that ransom by which we were redeemed from them, or be proportionately thankful to his Redeemer, by whose intervention we have escaped them. Whereas he who is sensible of the loss of heaven and the everlasting privation of the presence of God, of the torments of fire, the company of the devil and his angels, the vials of the wrath of an angry and never-to-be-appeased God, and hopeth to escape all these by virtue of the death of his Redeemer, cannot but highly value the price of that blood, and be proportionably thankful for so "plenteous a redemption." (Psal. cxxx. 7.)

Again, As this Article followeth upon the resurrection of the just, and containeth in it an eternal duration of infinite felicity belonging to them, it is necessary to stir us up to an earnest desire of the kingdom of heaven, and that righteousness to which such a life is promised, "I will now turn aside and see this great sight," said Moses, (Exod. iii. 3.) when he saw the burning bush. "It is good for us to be here," said St. Peter, (Matt. xviii. 4.) when he saw our Saviour transfigured in the mount; how much more ought we to be inflamed with a desire of the joys of heaven, and that length of days which only satisfieth by its eternity, to a careful and constant performance of those commands to which such a reward is graciously promised! For as all our happiness proceedeth from the vision of God, so we are certain that without holiness no man shall see him.

Secondly, This belief is necessary to take off our inclinations and desires from the pleasures and profits of this life; to breed in us a contempt of the world, and to teach us to despise all things on this side heaven; to "set our affections on things above, not on things on the earth, considering we are dead, and our life is hid with Christ in God." (Col. iii. 2, 3)

the Proconsul threatening to consume him with fire: Πῦρ ἄτελέος τῷ πρῶτῳ ἄρας καθίστασιν καὶ μετ' αὐτῶν διήγεται σθένωμαι, Ἀγρίας γὰρ τῷ τετράκυκλῳ καθίστασιν καὶ αἰχμάς καταστέπαι τὸν ἐπίθετον τηρήσωμαι πόρον. Epist. ad Smyrn. Ecrius, c. 11.*


* Nemo vitam æternam, incorruptibilem inmortalitatem desiderat, nisi eum vitae luogus temporalis, corruptibilem, mortalitatem, præmitat." S. August. Hom. 50, al. Serm. 351. § 3.
ARTICLE XII.

For "where our treasure is, there will our hearts be also." (Matt. vi. 21.) Therefore we must forget "those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before, press towards the mark, for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus." (Phil. iii. 13, 14.)

Thirdly, An assent unto this truth is necessary to encourage us to take up the cross of Christ, and to support us under it, willingly and cheerfully to undergo the afflictions and tribulations of this life, reckoning with the apostle, "that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us:" (Rom. viii. 18.) and knowing that "our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory." (2 Cor. iv. 17.) And this knowledge is not to be obtained, this comfort is not to be expected, except "we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen; for the things which are seen are temporal, but the things which are not seen are eternal." (Ibid. 18.)

And now having thus showed the propriety, proved the verity, and declared the necessity, of this Article, we may fully instruct every Christian how to express his belief in the last object of his faith, which he may most fitly thus pronounce: I do fully and freely assent unto this, as unto a most necessary and infallible truth, that the unjust after their resurrection and condemnation shall be tormented for their sins, in hell, and shall be so continued in torments for ever, as neither the justice of God shall ever cease to inflict them, nor the persons of the wicked cease to subsist and suffer them: and that the just after their resurrection and absolution shall as the blessed of the Father obtain the inheritance, and as the servants of God enter into their Master's joy, freed from all possibility of death, sin, and sorrow, filled with all conceivable and inconceivable fulness of happiness, confirmed in an absolute security of an eternal enjoyment, and so they shall continue with God and with the Lamb for evermore. And thus I believe THE LIFE EVERLASTING.

END OF THE EXPOSITION OF THE CREED.
APPENDIX.

SYMBOLUM S. IRENÆI.

Ex. 1. i. c. 10. adv. Heres.

Ἡ μὲν γὰρ Ἑκκλησία, καὶ περὶ καὶ οἳς τῆς οἰκουμενῆς ἦς περατῶν τῆς γῆς διασταρμένη, παρὰ τῶν ἀποστόλων καὶ τῶν ἑκάστων μαζί προσπλαξόμεθα τήν. Εἰς ἔνα Θεόν, Πατέρα παντοκράτορα, τῶν πατομοκτόνων καὶ τῶν ἑκάστων καὶ πάντα τὰ ἐν αὐτοῖς πίστειν. Καὶ εἰς ἕνα Χριστὸν Ἰησοῦν, τὸν Υἱὸν τοῦ Θεοῦ, τὸν σαρκωθέντα ὑπὲρ τῆς ἁμαρτίας σωτηρίας. Καὶ εἰς Ὑιοῦ ἁγίου, τὸ διὰ τῶν προφητῶν κεκηρυχόμενα τὰς οἰκουμενίας, καὶ τὰς ἔλευσες, καὶ τὴν ἐκ παρθένου γέννησιν, καὶ τὸ πάσος, καὶ τὴν ἐγερασίαν ἐκ νεκρῶν, καὶ τὴν ἑσαρκίαν εἰς τοὺς οὐρανοὺς ἀναλήψαντος του ὑματισμοῦ Χριστοῦ Ἰησοῦ τοῦ Κυρίου Ἱμιὼν, καὶ τὴν ἐκ τῶν οὐρανῶν ἐν τῇ ὑστῷ τοῦ Πατρὸς παρασκευάζειν αὐτοῦ, ἐτέ τὸ ἀνακεφαλαίωσασθαι τὰ πάντα, καὶ ἀναστησάμενα πᾶσαν σάρκα πάσης ἀνθρώπων τιται, ἐν Ἐρησιοῦ Ἰησοῦ τοῦ Κυρίου Ἱμιὼν, καὶ θεός, καὶ Σωτήρ, καὶ Βασιλεία, κατὰ τὴν εὐδοκίαν τοῦ Πατρὸς τοῦ ἀοράτου, πάν γώνια καὶ ἐκ παρθένου ἐκ πιστεύσιν καὶ καταξίωσεν, καὶ πάσα γλώσσα ἐξοικουμένη αὐτῷ, καὶ κρίσιν δικάιων ἐν τοῖς πάσης ποιήσας τὰ μὲν πνευματικὰ τῆς σωτηρίας, καὶ ἀγγελιαὶ παραφθηκότας καὶ ἐν ἀποστασίᾳ γεγονότας, καὶ τοὺς ἀσεβείς καὶ ἁδικοὺς καὶ ἀνωμοίους καὶ βλασφήμους τῶν ἀνθρώπων, εἰς τὸ αἰῶνιον τὸ πιὸ πέμψας τοῖς ἐτί δικάιοις καὶ φόροις καὶ τὰς εὐτολίς αὐτοῦ τετεθηκότας καὶ ἐν τῇ ἀγάπῃ αὐτοῦ εἰδαμενοκτοί, τοὺς μὲν ἀπ᾿ ἀρχῆς, τοὺς δὲ τῷ μετανοοίᾳ, τῇ ἔνα Καιρόν ἀναφορίσεται, καὶ δόξαν αἰώνιαν περιποιήσῃ. 

SYMBOLE TERTULLIANI.

Ex lib. de Virg. veia. c. 1.

Regula quidem fidei una omnino est, sola immobiles et irreformabilis, credendi scilicet,

In unicum Deum omnipotentem, mundi conditorem: Et Filium ejus Jesum Christum, natum ex Virgine Maria, crucifixum sub Pontio Pilato, tertia die resuscitatum a mortuis, receptum in coelis, sedentem nunc ad dexteram Patris, venturum judicare vivos et mortuos, per carnis etiam resurrectionem.

Ex lib. de Praecept. adv. Haretic. c. 13.

Regula est autem fidei, ut jam hinc quid credamus profiteamur, illa scilicet qua creditur,
Unum omnino Deum esse, nec alium prater mundi conditorem, qui universa de nihil produserit, per Verbum suum primo omnium emissum: Id Verbum Filium ejus appellatum, in nomine Dei varie visum Patriarchis, in Prophetis semper auditum, postremo delatum ex Spiritu Dei Patris et virtute in Virginem Mariam, carnem factum in utero ejus, et ex ea natum hominem et esse Jesum Christum; exinde praeicasse novam legem et novam promissionem regni coelorum, virtutes fecisse; fixum cruci; tertia die resurrexisse; in caelos ereptum sede ad dexteram Patris; misisse vicariam visum Sancti qui credentes agat; venturum cum claritate, ad sumendos sanctos in vitae aeternae et promissorum coelestium fructum, et ad profanos judicandos igni perpetuo, facta utriusque partis resuscitatione cum carnis resurrectione.

Ex lib. adv. Praxean, c. 2.

Nos et semper, et nunc magis ut instructiores per Paracletum deductorem sc. omnis veritatis,

Unicum quidem Deum credimus: Sub hac tamen dispensatione, quam oikovupiat dicimus, ut unici Dei sit et Filius Sermo ipsius, qui ex ipso processerit, per quem omnia facta sunt, et sine quo factum est nihil; hunc missum a Patre in Virginem, et ex ea natum hominem et Deum, filium hominis et Filium Dei, et cognominatum Jesum Christum; hunc passum, hunc mortuum et sepultum secundum Scripturas, et resuscitatum a Patre, et in caelos resumptum, sede ad dexteram Patris, venturum judicare vivos et mortuos; qui exinde miserit secundum promissionem suam a Patre Spiritum Sanctum Paracletum, sanctificatem eorum, qui credunt in Patrem et Filium et Spiritum Sanctum.

SYMBOLUM ORIGENIS.


Species vero eorum, quae per prædictationem apostolicam manifeste traduntur, istæ sunt:

Primo, quod unus Deus est, qui omnia creavit atque componuit, quique ex nullus fecit esse universa, Deus a prima creatura et conditione mundi omnium justorum, Deus Adam, Abel, Seth, Enos, Enoch, Noe, Sem, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, xii. Patriarcharum, Moysis, et Prophetarum: Et quod hic Deus in novissimis diebus, sicut per prophetas suos ante promiserat, misit Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum, primo quidem vocatum Israel, secundo vero Gentes post perfidiam populi Israel. Hic Deus justus et bonus, Pater Domini nostrri Jesu Christi, legem et prophetas et evangelia ipse deductit, qui et apostolorum Deus est et veteris et novi Testamenti
APPENDIX. 593

Tum deinde quia Jesus Christus ipse qui venit, ante omnem creaturam natus ex Patre est. Qui, cum in omnium conditione Patri ministret (per ipsum enim omnia facta sunt), novissimis temporibus seipsum exinaniens homo factus est; incarntaus est cum Deus esset, et homo mansit quod Deus erat. Corpus assumpsit nostro corpore simile, eo solo differentes quod natum ex Virginie de Spiritu Sancto est. Et quoniam hic Jesus Christus natus et passus est in veritate et non per imaginem, communi hac morte vere mortuus est; vere enim a mortuis resurrexit, et post resurrectionem conversatus cum discipulis suis assumptus est. Tum deinde honore ac dignitate Patri ac Filio sociatum tradiderunt Spiritum Sanctum. In hoc non jam manifeste discernitur, utrum natus an innatus. Sed inquirenda jam ista pro viribus sunt de sacra Scriptura et sagaci perquisitione investiganda. Sane quod iste Spiritus Sanctus unumque sanctorum vel propheta-rum vel apostolorum inspiravit, et non alius spiritus in veteribus, aliud vero in his qui in adventu Christi inspirati sunt, manifestissime in ecclesiis prædicatur. Post hoc jam quod anima substantiam vitamque habens propriam, cum ex hoc mundo discesserit, et pro suis meritis dispensabit, sive vitæ æterne ac beatitudinis hæreditate potitura, si hoc ei sua gesta præstiterint; sive igne æterno ac supplicii mancipanda, si in hoc eam scelerum culpa detorserit: sed et quia erit tempus resurrectionis mortuorum, cum corpus hoc, quod in corruptione seminatur surget in incorruptione; et quod seminatur in ignominia, surget in gloria. Est et illud definitum in ecclesiastica prædicatione, omnem animam rationabilem esse liberi arbitrii: &c.

SYMBOLUM FIDEI NICÆNÆM.


Promulgated by the First General Council, held under Sylvester at Nicea in Bithynia, A. D. 325, attended by 318 Bishops.

Πολεμόμεν εἰς ἕνα Θεόν, Πατέρα παντοκράτορα, πάντων ὑπάτων τέ καὶ ἀυρίστων ποιητῶν. Καὶ εἰς ἕνα Κύριον Ἰησοῦν Χριστόν, τὸν Υἱὸν τοῦ Θεοῦ, γεννησάντα ἐκ τοῦ Πατρός μονογενῆ, τοιάστων, εἰ τῆς ὑσίας τοῦ Πατρός· Θεόν ἐκ Θεοῦ, φῶς ἐκ φωτός, Θεὸν ἀληθεῦν ἐκ Θεοῦ ἀληθεύνον γεννησάντα, οὐ ποιησάντα ὠμοσύνον τῷ Θεῷ· δι', οὗ τὰ πάντα ἐγένετο, τά τε ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ καὶ τά ἕπι τῆς γῆς τὸν δ' ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους καὶ διὰ τὴν ἡμετέραν σωτηρίαν κατέλθοντα, καὶ σαρκωσάντα, καὶ ἐνανθρωπήσαντα· παθόντα, καὶ ἀναστάντα τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ, καὶ ἀνελθόντα εἰς τοὺς οὐρανοὺς καὶ ἔρχομεν πάλιν κρίναι ζωντὰς καὶ νεκροὺς. Καὶ εἰς τὸ Πνεῦμα

1 in cf γ. Socrat. Hist. Eccles. l. i. c. 8. 2 Deest sive. Ibid. 20
SYMBOLUM EUSEBII CÆSARIENSIS.

Ex Socrat. Hist. Eccles. 1. i. c. 8.

Πιστεύομεν εἰς ἕνα Θεόν, Πατέρα παντοκράτορα, τὸν τῶν ἀπάντων ὄρατων τε καὶ ἀοράτων ποιητὴν. Καὶ εἰς ἕνα Κύριον Ἰησοῦν Χριστὸν, τὸν τοῦ Θεοῦ Δόγμαν, Θεόν ἐκ Θεοῦ, φως ἐκ φωτὸς, ζωὴν ἐκ ζωῆς, Υἱὸν μονογενῆ, πρωτότοκον πάσης κτησεως, πρὸ πάντων τῶν αἰώνων ἐκ τοῦ Θεοῦ Πατρὸς γεγεννημέναν, εἰς οὓς καὶ εἰς ἐν γένεσιν τὰ πάντα τὸν διὰ τὴν ἡμετέραν σωτηρίαν σαρκωθέντα, καὶ εἰς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους πολιτευσάμενον καὶ παλαιόντα, καὶ ἀναστάντα τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ καὶ ἀνελθόντα πρὸς τὸν Πατέρα, καὶ ἠσώσαντά πάλιν ἐν οὐσίᾳ κρίναι ζωντας καὶ νεκροὺς. Πιστεύομεν καὶ εἰς ἐν Πνεύμα Ἁγίου. Ταῦταν ἐκαστὸν εἰναι καὶ ὑπάρχειν πιστεύοντες, Πατέρα ἅλυσῖν Πατέρα, καὶ Υἱὸν ἁλυσίν Υἱόν, καὶ Πνεύμα Ἁγίου ἁλυσίος Ἁγίου Πνεύμα· καθὼς καὶ Κύριος ἡμῶν, ἀποστέλλων εἰς τὸ κύριον τοὺς ἐκαστὸν μαχητάς, εἰς Πορευόμενος μαζευόμενοι πάντα τὰ ἔθνη, βαπτίζωμεν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸ όνομα τοῦ Πατρὸς, καὶ τοῦ Υἱοῦ, καὶ τοῦ Ἁγίου Πνεύματος.*

SYMBOLUM S. CYRILLI HIEROSOLYMITANI.

Ex Tractat. de Catech. excerpt.

Πιστεύω εἰς ἕνα Θεόν, Πατέρα παντοκράτορα, ποιητὴν οὐρανοῦ καὶ γῆς, ὄρατον τε πάντων καὶ ἀοράτων ποιητὴν. Καὶ εἰς ἕνα Κύριον Ἰησοῦν Χριστὸν, τὸν Υἱόν τοῦ Θεοῦ τοῦ μονογενῆς, τὸν ἐκ τοῦ Πατρὸς γεγεννημέναν πρὸς πάντων τῶν αἰώνων Θεόν ἀληθινὸν, εἰς οὓς τὰ πάντα ἐγένετο σαρκωθέντα, καὶ ἐναχροπήσατα σταυρωθέντα, καὶ ταφέντα καὶ ἀναστάντα εἰς νεκροὺς τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ καὶ ἀνελθόντα εἰς τοὺς οὐρανούς καὶ καθίσατα εἰς δεξιῶν τοῦ Πατρὸς· καὶ ἐξ ὁμομοίου κρίναι ζωντάς καὶ νεκρούς. Καὶ εἰς ἐν Ἀγίων Πνεύμα τοῦ Παράκλητον, τὸ λαλῆσαν διὰ τῶν προφητῶν. Καὶ εἰς μίαν ἄγιαν και Σολίκην Ἐκκλησίαν, καὶ σαρκὸς ἀναστάσιν, καὶ εἰς ζωὴν αἰώνιον.

* This Creed, given in at the First Nicene Council, together with some further arguments of its professor, caused some alteration in the Creed promulgated by that Synod.
SYMBOLUM ARIANUM HÆRETICUM.


This is one of the Creeds of the Arians (of which Athanasius in his Book de Synodis, gives xi. Forms set forth by the followers of that Heresy, from A. D. 341. to A. D. 361.), published at the Council of Ariminum, A.D. 359., having been previously exhibited at the Council of Sirmium; but it was disallowed by most of the Bishops present, and the Nicene Creed again confirmed.

Πιστεύομεν εἰς ἑνά τὸν μόνον καὶ ἀληθινὸν Θεόν, Πατέρα παντοκράτορα, κτιστήν καὶ δημιουργὸν τῶν πάντων. Καὶ εἰς ἑνά μονογενὴν Υἱόν τοῦ Θεοῦ, τοῦ πρὸ πάντων τῶν αἰώνων, καὶ πρὸ πάσης ἀρχῆς, καὶ πρὸ παντὸς ἐπινοομένου χρόνου, καὶ πρὸ πάσης καταληπτής ἐπινοίας, γεγεννημένοιν ἀπαξίων ἐκ τοῦ Θεοῦ, δέ οὐ δὲ τε αἰώνες καταρθήσασθαι, καὶ τὰ πάντα ἐγένετο· γεγεννημένοις δὲ μονογενεῖς, μόνον ἐκ μόνου, ὑπὸ τοῦ Πατρὸς, Θεὸν ἐκ Θεοῦ, ὡμοίων τῷ γεννήσασθαι αὐτῶν Πατρὶ κατὰ τὰς γραφάς· οὐ δὲ τῆς γέννησις οὐδές ἐπίσταται, ἢ μόνος ὁ γέννησας αὐτὸν Πατὴρ· τούτῳ ἢσμεν τὸν μονογενήν αὐτοῦ Υἱόν, νεώματι πατρικῷ παραγεγένομένοιν ἐκ τῶν οὐρανῶν εἰς ἀθέτησιν τῆς ἀμαρτίας· καὶ ἐνεχειρήσατο· καὶ ἐναστραφέντα μετὰ τῶν μαθητῶν, καὶ πάσαν τὴν οἰκονομίαν πληρωσάντα κατὰ τὴν πατρικὴν βούλησιν· σταυροζητά, καὶ ἡποζηνύσα, καὶ εἰς τὰ καταθήκα ἐκεισθάντα, καὶ τὰ ἐκτεῖνα οἰκονομίζαντα· ὅπελοροι ἄνων ἱεύντες ἐφρίζοντο· καὶ ἀναστάντα τῇ ὑμέρᾳ, καὶ ἀναστραφέντα μετὰ τῶν μαθητῶν· καὶ τεσσαράκοιτα ἡμέρων πληρωμένων, ἀναληφθέντα εἰς τοὺς οὐρανοὺς· καὶ καθεξόμενον εἰς δεξίων τοῦ Πατρὸς· καὶ ἐλευθόμενον τῇ ἐσχάτῃ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ ἐξῆ ἡ τῆς πατρικῆς, ἀποδεδέντα ἐκάστω κατὰ τὰ ἔργα αὐτοῦ. Καὶ εἰς τὸ Ἀγιόν Πνεύμα, ὃ αὐτὸς ὁ μονογενής τοῦ Θεοῦ Υἱός Ἰησοῦς Χριστός ἐπηγείλατο πέρι τοῦ γένει τῶν ἄνθρωπος τοῦ παράκλητος, κατὰ τὸ γεγραμένον, Ἀπερχόμεναι πρὸς τὸν Πατέρα μοι, καὶ παρακάλεσα, τὸν Πατέρα μοι, καὶ ἀλλὸν παράκλητον πέμψει ὑμῖν, τὸ Πνεῦμα τῆς ἀληθείας· οἴκιν εἰς τὸ ἐμὸν ἄλθεται, καὶ ἀδιάκοπως καὶ ἐνοποιήσαι υἱὸς πάντα. Τὸ δὲ ὅνωμα τῆς οὐσίας διὰ τὸ ἀπλοῦστερον ὑπὸ τῶν πατέρων τεθείαται, ἀγνοούμενον δὲ ὑπὸ τῶν λαῶν, σκάνδαλον φέρει, διὰ τὸ μήτε τῶν γραφῶν τοῦτο περίεχειν, ἥρει τοῦ τοῦτο περιεχεῖν· οἴμαι καὶ παντελῶς μηχανεῖν μηχανήν οὐσίας ἐπὶ Θεοῦ εἶναι τοῦ λοιποῦ καὶ τὰς Τιάς γραφὰς μηχανοῦ περὶ Πατρὸς καὶ Υἱοῦ οὐσίας μεμινθῇ· ομοίων δὲ λέγομεν τοῦ Υἱοῦ τοῦ Πατρὶ κατὰ πάντα, ὡς αἱ ἀγαίρεϊ γραφαὶ λέγονταί τε καὶ διδασκοῦν.

SYMBOLUM S. EPIPHANII.

Ex Ancorat. §. 121.

Πιστεύομεν εἰς ἑνὰ Θεόν, Πατέρα παντοκράτορα, πάντων ἀσάτων τε καὶ ὀρατῶν ποιητῶν. Καὶ εἰς ἑνὰ Κύριον Ἰησοῦν Χριστόν, τῶν Ὕδων τοῦ Θεοῦ, γεννηθέντα ἐκ Θεοῦ Πατρὸς, μονογενῆ, τοπέτεστιν 2 q 2
APPENDIX.

The shorter Creed in § 120 of this same Treatise, is nearly a recapitulation of the Nicene Creed.
APPENDIX. 597

ΠΗΓΗΣΑΤΟ ΤΟ ΕΙΝΑΙ ΊΣΑ ΘΕΟ, άΛΛ’ ΕΑΥΤΟΝ ΕΚΕΝΩΣΗ, ΚΑΙ ΔΙΑ ΤΗΣ ΕΚ ΠΑΡ-
ΖΕΝΟΝ ΓΕΝΝΗΣΕΩΣ ΜΟΡΦΗΝ ΟΥΔΟΥ ΛΑΒΩΝ, ΚΑΙ ΣΧΗΜΑΤΙ ΕΥΡΕΣΕΙΣ ΌΣΗ
ΑΝΖΩΠΟΣ, ΠΑΝΤΑ ΤΑ ΕΙΣ ΑΥΤΟΝ ΚΑΙ ΠΕΡΙ ΑΥΤΟΥ ΓΕΓΡΑΜΕΝΑ ΕΠΛΗΡΩΣΕ
ΚΑΤΑ ΤΗΝ ΕΥΣΟΛΗΝ ΤΟΥ ΠΑΤΡΟΣ, ΓΕΝΟΜΕΝΟΣ ΥΨΙΚΟΣ ΜΕΧΡΙ ΖΑΝΑΤΟΥ,
ΖΑΝΑΤΟΥ ΕΙΣ ΣΤΑΥΡΟΥ' ΚΑΙ ΤΗ ΤΡΙΤΗ ΗΜΕΡΑ ΓΕΡΕΘΕΙΣ ΕΚ ΝΙΚΡΩΝ ΚΑΤΑ ΤΑΣ
ΓΡΑΦΑΣ, ΩΦΕΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΑΓΙΟΙΣ ΑΥΤΟΥ ΜΑΖΙΣΑΙΣ, ΚΑΙ ΤΟΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΟΙΣ, ΌΣΗ
ΓΕΡΑΤΑΣ ΑΝΩΒΗ ΤΕ ΕΙΣ ΟΥΡΑΝΟΥΣ, ΚΑΙ ΚΑΖΙΗ ΤΑΙ ΕΙΣ ΑΥΤΟΥ ΜΟΥ,
ΟΤΕΝ ΕΙΣΗΧΕΤΑΙ ΕΠΙ ΣΥΝΤΕΛΕΙΑ ΤΟΥ ΑΙΩΝΟΥ ΑΥΤΟΥ ΑΝΑΣΤΗΘΑΙ ΠΑΝΤΑ,
ΚΑΙ ΑΠΟΣΟΝΘΑΙ ΕΚΑΣΤΟ ΚΑΤΑ ΤΗΝ ΠΡΑΞΙΝ ΑΥΤΟΥ ΌΤΕ ΟΙ ΜΕΝ ΕΙΚΑΣΟ ΠΡΟΣ
ΛΗΨΘΗΣΟΝΤΑΙ ΕΙΣ ΖΩΗΝ ΑΙΩΝΑΝ ΚΑΙ ΒΑΣΑΛΕΙΝ ΟΥΡΑΝΟΝ, ΟΤΕΙ ΑΜΑΡ-
ΤΟΛΟΙ ΚΑΤΑΚΡΙΘΗΣΟΝΤΑΙ ΕΙΣ ΚΟΛΛΑΣΙΝ ΑΙΩΝΟΝ, ΌΠΟΝ ΟΙ ΣΚΩΛΙΞ ΑΥΤΩΝ
ΟΤΕ ΤΕΛΕΥΤΑΙ, ΚΑΙ ΤΟ ΠΙΟ ΟΥ ΣΒΕΝΝΥΤΑΙ. ΚΑΙ ΕΝ ΜΟΝΟΝ "ΑΓΙΟΝ ΠΝΕΥΜΑ
ΤΟ ΠΑΡΑΚΛΗΤΟΥ, ΕΝ ΩΙ ΕΣΦΡΑΓΙΘΗΜΕΝ ΕΙΣ ΗΜΕΡΑΝ ΑΠΟΛΥΤΩΣΕΩΣ" ΤΟ
ΠΝΕΥΜΑ ΤΗΣ ΑΛΘΕΙΑΣ, ΤΟ ΠΝΕΥΜΑ ΤΗΣ ΥΙΟΘΕΤΑΣ, ΕΝ ΗΡΑΚΛΗΣΟΥΜΕΝ,
'ΑΒΡΑΑΜΑ, Ο ΠΑΤΡΗ, ΤΟ ΕΙΔΙΡΟΝ, ΚΑΙ ΕΝΕΓΥΝΟΝ ΤΑ ΠΑΡΑ ΤΟΥ ΘΕΟΥ ΧΟΡ-
ΣΗΜΑΤΑ, ΕΚΑΣΤΟ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟ ΣΥΜΦΕΡΟΝ ΌΣΗ ΒΟΘΕΙΑΤΕΙ ΤΟ ΕΙΔΙΚΟΝ ΚΑΙ ΥΠΟ
ΜΗΝΗΝΟΝ ΠΑΝΤΑ, ΌΣΑΝ ΑΝ ΑΚΟΙΝ ΠΑΡΑ ΤΟΥ ΥΙΟΥ ΤΟ ΑΓΑΘΟΝ, ΤΟ ΥΠΗ-
ΓΟΝΟΝ ΕΙΣ ΠΑΣΑΝ ΑΛΗΘΕΙΑΝ, ΚΑΙ ΣΤΡΙΘΟΝ ΠΑΝΤΩΝ ΤΟΥΣ ΠΙΣΤΕΥΟΝΤΑΙ
ΠΡΟΣ ΤΕ ΓΝΩΣΙΝ ΑΛΗΘΗΝ ΚΑΙ ΑΚΟΙΔΗ, ΚΑΙ ΛΑΤΡΕΙΑΝ ΕΝΑΣΘΗ, ΚΑΙ ΠΡΟΣΚΥ-
ΝΗΝ ΠΝΕΥΜΑΤΙΚΗΝ, ΚΑΙ ΑΛΗΘΗΝ ΩΜΟΛΟΓΙΑΝ ΘΕΟΥ ΠΑΤΡΟΣ, ΚΑΙ ΤΟΥ ΜΟ-
ΝΟΓΕΝΟΥΣ ΥΙΟΥ ΑΥΤΟΥ ΤΟΥ ΚΥΡΙΟΥ ΚΑΙ ΘΕΟΥ ΗΜΩΝ ΙΗΣΟΥΧ ΧΡΙΣΤΟΥ, ΚΑΙ
ΕΑΥΤΟΥ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΝ ΟΥΜΑΤΟΤΟΥ ΤΟΥΝ ΟΝΟΜΑΖΟΜΕΝΟΤΟΥΝ ΤΗΝ ΙΔΙΟΤΗΤΑ ΣΑΦΕΙ,
ΗΜΩΝ ΔΕΙΚΝΥΜΟΝΤΟΣ. ΚΑΙ ΠΕΡΙ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΝ ΤΟΥΝ ΟΝΟΜΑΖΟΜΕΝΟΤΟΥΝ ΠΑΝΤΩΝ ΤΩΝ
ΕΞΑΡΘΗΝΤΩΝ ΕΝΑΣΘΗΝ ΕΝΩΜΕΝΟΝ ΜΕΝ ΠΑΝΤΩΝ ΠΑΤΡΟΣ ΕΙΣ ΤΗΝ
ΙΔΙΟΜΑΤΙ ΤΟΥ ΠΑΤΡΟΣ, ΤΟΥ ΔΕ ΥΙΟΥ ΕΙΝ ΤΗΝ ΙΔΙΟΜΑΤΙ ΤΟΥ ΥΙΟΥ, ΤΟΥ ΟΤΕ
'ΑΓΙΟΝ ΠΝΕΥΜΑΤΟΣ ΕΙΝ ΤΗΝ ΟΙΚΕΙΟΝ ΙΔΙΩΜΑΤΙ ΜΗΤΗ ΤΟΥ 'ΑΓΙΟΥ ΠΝΕΥ-
ΜΑΤΟΣ ΑΦΙ ΕΑΥΤΟΥ ΛΑΛΟΥΝΤΟς, ΜΗΤΗ ΤΟΥ ΥΙΟΥ ΑΦΙ ΕΑΥΤΟΥ ΤΙ ΠΟΙΟΝΤΟΣ
ΚΑΙ ΤΟΥΝ ΜΕΝ ΠΑΤΡΟΣ ΠΕΙΜΟΝΤΟΣ ΤΟΥΝ ΥΙΟΥ, ΤΟΥ ΔΕ ΥΙΟΥ ΠΕΙΜΟΝΤΟΣ ΤΟ
'ΑΓΙΟΝ ΠΝΕΥΜΑ. ΟΥΤΩΣ ΦΟΡΟΥΜΕΝ, ΚΑΙ ΟΥΤΩΣ ΒΑΠΤΙΖΟΜΕΝ ΕΙΣ ΤΡΙΑΔΑ
ΩΜΟΥΜΕΝ, ΚΑΤΑ ΤΗΝ ΕΥΣΟΛΗΝ ΑΥΤΟΥ ΤΟΥΝ ΚΥΡΙΟΥ ΗΜΩΝ ΙΗΣΟΥΧ ΧΡΙΣΤΟΥ,
ΕΙΣΟΝΤΟΣ. ΠΟΜΒΙΘΕΥΜΕΝΕΣ ΜΑΘΗΤΕΥΣΑΤΕ ΠΑΝΤΑ ΤΑ ΕΞΩΝ ΒΑΠΤΙΖΟΜΕΝΕΣ
ΑΥΤΟΥΣ ΕΙΣ ΤΟΝ ΟΝΟΜΑ ΤΟΥ ΠΑΤΡΟΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΟΥΝ ΥΙΟΥ ΚΑΙ ΤΟΥ 'ΑΓΙΟΥ ΠΝΕΥ-
ΜΑΤΟΣ.

SYMBOLUM FIDEI CONSTANTINOPOLITANUM.


Promulgated by the Second General Council, held under Damasus at Constantinople, A. D. 381, and attended by 150 Bishops.

ΠΙΣΤΕΥΟΜΕΝ ΕΙΣ ΊΣΑ ΘΕΟΝ, ΠΑΤΕΡΑ ΠΑΝΤΟΚΡΑΤΟΡΑ, ΠΟΥΚΕΝ ΟΥΡΑΝΟΥ
ΚΑΙ ΓΗΣ, ΔΡΑΣΙΩΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΠΑΝΤΩΝ ΚΑΙ ΑΦΑΙΡΩΝ. ΚΑΙ ΕΙΣ ΊΣΑ ΚΥΡΙΟΥ ΙΗΣΟΥ
ΧΡΙΣΤΟΥ, ΤΟΥΝ ΥΙΟΥ ΣΑΣ ΑΧΟΥΝΟΥΝΤΩΝ, ΤΟΝ ΕΚ ΤΟΥ ΠΑΤΡΟΣ ΓΕΝ-
ΝΗΣΕΝΤΑΙ ΠΡΟ ΠΑΝΤΩΝ ΤΩΝ ΑΙΩΝΩΝ ΦΩΣ ΚΑΙ ΦΩΤΟΣ, ΘΕΟΝ ΑΛΗΘΗΝ ΕΚ
ΘΕΟΥ ΑΛΗΘΗΝ ΠΑΝΤΑ ΠΕΙΜΟΝΤΟΣ, ΟΥ ΠΟΙΟΝΤΟΣ ΟΜΟΥΜΕΝ ΤΟΥΝ ΠΑΤΡΙ
ΟΤΟΥ ΤΑ ΠΑΝΤΑ ΕΓΕΝΕΤΟ ΤΟΥΝ ΔΕ ΗΜΑΣ ΤΟΥΝ ΑΝΕΡΟΠΟΥΝ ΚΑΙ ΕΙΑ ΤΗΝ
ΗΜΕΡΑΝ ΣΟΤΕΡΙΑΝ ΚΑΤΕΛΕΖΕΝΤΑΙ ΕΚ ΤΩΝ ΟΥΡΑΝΩΝ ΚΑΙ ΣΑΡΚΩΖΕΝΤΑΙ
ΕΚ ΠΝΕΥΜΑΤΟΣ ΑΓΙΟΥ ΚΑΙ ΜΑΡΙΑΣ ΤΗΣ ΠΑΡΘΕΝΟΥ, ΚΑΙ ΕΥΔΡΟΩΠΗΣΑΝΤΑ.

1 ΙΔ ΕΙΓΩΕΝΤΗ. Phot. Epist. 16. 5. 4.
Credo in Deum, Patrem omnipotentem: Et in Christum Jesum, unicum Filium ejus, Dominum nostrum; qui natus est de Spiritu Sancto ex Maria Virgine; crucifixus sub Pontio Pilato, et sepultus, descendit in inferna; tertio die resurrexit a mortuis; adscendit in celum, sedet ad dexteram Patris; inde venturus est judicare vivos et mortuos: Et in Spiritum Sanctum; sanctam Ecclesiam Catholicam; remissionem peccatorum; hujus carnis resurrectionem.

SYMBOLUM S. AUGUSTINI

Ex Lib. de Fide et Symbolo excerpt.

Credimus in Deum, Patrem omnipotentem: Credimus etiam in Jesum Christum, Filium Dei unicum, Dominum nostrum; qui natus est per Spiritum Sanctum ex Maria Virgine; sub Pontio Pilato crucifixus est, et sepultus; credimus etiam illum tertio die resurrexisse a mortuis; adscendit in coelos, sedet ad dexteram Patris; inde venturus est judicare vivos et mortuos: Adjungitur confessioni nostra, ad perfectionem fidem quae nobis de Deo est, Spiritus-Sanctus, non minore natura, quam Pater et Filius, sed, ut ita dicam, consubstantialis et co-aeternus: Credimus et sanctam Ecclesiam, utique catholicam; et remissionem peccatorum; et carnis resurrectionem.*

SYMBOLUM MAXIMI TAURINENSIS.

Ex edit. Theoph. Raynaud. excerpt.

Credis in Deum, Patrem omnipotentem: Et in Jesum Christum, Filium ejus, Dominum nostrum; qui natus est...

* Other Symbola might be extracted from the four Sermons, De Symbolo ad Catechumenos, and some of the Sermons de Tempore, generally included in St. Augustin's Works; but as they are of doubtful credit, and often inexplicitly set forth, they have been omitted.
Spiritus Sancto ex Maria Virgine; qui sub Pontio Pilato crucifixus est et sepultus; tertia die resurrexit a mortuis; adscendit in caelum; sedet ad dexteram Patris; inde venturus judicare vivos et mortuos: Et in Spiritum Sanctum; sanctam Ecclesiam; remissionem peccatorum; carnis resurrectionem.

SYMBOLUM EUSEBII GALICANI.

Ex Biblioth. Patr. Lat. t. v. par. 1. excerpt.

Credo in Deum Patrem omnipotentem. Credo et in Filium ejus, Dominum nostrum, Jesum Christum; qui conceptus est de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Maria Virgine; crucifixus et sepultus; tertia die resurrexit; adscendit ad caelos; sedet ad dexteram Dei Patris omnipotentis; inde venturus judicare de vivis et mortuis.* Credo in Spiritum Sanctum; sanctam Ecclesiam catholicam; sanctorum communionem; remissionem peccatorum; carnis resurrectionem; vitam æternam.

SYMBOLUM CASSIANI.

- Ex l. vi. c. 4. de Incarn. Domini.

Credo in unum verum solum Deum, Patrem omnipotentem, Creatorem omnium visibilium et invisibilium creaturarum: Et in Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum, Filium ejus unigenitum, et primogenitum totius creaturæ, ex eo natum ante omnia sæcula, et non factum, Deum verum ex Deo vero, homoousion Patri, per quem et sæcula compaginata sunt, et omnia facta; qui propter nos venit, et natus est ex Maria Virgine, et crucifixus sub Pontio Pilato, et sepultus; et tertia die resurrexit secundum Scripturas, et in caelos adscendit; et iterum veniet judicare vivos et mortuos. Et reliqua.

SYMBOLUM PETRI CHRYSOLOGI.

Ex edit. Theoph. Raynaud. excerpt.

Credo in Deum, Patrem omnipotentem: Et in Jesum Christum, Filium ejus unicum, Dominum nostrum; qui natus est de Spiritu Sancto ex Maria Virgine; qui sub Pontio Pilato crucifixus est, et sepultus; tertia die resurrexit; adscendit in caelos; sedet ad dexteram Patris; inde venturus est judicare vivos et mortuos. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum; sanctam Ecclesiam catholicam; et remissionem peccatorum; carnis resurrectionem; vitam æternam.

* judicare vivos et mortuos. Hom. i.
1 resurrexit a mortuis. serm. 3.
2 ad. serm. 2. 5.
3 et sanctam Ecclesiam. serm. 2. 3. in sanctam Ecclesiam. serm. 6.
4 Deest et serm. 3.
5 Deest vitam æternam. serm. 5.
6 æternam. Amen. serm. 3.
APPENDIX.

SYMBOLUM VENANTII HONORII FORTUNATI.

*Ex Biblioth. Patr. Lat. t. vi. par. 2. excerpt.*

Credo in Deum, Patrem omnipotentem: Et in Jesum Christum; qui natus est de Spiritu Sancto ex Maria Virgine; crucifixus sub Pontio Pilato; descendit ad infernum; tertia die resurrexit; adscendit in coelum; sedet ad dexteram Patris. Credo in Sancto Spiritu; sanctam Ecclesiam; remissionem peccatorum; resurrectionem carnis.

---

SYMBOLUM ALCUINI.

*Ex lib. de Divinis Officiis, c. 41. excerpt.*

Credo in Deum, Patrem omnipotentem: In Jesum Christum, Filium ejus unicum, Dominum nostrum; qui conceptus est de Spiritu Sancto; natus ex Maria Virgine; passus sub Pontio Pilato; crucifixus, mortuus, et sepultus; descendit ad inferna; tertia die resurrexit; adscendit ad coelos; sedet ad dexteram Dei Patris omnipotentis; venturus judicare vivos et mortuos. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum; sanctam Ecclesiam catholicam; sanctorum communionem; remissionem peccatorum; carnis resurrectionem; vitam æternam.

---

SYMBOLUM ETHERII UXAMENSIS.

*Ex Biblioth. Patr. Lat. t. viii.*

Credimus in unum Deum, Patrem omnipotentem; factorem coeli et terræ, visibilium omnium et invisibilium conditorem: Et in unum Dominum Jesum, Filium Dei unigenitum, ex Patre natum ante omnia sæcula; Deum ex Deo, lumen ex lumine, Deum verum ex Deo vero; natum, non factum; homoiosion Patri, hoc est, ejusdem cum Patre substantiæ; per quem omnia facta sunt, quæ in coelo, et quæ in tera; qui propter nos et propter nostram salutem descendit; et incarnatus est de Spiritu Sancto et Maria Virgine; homo factus; passus sub Pontio Pilato; sepultus; tertia die resurrexit; adscendit in coelos; sedet ad dexteram Patris; iterum venturus est in gloria judicare vivos et mortuos; cujus regni non erit finis. Credimus et in Spiritum Sanctum, Dominum et vivificatorem; ex Patre et Filio procedentem; cum Patre et Filio adorandum et glorificandum; qui locutus est per prophetas: In unam catholicam atque apostolicam Ecclesiam. Confitemur unum baptismum in remissione peccatorum. Exspectamus resurrectionem mortuorum; vitam futuri sæculi. Amen.
# INDEX

OF THE

TEXTS OF SCRIPTURE.

*«* The References distinguished thus (*) have not been inserted in any former edition.

## GENESIS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>xxx. 1, 2.</th>
<th>44</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxxi. 35.</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxxii. 8.</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxxv. 18.</td>
<td>542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxxvii. 55.</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxxviii. 17, 18, 20.</td>
<td>494</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxix. 2.</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l. 17.</td>
<td>542</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 1.</td>
<td>63. 84. 94.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 7.</td>
<td>79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. 19.</td>
<td>84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 15*</td>
<td>503</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15*</td>
<td>260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. 16.</td>
<td>242</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>84. 566*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 7.</td>
<td>444. 540*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>172</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 5.</td>
<td>44. 50. 208</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 6.</td>
<td>101</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 11.</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 5.</td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 8.</td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>223</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 15—20. 22.</td>
<td>226</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. 20.</td>
<td>116</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xv. 2. 8.</td>
<td>221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 1.</td>
<td>456</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4*</td>
<td>169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xviii. 1, 2.</td>
<td>531</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>419</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx. 6.</td>
<td>542</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxi. 12.</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxi. 2*. 12*. 16*.</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>303</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>126*</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxiv.</td>
<td>221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>131</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxvi. 3.</td>
<td>223</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxviii. 10.</td>
<td>131</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>264</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxix. 12.</td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## EXODUS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>xxx. 1, 2.</th>
<th>44</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxxi. 35.</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxxii. 8.</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxxv. 18.</td>
<td>542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxxvii. 55.</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxxviii. 17, 18, 20.</td>
<td>494</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxix. 2.</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l. 17.</td>
<td>542</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. 17, 18.</td>
<td>389</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 2.</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3*</td>
<td>589</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>189. 223</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>228</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 1. 16, 30, 31.</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 3.</td>
<td>292*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3*, 4*</td>
<td>564</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>564</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 2.</td>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>304</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 2.</td>
<td>265</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 31.</td>
<td>11. 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xv. 1.</td>
<td>562</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>266</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xv. 13.</td>
<td>66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 5.</td>
<td>398</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 15.</td>
<td>198. 226</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xix. 9.</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>145</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx. 3.</td>
<td>37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 2. 4.</td>
<td>221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxii. 31.</td>
<td>527</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxiv. 5.</td>
<td>145</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## NUMBERS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>xxx. 1, 2.</th>
<th>44</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxvi. 5.</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xxviii. 10.</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>264</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxix. 12.</td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxiv. 13.</td>
<td>116</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxviii. 55.</td>
<td>526</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxvii. 33.</td>
<td>335</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xl. 15.</td>
<td>141</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 3*</td>
<td>123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 3. 16.</td>
<td>141. 142</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>543</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 15.</td>
<td>556</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 22.</td>
<td>142</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viii. 12.</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>419</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x. 4.</td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi. 44.</td>
<td>44. 556*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 2.</td>
<td>405</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xix. 2.</td>
<td>44. 556*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>351</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx. 7.</td>
<td>44. 556*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 1.</td>
<td>351</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>350</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxii. 4.</td>
<td>350</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxiii. 10—12.</td>
<td>391</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxv. 42.</td>
<td>237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>458</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. 49.</td>
<td>113</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxiv. 4.</td>
<td>351</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 3.</td>
<td>122</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 47.</td>
<td>143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 6.</td>
<td>350, 351</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiii. 16.</td>
<td>105</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 19.</td>
<td>543</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 30.</td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxviii. 16.</td>
<td>266</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xix. 11. 13.</td>
<td>350, 351</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxii. 9.</td>
<td>303</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxii. 28. 35.</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxi. 5.</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxiv. 9.</td>
<td>305</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## DEUTERONOMY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iv. 35.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4, 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viii. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xv. 1, 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxi. 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22, 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxi. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxiii. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxiv. 6.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## JOSHUA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 11, 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x. 12, 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xviii. 1*.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## JUDGES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iii. 9, 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viii. 18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix. 9.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## RUTH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i. 20, 21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 1 SAMUEL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ii. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 7, 21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x. 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xv. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 32.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 2 SAMUEL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 47.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxv. 6*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxvii. 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxix. 4.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 1 KINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x. 33.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39, 40.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix. 19.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x. 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 55.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 4. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxv. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxv. 15, 16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx. 31.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 2 KINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ii. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9—11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 1 CHRONICLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iii. 1—3, &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxvii. 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxiv. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxvii. 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxix. 11, 12.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 2 CHRONICLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vi. 30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 20, 21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## EZRA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iii. 12.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## NEHEMIAH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>viii. 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix. 5, 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r. 29.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## JOB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>v. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 4*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 14, 16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 23*—26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xixi. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxvi. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxvii. 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiii. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx.xviii. 7, 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7, 28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiii. 1, 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2*.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PSALMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>v. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viii. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5*, 6*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9, 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xix. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxi. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxii. 1, 7, 8, 16, 18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxvii. 4, 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxvii. 18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxvii. 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxi. 1, 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxxii. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxxii. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xix. 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxv. 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xili. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xliv. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xlv. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xlv. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xlix. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li. 10.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## INDEX OF

### LAMENTATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EZEKIEL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i. 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 1. 7, 8, 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxxiv. 23, 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxxvii. 24, 25.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xlvii. 35.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DANIEL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ii. 4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 9*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 35.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9*, 13*, 22*, 10*, 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18, 22, 25.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viii. 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14, 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix. 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi. 36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 2. 563, 569, 571*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### HOSEA.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiii. 14.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### JOEL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i. 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AMOS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iv. 13.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### JONAH.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i. 17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 2*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MICAH.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ii. 13. 404*, 407*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 4.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### HAGGAI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ii. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6, 7, 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ZECHARIAH.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ii. 10, 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix. 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x. 12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi. 12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 10. 135, 278, 303.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiii. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 5.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MALACHI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 1. 126, 228, 230*, 278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 2*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### St. MATTHEW.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i. 1. 107, 129, 242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. 18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. 108*, 114, 549*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22, 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4—6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4, 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. 150*, 153*, 481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16, 17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 3*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23, 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44, 45.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9—11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24, 25.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viii. 11.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INDEX OF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>viii. 15*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix. 2, 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x. 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16, 25.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. 321, 356, 357, 580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29, 30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi. 2—5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 6, 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. 129, 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31, 32.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. 330, 393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiii. 24, 30, 47.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30, 39, 47, 48.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55. 134, 257, 267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 34, 36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xv. 22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 16. 199, 210*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. 195, 503, 507, 512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. 231, 440*, 418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. 148, 423, 440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 46, 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xviii. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25, &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xix. 17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx. 8. 41, 449*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. 113, 326, 546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30, 31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEXTS OF SCRIPTURE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kel. 4. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33, &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiiii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29* 31* 32*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43—45.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. 34. 41. 46. 450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xv. 10. 19. 21. 30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 41.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41. 46.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37. 38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. 19.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. 31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 43. 46. 48. 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2—4 9 11* 383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422 436*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 19.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. 137 481 509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. LUKE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. 5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. 9 15. 25. 46.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. 57.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. 17. 35. 143 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. 103 250 269*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. 33.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. 69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. 49.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. 37.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69. 71.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76 77*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. 22. 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. 104 229 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. 33. 48.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. 22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 17. 19.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 12. 14. 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41. 42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viii. 35.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix. 22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39. 42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. 17. 35. 143 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xv. 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvi. 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>22</strong>, <strong>23</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. 31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xviii. 31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>38</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xix. 27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx. 35, 36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxii. 29.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>44</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxii. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. 22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>53</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxiv. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. 46.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37. 39.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>41</strong>, <strong>44</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50, 51.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. JOHN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1—3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3</strong>, <strong>1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4, 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6</strong>, <strong>12</strong>, <strong>13</strong>, <strong>18</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. 27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19—21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49, 50.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 1, 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18, 19, 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19, 26. 30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22, 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22, 23, 27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. 36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41, 44.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46, 47.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32, 38, 38. 51.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50, 52, 54, 235.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 27, 31, 40, 41.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33, 34.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41, 42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viii. 12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21, 58.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix. 22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. 38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36. 38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x. 17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17, 18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30, 38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34—36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35, 36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37, 38, 41.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29, 43, 44.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii. 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36—41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2</strong>, <strong>3</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16, 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480, 481, 484.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xv. 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26, 467, 480—484.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13, 30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27, 28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29, <strong>4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TEXTS OF SCRIPUTRE.

<p>| iv. 4. | 208 | iii. 4*, 4* | 88 | ii. 6* | 187 |
| 5. | 229 | 5. 18. | 42 | 6. 7. 9. | 197 |
| 17, 18. | 590 | 7. 26. | 115. 54 | 7. 8. | 186. 526 |
| v. 1. | 587 | 11. | 35. 86 | 8. 9. | 328 |
| 8. | 585 | 13. | 528 | 9. 8—10. 120. 231. 421 |
| 11. | 279 | 19. | 387 | iii. 1. 20. | 529 |
| 17. | 175 | 20*. | 416 | 8. | 119 |
| 18. | 544 | 20—22. 252. 421* | 22. 411. 428. 507* | 10. | 531 |
| 19. | 115 | 13. | 42 | 11. | 578 |
| vi. 14, 15. | 535 | 5. | 404 | 19. 20. | 413 |
| vii. 1. | 497* | 5. 6. | 412 | 20*. | 441 |
| viii. 1. | 506 | 8. | 490 | 20, 21. | 114 |
| 19, 23, 24. | 505 | 13. | 815 | iv. 1, 2, 10. | 579 |
| x. 5. | 236 | 17. | 112 |
| xi. 8. 28. | 505 | 18. 62. 481. 489 | 19. | 413 |
| 17. | 229 | 19—21. | 503 | 20. | 16 |
| 31. | 46. 202 | 21. | 229 | iii. 10, 21. | 107 |
| xii. 1. | 229 | 12. | 433 | 14. 15. | 42 |
| 2. | 75 | 14. | 437 | 20. | 437 |
| 13. | 275 | iv. 1, 5, 17. | 229 | 3. 4. | 510 |
| xiii. 4. | 346*, 402 | 4. | 510 | 4. | 510 |
| 14. | 55. 60. 497 | 5. | 221. 503 | 5. | 221. 503 |
| 551 | 6. | 26. 38. 60 | 6. | 26. 38. 60 |
| GALATIANS. | | 8, 9. | 574 | 8, 11, 12. | 145 |
| i. 1. | 387 | 9. 166. 343. 344 | 9. | 409 |
| 2. 22. | 506 | 10. | 409 | 12. | 495 |
| 3. | 229 | 12. | 455 | 22. | 176 |
| 4. | 197. 543 | 22—24. | 175 | 22—24. | 175 |
| 5. | 507 | 30. | 464 | v. 1. | 44 |
| 13. | 193 | 2. | 146. 153 | 8. | 229 |
| 15, 16. | 193 | 11. | 340 | 14. | 404 |
| ii. 16. | 193 | 17. 19. | 229 | 17. 19. | 229 |
| 20. | 21 | 23. 25. 27. 29. 32. | 25—27. | 25—27. | 514 |
| iii. 6. | 23 | 26. | 550 | 26. | 550 |
| 10. 13, 22. | 314 | 27. | 516 | 27. | 516 |
| 16. | 124. 242 | 30. | 458 | 30. | 458 |
| 20. | 426 | vi. 1*, 2. | 42 | 14. 10. 21. 23. | 229 |
| 26. | 46 | 11. | 424 | 12. | 64. 423 |
| iv. 4. | 185. 326 | PHILIPPIANS. | 229 |
| 4, 5. | 514 | i. 2, 14. | 229 |
| 4—6. | 45. 54. 481 | 18. | 193 |
| 5. | 465. 494 | 19. | 484 |
| 6. 7. | 531 | 23. | 585 |
| 8. | 45 | 29. | 490 |
| 8, 9. | 184 | vi. 1. | 531 |
| v. 5. | 510 | i. 1. | 229 |
| 6. | 175 | 2. | 496 |
| 9. 8—10. 120. 231. 421 | 15. 16. | 506 |
| 10. | 229 | 1 THESSALONIANS. | 187 |
| 16. 25. | 491 | i. 1. | 229 |
| 24. | 316 | 6. | 52. 60 |
| vi. 14. | 316 | 9. | 52. 60 |
| 15. | 175 | ii. 13. | 14 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philip</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>586</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thessalonians</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TITUS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>229</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>498</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>438</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>491</td>
<td>491</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PHILEMON.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>506</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>229</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HEBREWS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12, 13</td>
<td>12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45, 490</td>
<td>45, 490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>172</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218, 234</td>
<td>218, 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>498</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>417</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>489, 532</td>
<td>489, 532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67, 114</td>
<td>67, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45, 46</td>
<td>45, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45, 213, 459</td>
<td>45, 213, 459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>505</td>
<td>505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235, 328, 380</td>
<td>235, 328, 380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>424</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>174, 273</td>
<td>174, 273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>174, 273, 241</td>
<td>174, 273, 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>174, 273, 176, 272, 272 *</td>
<td>174, 273, 176, 272, 272 *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>458</td>
<td>458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320, 328</td>
<td>320, 328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74, 75, 183</td>
<td>74, 75, 183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>490</td>
<td>490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>409</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>273, 290</td>
<td>273, 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326, 337</td>
<td>326, 337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>415</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>433</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>574</td>
<td>574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158, 513</td>
<td>158, 513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>515</td>
<td>515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>409</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>428</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114, 146</td>
<td>114, 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255, 273, 409</td>
<td>255, 273, 409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>418</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>229</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**JAMES.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>229</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23, 435</td>
<td>23, 435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>229</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>229</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEXTS OF SCRIPTURE.</td>
<td>Page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 PETER.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. 2.</td>
<td>497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3, 4.</td>
<td>41, 403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>145, 277, 328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14, 15.</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18, 19.</td>
<td>114, 196, 327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>216, 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9*.</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>145, 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 6.</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>248, 284, 543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18, 19.</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10—20.</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>341, 370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>417, 418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 1.</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 2.</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 2.</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 PETER.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39—4.</td>
<td>529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20, 21*.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 1.</td>
<td>339*, 546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>101, 551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 4.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8, 10.</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 JOHN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. 1.</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 3.</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6, 7.</td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 1.</td>
<td>428, 492*, 544*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20, 27.</td>
<td>159, 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 1.</td>
<td>62, 60, 530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>41, 46, 587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4*.</td>
<td>533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23, 24*.</td>
<td>118, 493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 1, 2*.</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 3.</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9, 10.</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>55*, 544*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 1.</td>
<td>40, 154, 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 JOHN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>508, 524*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4*.</td>
<td>444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>75, 101, 272*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>229, 439, 527*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVELATIONS.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. 4, 8, 13, 17, 18.</td>
<td>188, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5, 6.</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>188, 506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>566, 576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 8.</td>
<td>189, 506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12, 18.</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 1, 7, 14.</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 8.</td>
<td>63, 189, 582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>87, 200*, 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 JOHN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>508, 524*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4*.</td>
<td>444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>75, 101, 272*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>229, 439, 527*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVELATIONS.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. 4, 8, 13, 17, 18.</td>
<td>188, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5, 6.</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>188, 506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>566, 576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. 8.</td>
<td>189, 506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12, 18.</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. 1, 7, 14.</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 8.</td>
<td>63, 189, 582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>87, 200*, 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. 10, 11.</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 5.</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>521, 517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>61, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 15.</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 13.</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viii. 8.</td>
<td>318*, 549*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 10.</td>
<td>526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 14.</td>
<td>65*, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xviii. 4.</td>
<td>533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xix. 6.</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15*.</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>66*, 221, 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx. 4, 11, 12.</td>
<td>449, 450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>569</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14*, 15*.</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxi. 4.</td>
<td>588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxi. 13.</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>128, 505</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>APOCRYPHIA.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WISDOM OF SOLOMON.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi. 17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiii. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xviii. 15.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ECCLESIASTICS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xiii. 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xlvii. 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xlix. 14*.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 MACEABEES.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ii. 58.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 MACEABEES.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iii. 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii. 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xv. 23, 29.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

OF THE

MOST MATERIAL THINGS CONTAINED IN THIS BOOK,

PLACED IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER.

Absolution of the church, heresy to deny it, 531.
Adam, how many generations we are probably removed from him, 95, 96.
Adoption, what it is, 41.
Ætius, 472.
Akoran, it teacheth that God hath no Son, 207.
Almighty, the notion of it, 63. Three degrees of God's Almighty power, 64. How some extend the word Almighty, 68. A distinction between the first and second Almighty in the Creed, 69, 429.
Anabaptists of Flanders, their heresy, 246.
Angels created, 75.
Anointing, the use and design of it, 123.
Anointings under the law typified that of Christ, 141. The Jews' anointing oil was hid in the days of Josiah, 149. Christ was anointed with the Holy Ghost, 150. This proved to be a proper and sufficient unction, 152, 153. Where see the general reasons for anointing.
Anomoeans, 472.
Antidemmarita, 264.
Apelles, 409.
Apollinaris, 244, 263, 285, 358—360.
Arius, 47, 203, 244, 285, 338, 472.
Aristotle, his maxim, That out of nothing nothing can be produced, refuted, 82.
Ascension, that Christ ascended not into heaven till after his resurrection, proved, 164. The effects of his ascension, 410, 411.
Assent, what it is, 2.
Augustine, St. his wish, 16.
Authority, of testimony, wherein it consisteth, 4, 5.
Baptism, available for the remission of all sins before it, 519.
Belief, general notion of it, 2, 5, 6—of the heart, 17.
What it is to believe, 17.
To believe in, whence this phrase had its original, and what it implies, 22, 23.
Bodous, 264.
Buddas, 97, 98.
Burial, not allowed by the Roman laws to persons crucified, 336. Reasons of our Saviour's burial, with the manner of it, 329, 330. Grounds for decent burial of all Christians, 338.
Calvin, his explication of Christ's descent into hell, 348.
Catechising before Easter very ancient, and the reason of it, 17, &c.
Catholic. The general meaning of the word, and the particular sense of it when applied to the church, 516—518.
Wherein its catholicism consisteth, 520, 521.
Cerdon, 98, 243, 280.
Chaldeans, their forged accounts of time, 89.
Chaldee paraphrase. See Word of God.
Charity, motive to it, 536.
Christ, the significations of that name, 121. The Jews expected Christ, and upon what grounds, 123. The time of his coming ascertained, 129, 126. To what end Christ was anointed, for what office, in what manner, 141—144. That Christ had a real existence in heaven before he was born of the Virgin, proved, 163—173. Christ the true God, 197, &c. How Christ is born in us, 253.
Clergy, constantly repeated the Creed to the people, 20.
To Communicate with sinners in that which is no sin, is lawful, 532.
Communication of the Divine essence from the Father to the Son, 203—210. From the Father and the Son to the Holy Ghost, 488.
Communion of saints with God and an-
INDEX OF THE MOST MATERIAL THINGS.

gels, 530—532. With one another on earth, 532, 533. Of saints on earth with saints departed, 533. How saints communicate with hypocrites, 532.

Confession of the mouth, 18. Necessity of it, 19. Practice of it useful, 20. Every one obliged to it, ib.

Conscience, twofold, 441. Bears witness to the being of God, 32.

Contradiction, how an action may imply it, 432.

Creation, the oldest poets and philosophers taught it, 77. Some in after ages denied it upon weak arguments, 78. which are there set down.Creation defined, 80. Why attributed to the Father, 99. What uses may be raised from the doctrine of the creation, ib. Two ways whereby heretics elude the force of those scriptures which ascribe the creation to Christ, 173.

Creation, God cannot receive any real benefit from it, 67. How then hath he made all things for himself? See 67, 68. Every creature is good, 96. A new creature and new creation, what, 173.

Credible, credibility, what it is, 4.

Creed, whence so called, 1. A threefold significaion of it, 1, 2. Recited at baptism, 19. We believe what it contains no otherwise than as we find it in the Scriptures, 341.

Cross, the form of it, 308. The ascendency and ignominy of it, 312.

Crucified, that the Messias was to be, 301, &c. Multitudes of Jews crucified by the Romans, 317.

Crucifixion forbidden by the Christian emperors, 307. The death of slaves only, 312.

David, Christ himself so called, and why, 233, 421. Throse of David, how continued for evermore, 421.

Days of Christ's death, how made out to be three, 394, 395.

Dead. Jews never buried the bodies of their dead, 529. Romans and Grecians did, 536. Why they left this custom off, ibid.

Death, what it is, 321. Death of Christ necessary for more ends than one, 529. How Christ destroys the power of death, 424, 425.

Descent into hell, understood by some of Christ's burial only, 543. Three scriptures of greatest validity to prove Christ's real descent into hell, 344—347. Various opinions about it, 347. The most received and reasonable notion of it, 355, &c. The end and design of it, 362, 378.

Devotion, a proper motive to it, 437.

Divinity of Christ proved, 182, &c. The identity of it with that of the Father, 187, 192, 402. He has it, not of himself, but by communication from the Father,

203. Divinity of Christ suffered not, 281. 291. How then can we say that God suffered? answered, 283, 286.

Docetism, what their heresy was, 243, 260.

Donatists, their error, 511.

Durandus, his explanation of Christ's descent into hell, 348.

Earth, the foundation, and heaved the roof of the temple of God, 73. Egyptians, their forged accounts of time, 88. They said the sun had twice risen in the west, 90.

How that prophecy, "they shall call his name Emmanuel," was fulfilled in Christ, 109.

Eipipandus, 213.

Epiphanes, 243.

Eternity of God proved, 27, 28, 75. Eternity of hell torments, 579—583.

Origen's error about them, 584.

Eudoxius, 472.

Evident to sense, what is so, 4. To the understanding, what is so, 5.

Eunomius, 243, 263, 472.

Eusebius, 472.

Eutychians, 246, 247, 359.

Euzoules, 47.

Faith, the object of it, 2, 7. The act of faith must be applied to the object, according to the nature of it, 311.

Human faith, what it is, 5.

Divine faith, what it is, 7, 8.

How to come at the right notion of faith, 9.

Definition of the apostolic faith, 13.

Another definition of Christian faith, 17.

Faith, i.e. affiance in God, the grounds of it, 456.

Father, heathens worshipped God as such, 33. Why God is so called, 38, 39. Necessity of believing in God as our Father, 42. It is a reason for our imitation of God, 44. Why Christ says yours, but never our Father, 46. God is called Father in the Creed, with respect chiefly to Christ, 43. How many ways he is the Father of Christ, 48. Father denotes priority, and how, 56, 53, 482. Proper notion of the Father, 59.

Felix, 213.

Footstool, how the enemies of Christ, Jews and Romans, were made his footstool, 422.

Forgiveness of sins. See Remission.

A motive to the love of God and Christ, 552, 553.

His operations, 480. How he is distinguished from the Father and the Son, 480. To proceed from the Father and the Son, 483. The Greek and Latin churches reconciled about this procession, 484. The occasion of their difference here-about, which ended in a schism, 485. Holy Ghost, why called holy, 488. His offices, 489, &c.

Glencias, 807.


God, taken absolutely, how to be understood, 60. Often of Christ, 194—197. Goodness of God infinite, how it consists with it to defer the creation so long as he did, 86, 87.

Guilt, what it is, 539.

Hades. See Hell, 362.

Happiness of God, not to be augmented or diminished by the creatures, 85.

Happiness, eternal, wherein consists, 504, 507.

Heathen, begun every action in the name of God, 92. Their opinions of the duration of the world, 75, 76, 83, &c. Heaven and earth, in what latitude taken, 71, 72.

Three heavens, and how different in glory, 73.

Christ ascended into the highest heaven, 109.

Hebrew, no single word in it which signifies the world, 73.


Helvidius, 264, 267.

Heracleon, 98, 243.

Heretics, who taught there were two gods, one the author of good, the other of evil, 96, 97.

Hermiani, 410, 574.


Holiness, what it denotes when applied to persons or things, 534. Motives to holiness, 529.

Holy. See Ghost, church, saints.

Holy of holies, was to the Jews an emblem of the highest heavens, 405.

Homoousians, 472.

Hope, the ground of it, 18, 403, 458.

Idolatry, what it is, 234.

Jehovah, a name attributed to Christ, 225—228.

Jesus, a name commonly used by the Jews, 105. The derivation and interpretation of it, 103, 106, &c. Jesus proved to be the Christ, 129—141.

Impossible, what may be so to God, without derogation of power, 431.

Intercession of Christ for us at God's right hand, 428. Of the Holy Ghost, 491.

Joseph, a type of Christ sitting at the right hand of God, 414.

Joshua, a type of Christ, 115—118.

Jorinius, 264.

Isidorus, 243.

Judgment of the world proved from reason and Scripture, 441—443. Believed by the heathen, 443. In it Christ shall preside as judge, with the reasons for it, 445, &c. An account of the process in the day of judgment, 447, 448.

Kingdom shall have no end, why inserted in the Nicene Creed, 426.

Kingdom of Christ, twofold, 427.

Kingly power of Christ, the benefits of it to us, 424—429.

Law of God, the reason and extent of it, 510.

Life, what it is, 390.

Life everlasting, taken in the Creed for the endless duration of all men, 580, 581. Endless duration of the wicked, 582, 583.

Eternal life, the full importance of it, 583, 586.

Light, Christ so called from the perspicuity of his doctrine, 130.

Limbus Patrum, whether Christ delivered souls out of that place, 373.

Lord, determinately used for Christ in the New Testament, 220. But sometimes used for men both in the Old and New Testament, 221. How the Greek and Hebrew words for Lord correspond, 221—223. Christ is Lord, as that word is the interpretation of the name Jehovah proved, 225—228. How and in what respect Christ is Lord, 290, 291. How many ways he hath a right to be our Lord, 293.

Lucanus, 243.

Macedonians, their heresy, 472, 486.

Mahometans keep their sabbath on Friday the sixth day of the week, and why, 492.

Manes, 97, 98.

Marcion, 97, 243.

Marcosians, 243.
Marcus, 280.

Matter, the eternity of it refuted, 31, 82.

Mediatorship of Christ, when and why it shall cease, 425.

Menander, 243.

Messias, a word of the same signification with Christ, 121, 122. The Jews make a double Messias, 132, 278. Mistrusting the scriptures that speak of his coming twice, 137. All the Jews believed Messias should be the Son of God, though since Christ they denied it, 160. That Messias should suffer, proved from ancient prophecies, 477, &c. Suffer death, 316, 319.

Ministry, what sanctification necessary for the work of it, 495—500.

Miracles, the use of them, 12, 13, 436.

They prove the being of God, 31.

Upon what grounds Moses, the prophets, and apostles, received and propagated the faith, 10—15. How much short Moses came of Christ in his miracles, 150.

Montanus, 492.

Nail, struck through a bond cancelled it, 313.

Nature of no creature is originally evil, 98.


Distinction of natures in Christ asserted, 243—246.

Necessity of two natures in one person of Christ, 246.

Nestorians, 249, 270, 271, 339.

Noetus, 240, 241, 482.

None good but one, explained, 85.

Nothing can be produced out of nothing, how far true, 82.

Novatian heresy, 551.

Omnipotence, the notion of it explained, 430, 431, &c. Opinion, what it is, 3.

Origen, his error about bell-torments, 584.

Origenists, their error, 572.

Paraclete explained, 491, 492.

Passion of Christ, why the Jews give a wrong account of the time of it, 299.

Patience, the proper foundation of it in a Christian, 43.


Pelagians, their heresy, 490. Renewed by Socinians, 491.

Phantasiaste, the same with Docetæ, 243, 290.

Phidias, 27.

Philosophers, what they taught about the existence of the world, 76, 77, 86.

Photinus, 181—183.

P. Pilate, a man of a rough untractable spirit, 298.

Power, the object, nature, and extent, of God's power, 64, 65, 87, 127, 128.

On what accounts the belief of it is necessary, 67, 68. Christ had not all power till after his resurrection, 251.

Praxeas, 240, 241, 481.

Priests, why under the law they blessed the people at the morning, but not at the evening sacrifice, 146.

Priority of the Father before the Son, 49—56. Terms of priority given him by the ancients, 58, 59.

Priscillianus, 241.

Probable, what is so, 4.

Prophecy, a proof of a Divine Being, 31.

Quick, what is meant by that word in the Creed, 411. The quick, i.e. those that are alive in the day of judgment, shall not be dissolved by death, 453.

Reconciliation between God and man, 544.

Redemption, how purchased, 291, 546.

Redemption, one reason why we call God Father, regeneration another, 40, 41.

Resurrection a third, 41.

Regeneration, the work of the Holy Ghost, 491, 494.

Remission of sins explained, 543, 547.

How propounded and conferred in the church, 348, 349.

Repentance, a motive to it, 457. The necessity of it, 549, 550.

Resurrection, the definition of it, 384, 385. Nothing less than Omnipotence can effect it, 387. Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, raised Christ from the dead, 18.

Distance between the death and resurrection of Christ, how necessary, 392. The possibility of our resurrection, 536. The probability of it upon natural and moral grounds, 538, 539. The certainty of it upon Christian principles, 563, &c. demonstrated. Identity of the body necessarily supposed, 568—572. Latitude of the resurrection, 573.

Revelation of two kinds, mediately and immediately, 9.

Roman governor had the power of life and death in Judea sixty years before the destruction of Jerusalem, 297.

Rufinus, his explanation of Christ's descent into hell, 352.

Sabbath, reasons for changing it from the seventh to the first day, 398—402.

Sabellian heresy, 240, 481.

Saints, who they are, and how a man may become one, 527, 528.

Sanctification, the work of the Holy Ghost, 489.

Saturninus, 243, 280.

Saviour, an appellation given to the heathen gods and men, 109—111.

Read-
INDEX OF THE MOST MATERIAL THINGS.

sions at large why Christ is peculiarly called so, 111, &c.
Science, scientifical, what it is, 4.
 Scriptures, why written, 14, 15.
Scythians, 98.
Secundus, 243.
 Seleuciani, 410. 574.
Semiariani, 472.
Shaddai, the notion and importance of that word, 68.
Waved sheaf, a type of Christ's rising from the dead, 391.
Simon Magnus, 243. 280.
Sin, what it is, 539.
Sio and Satan, how Christ destroys their power, 424.
Sitting at the right hand of God explained, 414.
The notion of sitting in the Creed, 414, 415.
Socinians, 27, 28. 295. 583.
Congruity of the Son's mission argued from the pre-eminence of the Father, 53.
Only-begotten Son, interpreted by ancient heretics, begotten of the Father only; by Socinians, most beloved of the Father, 209, 210.
Sonship, the several degrees of it, 46.
The peculiarity of Christ's Sonship, 160, &c.
Soul, sometimes used to signify the dead body, 330.
Human soul of Christ, with the affections and passions, 245.
Soul of Christ descended to the mansions of departed souls, 357.
Sufferings of Christ, how ancient prophecies were fulfilled in them, 134. Why Christ could not suffer the pains of hell, 349.
Tabernacle, Jews believed that it signified this world, 405.
Teberinthus, 98.
Tessareos-decatae, 300.
Testimony, two sorts of it, what makes it valid, 5.
Triuity, order of it may not be inverted, 55. 482. Difference between the persons in it, 57, 58. 480.
Trust in God, the grounds of it, 436, 437.
Union of Christ's two natures not dissolved by death, 323, 324.
Union of Christ with the church by the Holy Ghost, 493. 533.
Unity in the Godhead, the ground of it, 61.
Unity of the church, wherein it consists, 507—512.
Universe, the notion and extent of it, 72. Divided by the Jews into three worlds, 73. Philosophers thought it infinite, eternal, God himself, 76.
Valentinus, 224. 243. 280.
Virgin, two prophecies that Christ should be born of a virgin cleared, 262. Proofs that Mary was a virgin, when she conceived, when she brought forth, and ever after. Objections answered, 263—269. The Virgin styled Deipara, and the mother of God, 270. What honour is due to the Virgin, 275.
Will of God absolutely free, 84. God created by willing the creation, 86, 87. Seats of the two wills in Christ, 243.
Word of God, the Chaldee paraphrase constantly teaches, that the Word of God is the same with God, and that by that Word all things were made, 177, 178.
Word was with God, how, 177—181.
World. See Universe. The manner how the world was made, 79. See Creation. No instant assignable before which God could not have made the world, 88. Arguments to make it appear, that the world is no older than the Scripture makes it to be, 91—95.
Zaranes, 93.

THE END.